

# PEUGEOT 307



2001 to 2004 (Y registration onwards) Petrol & Diesel

## Haynes **Service and Repair Manual**



Includes **Roadside Repairs** and **MOT Test Checks**

# and not forgetting...

We don't just publish car manuals, you know! In addition to the hundred and fifty million car and bike manuals we have sold worldwide, Haynes also produce a wide range of practical books and manuals on subjects such as home DIY, computing, caravanning, cycling and driving tuition – and there's our innovative and highly successful Family Series as well. No matter what the subject, our essential no-nonsense, easy-to-follow approach remains the same.



We also publish and distribute hundreds of books and DVDs covering general motoring and transport subjects, including all aspects of motorsport, classic cars, sports cars, motorcycling, military vehicles, aviation, model cars, cycling, golf, history and much, much more.



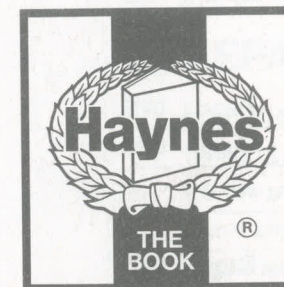
Check out our website at [www.haynes.co.uk](http://www.haynes.co.uk) to find your nearest stockist or to view or download our online catalogue. All Haynes publications are available variously through car accessory shops, book stores and mail order outlets.



Haynes Publishing, Sparkford, Yeovil, Somerset BA22 7JJ, England  
 Telephone 01963 442030 • E-mail [sales@haynes.co.uk](mailto:sales@haynes.co.uk) • Website [www.haynes.co.uk](http://www.haynes.co.uk)  
 Sweden 018 124016 • USA 805 498-6703 • Australia 613 9763-8100



**Illegal Copying** It is the policy of Haynes Publishing to actively protect its Copyrights and Trade Marks. Legal action will be taken against anyone who unlawfully copies the cover or contents of this Manual. This includes all forms of unauthorised copying including digital, mechanical, and electronic in any form. Authorisation from Haynes Publishing will only be provided expressly and in writing. Illegal copying will also be reported to the appropriate statutory authorities in whichever jurisdiction the offence takes place.



# Peugeot 307 Service and Repair Manual

Martynn Randall

(4147 - 344)

## Models covered

Peugeot 307 Hatchback & Estate/SW models, including special/limited editions

Petrol engines: 1.4 litre (1360cc) SOHC, 1.6 litre (1587cc) & 2.0 litre (1997cc)  
 Turbo-Diesel engines: 1.4 litre (1398cc) SOHC & 2.0 litre (1997cc)

*Does NOT cover 307CC or Coupe models*

*Does NOT cover 1.4 litre DOHC 16-valve petrol & diesel engines introduced during 2004*

© Haynes Publishing 2004

A book in the Haynes Service and Repair Manual Series

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording or by any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the copyright holder.

ISBN 1 84425 147 0

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

ABCDE  
 FGHIJ  
 KLMNO  
 PQ

Printed in the USA

Haynes Publishing  
 Sparkford, Yeovil, Somerset BA22 7JJ, England

Haynes North America, Inc  
 861 Lawrence Drive, Newbury Park, California 91320, USA

Editions Haynes  
 4, Rue de l'Abreuvoir  
 92415 COURBEVOIE CEDEX, France

Haynes Publishing Nordiska AB  
 Box 1504, 751 45 UPPSALA, Sverige

# Contents

## LIVING WITH YOUR PEUGEOT 307

Safety first!	Page 0•5
Introduction	Page 0•6

### Roadside repairs

Introduction	Page 0•7
If your car won't start	Page 0•7
Jump starting	Page 0•8
Identifying leaks	Page 0•9
Towing	Page 0•9
Wheel changing	Page 0•10

### Weekly checks

Introduction	Page 0•12
Underbonnet check points	Page 0•12
Engine oil level	Page 0•13
Coolant level	Page 0•13
Tyre condition and pressure	Page 0•14
Brake and clutch fluid level	Page 0•15
Power steering fluid level	Page 0•15
Screen washer fluid level	Page 0•16
Wiper blades	Page 0•16
Battery	Page 0•17
Bulbs and fuses	Page 0•17

Lubricants and fluids	Page 0•18
-----------------------	-----------

Tyre pressures	Page 0•18
----------------	-----------

## MAINTENANCE

### Routine maintenance and servicing

#### Petrol engine

Servicing specifications	Page 1A•2
Maintenance schedule	Page 1A•3
Maintenance procedures	Page 1A•5

#### Diesel engine

Servicing specifications	Page 1B•2
Maintenance schedule	Page 1B•3
Maintenance procedures	Page 1B•5

# Contents

## REPAIRS & OVERHAUL

### Engine and associated systems

1.4 and 1.6 litre petrol engines in-car repair procedures	Page <b>2A•1</b>
2.0 litre petrol engine in-car repair procedures	Page <b>2B•1</b>
Diesel engine in-car repair procedures	Page <b>2C•1</b>
Engine removal and overhaul procedures	Page <b>2D•1</b>
Cooling, heating and ventilation systems	Page <b>3•1</b>
Fuel and exhaust systems – petrol models	Page <b>4A•1</b>
Fuel and exhaust systems – diesel models	Page <b>4B•1</b>
Emission control systems	Page <b>4C•1</b>
Starting and charging systems	Page <b>5A•1</b>
Ignition system - petrol models	Page <b>5B•1</b>
Pre/post-heating system - diesel models	Page <b>5C•1</b>

### Transmission

Clutch	Page <b>6•1</b>
Manual transmission	Page <b>7A•1</b>
Automatic transmission	Page <b>7B•1</b>
Driveshafts	Page <b>8•1</b>

### Brakes and suspension

Braking system	Page <b>9•1</b>
Suspension and steering	Page <b>10•1</b>

### Body equipment

Bodywork and fittings	Page <b>11•1</b>
Body electrical system	Page <b>12•1</b>

### Wiring diagrams

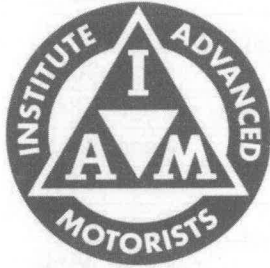
Page **12•20**

## REFERENCE

Dimensions and weights	Page <b>REF•1</b>
Conversion factors	Page <b>REF•2</b>
Buying spare parts	Page <b>REF•3</b>
Vehicle identification numbers	Page <b>REF•3</b>
General repair procedures	Page <b>REF•4</b>
Jacking and vehicle support	Page <b>REF•5</b>
Tools and working facilities	Page <b>REF•6</b>
MOT test checks	Page <b>REF•8</b>
Fault finding	Page <b>REF•12</b>
Glossary of technical terms	Page <b>REF•19</b>

### Index

Page **REF•23**



Many people see the words 'advanced driving' and believe that it won't interest them or that it is a style of driving beyond their own abilities. Nothing could be further from the truth. Advanced driving is straightforward safe, sensible driving - the sort of driving we should all do every time we get behind the wheel.

An average of 10 people are killed every day on UK roads and 870 more are injured, some seriously. Lives are ruined daily, usually because somebody did something stupid. Something like 95% of all accidents are due to human error, mostly driver failure. Sometimes we make genuine mistakes - everyone does. Sometimes we have lapses of concentration. Sometimes we deliberately take risks.

For many people, the process of 'learning to drive' doesn't go much further than learning how to pass the driving test because of a common belief that good drivers are made by 'experience'.

Learning to drive by 'experience' teaches three driving skills:

- Quick reactions. (Whoops, that was close!)
- Good handling skills. (Horn, swerve, brake, horn).
- Reliance on vehicle technology. (Great stuff this ABS, stop in no distance even in the wet...)

Drivers whose skills are 'experience based' generally have a lot of near misses and the odd accident. The results can be seen every day in our courts and our hospital casualty departments.

Advanced drivers have learnt to control the risks by controlling the position and speed of their vehicle. They avoid accidents and near misses, even if the drivers around them make mistakes.

The key skills of advanced driving are **concentration**, effective all-round **observation**, **anticipation** and **planning**. When **good vehicle handling** is added to

these skills, all driving situations can be approached and negotiated in a safe, methodical way, leaving nothing to chance.

**Concentration** means applying your mind to safe driving, completely excluding anything that's not relevant. Driving is usually the most dangerous activity that most of us undertake in our daily routines. It deserves our full attention.

**Observation** means not just looking, but seeing and seeking out the information found in the driving environment.

**Anticipation** means asking yourself what is happening, what you can reasonably expect to happen and what could happen unexpectedly. (One of the commonest words used in compiling accident reports is 'suddenly'.)

**Planning** is the link between seeing something and taking the appropriate action. For many drivers, planning is the missing link.

If you want to become a safer and more skilful driver and you want to enjoy your driving more, contact the Institute of Advanced Motorists at [www.iam.org.uk](http://www.iam.org.uk), phone 0208 996 9600, or write to IAM House, 510 Chiswick High Road, London W4 5RG for an information pack.

## Illegal Copying

*It is the policy of Haynes Publishing to actively protect its Copyrights and Trade Marks. Legal action will be taken against anyone who unlawfully copies the cover or contents of this Manual. This includes all forms of unauthorised copying including digital, mechanical, and electronic in any form. Authorisation from Haynes Publishing will only be provided expressly and in writing. Illegal copying will also be reported to the appropriate statutory authorities.*

Working on your car can be dangerous. This page shows just some of the potential risks and hazards, with the aim of creating a safety-conscious attitude.

## General hazards

### Scalding

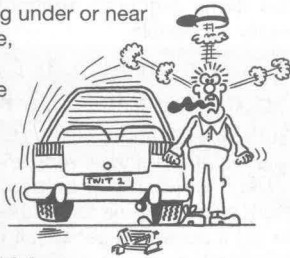
- Don't remove the radiator or expansion tank cap while the engine is hot.
- Engine oil, automatic transmission fluid or power steering fluid may also be dangerously hot if the engine has recently been running.

### Burning

- Beware of burns from the exhaust system and from any part of the engine. Brake discs and drums can also be extremely hot immediately after use.

### Crushing

- When working under or near a raised vehicle, always supplement the jack with axle stands, or use drive-on ramps.
- Never venture under a car which is only supported by a jack.**



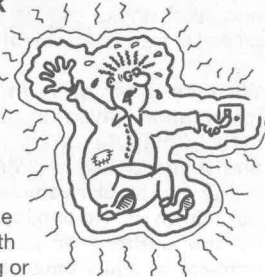
- Take care if loosening or tightening high-torque nuts when the vehicle is on stands. Initial loosening and final tightening should be done with the wheels on the ground.

### Fire

- Fuel is highly flammable; fuel vapour is explosive.
- Don't let fuel spill onto a hot engine.
- Do not smoke or allow naked lights (including pilot lights) anywhere near a vehicle being worked on. Also beware of creating sparks (electrically or by use of tools).
- Fuel vapour is heavier than air, so don't work on the fuel system with the vehicle over an inspection pit.
- Another cause of fire is an electrical overload or short-circuit. Take care when repairing or modifying the vehicle wiring.
- Keep a fire extinguisher handy, of a type suitable for use on fuel and electrical fires.

### Electric shock

- Ignition HT voltage can be dangerous, especially to people with heart problems or a pacemaker. Don't work on or near the ignition system with the engine running or the ignition switched on.



- Mains voltage is also dangerous. Make sure that any mains-operated equipment is correctly earthed. Mains power points should be protected by a residual current device (RCD) circuit breaker.

### Fume or gas intoxication

- Exhaust fumes are poisonous; they often contain carbon monoxide, which is rapidly fatal if inhaled. Never run the engine in a confined space such as a garage with the doors shut.
- Fuel vapour is also poisonous, as are the vapours from some cleaning solvents and paint thinners.



### Poisonous or irritant substances

- Avoid skin contact with battery acid and with any fuel, fluid or lubricant, especially antifreeze, brake hydraulic fluid and Diesel fuel. Don't syphon them by mouth. If such a substance is swallowed or gets into the eyes, seek medical advice.
- Prolonged contact with used engine oil can cause skin cancer. Wear gloves or use a barrier cream if necessary. Change out of oil-soaked clothes and do not keep oily rags in your pocket.
- Air conditioning refrigerant forms a poisonous gas if exposed to a naked flame (including a cigarette). It can also cause skin burns on contact.

### Asbestos

- Asbestos dust can cause cancer if inhaled or swallowed. Asbestos may be found in gaskets and in brake and clutch linings. When dealing with such components it is safest to assume that they contain asbestos.

## Special hazards

### Hydrofluoric acid

- This extremely corrosive acid is formed when certain types of synthetic rubber, found in some O-rings, oil seals, fuel hoses etc, are exposed to temperatures above 400°C. The rubber changes into a charred or sticky substance containing the acid. *Once formed, the acid remains dangerous for years. If it gets onto the skin, it may be necessary to amputate the limb concerned.*
- When dealing with a vehicle which has suffered a fire, or with components salvaged from such a vehicle, wear protective gloves and discard them after use.

### The battery

- Batteries contain sulphuric acid, which attacks clothing, eyes and skin. Take care when topping-up or carrying the battery.
- The hydrogen gas given off by the battery is highly explosive. Never cause a spark or allow a naked light nearby. Be careful when connecting and disconnecting battery chargers or jump leads.

### Air bags

- Air bags can cause injury if they go off accidentally. Take care when removing the steering wheel and/or fascia. Special storage instructions may apply.

### Diesel injection equipment

- Diesel injection pumps supply fuel at very high pressure. Take care when working on the fuel injectors and fuel pipes.

**Warning:** Never expose the hands, face or any other part of the body to injector spray; the fuel can penetrate the skin with potentially fatal results.

## Remember...

### DO

- Do use eye protection when using power tools, and when working under the vehicle.
- Do wear gloves or use barrier cream to protect your hands when necessary.
- Do get someone to check periodically that all is well when working alone on the vehicle.
- Do keep loose clothing and long hair well out of the way of moving mechanical parts.
- Do remove rings, wristwatch etc, before working on the vehicle – especially the electrical system.
- Do ensure that any lifting or jacking equipment has a safe working load rating adequate for the job.

### DON'T

- Don't attempt to lift a heavy component which may be beyond your capability – get assistance.
- Don't rush to finish a job, or take unverified short cuts.
- Don't use ill-fitting tools which may slip and cause injury.
- Don't leave tools or parts lying around where someone can trip over them. Mop up oil and fuel spills at once.
- Don't allow children or pets to play in or near a vehicle being worked on.



The Peugeot 307 was introduced into the UK in early 2001. At its launch, the 307 was offered with a choice of 1.4 (1360cc), 1.6 (1587cc) and 2.0 litre (1997cc) petrol engines or 1.4 litre (1398cc), 2.0 litre (1997cc) turbo-diesel engines. It was available in two body styles – a 3/5-door Hatchback, or a 5-door Estate. In March 2002 the SW (Sports Wagon) model was released, with three rows of

passenger seats, and a full-length glass panel roof as the main distinguishing features.

The engines fitted to the 307 range are all versions of the well-proven units which have appeared in many Peugeot/Citroën vehicles over the years, with the exception of the 1.4 litre HDI engine, newly developed in a joint venture with the Ford Motor Co.

The engine is mounted transversely at the

front of vehicle, with the transmission mounted on its left-hand end. All engines are fitted with a manual transmission as standard (an automatic transmission is available on certain engines).

All models have fully-independent front suspension, incorporating shock absorbers, coil springs and an anti-roll bar. The rear beam axle has a built-in anti-roll bar, with separate shock absorbers and coil spring.

A wide range of standard and optional equipment is available within the range to suit most tastes, including central locking, electric windows and front, side and curtain airbags. An air conditioning system is available on all models.

Provided that regular servicing is carried out in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, the vehicle should prove reliable and very economical. The engine compartment is well-designed, and most of the items requiring frequent attention are easily accessible.

### Your Peugeot 307 manual

The aim of this manual is to help you get the best value from your vehicle. It can do so in several ways. It can help you decide what work must be done (even should you choose to get it done by a garage). It will also provide information on routine maintenance and servicing, and give a logical course of action and diagnosis when random faults occur. However, it is hoped that you will use the manual by tackling the work yourself. On simpler jobs it may even be quicker than booking the car into a garage and going there twice, to leave and collect it. Perhaps most important, a lot of money can be saved by avoiding the costs a garage must charge to cover its labour and overheads.

The manual has drawings and descriptions to show the function of the various components so that their layout can be understood. Tasks are described and photographed in a clear step-by-step sequence.

References to the 'left' and 'right' of the vehicle are in the sense of a person in the driver's seat facing forward.

### Acknowledgements

Thanks are due to Draper tools Limited, who provided some of the workshop tools, and to all those people at Sparkford who helped in the production of this manual.

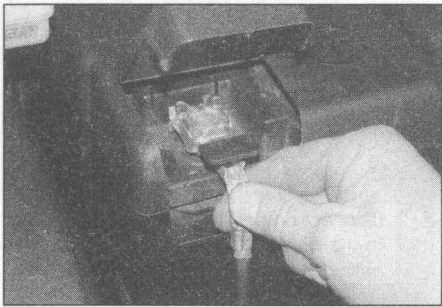
**We take great pride in the accuracy of information given in this manual, but vehicle manufacturers make alterations and design changes during the production run of a particular vehicle of which they do not inform us. No liability can be accepted by the authors or publishers for loss, damage or injury caused by any errors in, or omissions from, the information given.**



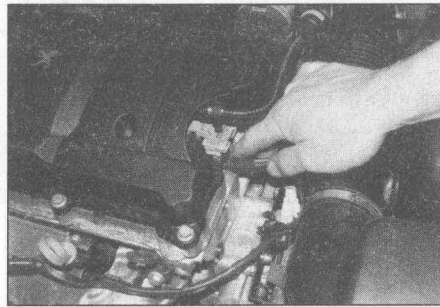
The following pages are intended to help in dealing with common roadside emergencies and breakdowns. You will find more detailed fault finding information at the back of the manual, and repair information in the main chapters.

## If your car won't start and the starter motor doesn't turn

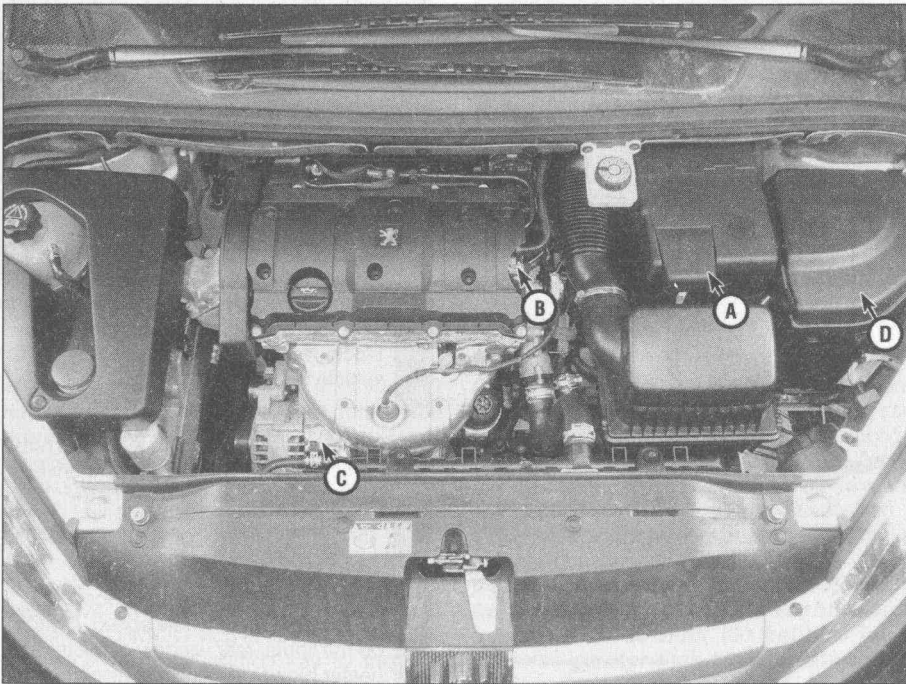
- If it's a model with automatic transmission, make sure the selector is in the P or N position.
- Open the bonnet and make sure that the battery terminals are clean and tight.
- Switch on the headlights and try to start the engine. If the headlights go very dim when you're trying to start, the battery is probably flat. Try jump starting (see next page) using another car.



**A** Remove the plastic cover and check the condition and security of the battery connections.



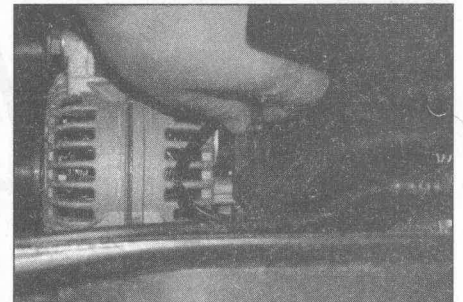
**B** Check that the fuel/ignition system (as applicable) wiring connectors are securely connected (1.6 litre petrol model shown).



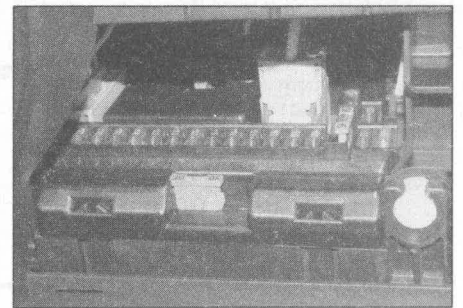
Check that electrical connections are secure (with the ignition switched off) and spray them with a water dispersant spray like WD-40 if you suspect a problem due to damp.

## If your car won't start even though the starter motor turns as normal

- Is there fuel in the tank?
- Is there moisture on electrical components under the bonnet? Switch off the ignition, then wipe off any obvious dampness with a dry cloth. Spray a water-repellent aerosol product (WD-40 or equivalent) on ignition and fuel system electrical connectors like those shown in the photos. Pay special attention to the ignition coils wiring connector. (Note that diesel engines don't normally suffer from damp.)



**C** Check that the alternator wiring connectors are securely connected.



**D** Check that all fuses are still in good condition and none have blown.



## Jump starting

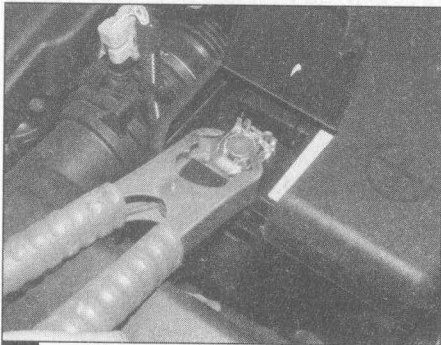
When jump-starting a car using a booster battery, observe the following precautions:

- ✓ Before connecting the booster battery, make sure that the ignition is switched off.
- ✓ Ensure that all electrical equipment (lights, heater, wipers, etc) is switched off.
- ✓ Take note of any special precautions printed on the battery case.
- ✓ Make sure that the booster battery is the same voltage as the discharged one in the vehicle.
- ✓ If the battery is being jump-started from the battery in another vehicle, the two vehicles **MUST NOT TOUCH** each other.
- ✓ Make sure that the transmission is in neutral (or PARK, in the case of automatic transmission).

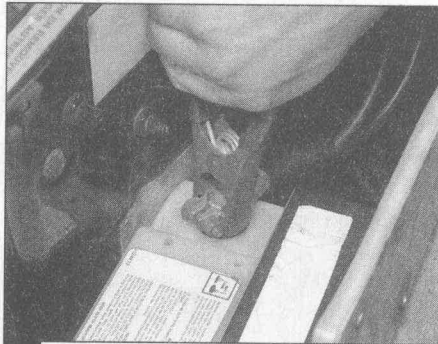


*Jump starting will get you out of trouble, but you must correct whatever made the battery go flat in the first place. There are three possibilities:*

- 1** The battery has been drained by repeated attempts to start, or by leaving the lights on.
- 2** The charging system is not working properly (alternator drivebelt slack or broken, alternator wiring fault or alternator itself faulty).
- 3** The battery itself is at fault (electrolyte low, or battery worn out).



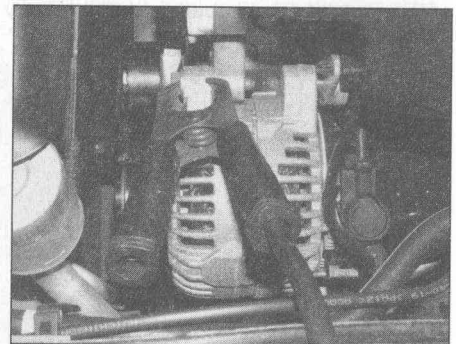
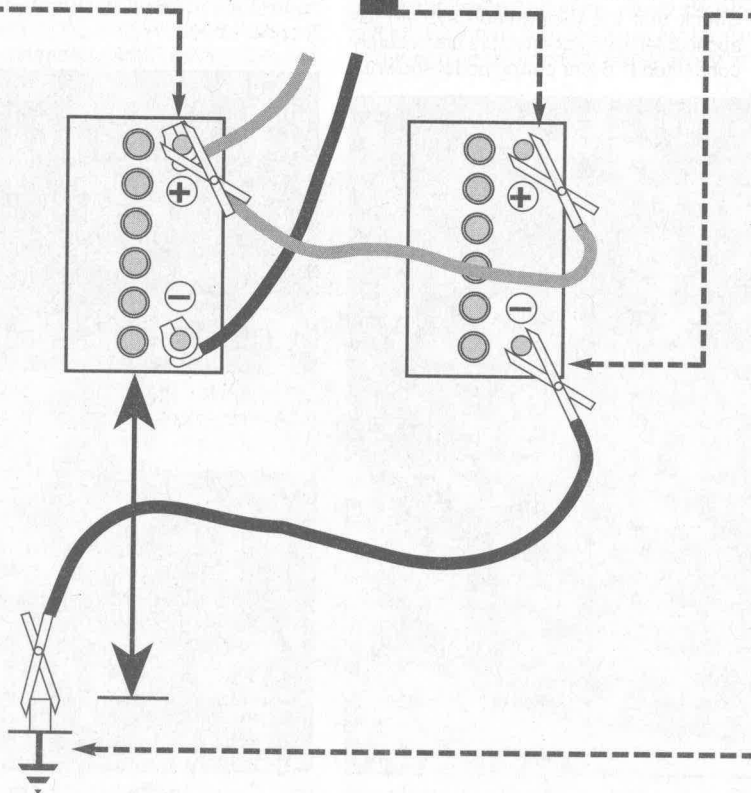
**1** Connect one end of the red jump lead to the positive (+) terminal of the flat battery



**2** Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive (+) terminal of the booster battery.



**3** Connect one end of the black jump lead to the negative (-) terminal of the booster battery



**4** Connect the other end of the black jump lead to a bolt or bracket on the engine block, well away from the battery, on the vehicle to be started.

**5** Make sure that the jump leads will not come into contact with the fan, drivebelts or other moving parts of the engine.

**6** Start the engine using the booster battery and run it at idle speed. Switch on the lights, rear window demister and heater blower motor, then disconnect the jump leads in the reverse order of connection. Turn off the lights etc.

## Identifying leaks

Puddles on the garage floor or drive, or obvious wetness under the bonnet or underneath the car, suggest a leak that needs investigating. It can sometimes be difficult to decide where the leak is coming from, especially if the engine bay is very dirty already. Leaking oil or fluid can also be blown rearwards by the passage of air under the car, giving a false impression of where the problem lies.



**Warning:** Most automotive oils and fluids are poisonous. Wash them off skin, and change out of contaminated clothing, without delay.

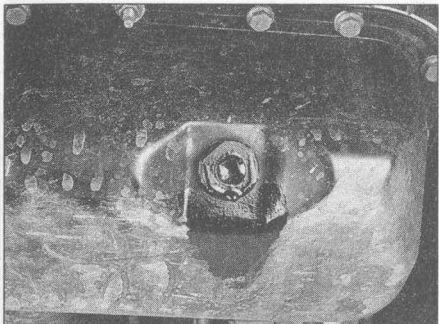
**HAYNES**  
**HiNT**

The smell of a fluid leaking from the car may provide a clue to what's leaking. Some fluids are distinctively coloured.

It may help to clean the car carefully and to park it over some clean paper overnight as an aid to locating the source of the leak.

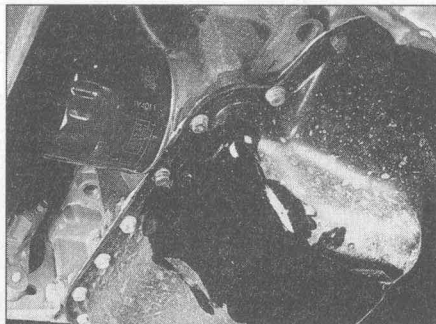
Remember that some leaks may only occur while the engine is running.

### Sump oil



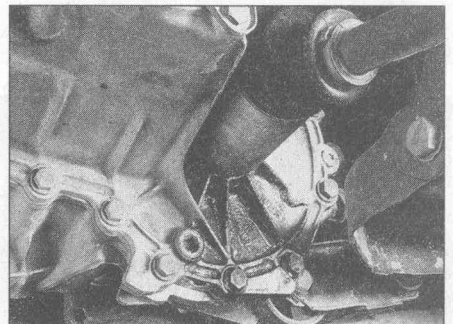
Engine oil may leak from the drain plug...

### Oil from filter



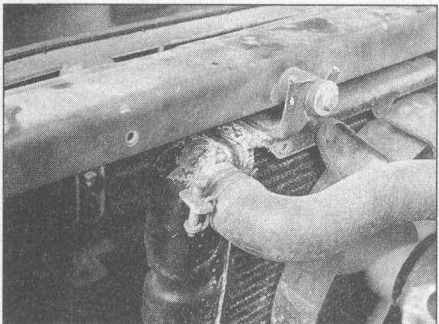
...or from the base of the oil filter.

### Gearbox oil



Gearbox oil can leak from the seals at the inboard ends of the driveshafts.

### Antifreeze



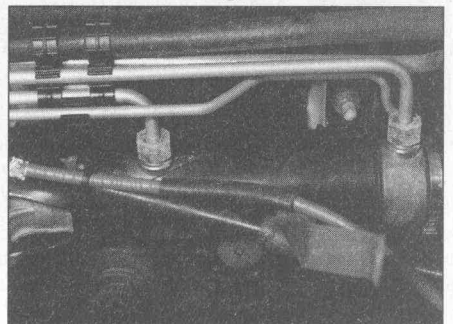
Leaking antifreeze often leaves a crystalline deposit like this.

### Brake fluid



A leak occurring at a wheel is almost certainly brake fluid.

### Power steering fluid



Power steering fluid may leak from the pipe connectors on the steering rack.

When all else fails, you may find yourself having to get a tow home – or of course you may be helping somebody else. Long-distance recovery should only be done by a garage or breakdown service. For shorter distances, DIY towing using another car is easy enough, but observe the following points:

- Use a proper tow-rope – they are not expensive. The vehicle being towed must display an ON TOW sign in its rear window.
- Always turn the ignition key to the 'on' position when the vehicle is being towed, so that the steering lock is released, and that the direction indicator and brake lights work.

- The towing eye is kept inside the spare wheel (see *Wheel changing*) on Hatchback models, and behind the right-hand side luggage compartment trim panel on Estates. To fit the eye, unclip the access cover from the relevant bumper and screw the eye firmly into position.
- Before being towed, release the handbrake and select neutral on the transmission.

**Caution:** On models with automatic transmission, do not tow the car at speeds in excess of 30 mph (50 kph) or for a distance greater than 30 miles (50 km). If towing speeds/distances are to exceed these limits, then the car must be towed with its front wheels off the ground.

- Note that greater-than-usual pedal pressure will be required to operate the brakes, since the vacuum servo unit is only operational with the engine running.

On models with power steering, greater-than-usual steering effort will also be required.

The driver of the car being towed must keep the tow-rope taut at all times to avoid snatching.

Make sure that both drivers know the route before setting off.

Only drive at moderate speeds and keep the distance towed to a minimum. Drive smoothly and allow plenty of time for slowing down at junctions.

## Towing

## Wheel changing

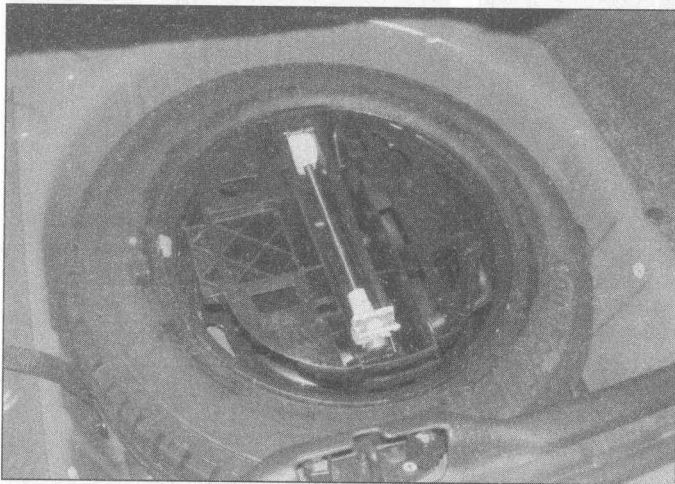


**Warning:** Do not change a wheel in a situation where you risk being hit by another vehicle. On busy roads, try to stop in a lay-by or a gateway. Be wary of passing traffic while changing the wheel - it is easy to become distracted by the job in hand.

### Preparation

- When a puncture occurs, stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Park on firm level ground, if possible, and well out of the way of other traffic.
- Use hazard warning lights if necessary.
- If you have one, use a warning triangle to alert other drivers of your presence.
- Apply the handbrake and engage first or reverse gear (or Park on models with automatic transmission).
- If the ground is soft, use a flat piece of wood to spread the load under the foot of the jack.

### Changing the wheel



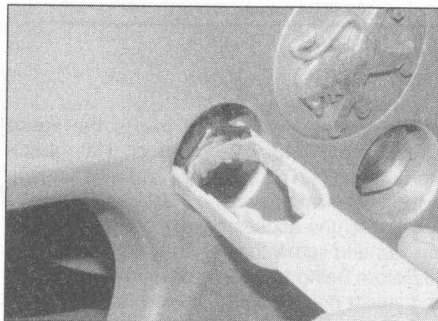
**1** The spare wheel and tools are stored in the luggage compartment on Hatchback models. Lift up the carpet/rear family seat (as applicable), release the retaining strap and remove the tool kit and jack from the centre of the spare wheel. Remove the spare wheel.



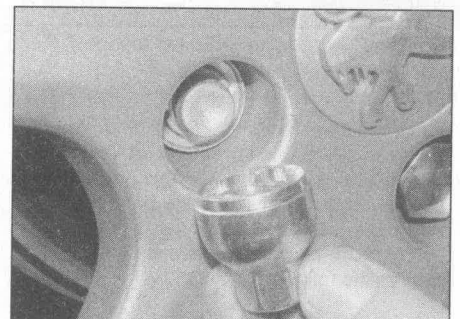
**2** On Estate models, the spare wheel and some tools are stored beneath the rear of the vehicle, whilst the remaining tools are stored behind the right-hand plastic trim in the luggage compartment. Pull up the cover in the luggage compartment floor, swivel the cover around and, using the tool supplied in the tool kit behind the plastic trim, rotate the winch bolt anti-clockwise to lower the spare wheel and jack/tool box.



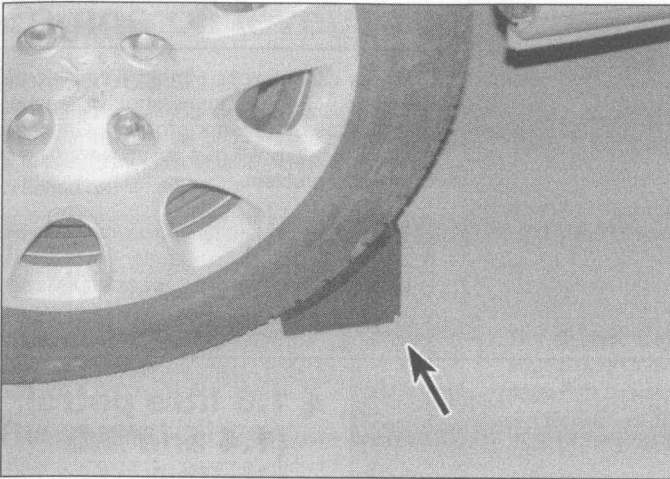
**3** Remove the wheel trim/hub cap (as applicable).



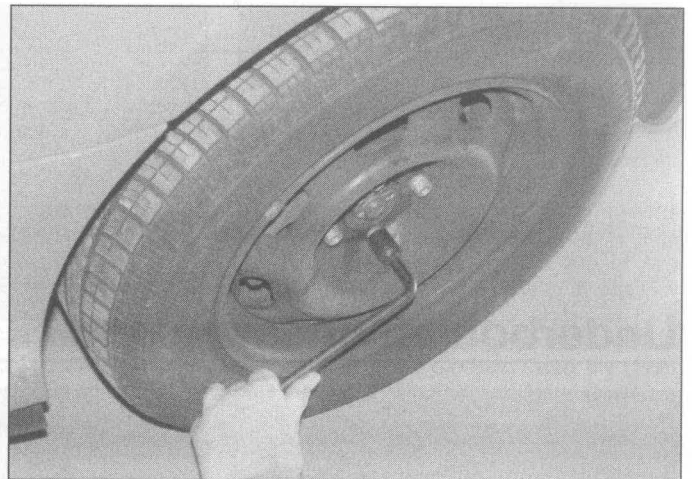
**4** On models where anti-theft wheel bolts are fitted, pull off the plastic cover using the yellow plastic tool in the tool kit . . .



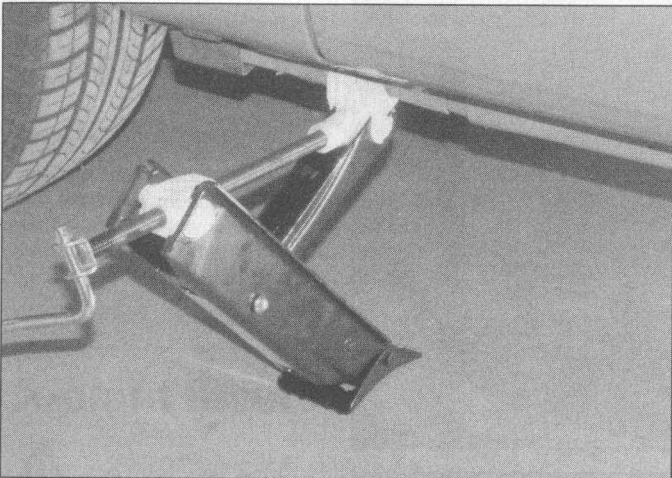
**5** . . . then unscrew the anti-theft bolt using the special tool provided - normally stored in the passenger glovebox or toolkit.



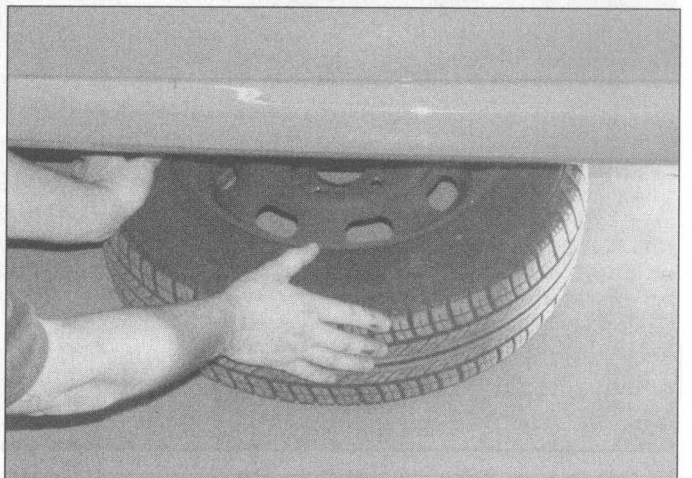
**6** Place the chock (arrowed) provided in the vehicle tool kit against the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be removed, or use a stone to stop the car rolling.



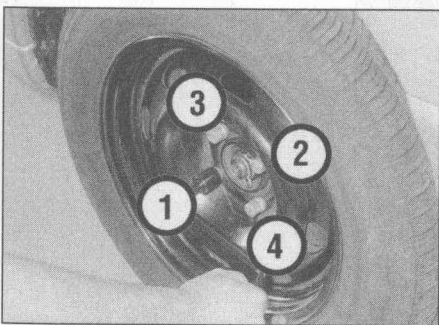
**7** Using the tool provided, slacken each wheel bolt by half a turn. On models with alloy wheels, use the special tool to undo the locking wheel nuts.



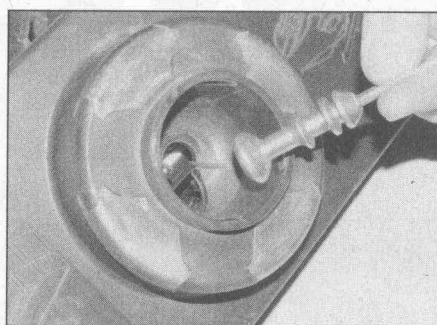
**8** Make sure the jack is located on firm ground, and engage the jack head correctly with the sill. Then raise the jack until the wheel is raised clear of the ground.



**9** Unscrew the wheel bolts and remove the wheel. Place the wheel under the vehicle sill in case the jack fails. Fit the spare wheel and screw in the bolts. Lightly tighten the bolts with the wheelbrace then lower the car to the ground.



**10** Securely tighten the wheel bolts in a diagonal sequence then refit the wheel trim/hub cap/wheel bolt covers (as applicable). Stow the punctured wheel and tools back in the boot, and secure them in position (Hatchback models) . . .



**11** . . . on Estate models feed the winch cable through the wheel, locate the cable end in the lid of the tool/jack box, and use the brace to retract the winch cable.

## Finally...

- Remove the wheel chock.
- Check the tyre pressure on the wheel just fitted. If it is low, or if you don't have a pressure gauge with you, drive slowly to the next garage and inflate the tyre to the correct pressure.
- The wheel bolts should be slackened and retightened to the specified torque at the earliest possible opportunity (see Chapter 1A or 1B).
- Have the damaged tyre or wheel repaired as soon as possible, or another puncture will leave you stranded.

## Introduction

There are some very simple checks which need only take a few minutes to carry out, but which could save you a lot of inconvenience and expense.

These *Weekly checks* require no great skill or special tools, and the small amount of time they take to perform could prove to be very well spent, for example;

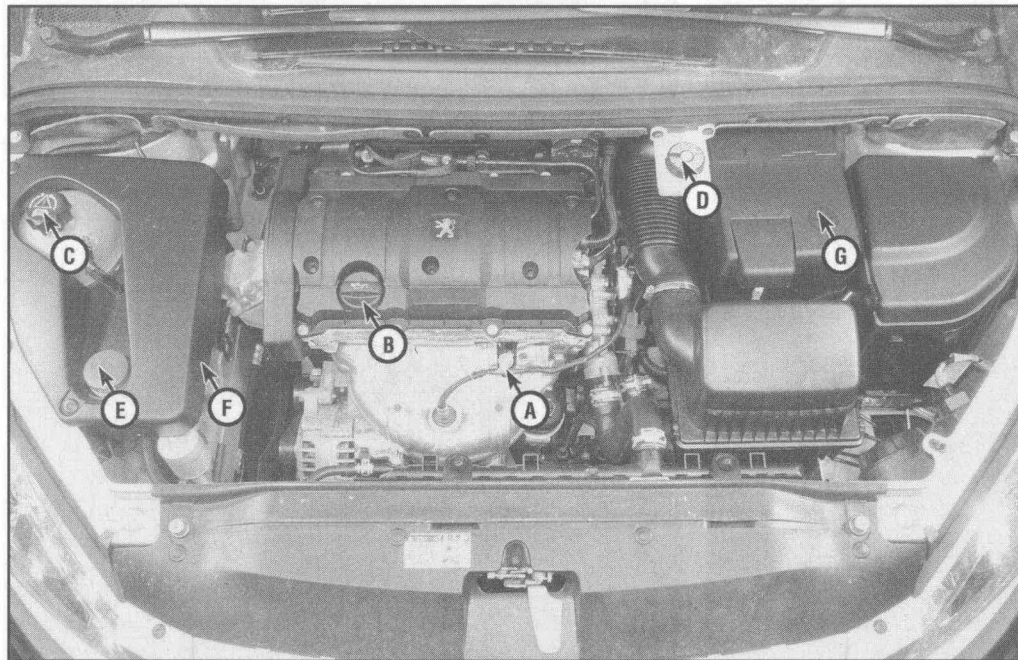
Keeping an eye on tyre condition and pressures, will not only help to stop them wearing out prematurely, but could also save your life.

Many breakdowns are caused by electrical problems. Battery-related faults are particularly common, and a quick check on a regular basis will often prevent the majority of these.

If your car develops a brake fluid leak, the first time you might know about it is when your brakes don't work properly. Checking the level regularly will give advance warning of this kind of problem.

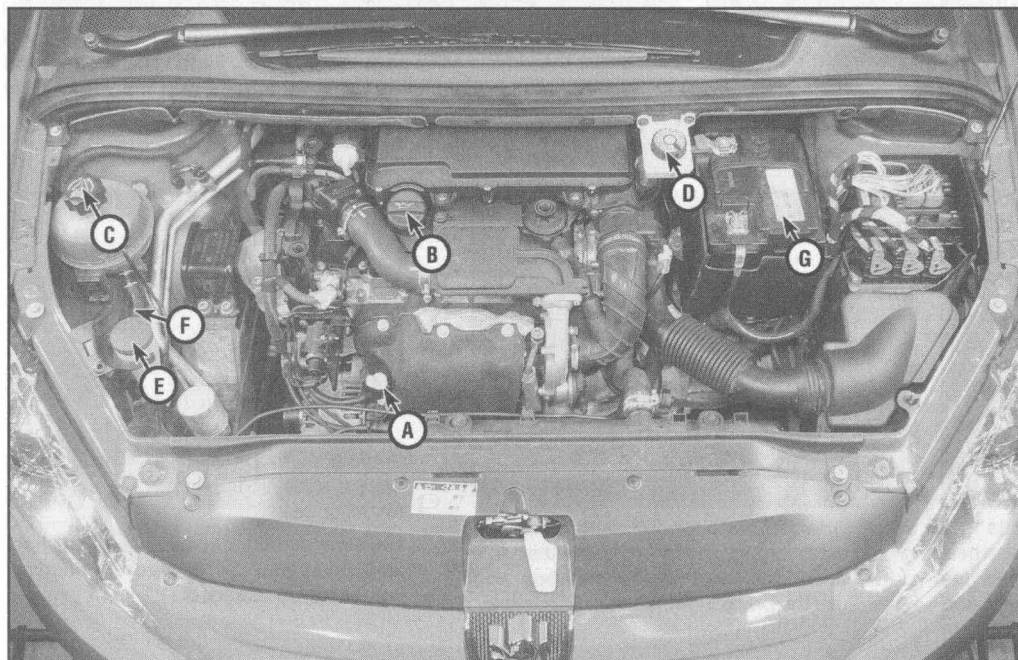
If the oil or coolant levels run low, the cost of repairing any engine damage will be far greater than fixing the leak, for example.

## Underbonnet check points



### ◀ 1.6 litre petrol (1.4 and 2.0 similar)

- A** Engine oil level dipstick
- B** Engine oil filler cap
- C** Coolant expansion tank
- D** Brake (and clutch) fluid reservoir
- E** Screen washer fluid reservoir
- F** Power steering fluid reservoir
- G** Battery



### ◀ 1.6 litre diesel (2.0 similar)

- A** Engine oil level dipstick
- B** Engine oil filler cap
- C** Coolant expansion tank
- D** Brake (and clutch) fluid reservoir
- E** Screen washer fluid reservoir
- F** Power steering fluid reservoir
- G** Battery

## Engine oil level

### Before you start

- ✓ Make sure that your car is on level ground.
- ✓ Check the oil level before the car is driven, or at least 5 minutes after the engine has been switched off.



*If the oil is checked immediately after driving the vehicle, some of the oil will remain in the upper engine components, resulting in an inaccurate reading on the dipstick.*

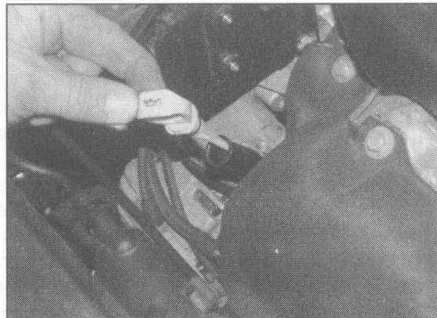
### The correct oil

Modern engines place great demands on their oil. It is very important that the correct oil for your car is used (See 'Lubricants and fluids').

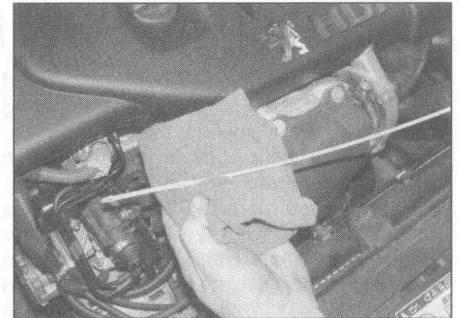
### Car Care

- If you have to add oil frequently, you should check whether you have any oil leaks. Place some clean paper under the car overnight, and check for stains in the morning. If there are no leaks, the engine may be burning oil.

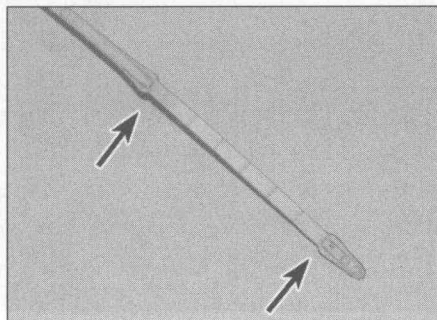
- Always maintain the level between the upper and lower dipstick marks (see photo 3). If the level is too low severe engine damage may occur. Oil seal failure may result if the engine is overfilled by adding too much oil.



**1** The dipstick is located at the front of the engine (see *Underbonnet check points* on page 0•12); The dipstick is often brightly-coloured or has a picture of an oil can on the top for identification. Withdraw the dipstick.



**2** Using a clean rag or paper towel remove all oil from the dipstick. Insert the clean dipstick into the tube as far as it will go, then withdraw it again.



**3** Note the oil level on the end of the dipstick, which should be between the upper (MAX) mark and lower (MIN) mark. Approximately 1.0 litre of oil will raise the level from the lower mark to the upper mark.



**4** Oil is added through the filler cap. Unscrew the cap and top-up the level; a funnel may help to reduce spillage. Add the oil slowly, checking the level on the dipstick often. Don't overfill (see *Car care*).

## Coolant level

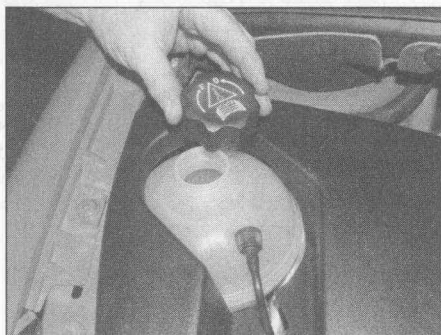


**Warning:**  
*DO NOT attempt to remove the expansion tank pressure cap when the engine is hot, as there is a very great risk of scalding. Do not leave open containers of coolant about, as it is poisonous.*

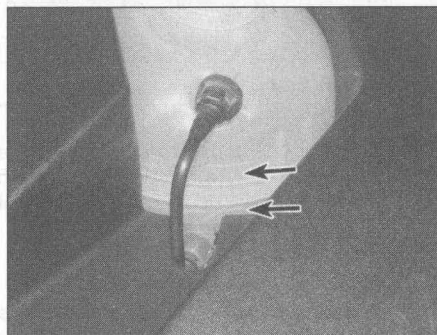
### Car Care

- Adding coolant should not be necessary on a regular basis. If frequent topping-up is required, it is likely there is a leak. Check the radiator, all hoses and joint faces for signs of staining or wetness, and rectify as necessary.

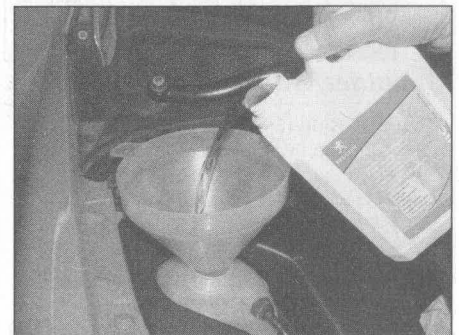
- It is important that antifreeze is used in the cooling system all year round, not just during the winter months. Don't top-up with water alone, as the antifreeze will become too diluted.



**1** The coolant level must be checked with the engine cold. Remove the pressure cap (see *Warning*) from the expansion tank which is located on the right-hand side of the engine compartment.



**2** The coolant level should be between the MAX and MIN marks on the expansion tank.



**3** If topping-up is necessary, add a mixture of water and antifreeze to the expansion tank until the coolant level is between the level marks. Once the level is correct, securely refit the cap.

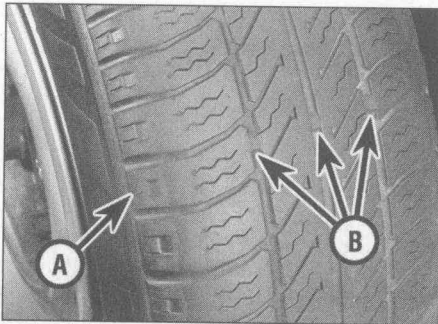
## Tyre condition and pressure

It is very important that tyres are in good condition, and at the correct pressure - having a tyre failure at any speed is highly dangerous. Tyre wear is influenced by driving style - harsh braking and acceleration, or fast cornering, will all produce more rapid tyre wear. As a general rule, the front tyres wear out faster than the rears. Interchanging the tyres from front to rear ("rotating" the tyres) may result in more even wear. However, if this is completely effective, you may have the expense of replacing all four tyres at once! Remove any nails or stones embedded in the tread before they penetrate the tyre to cause deflation. If removal of a nail does reveal that

the tyre has been punctured, refit the nail so that its point of penetration is marked. Then immediately change the wheel, and have the tyre repaired by a tyre dealer.

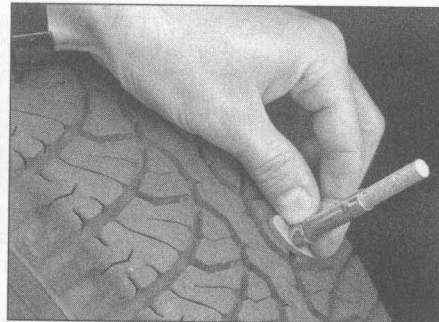
Regularly check the tyres for damage in the form of cuts or bulges, especially in the sidewalls. Periodically remove the wheels, and clean any dirt or mud from the inside and outside surfaces. Examine the wheel rims for signs of rusting, corrosion or other damage. Light alloy wheels are easily damaged by "kerbing" whilst parking; steel wheels may also become dented or buckled. A new wheel is very often the only way to overcome severe damage.

New tyres should be balanced when they are fitted, but it may become necessary to re-balance them as they wear, or if the balance weights fitted to the wheel rim should fall off. Unbalanced tyres will wear more quickly, as will the steering and suspension components. Wheel imbalance is normally signified by vibration, particularly at a certain speed (typically around 50 mph). If this vibration is felt only through the steering, then it is likely that just the front wheels need balancing. If, however, the vibration is felt through the whole car, the rear wheels could be out of balance. Wheel balancing should be carried out by a tyre dealer or garage.



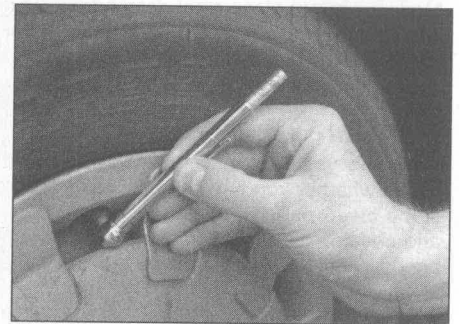
### 1 Tread Depth - visual check

The original tyres have tread wear safety bands (B), which will appear when the tread depth reaches approximately 1.6 mm. The band positions are indicated by a triangular mark on the tyre sidewall (A).



### 2 Tread Depth - manual check

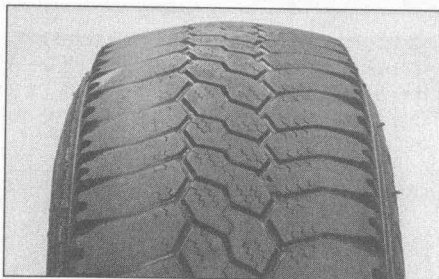
Alternatively, tread wear can be monitored with a simple, inexpensive device known as a tread depth indicator gauge.



### 3 Tyre Pressure Check

Check the tyre pressures regularly with the tyres cold. Do not adjust the tyre pressures immediately after the vehicle has been used, or an inaccurate setting will result.

## Tyre tread wear patterns



### Shoulder Wear

#### Underinflation (wear on both sides)

Under-inflation will cause overheating of the tyre, because the tyre will flex too much, and the tread will not sit correctly on the road surface. This will cause a loss of grip and excessive wear, not to mention the danger of sudden tyre failure due to heat build-up.

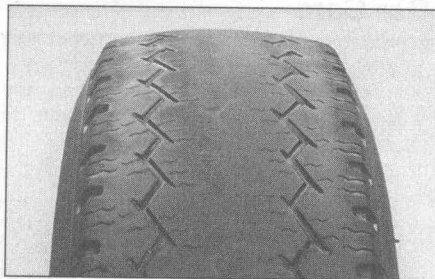
*Check and adjust pressures*

#### Incorrect wheel camber (wear on one side)

*Repair or renew suspension parts*

#### Hard cornering

*Reduce speed!*



### Centre Wear

#### Overinflation

Over-inflation will cause rapid wear of the centre part of the tyre tread, coupled with reduced grip, harsher ride, and the danger of shock damage occurring in the tyre casing.

*Check and adjust pressures*

*If you sometimes have to inflate your car's tyres to the higher pressures specified for maximum load or sustained high speed, don't forget to reduce the pressures to normal afterwards.*



### Uneven Wear

Front tyres may wear unevenly as a result of wheel misalignment. Most tyre dealers and garages can check and adjust the wheel alignment (or "tracking") for a modest charge.

#### Incorrect camber or castor

*Repair or renew suspension parts*

#### Malfunctioning suspension

*Repair or renew suspension parts*

#### Unbalanced wheel

*Balance tyres*

#### Incorrect toe setting

*Adjust front wheel alignment*

**Note:** The feathered edge of the tread which typifies toe wear is best checked by feel.

## Brake and clutch fluid level



**Warning:**

- Brake fluid can harm your eyes and damage painted surfaces, so use extreme caution when handling and pouring it.
- Do not use fluid that has been standing open for some time, as it absorbs moisture from the air, which can cause a dangerous loss of braking effectiveness.



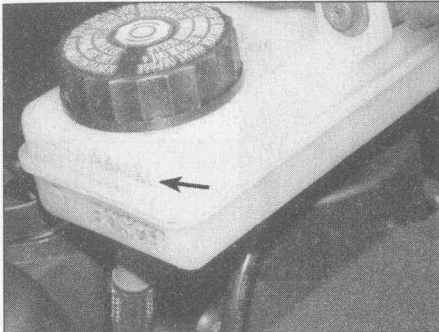
*The fluid level in the reservoir will drop slightly as the brake pads wear down, but the fluid level must never be allowed to drop below the MIN mark.*

### Before you start

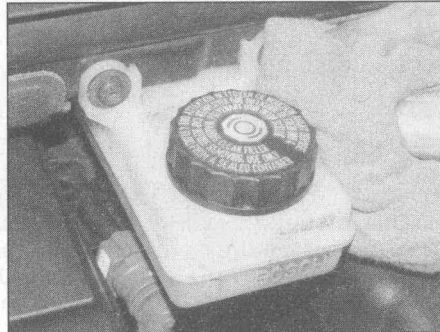
- ✓ Make sure that your car is on level ground.

### Safety First!

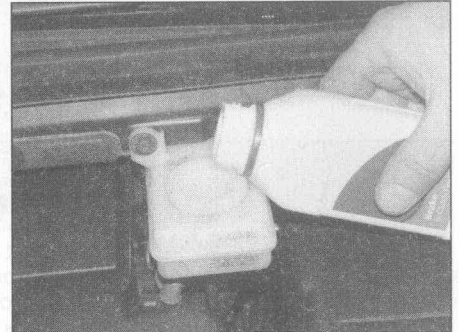
- If the reservoir requires repeated topping-up this is an indication of a fluid leak somewhere in the system, which should be investigated immediately.
- If a leak is suspected, the car should not be driven until the braking system has been checked. Never take any risks where brakes are concerned.



**1** The upper (MAX) fluid level marking is on the side of the reservoir, which is located in the left-hand rear corner of the engine compartment.



**2** If topping-up is necessary, first wipe clean the area around the filler cap with a clean cloth, then unscrew the cap and remove it along with the rubber diaphragm.



**3** Carefully add fluid, avoiding spilling it on the surrounding paintwork. Use only the specified hydraulic fluid. After filling to the correct level, refit the cap and diaphragm and tighten it securely. Wipe off any spilt fluid.

## Power steering fluid level

### Before you start

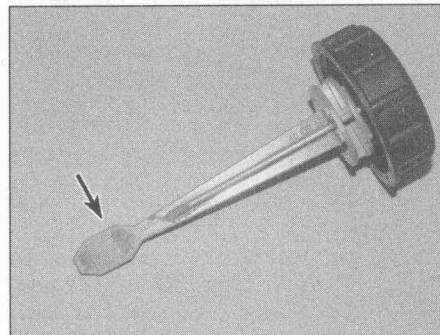
- ✓ Park the vehicle on level ground.
- ✓ Set the steering wheel straight ahead.
- ✓ The engine should be at ambient temperature and turned off.

### Safety First!

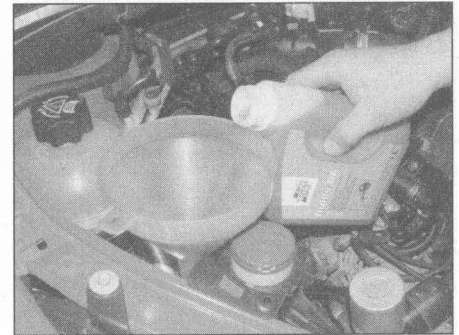
- The need for frequent topping-up indicates a leak, which should be investigated immediately.



**1** The fluid reservoir is on the right-hand side of the engine compartment. Push down the centre pins a little, prise out the complete plastic expanding rivets, release the side clip, and remove the plastic cover from the coolant and washer fluid reservoirs. Clean the area around the reservoir cap (arrowed).



**2** Unscrew the reservoir cap, and check the fluid level is up to the upper (MAX) level indicator on the dipstick.



**3** Top-up the reservoir with the specified type of the fluid, using a funnel. Once the level is between the level marks, securely refit the reservoir cap. Do not overfill the reservoir.

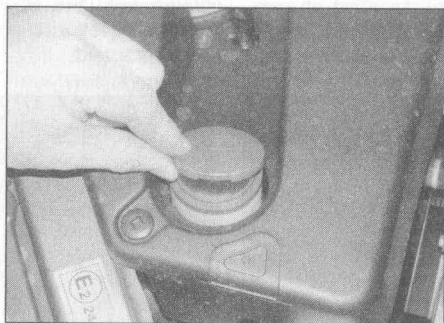


## Screen washer fluid level

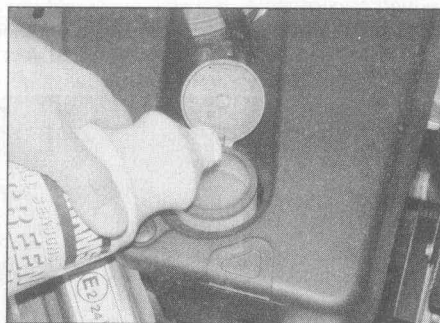
● Screenwash additives not only keep the windscreen clean during foul weather, they also prevent the washer system freezing in cold weather - which is when you are likely

to need it most. Don't top up using plain water as the screenwash will become too diluted, and will freeze during cold weather.

**On no account use coolant antifreeze in the washer system - this could discolour or damage paintwork.**

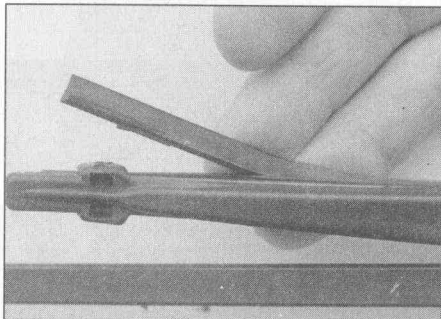


**1** The washer fluid reservoir is located in the right-hand front corner of the engine compartment. To check the fluid level, open the cap and look down the filler neck.

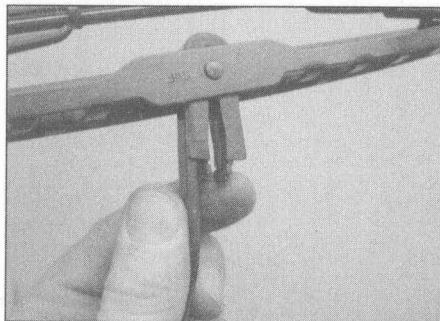


**2** If topping-up is necessary, add water and a screenwash additive in the quantities recommended on the bottle.

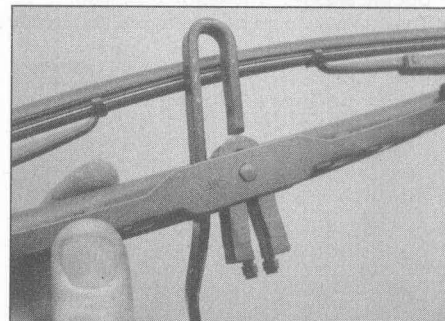
## Wiper blades



**1** Check the condition of the wiper blades: if they are cracked or show signs of deterioration, or if the glass swept area is smeared, renew them. For maximum clarity of vision, wiper blades should be renewed annually.



**2** To remove a windscreen wiper blade, turn the ignition on, then turn the ignition off, and press the wiper switch stalk down once. This places the arms in the 'service' position. Lift the wiper arm, rotate the blade on the arm and squeeze together the ends of the plastic insert.



**3** Disengage the blade from the wiper arm and remove it from the vehicle, taking care not to allow the arm to damage the windscreen. To return the blades to the park position, press the wiper switch stalk again.

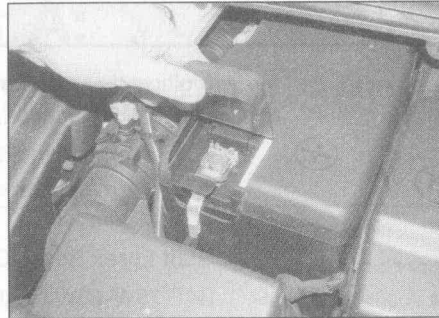
## Battery

**Caution:** Before carrying out any work on the vehicle battery, read the precautions given in 'Safety first!' at the start of this manual.

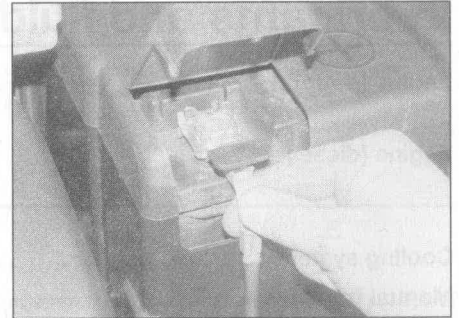
✓ Make sure that the battery tray is in good condition, and that the clamp is tight. Corrosion on the tray, retaining clamp and the battery itself can be removed with a solution of water and baking soda. Thoroughly rinse all cleaned areas with water. Any metal parts damaged by corrosion should be covered with a zinc-based primer, then painted.

✓ Periodically (approximately every three months), check the charge condition of the battery, as described in Chapter 5A.

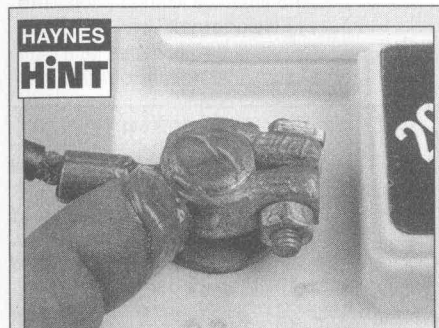
✓ If the battery is flat, and you need to jump start your vehicle, see *Roadside Repairs*.



**1** Lift the plastic cover to gain access to the battery positive terminal, which is located on the left-hand side of the engine compartment. The exterior of the battery should be inspected periodically for damage such as a cracked case or cover.



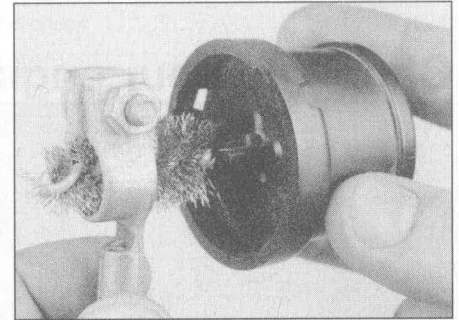
**2** Check the battery lead clamps for tightness to ensure good electrical connections, and check the leads for signs of damage.



**Battery corrosion can be kept to a minimum by applying a layer of petroleum jelly to the clamps and terminals after they are reconnected.**



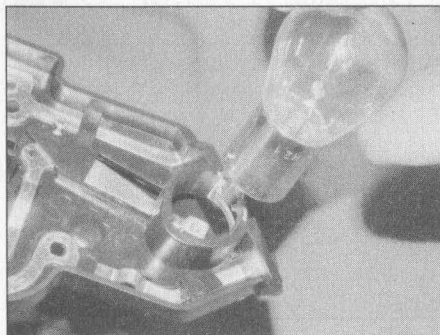
**3** If corrosion (white, fluffy deposits) is evident, remove the cables from the battery terminals, clean them with a small wire brush, then refit them. Automotive stores sell a tool for cleaning the battery post . . .



**4** . . . as well as the battery cable clamps.

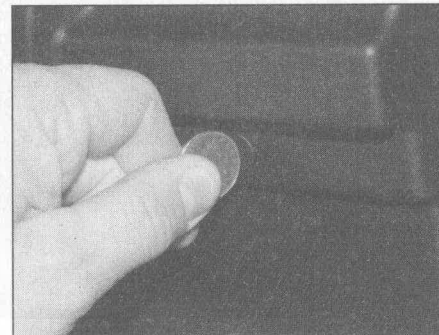
## Bulbs and fuses

✓ Check all external lights and the horn. Refer to the appropriate Sections of Chapter 12 for details if any of the circuits are found to be inoperative.



**1** If a single indicator light, stop-light, sidelight or headlight has failed, it is likely that a bulb has blown, and will need to be renewed. Refer to Chapter 12 for details. If both stop-lights have failed, it is possible that the switch has failed (see Chapter 9).

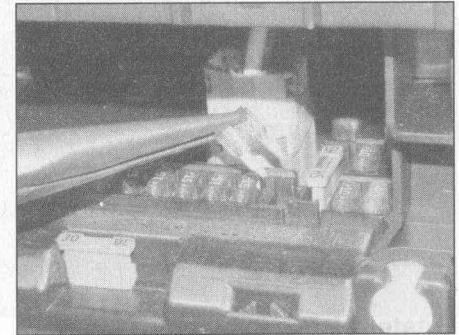
✓ Visually check all accessible wiring connectors, harnesses and retaining clips for security, and for signs of chafing or damage.



**2** If more than one indicator or tail light has failed, it is likely that either a fuse has blown or that there is a fault in the circuit. Fuses are located behind a cover in the glovebox. Open the glovebox, rotate the screw fastener anti-clockwise to lower the cover. Additional fuses and relays are located in the left-hand side of the engine compartment fusebox.

**HAYNES HINT**

*If you need to check your brake lights and indicators unaided, back up to a wall or garage door and operate the lights. The reflected light should show if they are working properly.*



**3** To renew a blown fuse, simply pull it out and fit a new fuse of the correct rating (see Chapter 12). If the fuse blows again, it is important that you find out why – a complete checking procedure is given in Chapter 12.

## Lubricants and fluids

<b>Engine (petrol)</b> .....	Multigrade engine oil 5W30 to 10W40 to ACEA A3 or API SH/SJ specification: Total Quartz or Esso Ultra/Ultron
<b>Engine (diesel)</b> .....	Fully-synthetic multigrade engine oil 5W30 to 10W40 to ACEA B3 or API CFB3 specification: Esso Ultron diesel or Total Activa/Quartz 9000
<b>Cooling system</b> .....	Gurit Essex Revko Gel2000 or BASF Glysantin G33-23F
<b>Manual transmission</b> .....	SAE 75W-80W to API GL5 specification: ESSO gear oil BV or Total Transmission BV
<b>Automatic transmission</b> .....	ESSO 4HP20-AL4 Automatic Transmission Fluid
<b>Braking and clutch system</b> .....	Hydraulic fluid to DOT 4
<b>Power steering</b> .....	Total Fluide DA

## Choosing your engine oil

Engines need oil, not only to lubricate moving parts and minimise wear, but also to maximise power output and to improve fuel economy.

### HOW ENGINE OIL WORKS

#### • **Beating friction**

Without oil, the moving surfaces inside your engine will rub together, heat up and melt, quickly causing the engine to seize. Engine oil creates a film which separates these moving parts, preventing wear and heat build-up.

#### • **Cooling hot-spots**

Temperatures inside the engine can exceed 1000° C. The engine oil circulates and acts as a coolant, transferring heat from the hot-spots to the sump.

#### • **Cleaning the engine internally**

Good quality engine oils clean the inside of your engine, collecting and dispersing combustion deposits and controlling them until they are trapped by the oil filter or flushed out at oil change.

### OIL CARE - FOLLOW THE CODE

To handle and dispose of used engine oil safely, always:

- **Avoid skin contact with used engine oil. Repeated or prolonged contact can be harmful.**
- **Dispose of used oil and empty packs in a responsible manner in an authorised disposal site. Call 0800 663366 to find the one nearest to you. Never tip oil down drains or onto the ground.**



OIL BANK LINE  
0800 66 33 66  
www.oilbankline.org.uk

## Tyre pressures (cold)

**Note 1:** The make of tyres, the sizes and the pressures for each specific vehicle are given on a label attached to the driver's door A-pillar. On models with a space-saver spare wheel (family Estates), a separate pressure is given for the spare tyre, and care must be taken not to misread the sticker; the space-saver wheel is inflated to a lot higher pressure than the standard tyres (typically 60 psi). On models with a space-saver spare wheel, note that the spare is for temporary use only; whilst the spare is fitted, the vehicle should not be driven at speeds in excess of 50 mph (80 kmh).

**Note 2:** Pressures on the label apply to original-equipment tyres listed, and may vary if any other make or type of tyre is fitted; check with the tyre manufacturer or supplier for correct pressures if necessary.

**Note 3:** Tyre pressures must always be checked with the tyres cold to ensure accuracy.

### Hatchback models (typical)

	Front (psi)	Rear (psi)
195/65 R15 tyres .....	33	33
205/55 R16 tyres .....	35	35

### Estate models (typical)

195/65 R15 tyres .....	33	35
205/55 R16 tyres .....	35	35

### SW (Sports Wagon) models (typical)

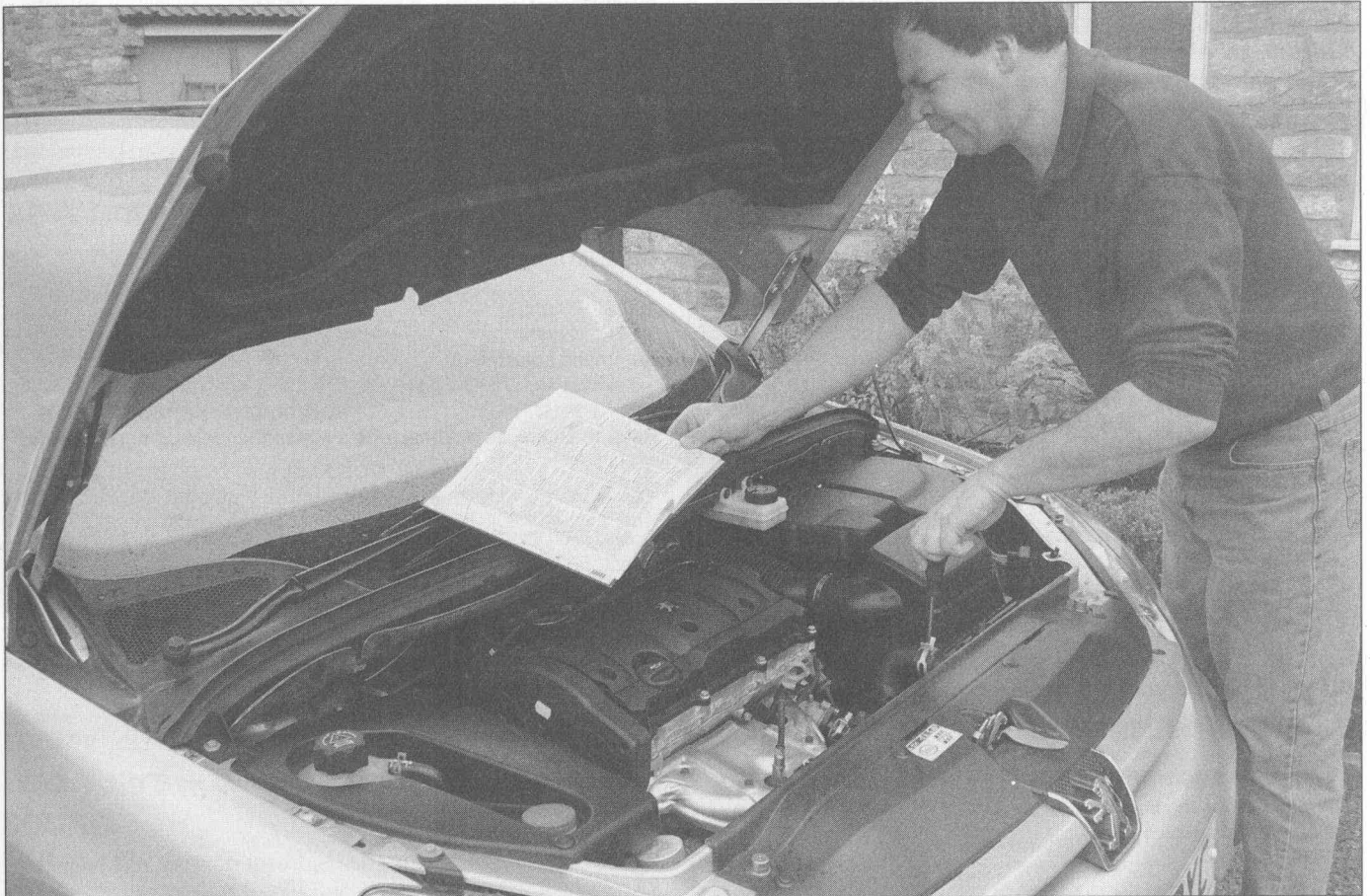
195/65 R15 tyres .....	33	35
205/55 R16 tyres .....	35	35

# Chapter 1 Part A:

## Routine maintenance and servicing – petrol models

### Contents

Airbags and seat belt pretensioners renewal .....	23	Handbrake check and adjustment .....	12
Air cleaner filter element renewal .....	18	Hinge and lock lubrication .....	6
Automatic transmission fluid level check .....	20	Hose and fluid leak check .....	4
Auxiliary drivebelt check and renewal .....	10	Manual transmission oil level check .....	19
Brake fluid renewal .....	15	Pollen filter check .....	9
Brake pad check .....	11	Resetting the service indicator .....	8
Coolant renewal .....	22	Road test .....	7
Driveshaft gaiter and CV joints check .....	5	Routine maintenance .....	2
Emissions control systems check .....	21	Spark plug renewal .....	16
Engine oil and filter renewal .....	3	Steering and suspension check .....	13
Fuel filter renewal .....	17	Timing belt renewal .....	14
General information .....	1		



### Degrees of difficulty

**Easy**, suitable for novice with little experience



**Fairly easy**, suitable for beginner with some experience



**Fairly difficult**, suitable for competent DIY mechanic



**Difficult**, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic



**Very difficult**, suitable for expert DIY or professional



# 1A•2 Servicing specifications – petrol models

<b>Lubricants and fluids</b> .....	Refer to end of <i>Weekly checks</i> on page 0•18	
<b>Capacities</b>		
<b>Engine oil</b>		
Including filter:		
1.4 litre engine .....	3.00 litres	
1.6 litre engine .....	3.25 litres	
2.0 litre engine .....	4.00 litres	
Difference between MAX and MIN dipstick marks .....	1.5 litres	
<b>Cooling system (approximate)</b>		
1.4 litre engine .....	6.0 litres	
1.6 litre engine .....	6.2 litres	
2.0 litre engine .....	6.4 litres	
<b>Transmission</b>		
Manual:		
1.4 and 1.6 litre engine .....	2.0 litres	
2.0 litre engine .....	1.9 litres	
Automatic:		
Refilling after draining .....	4.5 litres	
From dry .....	6.0 litres	
<b>Power-assisted steering (approximate)</b> .....	0.8 litres	
<b>Fuel tank</b> .....	60 litres	
<b>Engine</b>		
Auxiliary drivebelt tensions (for use with belt tensioning tool – see text):		
1.4 litre models:		
New belt .....	120 SEEM units	
Used belt .....	60 to 80 SEEM units	
1.6 litre models:		
Without air conditioning:		
New belt .....	87 SEEM units	
Used belt .....	61 SEEM units	
With air conditioning:		
New belt .....	120 SEEM units	
Used belt .....	58 SEEM units	
2.0 litre models .....	Automatic adjustment	
<b>Cooling system</b>		
Frost and corrosion protection .....	Refer to antifreeze manufacturer's concentration recommendations	
<b>Ignition system</b>		
Spark plugs:		
1.4 litre engine .....	Bosch FR7DE	
1.6 litre engine .....	Bosch FR7ME	
2.0 litre engines .....	Bosch FR8ME	
Electrode gap .....	0.9 mm	
<b>Brakes</b>		
Brake pad friction material minimum thickness .....	2.0 mm	
<b>Tyre pressures</b> .....	See end of <i>Weekly checks</i> on page 0•18	
<b>Torque wrench settings</b>		
	<b>Nm</b>	<b>lbf ft</b>
Alternator mounting bolts .....	37	27
Automatic transmission:		
Filler plug .....	24	18
Level plug .....	24	18
Auxiliary drivebelt tensioner pulley nut .....	45	33
Manual transmission filler/level plug:		
1.4 and 1.6 litre models .....	25	18
2.0 litre models .....	20	15
Oil filter cover (1.4 and 1.6 litre models) .....	25	18
Roadwheel bolts .....	85	63
Spark plugs .....	25	18
Sump drain plug .....	30	22

**Note:** This maintenance schedule is a guide recommended by Haynes, for servicing your own vehicle. For the manufacturer's maintenance schedule, check with your local dealer.

**1** The maintenance intervals in this manual are provided with the assumption that you, not the dealer, will be carrying out the work. These are the minimum maintenance intervals recommended by us for vehicles driven daily. If you wish to keep your vehicle in peak condition at all times, you may wish to perform some of these procedures more

often. We encourage frequent maintenance, because it enhances the efficiency, performance and resale value of your vehicle.

**2** If the vehicle is driven in dusty areas, used to tow a trailer, or driven frequently at slow speeds (idling in traffic) or on short journeys, more frequent maintenance intervals are recommended.

**3** When the vehicle is new, it should be serviced by a factory-authorized dealer service department, in order to preserve the factory warranty.

**4** Valve clearance checking on 1.4 litre engines (Chapter 2A, Section 9) is no longer specified as part of the routine maintenance schedule (the 1.6 and 2.0 litre engines have hydraulic adjusters). Check the valve clearances if there is any tapping or rattling from the top of the engine, or in the event of an unexplained lack of performance. The prudent owner may wish to check the clearances, perhaps at 40 000 mile (60 000 km) or four-yearly intervals.

## Every 250 miles (400 km) or weekly

- Refer to *Weekly checks*

## Every 10 000 miles (15 000 km) or 12 months – whichever comes sooner

- Renew the engine oil and filter\* (Section 3).
- Check all underbonnet components or fluid leaks (Section 4).
- Check the condition of the driveshaft rubber gaiters and CV joints (Section 5).
- Lubricate all hinges and locks (Section 6).
- Carry out a road test (Section 7).

\* **Note:** Peugeot recommend the engine oil and filter are changed every 20 000 miles or two years. However, oil and filter changes are good for the engine and we recommend changing the oil more frequently, especially if the vehicle is used on a lot of short journeys.

## Every 20 000 miles (30 000 km) or two years – whichever comes sooner

- Reset the service interval indicator (Section 8).
- Check the pollen filter (Section 9).
- Check the condition of the auxiliary drivebelt (Section 10).
- Check the condition of the brake pads (Section 11).
- Check the operation of the handbrake (Section 12).
- Check the steering and suspension components (Section 13).

## Every 40 000 miles (60 000 km)

- Renew the timing belt (Section 14).

**Note:** Although the normal interval for timing belt renewal is 80 000 miles (120 000 km), it is strongly recommended that the interval is reduced to 40 000 miles (60 000 km), especially on vehicles which are subjected to intensive use, ie, mainly short journeys or a lot of stop-start driving. The actual belt renewal interval is therefore very much up to the individual owner, but bear in mind that severe engine damage will result if the belt breaks.

## Every 40 000 miles (60 000 km) or two years – whichever comes sooner

- Renew the brake fluid (Section 15).

**Note:** A hydraulic clutch shares its fluid reservoir with the braking system, and may also need to be bled.

## Every 40 000 miles (60 000 km) or four years – whichever comes sooner

- Renew the spark plugs (Section 16).
- Renew the fuel filter\* (Section 17).
- Renew the air cleaner filter element (Section 18).
- Check the manual transmission oil level (Section 19).
- Check the automatic transmission fluid level (Section 20).
- Check the exhaust emissions (Section 21).
- Renew the coolant (Section 22).

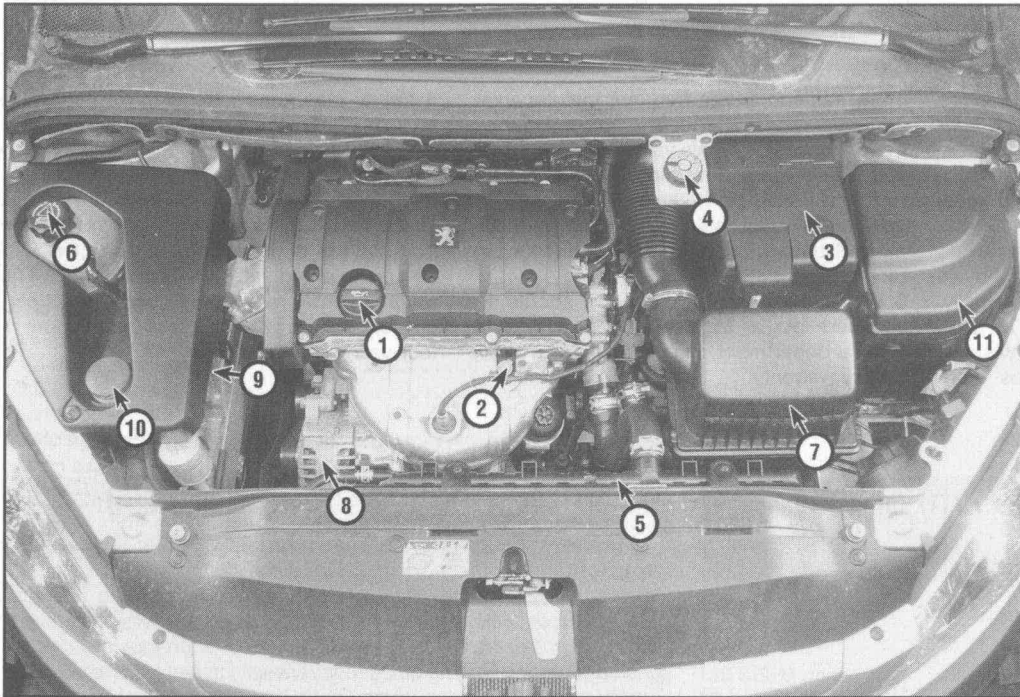
\* **Note:** Only fitted to markets where inferior quality fuel is sold.

## Every ten years

- Renew the airbags and seat belt pretensioners (Section 23).

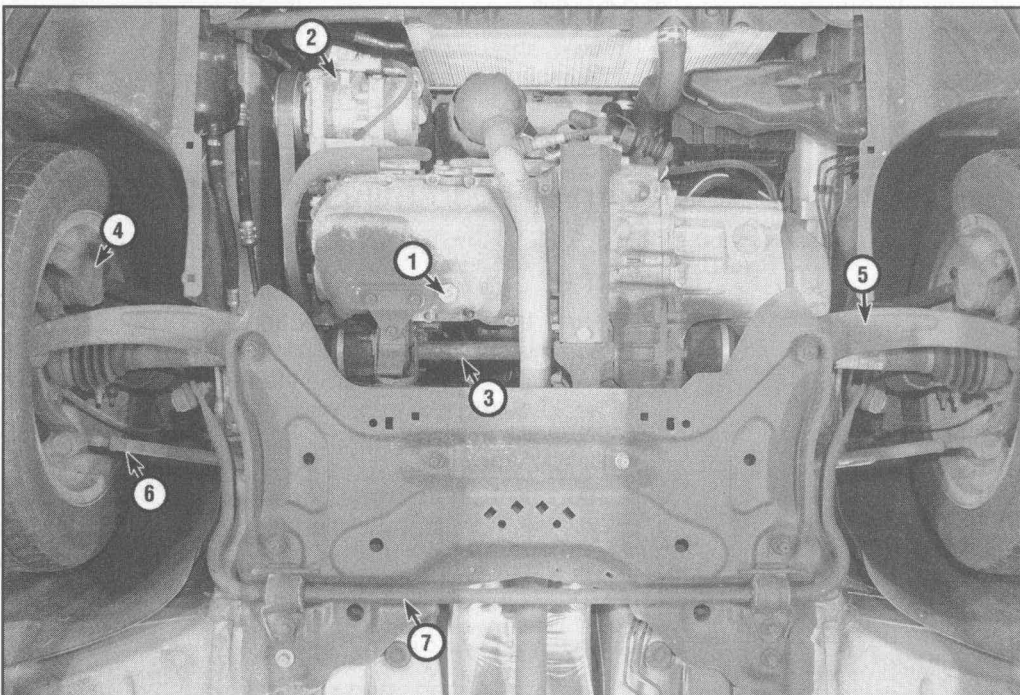
## 1A•4 Component location – petrol models

### Underbonnet view of a 1.6 litre model



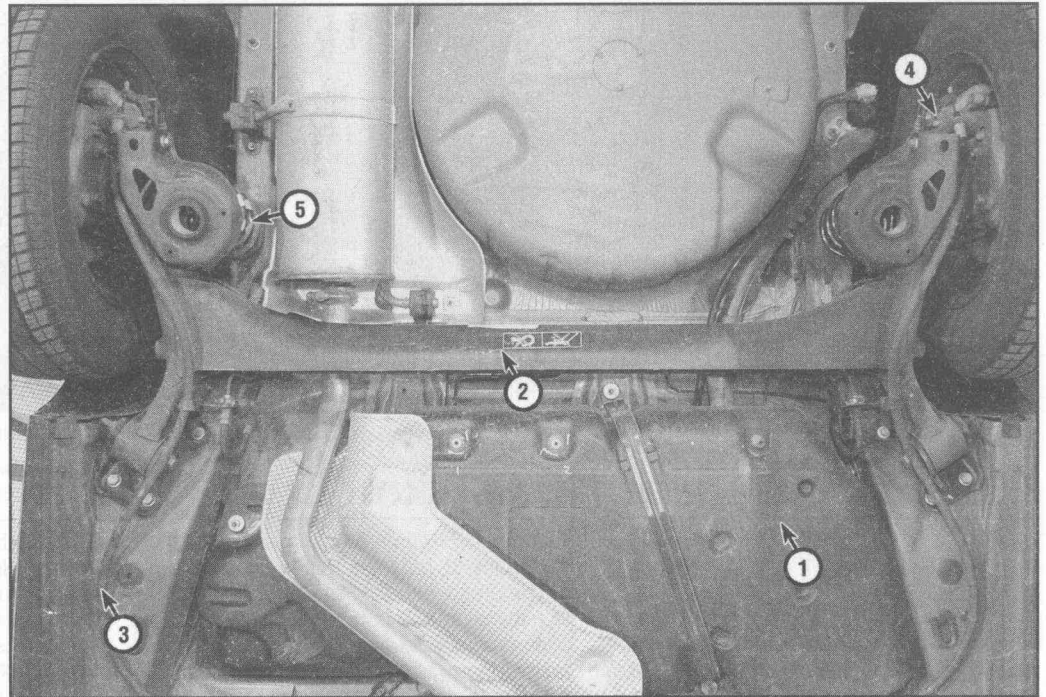
- 1 Engine oil filler cap
- 2 Engine oil level dipstick
- 3 Battery
- 4 Brake/clutch fluid reservoir
- 5 Radiator
- 6 Coolant expansion tank
- 7 Air filter housing
- 8 Alternator
- 9 Power steering fluid reservoir
- 10 Washer fluid reservoir
- 11 Fuse/electrical box

### Front underbody view



- 1 Engine oil drain plug
- 2 Air conditioning compressor
- 3 Driveshaft
- 4 Brake caliper
- 5 Suspension lower arm
- 6 Track rod
- 7 Anti-roll bar

- 1 Fuel tank
- 2 Beam axle
- 3 Handbrake cable
- 4 Brake caliper
- 5 Coil spring



## Maintenance procedures

### 1 General information

**1** This Chapter is designed to help the home mechanic maintain his/her vehicle for safety, economy, long life and peak performance.

**2** The Chapter contains a master maintenance schedule, followed by Sections dealing specifically with each task in the schedule. Visual checks, adjustments, component renewal and other helpful items are included. Refer to the accompanying illustrations of the engine compartment and the underside of the vehicle for the locations of the various components.

**3** Servicing your vehicle in accordance with the mileage/time maintenance schedule and the following Sections will provide a planned maintenance programme, which should result in a long and reliable service life. This is a comprehensive plan, so maintaining some items but not others at the specified service intervals will not produce the same results.

**4** As you service your vehicle, you will discover that many of the procedures can – and should – be grouped together, because of the particular procedure being performed, or because of the close proximity of two otherwise-unrelated components to one another. For example, if the vehicle is raised for any reason, the exhaust can be inspected at the same time as the suspension and steering components.

**5** The first step in this maintenance programme is to prepare yourself before the actual work begins. Read through all the Sections relevant to the work to be carried out, then make a list and gather together all the parts and tools required. If a problem is encountered, seek advice from a parts specialist, or a dealer service department.

### 2 Routine maintenance

**1** If, from the time the vehicle is new, the routine maintenance schedule is followed closely, and frequent checks are made of fluid levels and high-wear items, as suggested throughout this manual, the engine will be kept in relatively good running condition, and the need for additional work will be minimised.

**2** It is possible that there will be times when the engine is running poorly due to the lack of regular maintenance. This is even more likely if a used vehicle, which has not received regular and frequent maintenance checks, is purchased. In such cases, additional work may need to be carried out, outside of the regular maintenance intervals.

**3** If engine wear is suspected, a compression test (refer to Chapter 2A) will provide valuable information regarding the overall performance of the main internal components. Such a test can be used as a basis to decide on the extent

of the work to be carried out. If, for example, a compression test indicates serious internal engine wear, conventional maintenance as described in this Chapter will not greatly improve the performance of the engine, and may prove a waste of time and money, unless extensive overhaul work (Chapter 2D) is carried out first.

**4** The following series of operations are those often required to improve the performance of a generally poor-running engine:

#### Primary operations

- a) Clean, inspect and test the battery (See 'Weekly checks').
- b) Check all the engine-related fluids (See 'Weekly checks').
- c) Check the condition and tension of the auxiliary drivebelt (Section 10).
- d) Renew the spark plugs (Section 16).
- e) Check the condition of the air cleaner filter element, and renew if necessary (Section 18).
- f) Renew the fuel filter (Section 17).
- g) Check the condition of all hoses, and check for fluid leaks (Section 4).

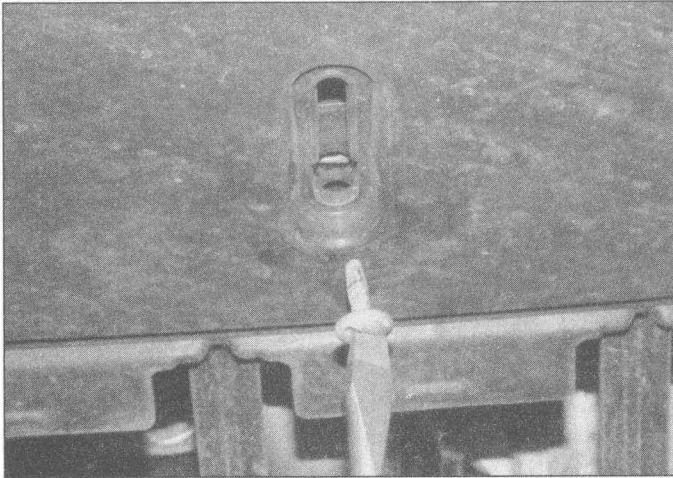
**5** If the above operations do not prove fully effective, carry out the following operations:

#### Secondary operations

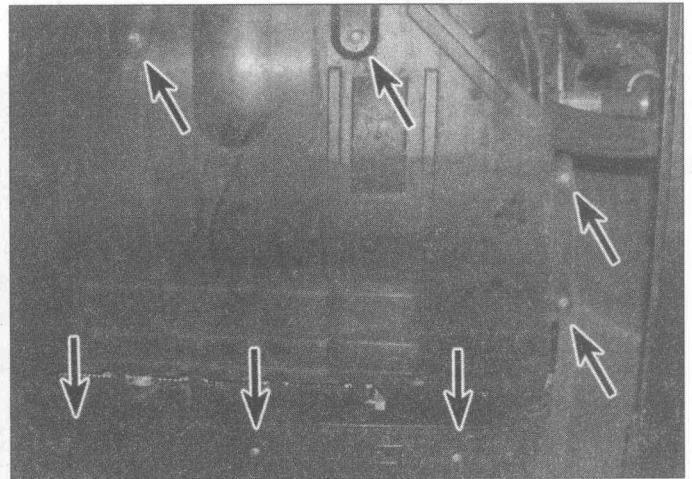
All items listed under *Primary operations*, plus the following:

- a) Check the charging system (Chapter 5A).
- b) Check the ignition system (Chapter 5B).
- c) Check the fuel system (Chapter 4A).





3.3a Remove the screws . . .



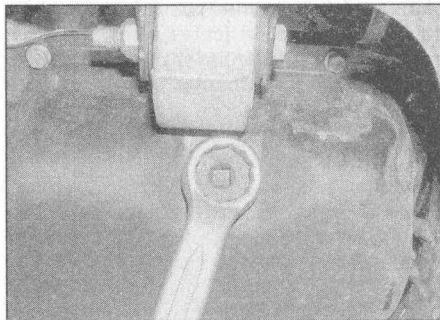
3.3b . . . securing the engine undershield (right-hand side arrowed)

## Every 10 000 miles (15 000 km) or 12 months

### 3 Engine oil and filter renewal



**Note:** A suitable square-section wrench may be required to undo the sump drain plug. These wrenches can be obtained from most motor factors or your Peugeot dealer.



3.4 Slacken the sump drain plug

**1** Frequent oil and filter changes are the most important preventative maintenance procedures which can be undertaken by the DIY owner. As engine oil ages, it becomes diluted and contaminated, which leads to premature engine wear.

**2** Before starting this procedure, gather together all the necessary tools and materials. Also make sure that you have plenty of clean rags and newspapers handy, to mop-up any spills. Ideally, the engine oil should be warm, as it will drain better, and more built-up sludge will be removed with it. Take care, however, not to touch the exhaust or any other hot parts of the engine when working under the vehicle. To avoid any possibility of scalding, and to protect yourself from possible skin irritants and other harmful contaminants in used engine oils, it is advisable to wear gloves when carrying out this work. Access to the underside of the vehicle will be greatly improved if it can be raised on a lift, driven onto ramps, or jacked up and supported on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Whichever method is chosen, make sure that the vehicle remains level, or if it is at an angle, that the drain plug is at the lowest point.

**3** Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield – where fitted (see illustrations).

**4** Slacken the drain plug about half a turn (see illustration). Position the draining container under the drain plug, then remove the plug completely. If possible, try to keep the plug pressed into the sump while unscrewing it by hand the last couple of turns (see *Haynes Hint*). Recover the sealing ring from the drain plug.

**5** Allow some time for the old oil to drain, noting that it may be necessary to reposition the container as the oil flow slows to a trickle.

**6** After all the oil has drained, wipe off the drain plug with a clean rag, and fit a new sealing washer. Clean the area around the drain plug opening, and refit the plug, tightening it to the specified torque.

**7** Move the container into position under the oil filter, which is located on the front of the cylinder block.

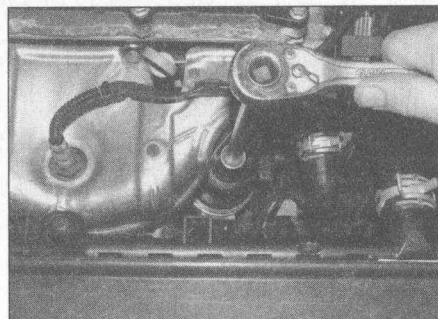
#### 1.4 and 1.6 litre engines

**8** On these engines, the filter element is contained within a filter cover. Using a socket or spanner, slacken and remove the filter cover from above (see illustrations). Be prepared for fluid spillage, and recover the O-ring seal from the cover.

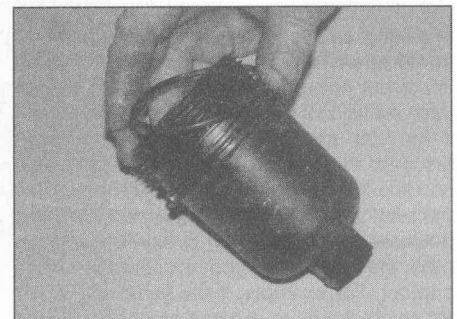
**HAYNES**  
**HINT**



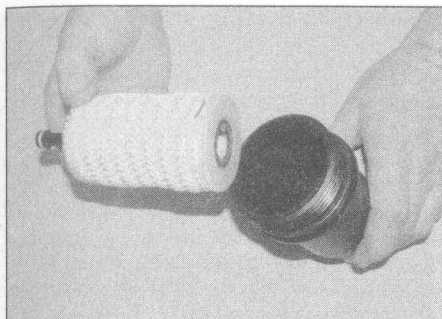
As the drain plug releases from the sump threads, move it away sharply, so the stream of oil issuing from the sump runs into the container, not up your sleeve.



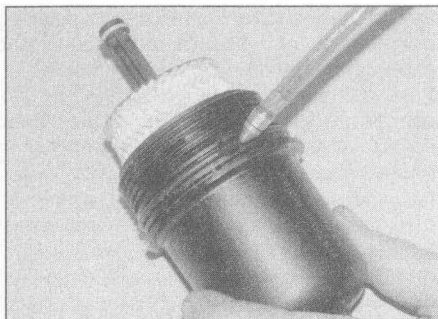
3.8a Slacken the filter cover . . .



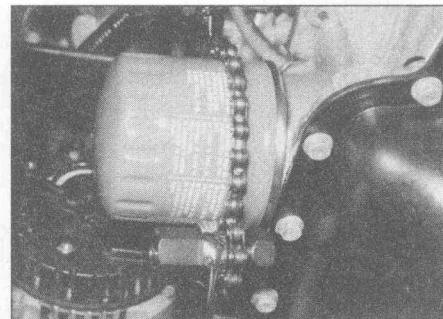
3.8b . . . and recover the O-ring seal



**3.11a** Fit the new element into the cover . . .



**3.11b** . . . and apply a little clean engine oil to the O-ring seal



**3.13** Use an oil filter removal tool to slacken the canister type oil filter

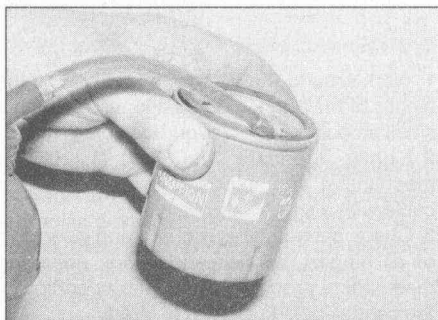
- 9 Pull the filter element from the filter cover.
- 10 Use a clean rag to remove all oil, dirt and sludge from the inside and outside of the filter cover.
- 11 Insert the new filter element in to the cover, then apply a little clean engine oil to the new O-ring seal, and fit it to the filter cover (see illustrations).
- 12 Refit the filter/cover to the housing and tighten the cover to the specified torque.

**2.0 litre engines**

- 13 Using an oil filter removal tool if necessary, slacken the filter initially, then unscrew it by hand the rest of the way (see illustration). Empty the oil in the old filter into the container.
- 14 Use a clean rag to remove all oil, dirt and sludge from the filter sealing area on the engine. Check the old filter to make sure that the rubber sealing ring hasn't stuck to the engine. If it has, carefully remove it.
- 15 Apply a light coating of clean engine oil to the sealing ring on the new filter, then screw it into position on the engine (see illustrations). Tighten the filter firmly by hand only – do not use any tools.

**All engines**

- 16 Remove the old oil and all tools from under the car, then lower the car to the ground (if applicable).
- 17 Remove the dipstick, then unscrew the oil filler cap from the cylinder head cover. Fill the engine, using the correct grade and type of oil (see *Lubricants and fluids*). An oil can spout or funnel may help to reduce spillage. Pour in half the specified quantity of oil first, then wait a few minutes for the oil to run to the sump. Continue adding oil a small quantity at a time until the level is up to the lower mark on the dipstick. Refit the filler cap.
- 18 Start the engine and run it for a few minutes; check for leaks around the oil filter seal and the sump drain plug. Note that there may be a delay of a few seconds before the oil pressure warning light goes out when the engine is first started, as the oil circulates through the engine oil galleries and the new oil filter before the pressure builds-up.
- 19 Refit the engine undershield (where



**3.15a** Lubricate the sealing ring of the new filter with clean engine oil . . .



**3.15b** . . . then screw the filter onto the engine and tighten firmly by hand

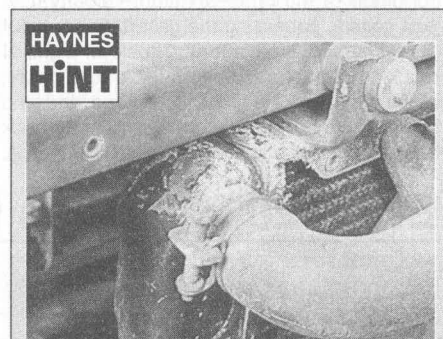
- applicable), and secure it in place with the screw fasteners.
- 20 Switch off the engine, and wait a few minutes for the oil to settle in the sump once more. With the new oil circulated and the filter completely full, recheck the level on the dipstick, and add more oil as necessary.
- 21 Dispose of the used engine oil safely, with reference to *General repair procedures*.

- any hose which is cracked, swollen or deteriorated. Cracks will show up better if the hose is squeezed. Pay close attention to the hose clips that secure the hoses to the cooling system components. Hose clips can pinch and puncture hoses, resulting in cooling system leaks. If crimped-type hose clips are used, it may be a good idea to replace them with standard worm-drive clips.
- 4 Inspect all the cooling system components (hoses, joint faces, etc) for leaks (see *Haynes Hint*).
- 5 Where any problems are found on system components, renew the component or gasket with reference to Chapter 3.
- 6 Where applicable, inspect the automatic transmission fluid cooler hoses for leaks or deterioration.

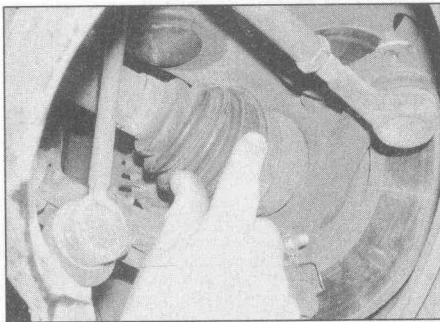
**4 Hose and fluid leak check**



- 1 Visually inspect the engine joint faces, gaskets and seals for any signs of water or oil leaks. Pay particular attention to the areas around the cylinder head cover, cylinder head, oil filter and sump joint faces. Bear in mind that, over a period of time, some very slight seepage from these areas is to be expected – what you are really looking for is any indication of a serious leak. Should a leak be found, renew the offending gasket or oil seal by referring to the appropriate Chapters in this manual.
- 2 Also check the security and condition of all the engine-related pipes and hoses. Ensure that all cable ties or securing clips are in place, and in good condition. Clips which are broken or missing can lead to chafing of the hoses, pipes or wiring, which could cause more serious problems in the future.
- 3 Carefully check the radiator hoses and heater hoses along their entire length. Renew



**A leak in the cooling system will usually show up as white- or rust-coloured deposits on the area adjoining the leak.**



**5.1 Check the driveshaft gaiters for signs of damage or deterioration**

**7** With the vehicle raised, inspect the petrol tank and filler neck for punctures, cracks and other damage. The connection between the filler neck and tank is especially critical. Sometimes a rubber filler neck or connecting hose will leak due to loose retaining clamps or deteriorated rubber.

**8** Carefully check all rubber hoses and fuel pipes leading away from the petrol tank. Check for loose connections, deteriorated hoses, crimped lines, and other damage. Pay particular attention to the vent pipes and hoses, which often loop up around the filler neck and can become blocked or crimped. Follow the pipes to the front of the vehicle, carefully inspecting them all the way. Renew damaged sections as necessary.

**9** From within the engine compartment, check the security of all fuel pipe attachments and unions, and inspect the fuel pipes and vacuum hoses for kinks, chafing and deterioration.

**10** Where applicable, check the condition of the power steering fluid hoses and pipes.

## 5 Driveshaft gaiter and CV joints check



**1** With the vehicle raised and securely supported on stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*), turn the steering onto full lock, then slowly rotate the roadwheel. Inspect the condition of the outer constant velocity (CV) joint gaiters, squeezing the gaiters to open out the folds (see *illustration*). Check for signs of cracking, splits or deterioration of the gaiter, which may allow the grease to escape, and lead to water and grit entry into the joint. Also check the security and condition of the retaining clips.

Repeat these checks on the inner CV joints. If any damage or deterioration is found, the gaiters should be renewed (see Chapter 8).

**2** At the same time, check the general condition of the CV joints themselves by first holding the driveshaft and attempting to rotate the wheel. Repeat this check by holding the inner joint and attempting to rotate the driveshaft. Any appreciable movement indicates wear in the joints, wear in the driveshaft splines, or a loose driveshaft retaining nut.

## 6 Hinge and lock lubrication



**1** Work around the vehicle, and lubricate the hinges of the bonnet, doors and tailgate with a small amount of general-purpose oil.

**2** Lightly lubricate the bonnet release mechanism and exposed section of inner cable with a smear of grease.

**3** Check carefully the security and operation of all hinges, latches and locks, adjusting them where required. Check the operation of the central locking system (if fitted).

**4** Check the condition and operation of the tailgate struts, renewing them if either is leaking or no longer able to support the tailgate securely when raised.

## 7 Road test



## Instruments and electrical equipment

**1** Check the operation of all instruments and electrical equipment.

**2** Make sure that all instruments read correctly, and switch on all electrical equipment in turn to check it functions properly.

## Steering and suspension

**3** Check for any abnormalities in the steering, suspension, handling or road 'feel'.

**4** Drive the vehicle, and check that there are no unusual vibrations or noises.

**5** Check that the steering feels positive, with no excessive 'sloppiness', or roughness, and check for any suspension noises when cornering, or when driving over bumps.

## Drivetrain

**6** Check the performance of the engine, clutch, transmission and driveshafts.

**7** Listen for any unusual noises from the engine, clutch and transmission.

**8** Make sure the engine idles smoothly, and that there is no hesitation when accelerating.

**9** Check that the clutch action is smooth and progressive, that the drive is taken up smoothly, and that the pedal travel is not excessive. Also listen for any noises when the clutch pedal is depressed.

**10** Check that all gears can be engaged smoothly, without noise, and that the gear lever action is smooth and not vague or 'notchy'.

**11** On automatic transmission models, make sure that all gearchanges occur smoothly, without snatching, and without an increase in engine speed between changes. Check that all the gear positions can be selected with the vehicle at rest. If any problems are found, they should be referred to a Peugeot dealer.

**12** Listen for a metallic clicking sound from the front of the vehicle, as the vehicle is driven slowly in a circle with the steering on full lock. Carry out this check in both directions. If a clicking noise is heard, this indicates wear in a driveshaft joint, in which case, the complete driveshaft must be renewed (see Chapter 8).

## Braking system

**13** Make sure that the vehicle does not pull to one side when braking, and that the wheels do not lock when braking hard.

**14** Check that there is no vibration through the steering when braking.

**15** Check that the handbrake operates correctly, without excessive movement of the lever, and that it holds the vehicle on a slope.

**16** Test the operation of the brake servo unit as follows. With the engine off, depress the footbrake four or five times to exhaust the vacuum. Start the engine, holding the brake pedal depressed. As the engine starts, there should be a noticeable 'give' in the brake pedal as vacuum builds-up. Allow the engine to run for at least two minutes, and then switch it off. If the brake pedal is depressed now, it should be possible to detect a hiss from the servo as the pedal is depressed. After about four or five applications, no further hissing should be heard, and the pedal should feel considerably firmer.

# Every 20 000 miles (30 000 km) or two years

## 8 Resetting the service indicator



**1** On completion of the service, reset the service interval indicator as follows.

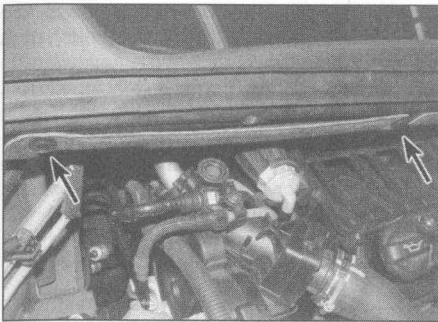
**2** With the ignition switched off, press and hold trip meter button.

**3** Turn on the ignition switch, and the display begins a countdown. When the countdown reaches 0, release the trip meter button, and the spanner service symbol in the display will disappear.

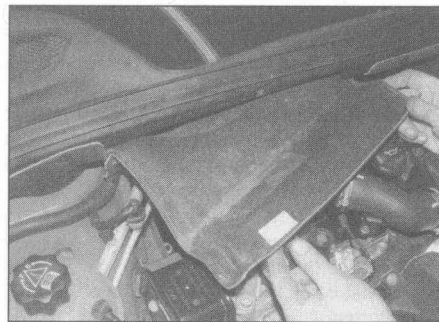
**4** Turn off the ignition switch.

**5** Turn on the ignition switch and check the correct mileage to the next service interval is displayed on the indicator.

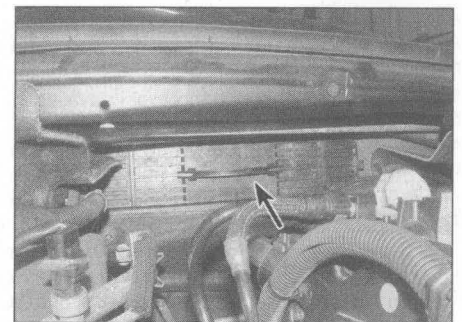
**Note:** If you need to disconnect the battery after carrying out this procedure, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes. Otherwise the display reset may not register.



9.2a Prise up the centre pins, and lever out the plastic expanding rivets (arrowed) . . .



9.2b . . . then remove the sound insulation material

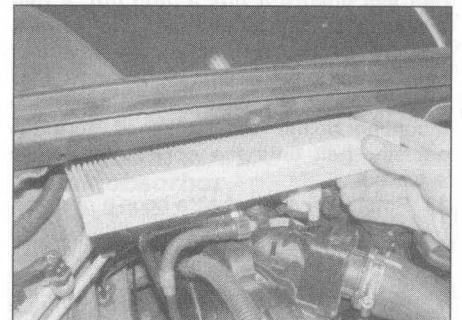


9.3 Pull the filter cover (arrowed) from the bulkhead

## 9 Pollen filter check



- 1 Open the bonnet.
- 2 Prise up the centre pins, lever out the complete plastic expanding rivets, then remove the sound insulation trim covering the pollen filter cover (see illustrations).
- 3 Grasp the filter cover and pull it from the bulkhead (see illustration).
- 4 Slide the filter out (see illustration).
- 5 Check the condition of the filter, and renew it if dirty.
- 6 Wipe clean the inside of the housing and fit the pollen filter element, making sure that it is correctly seated.
- 7 Refit the pollen filter cover.
- 8 Refit the sound insulation trim, and secure it place with the plastic rivets.
- 9 Close the bonnet.



9.4 Slide the pollen filter out

## 10 Auxiliary drivebelt check and renewal



**Note:** On models without power steering and air conditioning, Peugeot specify the use of a special electronic tool (SEEM C.TRONIC type 105.5 belt tension measuring tool) to correctly set the auxiliary drivebelt tension. If access to this equipment cannot be obtained, an approximate setting can be achieved using the method described below. If this method is used, the tension should be checked using the special electronic tool at the earliest opportunity.

### Check

- 1 Apply the handbrake, slacken the front right-hand roadwheel bolts, then jack up the front of the car and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the right-hand front roadwheel.
- 2 Remove the plastic expanding rivets (pull out the centre pin then remove the complete rivet) securing the wheel arch liner to the body then manoeuvre the liner out from underneath the wing.
- 3 Using a suitable socket and extension bar fitted to the crankshaft sprocket bolt, rotate

the crankshaft so that the entire length of the drivebelt can be examined. Examine the drivebelt for cracks, splitting, fraying or damage. Check also for signs of glazing (shiny patches) and for separation of the belt plies. Renew the belt if worn or damaged.

- 4 If the condition of the belt is satisfactory, on 1.4 and 1.6 litre models, check the drivebelt tension as described below. **Note:** On 2.0 litre models, there is no need to check the drivebelt tension (an automatic tensioner is fitted).
- 5 Refit the wheel arch liner, securing it in position with the plastic expanding rivets.
- 6 Refit the roadwheel then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the wheel bolts to the specified torque.

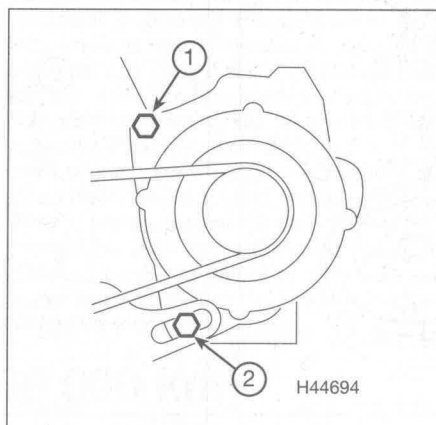
### 1.4 and 1.6 litre without air conditioning

#### Renewal

- 7 If not already done, proceed as described in paragraphs 1 and 2.
- 8 On 1.4 litre models, slacken both the alternator upper and lower mounting bolts, whilst on 1.6 litre models it is only necessary to slacken the lower mounting bolt.
- 9 Back off the adjuster bolt to relieve the tension in the drivebelt, then slip the drivebelt

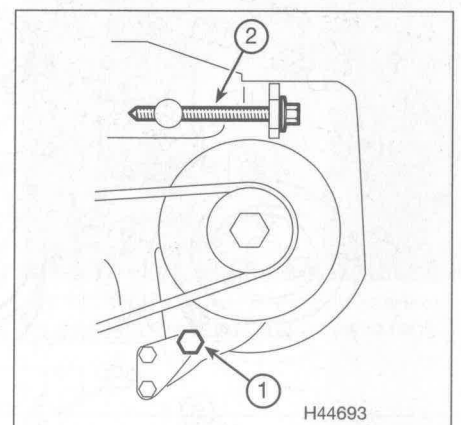
from the pulleys. **Note:** If the belt is going to be re-used, mark the direction of rotation on the belt prior to removal. This will ensure it is refitted the correct way around.

- 10 If the belt is being renewed, ensure that the correct type is used. If the original belt is being refitted, use the mark made on removal to ensure it is fitted the correct way around.
- 11 Fit the belt around the pulleys, and take up the slack in the belt by tightening the adjuster bolt (see illustrations). Tension the drivebelt as described in the following paragraphs.



10.11a Auxiliary belt routing and adjustment (1.4 litre models without air conditioning)

- 1 Alternator pivot bolt
- 2 Adjuster bolt



10.11b Auxiliary belt routing and adjustment (1.6 litre models without air conditioning)

- 1 Alternator pivot bolt
- 2 Adjuster bolt

**Tensioning**

12 If not already done, proceed as described in paragraphs 1 and 2.

13 If the special measuring tool is available, fit the measuring equipment to the 'lower run' of the belt, approximately midway between the crankshaft and alternator pulleys. The belt tension should be set to the figure given in the Specifications at the start of this Chapter.

14 If the measuring tool is not available, the belt should be tensioned so that, under firm thumb pressure, there is about 5.0 mm of free movement at the mid-point between the pulleys on the lower belt run.

**Caution: Correct tensioning of the drive-belt will ensure it has a long life. A belt which is too slack will slip and squeal. Beware of overtightening, as this can cause wear in the alternator bearings.**

15 To adjust the belt tension, with the mounting bolt(s) just slackened, turn the adjuster bolt until the correct tension is achieved.

16 Rotate the crankshaft a couple of times, recheck the tension, then tighten the alternator mounting bolt(s) to the specified torque.

17 Refit the wheel arch liner, securing it in position with the plastic expanding rivets.

18 Refit the roadwheel then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the wheel bolts to the specified torque. Reconnect the battery.

**1.4 and 1.6 litre with air conditioning**

**Renewal**

19 If not already done, proceed as described in paragraphs 1 and 2.

20 Slacken the tensioner pulley bracket bolts and rotate the adjuster bolt to release the tension in the belt, then remove the belt from

the pulleys. **Note: If the belt is to be re-used, mark the direction of rotation on the belt prior to removal. This will ensure it is refitted the correct way around.**

21 If the belt is being renewed, ensure that the correct type is used. If the original belt is being refitted, use the mark made on removal to ensure it is fitted the correct way around. Fit the drivebelt around the pulleys in the following order (see illustration):

- a) Air conditioning compressor.
- b) Crankshaft.
- c) Alternator.
- d) Idler roller
- e) Tensioner pulley.

22 Ensure that the ribs on the belt are correctly engaged with the grooves in the pulleys, and that the drivebelt is correctly routed. Tension the belt as follows.

**Tensioning**

23 If not already done, proceed as described in paragraphs 1 and 2.

24 If the special measuring tool is available, fit the measuring equipment to the belt, approximately midway between the crankshaft and air conditioning compressor pulleys. Check the belt tension is as given in the Specifications at the start of this Chapter.

25 If the measuring tool is not available, the belt should be tensioned so that, under firm thumb pressure, there is about 5.0 mm of free movement at the mid-point between the crankshaft and air conditioning compressor pulleys.

**Caution: Correct tensioning of the drive-belt will ensure it has a long life. A belt which is too slack will slip and squeal. Beware of overtightening, as this can cause wear in the alternator bearings.**

26 To adjust the tension, rotate the adjuster bolt until the correct tension is achieved. Once the belt is correctly tensioned, tighten

the tensioner pulley bracket bolts to the specified torque. Rotate the crankshaft a couple of times and recheck the tension.

27 When the belt is correctly tensioned, refit the wheel arch liner, securing it in position with the plastic expanding rivets.

28 Refit the roadwheel then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the wheel bolts to the specified torque. Reconnect the battery.

**2.0 litre**

**Removal**

29 If not already done, proceed as described in paragraphs 1 and 2.

30 Move the tensioner pulley away from the drivebelt, using a spanner on the tensioner pulley retaining nut. Rotate the tensioner pulley anti-clockwise away from the belt.

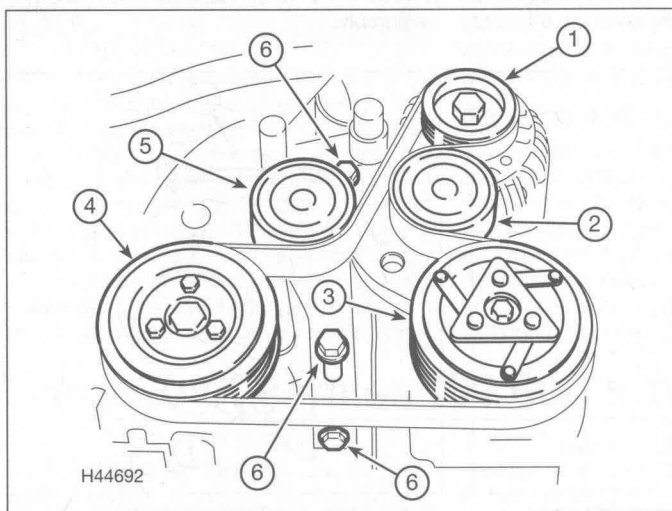
**Note: The tensioner pulley has a left-hand thread, so it will not slacken when releasing the tension on the belt.**

31 Once the tension is released, disengage the belt from all the pulleys, noting its correct routing. Remove the drivebelt from the engine. **Note: If the belt is going to be re-used, mark the direction of rotation on the belt prior to removal. This will ensure it is refitted the correct way around.**

**Refitting and tensioning**

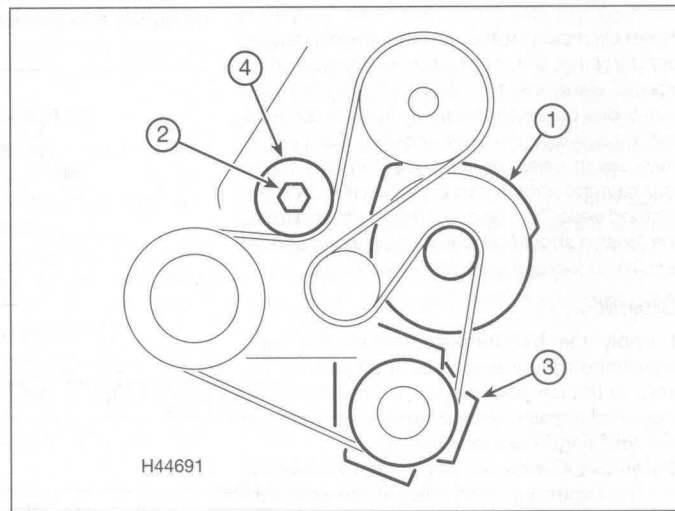
32 If the belt is being renewed, ensure that the correct type is used. If the original belt is being refitted, use the mark made on removal to ensure it is fitted the correct way around. Fit the drivebelt around the pulleys in the following order (see illustration):

- a) Alternator.
- b) Idler pulleys
- c) Air conditioning compressor (where applicable).
- d) Crankshaft.
- e) Automatic tensioner pulley.



**10.21 Auxiliary belt routing and adjustment (1.4 and 1.6 litre models with air conditioning)**

- 1 Alternator pulley
- 2 Idler pulley
- 3 Compressor pulley
- 4 Crankshaft pulley
- 5 Tensioner pulley
- 6 Tensioner bolts



**10.32 Auxiliary belt routing and adjustment (2.0 litre models with air conditioning)**

- 1 Alternator
- 2 Tensioner pulley bolt
- 3 Compressor
- 4 Tensioner pulley

33 Ensure that the ribs on the belt are correctly engaged with the grooves in the pulleys

**Caution: Do not allow the tensioner pulley to spring forcefully onto the belt as this could result in damage.**

34 Refit the wheel arch liner, securing it in position with the retaining plastic expanding rivets.

35 Refit the roadwheel then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the wheel bolts to the specified torque.

## 11 Brake pad check



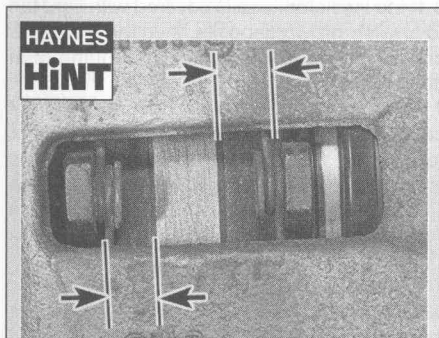
1 Slacken the front roadwheel bolts. Firmly apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the car and support it securely on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the front roadwheels.

2 For a quick check, the pad thickness can be carried out via the inspection hole on the front caliper (see **Haynes Hint**). Using a steel rule, measure the thickness of the pad friction material. This must not be less than the specified minimum given in the Specifications.

3 For a comprehensive check, the brake pads should be removed and cleaned. The operation of the caliper can then be checked, and the brake disc itself can be fully examined on both sides. Refer to Chapter 9 for details.

4 If any pad's friction material is worn to the specified minimum thickness or less, all four pads must be renewed as a set. Refer to Chapter 9 for details.

5 On completion, refit the roadwheels then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the wheel bolts to the specified torque.



**HAYNES HINT**  
For a quick check, the thickness of the friction material on each brake pad can be measured through the aperture in the caliper body.

6 Slacken the rear roadwheel bolts. Jack up the rear of the car and support it securely on axle stands. Remove the rear roadwheels. Repeat the procedure described in Paragraphs 2 to 5 on the rear brake pads.

## 12 Handbrake check and adjustment

1 The handbrake should be fully applied before 8 clicks can be heard from the lever ratchet mechanism. Check and, if necessary, adjust the handbrake as described in Chapter 9.

## 13 Steering and suspension check



### Front suspension and steering

1 Raise the front of the vehicle, and securely support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*).

2 Visually inspect the balljoint dust covers and the steering gear gaiters for splits, chafing or deterioration. Any wear of these components will cause loss of lubricant, together with dirt and water entry, resulting in rapid deterioration of the balljoints or steering gear.

3 Check the power steering fluid pipes/hoses for chafing or deterioration, and the pipe and hose unions for fluid leaks. Also check for signs of fluid leakage under pressure from the steering gear rubber gaiters, which would indicate failed fluid seals within the steering gear.

4 Grasp the roadwheel at the 12 o'clock and 6 o'clock positions, and try to rock it (see **illustration**). Very slight free play may be felt, but if the movement is appreciable, further investigation is necessary to determine the source. Continue rocking the wheel while an assistant depresses the footbrake. If the movement is now eliminated or significantly reduced, it is likely that the hub bearings are at fault. If the free play is still evident with the footbrake depressed, then there is wear in the suspension joints or mountings.

5 Now grasp the wheel at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions, and try to rock it as before. Any movement felt now may again be caused by wear in the hub bearings or the steering track rod balljoints. If the inner or outer balljoint is worn, the visual movement will be obvious.

6 Using a large screwdriver or flat bar, check for wear in the suspension mounting bushes by levering between the relevant suspension component and its attachment point. Some movement is to be expected as the mountings are made of rubber, but excessive wear should be obvious. Also check the condition of any visible rubber bushes, looking for splits, cracks or contamination of the rubber.

7 With the car standing on its wheels, have an assistant turn the steering wheel back-and-forth about an eighth of a turn each way. There should be very little, if any, lost movement between the steering wheel and roadwheels. If this is not the case, closely observe the joints and mountings previously described, but in addition, check the steering column universal joints for wear, and the steering gear itself.

### Suspension strut/shock absorber

8 Check for any signs of fluid leakage around the suspension strut/shock absorber body, or from the rubber gaiter around the piston rod. Should any fluid be noticed, the suspension strut/shock absorber is defective internally, and should be renewed. **Note:** *Suspension struts/shock absorbers should always be renewed in pairs on the same axle, or the handling of the vehicle will be adversely affected.*

9 The efficiency of the suspension strut/shock absorber may be checked by bouncing the vehicle at each corner. Generally speaking, the body will return to its normal position and stop after being depressed. If it rises and returns on a rebound, the suspension strut/shock absorber is probably suspect. Examine also the suspension strut/shock absorber upper and lower mountings for any signs of wear.



13.4 Check for wear in the hub bearings by grasping the wheel and trying to rock it

## Every 40 000 miles (60 000 km)

### 14 Timing belt renewal

1 Refer to Chapter 2A or 2B, as applicable.

## Every 40 000 miles (60 000 km) or two years

### 15 Brake fluid renewal



**Warning:** Brake hydraulic fluid can harm your eyes and damage painted surfaces, so use extreme caution when handling and pouring it. Do not use fluid that has been standing open for some time, as it absorbs moisture from the air. Excess moisture can cause a dangerous loss of braking effectiveness.

**Note:** A hydraulic clutch shares its fluid reservoir with the braking system, and may also need to be bled (see Chapter 6).

1 The procedure is similar to that for the bleeding of the hydraulic system as described in Chapter 9, except that the brake fluid

reservoir should be emptied by syphoning, using a clean ladle or similar before starting, and allowance should be made for the old fluid to be expelled when bleeding a section of the circuit.

2 Working as described in Chapter 9, open the first bleed screw in the sequence, and pump the brake pedal gently until nearly all the old fluid has been emptied from the master cylinder reservoir.



**Old hydraulic fluid is invariably much darker in colour than the new, making it easy to distinguish the two.**

3 Top-up to the MAX level with new fluid, and continue pumping until only the new fluid

remains in the reservoir, and new fluid can be seen emerging from the bleed screw. Tighten the screw, and top the reservoir level up to the MAX level line.

4 Work through all the remaining bleed screws in the sequence until new fluid can be seen at all of them. Be careful to keep the master cylinder reservoir topped-up to above the DANGER level at all times, or air may enter the system and increase the length of the task.

5 When the operation is complete, check that all bleed screws are securely tightened, and that their dust caps are refitted. Wash off all traces of spilt fluid, and recheck the master cylinder reservoir fluid level.

6 Check the operation of the brakes before taking the car on the road.

## Every 40 000 miles (60 000 km) or four years

### 16 Spark plug renewal



1 The correct functioning of the spark plugs is vital for the correct running and efficiency of



16.3 Unscrew the spark plugs

the engine. It is essential that the plugs fitted are appropriate for the engine (see Specifications). If this type is used and the engine is in good condition, the spark plugs should not need attention between scheduled renewal intervals. Spark plug cleaning is rarely necessary, and should not be attempted unless specialised equipment is available, as damage can easily be caused to the firing ends.

2 To gain access to the spark plugs, remove the ignition HT coil as described in Chapter 5B.

3 Unscrew the plugs using a spark plug spanner, suitable box spanner or a deep socket and extension bar (see illustration). Keep the socket aligned with the spark plug – if it is forcibly moved to one side, the ceramic insulator may be broken off. As each plug is removed, examine it as follows.

4 Examination of the spark plugs will give a good indication of the condition of the engine (see illustration). If the insulator nose of the

spark plug is clean and white, with no deposits, this is indicative of a weak mixture or too hot a plug (a hot plug transfers heat away from the electrode slowly, a cold plug transfers heat away quickly).

5 If the tip and insulator nose are covered with hard black-looking deposits, then this is indicative that the mixture is too rich. Should the plug be black and oily, then it is likely that the engine is fairly worn, as well as the mixture being too rich.

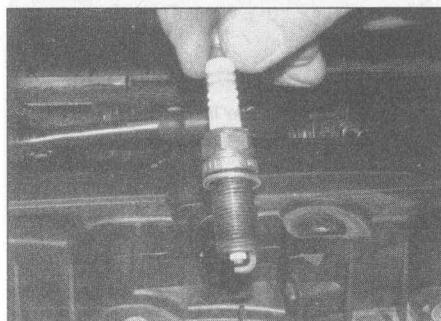
6 If the insulator nose is covered with light tan to greyish-brown deposits, then the mixture is correct and it is likely that the engine is in good condition.

7 The spark plug electrode gap is of considerable importance as, if it is too large or too small, the size of the spark and its efficiency will be seriously impaired. The gap should be set to the value given in the Specifications at the beginning of this Chapter. **Note:** The electrode gap on multi-electrode spark plugs cannot be adjusted.

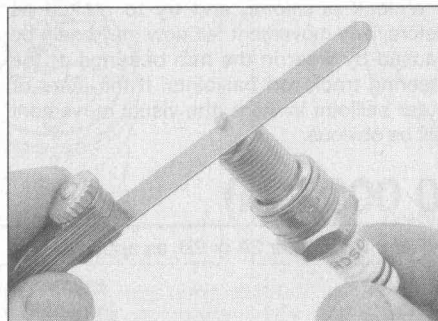
8 To set the gap on single-electrode plugs, measure the gap with a feeler blade, and then bend open, or closed, the outer plug electrode until the correct gap is achieved (see illustration). The centre electrode should never be bent, as this may crack the insulator and cause plug failure, if nothing worse. If using feeler blades, the gap is correct when the appropriate-size blade is a firm sliding fit.

9 Special spark plug electrode gap adjusting tools are available from most motor accessory shops, or from spark plug manufacturers.

10 Before fitting the spark plugs, check that the threaded connector sleeves are tight, and that the plug exterior and threads are clean (see Haynes Hint opposite).



16.4 Examine the spark plugs to check the condition of the engine – see text



16.8 Measure the spark plug electrode gap with a feeler gauge

11 Remove the rubber hose (if used), and tighten the plug to the specified torque using the spark plug socket and a torque wrench. Refit the remaining spark plugs in the same manner.

12 Refit the ignition HT coil as described in Chapter 5B.

### 17 Fuel filter renewal



**Warning:** Before carrying out the following operation, refer to the precautions given in 'Safety first!' at the beginning of this manual, and follow them implicitly. Petrol is a highly-dangerous and volatile liquid, and the precautions necessary when handling it cannot be overstressed.

**Note:** Only fitted to vehicles available in countries where inferior quality fuel is sold.

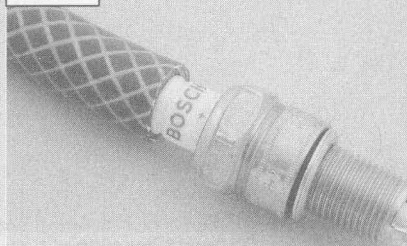
**Note:** Before disconnecting any fuel lines, depressurise the fuel system, as described in Chapter 4A.

1 The fuel filter is situated underneath the rear of the vehicle, on the right-hand side of the front of the fuel tank. To improve access to the filter, chock the front wheels, then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*).

2 Undo the nuts, prise up the centre pins a little, then prise out the complete plastic rivets and remove the plastic tray from the underside of the fuel tank. Place a container beneath the fuel filter to catch all spilt fuel.

3 Position a large rag around the fuel pipe union, to catch any fuel spray which may be expelled as the fuel pressure is released, then depress the retaining clips and slowly disconnect the fuel pipe. Disconnect the other pipe from the opposite end of the filter and allow the filter contents to drain into the container.

### HAYNES HINT



It is very often difficult to insert spark plugs into their holes without cross-threading them. To avoid this possibility, fit a short length of 8 mm internal diameter rubber hose over the end of the spark plug. The flexible hose acts as a universal joint to help align the plug with the plug hole. Should the plug begin to cross-thread, the hose will slip on the spark plug, preventing thread damage to the cylinder head.

4 Release the retaining clips and slide the fuel filter out of its holder, noting which way around it is fitted. Dispose of the old filter safely; it will be highly inflammable, and may explode if thrown on a fire.

5 Slide the new filter into position, ensuring it is fitted the correct way around; the filter will either have an arrow on its body (indicating the correct direction of fuel flow) or be stamped OUT on one end (indicating the fuel outlet end of the filter).

6 Ensure the filter is clipped securely in its holder then reconnect both fuel pipes. Ensure the pipes 'click' into position on the filter and are securely retained by their quick-release fittings.

7 Start the engine and check the fuel filter for signs leaks.

### 18 Air cleaner filter element renewal



1 Undo the retaining screws securing the lid to the air cleaner housing (see illustration).

2 Lift the lid and remove the air filter element from the housing, noting which way up it is fitted (see illustration). If necessary, slacken the retaining clip securing the intake duct to the air cleaner housing lid then remove the lid to improve access.

3 Wipe clean the inside of the housing then fit the new element, ensuring it is correctly located.

4 Locate the lid correctly on the housing and securely tighten the retaining screws. Where necessary, reconnect the intake duct and securely tighten the retaining clip.

### 19 Manual transmission oil level check

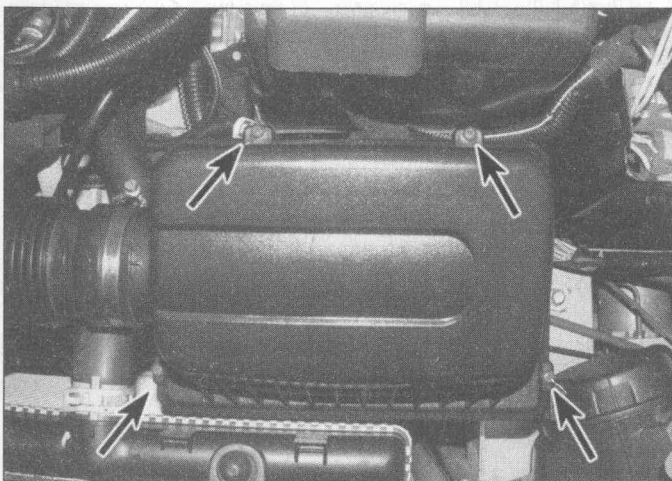


**Note:** A suitable square-section wrench may be required to undo the transmission filler/level plug on some models. These wrenches can be obtained from most motor factors or your Peugeot dealer.

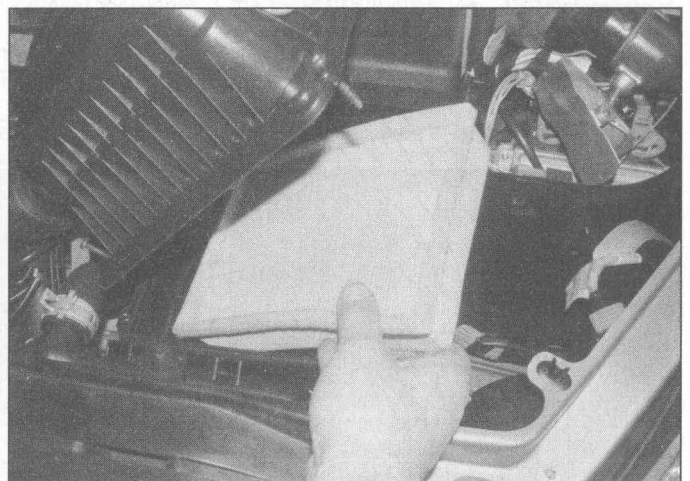
1 Park the car on a level surface. The oil level must be checked before the car is driven, or at least 5 minutes after the engine has been switched off. If the oil is checked immediately after driving the car, some of the oil will remain distributed around the transmission, resulting in an inaccurate level reading.

2 Push in the centre pins a little, then prise out the complete expanding plastic rivets, and remove the left-hand wheel arch liner (see illustration).

3 Wipe clean the area around the filler/level plug, which is on the left-hand end of the



18.1 Undo the air cleaner housing lid screws

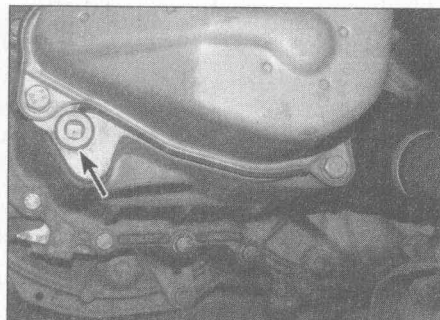


18.2 Note which way around the filter element is fitted

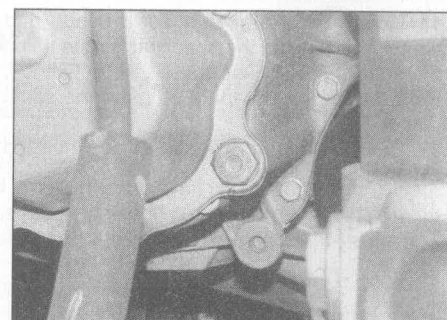




19.2 Push in the centre pin, then lever out the complete plastic rivet



19.3a Oil level/filler plug (MA5 transmission)



19.3b Oil level/filler plug (BE4 transmission)

transmission. Unscrew the plug and clean it; discard the sealing washer (see illustrations).  
**4** The oil level should reach the lower edge of the filler/level hole. A certain amount of oil will have gathered behind the filler/level plug, and will trickle out when it is removed; this does **not** necessarily indicate that the level is correct. To ensure that a true level is established, wait until the initial trickle has stopped, then add oil as necessary until a trickle of new oil can be seen emerging. The level will be correct when the flow ceases; use only good-quality oil of the specified type (see *Lubricants and fluids*).

**5** Filling the transmission with oil is an extremely awkward operation; above all, allow plenty of time for the oil level to settle properly before checking it. If a large amount is added

to the transmission, and a large amount flows out on checking the level, refit the filler/level plug and take the vehicle on a short journey so that the new oil is distributed fully around the transmission components, then recheck the level when it has settled again.

**6** If the transmission has been overfilled so that oil flows out as soon as the filler/level plug is removed, check that the car is completely level (front-to-rear and side-to-side), and allow the surplus to drain off into a container.

**7** When the level is correct, fit a new sealing washer to the filler/level plug. Refit the plug, tightening it to the specified torque setting. Wash off any spilt oil then refit the wheel arch liner, securing it in position with the screws and fasteners.

## 20 Automatic transmission fluid level check

**Note:** The transmission unit is equipped with a fluid wear sensor to inform the driver when the fluid needs renewing (the ECU flashes the Sport and Snow mode indicator lights when fluid renewal is necessary). Every time the transmission unit is topped-up, this sensor should be adjusted to compensate for the new fluid being added, however this can only be done using the Peugeot diagnostic test box. Adding fluid without adjusting the sensor will not cause any problems but will mean the sensor is giving an inaccurate reading, resulting in fluid renewal being recommended earlier than is actually necessary.

**1** Take the vehicle on a short journey, to warm the transmission up to normal operating temperature, then park the vehicle on level ground. Firmly apply the handbrake and place the selector lever in the P position.

**2** Wipe clean the area around the filler plug, which is situated on the top of the transmission, directly beneath the battery. Remove the battery and battery tray/box as described in Chapter 5A, then unscrew the filler plug from the transmission and recover the sealing washer (see illustration).

**3** Carefully add 0.5 litre of the specified type of fluid to the transmission via the filler plug aperture. Fit a new sealing washer to the filler plug then refit the plug, tightening it to the specified torque.

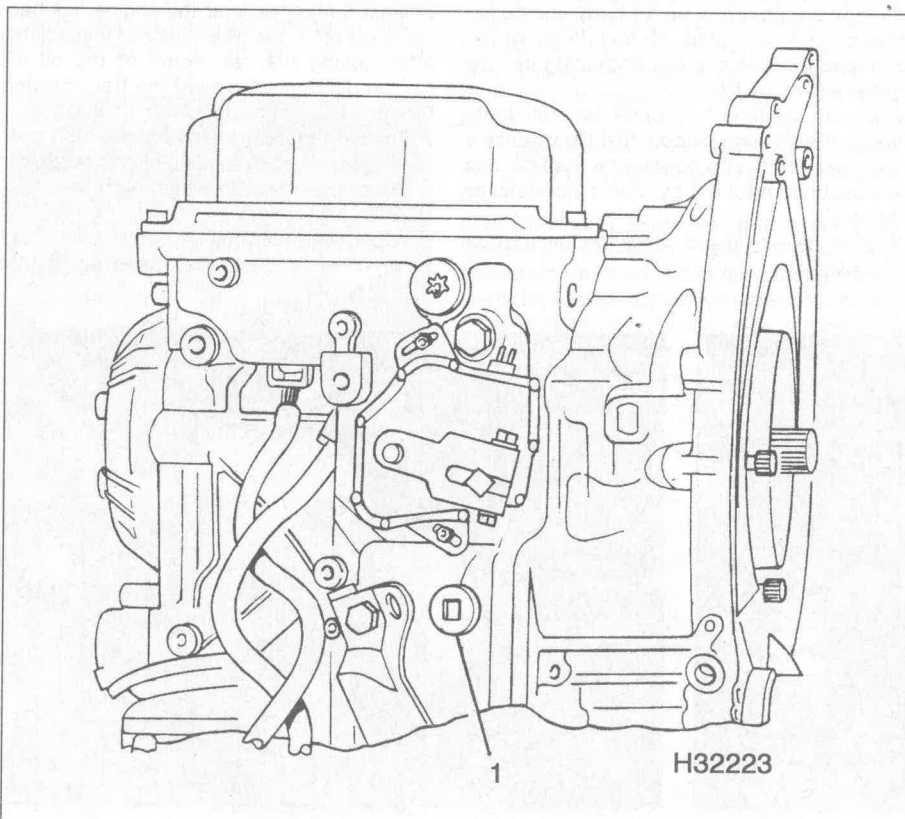
**4** Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield – where fitted (see illustrations 3.3a and 3.3b).

**5** Position a suitable container under the drain/filler plug arrangement, situated on the base of the transmission. The level plug is the smaller plug fitted to the centre of the larger drain plug (see illustration).

**Caution:** Do not remove the drain plug by mistake.

**6** Start the engine and allow it to idle. With the engine running, retain the drain plug then slacken and remove the level plug and sealing washer.

**Warning:** The fluid will be hot, take precautions against scalding.



20.2 Unscrew the automatic transmission filler plug (1)

7 If there is sufficient fluid in the transmission unit, fluid should trickle out the centre of the drain plug before slowing to a drip. **Note:** *If no fluid trickles out, or just a few drips appear when the plug is removed, the fluid level is too low. Refit the level plug then switch off the engine. Add a further 0.5 litre of fluid to the transmission then refit the filler plug and repeat the check (see paragraphs 3 to 5).*

8 Once the flow of fluid stops, the level is correct. Fit a new sealing washer to the level plug then refit the plug and tighten it to the specified torque. Switch off the engine.

## 21 Emissions control systems check



1 This check specified by Peugeot involves checking the engine management system by plugging an electronic tester into the system diagnostic socket to check the electronic control unit (ECU) memory for faults (see Chapter 4A).

2 In reality, if the vehicle is running correctly and the engine management warning light on the instrument panel is functioning normally, then this check need not be carried out.

## 22 Coolant renewal

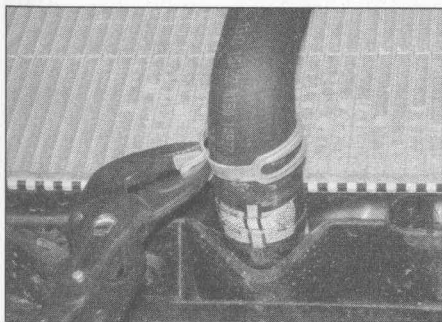


**Warning:** *Wait until the engine is cold before starting this procedure. Do not allow antifreeze to come in contact with your skin, or with the painted surfaces of the vehicle. Rinse off spills immediately with plenty of water. Never leave antifreeze lying around in an open container, or in a puddle in the driveway or on the garage floor. Children and pets are attracted by its sweet smell, but antifreeze can be fatal if ingested.*

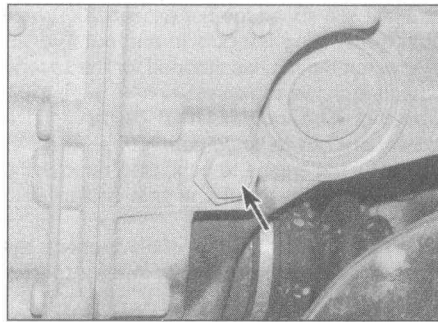
### Cooling system draining

1 With the engine completely cold, unscrew the expansion tank filler cap.

2 Remove the engine undershield (where fitted). The undershield is secured by several



22.4 Squeeze together the tabs to release the hose clamp



20.5 The level plug is the smaller plug (arrowed)

screw type fasteners. Rotate the fasteners 90 degrees anti-clockwise to remove them.

3 Position a suitable container beneath the coolant drain outlet at the lower left-hand side of the radiator.

4 Release the retaining clamp and disconnect the lower hose from the radiator, then allow the coolant to drain into the container (see illustration).

5 To assist draining, remove the cooling system bleed cap/screw (as applicable) from the heater matrix outlet hose union on the engine compartment bulkhead and, on some models, the bleed screw and sealing washer from the top of the coolant housing on the left-hand end of the cylinder head (see illustration). In order to improve access to the bleed screw on the heater union, remove the battery as described in Chapter 5A.

6 If the coolant has been drained for a reason other than renewal, then provided it is clean and less than four years old, it can be re-used, though this is not recommended.

7 Refit the radiator hose and secure it with the hose clamp.

### Cooling system flushing

8 If coolant renewal has been neglected, or if the antifreeze mixture has become diluted, then in time, the cooling system may gradually lose efficiency, as the coolant passages become restricted due to rust, scale deposits, and other sediment. The cooling system efficiency can be restored by flushing the system clean.

9 The radiator should be flushed separately



22.5 Undo the bleed screw from the heater outlet hose union (arrowed)

from the engine, to avoid excess contamination.

### Radiator flushing

10 Disconnect the top and bottom hoses and any other relevant hoses from the radiator (see Chapter 3).

11 Insert a garden hose into the radiator top inlet. Direct a flow of clean water through the radiator, and continue flushing until clean water emerges from the radiator bottom outlet.

12 If after a reasonable period, the water still does not run clear, the radiator can be flushed with a good proprietary cleaning agent. It is important that their manufacturer's instructions are followed carefully. If the contamination is particularly bad, insert the hose in the radiator bottom outlet, and reverse-flush the radiator.

### Engine flushing

13 To flush the engine, remove the thermostat (see Chapter 3).

14 With the bottom hose disconnected from the radiator, insert a garden hose into the coolant housing. Direct a clean flow of water through the engine, and continue flushing until clean water emerges from the radiator bottom hose.

15 When flushing is complete, refit the thermostat and reconnect the hoses (see Chapter 3).

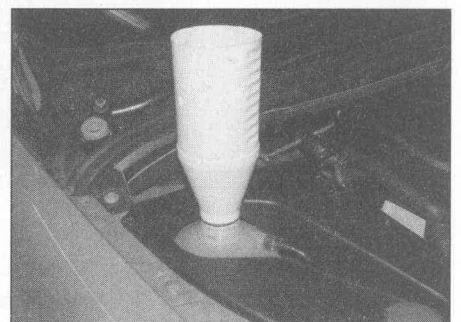
### Cooling system filling

16 Before attempting to fill the cooling system, make sure that all hoses and clips are in good condition, and that the clips are tight. Note that an antifreeze mixture must be used all year round, to prevent corrosion of the engine components (see following sub-Section).

17 Remove the expansion tank filler cap.

18 Remove the cooling system bleed screws (see paragraph 5).

19 Peugeot recommend the use of a 'header tank' when refilling the cooling system, to reduce the possibility of air being trapped in the system. Although Peugeot dealers use a special header tank which screws onto the expansion tank, the same effect can be achieved by using a suitable 1.0 litre bottle, with a seal between the bottle and the expansion tank (see illustration).



22.19 Use a 1.0 litre plastic bottle as a header tank

## 1A•16 Every 40 000 miles – petrol models

**20** Fit the header tank to the expansion tank and slowly fill the system whilst observing the bleed holes. Coolant will emerge from each of the bleed holes in turn, starting with the heater matrix hose. As soon as coolant free from air bubbles emerges from the heater matrix hose outlet, securely refit the cap/screw (as applicable) then watch the bleed hole on the coolant housing. Once coolant free from air bubbles emerges from the housing hole, refit the bleed screw and sealing washer and tighten securely.

**21** Continue to fill the cooling system until bubbles stop appearing in the expansion tank. Help to bleed the air from the system by repeatedly squeezing the radiator bottom hose.

**22** When no more bubbles appear, ensure the header tank is full (at least 1.0 litre of coolant) then start the engine. Run the engine

at a fast idle speed (do not exceed 2000 rpm) until the cooling fan cuts in and out TWICE, then when the fan has stopped for the second time, switch the engine off.

**Caution: The coolant will be hot. Take great care not to scald yourself.**

**23** Allow the engine to cool, then remove the header tank. Wash off any spilt coolant with cold water.

**24** When the engine has cooled, check the coolant level with reference to *Weekly checks*. Top-up the level if necessary, and refit the expansion tank cap.

### **Antifreeze mixture**

**25** The antifreeze should always be renewed at the specified intervals. This is necessary not only to maintain the antifreeze properties, but also to prevent corrosion which would

otherwise occur as the corrosion inhibitors become progressively less effective.

**26** Always use an ethylene-glycol based antifreeze which is suitable for use in mixed-metal cooling systems.

**27** Before adding antifreeze, the cooling system should be completely drained, preferably flushed, and all hoses checked for condition and security.

**28** After filling with antifreeze, a label should be attached to the expansion tank, stating the type and concentration of antifreeze used, and the date installed. Any subsequent topping-up should be made with the same type and concentration of antifreeze.

**29** Do not use engine antifreeze in the windscreen/tailgate washer system, as it will damage the vehicle paintwork. A screenwash additive should be added to the washer system in the quantities stated on the bottle.

## Every ten years

### **23 Airbags and seat belt pretensioners renewal**

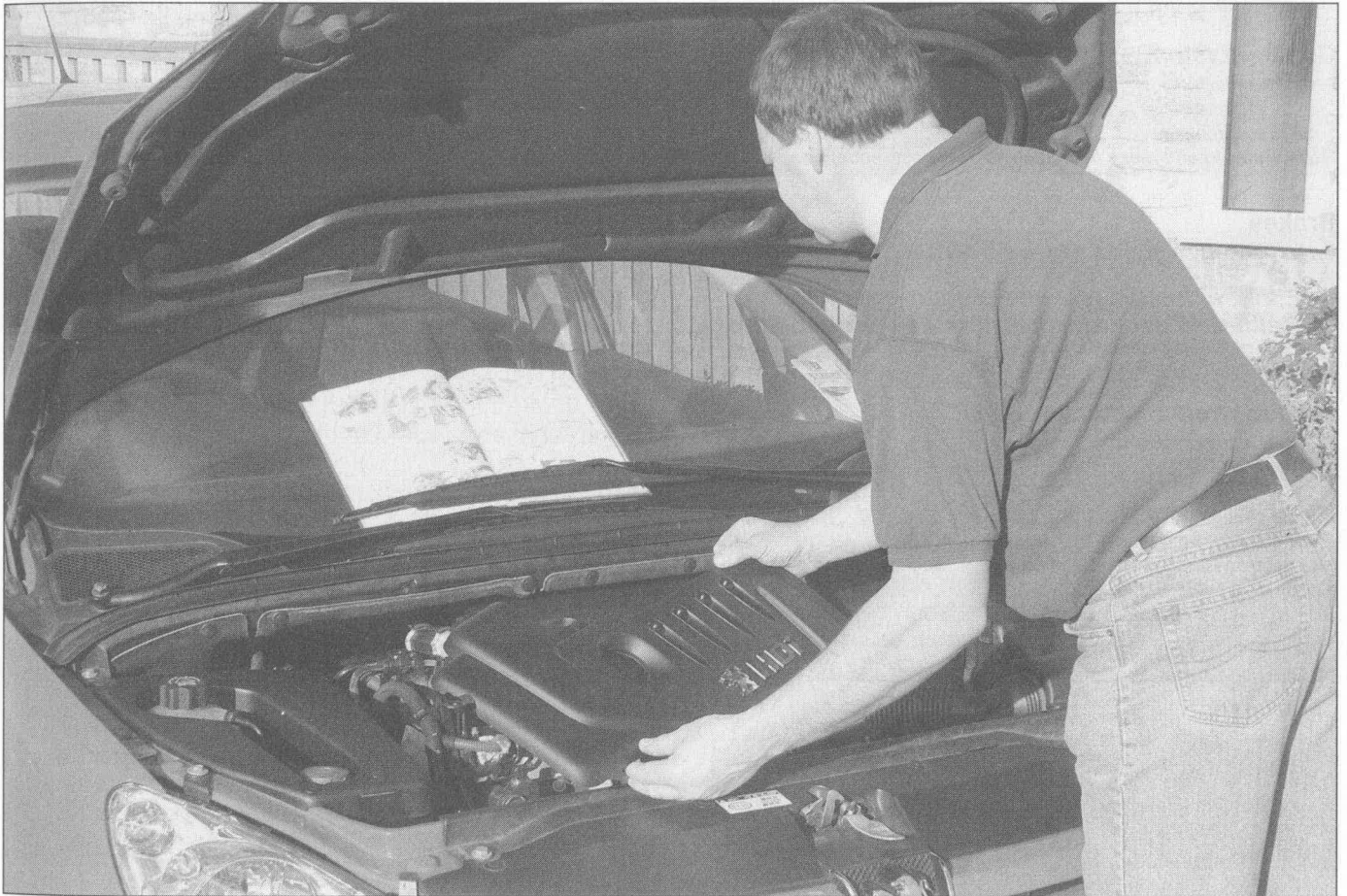


**1** Peugeot recommend that the airbags and seat belt pretensioners are renewed regardless of their condition every ten years. Refer to Chapter 12 for airbag renewal, and Chapter 11 for seat belt pretensioner renewal.

# Chapter 1 Part B: Routine maintenance and servicing – diesel models

## Contents

Airbags and seat belt pretensioners renewal .....	22	General information .....	1
Air filter element renewal .....	14	Handbrake check .....	11
Automatic transmission fluid level check .....	17	Hinge and lock lubrication .....	8
Auxiliary drivebelt check and renewal .....	13	Hose and fluid leak check .....	5
Brake fluid renewal .....	19	Manual transmission oil level check .....	16
Brake pad check .....	10	Particulate emission system check .....	20
Coolant renewal .....	21	Pollen filter check .....	9
Driveshaft gaiter and CV joint check .....	7	Regular maintenance .....	2
Engine oil and filter renewal .....	3	Road test .....	12
Fuel filter renewal .....	15	Steering and suspension check .....	6
Fuel filter water draining .....	4	Timing belt renewal .....	18



## Degrees of difficulty

**Easy**, suitable for novice with little experience



**Fairly easy**, suitable for beginner with some experience



**Fairly difficult**, suitable for competent DIY mechanic



**Difficult**, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic



**Very difficult**, suitable for expert DIY or professional



# 1B•2 Servicing specifications – diesel models

## Lubricants and fluids

Refer to *Weekly checks* on page 0•18

### Capacities

#### Engine oil (including oil filter)

1.4 litre engines	3.75 litres
2.0 litre engines	4.50 litres

#### Cooling system

1.4 litre engines (approximate)	6.0 litres
2.0 litre engines (approximate)	8.2 litres

#### Transmission

Manual transmission (approximate)	1.9 litres
Automatic transmissions:	
Drain and refill	4.5 litres
Total capacity (including torque converter)	6.0 litres

Power-assisted steering (approximate) . . . . . 0.8 litres

Fuel tank . . . . . 60 litres

### Cooling system

Antifreeze mixture:

50% antifreeze	Protection down to -37°C
55% antifreeze	Protection down to -45°C

**Note:** Refer to antifreeze manufacturer for latest recommendations.

### Brakes

Brake pad friction material minimum thickness . . . . . 2.0 mm

### Tyre pressures

See end of *Weekly checks* on page 0•18

### Torque wrench settings

	Nm	lbf ft
Automatic transmission:		
Filler plug	24	18
Level plug	24	18
Engine oil filter cover (1.4 litre engine)	25	18
Engine sump drain plug	16	12
Manual transmission filler/level plug	20	15
Roadwheel bolts	90	66

The maintenance intervals in this manual are provided with the assumption that you, not the dealer, will be carrying out the work. These are the minimum maintenance intervals recommended by us for vehicles driven daily.

If you wish to keep your vehicle in peak condition at all times, you may wish to perform some of these procedures more often. We encourage frequent maintenance, because it enhances the efficiency,

performance and resale value of your vehicle. When the vehicle is new, it should be serviced by a factory-authorised dealer service department, in order to preserve the factory warranty.

## Weekly, or every 250 miles (400 km)

- Refer to *Weekly checks*

## Every 6000 miles (10 000 km) or 12 months – whichever comes sooner

- Renew the engine oil and filter\* (Section 3)
- Drain any water from the fuel filter (Section 4)
- Check all underbonnet components and hoses for fluid leaks (Section 5)
- Check the steering and suspension (Section 6)
- Check driveshaft rubber gaiters and CV joints (Section 7)
- Lubricate all hinges and locks (Section 8)

\* **Note:** Peugeot recommend that the engine oil and filter are changed every 10 000 miles (16 000 km) or 2 years. However, oil and filter changes are good for the engine and we recommend that the oil and filter are renewed more frequently, especially if the vehicle is used on a lot of short journeys.

## Every 12 000 miles (20 000 km)

- Check the pollen filter (Section 9)
- Check the condition of the brake pads, and renew if necessary (Section 10)
- Check the operation of the handbrake (Section 11)
- Carry out a road test (Section 12)
- Check the condition of the auxiliary drivebelt, and renew if necessary (Section 13)

## Every 24 000 miles (40 000 km)

- Renew the air filter (Section 14)
- Renew the fuel filter (Section 15)
- Check the manual transmission oil level, and top-up if necessary (Section 16)
- Check the automatic transmission fluid level, and top up if necessary (Section 17)

## Every 36 000 miles (60 000 km)

- Renew the timing belt – (Section 18)

**Note:** It is strongly recommended that the timing belt renewal interval is reduced to 36 000 miles (60 000 km) on vehicles which are subjected to intensive use, ie, mainly short journeys or a lot of stop-start driving. The actual belt renewal interval is therefore very much up to the individual owner, but bear in mind that severe engine damage will result if the belt breaks.

## Every 36 000 miles (60 000 km) or 2 years, whichever comes sooner

- Renew the brake fluid (Section 19)

**Note:** A hydraulic clutch shares its fluid reservoir with the braking system, and may also need to be bled.

## Every 48 000 miles (80 000 km)

- Check the particulate emission system (where fitted on models manufactured up to November 2002) (Section 20)

## Every 72 000 miles (120 000 km) or 5 years, whichever comes sooner

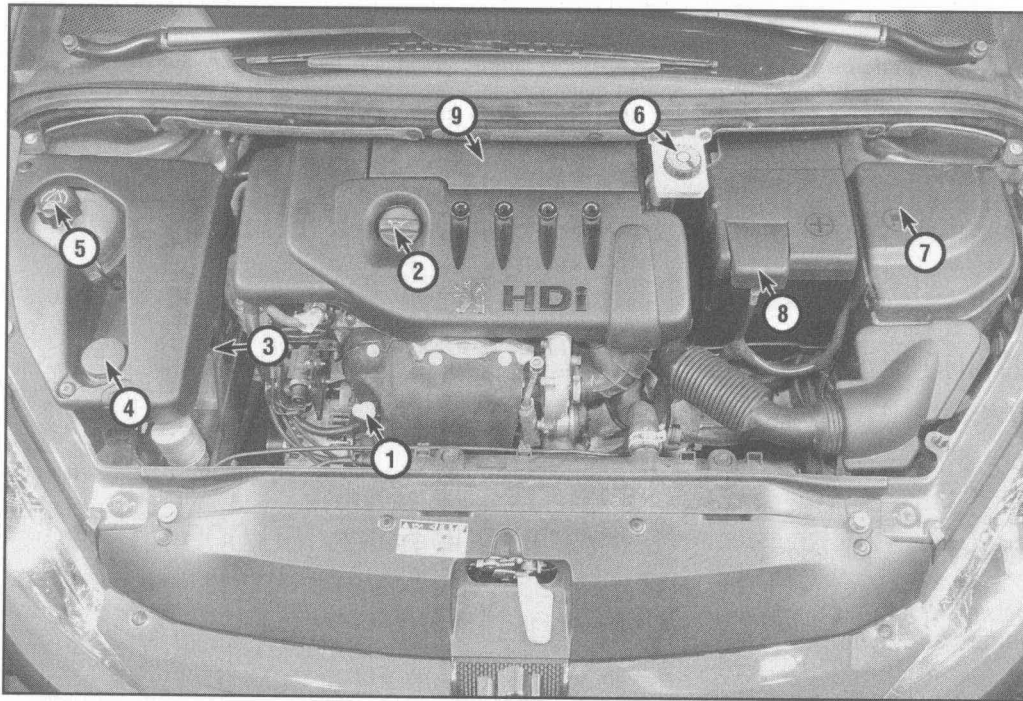
- Check the particulate emission system (where fitted on models manufactured from November 2002 – build code 9492) (Section 20)
- Renew the coolant (Section 21)

## Every 10 years

- Renew the airbags and seat belt pretensioners (Section 22)

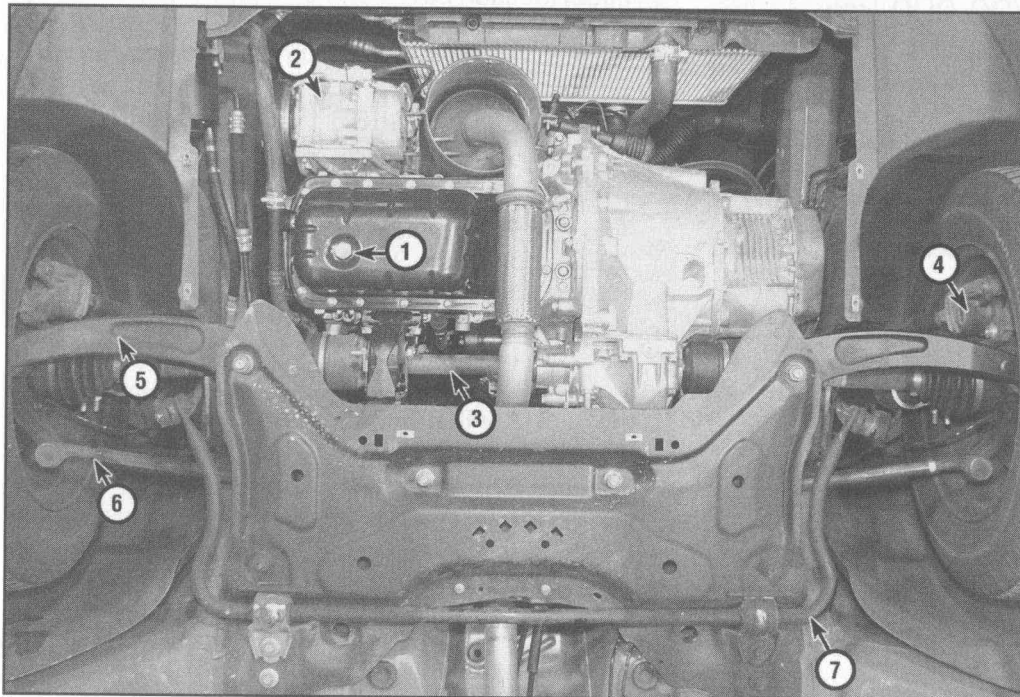
## 1B•4 Component location – diesel models

### Underbonnet view of a 1.4 litre model



- 1 Engine oil dipstick
- 2 Engine oil filler cap
- 3 Power steering reservoir filler cap
- 4 Washer fluid reservoir
- 5 Coolant expansion tank filler cap
- 6 Brake/clutch cylinders fluid reservoir
- 7 Engine compartment electrical box
- 8 Battery positive terminal cover
- 9 Air cleaner housing

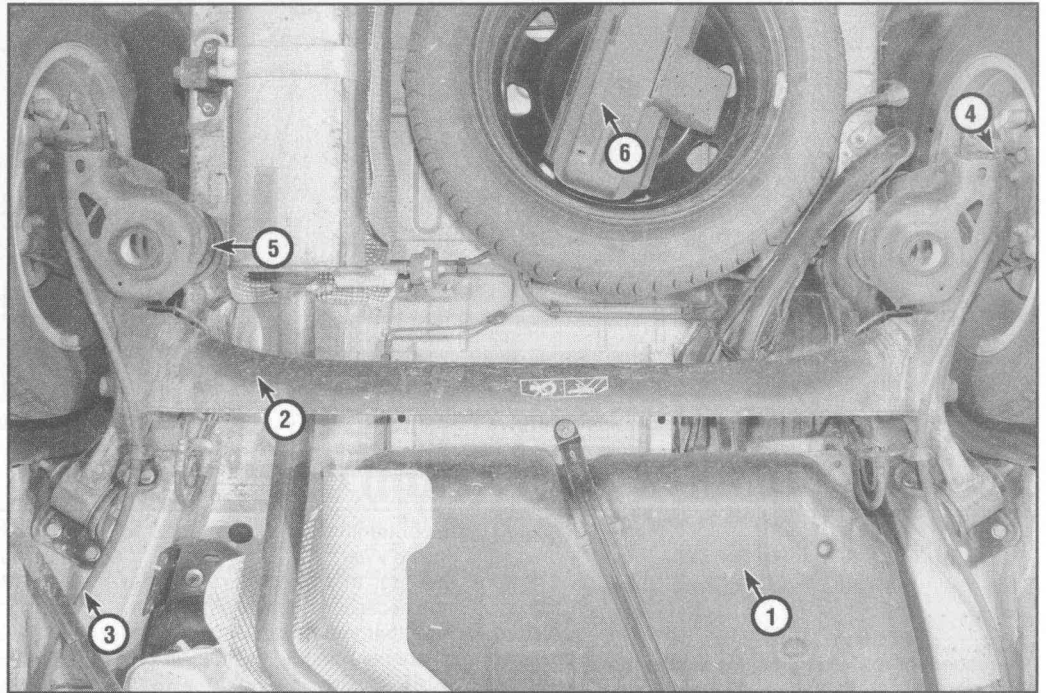
### Front underbody view



- 1 Engine oil drain plug
- 2 Air conditioning compressor
- 3 Driveshaft
- 4 Brake caliper
- 5 Lower suspension arm
- 6 Track rod
- 7 Anti-roll bar

## Rear underbody view (Estate model shown)

- 1 Fuel tank
- 2 Beam axle
- 3 Handbrake cable
- 4 Brake caliper
- 5 Coil spring
- 6 Tool kit



## Maintenance procedures

### 1 General information

This Chapter is designed to help the home mechanic maintain his/her vehicle for safety, economy, long life and peak performance.

The Chapter contains a master maintenance schedule, followed by Sections dealing specifically with each task in the schedule. Visual checks, adjustments, component renewal and other helpful items are included. Refer to the accompanying illustrations of the engine compartment and the underside of the vehicle for the locations of the various components.

Servicing your vehicle in accordance with the mileage/time maintenance schedule and the following Sections will provide a planned maintenance programme, which should result in a long and reliable service life. This is a comprehensive plan, so maintaining some items but not others at the specified service intervals, will not produce the same results.

As you service your vehicle, you will discover that many of the procedures can – and should – be grouped together, because of the particular procedure being performed, or because of the proximity of two otherwise-unrelated components to one another. For example, if the vehicle is raised for any reason, the exhaust can be inspected at the same time as the suspension and steering components.

The first step in this maintenance programme is to prepare yourself before the actual work begins. Read through all the Sections relevant to the work to be carried out, then make a list and gather all the parts and tools required. If a problem is encountered, seek advice from a parts specialist, or a dealer service department.

### 2 Regular maintenance

**1** If, from the time the vehicle is new, the routine maintenance schedule is followed closely, and frequent checks are made of fluid levels and high-wear items, as suggested throughout this manual, the engine will be kept in relatively good running condition, and the need for additional work will be minimised.

**2** It is possible that there will be times when the engine is running poorly due to the lack of regular maintenance. This is even more likely if a used vehicle, which has not received regular and frequent maintenance checks, is purchased. In such cases, additional work may need to be carried out, outside of the regular maintenance intervals.

**3** If engine wear is suspected, a compression test (refer to Chapter 2C) will provide valuable information regarding the overall performance of the main internal components. Such a test can be used as a basis to decide on the extent

of the work to be carried out. If, for example, a compression test indicates serious internal engine wear, conventional maintenance as described in this Chapter will not greatly improve the performance of the engine, and may prove a waste of time and money, unless extensive overhaul work is carried out first.

**4** The following series of operations are those most often required to improve the performance of a generally poor-running engine:

#### Primary operations

- a) Clean, inspect and test the battery (refer to 'Weekly checks').
- b) Check all the engine-related fluids (refer to 'Weekly checks').
- c) Check the condition and tension of the auxiliary drivebelt (Section 13).
- d) Check the condition of the air filter, and renew if necessary (Section 14).
- e) Check the condition of all hoses, and check for fluid leaks (Section 5).
- f) Renew the fuel filter (Section 15).

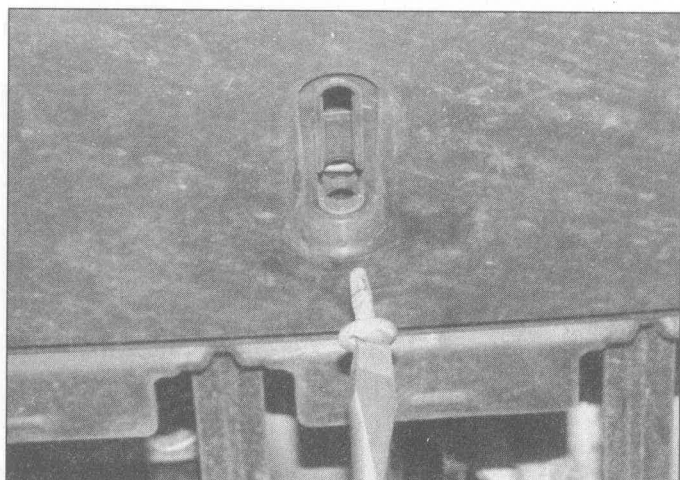
**5** If the above operations do not prove fully effective, carry out the following secondary operations:

#### Secondary operations

All items listed under *Primary operations*, plus the following:

- a) Check the charging system (refer to Chapter 5A).
- b) Check the preheating system (refer to Chapter 5C).
- c) Check the fuel system (refer to Chapter 4B).





3.2 Undo the engine undershield screws



3.3 Unscrew the sump plug

## Every 6 000 miles (10 000 km) or 12 months

### 3 Engine oil and filter renewal



**1** Frequent oil and filter changes are the most important preventative maintenance procedures which can be undertaken by the DIY owner. As engine oil ages, it becomes

diluted and contaminated, which leads to premature engine wear.

**2** Before starting this procedure, gather together all the necessary tools and materials. Also make sure that you have plenty of clean rags and newspapers handy, to mop-up any spills. Ideally, the engine oil should be warm, as it will drain better, and more built-up sludge will be removed with it. Take care, however, not to touch the exhaust or any other hot parts of the engine when working under the vehicle. To avoid any possibility of scalding, and to protect yourself from possible skin irritants and other harmful contaminants in used engine oils, it is advisable to wear gloves when carrying out this work. Access to the underside of the vehicle will be greatly improved if it can be raised on a lift, driven onto ramps, or jacked up and supported on axle stands. Whichever method is chosen, make sure that the vehicle remains level, or if it is at an angle, that the drain plug is at the lowest point. Release the screws and remove the engine undershield (see illustration).

pressed into the sump while unscrewing it by hand the last couple of turns (see **Haynes Hint**). Recover the sealing ring from the drain plug.

**4** Allow some time for the old oil to drain, noting that it may be necessary to reposition the container as the oil flow slows to a trickle.

**5** After all the oil has drained, wipe off the drain plug with a clean rag, and fit a new sealing washer. Clean the area around the drain plug opening, and refit the plug. Tighten the plug securely.

**6** If the filter is also to be renewed, move the container into position under the oil filter, which is located on the front side of the cylinder block.

#### 1.4 litre engines

**7** On these engines, the filter element is contained within a filter cover. Using a socket or spanner, slacken and remove the filter cover from above (see illustration). Be prepared for fluid spillage, and recover the O-ring seal from the cover.

**8** Pull the filter element from the filter housing.

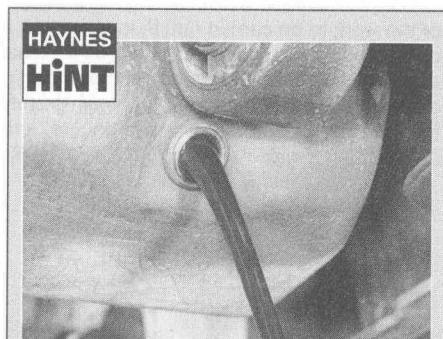
**9** Use a clean rag to remove all oil, dirt and sludge from the inside and outside of the filter cover.

**10** Fit the new O-ring to the filter cover, then insert the new filter element into the housing, ensuring that the element locating peg engages correctly with the corresponding hole in the housing (see illustrations).

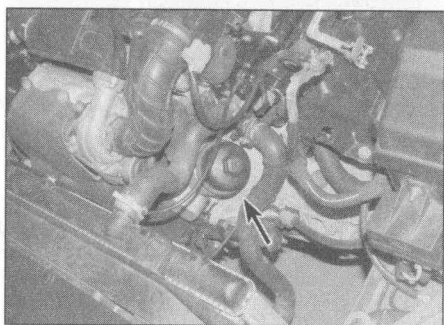
**11** Apply a little clean engine oil to the O-ring seal, then refit the filter/cover to the housing and tighten the cover to the specified torque.

#### 2.0 litre engines

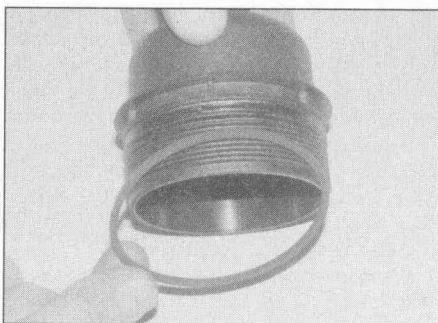
**12** Using an oil filter removal tool if necessary, slacken the filter initially, then unscrew it by hand the rest of the way (see illustration). Empty the oil in the old filter into the container.



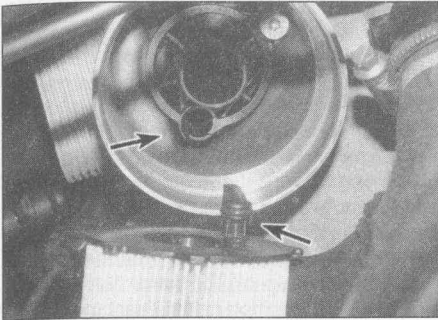
*As the drain plug releases from the threads, move it away sharply so the stream of oil issuing from the sump runs into the container, not up your sleeve.*



3.7 Engine oil filter cover (arrowed)



3.10a Fit the new O-ring to the cover



**3.10b** Ensure the filter locating peg (arrowed) locates into the corresponding hole in the housing (arrowed)

**13** Use a clean rag to remove all oil, dirt and sludge from the filter sealing area on the engine. Check the old filter to make sure that the rubber sealing ring hasn't stuck to the engine. If it has, carefully remove it.

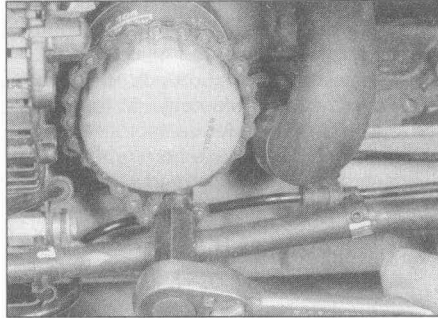
**14** Apply a light coating of clean engine oil to the sealing ring on the new filter, then screw it into position on the engine. Tighten the filter firmly by hand only – **do not** use any tools. Where necessary, refit the splash guard under the engine.

**All engines**

**15** Remove the old oil and all tools from under the car, then lower the car to the ground (if applicable).

**16** Remove the dipstick, then unscrew the oil filler cap from the top of the filler tube on the front side of the cylinder block. Fill the engine, using the correct grade and type of oil (see *Lubricants and fluids*). An oil can spout or funnel may help to reduce spillage. Pour in half the specified quantity of oil first, then wait a few minutes for the oil to fall to the sump. Continue adding oil a small quantity at a time until the level is up to the lower mark on the dipstick. Adding approximately 1.0 litre will bring the level up to the upper mark on the dipstick. Refit the filler cap.

**17** Start the engine and run it for a few minutes; check for leaks around the oil filter seal and the sump drain plug. Note that there may be a delay of a few seconds before the oil pressure warning light goes out when the engine is first started, as the oil circulates



**3.12** Use a filter removal tool to slacken the oil filter

through the engine oil galleries and the new oil filter (where fitted) before the pressure builds-up.

**18** Switch off the engine, and wait a few minutes for the oil to settle in the sump once more. With the new oil circulated and the filter completely full, recheck the level on the dipstick, and add more oil as necessary.

**19** Dispose of the used engine oil safely, with reference to *General Repair Procedures*.

**4 Fuel filter water draining**

**1** Remove the battery as described in Chapter 5A on 1.4 litre models. On 2.0 litre models, unscrew the four fasteners and remove the plastic cover from the top of the engine.

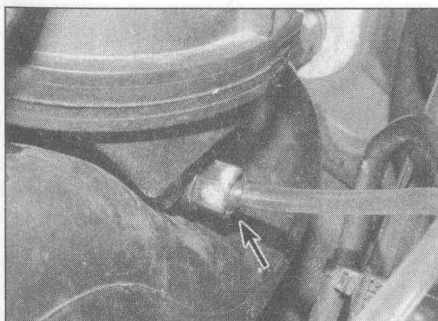
**2** A water drain plug and tube are provided at the base of the fuel filter housing (see *illustrations*).

**3** Place a suitable container beneath the drain tube, and cover the surrounding area with rags.

**4** Open the drain plug, and allow fuel and water to drain until fuel which is free from water, emerges from the end of the tube. Close the drain plug.

**5** Dispose of the drained fuel safely.

**6** Start the engine. If difficulty is experienced, bleed the fuel system (Chapter 4B).



**4.2a** Fuel filter water drain plug (arrowed) – 1.4 litre engine . . .



**4.2b** . . . and 2.0 litre engine (arrowed)

**5 Hose and fluid leak check**

**Cooling system**

**Warning:** Refer to the safety information given in 'Safety first!' and Chapter 3 before disturbing any of the cooling system components.

**1** Carefully check the radiator and heater coolant hoses along their entire length. Renew any hose which is cracked, swollen or which shows signs of deterioration. Cracks will show up better if the hose is squeezed. Pay close attention to the clips that secure the hoses to the cooling system components. Hose clips that have been overtightened can pinch and puncture hoses, resulting in cooling system leaks.

**2** Inspect all the cooling system components (hoses, joint faces, etc) for leaks. Where any problems of this nature are found on system components, renew the component or gasket with reference to Chapter 3.

**3** A leak from the cooling system will usually show up as white or rust-coloured deposits, on the area surrounding the leak (see *Haynes Hint*).

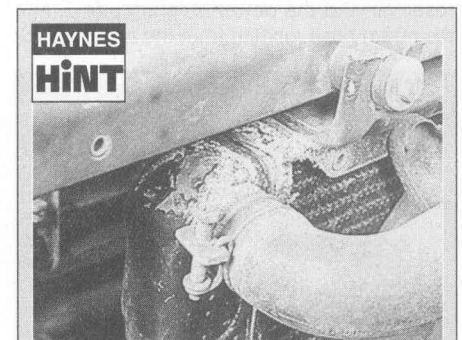
**Fuel**

**Warning:** Refer to the safety information given in 'Safety first!' and Chapter 4B before disturbing any of the fuel system components.

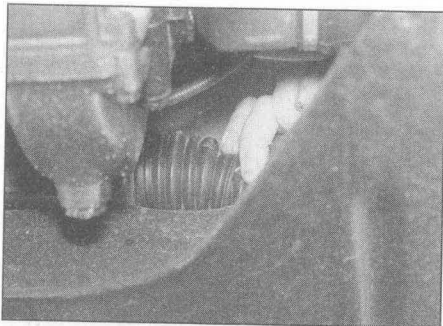
**4** Check all fuel lines at their connections to the injection pump, injectors and fuel filter housing.

**5** Examine each fuel hose/pipe along its length for splits or cracks. Check for leakage from the union nuts and examine the unions between the metal fuel lines and the fuel filter housing. Also check the area around the fuel injectors for signs of leakage.

**6** To identify fuel leaks between the fuel tank and the engine bay, the vehicle should be raised and securely supported on axle stands. Inspect the fuel tank and filler neck for



**A leak in the cooling system will usually show up as white- or rust-coloured deposits on the area adjoining the leak.**



**6.2 Check the steering rack gaiters for damage**

punctures, cracks and other damage. The connection between the filler neck and tank is especially critical. Sometimes a rubber filler neck or connecting hose will leak due to loose retaining clamps or deteriorated rubber.

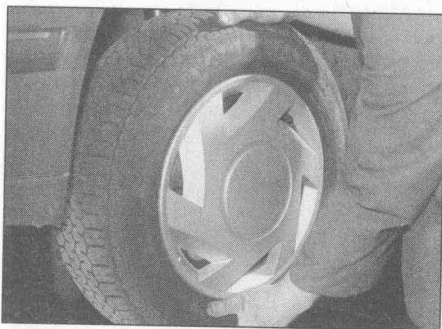
**7** Carefully check all rubber hoses and metal fuel lines leading away from the fuel tank. Check for loose connections, deteriorated hoses, kinked lines, and other damage. Pay particular attention to the vent pipes and hoses, which often loop up around the filler neck and can become blocked or kinked, making tank filling difficult. Follow the fuel supply and return lines to the front of the vehicle, carefully inspecting them all the way for signs of damage or corrosion. Renew damaged sections as necessary.

### Engine oil

**8** Inspect the area around the camshaft cover, cylinder head, oil filter and sump joint faces. Bear in mind that, over a period of time, some very slight seepage from these areas is to be expected – what you are really looking for is any indication of a serious leak caused by gasket failure. Engine oil seeping from the base of the timing belt cover or the transmission bellhousing may be an indication of crankshaft or input shaft oil seal failure. Should a leak be found, renew the failed gasket or oil seal by referring to the appropriate Chapters in this manual.

### Power-assisted steering fluid

**9** Examine the hose running between the fluid reservoir and the power steering pump, and the return hose running from the steering rack



**6.3 Check for wear in the hub bearings by grasping the wheel and trying to rock it**

to the fluid reservoir. Also examine the high pressure supply hose between the pump and the steering rack.

**10** Where applicable, check the hoses leading to the PAS fluid cooler at the front of the engine bay. Look for deterioration caused by corrosion and damage from grounding, or debris thrown up from the road surface.

**11** Pay particular attention to crimped unions, and the area surrounding the hoses that are secured with adjustable worm-drive clips.

### Air conditioning refrigerant



**Warning: Refer to the safety information given in 'Safety first!' and Chapter 3, regarding the dangers of disturbing any of the air conditioning system components.**

**12** The air conditioning system is filled with a liquid refrigerant, which is retained under high pressure. If the air conditioning system is opened and depressurised without the aid of specialised equipment, the refrigerant will immediately turn into gas and escape into the atmosphere. If the liquid comes into contact with your skin, it can cause severe frostbite. In addition, the refrigerant contains substances which are environmentally damaging; for this reason, it should not be allowed to escape into the atmosphere.

**13** Any suspected air conditioning system leaks should be immediately referred to a Peugeot dealer or air conditioning specialist. Leakage will be shown up as a steady drop in the level of refrigerant in the system.

**14** Note that water may drip from the condenser drain pipe, underneath the car, immediately after the air conditioning system has been in use. This is normal, and should not be cause for concern.

### Brake (and clutch) fluid



**Warning: Refer to the safety information given in 'Safety first!' and Chapter 9, regarding the dangers of handling brake fluid.**

**15** With reference to Chapter 9, examine the area surrounding the brake pipe unions at the master cylinder for signs of leakage. Check the area around the base of fluid reservoir, for signs of leakage caused by seal failure. Also examine the brake pipe unions at the ABS hydraulic unit.

**16** If fluid loss is evident, but the leak cannot be pinpointed in the engine bay, the brake calipers and underbody brake lines and should be carefully checked with the vehicle raised and supported on axle stands. Leakage of fluid from the braking system is serious fault that must be rectified immediately.

**17** Refer to Chapter 6 and check for leakage around the hydraulic fluid line connections to the clutch master cylinder at the bulkhead, and to the clutch slave cylinder, bolted to the side of the transmission bellhousing.

**18** Brake/clutch hydraulic fluid is a toxic substance with a watery consistency. New

fluid is almost colourless, but it becomes darker with age and use.

### Unidentified fluid leaks

**19** If there are signs that a fluid of some description is leaking from the vehicle, but you cannot identify the type of fluid or its exact origin, park the vehicle overnight and slide a large piece of card underneath it. Providing that the card is positioned in roughly in the right location, even the smallest leak will show up on the card. Not only will this help you to pinpoint the exact location of the leak, it should be easier to identify the fluid from its colour. Bear in mind, though, that the leak may only be occurring when the engine is running!

### Vacuum hoses

**20** Although the braking system is hydraulically-operated, the brake servo unit amplifies the effort you apply at the brake pedal, by making use of the vacuum created by the pump (see Chapter 9). Vacuum is ported to the servo by means of a large-bore hose. Any leaks that develop in this hose will reduce the effectiveness of the braking system.

**21** In addition, many of the underbonnet components, particularly the emission control components, are driven by vacuum supplied from the vacuum pump via narrow-bore hoses. A leak in a vacuum hose means that air is being drawn into the hose (rather than escaping from it) and this makes leakage very difficult to detect. One method is to use an old length of vacuum hose as a kind of stethoscope – hold one end close to (but not in) your ear and use the other end to probe the area around the suspected leak. When the end of the hose is directly over a vacuum leak, a hissing sound will be heard clearly through the hose. Care must be taken to avoid contacting hot or moving components, as the engine must be running, when testing in this manner. Renew any vacuum hoses that are found to be defective.

## 6 Steering and suspension check



### Front suspension and steering

**1** Raise the front of the vehicle, and securely support it on axle stands.

**2** Visually inspect the balljoint dust covers and the steering rack-and-pinion gaiters for splits, chafing or deterioration (see illustration). Any wear of these components will cause loss of lubricant, together with dirt and water entry, resulting in rapid deterioration of the balljoints or steering gear.

**3** Grasp the roadwheel at the 12 o'clock and 6 o'clock positions, and try to rock it (see illustration). Very slight free play may be felt, but if the movement is appreciable, further

investigation is necessary to determine the source. Continue rocking the wheel while an assistant depresses the footbrake. If the movement is now eliminated or significantly reduced, it is likely that the hub bearings are at fault. If the free play is still evident with the footbrake depressed, then there is wear in the suspension joints or mountings.

**4** Now grasp the wheel at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions, and try to rock it as before. Any movement felt now may again be caused by wear in the hub bearings or the steering track rod balljoints. If the inner or outer balljoint is worn, the visual movement will be obvious.

**5** Using a large screwdriver or flat bar, check for wear in the suspension mounting bushes by levering between the relevant suspension component and its attachment point. Some movement is to be expected as the mountings are made of rubber, but excessive wear should be obvious. Also check the condition of any visible rubber bushes, looking for splits, cracks or contamination of the rubber.

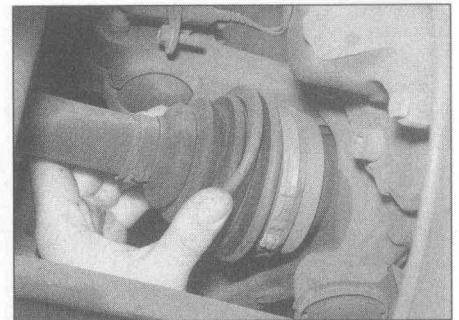
**6** With the car standing on its wheels, have an assistant turn the steering wheel back-and-forth about an eighth of a turn each way. There should be very little, if any, lost movement between the steering wheel and roadwheels. If this is not the case, closely observe the joints and mountings previously described, but in addition, check the steering column universal joints for wear, and the rack-and-pinion steering gear itself.

### Suspension strut/shock absorber

**7** Check for any signs of fluid leakage around

the suspension strut/shock absorber body, or from the rubber gaiter around the piston rod. Should any fluid be noticed, the suspension strut/shock absorber is defective internally, and should be renewed. **Note:** *Suspension struts/shock absorbers should always be renewed in pairs on the same axle.*

**8** The efficiency of the suspension strut/shock absorber may be checked by bouncing the vehicle at each corner. Generally speaking, the body will return to its normal position and stop after being depressed. If it rises and returns on a rebound, the suspension strut/shock absorber is probably suspect. Examine also the suspension strut/shock absorber upper and lower mountings for any signs of wear.



**7.1** Check the driveshaft gaiter for damage

holding the driveshaft and attempting to rotate the wheel. Repeat this check whilst holding the inner joint and attempting to rotate the driveshaft. Any appreciable movement indicates wear in the CV joints, wear in the driveshaft splines, or a loose driveshaft retaining nut.

### 7 Driveshaft gaiter and CV joints check



- With the vehicle raised and securely supported on axle stands, turn the steering to full left or right lock, then slowly rotate the roadwheel. Inspect the outer constant velocity (CV) joint rubber gaiters, squeezing the gaiters to open out the folds (see illustration). Check for signs of cracking, splits or deterioration of the rubber, which may allow the grease to escape, or water and grit to enter. Also check the security and condition of the retaining clips. Repeat these checks on the inner CV joints. If any damage or deterioration is found, the gaiters should be renewed (see Chapter 8).
- At the same time, check the general condition of the CV joints themselves by first

### 8 Hinge and lock lubrication



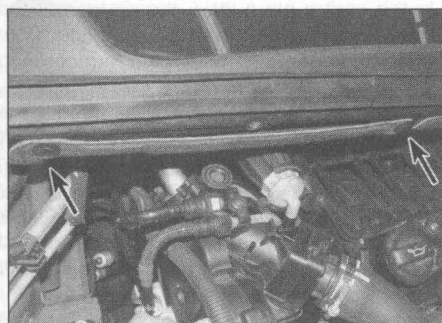
- Lubricate the hinges of the bonnet, doors and tailgate with a light general-purpose oil. Similarly, lubricate all latches, locks and lock strikers – don't overdo it, or it will get on your clothes as you get in! At the same time, check the security and operation of all the locks, adjusting them if necessary (see Chapter 11).
- Lightly lubricate the bonnet release mechanism and cable with a suitable grease.

## Every 12 000 miles (20 000 km)

### 9 Pollen filter check



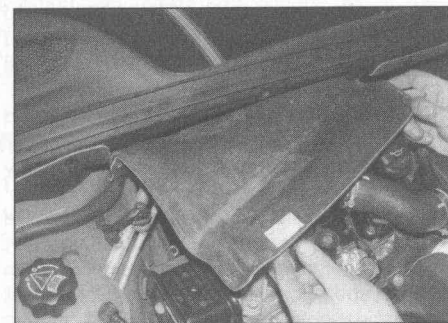
**1** Open the bonnet.



**9.2a** Prise up the centre pins, then lever out the complete plastic rivets (arrowed) ...

**2** Prise up the centre pins, lever out the complete plastic expanding rivets, then remove the sound insulation trim covering the pollen filter cover (see illustrations).

**3** Grasp the filter cover and pull it from the bulkhead (see illustration).

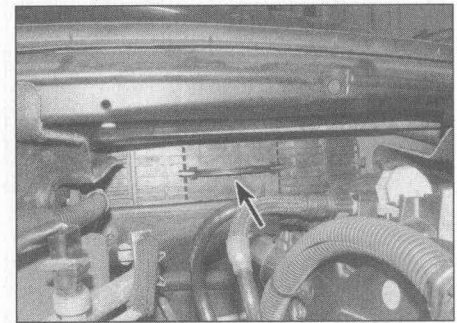


**9.2b** ... then remove the sound insulation material

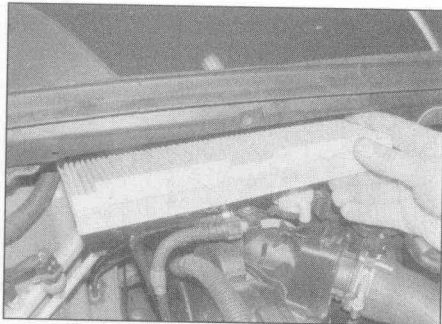
**4** Slide the filter out (see illustration).

**5** Check the condition of the filter, and renew it if dirty.

**6** Wipe clean the inside of the housing and fit the pollen filter element, making sure that it is correctly seated.



**9.3** Pull the filter cover (arrowed) from the bulkhead



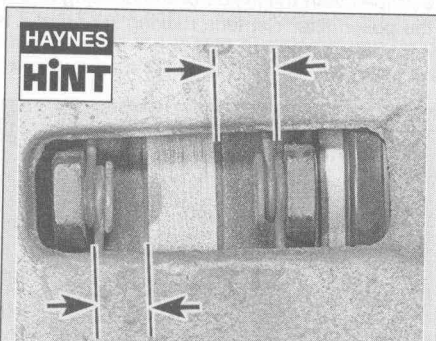
9.4 Slide the pollen filter out

- 7 Refit the pollen filter cover.
- 8 Refit the sound insulation trim, and secure it place with the plastic rivets.
- 9 Close the bonnet.

## 10 Brake pad check



- 1 Slacken the front roadwheel bolts. Firmly apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the car and support it securely on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the front roadwheels.
- 2 For a quick check, the pad thickness can be carried out via the inspection hole on the front caliper (see **Haynes Hint**). Using a steel rule, measure the thickness of the pad friction material. This must not be less than the minimum given in the Specifications.
- 3 For a comprehensive check, the brake pads should be removed and cleaned. The operation of the caliper can then be checked, and the brake disc itself can be fully examined on both sides. Refer to Chapter 9 for details.
- 4 If any pad's friction material is worn to the specified minimum thickness or less, all four pads must be renewed as a set. Refer to Chapter 9 for details.
- 5 On completion, refit the roadwheels then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the wheel bolts to the specified torque.



**For a quick check, the thickness of the friction material remaining on each brake pad can be measured through the aperture in the caliper body.**

- 6 Slacken the rear roadwheel bolts. Jack up the rear of the car and support it securely on axle stands. Remove the rear roadwheels. Repeat the procedure described in Paragraphs 2 to 5 on the rear brake pads.

## 11 Handbrake check



- 1 The handbrake should be fully applied before 8 clicks can be heard from the lever ratchet mechanism. Check and, if necessary, adjust the handbrake as described in Chapter 9.

## 12 Road test



### Instruments and electrical equipment

- 1 Check the operation of all instruments and electrical equipment.
- 2 Make sure that all instruments read correctly, and switch on all electrical equipment in turn, to check that it functions properly.

### Steering and suspension

- 3 Check for any abnormalities in the steering, suspension, handling or road 'feel'.
- 4 Drive the vehicle, and check that there are no unusual vibrations or noises.
- 5 Check that the steering feels positive, with no excessive 'sloppiness', or roughness, and check for any suspension noises when cornering and driving over bumps.

### Drivetrain

- 6 Check the performance of the engine, clutch, transmission and driveshafts.
- 7 Listen for any unusual noises from the engine, clutch and transmission.
- 8 Make sure that the engine runs smoothly when idling, and that there is no hesitation when accelerating.
- 9 Check that the clutch action is smooth and progressive, that the drive is taken up smoothly, and that the pedal travel is not excessive. Also listen for any noises when the clutch pedal is depressed.
- 10 Check that all gears can be engaged smoothly without noise, and that the gear lever action is smooth and not abnormally vague or 'notchy'.
- 11 On automatic transmission models, make sure that all gearchanges occur smoothly, without snatching, and without an increase in engine speed between changes. Check that all the gear positions can be selected with the vehicle at rest. If any problems are found, they should be referred to a Peugeot dealer.

- 12 Listen for a metallic clicking sound from the front of the vehicle, as the vehicle is driven slowly in a circle with the steering on full lock. Carry out this check in both directions. If a clicking noise is heard, this indicates wear in a driveshaft joint, in which case, the complete driveshaft must be renewed (see Chapter 8).

## Braking system

- 13 Make sure that the vehicle does not pull to one side when braking, and that the wheels do not lock when braking hard.
- 14 Check that there is no vibration through the steering when braking.
- 15 Check that the handbrake operates correctly without excessive movement of the lever, and that it holds the vehicle stationary on a slope.
- 16 Test the operation of the brake servo unit as follows. With the engine off, depress the footbrake four or five times to exhaust the vacuum. Hold the brake pedal depressed, then start the engine. As the engine starts, there should be a noticeable 'give' in the brake pedal as vacuum builds-up. Allow the engine to run for at least two minutes, and then switch it off. If the brake pedal is depressed now, it should be possible to detect a hiss from the servo as the pedal is depressed. After about four or five applications, no further hissing should be heard, and the pedal should feel considerably harder.

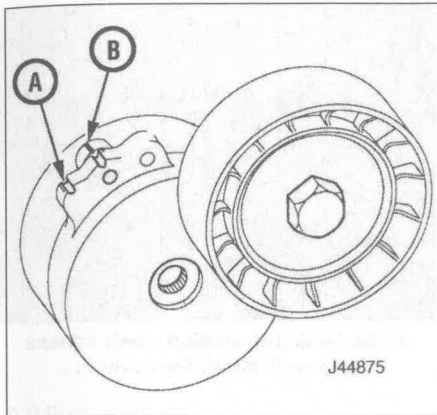
## 13 Auxiliary drivebelt check and renewal



- 1 All models are equipped with a single poly-V type, multi-ribbed auxiliary drivebelt. The belt tension is adjusted automatically by means of a spring-loaded tensioner.

### Checking condition

- 2 Slacken the right-hand front roadwheel bolts. Apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the car and support it securely on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the right-hand front roadwheel.
- 3 Remove the plastic expanding rivets (push in the centre pin a little, then prise out the rivet) and remove the wheel arch liner from under the right-hand front wing for access to the crankshaft pulley bolt.
- 4 Using a suitable socket and bar fitted to the crankshaft pulley bolt, rotate the crankshaft so that the entire length of the drivebelt can be examined. Examine the drivebelt for cracks, splitting, fraying or damage. Check also for signs of glazing (shiny patches) and for separation of the belt plies. Renew the belt if worn or damaged.
- 5 On 2.0 litre models, the automatic tensioner has markings on the casing to show when the belt is need of renewal (see illustration).

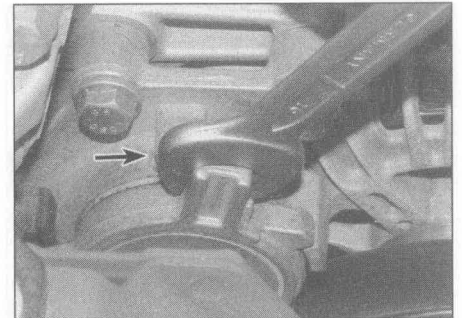


J44875

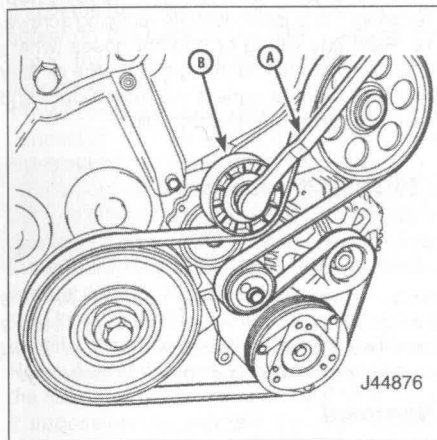
13.5 When the groove (A) lines up with the mark (B) on the mounting bracket, the belt requires renewal



13.7 Push in the centre pin a little, then prise out the complete plastic expanding rivet

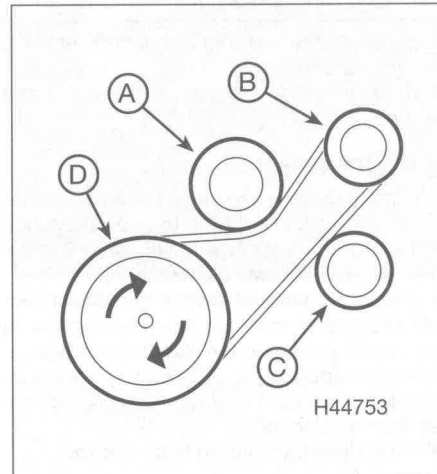


13.8 Use an open-ended spanner to rotate the tensioner arm clockwise, then lock it in place by inserting a 4 mm drill into the hole in the tensioner body (arrowed)



J44876

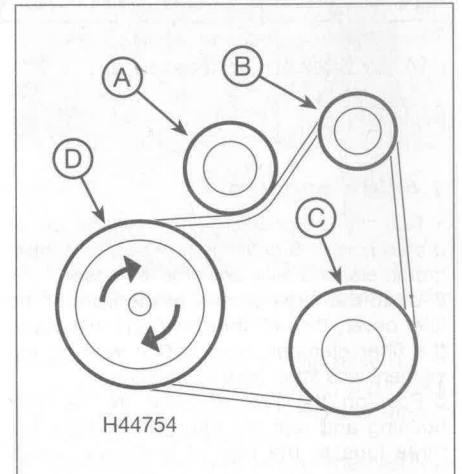
13.10 Move the spanner (A) anti-clockwise to release the tension roller (B) from the drivebelt



H44753

13.11a Auxiliary drivebelt routing (1.4 litre engine without air conditioning)

A Tensioner                      C Idler pulley  
B Alternator                     D Crankshaft



H44754

13.11b Auxiliary drivebelt routing (1.4 litre with air conditioning)

A Tensioner                      C Compressor  
B Alternator                     D Crankshaft

## Removal

6 If not already done, proceed as described in paragraphs 2 and 3.

7 Remove the plastic cover from the top of the coolant and windscreen washer reservoirs. The cover is secured by two expanding plastic rivets. Push the centre pins in a little, then prise the complete rivets from place (see illustration).

### 1.4 litre engines

8 Using an open-ended spanner, reach down and rotate the tensioner arm clockwise to release the belt tension. Insert a 4 mm drill bit or rod into the hole in the tensioner body, so that the tensioner arm rests against it, and locks it in this position (see illustration). It is useful to have a small mirror available to enable the alignment of the locking holes to be more easily seen in the limited space available.

9 Remove the belt from the pulleys. Note that if the belt is to be re-used, mark the direction of rotation. The belt must be refitted the same way around.

### 2.0 litre engines

10 Using a suitable spanner engaged with the hexagonal stud in the centre of the automatic tensioner pulley, move the pulley towards the rear of the car to release the tension on the drivebelt. Note that considerable effort will be needed to move the pulley against spring tension. Insert a 4 mm drill bit or rod into lock the tensioner in this position (see illustration). Slip the belt off the pulleys. If the belt is to be re-used, mark the direction of rotation. The belt must be refitted the same way around.

## Refitting and tensioning

### 1.4 litre engines

11 Fit the belt around the pulleys, ensuring that the ribs on the belt are correctly engaged with the grooves in the pulleys, and the drivebelt is correctly routed (see illustrations). If refitting a used belt, use the mark made on removal to ensure it's fitted the correct way around.

12 Using an open-ended spanner, hold the tensioner arm so that the locking drill bit/rod can be removed, then release the pressure on the spanner so that the automatic tensioner takes up the slack in the drivebelt.

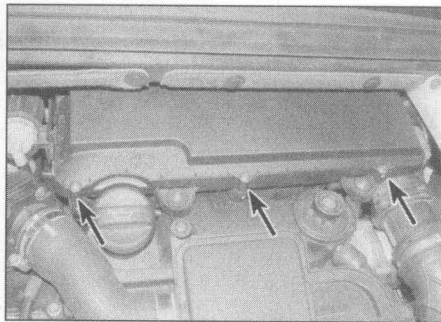
13 Refit the plastic cover over the coolant and windscreen washer reservoirs, and refit the wheel arch liner.

### 2.0 litre engines

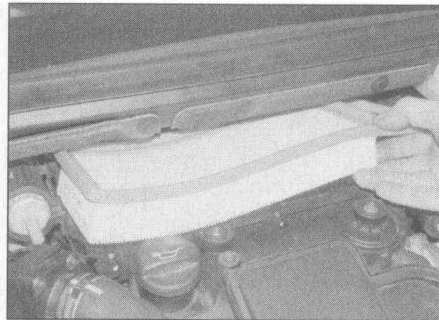
14 Fit the belt around the pulleys, ensuring that the ribs on the belt are correctly engaged with the grooves in the pulleys, and the drivebelt is correctly routed. If refitting a used belt, use the mark made on removal to ensure it's fitted the correct way around.

15 Using a suitable spanner, hold the tensioner pulley so that the locking drill bit/rod can be removed, then release the pressure on the spanner so that the automatic tensioner takes up the slack in the drivebelt.

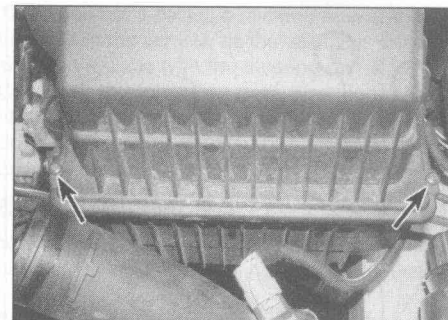
16 On completion, refit the wheel arch liner. Refit the roadwheel, and lower the vehicle to the ground.



14.2a Undo the three air filter cover screws (arrowed), lift off the cover . . .



14.2b . . . and remove the filter element



14.5a Undo the air filter cover screws (arrowed), lift off the cover . . .

## Every 24 000 miles (40 000 km)

### 14 Air filter element renewal



#### 1.4 litre engines

- 1 Remove the plastic cover from the top of the engine. The cover is retained by rubber grommets, and pulls upwards to release.
- 2 Undo the three screws at the front of the filter cover, then lift the cover and withdraw the filter element. Note which way up the element was fitted (*see illustrations*).
- 3 Position the new element in the filter housing and refit the filter cover. Note the three lugs at the rear of the cover which

engage with the housing. Tighten the retaining screws securely.

- 4 Refit the plastic cover to the top of the engine.

#### 2.0 litre engines

- 5 Undo the screws securing the top to the air filter housing body, lift the top up, disengage the lugs at the rear of the cover, and withdraw the filter element (*see illustrations*).
- 6 If required, slacken the clip and disconnect the intake duct from the filter housing top to give better access to the filter housing body.
- 7 Where applicable, release any wiring or coolant hoses from their retaining clips on the air filter housing top.
- 8 Wipe clean the housing body and top.

9 Place the new element in position in the housing body. Refit the filter housing top, securing it in position with its retaining screws.

- 10 Refit any wiring or coolant hoses (where applicable) to their locating clips in the air filter housing, then reconnect the intake duct and securely tighten its retaining clip.

### 15 Fuel filter renewal

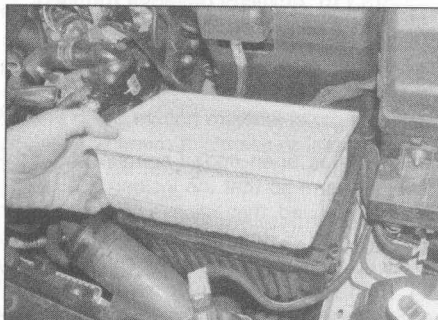


**Note:** Check with your dealer for the availability of fuel filter/housing before removal. On some models the fuel filter/housing may come as a complete assembly.

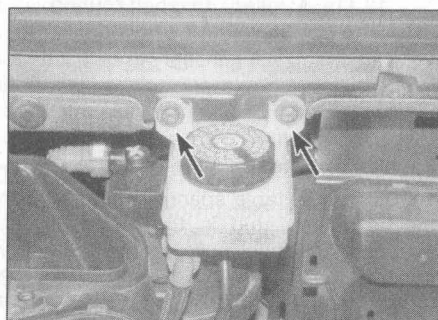
#### Removal

##### 1.4 litre engines

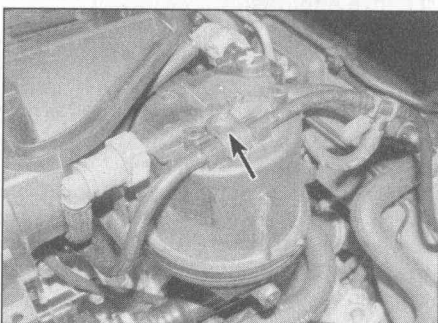
- 1 Remove the battery as described in Chapter 5A.
- 2 Undo the two screws and move aside the brake fluid upper reservoir (*see illustration*). Do not disconnect any fluid pipes/hoses.
- 3 Undo the screw, release the retaining bracket, and position the brake servo vacuum pipe to one side (*see illustration*).
- 4 Place a suitable container beneath the drain screw, and cover the surrounding area with rags. Take care not to allow fuel to enter the transmission bellhousing which is just below. If available, fit a length of hose over the drain screw (*see illustration 4.2a*).
- 5 Open the drain plug by turning it anti-clockwise. Allow fuel and water to drain. Close the drain plug.
- 6 Release the retaining clips and disconnect the fuel feed and return pipes from the filter (*see illustration*). Plug the pipes to prevent dirt ingress and fuel loss.
- 7 Undo the single filter retaining screw, and manoeuvre the filter from the bracket. Disconnect the fuel heater and water detector wiring plugs (where fitted) as the filter is withdrawn (*see illustrations*).
- 8 Unscrew the fuel heater and water detector (where fitted) from the filter. Discard the O-ring seals, new ones must be fitted.



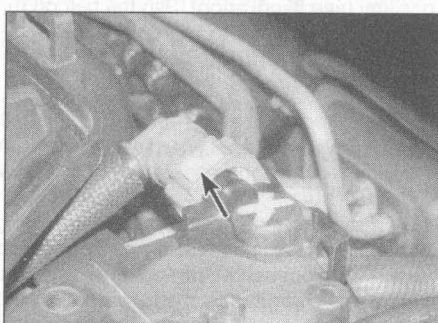
14.5b . . . and remove the filter element



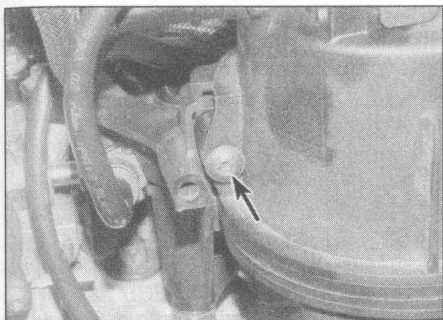
15.2 Brake/clutch fluid upper reservoir screws (arrowed)



15.3 Undo the vacuum pipe bracket screw (arrowed)



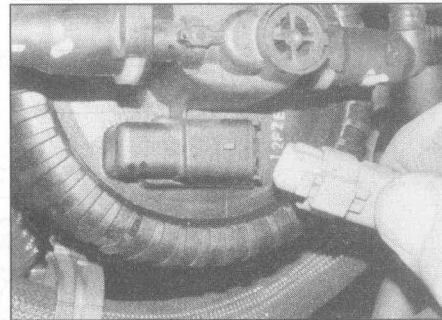
15.6 Depress the button (arrowed) and disconnect the fuel feed and return pipes



15.7a Undo the filter retaining screw (arrowed) . . .



15.7b . . . then disengage the filter lug from the bracket



15.11 Disconnect the filter wiring plug

### 2.0 litre engines

9 Undo the four fasteners and remove the plastic cover from the top of the engine.

10 Position a suitable container under the end of the fuel filter drain hose. Open the drain screw on the base of the filter housing and allow the fuel to drain completely (see illustration 4.2b).

11 Where applicable, disconnect the wiring connector from the top of the fuel filter (see illustration).

12 Disconnect the fuel lines from the top of the fuel filter housing by releasing the quick-release fittings using a small screwdriver. Move them to one side, covering the ends of the fuel lines to prevent dirt entry.

13 Unscrew the top of the fuel filter and lift the filter from the housing (see illustrations).

**Note:** Although in theory the collar on top of the filter unscrews, in practice we have found it impossible to unscrew the filter without damaging the housing, necessitating the renewal of the complete filter housing. The housing is secured to the engine by two bolts.

### Refitting

#### 1.4 litre engines

14 Renew the water detector and fuel heater O-ring seals, and refit them to the new filter, tightening them securely.

15 Manoeuvre the filter into position and secure it in place with the fixing screw.

16 Reconnect the fuel feed/return pipes and the wiring plugs.

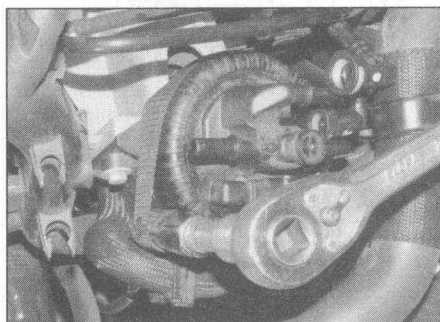
17 Refit the retaining bracket – tighten the screw securely.

18 Close the fuel drain plug and prime the fuel system as described in Chapter 4B. The remainder of refitting is a reversal of removal.

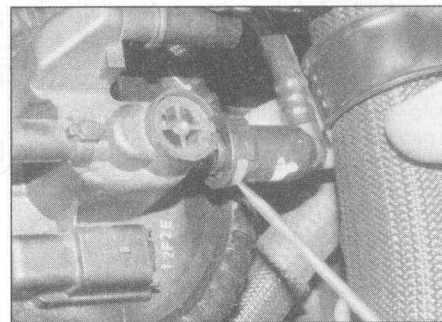
#### 2.0 litre engines

19 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Place the new filter in the housing, making sure that a new seal is fitted before refitting the top to the filter housing. If the complete assembly is being replaced, refit the filter to the engine and tighten the bolts securely.

20 Refit the filter housing assembly, close the fuel filter drain screw and prime the fuel system (see Chapter 4B).



15.13a Unscrew the top of the filter



15.13b Depress the clip to disconnect the fuel pipe

### 16 Manual transmission oil level check



**Note:** A new sealing washer will be required for the transmission filler/level plug, when refitting.

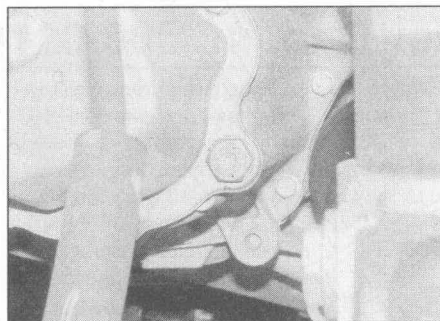
1 Slacken the left-hand front roadwheels bolts. Jack up the front and rear of the car and securely support it on axle stands so that it remains level (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). If the car has been recently driven, wait at least 5 minutes after the engine has been switched off. If the oil level is checked immediately after driving the car, some of the oil will remain distributed around the transmission components, resulting in an inaccurate level reading.

2 Remove the left-hand front roadwheel then

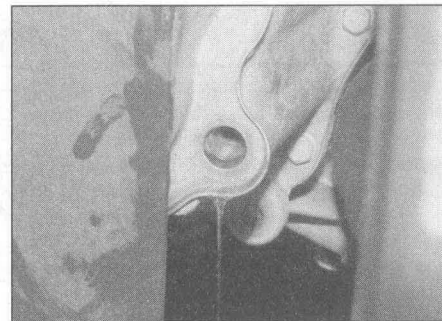
push in the centre pins a little, prise out the complete plastic expanding rivet, and remove the wheel arch liner from under the wing for access to the filler/level plug.

3 Wipe clean the area around the filler/level plug. The filler/level plug is the largest bolt among those securing the end cover to the transmission. Unscrew the plug and clean it; discard the sealing washer (see illustration).

4 The oil level should reach the lower edge of the filler/level hole. A certain amount of oil will have gathered behind the filler/level plug, and will trickle out when it is removed; this does not necessarily indicate that the level is correct. To ensure that a true level is established, wait until the initial trickle has stopped, then add oil as necessary until a trickle of new oil can be seen emerging (see illustration). The level will be correct when the flow ceases; use only good-quality oil of the specified type.

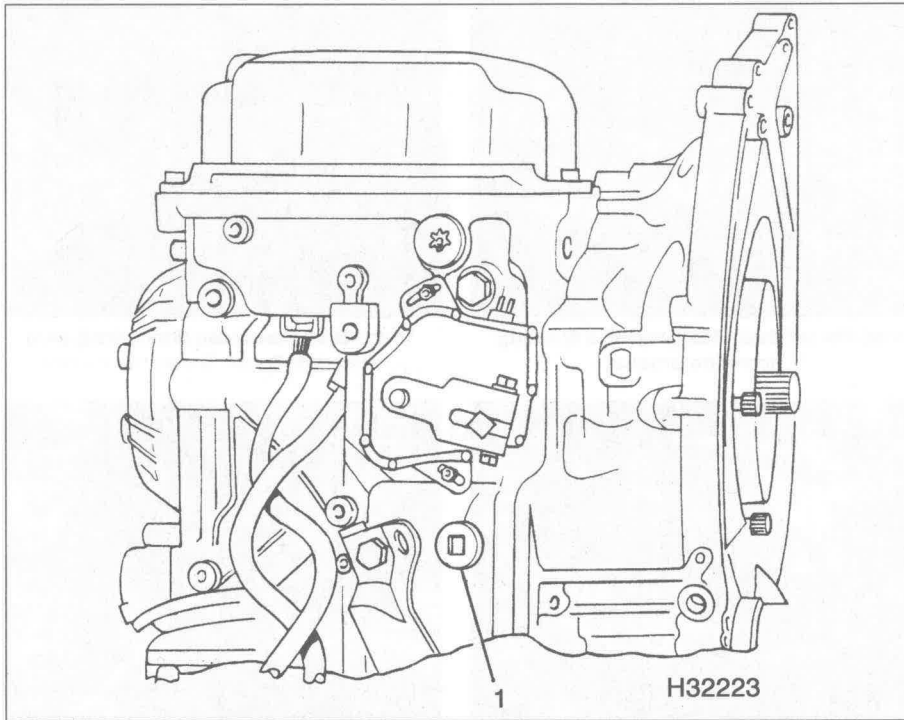


16.3 Manual transmission oil filler/level plug



16.4 Add oil until a trickle emerges





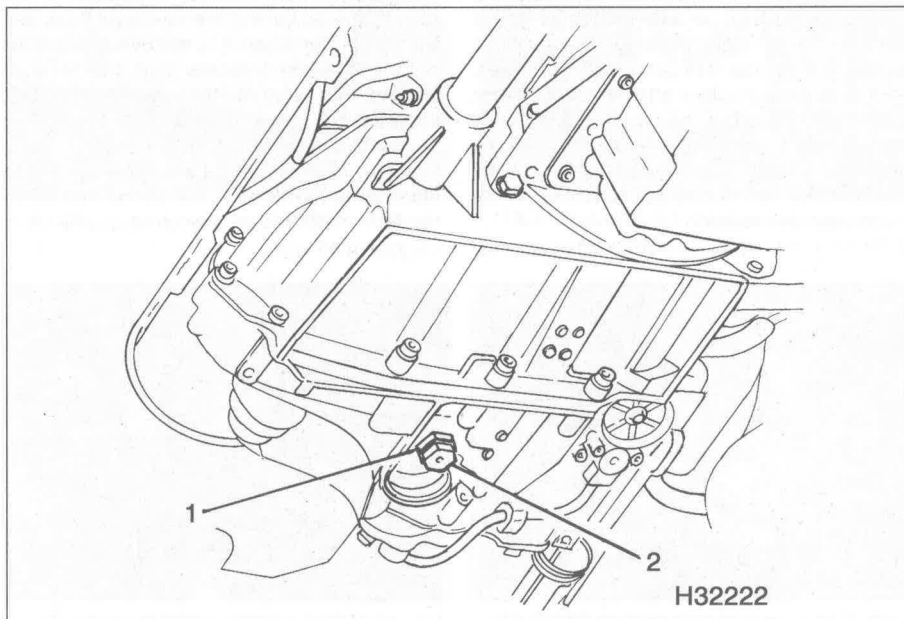
17.2 Transmission oil filler plug (1) as viewed from above

5 Refilling the transmission is an awkward operation; above all, allow plenty of time for the oil level to settle properly before checking it. If a large amount had to be added to the transmission, or if a large amount flowed out on checking the level, refit the filler/level plug and take the vehicle on a short journey. With the new oil distributed fully around the transmission components, recheck the level after allowing time for it to settle again.

6 If the transmission has been overfilled so

that oil flows out as soon as the filler/level plug is removed, first check that the car is completely level (front-to-rear and side-to-side). Allow any surplus oil to drain off into a suitable container.

7 When the level is correct, fit a new sealing washer to the filler/level plug. Tighten the plug to the specified torque wrench setting. Wash off any spilt oil. Refit the wheel arch liner, and secure it in position with its plastic rivets. Refit the roadwheel then lower the car to the ground.



17.4 Transmission oil drain plug (1) and oil level plug (2), inside the drain plug

8 Frequent need for topping-up indicates a leak, which should be found and corrected before it becomes serious.

### 17 Automatic transmission fluid level check



**Note:** The transmission unit is equipped with a fluid wear sensor to inform the driver when the fluid needs renewing (the ECU flashes the Sport and Snow mode indicator lights when fluid renewal is necessary). Every time the transmission unit is topped-up, this sensor should be adjusted to compensate for the new fluid being added, however this can only be done using the Peugeot diagnostic test box. Adding fluid without adjusting the sensor will not cause any problems but will mean the sensor is giving an inaccurate reading, resulting in fluid renewal being recommended earlier than is actually necessary.

1 Take the vehicle on a short journey, to warm the transmission up to normal operating temperature, then park the vehicle on level ground. Firmly apply the handbrake and place the selector lever in the P position. Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield (see illustration 3.2).

2 Wipe clean the area around the filler plug, which is situated on the top of the transmission, directly beneath the battery. Unscrew the filler plug from the transmission and recover the sealing washer (see illustration).

3 Carefully add 0.5 litre of the specified type of fluid to the transmission via the filler plug aperture. Fit a new sealing washer to the filler plug then refit the plug, tightening it to the specified torque.

4 Position a suitable container under the drain/filler plug arrangement, situated on the base of the transmission. The level plug is the smaller plug fitted to the centre of the larger drain plug (see illustration).

**Caution: Do not remove the drain plug by mistake.**

5 Start the engine and allow it to idle. With the engine running, retain the drain plug then slacken and remove the level plug and sealing washer.

**Warning: The fluid will be hot, take precautions against scalding.**

6 If there is sufficient fluid in the transmission unit, fluid should trickle out the centre of the drain plug before slowing to a drip. **Note:** If no fluid trickles out, or just a few drips appear when the plug is removed, the fluid level is too low. Refit the level plug then switch off the engine. Add a further 0.5 litre of fluid to the transmission then refit the filler plug and repeat the check (see paragraphs 3 to 5).

7 Once the flow of fluid stops, the level is correct. Fit a new sealing washer to the level plug then refit the plug and tighten it to the specified torque. Switch off the engine.

## Every 36 000 miles (60 000 km)

### 18 Timing belt renewal

Refer to Chapter 2C.

## Every 36 000 miles (60 000 km) or 2 years

### 19 Brake fluid renewal



**Warning:** Brake hydraulic fluid can harm your eyes and damage painted surfaces, so use extreme caution when handling and pouring it. Do not use fluid that has been standing open for some time, as it absorbs moisture from the air. Excess moisture can cause a dangerous loss of braking effectiveness.

**Note:** A hydraulic clutch shares its fluid reservoir with the braking system, and may also need to be bled (see Chapter 6).

1 The procedure is similar to that for the bleeding of the hydraulic system as described

in Chapter 9, except that the brake fluid reservoir should be emptied by syphoning, using a clean ladle or similar before starting, and allowance should be made for the old fluid to be expelled when bleeding a section of the circuit.

2 Working as described in Chapter 9, open the first bleed screw in the sequence, and pump the brake pedal gently until nearly all the old fluid has been emptied from the master cylinder reservoir.



**Old hydraulic fluid is invariably much darker in colour than the new, making it easy to distinguish the two.**

3 Top-up to the MAX level with new fluid, and

continue pumping until only the new fluid remains in the reservoir, and new fluid can be seen emerging from the bleed screw. Tighten the screw, and top the reservoir level up to the MAX level line.

4 Work through all the remaining bleed screws in the sequence until new fluid can be seen at all of them. Be careful to keep the master cylinder reservoir topped-up to above the DANGER level at all times, or air may enter the system and increase the length of the task.

5 When the operation is complete, check that all bleed screws are securely tightened, and that their dust caps are refitted. Wash off all traces of spilt fluid, and recheck the master cylinder reservoir fluid level.

6 Check the operation of the brakes before taking the car on the road.

## Every 48 000 miles (80 000 km)

### 20 Particulate emission system check



1 A particulate filter is fitted to some 2.0 litre (DW10ATED) models. This filter is combined with the catalytic converter in the exhaust pipe. An additive is used to help clean the

filter element. This additive is stored in a separate reservoir adjacent to the fuel tank. However, checking the filter and refilling the reservoir should be entrusted to a Peugeot dealer or specialist, as parameters of the engine management ECU must be re-initialised, and special equipment/tools must be used due to the hazardous nature of the additive.

2 Depending the date of manufacture, the

additive requires topping-up at:

48 000 miles (80 000 km) for vehicles manufactured before November 2002 – additive: EOLYS DPX 42.

72 000 miles (120 000 km) for vehicles manufactured from November 2002 (build code 9492) – additive: EOLYS 176.

Note that these two products are not mixable or interchangeable.

## Every 72 000 miles (120 000km) or 5 years

### 21 Coolant renewal



#### Cooling system draining



**Warning:** Wait until the engine is cold before starting this procedure. Do not allow antifreeze to come in contact with your skin, or with the painted surfaces of the vehicle. Rinse off

spills immediately with plenty of water. Never leave antifreeze lying around in an open container, or in a puddle in the driveway or on the garage floor. Children and pets are attracted by its sweet smell, but antifreeze can be fatal if ingested.

1 Remove the battery and battery tray/box as described in Chapter 5A.

#### 1.4 litre engine

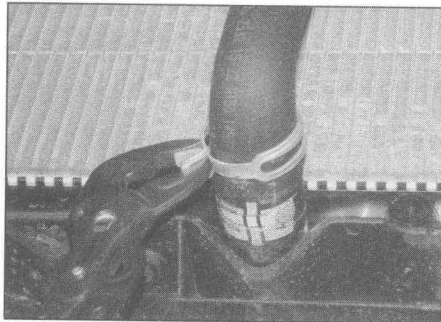
2 Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield.

3 Position a suitable container beneath the radiator lower hose outlet at the lower left-hand side of the radiator.

4 Release the retaining clip and disconnect the radiator lower hose (see illustration). Be prepared for coolant spillage.

5 With the engine completely cold, reach under the scuttle and unscrew the bleed screw located in the heater hose at the bulkhead connection (see illustration).

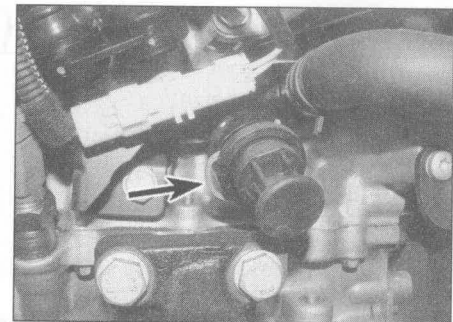
6 To drain the engine, pull out the clip and remove the plug located in the coolant



**21.4** Squeeze together the tabs to release the hose retaining clip



**21.5** Undo the heater outlet hose union bleed screw cap (arrowed)



**21.6** Prise out the retaining clip (arrowed) and pull out the drain plug

manifold at the rear of the cylinder head (see illustration). The plug must be refitted with a new clip and O-ring.

**2.0 litre engines**

**7** With the engine completely cold, unscrew and remove the expansion tank cap.

**8** Position a suitable container beneath the radiator lower hose outlet.

**9** Slacken the bleed screw at the heater hose bulkhead connection, and the screw at the coolant outlet housing. On DW10ATED engines, a third bleed screw is located at the top of the heater matrix outlet fitted to the base of the air cleaner housing (see illustrations).

**10** Release the radiator lower hose retaining clip, and pull the hose from the fitting. Be prepared for coolant spillage.

**11** When the flow of coolant stops, reposition the container below the cylinder block drain plug, located at the rear of the cylinder block.

**12** Remove the drain plug, and allow the coolant to drain into the container.

**13** If the coolant has been drained for a reason other than renewal, then provided it is clean and less than five years old, it can be re-used, though this is not recommended.

**14** Refit the cylinder block drain plug on completion of draining.

**Cooling system flushing**

**15** If coolant renewal has been neglected, or if the antifreeze mixture has become diluted, then in time, the cooling system may gradually lose efficiency, as the coolant passages become restricted due to rust, scale deposits,

and other sediment. The cooling system efficiency can be restored by flushing the system clean.

**16** The radiator should be flushed independently of the engine, to avoid unnecessary contamination.

**Radiator flushing**

**17** To flush the radiator, first tighten the radiator bleed screw, where applicable.

**18** Disconnect the top hose and any other relevant hoses from the radiator, with reference to Chapter 3.

**19** Insert a garden hose into the radiator top inlet. Direct a flow of clean water through the radiator, and continue flushing until clean water emerges from the radiator bottom outlet.

**20** If after a reasonable period, the water still does not run clear, the radiator can be flushed with a good proprietary cleaning agent. It is important that their manufacturer's instructions are followed carefully. If the contamination is particularly bad, insert the hose in the radiator bottom outlet, and reverse-flush the radiator.

**Engine flushing**

**21** To flush the engine, first refit the cylinder block drain plug, and tighten the cooling system bleed screws.

**22** Remove the thermostat as described in Chapter 3, then temporarily refit the thermostat cover.

**23** With the top and bottom hoses disconnected from the radiator, insert a garden hose into the radiator top hose. Direct a clean flow of water through the engine, and

continue flushing until clean water emerges from the radiator bottom hose.

**24** On completion of flushing, refit the thermostat and reconnect the hoses with reference to Chapter 3.

**Cooling system filling**

**25** Before attempting to fill the cooling system, make sure that all hoses and clips are in good condition, and that the clips are tight. Note that an antifreeze mixture must be used all year round, to prevent corrosion of the engine components (see following sub-Section). Also check that the radiator and cylinder block drain plugs are in place and tight.

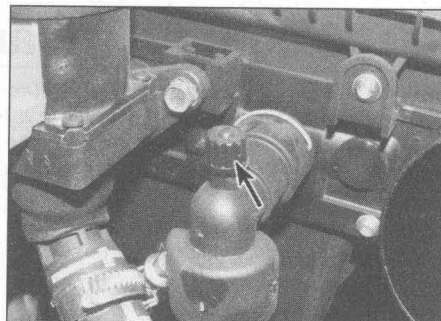
**26** Remove the expansion tank filler cap.

**27** Open all the cooling system bleed screws (see paragraphs 5 and 9).

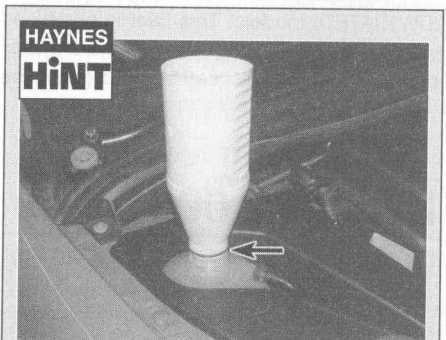
**28** Some of the cooling system hoses are positioned at a higher level than the top of the radiator expansion tank. It is therefore necessary to use a 'header tank' when refilling the cooling system, to reduce the possibility of air being trapped in the system. Although Peugeot dealers use a special header tank, the same effect can be achieved by using a suitable 1.0 litre bottle, with a seal between the bottle and the expansion tank (see Haynes Hint).



**21.9a** Coolant outlet housing bleed screw (arrowed) ...



**21.9b** ... and air cleaner heater matrix bleed screw (DW10ATED only)



**HAYNES HINT**  
Cut the bottom off an old anti-freeze container to make a 'header tank' for use when refilling the cooling system. The seal at the point arrowed should be as tight as possible – use an O-ring if available, or seal the joint by some other means.

**29** Fit the header tank to the expansion tank and slowly fill the system. Coolant will emerge from the bleed screw. As soon as coolant free from air bubbles emerges from the screw, tighten the screw.

**30** Ensure that the header tank is full (at least 1.0 litre of coolant). Refit the battery, start the engine, and run it at a fast idle speed (do not exceed 2000 rpm) until the cooling fan cuts in, and then cuts out. Stop the engine. **Note:** *Take great care not to scald yourself with the hot coolant during this operation.*

**31** Allow the engine to cool, then remove the header tank.

**32** When the engine has cooled, check the coolant level as described in *Weekly checks*.

Top-up the level if necessary, and refit the expansion tank cap.

### Antifreeze mixture

**33** The antifreeze should always be renewed at the specified intervals. This is necessary not only to maintain the antifreeze properties, but also to prevent corrosion which would otherwise occur as the corrosion inhibitors become progressively less effective.

**34** Always use an ethylene-glycol based antifreeze which is suitable for use in mixed-metal cooling systems. The quantity of antifreeze and levels of protection are indicated in the Specifications.

**35** Before adding antifreeze, the cooling system should be completely drained, preferably flushed, and all hoses checked for condition and security.

**36** After filling with antifreeze, a label should be attached to the expansion tank, stating the type and concentration of antifreeze used, and the date installed. Any subsequent topping-up should be made with the same type and concentration of antifreeze.

**37** Do not use engine antifreeze in the washer system, as it will cause damage to the vehicle paintwork. A screen wash additive should be added to the washer system in the quantities stated on the bottle.

## Every 10 years

### 22 Airbags and seat belt pretensioners renewal



**1** Peugeot recommend that the airbags and seat belt pretensioners are renewed regardless of their condition every ten years. Refer to Chapter 12 for airbag renewal, and Chapter 11 for seat belt pretensioner renewal.

*[Faint, illegible text covering the majority of the page, likely bleed-through from the reverse side.]*

# Chapter 2 Part A:

## 1.4 and 1.6 litre petrol engines

### in-car repair procedures

## Contents

Camshaft(s) and rocker arms/followers – removal, inspection and refitting .....	10	Engine/transmission mountings – inspection and renewal .....	16
Camshaft oil seal(s) – renewal .....	8	Flywheel/driveplate – removal, inspection and refitting .....	15
Compression test – description and interpretation .....	2	General information .....	1
Crankshaft oil seals – renewal .....	14	Oil pump – removal, inspection and refitting .....	13
Cylinder head – removal and refitting .....	11	Sump – removal and refitting .....	12
Cylinder head cover – removal and refitting .....	4	Timing belt – general information, removal and refitting .....	6
Engine assembly/valve timing holes – general information and usage ..	3	Timing belt covers – removal and refitting .....	5
Engine oil and filter renewal .....	See Chapter 1A	Timing belt tensioner and sprockets – removal, inspection and refitting .....	7
Engine oil level check .....	See <i>Weekly checks</i>	Valve clearances – checking and adjustment .....	9

## Degrees of difficulty

**Easy**, suitable for novice with little experience



**Fairly easy**, suitable for beginner with some experience



**Fairly difficult**, suitable for competent DIY mechanic



**Difficult**, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic



**Very difficult**, suitable for expert DIY or professional



## Specifications

### Engine (general)

Capacity:	
1.4 litre engine .....	1360cc
1.6 litre engine .....	1587cc
Designation:	
1.4 litre engine .....	TU3JP
1.6 litre engine .....	TU5JP4
Engine codes*:	
1.4 litre engine .....	KFW
1.6 litre engine .....	NFU
Bore:	
1.4 litre engine .....	75.00 mm
1.6 litre engine .....	78.50 mm
Stroke:	
1.4 litre engine .....	77.00 mm
1.6 litre engine .....	82.00 mm
Direction of crankshaft rotation .....	Clockwise (viewed from right-hand side of vehicle)
No 1 cylinder location .....	At transmission end of the block
Compression ratio:	
1.4 litre engine .....	10.2 : 1
1.6 litre engine .....	10.8 : 1
Maximum power output:	
1.4 litre engine .....	55 kW @ 5500 rpm
1.6 litre engine .....	80 kW @ 5500 rpm
Maximum torque output:	
1.4 litre engine .....	120 Nm @ 3000 rpm
1.6 litre engine .....	150 Nm @ 4500 rpm

\* The engine code is situated on front, left-hand end of the cylinder block.

### Camshaft(s)

Drive .....	Toothed belt
-------------	--------------

### Valve clearances (engine cold)

1.4 litre engine:	
Intake .....	0.20 mm
Exhaust .....	0.40 mm
1.6 litre engine .....	Hydraulic adjusters

## 2A•2 1.4 and 1.6 litre petrol engines in-car repair procedures

### Lubrication system

Oil pump type .....	Gear type, chain-driven off the crankshaft
Minimum oil pressure at 80°C .....	4 bars @ 4000 rpm
Oil pressure warning switch operating pressure .....	0.8 bars

### Torque wrench settings

	Nm	lbf ft
Big-end bearing cap nuts* .....	40	30
Camshaft bearing housing to cylinder head (1.6 litre engine) .....	10	7
Camshaft sprocket retaining bolt(s) .....	45	33
Camshaft thrust fork retaining bolt (1.4 litre engine) .....	16	12
Crankshaft oil seal housing bolts .....	8	6
Crankshaft pulley retaining bolts .....	25	18
Crankshaft sprocket retaining bolt*:		
Stage 1 .....	40	30
Stage 2 .....	Angle-tighten a further 45°	
Cylinder head bolts:		
1.4 litre engine:		
Stage 1 .....	20	15
Stage 2 .....	Angle-tighten a further 240°	
1.6 litre engine:		
Stage 1 .....	20	15
Stage 2 .....	Angle-tighten a further 260°	
Cylinder head cover screws/nuts .....	8	6
Driveplate bolts .....	67	49
Engine-to-transmission bolts:		
Manual transmission models .....	40	30
Automatic transmission models .....	35	26
Engine/transmission left-hand mounting:		
Mounting centre nut .....	65	48
Mounting-to-bracket bolts .....	30	22
Mounting bracket-to-body bolts .....	19	14
Mounting bracket-to-manual transmission nuts .....	25	18
Mounting bracket-to-automatic transmission bolts .....	45	33
Mounting stud/nut (automatic transmission) .....	40	30
Engine/transmission rear mounting:		
Mounting-to-cylinder block bolts .....	40	30
Mounting link-to-mounting bolt .....	55	41
Mounting link-to-subframe bolt .....	39	29
Engine/transmission right-hand mounting:		
Mounting bracket nuts .....	45	33
Support bracket:		
Bracket to cylinder head .....	45	33
Bracket to mounting bracket .....	60	44
Bracket to engine .....	26	19
Mounting bolts to body .....	60	44
Mounting vibration damper .....	32	24
Flywheel bolts* .....	70	52
Main bearing cap bolts (1.6 litre engine):		
Stage 1 .....	20	15
Stage 2 .....	Angle-tighten a further 49°	
Main bearing ladder casting (1.4 litre engine):		
M11 bolts:		
Stage 1 .....	20	15
Stage 2 .....	Angle-tighten a further 44°	
M6 bolts .....	8	6
Oil filter .....	25	18
Oil filter housing to engine block (1.6 litre engine) .....	10	7
Oil pressure switch .....	30	22
Oil pump retaining bolts .....	9	7
Piston oil jet spray tube bolts .....	10	7
Roadwheel bolts .....	90	66
Sump drain plug .....	30	22
Sump retaining nuts and bolts .....	8	6
Timing belt cover bolts .....	8	6
Timing belt tensioner pulley nut:		
1.4 litre engine .....	20	15
1.6 litre engine .....	22	16

\* Do not re-use

## 1 General information

### How to use this Chapter

1 This Part of Chapter 2 describes those repair procedures that can reasonably be carried out on the petrol engine while it remains in the car. If the engine has been removed from the car and is being dismantled, as described in Part D, any preliminary dismantling procedures can be ignored.

2 Note that, while it may be possible physically to overhaul items such as the piston/connecting rod assemblies while the engine is in the car, such tasks are not normally carried out as separate operations. Usually, several additional procedures (not to mention the cleaning of components and of oilways) have to be carried out. For this reason, all such tasks are classed as major overhaul procedures, and are described in Part D of this Chapter.

3 Part D describes the removal of the engine/transmission from the vehicle, and the full overhaul procedures that can then be carried out.

### Petrol engine description

4 All petrol engines are from the TU series of engines and are well-proven engines which has been fitted to many previous Peugeot and Citroën vehicles. The engine is of the in-line four-cylinder, single overhead camshaft (SOHC) 8-valve type on the 1.4 litre unit, or double overhead camshaft (DOHC) 16-valve type on the 1.6 litre unit, mounted transversely at the front of the car with the transmission attached to its left-hand end. The 307 range was offered with a choice of 1.4 litre (1360cc) and 1.6 litre (1587cc) engines.

5 The crankshaft runs in five main bearings. Thrustwashers are fitted to No 2 main bearing (upper half) to control crankshaft endfloat.

6 The connecting rods rotate on horizontally-split bearing shells at their big-ends. The pistons are attached to the connecting rods by gudgeon pins, which are an interference fit in the connecting rod small-end eyes. The aluminium-alloy pistons are fitted with three piston rings – two compression rings and an oil control ring.

7 On 1.4 litre engines, the cylinder block is made of aluminium, and wet liners are fitted to the cylinder bores. Sealing O-rings are fitted at the base of each liner, to prevent the escape of coolant into the sump.

8 On 1.6 litre engines, the cylinder block is made from cast-iron, and the cylinder bores are an integral part of the cylinder block. On this type of engine, the cylinder bores are sometimes referred to as having dry liners.

9 The intake and exhaust valves are each closed by coil springs, and operate in guides pressed into the cylinder head; the valve seat inserts are also pressed into the cylinder head, and can be renewed separately if worn.

10 On 1.4 litre models, the camshaft is driven by a toothed timing belt, and operates the eight valves via rocker arms. Valve clearances are adjusted by a screw-and-locknut arrangement. The camshaft rotates directly in the cylinder head. The timing belt also drives the coolant pump.

11 On 1.6 litre models, the camshafts are driven by a timing belt, and operate the 16 valves via followers incorporating hydraulic clearance adjusters. The camshafts rotate directly in the cylinder head and are retained by a one-piece bearing housing. The belt also drives the coolant pump.

12 Lubrication is by means of an oil pump, which is driven (via a chain and sprocket) off the right-hand end of the crankshaft. It draws oil through a strainer located in the sump, and then forces it through an externally-mounted filter into galleries in the cylinder block/crankcase. From there, the oil is distributed to the crankshaft (main bearings) and camshaft. The big-end bearings are supplied with oil via internal drillings in the crankshaft, while the camshaft bearings also receive a pressurised supply. On 1.6 litre engines, piston cooling oil spray jets are fitted to spray oil on the underside of each piston. The camshaft lobes and valves are lubricated by splash, as are all other engine components.

### Operations with engine in car

13 The following work can be carried out with the engine in the car:

- a) Compression pressure – testing.
- b) Cylinder head cover – removal and refitting.
- c) Timing belt covers – removal and refitting.
- d) Timing belt – removal, refitting and adjustment.
- e) Timing belt tensioner and sprockets – removal and refitting.
- f) Camshaft oil seal(s) – renewal.
- g) Camshaft(s) and rocker arms/followers – removal, inspection and refitting.
- h) Cylinder head – removal and refitting.
- i) Cylinder head and pistons – decarbonising.
- j) Sump – removal and refitting.
- k) Oil pump – removal, overhaul and refitting.
- l) Crankshaft oil seals – renewal.
- m) Engine/transmission mountings – inspection and renewal.
- n) Flywheel/driveplate – removal, inspection and refitting.

## 2 Compression test – description and interpretation

1 When engine performance is down, or if misfiring occurs which cannot be attributed to the ignition or fuel systems, a compression test can provide diagnostic clues as to the engine's condition. If the test is performed regularly, it can give warning of trouble before any other symptoms become apparent.

2 The engine must be fully warmed-up to normal operating temperature, the battery must be fully charged. The aid of an assistant will also be required.

3 Remove the ignition HT coil assembly (see Chapter 5B) then remove the spark plugs (see Chapter 1A).

4 Fit a compression tester to the No 1 cylinder spark plug hole – the type of tester which screws into the plug thread is to be preferred.

5 Have the assistant hold the throttle wide open, and crank the engine on the starter motor; after one or two revolutions, the compression pressure should build-up to a maximum figure, and then stabilise. Record the highest reading obtained.

6 Repeat the test on the remaining cylinders, recording the pressure in each.

7 All cylinders should produce very similar pressures; a difference of more than 2 bars between any two cylinders indicates a fault. Note that the compression should build-up quickly in a healthy engine; low compression on the first stroke, followed by gradually-increasing pressure on successive strokes, indicates worn piston rings. A low compression reading on the first stroke, which does not build-up during successive strokes, indicates leaking valves or a blown head gasket (a cracked head could also be the cause). Deposits on the undersides of the valve heads can also cause low compression.

8 Although Peugeot do not specify exact compression pressures, as a guide, any cylinder pressure of below 10 bars can be considered as less than healthy. Refer to a Peugeot dealer or other specialist if in doubt as to whether a particular pressure reading is acceptable.

9 If the pressure in any cylinder is low, carry out the following test to isolate the cause. Introduce a teaspoonful of clean oil into that cylinder through its spark plug hole, and repeat the test.

10 If the addition of oil temporarily improves the compression pressure, this indicates that bore or piston wear is responsible for the pressure loss. No improvement suggests that leaking or burnt valves, or a blown head gasket, may be to blame.

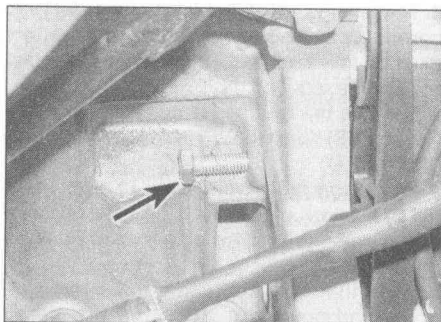
11 A low reading from two adjacent cylinders is almost certainly due to the head gasket having blown between them; the presence of coolant in the engine oil will confirm this.

12 If one cylinder is about 20 percent lower than the others and the engine has a slightly rough idle, a worn camshaft lobe could be the cause.

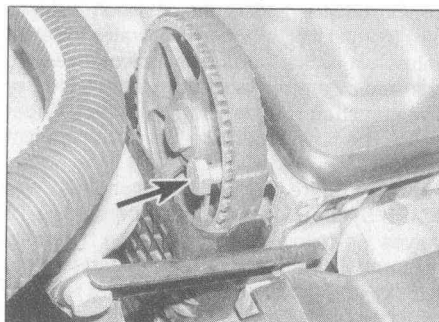
13 If the compression reading is unusually high, the combustion chambers are probably coated with carbon deposits. If this is the case, the cylinder head should be removed and decarbonised.

14 On completion of the test, refit the spark plugs and ignition HT coil (see Chapters 1A and 5B).

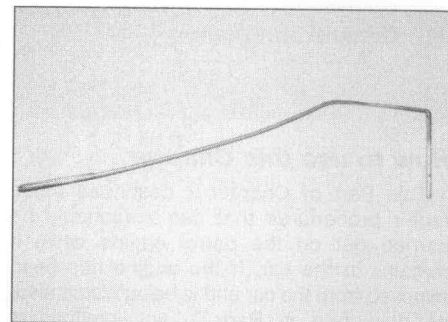




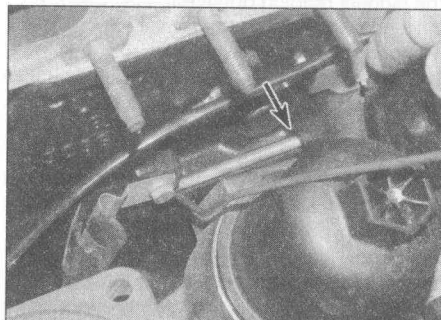
**3.4** Insert a 6 mm diameter bolt/pin (arrowed) into the hole in the cylinder block flange and into the flywheel hole



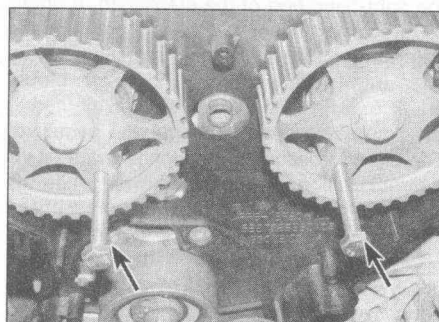
**3.5** Lock the camshaft sprocket in position with a 10 mm diameter bolt/pin (arrowed) (1.4 litre engine)



**3.7a** Weld a 90 mm length of 6 mm rod/stud to a length of weld rod . . .



**3.7b** . . . and insert it into the hole in the cylinder block flange (arrowed)



**3.8** Use 10 mm diameter bolts/pins (arrowed) to lock the camshaft sprockets in position (1.6 litre engine)

### 3 Engine assembly/valve timing holes – general information and usage



**Note:** Do not attempt to rotate the engine whilst the crankshaft/camshaft are locked in position. If the engine is to be left in this state for a long period of time, it is a good idea to place warning notices inside the vehicle, and in the engine compartment. This will reduce the possibility of the engine being accidentally cranked on the starter motor, which is likely to cause damage with the locking pins in place.

**1** On all models, timing holes are drilled in the camshaft sprocket(s) and in the rear of the flywheel/driveplate. The holes are used to ensure that the crankshaft and camshaft(s) are correctly positioned when assembling the engine (to prevent the possibility of the valves contacting the pistons when refitting the cylinder head), or refitting the timing belt. When the timing holes are aligned with access holes in the cylinder head and the front of the cylinder block, suitable diameter bolts/pins can be inserted to lock both the camshaft and crankshaft in position, preventing them from rotating. Proceed as follows.

**2** Remove the timing belt upper cover as described in Section 5.

#### 1.4 litre engines

**3** The crankshaft must now be turned until the timing hole in the camshaft sprocket is aligned with the corresponding hole in the

cylinder head. The holes are aligned when the camshaft sprocket hole is in the 2 o'clock position, when viewed from the right-hand end of the engine. The crankshaft can be turned by using a spanner on the crankshaft sprocket bolt, noting that it should always be rotated in a clockwise direction (viewed from the right-hand end of the engine).

**4** With the camshaft sprocket hole correctly positioned, insert a 6 mm diameter stud or pin, 90 mm long, welded to a length of weld rod bent to the appropriate shape, through the hole in the front left-hand flange of the cylinder block, and locate it in the timing hole in the rear of the flywheel (see illustration). A purpose-made Peugeot tool No 0132-QY is available from dealers. Note that it may be necessary to rotate the crankshaft slightly to get the holes to align.

**5** With the flywheel correctly positioned, insert a 10 mm diameter bolt or a pin through the timing hole in the camshaft sprocket, and locate it in the hole in the cylinder head (see illustration).

#### 1.6 litre engines

**6** Turn the crankshaft until the holes in the camshaft sprockets align with the corresponding holes in the cylinder head. The crankshaft can be turned by using a spanner on the crankshaft sprocket bolt, noting that it should always be rotated in a clockwise direction (viewed from the right-hand end of the engine).

**7** With the camshaft sprocket holes correctly

positioned, insert a 6 mm diameter stud or pin, 80 mm long, welded to a length of weld rod bent to the appropriate shape, through the hole in the front left-hand flange of the cylinder block, and locate it in the timing hole in the rear of the flywheel/driveplate (see illustrations). A purpose-made Peugeot tool No 0132-QY is available from dealers. Note that it may be necessary to rotate the crankshaft slightly to get the holes to align.

**8** With the crankshaft correctly positioned, insert 8 mm diameter bolts or pins through the timing holes in the camshaft sprockets, and locate them in the holes in the cylinder head (see illustration).

#### All models

**9** The crankshaft and camshaft are now locked in position, preventing unnecessary rotation.

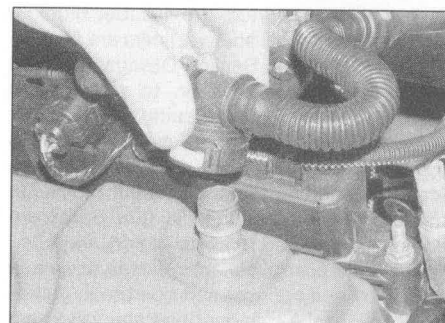
### 4 Cylinder head cover – removal and refitting



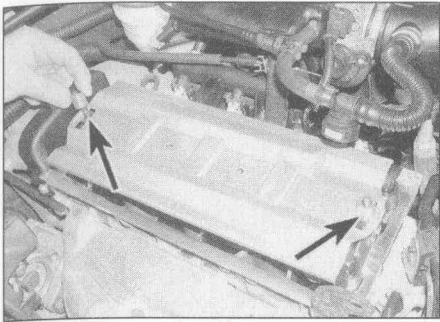
#### 1.4 litre engine

##### Removal

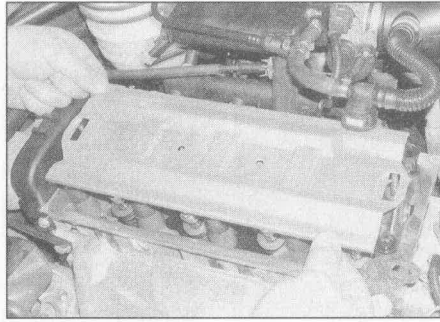
- 1** Disconnect the battery (see Chapter 5A).
- 2** Depress the clip and disconnect the breather hose from the cylinder head cover (see illustration).
- 3** Remove the ignition HT coil as described in Chapter 5B.



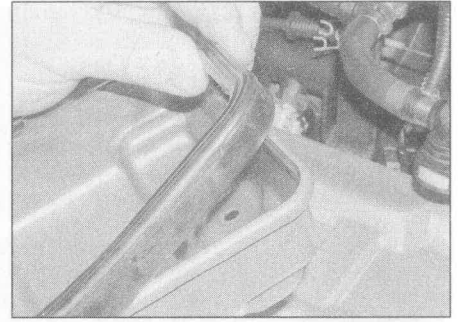
**4.2** Disconnect the breather hose from the cylinder head cover



**4.5a** Remove the spacers (arrowed) from the studs . . .



**4.5b** . . . then lift off the baffle plate



**4.7** Ensure the rubber seal is correctly located on the cylinder head cover

**4** Undo the two retaining nuts and sealing washers (where fitted) then lift off the cylinder head cover, complete with its rubber seal. Examine the seal for signs of damage and deterioration, and if necessary, renew it.

**5** Remove the spacer from each cover stud then lift off the oil baffle plate (see illustrations).

**Refitting**

**6** Carefully clean the cylinder head and cover mating surfaces, and remove all traces of oil.

**7** Fit the rubber seal over the edge of the cylinder head cover, ensuring that it is correctly located along its entire length (see illustration).

**8** Refit the oil baffle plate then fit the spacers to the cover studs.

**9** Carefully refit the cylinder head cover to the engine, taking great care not to displace the rubber seal.

**10** Fit the sealing washers (where fitted) and cover retaining nuts, tightening them to the specified torque.

**11** Refit the ignition HT coil (see Chapter 5B) then reconnect the breather hose securely to the cylinder head cover. On completion reconnect the battery.

**1.6 litre engine**

**Removal**

**12** Disconnect the battery (see Chapter 5A), and remove the ignition coil as described in Chapter 5B.

**13** Working in a spiral pattern, progressively and evenly slack the cylinder head cover bolts, and remove the covers. Recover the gaskets.

**Refitting**

**14** Carefully clean the cylinder head and cover mating surfaces, and remove all traces of oil.

**15** Check the condition of the cover's composite gasket, and re-use it if undamaged. If it is damaged, a repair may be effected using silicone sealing compound.

**16** Refit the cover(s) and tighten the bolts in sequence (see illustration).

**17** Refit the ignition coils (Chapter 5B).

**18** Reconnect the battery.

**5 Timing belt covers – removal and refitting**

**Upper cover removal**

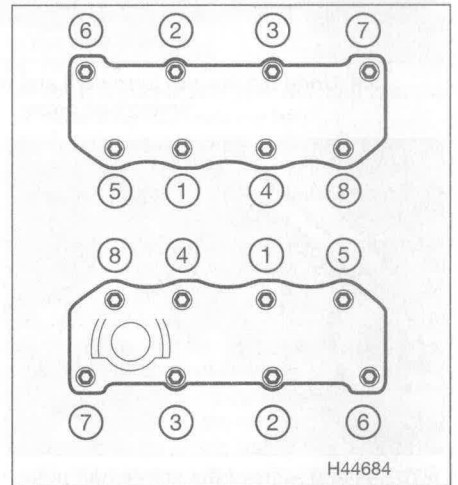
**1.4 litre engines**

**1** Slacken and remove the two retaining bolts (one at the front and one at the rear), and remove the upper timing cover from the cylinder head (see illustrations).

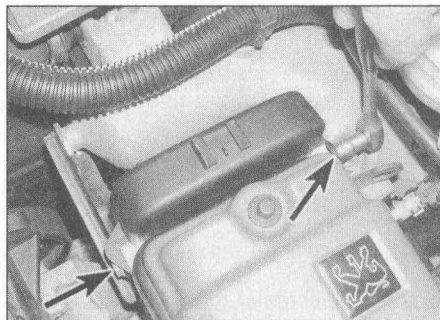
**1.6 litre engines**

**2** Position a trolley jack under the engine, with a block of wood between the jack head and the sump to prevent damage. Raise the jack to take the weight of the engine.

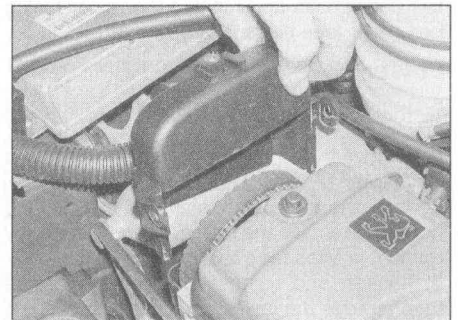
**3** Slacken the right-hand engine mounting bolts, then remove the mounting and brackets from the end of the engine (see illustrations).



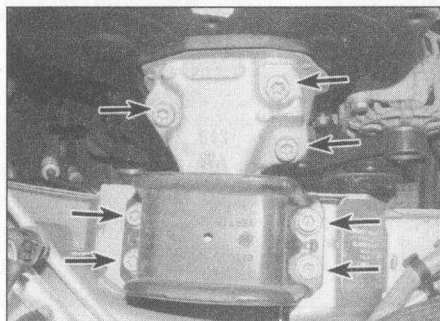
**4.16** Cylinder head cover bolts tightening sequence



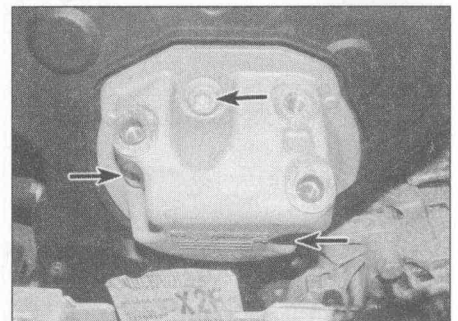
**5.1a** Unscrew the retaining bolts (arrowed) . . .



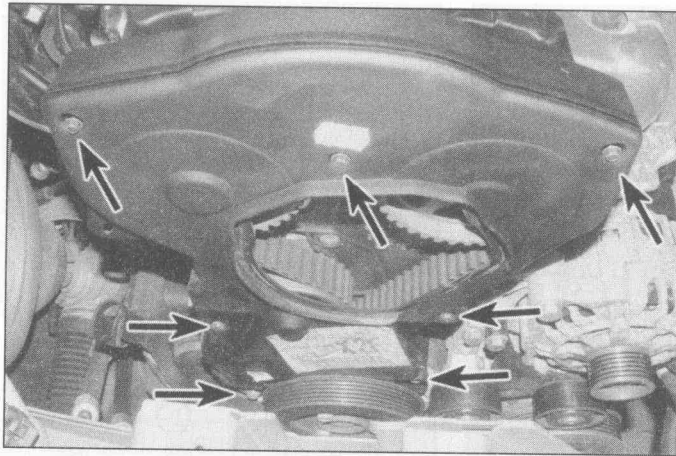
**5.1b** . . . and remove the timing belt upper cover



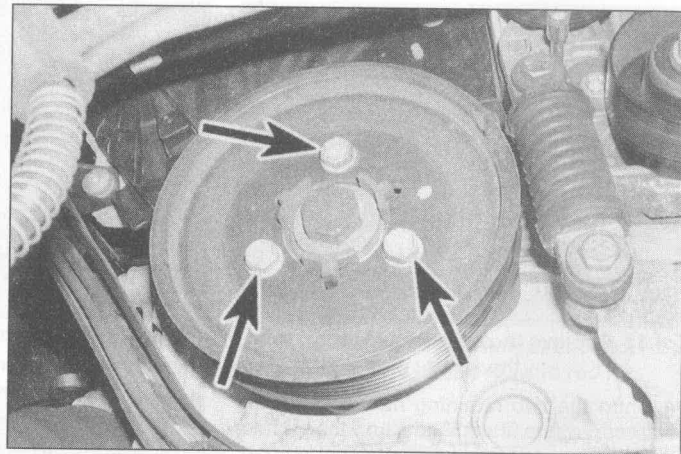
**5.3a** Undo the bolts (arrowed) securing the mounting and bracket . . .



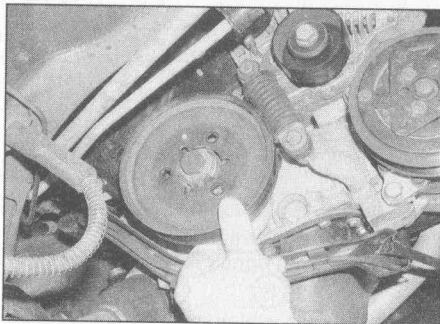
**5.3b** . . . and the bolts (arrowed) securing the bracket to the engine



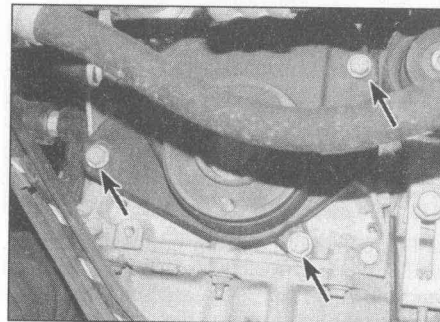
5.4 Undo the screws (arrowed) and remove the upper timing belt cover



5.7a Undo the retaining bolts (arrowed) . . .



5.7b . . . and remove the crankshaft pulley



5.8 Unscrew the bolts (arrowed) and remove the timing belt lower cover

4 Slacken the two lower bolts, then undo the five upper bolts and remove the upper timing belt cover (see illustration).

#### Lower cover removal

5 Remove the upper cover as described previously.

6 Remove the auxiliary drivebelt as described in Chapter 1A.

7 Undo the three crankshaft pulley retaining bolts and remove the pulley, noting which way round it is fitted (see illustrations).

8 Slacken and remove the retaining bolts then remove the lower cover from the engine (see illustration).

#### Inner cover removal

9 Remove the camshaft sprocket(s) and tensioner pulley as described in Section 7.

10 Undo the bolts and remove the inner cover.

#### Refitting

##### Upper cover

11 Refitting is the reverse of removal.

##### Lower cover

12 Locate the lower cover over the timing belt sprocket, and tighten its retaining bolts.

13 Fit the pulley to the end of the crankshaft, ensuring it is fitted the correct way round, and tighten its bolts to the specified torque.

14 Refit the upper cover as described above.

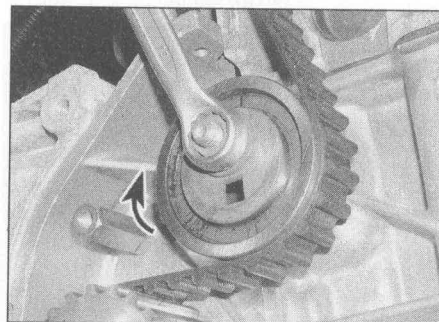
15 Refit and tension the auxiliary drivebelt as described in Chapter 1A.

#### Inner cover

16 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

#### 6 Timing belt – general information, removal and refitting

**Note:** With early 1.4 litre engines (up to engine number 3666765) Peugeot specify the use of a special electronic tool (SEEM C.TRONIC type 105.5 belt tensioning measuring tool) and the rocker arm contact plate (0132-AE) to



6.7 Slacken the nut then pivot the tensioner pulley clockwise to relieve the timing belt tension

correctly set the timing belt tension. If access to this equipment cannot be obtained, an approximate setting can be achieved using the method described below. If this method is used, the tension must be checked using the special electronic tool at the earliest possible opportunity. Do not drive the vehicle over large distances, or use high engine speeds, until the belt tension is known to be correct. Refer to a Peugeot dealer for advice.

**Note:** Timing belts, tensioners and sprockets are not interchangeable between early (up to engine number 3666765) and late 1.4 litre engines.

#### General information

1 The timing belt drives the camshaft(s) and coolant pump from a toothed sprocket on the front of the crankshaft. If the belt breaks or slips in service, the pistons are likely to hit the valve heads, resulting in extensive (and expensive) damage.

2 The timing belt should be renewed at the specified intervals (see Chapter 1A), or earlier if it is contaminated with oil or if it is at all noisy in operation (a 'scraping' noise due to uneven wear).

3 If the timing belt is being removed, it is a wise precaution to check the condition of the coolant pump at the same time (check for signs of coolant leakage). This may avoid the need to remove the timing belt again at a later stage, should the coolant pump fail.

#### Removal

4 Disconnect the battery (see Chapter 5A).

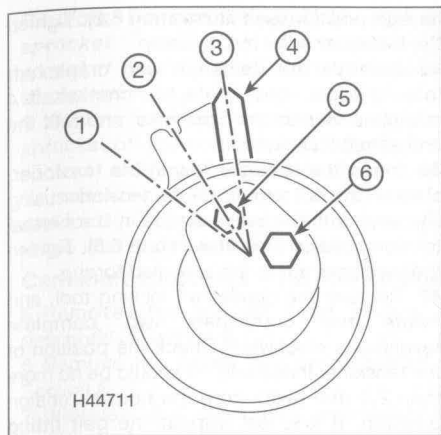
5 Align the engine assembly/valve timing holes as described in Section 3, and lock both the camshaft sprocket(s) and the flywheel/driveplate in position.

**Caution:** Do not attempt to rotate the engine whilst the locking tools are in position.

6 Remove the timing belt lower cover as described in Section 5.

#### 1.4 litre engines

7 Loosen the timing belt tensioner pulley retaining nut (see illustration). Pivot the



**6.8 Timing belt tensioner (1.6 litre engine)**

- 1 Minimum tension position
- 2 Normal tension position
- 3 Maximum tension position
- 4 Index arm
- 5 Hole for hexagonal key
- 6 Tensioner pulley bolt

pulley approximately 60° in a clockwise direction, using a key fitted to the hole in the pulley hub, then retighten the retaining nut. On early engines (up to engine number 3666765), an 8 mm square section key will be required, and a hexagonal key on later engines.

### 1.6 litre engines

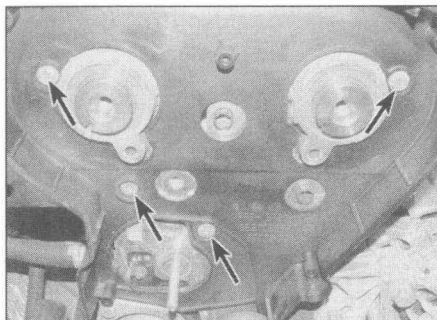
**8** Slacken the timing belt tensioner pulley retaining nut and, using a hexagonal key, rotate the pulley clockwise until the index arm is in the minimum tension position (see illustration). Temporarily tighten the tensioner pulley nut in this position.

### All models

**9** If the timing belt is to be re-used, use white paint or similar to mark the direction of rotation on the belt (if markings do not already exist). Slip the belt off the sprockets.

**10** Check the timing belt carefully for any signs of uneven wear, splitting, or oil contamination. Pay particular attention to the roots of the teeth. Renew the belt if there is the slightest doubt about its condition. If the engine is undergoing an overhaul, and has covered more than 40 000 miles (60 000 km) with the existing belt fitted, renew the belt as a matter of course, regardless of its apparent condition. The cost of a new belt is nothing when compared to the cost of repairs, should the belt break in service. If signs of oil contamination are found, trace the source of the oil leak, and rectify it. Wash down the engine timing belt area and all related components, to remove all traces of oil.

**11** Prior to refitting, thoroughly clean the timing belt sprockets. Check that the tensioner pulley rotates freely, without any sign of roughness. If necessary, renew the tensioner pulley as described in Section 7. Make sure that the locking tools are still in place, as described in Section 3.



**6.10 Undo the bolts (arrowed) and remove the inner cover (1.6 litre engine)**

### Refitting - early 1.4 litre engine\*

\* Up to engine number 3666765

**12** Manoeuvre the timing belt into position, ensuring that the arrows on the belt are pointing in the direction of rotation (clockwise, when viewed from the right-hand end of the engine).

**13** Do not twist the timing belt sharply while refitting it. Fit the belt over the crankshaft and camshaft sprockets. Make sure that the 'front run' of the belt is taut - ie, ensure that any slack is on the tensioner pulley side of the belt. Fit the belt over the coolant pump sprocket and tensioner pulley. Ensure that the belt teeth are seated centrally in the sprockets.

**14** Loosen the tensioner pulley retaining nut. Pivot the pulley anti-clockwise to remove all freeplay from the timing belt, then retighten the nut (see illustration 6.7). Tension the timing belt as described under the relevant sub-heading.

### Tensioning without the electronic tool

**Note:** If this method is used, ensure that the belt tension is checked by a Peugeot dealer at the earliest possible opportunity.

**15** If the special tool is not available, an approximate setting may be achieved by pivoting the tensioner pulley anti-clockwise until it is just possible to twist the timing belt through 90° by finger and thumb (without using excessive force), midway between the crankshaft and camshaft sprockets. The deflection of the belt at the mid-point between the sprockets should be approximately 6.0 mm.

**16** Remove the locking tools from the camshaft sprocket and flywheel.

**17** Using a suitable socket and extension bar on the crankshaft sprocket bolt, rotate the crankshaft through four complete rotations in a clockwise direction (viewed from the right-hand end of the engine). Refit the flywheel locking tool and check that the camshaft timing hole is correctly aligned with the cylinder head hole.

**Caution: Do not at any time rotate the crankshaft anti-clockwise.**

**18** Slacken the tensioner pulley nut, retension the belt as described in paragraph 15, then tighten the tensioner pulley nut to the specified torque.

**19** Remove the flywheel locking tool then

rotate the crankshaft through a further two turns clockwise.

**20** Check that both the camshaft sprocket and flywheel timing holes are still correctly aligned.

**21** If all is well, refit the timing belt covers as described in Section 5.

**22** Clip the wiring harness back into position then reconnect the battery.

### Tensioning with the electronic tool

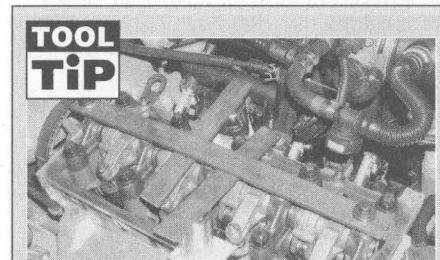
**23** Fit the special belt tensioning measuring equipment to the 'front run' of the timing belt, approximately midway between the camshaft and crankshaft sprockets. Position the tensioner pulley so that the belt is tensioned to a setting of 44 SEEM units, then retighten its retaining nut.

**24** Remove the locking tools from the camshaft sprocket and flywheel, and remove the measuring tool from the belt.

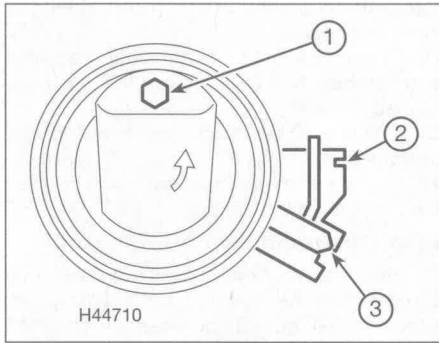
**25** Using a suitable socket and extension bar on the crankshaft sprocket bolt, rotate the crankshaft through four complete rotations in a clockwise direction (viewed from the right-hand end of the engine). Refit the flywheel locking tool and check that the camshaft timing hole is correctly aligned with the cylinder head hole.

**Caution: Do not at any time rotate the crankshaft anti-clockwise.**

**26** To ensure an accurate reading, it is necessary to remove the valve spring load from the camshaft by fitting the rocker arm plate (0132-AE). Remove the cylinder head cover (see Section 4) then back off all the rocker arm contact bolts on the plate (0132-AE). Fit the plate to the cylinder head cover studs, ensuring it is fitted the correct way around then secure it in position with the cylinder head cover nuts. Tighten each rocker arm contact bolt until all rockers are lifted clear of the camshaft lobes. If the rocker arm plate is not available, obtain clearance between the rocker arms and camshaft by slackening the locknut and backing off the adjusting screws on all the necessary rocker arms. It will be found that two of the rocker arms remain in contact with the camshaft, even with the adjusting screws backed fully off. To hold these arms clear of the camshaft, use an arrangement similar to that shown (see Tool Tip).



**To hold their arms clear of the camshaft, fix a stout metal bar to the cylinder head cover studs with the nuts, and lift the arms using shorter lengths of metal bar pivoted on large sockets.**



**6.35 Timing belt tensioner (later 1.4 litre engine)**

- 1 Hole for hexagonal key
- 2 Normal tension position
- 3 Maximum tension position

**Caution:** Do not overtighten the contact bolts any more than is necessary to obtain a small amount of clearance between the rocker arm roller and cam lobe. If the bolts are overtightened, there is a risk of the valves being forced into contact with the pistons, resulting in serious engine damage.

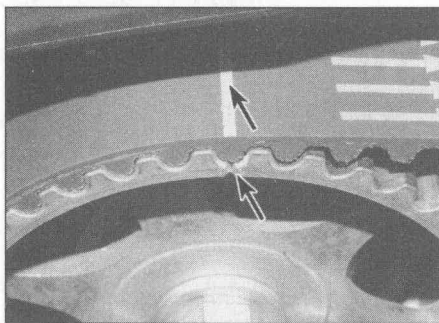
27 Refit the tensioning measuring equipment to the front run of the belt.

28 Slacken the tensioner pulley retaining nut whilst holding the pulley stationary. Gradually release the tensioner pulley until a tension setting of between 29 and 33 SEEM units is indicated on the measuring equipment. With the belt correctly tensioned, hold the pulley stationary and tighten its retaining nut to the specified torque.

29 Remove the measuring tool from the belt then unscrew the nuts and remove the rocker arm contact plate (or home-made alternative) from the cylinder head.

30 Remove the flywheel locking tool, then rotate the crankshaft through another four complete rotations in a clockwise direction. Refit the flywheel locking tool and check that the camshaft timing hole is correctly aligned with the cylinder head hole.

31 If all is well, refit the timing belt covers and cylinder head cover as described in Sections 4 and 5. **Note:** If the rocker arm adjusting screws were moved, adjust the valve clearances before refitting the cylinder head cover.



**6.42 Note the timing belt marks which correspond to the camshaft sprockets and crankshaft sprocket**

**Refitting – later 1.4 litre engine\***

\* From engine number 3666766

32 These engines are equipped with a spring-loaded tensioner, so access to the belt tensioning gauge is unnecessary.

33 Manoeuvre the timing belt into position, ensuring that the arrows on the belt are pointing in the direction of rotation (clockwise, when viewed from the right-hand end of the engine).

34 Do not twist the timing belt sharply while refitting it. Fit the belt over the crankshaft and camshaft sprockets. Make sure that the ‘front run’ of the belt is taut – ie, ensure that any slack is on the tensioner pulley side of the belt. Fit the belt over the coolant pump sprocket and tensioner pulley. Ensure that the belt teeth are seated centrally in the sprockets.

35 Remove the crankshaft and camshaft locking tools, then slacken the tensioner pulley nut and, using a hexagonal key, rotate the pulley anti-clockwise until the index arm is in the maximum tension position (see illustration). Tighten the pulley retaining nut.

36 Using a socket on the crankshaft pulley bolt, rotate the crankshaft clockwise 10 complete revolutions, and refit the crankshaft locking tool as described in Section 3.

37 Check the timing is correct by inserting the camshaft sprocket locking tool (Section 3). If the tool cannot be inserted, slacken the tensioner, remove the belt, refit the locking tools, and start again from Paragraph 33.

38 Remove the crankshaft and camshaft locking tools.

39 Hold the hexagonal key in the tensioner pulley to maintain the tension, then slacken the pulley nut, and rotate the tensioner to bring the index arm to the normal tension position (see illustration 6.35). Tighten the pulley nut to the specified torque.

40 Rotate the crankshaft two complete revolutions, and check that the crankshaft and camshaft locking tools can still be inserted.

41 The remainder of refitting is a reversal of removal.

**Refitting – 1.6 litre engines**

42 Manoeuvre the timing belt into position, ensuring that the arrows on the belt are pointing in the direction of rotation (clockwise, when viewed from the right-hand end of the engine). Note that there are three marks on a new belt which correspond to marks on the crankshaft and camshaft sprockets (see illustration).

43 Do not twist the timing belt sharply while refitting it. Fit the belt over the crankshaft and camshaft sprockets aligning the marks on the belt with those on the crankshaft and camshaft sprockets. Make sure that the ‘front run’ of the belt is taut – ie, ensure that any slack is on the tensioner pulley side of the belt. Fit the belt over the coolant pump sprocket and tensioner pulley. Ensure that the belt teeth are seated centrally in the sprockets.

44 Insert the hexagonal key on the tensioner pulley, slacken the pulley nut and rotate the key to bring the index arm to the maximum

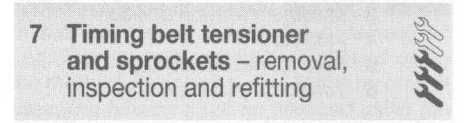
tension position (see illustration 6.8). Tighten the tensioner roller nut securely.

45 Remove the camshaft and crankshaft locking tools, and rotate the crankshaft 4 complete revolutions clockwise, and refit the crankshaft locking tool.

46 Insert the hexagon key in the tensioner, slacken the nut and rotate the tensioner using the key, until the index arm is in the normal tension position (see illustration 6.8). Tighten the tensioner nut to the specified torque.

47 Remove the crankshaft locking tool, and rotate the crankshaft two complete revolutions clockwise. Check the position of the tensioner index arm – it should be no more than 2.0 mm away from the normal tension position. If it is not, repeat the belt fitting procedure from Paragraph 42.

48 The remainder of refitting is a reversal of removal.



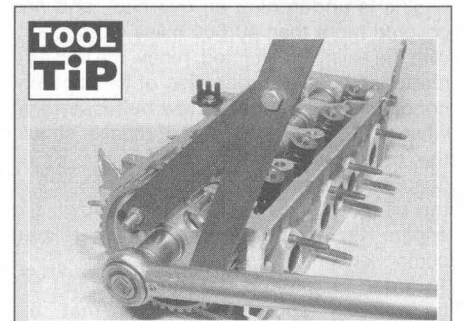
**Removal**

**Camshaft sprocket – 1.4 litre engine**

1 Remove the timing belt as described in Section 6.

2 Withdraw the crankshaft and camshaft locking tools, and using a spanner or socket on the crankshaft pulley bolt, rotate the crankshaft backwards (anti-clockwise) 90°. This is to prevent any accidental contact between the pistons and valves.

3 Slacken the camshaft sprocket retaining bolt and remove it, along with its washer. To prevent the camshaft rotating as the bolt is slackened, a sprocket-holding tool will be required. In the absence of the special Peugeot tool, an acceptable substitute can be fabricated as follows. Use two lengths of steel strip (one long, the other short), and three nuts and bolts; one nut and bolt forms the pivot of a forked tool, with the remaining two nuts and bolts at the tips of the ‘forks’ to engage with the sprocket spokes (see Tool Tip).



**Using a home-made tool to hold the camshaft sprocket stationary whilst the bolt is tightened (shown with the cylinder head removed).**

**Caution:** Do not attempt to use the sprocket locking pin to prevent the sprocket from rotating whilst the bolt is slackened.

4 With the retaining bolt removed, slide the sprocket off the end of the camshaft. If the sprocket locating pin is a loose fit, remove it for safe-keeping. Examine the camshaft oil seal for signs of oil leakage and, if necessary, renew it as described in Section 8.

#### Camshaft sprockets – 1.6 litre engine

5 Remove the cylinder head covers as described in Section 4.

6 Remove the timing belt as described in Section 6.

7 Withdraw the crankshaft and camshaft locking tools, and using a spanner or socket on the crankshaft pulley bolt, rotate the crankshaft backwards (anti-clockwise) 90°. This is to prevent any accidental contact between the pistons and valves.

8 Using an open-ended spanner on the square section to counterhold the camshaft, undo the sprocket retaining bolt (see illustration).

**Caution:** Do not attempt to use the sprocket locking pin to prevent the sprocket from rotating whilst the bolt is slackened.

9 With the retaining bolt removed, slide the sprocket off the end of the camshaft. Note that the key is integral with the sprocket. Examine the camshaft oil seals for signs of oil leakage and, if necessary, renew it as described in Section 8.

#### Crankshaft sprocket

10 Remove the timing belt as described in Section 6.

11 Slacken the crankshaft sprocket bolt. To prevent crankshaft rotation on manual transmission models, select top gear, and have an assistant apply the brakes firmly. If the engine has been removed from the vehicle or the vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission unit, it will be necessary to lock the flywheel/driveplate (see Section 15).

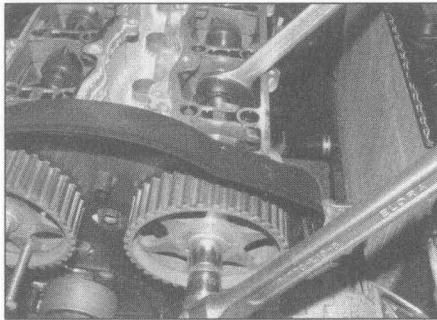
**Caution:** Do not be tempted to use the flywheel/driveplate locking pin to prevent the crankshaft from rotating; temporarily remove the locking pin prior to slackening the pulley bolt, then refit it once the bolt has been slackened.

12 Unscrew the retaining bolt and washer, then slide the sprocket off the end of the crankshaft (see illustrations).

13 If the Woodruff key is a loose fit in the crankshaft, remove it and store it with the sprocket for safe-keeping. If necessary, also slide the flanged spacer (where fitted) off the end of the crankshaft (see illustration). Examine the crankshaft oil seal for signs of oil leakage and, if necessary, renew as described in Section 14.

#### Tensioner pulley

14 Remove the lower timing belt cover (see Section 5).



7.8 Use an open-ended spanner to counterhold the camshaft whilst slackening the bolt

15 Lock the camshaft and crankshaft at TDC on No 1 cylinder as described in Section 3.

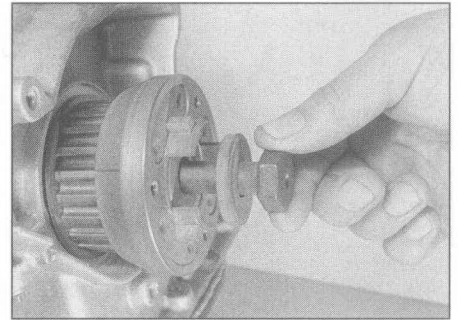
16 Slacken and remove the timing belt tensioner pulley retaining nut, and slide the pulley off its mounting stud. Examine the mounting stud for signs of damage and, if necessary, renew it.

#### Inspection

17 Clean the sprockets thoroughly, and renew any that show signs of wear, damage or cracks.

18 Clean the tensioner assembly, but do not use any strong solvent which may enter the pulley bearing. Check that the pulley rotates freely about its hub, with no sign of stiffness or of free play. Renew the tensioner pulley if there is any doubt about its condition, or if there are any obvious signs of wear or damage.

19 Inspect the timing belt (see Section 6).



7.12a Remove the retaining bolt and washer . . .

Renew the belt if there is any doubt about its condition.

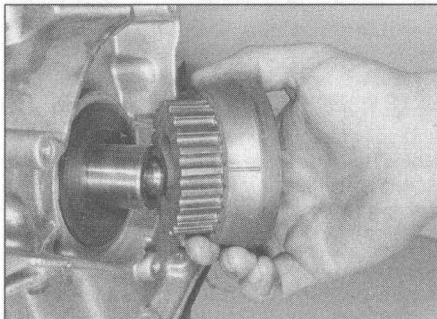
#### Refitting

##### Camshaft sprocket

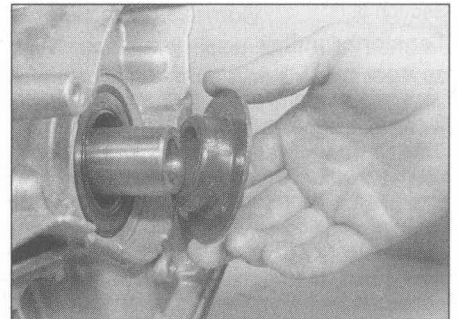
20 Refit the locating pin (where removed) then locate the sprocket on the end of the camshaft. Ensure that the locating pin is correctly engaged with the sprocket and the cut-out in the camshaft end. Note that on 1.6 litre engines, the exhaust sprocket is marked E and the inlet sprocket marked A (see illustrations).

21 Refit the sprocket retaining bolt and washer. Tighten the bolt to the specified torque, whilst retaining the sprocket/camshaft with the method used on removal.

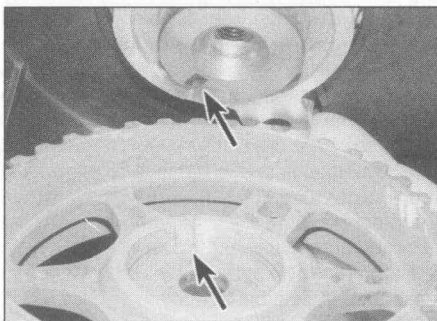
22 Realign the timing hole in the camshaft sprocket (see Section 3) with the corresponding hole in the cylinder head, and refit the locking pin.



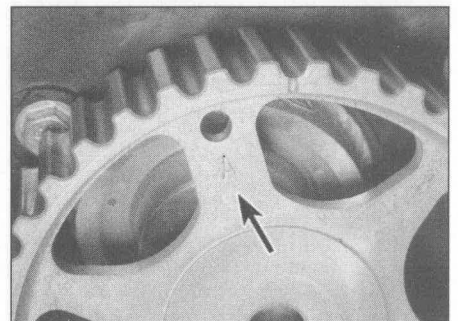
7.12b . . . then slide off the crankshaft sprocket



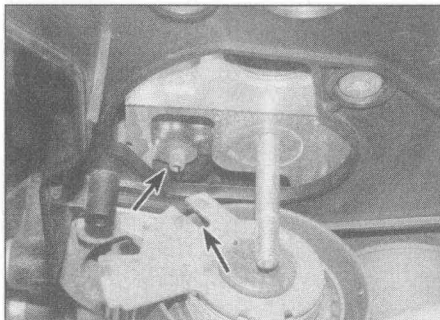
7.13 Remove the Woodruff key and flanged spacer (where fitted) from the crankshaft



7.20a The locating pin must engage with the slot (arrowed)



7.20b On 1.6 litre engines, the inlet sprocket is marked A (arrowed) and the exhaust E



**7.29** The cut-out aligns the locating pin (arrowed)

**23** Rotate the crankshaft 90° in the normal direction of rotation (clockwise), until the crankshaft locking pin can be inserted.

**24** Refit the timing belt as described in Section 6. On 1.6 litre engines, refit the cylinder head covers as described in Section 4.

**Crankshaft sprocket**

**25** Locate the Woodruff key in the crankshaft end, then slide on the flanged spacer (where fitted) aligning its slot with the Woodruff key.

**26** Align the crankshaft sprocket slot with the Woodruff key, and slide it onto the end of the crankshaft.

**27** Temporarily remove the locking pin from the rear of the flywheel/driveplate, then refit the crankshaft sprocket retaining bolt and washer. Tighten the bolt to the specified torque, whilst preventing crankshaft rotation using the method employed on removal. Refit the locking pin to the rear of the flywheel/driveplate.

**28** Refit the timing belt as described in Section 6.

**Tensioner pulley**

**29** Refit the tensioner pulley to its mounting stud, ensuring the cut-out aligns with the pin (see illustration), and fit the retaining nut.

**30** Ensure that the 'front run' of the belt is taut – ie, ensure that any slack is on the pulley side of the belt. Check that the belt is centrally located on all its sprockets. Rotate the pulley anti-clockwise to remove all free play from the timing belt, then tighten the pulley retaining nut securely.

**31** Tension the timing belt as described in Section 6.



**8.2** Carefully prise the camshaft oil seal out with a flat-bladed screwdriver

**32** Once the belt is correctly tensioned, refit the timing belt covers as described in Section 5.

**8 Camshaft oil seal(s) – renewal**

**Note:** If the camshaft oil seal has been leaking, check the timing belt for signs of oil contamination; the belt must be renewed if signs of oil contamination are found. Ensure that all traces of oil are removed from the sprockets and surrounding area before the new belt is fitted.

**1** Remove the camshaft sprocket as described in Section 7.

**2** Punch or drill two small holes opposite each other in the oil seal. Screw a self-tapping screw into each, and pull on the screws with pliers to extract the seal. Alternatively, carefully prise the seal out using a flat-bladed screwdriver (see illustration).

**3** Clean the seal housing, and polish off any burrs or raised edges, which may have caused the seal to fail in the first place.

**4** Lubricate the lips of the new seal with clean engine oil, and drive it into position until it seats on its locating shoulder. Use a suitable tubular drift, such as a socket, which bears only on the hard outer edge of the seal. Take care not to damage the seal lips during fitting. Note that the seal lips should face inwards.

**5** Refit the camshaft sprocket as described in Section 7.

**9 Valve clearances – checking and adjustment**

**Note:** The valve clearances must be checked and adjusted only when the engine is cold.

**Note:** This procedure applies only to the 1.4 litre SOHC 8V engine – the valve clearances on the 1.6 litre DOHC 16V engine are maintained by hydraulic compensator units built into the cam followers.

**1** The importance of having the valve clearances correctly adjusted cannot be overstressed, as they vitally affect the performance of the engine. If the clearances are too big, the engine will be noisy (characteristic rattling or tapping noises) and engine efficiency will be reduced, as the valves open too late and close too early. A more serious problem arises if the clearances are too small, however. If this is the case, the valves may not close fully when the engine is hot, resulting in serious damage to the engine (eg, burnt valve seats and/or cylinder head warping/cracking). The clearances are checked and adjusted as follows.

**2** Remove the cylinder head cover as described in Section 4.

**3** The engine can now be turned using a suitable socket and extension bar fitted to the crankshaft sprocket bolt.

**4** It is important that the clearance of each valve is checked and adjusted only when the valve is fully closed, with the rocker arm resting on the heel of the cam (directly opposite the peak). This can be ensured by carrying out the adjustments in the following sequence, noting that No 1 cylinder is at the transmission end of the engine. The correct valve clearances are given in the Specifications at the start of this Chapter. The valve locations can be determined from the position of the manifolds.

**Valve fully open Adjust valves**

No 1 exhaust	No 3 intake / No 4 exhaust
No 3 exhaust	No 4 intake / No 2 exhaust
No 4 exhaust	No 2 intake / No 1 exhaust
No 2 exhaust	No 1 intake / No 3 exhaust

**5** With the relevant valve fully open, check the clearances of the two valves specified. The clearances are checked by inserting a feeler blade of the correct thickness between the valve stem and the rocker arm adjusting screw. The feeler blade should be a light, sliding fit. If adjustment is necessary, slacken the adjusting screw locknut, and turn the screw as necessary (see illustration). Once the correct clearance is obtained, hold the adjusting screw and tighten the locknut securely. Once the locknut has been tightened, recheck the valve clearance, and adjust again if necessary.

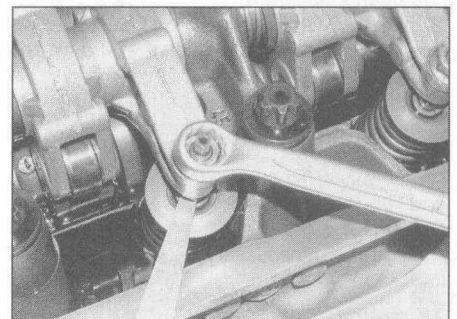
**6** Rotate the crankshaft until the next valve in the sequence is fully open, and check the clearances of the next two specified valves.

**7** Repeat the procedure until all eight valve clearances have been checked (and if necessary, adjusted), then refit the cylinder head cover as described in Section 4.

**10 Camshaft(s) and rocker arms/followers – removal, inspection and refitting**

**General information**

**1** The valves are operated by followers incorporating hydraulic compensator units, between the camshafts and the top of the valves on 1.6 litre engines. On 1.4 litre engines, the valves are operated by rockers arms between the camshaft and the top of the valves.



**9.5** Check the valve clearances using feeler gauges

The rocker arm assembly is secured to the top of the cylinder head by the cylinder head bolts. Although in theory it is possible to undo the head bolts and remove the rocker arm assembly without removing the head, in practice, this is not recommended. Once the bolts have been removed, the head gasket will be disturbed, and the gasket will almost certainly leak or blow after refitting. For this reason, removal of the rocker arm assembly cannot be done without removing the cylinder head and renewing the head gasket.

2 On 1.6 litre engines, the camshafts can be removed upwards from the cylinder head. On 1.4 litre engines, the camshaft is slid out of the right-hand end of the cylinder head, and it therefore cannot be removed without first removing the cylinder head, due to a lack of clearance.

## Removal

### Rocker arms – 1.4 litre engine

3 Remove the cylinder head as described in Section 11.

4 To dismantle the rocker arm assembly, carefully prise off the circlip from the right-hand end of the rocker shaft; retain the rocker pedestal, to prevent it being sprung off the end of the shaft. Slide the various components off the end of the shaft, keeping all components in their correct fitted order (see illustration). Make a note of each component's correct fitted position and orientation as it is removed, to ensure it is fitted correctly on reassembly. **Note:** Avoid touching the rocker arm roller bearing surfaces with your fingers.

5 To separate the left-hand pedestal and shaft, first unscrew the cylinder head cover retaining stud from the top of the pedestal; this can be achieved using a stud extractor, or two nuts locked together (see illustration). With the stud removed, unscrew the grub screw from the top of the pedestal, and withdraw the rocker shaft.

### Camshaft – 1.4 litre engine

6 Remove the cylinder head as described in Section 11.

7 With the head on a bench, remove the locking pin, then remove the camshaft sprocket as described in paragraphs 5 and 6 of Section 7.

8 Unbolt the coolant housing from the left-hand end of the cylinder head.

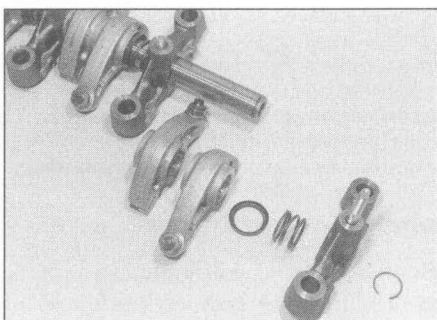
9 Undo the retaining bolt and slide out the camshaft thrust fork (see illustration).

10 Using a large flat-bladed screwdriver, carefully prise the oil seal out of the right-hand end of the cylinder head, then slide out the camshaft (see illustrations).

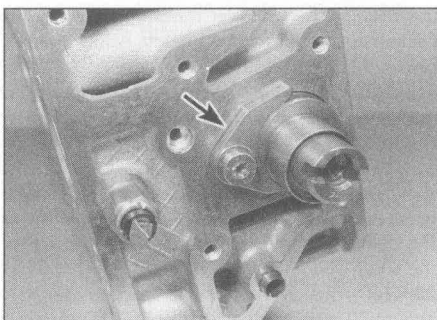
### Camshafts/followers – 1.6 litre engine

11 Remove the camshaft sprockets as described in Section 7. Undo the screws and securing the inner timing cover to the cylinder head.

12 Starting from the outside, working in a



10.4 Remove the circlip and slide the components from the rocker shaft



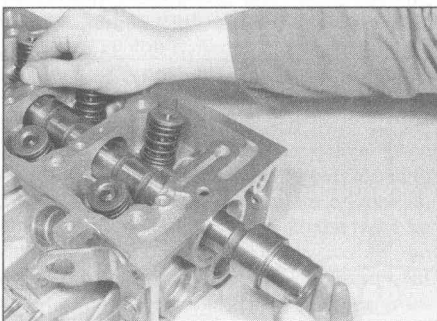
10.9 Undo the bolt and slide out the camshaft thrust fork (arrowed)

spiral pattern, progressively and evenly slacken the camshaft bearing housing retaining bolts, and lift the housing from the cylinder head (see illustration).

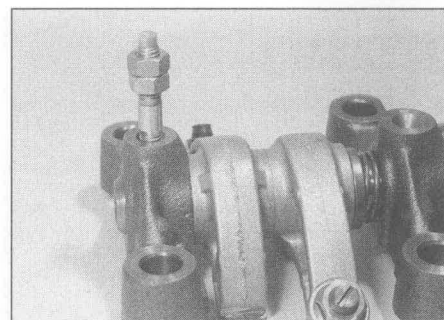
13 Identify each camshaft for position – the intake camshaft is at the rear and the exhaust camshaft is at the front of the cylinder head. Also note the TDC position of each camshaft for correct refitting.

14 Remove the camshafts by pressing on the transmission ends to release the opposite ends from their bearings. Withdrawn the camshafts from the cylinder head and slide the oil seals from the ends.

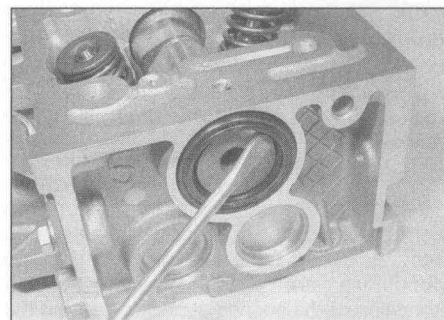
15 Obtain 16 small, clean plastic containers, and number them intake 1 to 8 and exhaust 1 to 8; alternatively, divide a larger container into 16 compartments and number each compartment accordingly. Using a rubber sucker, withdraw each follower in turn, and



10.10b ... then slide out the camshaft from the cylinder head



10.5 Lock two nuts together to enable the stud to be unscrewed from the left-hand end pedestal



10.10a Prise out the oil seal ...

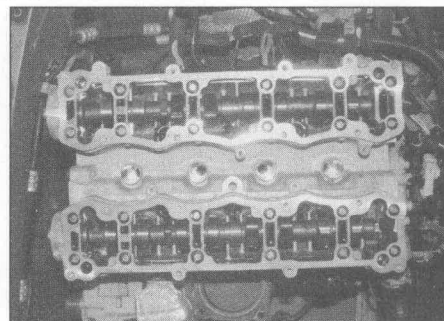
place it in its respective container. Don't interchange the followers, the wear rate will be much increased.

## Inspection

### Rocker arm assembly

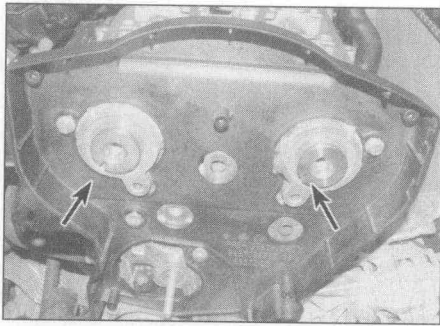
16 Examine the rocker arm roller surfaces which contact the camshaft lobes for wear ridges and scoring. Renew any rocker arms on which the rollers show signs of damage. If a rocker arm roller surface is badly scored, also examine the corresponding lobe on the camshaft for wear, as both will likely be worn. Renew worn components as necessary. The rocker arm assembly can be dismantled as described in paragraphs 4 and 5.

17 Inspect the ends of the (valve clearance) adjusting screws for signs of wear or damage, and renew as required.



10.12 Evenly and progressively slacken the camshaft housing retaining bolts





**10.32** Position the intake camshaft locking notch at the 7 o'clock position and the exhaust camshaft at 8 o'clock (arrowed)

**18** If the rocker arm assembly has been dismantled, examine the rocker arm and shaft bearing surfaces for wear ridges and scoring. If there are obvious signs of wear, the relevant rocker arm(s) and/or the shaft must be renewed.

**Camshaft(s)**

**19** Examine the camshaft bearing surfaces and cam lobes for signs of wear ridges and scoring. Renew the camshaft if any of these conditions are apparent. Examine the condition of the bearing surfaces, both on the camshaft journals and in the cylinder head/bearing housing. If the head bearing surfaces are worn excessively, the cylinder head will need to be renewed. If the necessary measuring equipment is available, camshaft bearing journal wear can be checked by direct measurement, noting that No 1 journal is at the transmission end of the head.

**20** On 1.4 litre engines, examine the thrust fork for signs of wear or scoring, and renew as necessary.

**21** On 1.6 litre engines, examine the hydraulic

follower surfaces which contact the camshaft lobes for wear ridges and scoring. Renew any follower where these conditions are apparent. If a follower bearing surface is badly scored, also examine the corresponding lobe on the camshaft for wear, as it is likely that both will be worn. Renew any components as necessary.

**Refitting**

**Rocker arms – 1.4 litre engine**

**22** If the rocker arm assembly was dismantled, refit the rocker shaft to the left-hand pedestal, aligning its locating hole with the pedestal threaded hole. Refit the grub screw, and tighten it securely. With the grub screw in position, refit the cylinder head cover mounting stud to the pedestal, and tighten it securely. Apply a smear of clean engine oil to the shaft, then slide on all removed components, ensuring each is correctly fitted in its original position. **Note:** Avoid touching the rocker arm roller bearing surfaces with your fingers. Once all components are in position on the shaft, compress the right-hand pedestal and refit the circlip. Ensure that the circlip is correctly located in its groove on the shaft.

**23** Refit the cylinder head and rocker arm assembly as described in Section 11.

**Camshaft – 1.4 litre engine**

**24** Ensure that the cylinder head and camshaft bearing surfaces are clean, then liberally oil the camshaft bearings and lobes. Slide the camshaft back into position in the cylinder head.

**25** Locate the thrust fork with the left-hand end of the camshaft. Refit the fork retaining bolt, tightening it to the specified torque setting.

**26** Ensure that the coolant housing and cylinder head mating surfaces are clean and

dry, then apply a smear of sealant to the housing mating surface. Refit the housing to the left-hand end of the head, and securely tighten its retaining bolts.

**27** Lubricate the lips of the new seal with clean engine oil, then drive it into position until it seats on its locating shoulder. Use a suitable tubular drift, such as a socket, which bears only on the hard outer edge of the seal. Take care not to damage the seal lips during fitting. Note that the seal lips should face inwards.

**28** Refit the camshaft sprocket as described in paragraphs 20 to 24 of Section 7.

**29** Refit the cylinder head as described in Section 11.

**Camshafts/followers – 1.6 litre engine**

**30** Before commencing refitting, remove all traces of oil from the bearing housing retaining bolts holes in the cylinder head, using a clean rag. Also ensure that both the cylinder head and bearing housing mating faces are clean and free from oil.

**31** Liberally oil the cylinder head hydraulic follower bores and the followers. Carefully refit the followers to the cylinder head, ensuring that each follower is refitted to its original bore. Some care will be required to enter the followers squarely into their bores. Check that each follower rotates freely.

**32** Liberally oil the camshaft bearings in the cylinder head and the camshaft lobes, then refit the camshafts to the cylinder head in the previously noted positions. The locating notch in the right-hand end of the camshafts should be positioned at the 7 o'clock position on the intake camshaft, and the 8 o'clock position on the exhaust camshaft (see illustration).

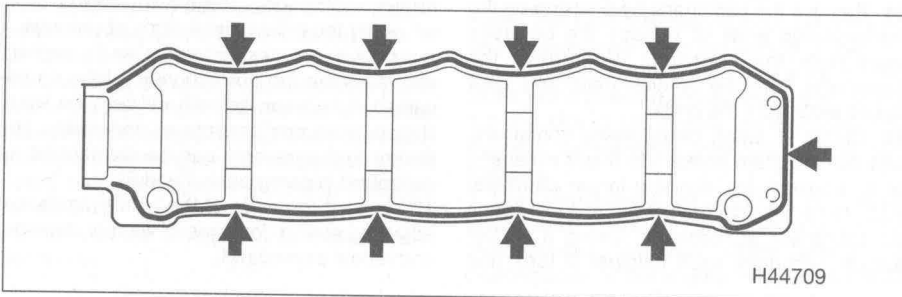
**33** Apply a bead of silicone-based jointing compound around the perimeter of the mating faces and around the retaining bolt hole locations (see illustration).

**34** Refit the bearing housing, and tighten the bolts progressively, in sequence, to the specified torque (see illustration).

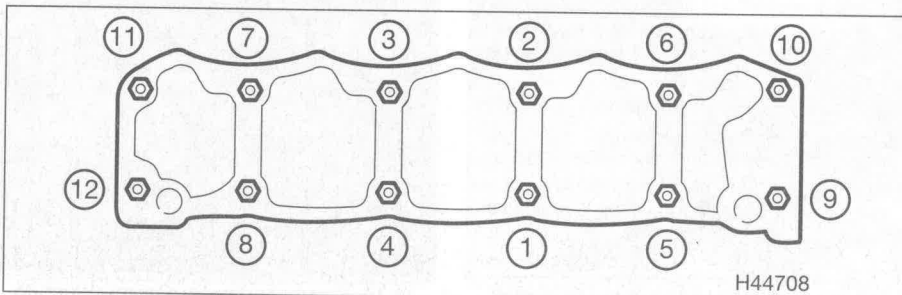
**35** Fit new oil seals with reference to Section 8.

**36** Ensure that the lower edge of the inner timing belt cover engages correctly with the upper edge of the crankshaft oil seal housing (see illustration).

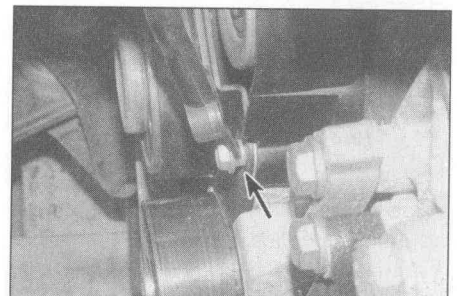
**37** Refit the camshaft sprockets as described in Section 7.



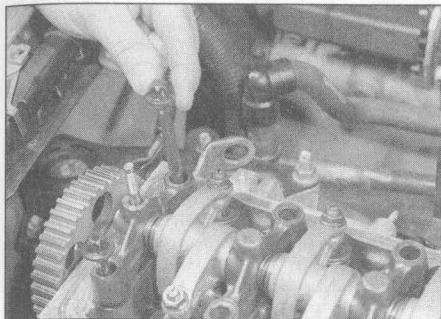
**10.33** Apply a bead of silicone sealant to the cylinder head mating surface (arrowed)



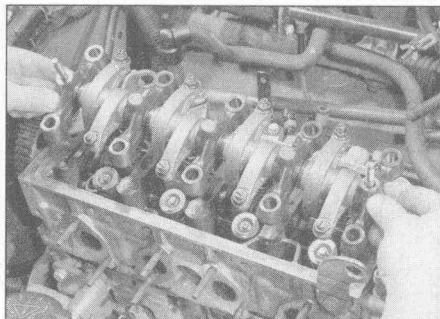
**10.34** Camshaft bearing housing bolts tightening sequence



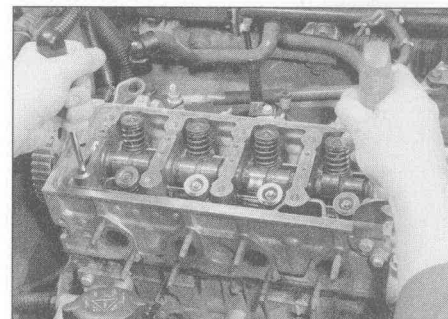
**10.36** Ensure the lower edge of the inner timing belt cover engages correctly (arrowed)



**11.11** Slacken and remove the cylinder head bolts



**11.13** Lift off the rocker arm assembly



**11.14** Use two stout screwdrivers to rock the cylinder head free from the block

## 11 Cylinder head – removal and refitting



**Note:** Ensure the engine is cold before removing the cylinder head.

### Removal

- 1 Disconnect the battery (see Chapter 5A).
  - 2 Drain the cooling system as described in Chapter 1A.
  - 3 Remove the ignition HT coil assembly (see Chapter 5B) then remove the spark plugs (see Chapter 1A).
  - 4 Remove the cylinder head cover(s) as described in Section 4.
  - 5 Align the engine assembly/valve timing holes as described in Section 3, and lock both the camshaft sprocket(s) and flywheel/driveplate in position.
- Caution:** Do not attempt to rotate the engine whilst the tools are in position.
- 6 Note that the following text assumes that the cylinder head will be removed with both intake and exhaust manifolds attached; this is easier, but makes it a bulky and heavy assembly to handle. If it is wished to remove the manifolds first, proceed as described in Chapter 4A.
  - 7 Carry out the following operations as described in Chapter 4A:
    - a) Disconnect the exhaust system front pipe from the manifold. Disconnect or release the oxygen sensor wiring.
    - b) Remove the air cleaner housing and intake duct assembly.
    - c) Disconnect the fuel feed and return hoses from the fuel rail (plug all openings, to prevent loss of fuel and entry of dirt into the fuel system).
    - d) Note their fitted positions, then disconnect the relevant electrical connectors and vacuum/breather hoses from the intake manifold.
    - e) Where necessary unbolt the support bracket from the intake manifold.
    - f) Disconnect the accelerator cable (where fitted).
  - 8 Remove the timing belt inner cover as described in Section 5.
  - 9 Undo the mounting bolt and remove the

upper section of the oil dipstick guide tube.

**10** Note their fitted positions, then slacken the retaining clips, and disconnect the coolant hoses from the cylinder head. Likewise, note the routing, then disconnect all electrical connectors from the cylinder head.

**11** Working in the reverse of the tightening sequence (see illustration 11.30a or 11.30b), progressively slacken the cylinder head bolts by half a turn at a time, until all bolts can be unscrewed by hand (see illustration).

**12** On 1.6 litre engines, lift the cylinder head away; seek assistance if possible, as it is a heavy assembly, especially if it is being removed complete with the manifolds.

**13** On 1.4 litre engines, with all the cylinder head bolts removed, lift the rocker arm assembly off the cylinder head (see illustration). **Note:** Avoid touching the rocker arm roller bearing surfaces with your fingers. Note the locating pins which are fitted to the base of each rocker arm pedestal, remove it for safe-keeping.

**14** On 1.4 litre engines, the joint between the cylinder head and gasket, and the cylinder block/crankcase must now be broken without disturbing the wet liners. To break the joint, obtain two stout screwdrivers which fit into the cylinder head bolt holes. Gently 'rock' the cylinder head free towards the front of the car (see illustration). Do not try to swivel the head on the cylinder block/crankcase; it is located by dowels, as well as by the tops of the liners. **Note:** If care is not taken and the liners are moved, there is also a possibility of the bottom seals being disturbed, causing leakage after refitting the head. When the joint is broken, lift the cylinder head away; seek assistance if possible, as it is a heavy assembly, especially if it is being removed complete with the manifolds.

**15** On all models, remove the gasket from the top of the block, noting the two locating dowels. If the locating dowels are a loose fit, remove them and store them with the head for safe-keeping. Do not discard the gasket – on some models it will be needed for identification purposes (see paragraphs 20 and 21). Operations that require the rotation of the crankshaft (eg, cleaning the piston crowns), should only be carried out on 1.4 litre

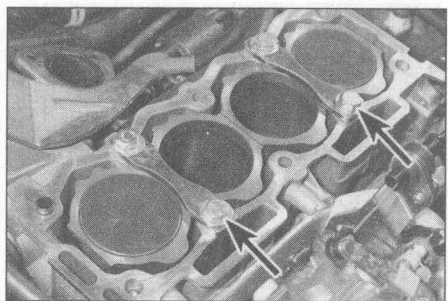
engines once the cylinder liners are firmly clamped in position (see illustration). In the absence of the special Peugeot liner clamps, the liners can be clamped in position using large flat washers positioned underneath suitable-length bolts. Alternatively, the original head bolts could be temporarily refitted, with suitable spacers fitted to their shanks.

**Caution:** On 1.4 litre engines, do not attempt to rotate the crankshaft with the cylinder head removed, otherwise the wet liners may be displaced.

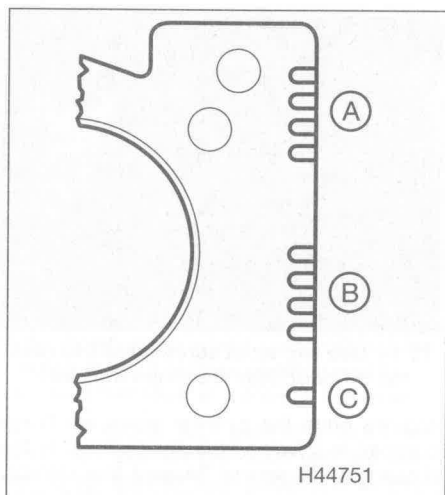
**16** If the cylinder head is to be dismantled for overhaul, remove the camshaft as described in Section 10, then refer to Part D of this Chapter.

### Preparation for refitting

**17** The mating faces of the cylinder head and cylinder block/crankcase must be perfectly clean before refitting the head. Use a hard plastic or wood scraper to remove all traces of gasket and carbon; also clean the piston crowns. **Note:** On 1.4 litre engines, clamp the liners in position before turning the crankshaft (see paragraph 15). Take particular care during the cleaning operations, as aluminium alloy is easily damaged. Also, make sure that the carbon is not allowed to enter the oil and water passages – this is particularly important for the lubrication system, as carbon could block the oil supply to the engine's components. Using adhesive tape and paper, seal the water, oil and bolt holes in the cylinder block/crankcase. To prevent carbon entering the gap between the pistons and bores, smear a little grease in the gap. After



**11.15** On 1.4 litre engines, clamp the cylinder liners in position before rotating the crankshaft (clamps arrowed)



**11.21 Cylinder head gasket identification markings**

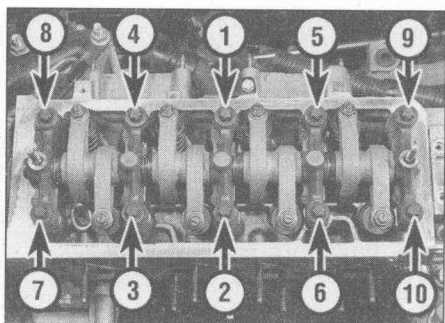
- A Engine type identification cut-out locations
- B Gasket manufacturer identification cut-out locations
- C Gasket thickness identification cut-out locations

cleaning each piston, use a small brush to remove all traces of grease and carbon from the gap, then wipe away the remainder with a clean rag. Clean all the pistons in the same way.

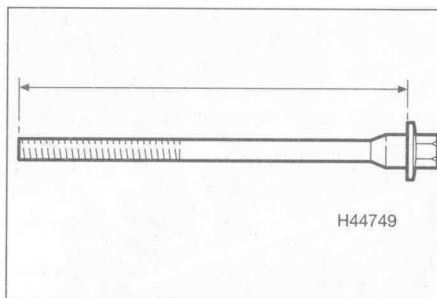
**18** Check the mating surfaces of the cylinder block/crankcase and the cylinder head for nicks, deep scratches and other damage. If slight, they may be removed carefully with a file, but if excessive, machining may be the only alternative to renewal.

**19** If warpage of the cylinder head gasket surface is suspected, use a straight-edge to check it for distortion. Refer to Part D of this Chapter if necessary.

**20** When purchasing a new cylinder head gasket, it is essential that a gasket of the correct thickness is obtained. On some models only one thickness of gasket is available, so this is not a problem. On other models, there are two different thicknesses available – the standard gasket, and a slightly thicker 'repair' gasket (+ 0.2 mm). The gaskets can be identified as described in the following



**11.30a Cylinder head bolt tightening sequence (1.4 litre engine)**

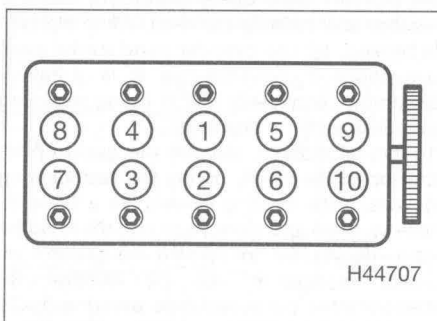


**11.22 Measure the bolt length from the underside of the bolt head to the end of the bolt**

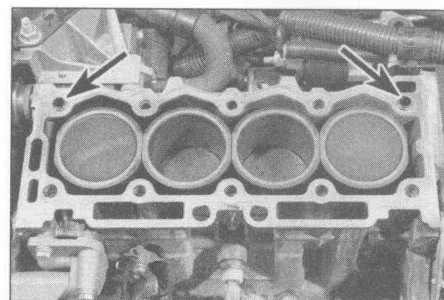
paragraph, using the cut-outs on the left-hand end of the gasket.

**21** With the gasket fitted the correct way up on the cylinder block, there will be a single or double cut-out at the rear of the left-hand side of the gasket identifying the engine type (eg, TU3JP engine). In the centre of the gasket there will likely be another series of between 0 and 4 cut-outs, identifying the manufacturer of the gasket and whether or not it contains asbestos (these cut-outs are of little importance). The important cut-out location is at the front of the gasket; on the standard gasket there will be no cut-out in this position, whereas on the thicker 'repair' gasket there will be a single cut-out (see illustration). Identify the gasket type, and ensure that the new gasket obtained is of the correct thickness. If there is any doubt as to which gasket is fitted, take the old gasket along to your Peugeot dealer, and have him confirm the gasket type.

**22** Check the condition of the cylinder head bolts, and particularly their threads, whenever they are removed. Wash the bolts in suitable solvent, and wipe them dry. Check each for any sign of visible wear or damage, renewing any bolt if necessary. Measure the length of each bolt, from the underside of its head to the bolt end, to check for stretching (see illustration). The bolts for the 1.4 litre engine are 175.5 mm in length when new; if any bolt has stretched to more than 176.5 mm, renew all the cylinder head bolts as a set. On 1.6 litre engines, the maximum length for the bolts is 122.6 mm. Although Peugeot do not actually specify that the bolts must be renewed, it is



**11.30b Cylinder head bolt tightening sequence (1.6 litre engine)**



**11.24 Ensure the locating dowels (arrowed) are in position then fit the new head gasket**

strongly recommended that the bolts should be renewed as a complete set, regardless of their apparent condition, whenever they are disturbed.

**23** On 1.4 litre engines, prior to refitting the cylinder head, check the cylinder liner protrusion as described Chapter 2D, Section 11.

### Refitting

**24** Wipe clean the mating surfaces of the cylinder head and cylinder block/crankcase. Check that the two locating dowels are in position at each end of the cylinder block/crankcase surface and, if necessary, remove the cylinder liner clamps (see illustration).

**25** Position a new gasket on the cylinder block/crankcase surface, ensuring that its identification cut-outs are at the left-hand end of the gasket, and the side marked TOP is uppermost.

**26** Check that the flywheel/driveplate and camshaft sprocket(s) are still correctly locked in position with their respective tools then, with the aid of an assistant, carefully refit the cylinder head assembly to the block, aligning it with the locating dowels. On DOHC engines, ensure that the inner timing cover lower edge engages correctly with the upper edge of the crankshaft oil seal housing.

**27** On 1.4 litre engines, ensure that the locating pins are in position in the base of each rocker pedestal, then refit the rocker arm assembly to the cylinder head.

**28** On all engines, lubricate the threads and underside of the heads of the cylinder head bolts lightly with clean engine oil.

**29** Carefully enter each bolt into its relevant hole (do not drop them in) and screw in, by hand only, until finger-tight.

**30** Working progressively and in the sequence shown, tighten the cylinder head bolts to their Stage 1 torque setting, using a torque wrench and suitable socket (see illustrations).

**31** Once all the bolts have been tightened to their Stage 1 setting, working again in the given sequence, angle-tighten the bolts through the specified Stage 2 angle, using a socket and extension bar. It is recommended that an angle-measuring gauge is used during this stage of the tightening, to ensure

accuracy. If a gauge is not available, use white paint to make alignment marks between the bolt head and cylinder head prior to tightening; the marks can then be used to check that the bolt has been rotated through the correct angle during tightening.

**32** On 1.4 litre engines, refit the timing belt inner cover as described in Section 5.

**33** Reconnect the all wiring plugs to the cylinder head and manifold.

**34** Working as described in the Chapter 4A, carry out the following tasks:

- a) Refit all disturbed wiring, hoses and control cable(s) to the intake manifold and fuel system components.
- b) Reconnect and adjust the accelerator cable (where fitted).
- c) Reconnect the exhaust system front pipe to the manifold and reconnect the oxygen sensor wiring connector.
- d) Refit the air cleaner and intake duct.

**35** On 1.4 litre engines, check and, if necessary, adjust the valve clearances as described in Section 9.

**36** Refit the cylinder head cover(s) as described in Section 4.

**37** Refit the spark plugs and install the ignition HT coil (see Chapters 1A and 5B).

**38** On completion, reconnect the battery (Chapter 5A), and refill the cooling system as described in Chapter 1A.

## 12 Sump – removal and refitting



### Removal

**1** Firmly apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield.

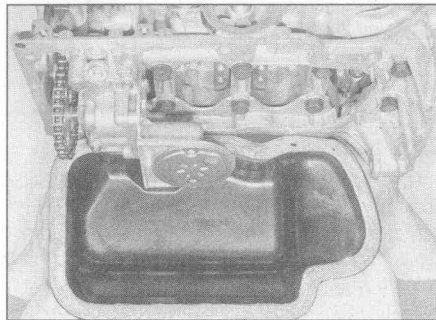
**2** Drain the engine oil, then clean and refit the engine oil drain plug, tightening it to the specified torque. If the engine is nearing its service interval when the oil and filter are due for renewal, it is recommended that the filter is also removed, and a new one fitted. After reassembly, the engine can then be refilled with fresh oil. Refer to Chapter 1A for further information.

**3** Remove the exhaust system front pipe as described in Chapter 4A.

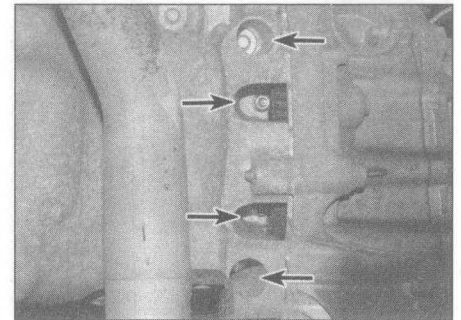
**4** Progressively slacken and remove all the sump nuts and bolts/nuts and position the wiring harness guide clear of the sump (see *illustrations*).

**5** Break the joint by striking the sump with the palm of your hand, then lower and withdraw the sump from under the car. On 1.6 litre engines, recover the gasket

**6** While the sump is removed, take the opportunity to check the oil pump pick-up/strainer for signs of clogging or splitting. If necessary, remove the pump as described in Section 13, and clean or renew the strainer.



**12.4a** Undo the nuts and bolts, then remove the sump from the engine (1.4 litre engine)



**12.4b** Access to the sump end bolts/nuts is through holes in the casing (arrowed) (1.6 litre engine)

### Refitting

**7** Clean all traces of sealant from the mating surfaces of the cylinder block/crankcase and sump, then use a clean rag to wipe out the sump and the engine's interior.

**8** Ensure that the sump and cylinder block/crankcase mating surfaces are clean and dry then, on 1.4 litre engines, apply a coating of suitable sealant to the sump mating surface. On 1.6 litre engines, if the gasket is undamaged, refit it to the sump, otherwise fit a new gasket.

**9** Offer up the sump and locate it on its studs. Locate the wiring harness guide back in position then refit the sump retaining nuts and bolts. Tighten the nuts and bolts evenly and progressively to the specified torque.

**10** Refit the exhaust front pipe as described in Chapter 4A, and refit the engine undershield.

**11** Replenish the engine oil (see Chapter 1A).

## 13 Oil pump – removal, inspection and refitting



### Removal

**1** Remove the sump (see Section 12).

**2** Slacken and remove the three bolts securing the oil pump in position (see *illustration*). Disengage the pump sprocket from the chain, and remove the oil pump. If the pump locating dowel is a loose fit, remove and store it with the bolts for safe-keeping.

### Inspection

**3** Examine the oil pump sprocket for signs of damage and wear, such as chipped or missing teeth. If the sprocket is worn, the pump assembly must be renewed, as the sprocket is not available separately. It is also recommended that the chain and drive sprocket, fitted to the crankshaft, are renewed at the same time. On 1.4 litre engines, renewal of the chain and drive sprocket is an involved operation requiring the removal of the main bearing ladder, and therefore cannot be carried out with the engine still fitted to the vehicle. On 1.6 litre engines, the oil pump

drive sprocket and chain can be removed with the engine *in situ*, once the crankshaft sprocket has been removed and the crankshaft oil seal housing has been unbolted.

**4** Slacken and remove the bolts securing the strainer cover to the pump body, then lift off the strainer cover. Remove the relief valve piston and spring (and guide pin – 1.6 litre engines only), noting which way round they are fitted.

**5** Examine the pump rotors and body for signs of wear ridges and scoring. If worn, the complete pump assembly must be renewed.

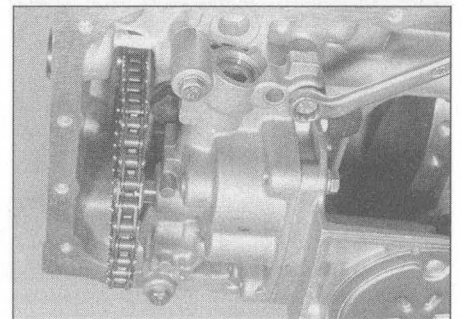
**6** Examine the relief valve piston for signs of wear or damage, and renew if necessary. The condition of the relief valve spring can only be measured by comparing it with a new one; if there is any doubt about its condition, it should also be renewed. Both the piston and spring are available individually.

**7** Thoroughly clean the oil pump strainer with a suitable solvent, and check it for signs of clogging or splitting. If the strainer is damaged, the strainer and cover assembly must be renewed.

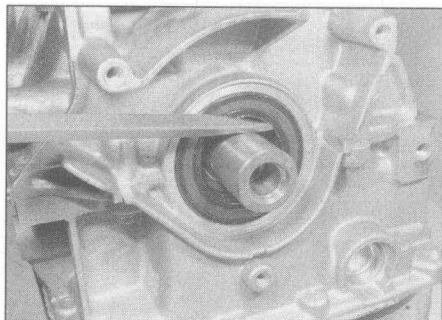
**8** Locate the relief valve spring, piston and (where fitted) the guide pin in the strainer cover, then refit the cover to the pump body. Align the relief valve piston with its bore in the pump. Refit the cover retaining bolts, tightening them securely.

### Refitting

**9** Ensure that the locating dowel is in position, then engage the pump sprocket with



**13.2** Unscrew the three bolts securing the oil pump in position



**14.2 Use a screwdriver to lever out the crankshaft right-hand oil seal**

its drive chain. Locate the pump on its dowel, and refit the pump retaining bolts, tightening them to the specified torque setting.

**10** Refit the sump as described in Section 12.

**14 Crankshaft oil seals – renewal**



**Right-hand oil seal**

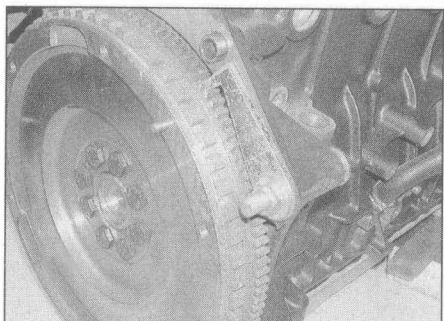
**1** Remove the crankshaft sprocket and flanged spacer (where fitted) as described in Section 7.

**2** Make a note of the correct fitted depth of the seal in its housing then carefully punch or drill two small holes opposite each other in the seal. Screw a self-tapping screw into each, and pull on the screws with pliers to extract the seal. Alternatively, the seal can be levered out of position using a suitable flat-bladed screwdriver, taking great care not to damage the crankshaft/oil pump drive gear shoulder or seal housing (see illustration).

**3** Clean the seal housing, and polish off any burrs or raised edges, which may have caused the seal to fail in the first place.

**4** Lubricate the lips of the new seal with clean engine oil, and carefully locate the seal on the end of crankshaft. Note that its sealing lip must face inwards. Take care not to damage the seal lips during fitting.

**5** Using a suitable tubular drift (such as a socket) which bears only on the hard outer edge of the seal, tap the seal into position, to the same depth in the housing as the original



**15.2 Use a tool to lock the flywheel ring gear and prevent rotation**

was prior to removal. The inner face of the seal must be flush with the inner wall of the crankcase.

**6** Wash off any traces of oil, then refit the crankshaft sprocket as described in Section 7.

**Left-hand oil seal**

**7** Remove the flywheel/driveplate (see Section 15).

**8** Make a note of the correct fitted depth of the seal in its housing. Punch or drill two small holes opposite each other in the seal. Screw a self-tapping screw into each, and pull on the screws with pliers to extract the seal.

**9** Clean the seal housing, and polish off any burrs or raised edges, which may have caused the seal to fail in the first place.

**10** Lubricate the lips of the new seal with clean engine oil, and carefully locate the seal on the end of the crankshaft.

**11** Using a suitable tubular drift, which bears only on the hard outer edge of the seal, drive the seal into position, to the same depth in the housing as the original was prior to removal.

**12** Wash off any traces of oil, then refit the flywheel/driveplate as described in Section 15.

**15 Flywheel/driveplate – removal, inspection and refitting**



**Flywheel**

**Removal**

**1** Remove the transmission as described in Chapter 7A, then remove the clutch assembly as described in Chapter 6.

**2** Prevent the flywheel from turning by locking the ring gear teeth (see illustration). Alternatively, bolt a strap between the flywheel and the cylinder block/crankcase.

**Caution: Do not attempt to lock the flywheel in position using the locking pin described in Section 3.**

**3** Slacken and remove the flywheel retaining bolts.

**4** Remove the flywheel. Do not drop it, as it is very heavy. If the locating dowel is a loose fit in the crankshaft end, remove and store it with the flywheel for safe-keeping.

**Inspection**

**5** If the flywheel's clutch mating surface is deeply scored, cracked or otherwise damaged, the flywheel must be renewed. However, it may be possible to have it surface-ground; seek the advice of a Peugeot dealer or engine reconditioning specialist.

**6** If the ring gear is badly worn or has missing teeth, it must be renewed. This job is best left to a Peugeot dealer or engine reconditioning specialist. The temperature to which the new ring gear must be heated for installation is critical and, if not done accurately, the hardness of the teeth will be destroyed.

**Refitting**

**7** Clean the mating surfaces of the flywheel and crankshaft.

**8** If the new flywheel retaining bolts are not supplied with their threads already pre-coated, apply a suitable thread-locking compound to the threads of each bolt.

**9** Ensure that the locating dowel is in position. Offer up the flywheel, locating it on the dowel, and fit the retaining bolts.

**10** Lock the flywheel using the method employed on dismantling, and tighten the retaining bolts evenly and progressively to the specified torque.

**11** Refit the clutch as described in Chapter 6. Remove the locking tool, and refit the transmission as described in Chapter 7A.

**Driveplate**

**Removal**

**12** Remove the transmission as described in Chapter 7B.

**13** Prevent the driveplate from turning by locking the ring gear teeth with a similar arrangement to that for the flywheel (see illustration 15.2). Alternatively, bolt a strap between the driveplate and the cylinder block/crankcase.

**Caution: Do not attempt to lock the driveplate in position using the locking pin described in Section 3.**

**14** Slacken and remove the driveplate retaining bolts and remove the outer spacer plate and torque converter mounting plate.

**15** Remove the driveplate and inner spacer plate from the end of the crankshaft. If the locating dowel is a loose fit in the crankshaft end, remove and store it with the driveplate for safe-keeping. **Note: The inner and outer spacer plates are different and are not interchangeable.**

**Inspection**

**16** Inspect the driveplate and torque converter mounting plate for signs of wear or damage. If damage is found, the worn component must be renewed (it is not possible to renew the driveplate ring gear separately).

**Refitting**

**17** Ensure all mating surfaces are clean and dry.

**18** Remove any traces of locking compound from the threads of the driveplate bolts and apply a small amount of fresh locking compound (Peugeot recommend Loctite Frenbloc) to the bolt threads.

**19** Ensure that the locating dowel is in position then refit the inner spacer plate, driveplate, torque converter mounting plate and outer spacer plate. Ensure all components are correctly located on the dowel then fit the retaining bolts.

**20** Lock the driveplate using the method employed on dismantling, and tighten the retaining bolts evenly and progressively to the specified torque.

**21** Refit the transmission as described in Chapter 7B.

## 16 Engine/transmission mountings – inspection and renewal



### Inspection

1 If improved access is required, raise the front of the car and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*).

2 Check the mounting rubber to see if it is cracked, hardened or separated from the metal at any point; renew the mounting if any such damage or deterioration is evident.

3 Check that all the mounting's fasteners are securely tightened; use a torque wrench to check if possible.

4 Using a large screwdriver or a crowbar, check for wear in the mounting by carefully levering against it to check for free play. Where this is not possible, enlist the aid of an assistant to move the engine/transmission back-and-forth, or from side-to-side, while you watch the mounting. While some free play is to be expected even from new components, excessive wear should be obvious. If excessive free play is found, check first that the fasteners are secure, then renew any worn components as described below.

### Renewal

#### Right-hand mounting

5 Place a jack beneath the engine, with a block of wood on the jack head. Raise the jack until it is supporting the weight of the engine.

6 Slacken and remove the bolts securing the mounting to the body, and the mounting bracket to the bracket bolted to the cylinder head (see illustrations).

7 If required, undo the three bolts and remove the bracket from the cylinder head (see illustration).

8 Check for signs of wear or damage on all components, and renew as necessary.

9 On reassembly, refit the bracket to the cylinder head, tightening the screws/nuts to the specified torque.

10 Install the mounting and mounting bracket and tighten its retaining bolts to the specified torque setting.

11 Remove the jack from under the engine.

#### Left-hand mounting

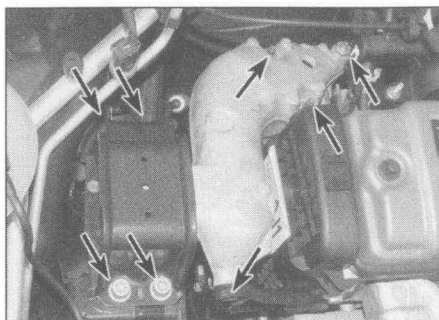
12 Remove the battery, and battery tray/box as described in Chapter 5A.

13 Place a jack beneath the transmission, with a block of wood on the jack head. Raise the jack until it is supporting the weight of the transmission.

14 Slacken and remove the mounting rubber's centre nut and two retaining bolts and remove the mounting from the engine compartment (see illustration).

15 If necessary, undo the retaining bolts and remove the mounting bracket from the body (see illustration).

16 Check carefully for signs of wear or



16.6a Right-hand engine mounting and bracket bolts (arrowed) (1.4 litre engine)

damage on all components, and renew them where necessary.

17 Refit the mounting bracket to the vehicle body and tighten its bolts to the specified torque.

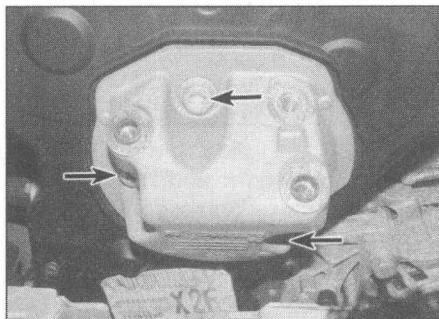
18 Fit the mounting rubber to the bracket and tighten its retaining bolts to the specified torque. Refit the mounting centre nut, and tighten it to the specified torque.

19 Remove the jack from underneath the transmission, then refit the battery as described in Chapter 5A.

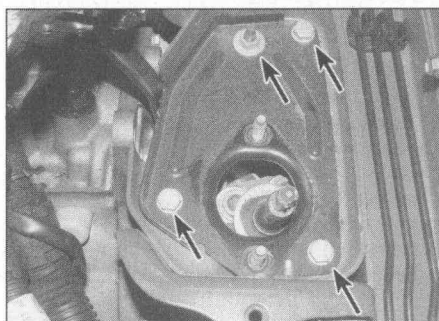
#### Rear mounting

20 If not already done, firmly apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it securely on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*).

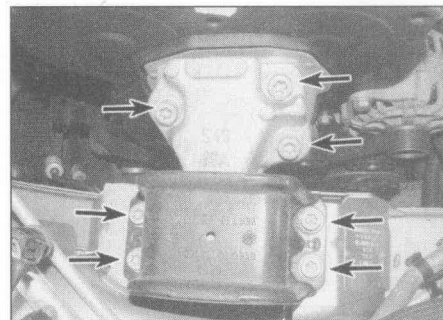
21 Unscrew and remove the bolt securing the rear mounting link to the mounting on the rear of the cylinder block (see illustration).



16.7 Engine mounting bracket-to-cylinder head bolts (arrowed) (1.6 litre engine)



16.15 Undo the nut/bolts (arrowed) and remove the mounting bracket



16.6b Right-hand engine mounting and bracket bolts (arrowed) (1.6 litre engine)

22 Remove the bolt securing the rear mounting link to the subframe and remove the mounting link.

23 To remove the mounting assembly it will first be necessary to remove the right-hand driveshaft as described in Chapter 8.

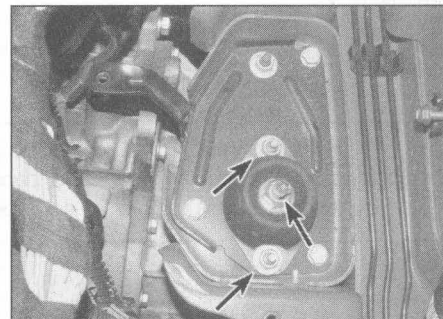
24 With the driveshaft removed, undo the retaining bolts and remove the mounting from the rear of the cylinder block.

25 Check carefully for signs of wear or damage on all components, and renew them where necessary.

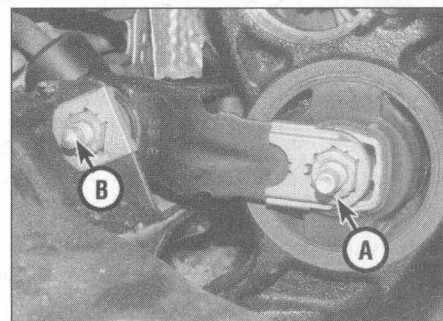
26 On reassembly, fit the rear mounting assembly to the rear of the cylinder block, and tighten its retaining bolts to the specified torque. Refit the driveshaft as described in Chapter 8.

27 Refit the rear mounting link, and tighten both its bolts to their specified torque settings.

28 Lower the vehicle to the ground.



16.14 Undo the left-hand mounting centre nut and two retaining nuts (arrowed)



16.21 Undo the link-to-engine block bracket bolt (A) and the link-to-subframe bolt (B)



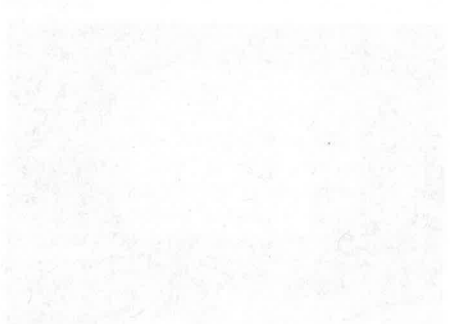
Faint, illegible text block corresponding to the first micrograph.



Faint, illegible text block corresponding to the second micrograph.



Faint, illegible text block corresponding to the third micrograph.



Faint, illegible text block corresponding to the fourth micrograph.

Main body of text on the right side of the page, containing several paragraphs of illegible text.






# Chapter 2 Part B:

## 2.0 litre petrol engine in-car repair procedures

### Contents

Camshaft oil seals – renewal	9	Engine oil level check	See <i>Weekly Checks</i>
Camshafts and followers – removal, inspection and refitting	10	Engine/transmission mountings – inspection and renewal	16
Compression test – description and interpretation	2	Flywheel/driveplate – removal, inspection and refitting	15
Crankshaft oil seals – renewal	14	General information	1
Crankshaft pulley – removal and refitting	5	Oil pump – removal, inspection and refitting	13
Cylinder head – removal and refitting	11	Sump – removal and refitting	12
Cylinder head covers – removal and refitting	4	Timing belt – general information, removal and refitting	7
Engine assembly/valve timing holes – general information and usage	3	Timing belt covers – removal and refitting	6
Engine oil and filter renewal	See Chapter 1A	Timing belt tensioners, sprockets and pulleys – removal, inspection and refitting	8

### Degrees of difficulty

<b>Easy</b> , suitable for novice with little experience 	<b>Fairly easy</b> , suitable for beginner with some experience 	<b>Fairly difficult</b> , suitable for competent DIY mechanic 	<b>Difficult</b> , suitable for experienced DIY mechanic 	<b>Very difficult</b> , suitable for expert DIY or professional 
---	--	--	---	--

### Specifications

#### Engine (general)

Type	2.0 litre (1997cc) DOHC 16V
Designation	EW10J4 IFL5
Engine code*	RFN
Bore	85.00 mm
Stroke	88.00 mm
Direction of crankshaft rotation	Clockwise (viewed from the right-hand side of vehicle)
No 1 cylinder location	At the transmission end of the block
Compression ratio	10.8 : 1
Maximum power output	99 kW @ 6000 rpm
Maximum torque output	190 Nm @ 4100 rpm

\* The engine code is stamped on a plate attached to the front right-hand end of the cylinder block, below the right-hand branch of the exhaust manifold. The code is the first 3-digits on the first line, and this is the code most often used by Peugeot.

#### Camshafts

Drive	Toothed belt
No of bearings	5



## 2B•2 2.0 litre petrol engine in-car repair procedures

### Lubrication system

Oil pump type .....	Crescent-type driven directly from crankshaft
Minimum oil pressure at 80°C:	
1000 rpm .....	1.5 bars
3000 rpm .....	5.0 bars
Oil pressure warning switch operating pressure .....	0.5 bars

### Torque wrench settings

	Nm	lbf ft
Big-end bearing bolts*:		
Stage 1 .....	10	7
Stage 2 .....	Slacken each bolt 180°	
Stage 3 .....	25	18
Stage 4 .....	Angle-tighten a further 46° ± 5°	
Camshaft bearing housings:		
Stage 1 .....	5	4
Stage 2 .....	10	7
Camshaft sprocket/hub-to-camshaft retaining bolts .....	75	55
Crankshaft pulley retaining bolt .....	21	15
Crankshaft sprocket centre bolt (with gold washer):		
Stage 1 .....	40	30
Stage 2 .....	Angle-tighten a further 53°	
Crankshaft sprocket centre bolt (with metallic washer):		
Stage 1 .....	40	30
Stage 2 .....	Angle-tighten a further 40°	
Cylinder head bolts:		
Stage 1 .....	15	11
Stage 2 .....	50	37
Stage 3 .....	Slacken fully	
Stage 4 .....	20	15
Stage 5 .....	Angle-tighten a further 285° (maximum of two steps)	
Cylinder head cover bolts .....	11	8
Engine-to-transmission fixing bolts .....	45	33
Flywheel/driveplate retaining bolts*:		
Stage 1 .....	25	18
Stage 2 .....	Slacken fully	
Stage 3 .....	20	15
Stage 4 .....	Angle-tighten a further 22°	
Left-hand engine/transmission mounting:		
Mounting bracket-to-body bolts .....	22	16
Mounting stud to transmission bracket .....	50	37
Rubber mounting centre nut .....	65	48
Rubber mounting-to-bracket nuts .....	30	22
Main bearing cap housing:		
Stage 1 - 11.0 mm diameter bolts .....	10	7
Stage 2 - 6.0 mm diameter bolts .....	5	4
Stage 3 - 11.0 mm diameter bolts .....	Slacken fully	
Stage 4 - 11.0 mm diameter bolts .....	20	15
Stage 5 - 11.0 mm diameter bolts .....	Angle-tighten a further 70° ± 5°	
Stage 6 - 6.0 mm diameter bolts .....	10	7
Oil pressure switch .....	30	22
Oil pump-to-engine bolts .....	9	7
Rear engine/transmission mounting:		
Connecting link-to-mounting bracket bolt .....	40	30
Connecting link-to-subframe bolt .....	55	41
Mounting bracket-to-cylinder block bolts .....	45	33
Right-hand engine/transmission mounting:		
Mounting bracket to support bracket .....	60	44
Rubber mounting to body .....	60	44
Support bracket to engine .....	45	33
Roadwheels .....	90	66
Sump retaining bolts .....	8	6
Sump baffle plate bolts .....	20	15
Sump drain plug .....	30	22
Timing belt tensioner pulley bolt .....	21	15
Timing belt idler pulley bolt:		
Stage 1 .....	15	11
Stage 2 .....	37	27

\* Do not re-use

## 1 General information

### How to use this Chapter

This Part of Chapter 2 describes those repair procedures that can reasonably be carried out on the engine, while it remains in the car. If the engine has been removed from the car and is being dismantled as described in Part D, any preliminary dismantling procedures can be ignored.

Note that, while it may be possible physically to overhaul items such as the piston/connecting rod assemblies while the engine is in the car, such tasks are not usually carried out as separate operations. Usually, several additional procedures (not to mention the cleaning of components and oilways) have to be carried out. For this reason, all such tasks are classed as major overhaul procedures, and are described in Part D of this Chapter.

Part D describes the removal of the engine/transmission unit from the vehicle, and the full overhaul procedures that can then be carried out.

### EW series engine

The engine is of in-line four-cylinder, double-overhead camshaft, 16-valve type, mounted transversely at the front of the car. The clutch and transmission are attached to its left-hand end.

The engine is of conventional 'dry-liner' type, and the cylinder block is cast in aluminium.

The crankshaft runs in five main bearings. Thrustwashers are fitted to No 2 main bearing cap, to control crankshaft endfloat.

The connecting rods rotate on horizontally-split bearing shells at their big-ends. The pistons are attached to the connecting rods by gudgeon pins. The gudgeon pins are an interference fit in the connecting rod small-end eyes. The aluminium alloy pistons are fitted with three piston rings – two compression rings and an oil control ring.

The camshafts are driven by a toothed timing belt, and operate sixteen valves by followers located beneath each cam lobe. The valve clearances are self-adjusting by means of hydraulic tappets fitted to the cam followers. The camshaft runs in bearing cap housings which are bolted to the top of the cylinder head. The inlet and exhaust valves are each closed by coil springs, and operate in guides pressed into the cylinder head. Both the valve seats and guides can be renewed separately if worn.

The coolant pump is driven by the timing belt and located in the right-hand end of the cylinder block.

Lubrication is by means of an oil pump driven off the crankshaft right-hand end. It draws oil through a strainer located in the

sump, and then forces it through an externally-mounted filter into galleries in the cylinder block/crankcase. From there, the oil is distributed to the crankshaft (main bearings) and camshaft. The big-end bearings are supplied with oil via internal drillings in the crankshaft; the camshaft bearings also receive a pressurised supply. The camshaft lobes and valves are lubricated by splash, as are all other engine components.

Throughout the manual, it is often necessary to identify the engines not only by their cubic capacity, but also by their engine code. The engine code consists of three digits (eg, RFN). The code is stamped on a plate attached to the front, left-hand end of the cylinder block, or stamped directly onto the front face of the cylinder block, on the machined surface located just to the left of the oil filter (next to the crankcase vent hose union).

### Operations with engine in the car

The following work can be carried out with the engine in the car:

- a) Compression pressure – testing.
- b) Cylinder head covers – removal and refitting.
- c) Crankshaft pulley – removal and refitting.
- d) Timing belt covers – removal and refitting.
- e) Timing belt – removal, refitting and adjustment.
- f) Timing belt tensioner and sprockets – removal and refitting.
- g) Camshaft oil seals – renewal.
- h) Camshafts and followers – removal, inspection and refitting.
- i) Cylinder head – removal and refitting.
- j) Cylinder head and pistons – decarbonising.
- k) Sump – removal and refitting.
- l) Oil pump – removal, overhaul and refitting.
- m) Crankshaft oil seals – renewal.
- n) Engine/transmission mountings – inspection and renewal.
- o) Flywheel/driveplate – removal, inspection and refitting.

## 2 Compression test – description and interpretation

Refer to Chapter 2A, Section 2.

## 3 Engine assembly/valve timing holes – general information and usage

**Note:** Do not attempt to rotate the engine whilst the crankshaft/camshaft are locked in position. If the engine is to be left in this state for a long period of time, it is a good idea to place suitable warning notices inside the vehicle, and in the engine compartment. This

will reduce the possibility of the engine being accidentally cranked on the starter motor, which is likely to cause damage with the locking pins in place.

**1** Timing holes are drilled in the crankshaft sprocket end plate and in the two camshaft sprockets. The holes are used to ensure that the crankshaft and camshafts are correctly positioned when assembling the engine (to prevent the possibility of the valves contacting the pistons when refitting the cylinder head), or refitting the timing belt. When the timing holes are aligned with corresponding holes in the cylinder head and oil pump housing, suitable diameter pins or bolts can be inserted to lock both the camshafts and crankshaft in position, preventing them from rotating. To set the engine in the timing position, proceed as follows.

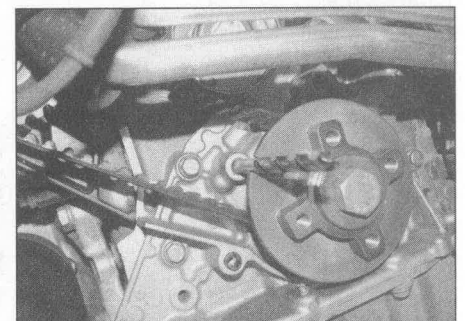
**2** Remove the crankshaft pulley as described in Section 5.

**3** Remove the timing belt upper (outer) and lower covers as described in Section 6.

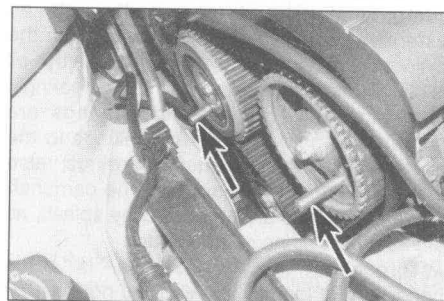
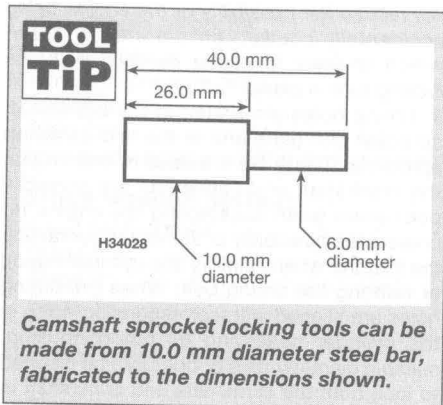
**4** Using a socket and extension bar fitted to the crankshaft sprocket centre bolt, turn the crankshaft in the normal direction of rotation (clockwise) until the timing holes in both camshaft sprockets are aligned with their corresponding holes in the cylinder head. The holes are aligned when the inlet camshaft sprocket hole is in approximately the 5 o'clock position and the exhaust camshaft sprocket hole is in approximately the 7 o'clock position, when viewed from the right-hand end of the engine. Use a small mirror to accurately observe the position of the holes.

**5** With the camshaft sprocket holes correctly positioned, insert an 8.0 mm diameter drill bit or bolt through the timing hole in the crankshaft sprocket end plate, and locate it in the corresponding hole in the oil pump housing (see illustration). **Note:** It may be found that an 8.0 mm drill is too large, in which case a 5/16 in drill may be required.

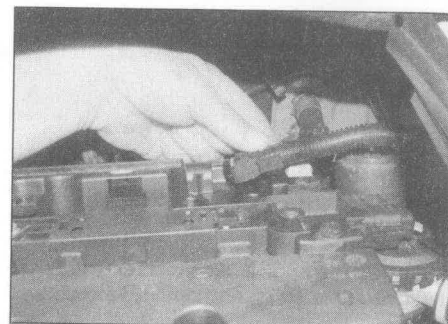
**6** The camshaft sprockets can now be locked in position using the Peugeot camshaft setting rods, or suitable home-made alternatives (see Tool Tip). With the crankshaft locked in position, insert the Peugeot special tools, or alternatives, through the timing hole in each



**3.5** Insert an 8.0 mm drill bit or bolt through the hole in the crankshaft sprocket end plate, and into the corresponding hole in the oil pump housing



**3.6** Camshaft sprocket locking tools (arrowed) inserted through the timing hole in each sprocket



**4.1a** Disconnect the crankcase breather hose from the rear cylinder head cover

camshaft sprocket and locate it in the corresponding hole in the cylinder head (see illustration).

**7** The crankshaft and camshafts are now locked in position, preventing rotation. In this position the crankshaft is at 90° BTDC and all the pistons are positioned half-way down their cylinder bores.

#### 4 Cylinder head covers – removal and refitting



##### Removal

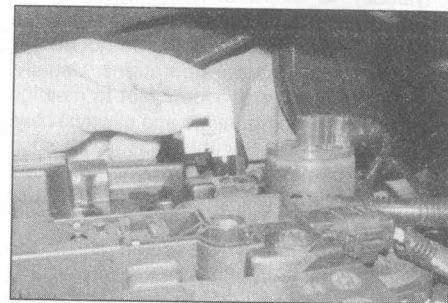
**1** Undo the six screws and remove the plastic cover from the top of the engine. Remove the crankcase ventilation hose and camshaft position sensor from the rear cylinder head cover (see illustrations).

**2** Progressively unscrew the bolts securing the cylinder head covers to the cylinder head. The bolts must be unscrewed in a spiral sequence starting from the outside.

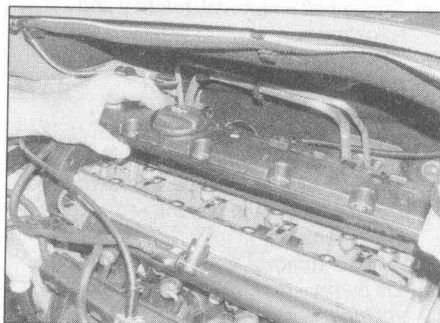
**3** Remove the cylinder head covers and gaskets (see illustrations). Unless they are obviously damaged, do not attempt to remove the rubber gaskets from the covers.



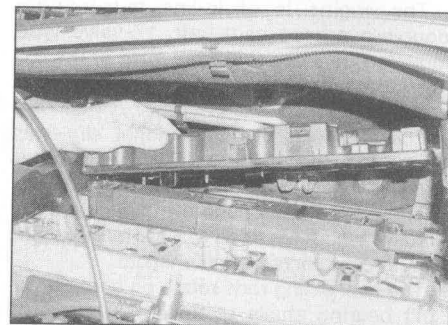
**4.1b** Disconnect the camshaft position sensor wiring connector . . .



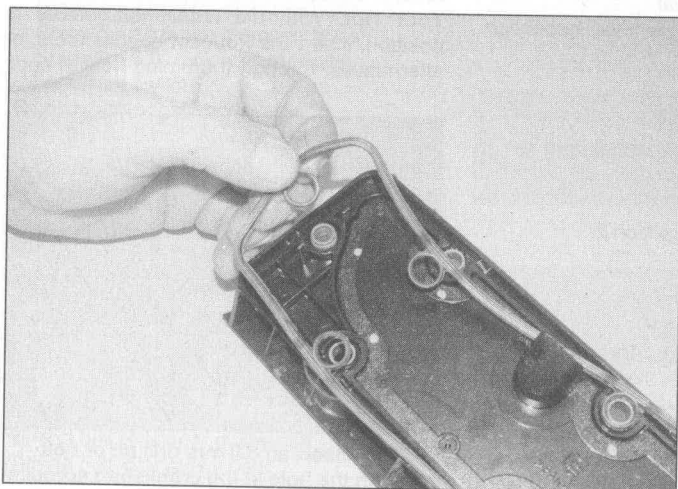
**4.1c** . . . then undo the bolt and remove the sensor from the rear cylinder head cover



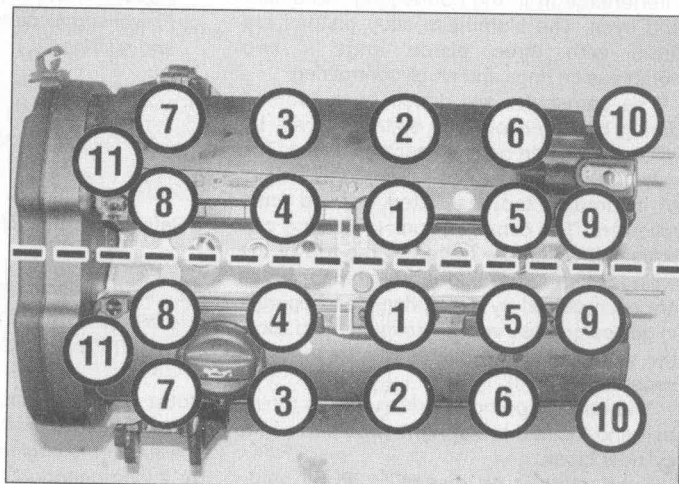
**4.3a** Undo the retaining bolts and lift off the front . . .



**4.3b** . . . and rear cylinder head covers



**4.5** Locate the cylinder head cover seal in the groove, ensuring it is fully seated along its entire length



**4.6** Cylinder head cover bolt tightening sequence

**Refitting**

- 4 Thoroughly clean the surfaces of the covers and cylinder head.
- 5 If necessary, fit new seals and locate the covers on the head (see illustration). Insert the retaining bolts and finger-tighten them.
- 6 Progressively tighten the bolts in sequence (see illustration).
- 7 Check the condition of the O-ring seal on the camshaft position sensor and renew the seal if it is in any way suspect.
- 8 Refit the camshaft position sensor and secure with the retaining bolt. Reconnect the sensor wiring connector.
- 9 Reconnect the breather hose to the rear cover.
- 10 The remainder of refitting is a reversal of removal.

### 5 Crankshaft pulley – removal and refitting

**Removal**

- 1 Remove the auxiliary drivebelt (Chapter 1A).
- 2 To prevent the crankshaft turning whilst the pulley retaining bolt is being slackened on manual transmission models, select 5th gear and have an assistant apply the brakes firmly. On automatic transmission models it will be necessary to remove the starter motor (Chapter 5A) and lock the driveplate with a suitable tool. If the engine has been removed from the vehicle, lock the flywheel ring gear as described in Section 8. Do not attempt to lock the pulley by inserting a bolt/drill through the

timing hole. If the locking pin is in position, temporarily remove it prior to slackening the pulley bolt, then refit it once the bolt has been slackened.

- 3 Undo the four crankshaft pulley retaining bolts and remove the pulley from the crankshaft sprocket end plate (see illustrations).

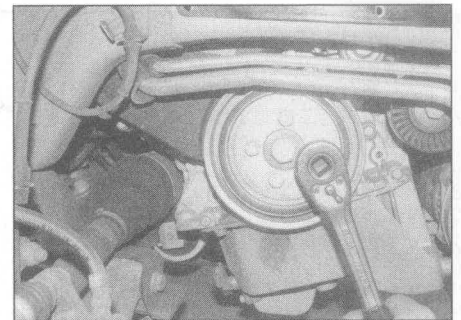
**Refitting**

- 4 Locate the pulley on the crankshaft sprocket end plate, refit the four retaining bolts and tighten them to the specified torque and angle.
- 5 Refit and tension the auxiliary drivebelt as described in Chapter 1A.

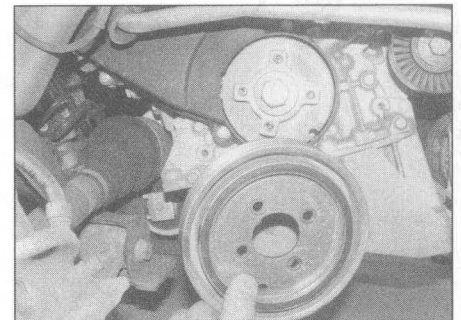
### 6 Timing belt covers – removal and refitting

**Removal****Upper (outer) cover**

- 1 Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield (where fitted).
- 2 Position a trolley jack under the engine, placing a block of wood between the jack head and the sump. Take the weight of the engine, undo the bolts/nuts and remove the right-hand engine mounting and bracket (see Section 16).
- 3 Undo the bolt securing the power steering pipe bracket adjacent to the coolant pump. Move the pipes to one side to improve access.
- 4 Remove the plastic cover from over the



5.3a Undo the four crankshaft pulley retaining bolts ...



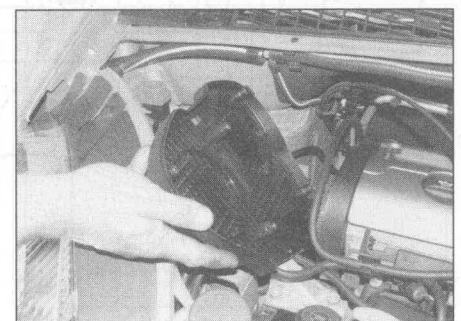
5.3b ... and remove the pulley from the crankshaft end plate

coolant and washer reservoirs. The cover is secured by plastic expanding rivets. Push in the centre pins a little, then prise out the complete rivets and release the side clip. Release the side retaining clip.

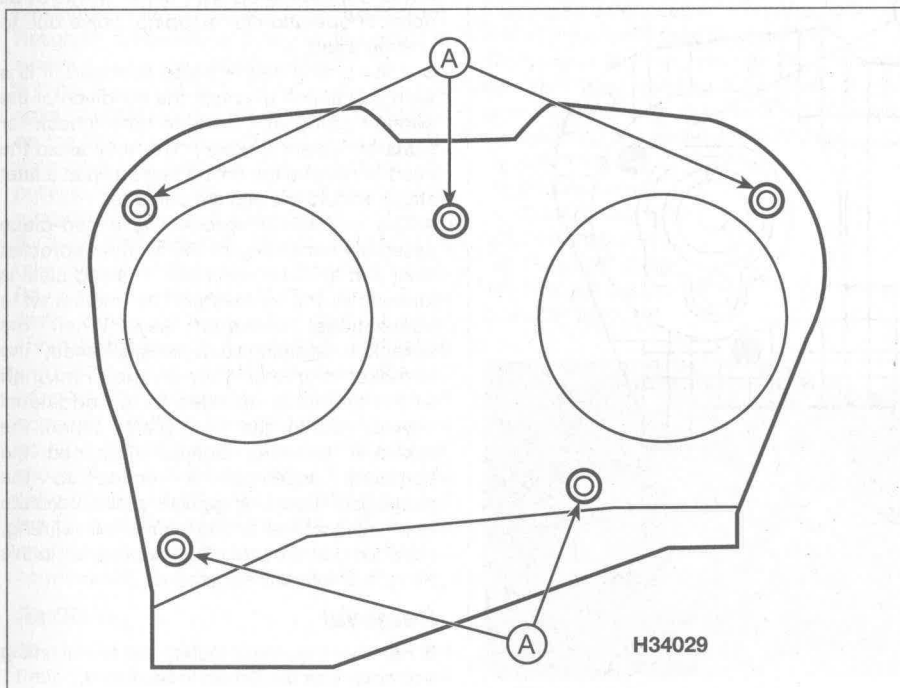
- 5 Undo the upper and lower retaining bolts securing the outer cover to the inner cover (see illustration). Slide the cover retaining clip upwards to release it from its fasteners.
- 6 Ease the outer cover upwards and away from the engine, freeing it from its lower locations (see illustration).

**Lower cover**

- 7 Remove the crankshaft pulley as described in Section 5.
- 8 Remove the upper (outer) cover as described above.
- 9 Slacken and remove the retaining bolts, then remove the lower timing belt cover from

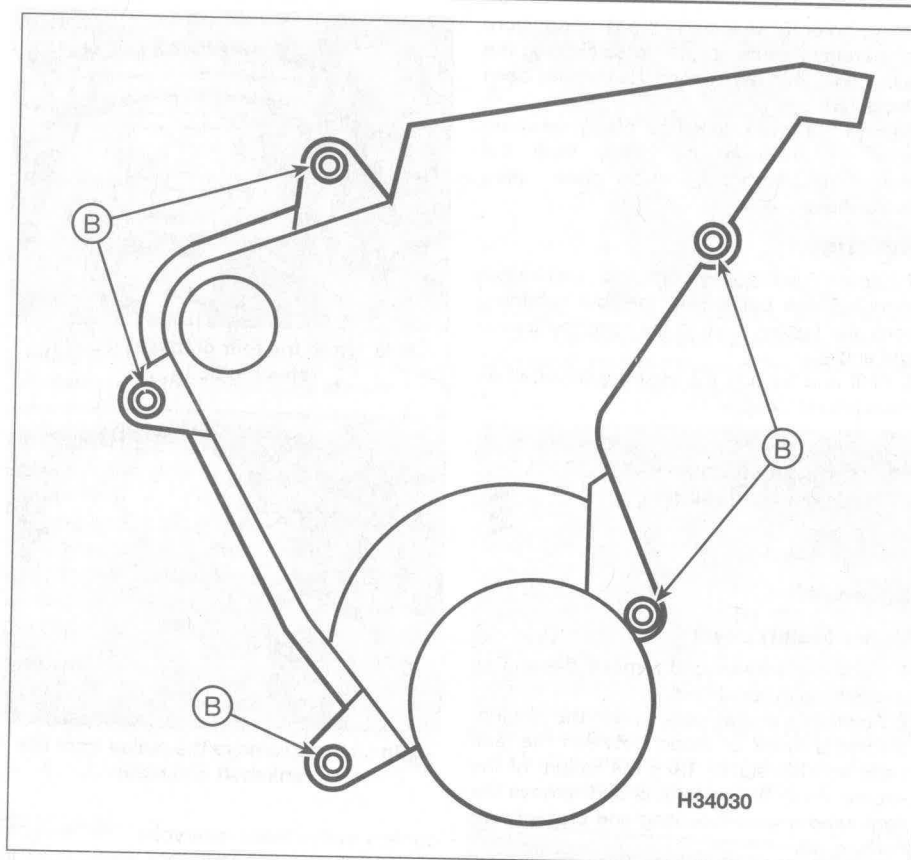


6.6 ... and withdraw the cover from the cylinder head

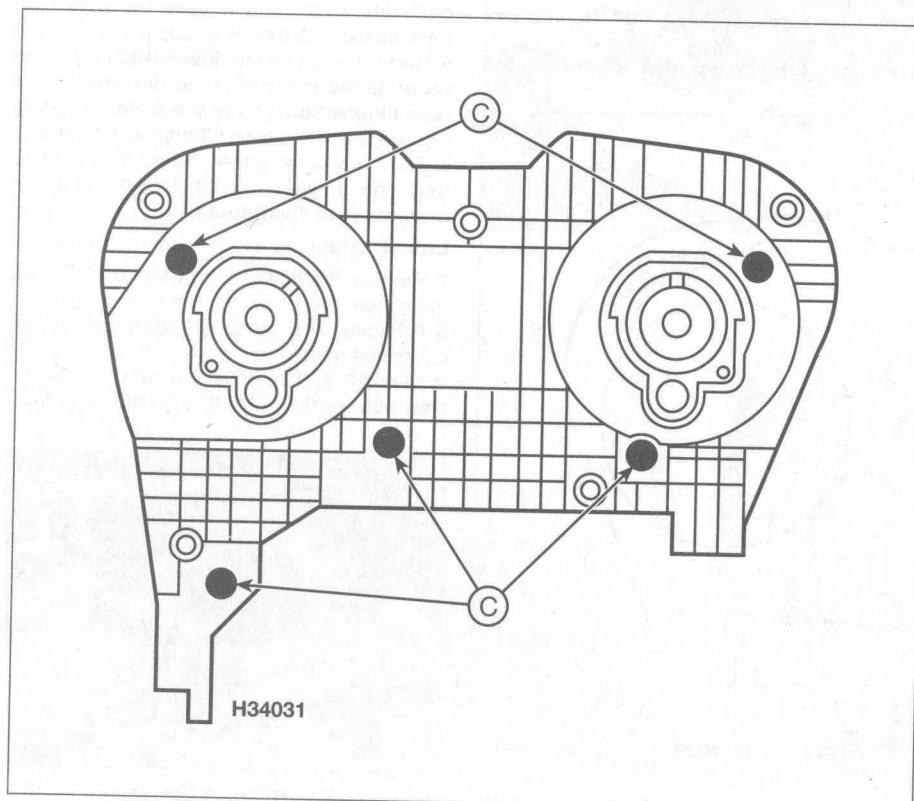


6.5 Undo the upper timing belt cover retaining bolts (A) ...

H34029



6.9 Undo the lower timing belt cover retaining bolts (B)



6.12 Upper (inner) timing belt cover retaining bolts (C)

the engine (see illustration). Note that on some models it may be necessary to unbolt the auxiliary drivebelt tensioner assembly and remove it from the engine in order to allow the cover to be removed.

#### Upper (inner) cover

**10** Remove the timing belt as described in Section 7.

**11** Remove both camshaft sprockets as described in Section 8.

**12** Remove the bolts securing the cover to the side of the cylinder head, and remove the cover from the engine (see illustration).

#### Refitting

**13** Refitting is a reversal of the relevant removal procedure, ensuring that each cover section is correctly located, and that the cover retaining nuts and/or bolts are securely tightened. When refitting the upper (inner) cover, apply thread locking compound to the retaining bolts.

### 7 Timing belt – general information, removal and refitting



#### General information

**1** The timing belt drives the camshafts and coolant pump from a toothed sprocket on the end of the crankshaft. If the belt breaks or slips in service, the pistons are likely to hit the valve heads, resulting in extensive (and expensive) damage.

**2** The timing belt should be renewed at the specified intervals (see Chapter 1A), or earlier if it is contaminated with oil, or if it is at all noisy in operation (a 'scraping' noise due to uneven wear).

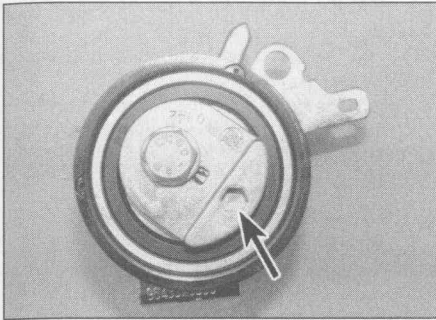
**3** If the timing belt is being removed, it is a wise precaution to check the condition of the coolant pump at the same time (check for signs of coolant leakage). This may avoid the need to remove the timing belt again at a later stage, should the coolant pump fail.

**4** The crankshaft sprocket is a two-piece assembly consisting of the toothed sprocket itself and an outer end plate. The end plate is locked to the crankshaft by means of a conventional Woodruff key. When the sprocket retaining bolt is slackened, the sprocket is free to turn on the crankshaft within the limits afforded by an additional keyway within the end plate. When the sprocket retaining bolt is tightened the complete assembly is locked to the crankshaft. This arrangement allows accurate tensioning of the timing belt when refitting, provided that the procedures contained in this Section are strictly adhered to.

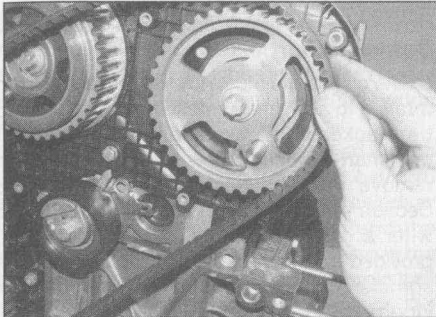
#### Removal

**5** Remove the upper (outer) and lower timing belt covers as described in Section 6.

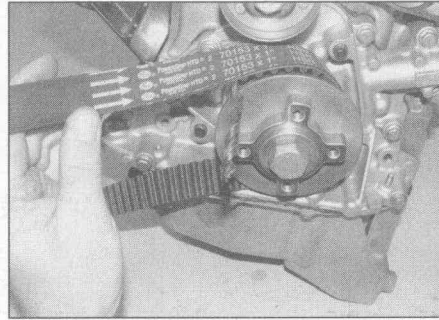
**6** Align the engine assembly/valve timing holes as described in Section 3, and lock the



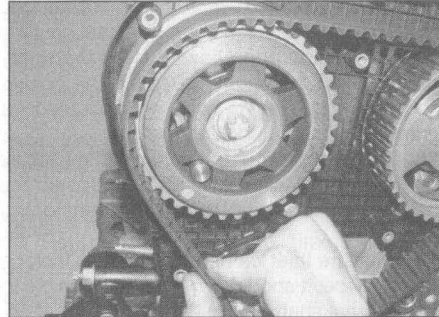
**7.7** Using an Allen key in the hole (arrowed) on the tensioner pulley, rotate it clockwise to relieve tension from the belt



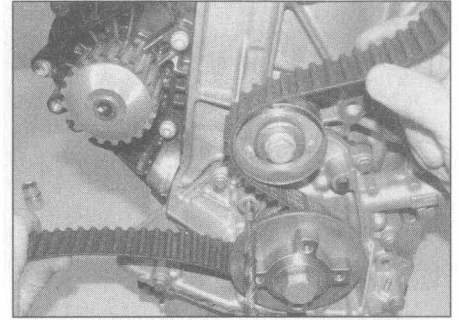
**7.13b** ... inlet camshaft sprocket ...



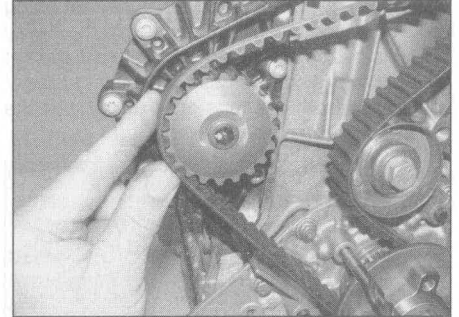
**7.12** Locate the timing belt on the crankshaft sprocket, with the arrows on the belt pointing in the direction of rotation



**7.13c** ... exhaust camshaft sprocket ...



**7.13a** Retain the belt on the crankshaft sprocket and feed it over the idler pulley ...



**7.13d** ... coolant pump sprocket and tensioner pulley

crankshaft sprocket and camshaft sprockets in position. *Do not* attempt to rotate the engine whilst the locking tools are in position.

**7** Loosen the timing belt tensioner pulley retaining bolt. Using an Allen key in the hole provided on the front of the pulley, rotate the pulley in a clockwise direction, to relieve the tension from the timing belt (**see illustration**). Retighten the tensioner pulley retaining bolt to secure it in the slackened position.

**8** If the timing belt is to be re-used, use white paint or chalk to mark the direction of rotation on the belt (if markings do not already exist), then slip the belt off the sprockets and pulleys. Note that the crankshaft must not be rotated whilst the belt is removed.

**9** Check the timing belt carefully for any signs of uneven wear, splitting, or oil contamination. Pay particular attention to the roots of the teeth. Renew it if there is the slightest doubt about its condition. If the engine is undergoing an overhaul, it is advisable to renew the belt as a matter of course, regardless of its apparent condition. The cost of a new belt is nothing compared with the cost of repairs, should the belt break in service. If signs of oil contamination are found, trace the source of the oil leak and rectify it. Wash down the engine timing belt area and all related components, to remove all traces of oil.

### Refitting

**10** Before refitting, thoroughly clean the timing belt sprockets. Check that the tensioner and idler pulleys rotate freely, without any sign of roughness. If necessary,

renew the relevant pulley as described in Section 8.

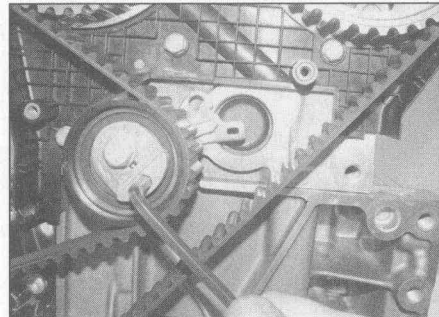
**11** Ensure that the crankshaft and camshaft sprocket locking tools are still in position.

**12** Locate the timing belt on the crankshaft sprocket, ensuring that any arrows on the belt are pointing in the direction of rotation (clockwise when viewed from the right-hand end of the engine) (**see illustration**).

**13** Retain the timing belt on the crankshaft sprocket then, keeping it taut, feed the belt over the remaining sprockets and pulleys in the following order (**see illustrations**):

- a) *Idler pulley.*
- b) *Inlet camshaft.*
- c) *Exhaust camshaft.*
- d) *Coolant pump.*
- e) *Tensioner pulley.*

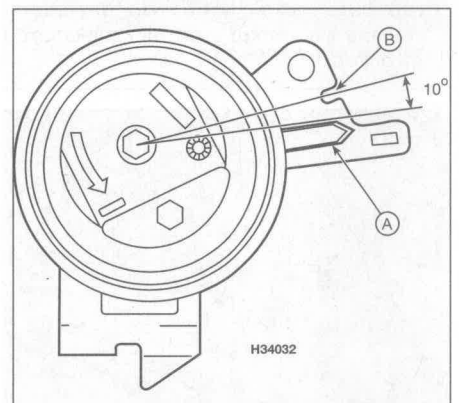
**14** Remove the locking tool from the exhaust camshaft sprocket.



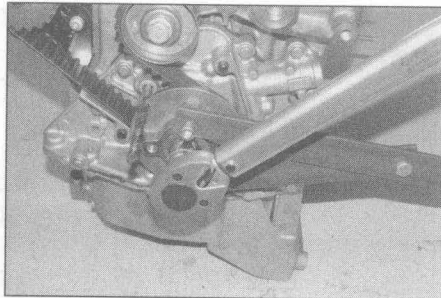
**7.15a** Using an Allen key, turn the tensioner pulley anti-clockwise ...

**15** Slacken the tensioner pulley retaining bolt and turn the tensioner pulley hub anti-clockwise, by means of the Allen key, so that the upper edge of the index pointer is positioned approximately 10° clockwise past the slot in the backing plate (**see illustrations**). Note that if the index pointer will not attain a position of at least 10° past the backing plate slot, then the tensioner pulley, or both the tensioner pulley and the timing belt, must be renewed.

**16** Now rotate the tensioner pulley hub clockwise until the index pointer is exactly aligned with the slot in the backing plate (**see illustration 7.15b**). Hold the pulley in this position and tighten the retaining bolt to the

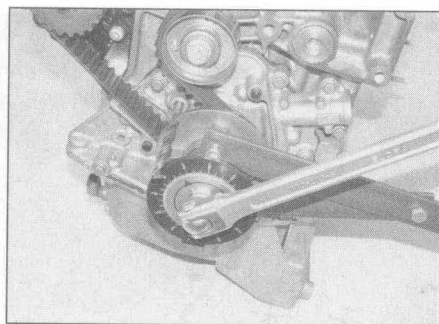


**7.15b** ... until the upper edge of the index pointer (A) is positioned approximately 10° past the slot (B) in the backing plate

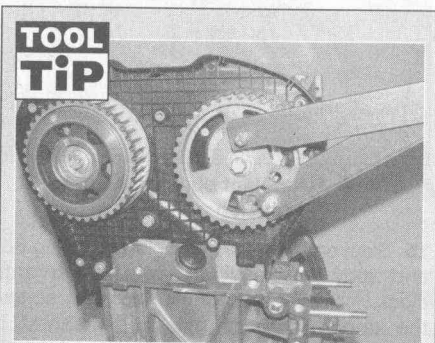


**7.22a** Hold the crankshaft sprocket end plate with the holding tool and tighten the retaining bolt to the specified torque . . .

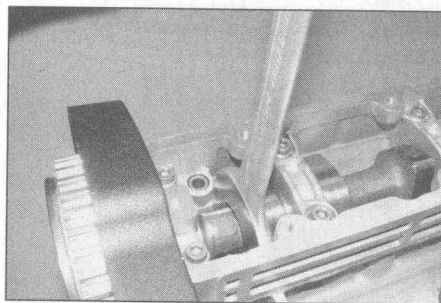
specified torque. With the timing belt tensioned and the tensioner pulley retaining bolt tightened, the Allen key slot in the pulley should be below the cylinder head gasket level. If this is not the case, then the tensioner pulley, or both the tensioner pulley and the timing belt, must be renewed.



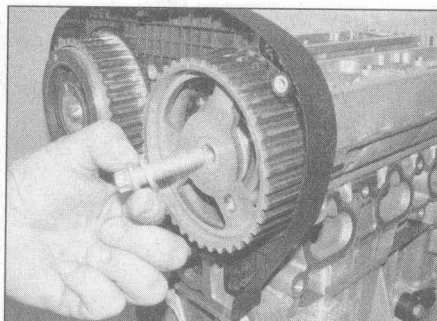
**7.22b** . . . then through the specified angle



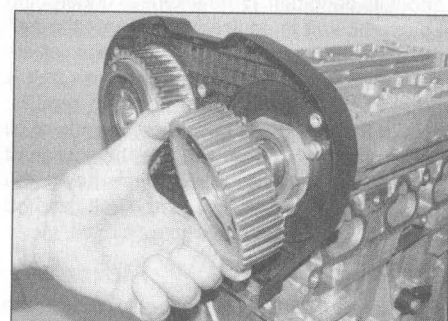
**TOOL TIP**  
To make a sprocket holding tool, obtain two lengths of steel strip about 6 mm thick by about 30 mm wide or similar, one 600 mm long, the other 200 mm long (all dimensions are approximate). Bolt the two strips together to form a forked end, leaving the bolt slack so that the shorter strip can pivot freely. At the other end of each 'prong' of the fork, drill a suitable hole and fit a nut and bolt to engage with the spokes of holes in the sprocket. The same tool can be used to hold both the inlet camshaft sprocket and the crankshaft sprocket.



**8.3** The camshafts can be held with a spanner engaged with the square section adjacent to the No 8 cam lobe



**8.4a** Remove the retaining bolt and washer . . .



**8.4b** . . . and withdraw the sprocket from the end of the camshaft

- 24** Refit the crankshaft pulley as described in Section 5.
- 25** Refit the auxiliary drivebelt with reference to Chapter 1A.
- 26** Refit the right-hand front wheel arch liner.
- 27** Refit the roadwheel and lower the vehicle to the ground.
- 28** Reconnect the battery.

## 8 Timing belt tensioners, sprockets and pulleys – removal, inspection and refitting

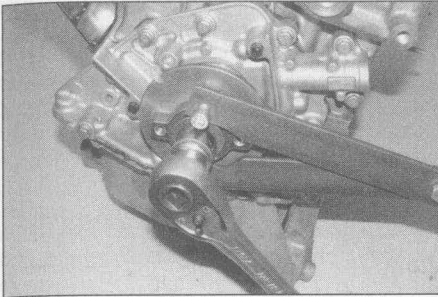


### Removal

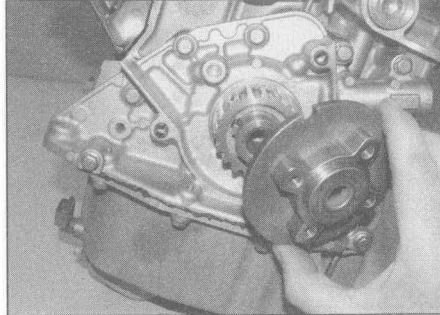
- 1** Remove the timing belt as described in Section 7.

### Camshaft sprockets

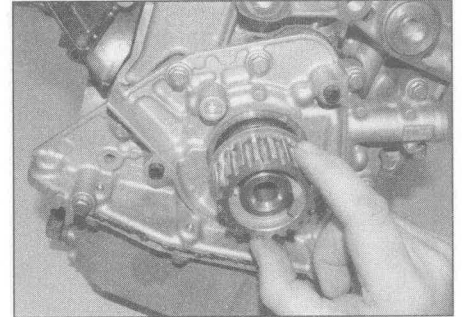
- 2** The camshafts must now be prevented from rotating to allow the sprocket retaining bolts to be slackened. If working on the exhaust camshaft sprocket, it will be necessary to remove the rear cylinder head cover (see Section 4) to allow a spanner to be engaged with a square section of the camshaft, provided for this purpose. This is because the sprocket contains a rubber vibration damper incorporated into the sprocket hub. If the sprocket itself is held as the bolt is slackened, the rubber hub will be damaged. The inlet camshaft sprocket is conventional and can be held using Peugeot tool 6016-T, or an acceptable substitute can be fabricated at home (see Tool Tip). Alternatively, remove the front cylinder head cover and hold the camshaft with a spanner as described for the exhaust camshaft. *Do not* attempt to use the engine assembly/valve timing hole locking tools to prevent the sprockets from rotating whilst the bolts are slackened.
- 3** Remove the engine assembly/valve timing hole locking tool from the relevant sprocket, then slacken the centre retaining bolt. If a spanner is being used to prevent camshaft rotation, the spanner should be engaged with the square section of the camshaft adjacent to No 8 cam lobe (see illustration).
- 4** Remove the previously-slackened sprocket retaining bolt and washer, and withdraw the relevant sprocket from the end of the camshaft (see illustrations).
- 5** Remove the remaining camshaft and crankshaft locking tools and rotate the crankshaft through ten complete rotations in a clockwise direction (viewed from the right-hand end of the engine). Realign the engine assembly/valve timing holes and refit the inlet camshaft sprocket locking tool.
- 6** Check that the tensioner pulley index pointer is still aligned with the slot in the backing plate. If not repeat the tensioning operation.
- 7** With the inlet camshaft sprocket locking tool in place, it should now also be possible to fit the crankshaft sprocket locking tool. If so, continue with the refitting procedure. If the crankshaft sprocket locking tool will not engage, then the crankshaft sprocket end plate must be repositioned as follows.
- 8** Slacken the crankshaft sprocket retaining bolt while holding the sprocket end plate stationary using Peugeot special tool 6310-T or a suitable home-made alternative (see Tool Tip in Section 8). *Do not* attempt to use only the sprocket locking tools inserted in the engine assembly/valve timing holes to prevent rotation whilst the bolt is slackened.
- 9** With the sprocket retaining bolt slackened, turn the end plate until the sprocket locking tool can be fully inserted through the end plate and into the hole in the oil pump housing.
- 10** Hold the end plate with the holding tool and tighten the sprocket retaining bolt to the specified torque, then through the specified angle (see illustrations).
- 11** Refit the lower and upper (outer) timing belt covers as described in Section 6.



**8.6a** Hold the crankshaft sprocket end plate with the home-made tool while the retaining bolt is slackened



**8.6b** Withdraw the crankshaft sprocket end plate . . .



**8.6c** . . . and the sprocket itself

### Crankshaft sprocket

**5** With the crankshaft pulley removed from the flange on the front of the crankshaft, remove the timing locking pin. **Note:** Do not use the pin to lock the crankshaft when loosening the crankshaft pulley bolt.

**6** The crankshaft must now be locked. To do this, remove the starter motor and have an assistant insert a wide-bladed screwdriver between the teeth of the ring gear and the transmission casing. Unscrew and remove the bolt and washer, and remove the crankshaft sprocket and flange from the end of the crankshaft. Alternatively a home-made tool may be used (see illustrations).

**7** Remove the Woodruff key from the crankshaft, and store it with the sprocket for safe-keeping (see illustration). Where necessary, also slide the spacer (where fitted) off the end of the crankshaft.

**8** Examine the crankshaft oil seal for signs of oil leakage and, if necessary, renew it as described in Section 14.

### Tensioner and idler pulleys

**9** Unscrew the retaining bolts from the tensioner and idler pulleys, then remove the pulleys from the engine (see illustrations). Note that the tensioner roller bracket locates over the rib on the cylinder block.

### Inspection

**10** Clean the camshaft/crankshaft sprockets thoroughly, and renew any that show signs of wear, damage or cracks. Where applicable, check the condition of the rubber vibration damper in the exhaust camshaft sprocket and renew the sprocket if there is any sign of deterioration of the rubber.

**11** Clean the tensioner/idler pulleys but do not use any strong solvent which may enter the pulley bearings. Check that the pulleys rotate freely, with no sign of stiffness or free play. Renew them if there is any doubt about their condition, or if there are any obvious signs of wear or damage.

### Refitting

#### Camshaft sprockets

**12** Locate the relevant sprocket on the end of the camshaft, engaging the lug in the sprocket hub with the slot in the end of the camshaft.

**13** Refit the sprocket retaining bolt and washer, and tighten it to the specified torque. Prevent the sprocket from turning as the bolt is tightened using the method employed for removal.

**14** Realign the hole in the camshaft sprocket with the corresponding hole in the cylinder head, and refit the locking tool. Check that the crankshaft pulley locking tool is still in position.

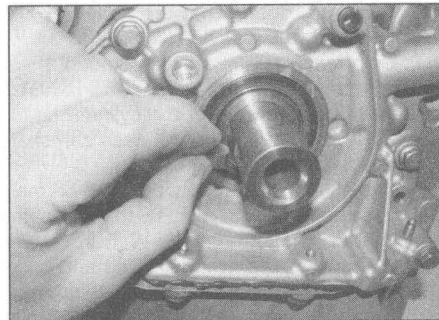
**15** Where removed, refit the cylinder head cover(s) as described in Section 4.

**16** Refit and tension the timing belt as described in Section 7.

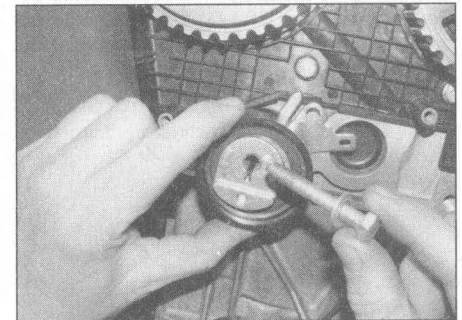
#### Crankshaft sprocket

**17** Where fitted, refit the spacer, then locate the Woodruff key in the crankshaft groove, making sure that it is parallel with the surface of the crankshaft.

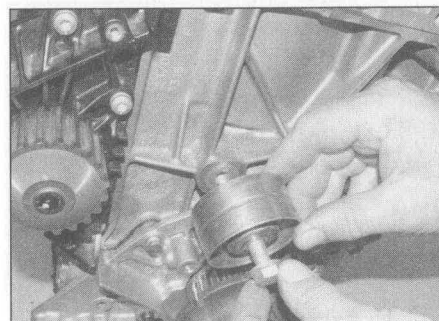
**18** Locate the sprocket and flange onto the end of the crankshaft and engage the groove with the Woodruff key.



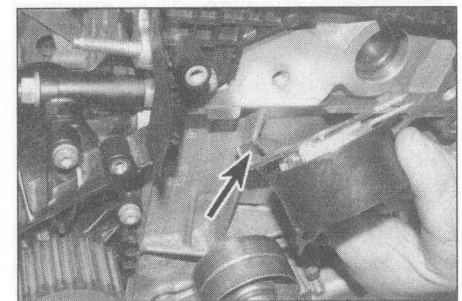
**8.7** Remove the Woodruff key from the end of the crankshaft



**8.9a** Remove the timing belt tensioner pulley . . .

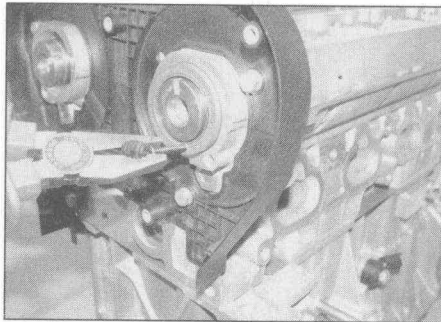


**8.9b** . . . and the idler pulley



**8.22** Ensure the slot (arrowed) on the tensioner pulley body engages with the web on the cylinder block when refitting





9.3 Use pliers and a self-tapping screw to extract the camshaft oil seal

### 9 Camshaft oil seals – renewal



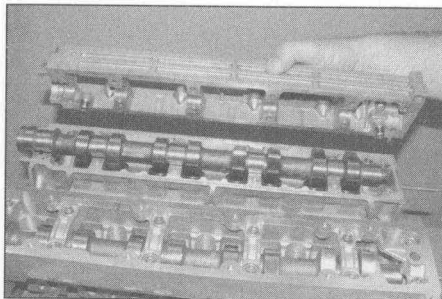
- 1 Remove the camshaft sprockets as described in Section 8.
- 2 Note the fitted depth of the oil seals as a guide to fitting the new ones.
- 3 Punch or drill two small holes opposite each other in the oil seal. Screw a self-tapping screw into each, and pull on the screws with pliers to extract the seal (**see illustration**).
- 4 Clean the seal housing, and polish off any burrs or raised edges, which may have caused the seal to fail in the first place.
- 5 Lubricate the lips of the new seal with clean engine oil, and drive it into position until it seats on its locating shoulder (**see illustration**). Use a suitable tubular drift, such as a socket, which bears only on the hard outer edge of the seal. If available, use the Peugeot tool No 0189-D1/D2. Take care not to damage the seal lips during fitting. Note that the seal lips should face inwards.
- 6 Refit the camshaft sprockets as described in Section 8.

### 10 Camshafts and followers – removal, inspection and refitting

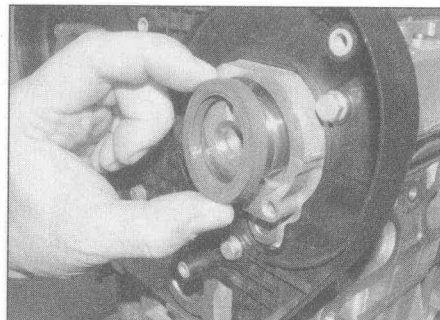


#### Removal

- 1 Remove the timing belt as described in Section 7.

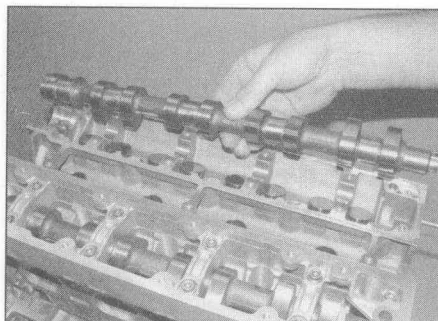


10.7 Progressively slacken and remove the retaining bolt, then lift off the camshaft bearing cap housing(s)



9.5 Locate the new seal in position with the seal lips facing inwards

- 2 Progressively unscrew the bolts securing the cylinder head covers to the cylinder head. The bolts must be unscrewed in a spiral sequence starting from the outside (see Section 4).
- 3 Remove the cylinder head covers and gaskets.
- 4 Refer to Section 8 and remove both camshaft sprockets.
- 5 Unbolt and remove the inner timing cover from the cylinder head. At this stage, note the fitted depth of the oil seals as a guide to fitting new seals during reassembly.
- 6 Evenly and progressively slacken the camshaft bearing housing retaining bolts by one turn at a time, in a spiral sequence, starting from the outside. This will relieve the valve spring pressure on the bearing housing gradually and evenly. Once the pressure has been relieved, the bolts can be fully unscrewed, together with their washers.
- 7 Lift the camshaft bearing housings from the cylinder head, noting that the housings are located on dowels (**see illustration**).
- 8 Identify each camshaft for position – the exhaust camshaft is at the rear and the inlet camshaft is at the front of the cylinder head. Also note the TDC position of each camshaft for correct refitting.
- 9 Remove the camshafts by pressing on their transmission ends to release the opposite ends from the bearings. Withdraw the camshafts from the cylinder head and slide the oil seals from the ends (**see illustration**).
- 10 Obtain sixteen small, clean plastic containers, and number them inlet 1 to 8 and exhaust 1 to 8; alternatively, divide a larger



10.9 Carefully lift out the camshaft(s) up and out of their locations

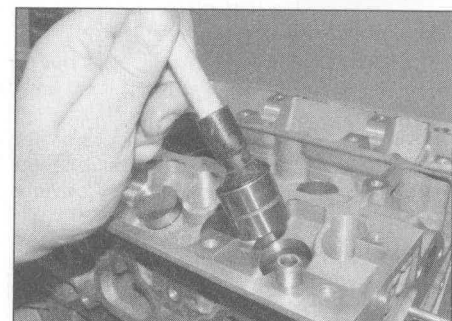
container into sixteen compartments and number each compartment accordingly. Using a rubber sucker, withdraw each hydraulic tappet in turn, and place it in its respective container (**see illustration**). Do not interchange the tappets, or the rate of wear will be much-increased.

#### Inspection

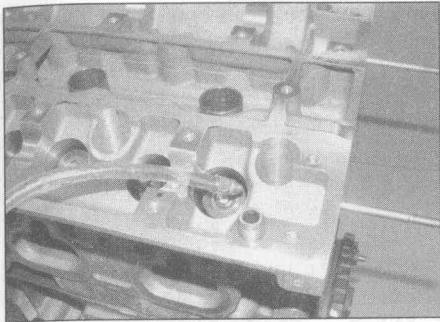
- 11 Examine the camshaft bearing surfaces and cam lobes for signs of wear ridges and scoring. Renew the camshaft if any of these conditions are apparent. Examine the condition of the bearing surfaces, both on the camshaft journals and in the cylinder head and bearing housing. If the head bearing surfaces are worn excessively, the cylinder head will need to be renewed. If suitable measuring equipment is available, camshaft bearing journal wear can be checked by direct measurement, noting that No 1 journal is at the transmission end of the head.
- 12 Examine the hydraulic tappet bearing surfaces which contact the camshaft lobes for wear ridges and scoring. Renew any tappet where these conditions are apparent. If a tappet bearing surface is badly scored, also examine the corresponding lobe on the camshaft for wear, as it is likely that both will be worn. Renew worn components as necessary.

#### Refitting

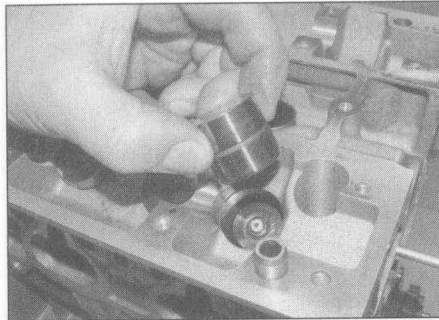
- 13 Before commencing refitting, remove all traces of oil from the bearing housing retaining bolt holes in the cylinder head, using a clean rag. Also ensure that both the cylinder head and bearing housing mating faces are clean and free from oil.
- 14 Liberally oil the cylinder head hydraulic tappet bores and the tappets. Carefully refit the tappets to the cylinder head, ensuring that each tappet is refitted to its original bore (**see illustrations**). Some care will be required to enter the tappets squarely into their bores. Check that each tappet rotates freely in its bore.
- 15 Liberally oil the camshaft bearings in the cylinder head and the camshaft lobes, then refit the camshafts to the cylinder head in their previously-noted positions (**see illustration**). Note that the exhaust camshaft has a sensor



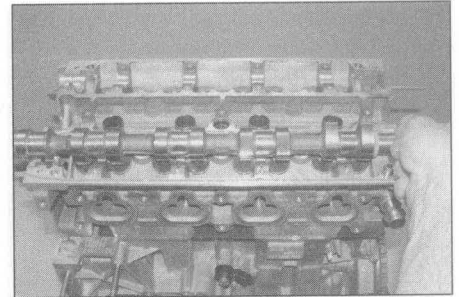
10.10 Use a rubber sucker to withdraw the hydraulic tappets



**10.14a** Lubricate the hydraulic tappet bores and the tappets ...



**10.14b** ... then refit the tappets ensuring that each is refitted to its original bore



**10.15** Liberally oil the camshaft bearings and lobes, then lay the camshaft in the cylinder head

ring on its left-hand end and must be fitted at the rear of the cylinder head.

**16** Ensure that the four locating dowels are in position, one at each corner of the cylinder head.

**17** Apply a bead of silicone-based jointing compound (Peugeot E10 jointing paste) around the perimeter of the mating faces and around the retaining bolt hole locations (see illustration).

**18** Liberally oil the camshaft bearings and carefully locate the bearing housings over the camshafts. Refit the retaining bolts ensuring that each has a washer under its head (see illustration). Note that the bearing housing with the sensor hole is located over the exhaust camshaft. Initially finger-tighten the bolts.

**19** Progressively tighten the bearing housing retaining bolts to the specified torque, in the order given in Section 4. It is suggested that the bolts are initially tightened to 5 Nm (4 lbf ft), then tightened to their final torque.

**20** Refit the inner timing cover to the cylinder head and tighten the retaining bolts securely.

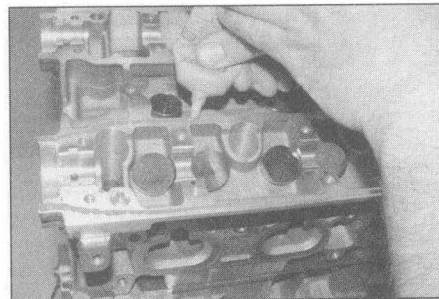
**21** Clean the jointing compound from the oil seal seatings in the cylinder head and camshaft housing.

**22** Fit new oil seals with reference to Section 9.

**23** Refit the sprockets to the camshafts with reference to Section 8.

**24** Refit the cylinder head covers together with new gaskets, with reference to Section 4.

**25** Refit the timing belt with reference to Section 7.



**10.17** Apply a bead of sealing compound around the perimeter of the cylinder head mating faces

**4** Unbolt the exhaust downpipe from the exhaust manifold on the rear of the engine with reference to Chapter 4A.

**5** Undo the 6 screw fasteners and remove the plastic cover from the engine.

**6** Release the fuel pressure from the fuel system by placing cloth rags around and over the Schrader valve on the fuel rail, and depressing the valve core.

**7** Disconnect the fuel supply pipe from the fuel rail.

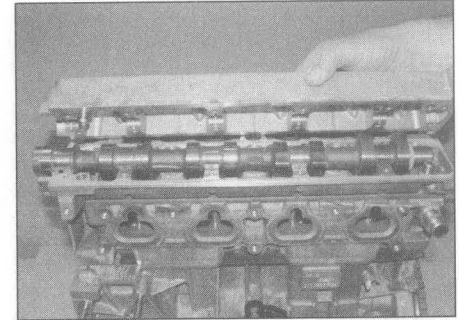
**8** Remove the timing belt as described in Section 7.

**9** Remove the timing belt tensioner roller as described in Section 8.

**10** Remove the air cleaner and intake pipe with reference to Chapter 4A.

**11** Remove the engine oil dipstick from its tube, then remove the tube itself from the block.

**12** Disconnect the crankcase breather hose from the camshaft cover.



**10.18** Carefully locate the bearing cap housings over the camshafts

**13** Note their fitted positions and routing, then disconnect all coolant hoses and wiring connectors/looms from the cylinder head.

**14** Remove the camshaft position sensor from the left-hand end of the exhaust camshaft cover.

**15** Remove the ignition coil module from the top of the cylinder head with reference to Chapter 5B.

**16** Unscrew the bolts/nuts securing the inlet manifold to the front of the cylinder head, then support the manifold away from the cylinder head.

**17** Remove both cylinder head covers and gaskets with reference to Section 4.

**18** Refit the right-hand engine mounting support bracket to the cylinder head.

**19** Using a Torx key socket and working in the reverse of the tightening sequence (see paragraph 33), progressively slacken the ten cylinder head bolts by half a turn at a time, until all bolts can be unscrewed by hand. Recover the washers where fitted.

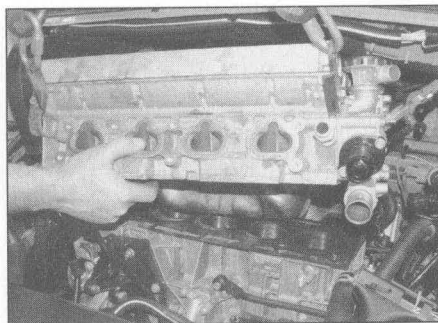
**20** With all the cylinder head bolts removed, the joint between the cylinder head and gasket, and the cylinder block/crankcase must now be broken. To break the joint, obtain two L-shaped metal bars which fit into the cylinder head bolt holes, and gently 'rock' the cylinder head free towards the front of the car. Do not try to swivel the head on the cylinder block/crankcase; it is located by dowels. When the joint is broken, lift the cylinder head away. Use a hoist or seek assistance if possible, as it is a heavy assembly (see illustration). Remove the gasket from the top of the block, noting the

## 11 Cylinder head – removal and refitting

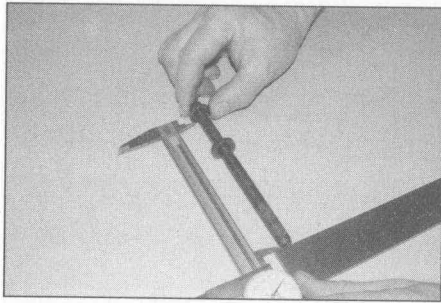


### Removal

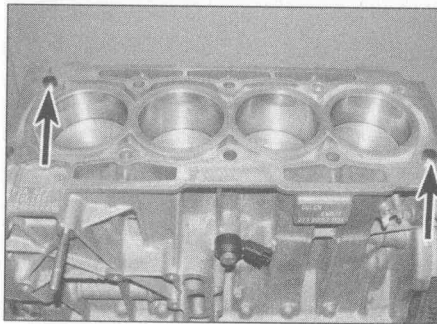
- 1 Disconnect the battery (see Chapter 5A).
- 2 Apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield. For improved access, remove the bonnet as described in Chapter 11.
- 3 Drain the cooling system as described in Chapter 1A.



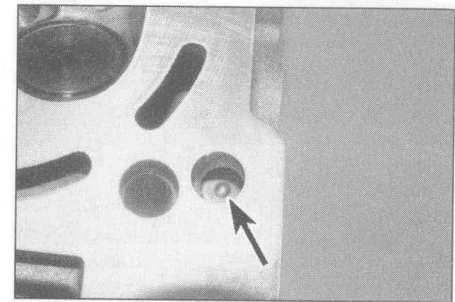
**11.20** Remove the cylinder head from the engine block



**11.25** Measure the length of the cylinder head bolts from the underside of the head to the end of the bolt



**11.27a** Check the cylinder head locating dowels (arrowed) are in place . . .



**11.27b** . . . and the camshaft oil supply non-return valve (arrowed) is in place in the cylinder head

two locating dowels. If the locating dowels are a loose fit, remove them and store them with the head for safe-keeping. Do not discard the gasket; it will be needed for identification purposes. During removal, check that the camshaft oil supply non-return valve (located in the underside of the cylinder head at the timing belt end) does not drop out; it is easily lost if it does.

**21** If the cylinder head is to be dismantled for overhaul, remove the camshafts as described in Section 10, then refer to Part D of this Chapter. Also remove the rigid pipe from the outlet housing.

### Preparation for refitting

**22** The mating faces of the cylinder head and cylinder block/crankcase must be perfectly clean before refitting the head. Use a hard plastic or wooden scraper to remove all traces of gasket and carbon and also clean the piston crowns. Make sure that the carbon is not allowed to enter the oil and water passages – this is particularly important for the lubrication system, as carbon could block the oil supply to the engine's components. Using adhesive tape and paper, seal the water, oil and bolt holes in the cylinder block/crankcase. To prevent carbon entering the gap between the pistons and bores, smear a little grease in the gap. After cleaning each piston, use a small brush to remove all traces of grease and carbon from the gap, then wipe away the remainder with a clean rag. Clean all the pistons in the same way.

**23** Check the mating surfaces of the cylinder block/crankcase and the cylinder head for

nicks, deep scratches and other damage. If slight, they may be removed carefully with a file, but if excessive, machining may be the only alternative to renewal. If warpage of the cylinder head gasket surface is suspected, use a straight-edge to check it for distortion. Refer to Part D of this Chapter if necessary.

**24** Obtain a new cylinder head gasket before starting the refitting procedure. At the time of writing, there are two different thicknesses available – the standard gasket which is fitted at the factory, and a slightly thicker 'repair' gasket (+0.3 mm), for use once the head gasket face has been machined. If the cylinder head has been machined, it should be marked '-0.3' on the upper corner, on the inlet manifold side, at the timing belt end. Note that modifications to the cylinder head gasket material, type, and manufacturer are constantly taking place; seek the advice of a Peugeot dealer as to the latest recommendations.

**25** Check the condition of the cylinder head bolts, and particularly their threads, whenever they are removed. Wash the bolts in a suitable solvent, and wipe them dry. Check each bolt for any sign of visible wear or damage, renewing them if necessary. Measure the length of each bolt from the underside of its head to the end of the bolt (see illustration). The bolts may be re-used if their length does not exceed 147.00 mm. If any one bolt is longer than the specified length, all of the bolts should be renewed as a complete set. Considering the stress which the cylinder head bolts are under, it is highly recommended that they are renewed, regardless of their apparent condition. Also

check that the thickness of the head bolt washers is  $4.00 \pm 0.2$  mm.

### Refitting

**26** Where removed, refit the camshafts, and the rigid pipe to the outlet housing on the cylinder head.

**27** Wipe clean the mating surfaces of the cylinder head and cylinder block/crankcase. Check that the two locating dowels are in position at each end of the cylinder block/crankcase surface. Peugeot recommend that the camshaft oil supply non-return valve in the oil feed bore at the timing belt end of the cylinder head is renewed (see illustrations).

**28** Position a new gasket on the cylinder block/crankcase surface, ensuring that the TOP mark is uppermost and at the front of the block (see illustration).

**29** Check that the crankshaft pulley and camshaft sprockets are still at their locked positions (see Section 3).

**30** With the aid of an assistant, carefully lower the cylinder head assembly onto the block, aligning it with the locating dowels.

**31** Apply a smear of grease to the threads, and to the underside of the heads, of the cylinder head bolts. Peugeot recommend the use of Molykote G Rapid Plus (available from your Peugeot dealer); in the absence of the specified grease, any good-quality high melting-point grease may be used.

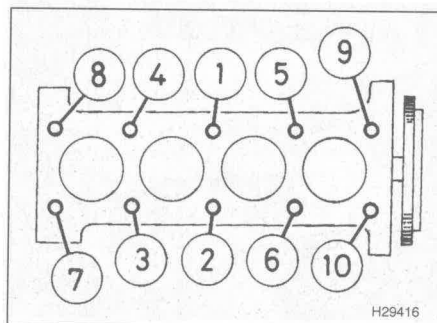
**32** Carefully enter each bolt and washer into its relevant hole (do not drop it in) then screw them in finger-tight.

**33** Working progressively and in sequence (see illustration), tighten the cylinder head bolts to their Stage 1 torque setting.

**34** Once all the bolts have been tightened to their Stage 1 torque setting, proceed to tighten them through the remaining stages as given in the Specifications. When carrying out Stage 3, slacken each bolt 1 turn working in the reverse of the tightening sequence. It is recommended that an angle-measuring gauge is used for the angle-tightening stages, however, if a gauge is not available, use white paint to make alignment marks between the bolt head and cylinder head prior to tightening; the marks can then be used to check that the bolt has rotated sufficiently. Where a maximum of 2 steps is given for



**11.28** Position the cylinder head gasket with the work TOP uppermost and toward the oil filter side of the engine block



**11.33** Cylinder head bolt tightening sequence

angle-tightening, each step must be completed in one movement without stopping.

**35** The remainder of the refitting procedure is a reversal of removal, referring to the relevant Chapters or Sections as required. On completion, refill the cooling system as described in Chapter 1A. Initialise the engine management ECU as follows. Start the engine and run to normal temperature. Carry out a road test during which the following procedure should be made. Engage third gear and stabilise the engine at 1000 rpm. Now accelerate fully to 3500 rpm.

## 12 Sump – removal and refitting



### Removal

**1** Apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield (where fitted).

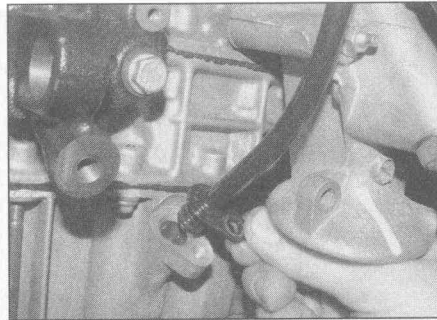
**2** Drain the engine oil then clean and refit the engine oil drain plug, tightening it securely. If the engine is nearing its service interval when the oil and filter are due for renewal, it is recommended that the filter is also removed, and a new one fitted. After reassembly, the engine can then be refilled with fresh oil. Refer to Chapter 1A for further information.

**3** Withdraw the engine oil dipstick from the guide tube.

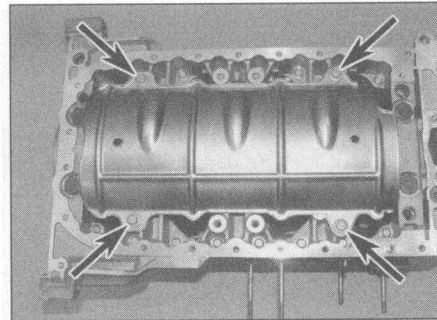
**4** Undo the bolt securing the upper end of the dipstick guide tube to the ancillary components mounting bracket. Undo the bolt securing the base of the guide tube to the sump and remove the guide tube (see *illustration*). Collect the two O-rings from the base of the guide tube, noting that new O-rings will be required for refitting.

**5** Where applicable, move the power steering pipe supports from the sump. Also disconnect the wiring from the oil temperature sender unit.

**6** Progressively slacken and remove all the sump retaining bolts. Since there are nineteen 25.0 mm bolts and seven 110.0 mm bolts, remove each bolt in turn, and store it in its



**12.4** Undo the upper and lower retaining bolts and remove the dipstick guide tube



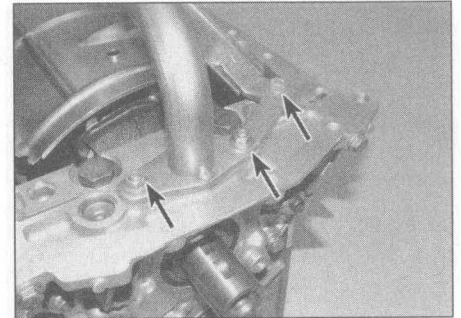
**12.7b** Crankcase baffle plate retaining bolts locations (arrowed)

correct fitted order by pushing it through a clearly-marked cardboard template. This will avoid the possibility of installing the bolts in the wrong locations on refitting.

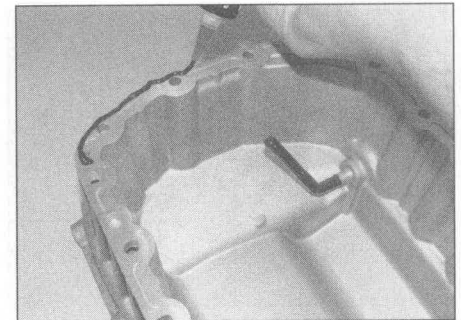
**7** Break the joint by striking the sump with the palm of your hand. Lower the sump, and withdraw it from underneath the vehicle. While the sump is removed, take the opportunity to check the oil pump pick-up/strainer for signs of clogging or splitting. If necessary, remove the pump as described in Section 13, and clean or renew the strainer. Also unbolt the oil baffle plate from the bottom of the main bearing ladder, noting which way round it is fitted (see *illustrations*). Note that the sump is located on a dowel.

### Refitting

**8** Where removed, refit the baffle plate to the main bearing ladder and tighten the bolts securely.



**12.7a** Oil pump pick-up tube retaining nuts and retaining bolt locations (arrowed)



**12.11** Apply a thin bead of RTV sealant to the sump mating surface

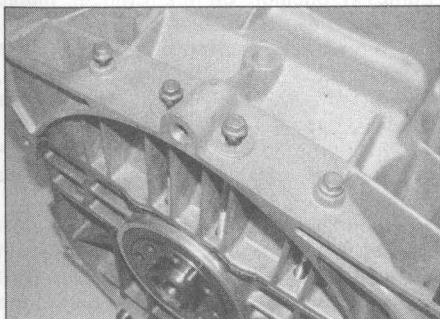
**9** Where removed, refit the oil pump and pick-up/strainer with reference to Section 13.

**10** Clean all traces of sealant/gasket from the mating surfaces of the main bearing ladder and sump, then use a clean rag to wipe out the sump and the engine's interior.

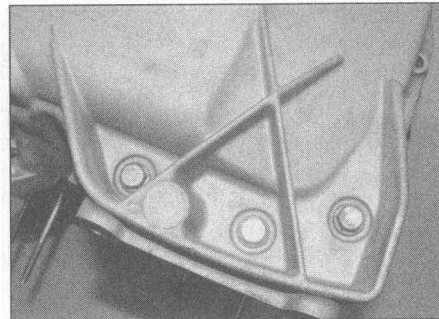
**11** Ensure that the sump mating surfaces are clean and dry, then apply a thin coating of suitable sealant to the sump mating surface (see *illustration*).

**12** Check that the location dowel is in place, then refit the sump onto the main bearing ladder and insert the bolts and finger-tighten them at this stage, so that it is still possible to move the sump. Make sure the bolts are refitted in their correct locations (see *illustrations*).

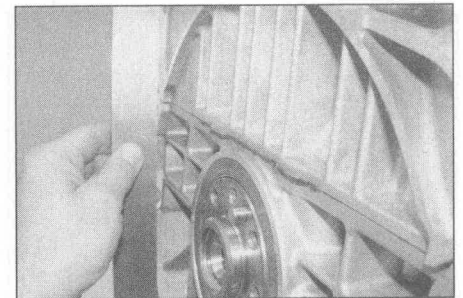
**13** Using a straight-edge, align the flywheel end of the sump with the main bearing ladder and cylinder block, then progressively tighten the sump bolts to the specified torque (see *illustration*).



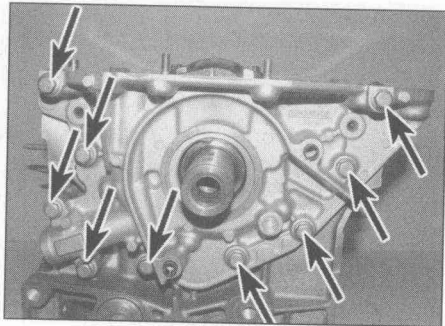
**12.12a** Four of the long sump retaining bolts are fitted at the transmission end . . .



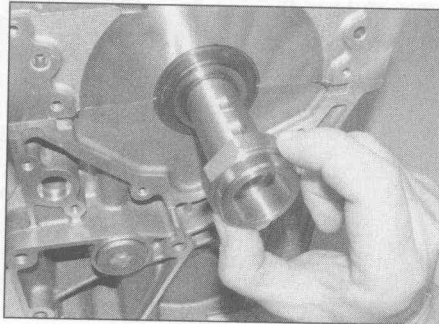
**12.12b** . . . and three are fitted at the timing belt end on the oil filter side



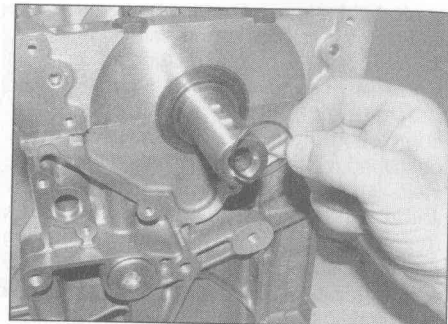
**12.13** Use a straight-edge to ensure the rear faces of the cylinder block and sump are flush



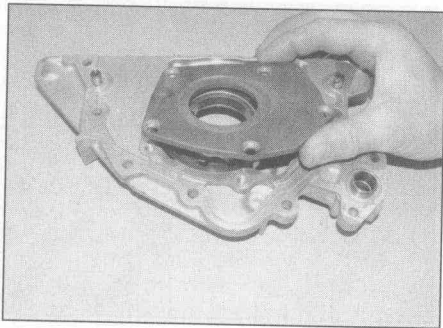
13.3 Oil pump housing retaining bolt locations (arrowed)



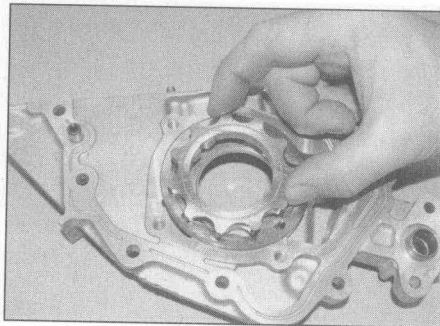
13.4a Slide the oil pump drive collar off the crankshaft...



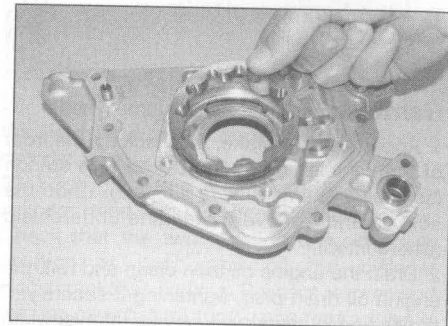
13.4b ... and collect the O-ring behind the collar



13.6a Undo the five screws and lift off the oil pump rear cover



13.6b Remove the inner rotor...



13.6c ... and outer rotor from the pump housing

14 Check that the oil drain plug is tightened securely, then refit the engine undershield (where applicable) and lower the vehicle to the ground.

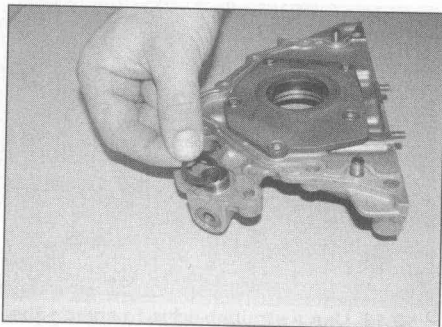
15 Refill the engine with oil as described in Chapter 1A.

### 13 Oil pump – removal, inspection and refitting



#### Removal

- 1 Remove the timing belt and crankshaft sprocket as described in Sections 7 and 8.
- 2 Remove the sump and oil pump pick-up/strainer as described in Section 12.
- 3 Unscrew the nine bolts securing the oil pump to the main bearing ladder and cylinder block, then withdraw the oil pump over the



13.9 Locate a new O-ring over the oil pump outlet stub

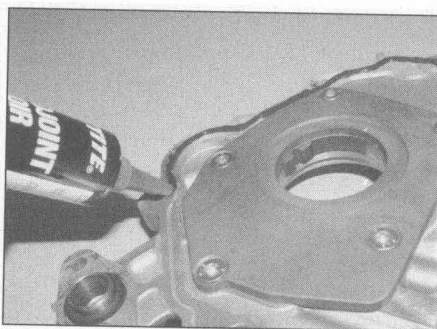
nose of the crankshaft (see illustration). Note it is located on dowels, and therefore it may be necessary to carefully prise it away to release it.

4 Slide the oil pump drive collar off the end of the crankshaft and collect the O-ring located behind the collar (see illustrations).

5 With the oil pump removed, note the fitted depth of the crankshaft oil seal, then drive it from the oil pump housing. A new oil seal must be obtained for refitting.

#### Inspection

6 At the time of writing, checking specifications for the oil pump were not available, however, if the oil pump is to be re-used, the internal gears should be cleaned. To do this, unbolt the cover, then mark the gears for location and remove them (see illustrations). Clean the gears and inspect them for damage and excessive wear.



13.10 Apply a thin bead of RTV sealant to the oil pump mating surface

7 Lubricate the gears with oil, then refit them in their locations noted during removal. Refit the cover and tighten the bolts securely.

8 Thoroughly clean the oil pump strainer with a suitable solvent, and check it for signs of clogging or splitting. If the strainer is damaged, the strainer and cover assembly must be renewed.

#### Refitting

9 Clean the mating surfaces of the oil pump and main bearing ladder/cylinder block. Check that the locating dowels are in position on the pump flange then locate a new O-ring over the oil pump outlet stub (see illustration).

10 Apply a thin coating of suitable sealant to the mating face of the oil pump housing (see illustration).

11 Prime the oil pump by injecting clean engine oil into the outlet stub, then place the pump in position on the cylinder block, engaging the locating dowels.

12 Apply thread locking compound to the threads of the nine oil pump retaining bolts, then refit the bolts and tighten them to the specified torque.

13 Position a new oil pump drive collar O-ring on the end of the crankshaft (see illustration).

14 Lubricate the sealing lips of the new crankshaft right-hand oil seal and carefully fit the seal over the oil pump drive collar (see illustrations). Note that the open part of the seal must be towards the shoulder of the drive collar.

15 Slide the drive collar over the end of the

crankshaft and engage it with the oil pump inner rotor (**see illustration**). As the collar engages with the pump inner rotor, push the oil seal initially into place in the oil pump housing. Tap the seal fully into position using a suitable drift.

**16** Refit the pick-up/strainer and sump as described in Section 12, and the crankshaft sprocket and timing belt as described in Sections 7 and 8.

**17** Before starting the engine, prime the oil pump as follows. Disconnect the fuel injector wiring connectors, then spin the engine on the starter until the oil pressure light goes out. Reconnect the injector wiring on completion.

## 14 Crankshaft oil seals – renewal



### Right-hand oil seal

**1** Remove the crankshaft sprocket and (where fitted) spacer, referring to Section 8. Secure the timing belt clear of the working area, so that it cannot be contaminated with oil. Make a note of the correct fitted depth of the seal in its housing.

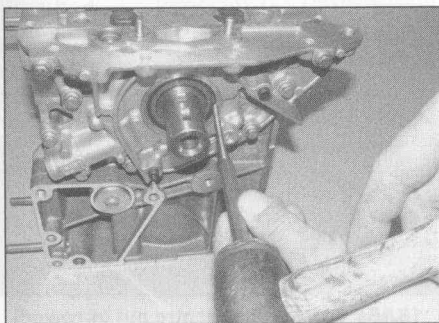
**2** Punch or drill two small holes opposite each other in the seal. Screw a self-tapping screw into each, and pull on the screws with pliers to extract the seal. Alternatively, the seal can be levered out of position. Use a flat-bladed screwdriver, and take great care not to damage the crankshaft shoulder or seal housing.

**3** Clean the seal housing, and polish off any burrs or raised edges, which may have caused the seal to fail in the first place.

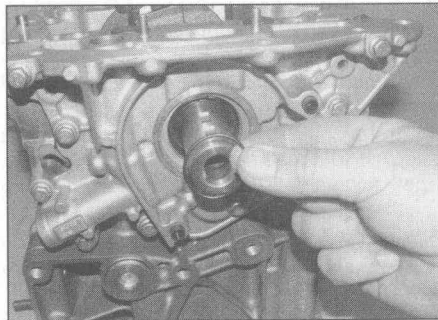
**4** Lubricate the lips of the new seal with clean engine oil, and carefully locate the seal on the end of the crankshaft. Note that its sealing lip must be facing inwards. Take care not to damage the seal lips during fitting.

**5** Fit the new seal using a suitable tubular drift, such as a socket, which bears only on the hard outer edge of the seal. Tap the seal into position, to the same depth in the housing as the original was prior to removal (**see illustration**).

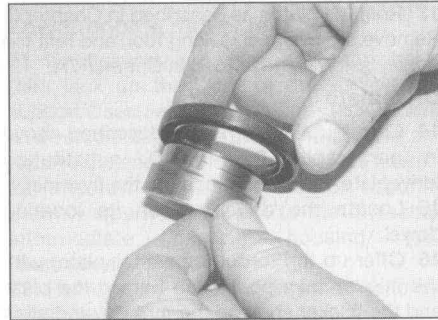
**6** Wash off any traces of oil, then refit the crankshaft sprocket as described in Section 8.



**14.5** Tap the crankshaft right-hand oil seal into position using a suitable drift



**13.13** Position a new oil pump drive collar O-ring on the end of the crankshaft



**13.14b** . . . and carefully fit the seal over the oil pump drive collar

### Left-hand oil seal

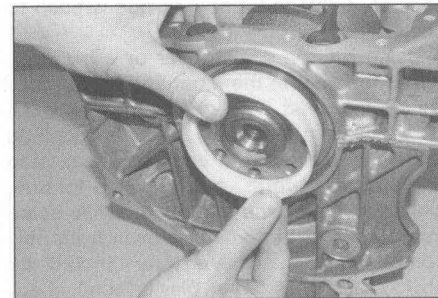
**7** Remove the flywheel/driveplate as described in Section 15. Make a note of the correct fitted depth of the seal in its housing.

**8** Punch or drill two small holes opposite each other in the seal. Screw a self-tapping screw into each, and pull on the screws with pliers to extract the seal.

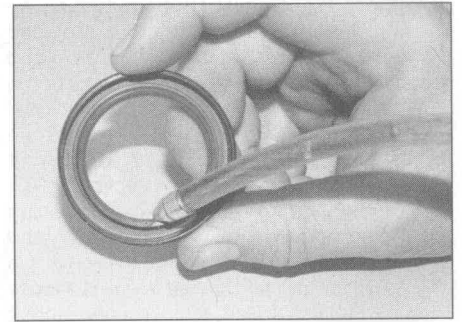
**9** Clean the seal housing, and polish off any burrs or raised edges, which may have caused the seal to fail in the first place.

**10** Lubricate the lips of the new seal with clean engine oil, and carefully locate the seal on the end of the crankshaft. The new seal will normally be supplied with a plastic fitting sleeve to protect the seal lips as the seal is fitted. If so, lubricate the fitting sleeve and locate it over the end of the crankshaft (**see illustration**).

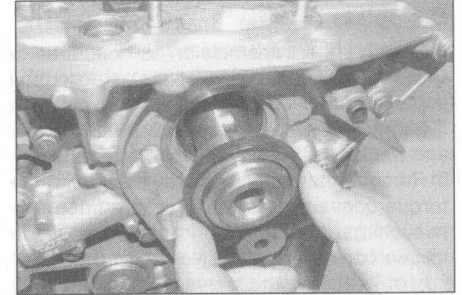
**11** Lubricate the lips of the new seal with



**14.10** Lubricate the crankshaft left-hand oil seal fitting sleeve and locate it over the end of the crankshaft



**13.14a** Lubricate the sealing lips of the new crankshaft right-hand oil seal . . .



**13.15** Slide the drive collar onto the crankshaft and engage it with the oil pump inner rotor

clean engine oil, and carefully locate the seal over the fitting sleeve and onto the end of the crankshaft (**see illustration**). Drive the seal into position, to the same depth in the housing as the original was prior to removal.

**12** Wash off any traces of oil, then refit the flywheel/driveplate as described in Section 15.

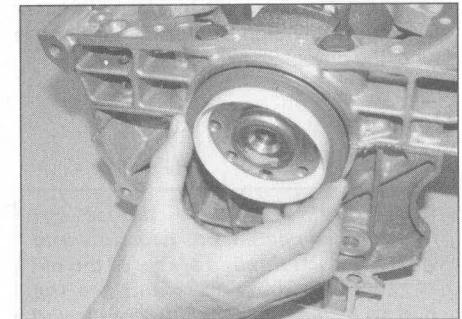
## 15 Flywheel/driveplate – removal, inspection and refitting



### Removal

#### Flywheel

**1** Remove the transmission as described in Chapter 7A, then remove the clutch assembly as described in Chapter 6.



**14.11** Locate the oil seal over the fitting sleeve and over the end of the crankshaft

2 Prevent the crankshaft from turning by locking the flywheel with a wide-bladed screwdriver between the ring gear teeth and the transmission casing. Alternatively, bolt a strap between the flywheel and the cylinder block/crankcase. *Do not* attempt to lock the flywheel in position using the crankshaft pulley locking pin described in Section 3.

3 Slacken and remove the flywheel retaining bolts, and remove the flywheel from the end of the crankshaft. Be careful not to drop it; it is heavy. If the flywheel locating dowel is a loose fit in the crankshaft end, remove it and store it with the flywheel for safe-keeping. Discard the flywheel bolts; new ones must be used on refitting.

### Driveplate

4 Remove the transmission as described in Chapter 7B. Lock the driveplate as described in paragraph 2. Mark the relationship between the torque converter plate and the driveplate, and slacken all the driveplate retaining bolts.

5 Remove the retaining bolts, along with the torque converter plate and (where fitted) the two shims (one fitted on each side of the torque converter plate). Note that the shims are of different thickness, the thicker one being on the outside of the torque converter plate. Discard the driveplate retaining bolts; new ones must be used on refitting.

6 Remove the driveplate from the end of the crankshaft. If the locating dowel is a loose fit in the crankshaft end, remove it and store it with the driveplate for safe-keeping.

### Inspection

7 On models with manual transmission, examine the flywheel for scoring of the clutch face, and for wear or chipping of the ring gear teeth. If the clutch face is scored, the flywheel may be surface-ground, but renewal is preferable. Seek the advice of a Peugeot dealer or engine reconditioning specialist to see if machining is possible. If the ring gear is worn or damaged, the flywheel must be renewed, as it is not possible to renew the ring gear separately.

8 On models with automatic transmission, check the torque converter driveplate carefully for signs of distortion. Look for any hairline cracks around the bolt holes or radiating outwards from the centre, and inspect the ring gear teeth for signs of wear or chipping. If any sign of wear or damage is found, the driveplate must be renewed.

### Refitting

#### Flywheel



*If a suitable tap is not available, cut two slots into the threads of one of the old flywheel bolts and use the bolt to remove the locking compound from the threads.*

9 Clean the mating surfaces of the flywheel and crankshaft. Remove any remaining locking compound from the threads of the crankshaft holes, using the correct-size tap, if available.

10 If the new flywheel retaining bolts are not supplied with their threads already pre-coated, apply a suitable thread-locking compound to the threads of each bolt.

11 Ensure the locating dowel is in position. Offer up the flywheel, locating it on the dowel, and fit the new retaining bolts.

12 Lock the flywheel using the method employed on dismantling, and tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque and angle.

13 Refit the clutch as described in Chapter 6. Remove the flywheel locking tool, and refit the transmission as described in Chapter 7A.

### Driveplate

14 Carry out the operations described above in paragraphs 9 and 10, substituting 'driveplate' for all references to the flywheel.

15 Locate the driveplate on its locating dowel.

16 Offer up the torque converter plate, with the thinner shim positioned behind the plate and the thicker shim on the outside, and align the marks made prior to removal.

17 Fit the new retaining bolts, then lock the driveplate using the method employed on dismantling. Tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque wrench setting and angle.

18 Remove the driveplate locking tool, and refit the transmission as described in Chapter 7B.

## 16 Engine/transmission mountings – inspection and renewal



### Inspection

1 If improved access is required, raise the front of the car and support it securely on axle stands.

2 Check the mounting rubber to see if it is cracked, hardened or separated from the metal at any point; renew the mounting if any such damage or deterioration is evident.

3 Check that all the mounting's fasteners are securely tightened; use a torque wrench to check if possible.

4 Using a large screwdriver or a crowbar, check for wear in the mounting by carefully levering against it to check for free play. Where this is not possible, enlist the aid of an assistant to move the engine/transmission unit back-and-forth, or from side-to-side, while you watch the mounting. While some free play is to be expected even from new components, excessive wear should be obvious. If excessive free play is found, check first that the fasteners are correctly secured, then renew any worn components as described below.

## Renewal

### Right-hand mounting

5 Release all the relevant hoses and wiring from their retaining clips. Place the hoses/wiring clear of the mounting so that the removal procedure is not hindered.

6 Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield (where fitted), then place a jack beneath the engine, with a block of wood on the jack head. Raise the jack until it is supporting the weight of the engine.

7 Undo the bolts securing the engine mounting to the body and the support bracket.

8 If required, undo the bolts/nuts securing the support bracket to the cylinder head/cylinder block.

9 Check all components carefully for signs of wear or damage, and renew as necessary.

10 Where removed, refit the support bracket to the cylinder head, and tighten the bolts securely.

11 Refit the mount to the body and support bracket, then tighten the bolts to the specified torque.

12 Remove the jack from underneath the engine, and refit the engine undershield (where applicable).

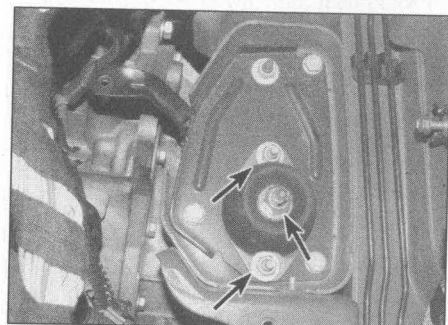
### Left-hand mounting

13 Remove the battery and battery tray (see Chapter 5A).

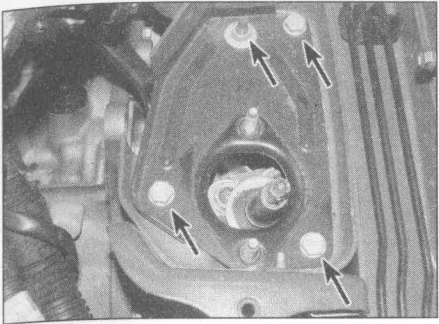
14 Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield (where fitted), then place a jack beneath the transmission, with a block of wood on the jack head. Raise the jack until it is supporting the weight of the transmission.

15 Slacken and remove the centre nut and washer from the left-hand mounting, then undo the nuts securing the mounting in position and remove it from the engine compartment. If necessary undo the nut/bolts and remove the mounting plate (see illustrations).

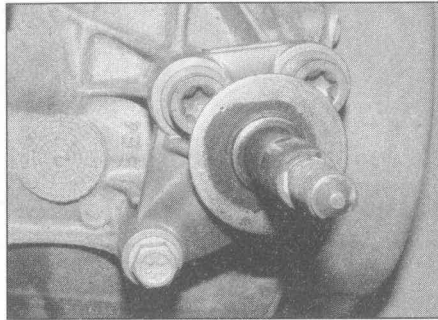
16 If necessary, slide the spacer (where fitted) off the mounting stud, then unscrew the stud from the top of the transmission housing, and remove it along with its washer (see illustration). If the mounting stud is tight, a universal stud extractor can be used to unscrew it.



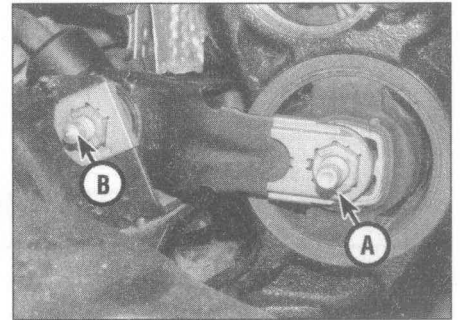
16.15a Slacken the centre nut (arrowed) then undo the mounting retaining nuts (arrowed)



**16.15b** Undo the nut/bolts (arrowed) and remove the mounting plate



**16.16** Unscrew the mounting stud from the mounting



**16.22** Undo the link-to-engine block bracket bolt (A) and the link-to-subframe bolt (B)

**17** Check all components carefully for signs of wear or damage, and renew as necessary.

**18** Clean the threads of the mounting stud, and apply a coat of thread-locking compound to its threads. Refit the stud and washer to the top of the transmission, and tighten it securely.

**19** Slide the spacer (where fitted) onto the mounting stud, then refit the rubber mounting. Tighten both the mounting-to-body bolts and the mounting centre nut to their specified torque settings, and remove the jack from underneath the transmission. Refit the engine undershield.

**20** Refit the battery and tray as described in Chapter 5A.

### Lower engine movement limiter

**21** If not already done, chock the rear wheels, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it securely on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield (where fitted).

**22** Unscrew and remove the bolt securing the movement limiter link to the driveshaft intermediate bearing housing (see *illustration*).

**23** Remove the bolt securing the link to the subframe. Withdraw the link.

**24** To remove the intermediate bearing housing assembly it will first be necessary to remove the right-hand driveshaft as described in Chapter 8.

**25** With the driveshaft removed, undo the

retaining bolts and remove the bearing housing from the rear of the cylinder block.

**26** Check carefully for signs of wear or damage on all components, and renew them where necessary. The rubber bush fitted to the bearing housing is available as a separate item (at the time of writing), and can be pressed out of, and back into place.

**27** On reassembly, fit the bearing housing assembly to the rear of the cylinder block, and tighten its retaining bolts securely. Refit the driveshaft as described in Chapter 8.

**28** Refit the movement limiter link, and tighten both its bolts to their specified torque settings. Refit the engine undershield (where applicable).

**29** Lower the vehicle to the ground.

## SPECIFICATIONS

### General

#### Dimensions

1.4 litre petrol

1.6 litre petrol

2.0 litre petrol

Engine Oil

1.4 litre petrol

1.6 litre petrol

2.0 litre petrol

Oil Filter

1.4 litre petrol

1.6 litre petrol

2.0 litre petrol

Brakes

1.4 litre petrol

1.6 litre petrol

2.0 litre petrol

Friction Plates

1.4 litre petrol

1.6 litre petrol

2.0 litre petrol

Medium Axle

1.4 litre petrol

1.6 litre petrol

2.0 litre petrol

2.5 litre petrol

2.8 litre petrol

3.0 litre petrol

3.5 litre petrol

4.0 litre petrol

4.5 litre petrol

5.0 litre petrol

5.5 litre petrol

6.0 litre petrol

6.5 litre petrol

7.0 litre petrol

7.5 litre petrol

8.0 litre petrol

8.5 litre petrol

9.0 litre petrol

9.5 litre petrol

10.0 litre petrol

10.5 litre petrol

11.0 litre petrol

11.5 litre petrol

12.0 litre petrol

12.5 litre petrol

13.0 litre petrol

13.5 litre petrol

14.0 litre petrol

14.5 litre petrol

15.0 litre petrol

15.5 litre petrol

16.0 litre petrol

16.5 litre petrol

17.0 litre petrol

17.5 litre petrol

18.0 litre petrol

18.5 litre petrol

19.0 litre petrol

19.5 litre petrol

20.0 litre petrol

20.5 litre petrol

21.0 litre petrol

21.5 litre petrol

22.0 litre petrol

22.5 litre petrol

23.0 litre petrol

23.5 litre petrol

24.0 litre petrol

24.5 litre petrol

25.0 litre petrol

25.5 litre petrol

26.0 litre petrol

26.5 litre petrol

27.0 litre petrol

27.5 litre petrol

28.0 litre petrol

28.5 litre petrol

29.0 litre petrol

29.5 litre petrol

30.0 litre petrol

30.5 litre petrol

31.0 litre petrol

31.5 litre petrol

32.0 litre petrol

32.5 litre petrol

33.0 litre petrol

33.5 litre petrol

34.0 litre petrol

34.5 litre petrol

35.0 litre petrol

35.5 litre petrol

36.0 litre petrol

36.5 litre petrol

37.0 litre petrol

37.5 litre petrol

38.0 litre petrol

38.5 litre petrol

39.0 litre petrol

39.5 litre petrol

40.0 litre petrol

40.5 litre petrol

41.0 litre petrol

41.5 litre petrol

42.0 litre petrol

42.5 litre petrol

43.0 litre petrol

43.5 litre petrol

44.0 litre petrol

44.5 litre petrol

45.0 litre petrol

45.5 litre petrol

46.0 litre petrol

46.5 litre petrol

47.0 litre petrol

47.5 litre petrol

48.0 litre petrol

48.5 litre petrol

49.0 litre petrol

49.5 litre petrol

50.0 litre petrol

50.5 litre petrol

51.0 litre petrol

51.5 litre petrol

52.0 litre petrol

52.5 litre petrol

53.0 litre petrol

53.5 litre petrol

54.0 litre petrol

54.5 litre petrol

55.0 litre petrol

55.5 litre petrol

56.0 litre petrol

56.5 litre petrol

57.0 litre petrol

57.5 litre petrol

58.0 litre petrol

58.5 litre petrol

59.0 litre petrol

59.5 litre petrol

60.0 litre petrol

60.5 litre petrol

61.0 litre petrol

61.5 litre petrol

62.0 litre petrol

62.5 litre petrol

63.0 litre petrol

63.5 litre petrol

64.0 litre petrol

64.5 litre petrol

65.0 litre petrol

65.5 litre petrol

66.0 litre petrol

66.5 litre petrol

67.0 litre petrol

67.5 litre petrol

68.0 litre petrol

68.5 litre petrol

69.0 litre petrol

69.5 litre petrol

70.0 litre petrol

70.5 litre petrol

71.0 litre petrol

71.5 litre petrol

72.0 litre petrol

72.5 litre petrol

73.0 litre petrol

73.5 litre petrol

74.0 litre petrol

74.5 litre petrol

75.0 litre petrol

75.5 litre petrol

76.0 litre petrol

76.5 litre petrol

77.0 litre petrol

77.5 litre petrol

78.0 litre petrol

78.5 litre petrol

79.0 litre petrol

79.5 litre petrol

80.0 litre petrol

80.5 litre petrol

81.0 litre petrol

81.5 litre petrol

82.0 litre petrol

82.5 litre petrol

83.0 litre petrol

83.5 litre petrol

84.0 litre petrol

84.5 litre petrol

85.0 litre petrol

85.5 litre petrol

86.0 litre petrol

86.5 litre petrol

87.0 litre petrol

87.5 litre petrol

88.0 litre petrol

88.5 litre petrol

89.0 litre petrol

89.5 litre petrol

90.0 litre petrol

90.5 litre petrol

91.0 litre petrol

91.5 litre petrol

92.0 litre petrol

92.5 litre petrol

93.0 litre petrol

93.5 litre petrol

94.0 litre petrol

94.5 litre petrol

95.0 litre petrol

95.5 litre petrol

96.0 litre petrol

96.5 litre petrol

97.0 litre petrol

97.5 litre petrol

98.0 litre petrol

98.5 litre petrol

99.0 litre petrol

99.5 litre petrol

100.0 litre petrol

100.5 litre petrol

101.0 litre petrol

101.5 litre petrol

102.0 litre petrol

102.5 litre petrol

103.0 litre petrol

103.5 litre petrol

104.0 litre petrol

104.5 litre petrol

105.0 litre petrol

105.5 litre petrol

106.0 litre petrol

106.5 litre petrol

107.0 litre petrol

107.5 litre petrol

108.0 litre petrol

108.5 litre petrol

109.0 litre petrol

109.5 litre petrol

110.0 litre petrol

110.5 litre petrol

111.0 litre petrol

111.5 litre petrol

112.0 litre petrol

112.5 litre petrol

113.0 litre petrol

113.5 litre petrol





Faint text caption below the first image.

Faint text paragraph below the first image.

Faint section header below the first image.

Faint text paragraph below the first image.

Faint text paragraph below the first image.

Faint text paragraph below the first image.

Faint text paragraph below the first image.

Faint text paragraph below the first image.

Faint text paragraph below the first image.

Faint text paragraph below the first image.

Faint text paragraph below the first image.

Faint text paragraph below the first image.

Faint text paragraph below the first image.

Faint text paragraph below the first image.



Faint text caption below the second image.

Faint text paragraph below the second image.

Faint section header below the second image.

Faint text paragraph below the second image.

Faint text paragraph below the second image.

Faint text paragraph below the second image.

Faint text paragraph below the second image.

Faint text paragraph below the second image.

Faint text paragraph below the second image.

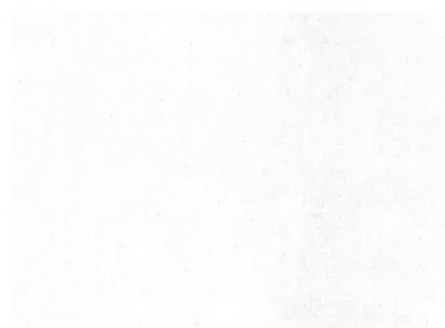
Faint text paragraph below the second image.

Faint text paragraph below the second image.

Faint text paragraph below the second image.

Faint text paragraph below the second image.

Faint text paragraph below the second image.



Faint text caption below the third image.

Faint text paragraph below the third image.

Faint section header below the third image.

Faint text paragraph below the third image.

Faint text paragraph below the third image.

Faint text paragraph below the third image.

Faint text paragraph below the third image.

Faint text paragraph below the third image.

Faint text paragraph below the third image.

Faint text paragraph below the third image.

Faint text paragraph below the third image.

Faint text paragraph below the third image.

Faint text paragraph below the third image.

Faint text paragraph below the third image.

# Chapter 2 Part C:

## Diesel engine in-car repair procedures

### Contents

Camshaft, rocker arms and hydraulic tappets – removal, inspection and refitting .....	9	Flywheel/driveplate – removal, inspection and refitting .....	16
Compression and leakdown tests – description and interpretation ..	2	General information .....	1
Crankshaft pulley – removal and refitting .....	5	Oil cooler – removal and refitting .....	13
Cylinder head – removal and refitting .....	10	Oil pressure switch and level sensor – removal and refitting .....	15
Cylinder head cover – removal and refitting .....	4	Oil pump – removal, inspection and refitting .....	12
Engine assembly/valve timing holes – general information and usage .....	3	Oil seals – renewal .....	14
Engine oil and filter renewal .....	See Chapter 1B	Sump – removal and refitting .....	11
Engine oil level check .....	See <i>Weekly checks</i>	Timing belt – removal, inspection, refitting and tensioning .....	7
Engine/transmission mountings – inspection and renewal .....	17	Timing belt covers – removal and refitting .....	6
		Timing belt sprockets and tensioner – removal and refitting .....	8

### Degrees of difficulty

**Easy**, suitable for novice with little experience



**Fairly easy**, suitable for beginner with some experience



**Fairly difficult**, suitable for competent DIY mechanic



**Difficult**, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic



**Very difficult**, suitable for expert DIY or professional



### Specifications

#### General

##### Designation:

1.4 litre (1398cc engine) .....	DV4TD
2.0 litre (1997cc engine) .....	DW10TD
2.0 litre (1997cc engine) .....	DW10ATED

##### Engine codes\*:

1.4 litre engine .....	8HZ
2.0 litre engine:	
DW10TD .....	RHY
DW10ATED .....	RHZ

##### Bore:

1.4 litre engine .....	73.70 mm
2.0 litre engine .....	85.00 mm

##### Stroke:

1.4 litre engine .....	82.00 mm
2.0 litre engine .....	88.00 mm

##### Direction of crankshaft rotation

Clockwise (viewed from the right-hand side of vehicle)

##### No 1 cylinder location

At the transmission end of the block

##### Maximum power output:

1.4 litre engine .....	50 kW @ 4000 rpm
2.0 litre engine:	
Code RHY .....	66 kW @ 4000 rpm
Code RHZ .....	81 kW @ 4000 rpm

##### Maximum torque output:

1.4 litre engine .....	160 Nm @ 2000 rpm
2.0 litre engine:	
Code RHY .....	205 Nm @ 1900 rpm
Code RHZ .....	250 Nm @ 1750 rpm

##### Compression ratio:

1.4 litre engine .....	18.0 : 1
2.0 litre engine .....	17.6 : 1

\* The engine code is stamped on a plate attached to the front of the cylinder block, next to the oil filter

**Compression pressures (engine hot, at cranking speed)**

Normal .....	25 to 30 bars (363 to 435 psi)
Minimum .....	18 bars (261 psi)
Maximum difference between any two cylinders .....	5 bars (73 psi)

**Timing belt**

Tension setting (see text – Section 7):

Initial setting .....	<b>2.0 litre engine only</b> 98 ± 2 SEEM units
Final setting .....	54 ± 3 SEEM units

**Camshaft**

Drive .....	Toothed belt
-------------	--------------

**Lubrication system**

Oil pump type:

1.4 litre engine .....	Gear type, driven directly by the right-hand end of the crankshaft, by two flats machined along the crankshaft journal
2.0 litre engine .....	Gear-type, chain-driven off the crankshaft right-hand end
Minimum oil pressure:	
1.4 litre engine .....	3.5 bars @ 4000 rpm, 2.3 bars @ 2000 rpm (110°C)
2.0 litre engine .....	4.0 bars @ 4000 rpm, 2.0 bars @ 2000 rpm (80°C)
Oil pressure warning switch operating pressure .....	0.8 bars

**Torque wrench settings****1.4 litre engine**

	Nm	lbf ft
Auxiliary drivebelt tensioner roller .....	20	15
Big-end bolts*:		
Stage 1 .....	10	7
Stage 2 .....	Slacken 180°	
Stage 3 .....	10	7
Stage 4 .....	Angle-tighten a further 100°	
Camshaft bearing housing .....	10	7
Camshaft position sensor bolt .....	5	4
Camshaft sprocket .....	45	33
Coolant outlet housing bolts .....	10	7
Crankshaft position/speed sensor bolt .....	5	4
Crankshaft pulley/sprocket bolt:		
Stage 1 .....	30	22
Stage 2 .....	Angle-tighten a further 180°	
Cylinder head bolts:		
Stage 1 .....	20	15
Stage 2 .....	40	30
Stage 3 .....	Angle-tighten a further 230°	
Cylinder head cover bolts .....	10	7
Engine-to-transmission fixing bolts .....	45	33
Flywheel bolts*:		
Stage 1 .....	15	11
Stage 2 .....	Angle-tighten a further 75°	
Fuel pump sprocket nut .....	50	37
Left-hand engine/transmission mounting:		
Mounting bracket-to-body bolts .....	20	15
Mounting stud-to-transmission bolts .....	20	15
Mounting to bracket .....	30	22
Rubber mounting centre nut .....	60	44
Main bearing ladder seam bolts:		
Stage 1 .....	5	4
Stage 2 .....	10	7
Main bearing ladder to cylinder block*:		
Stage 1 .....	10	7
Stage 2 .....	Slacken 180°	
Stage 3 .....	30	22
Stage 4 .....	Angle-tighten a further 140°	
Piston oil jet spray tube bolt .....	20	15
Oil pump to cylinder block .....	10	7
Rear engine/transmission mounting:		
Connecting link to mounting assembly .....	55	41
Connecting link-to-subframe nut/bolt .....	40	30
Mounting to engine .....	45	33

**Torque wrench settings (continued)**

	Nm	lbf ft
<b>1.4 litre engine (continued)</b>		
Right-hand engine mounting:		
Mounting to body .....	60	44
Mounting to support bracket .....	60	44
Support bracket to engine .....	55	41
Sump bolts/nuts .....	10	7
Sump plug .....	16	12
Timing belt idler pulley .....	35	26
Timing belt tensioner pulley .....	25	18
<b>2.0 litre engine</b>		
Big-end bearing cap nuts*:		
Stage 1 .....	20	15
Stage 2 .....	Angle-tighten a further 70°	
Camshaft bearing housing bolts .....	10	7
Camshaft sprocket hub-to-camshaft bolt .....	43	32
Camshaft sprocket-to-hub bolts .....	20	15
Clutch bellhousing closure plate .....	18	13
Coolant outlet manifold:		
Stage 1 - studs .....	25	18
Stage 2 - stud nuts .....	20	15
Stage 3 - 3 bolts .....	20	15
Crankshaft pulley bolt:		
Early engines (see Section 7)		
Stage 1 .....	50	37
Stage 2 .....	Angle-tighten a further 62°	
Later engines (see Section 7)		
Stage 1 .....	70	52
Stage 2 .....	Angle-tighten a further 60°	
Crankshaft right-hand oil seal housing bolts .....	14	10
Cylinder head bolts:		
Stage 1 .....	22	16
Stage 2 .....	60	44
Stage 3 .....	Angle-tighten a further 220° ± 5°	
Cylinder head cover bolts .....	10	7
Engine-to-transmission fixing bolts .....	45	33
Flywheel/driveplate bolts* .....	50	37
Fuel pump sprocket nut .....	50	37
Left-hand engine/transmission mounting:		
Mounting bracket-to-body bolts .....	20	15
Mounting stud-to-transmission bolts .....	20	15
Mounting to bracket .....	30	22
Rubber mounting centre nut .....	60	44
Main bearing cap bolts:		
Stage 1 .....	25	18
Stage 2 .....	Angle-tighten a further 60°	
Oil pump mounting bolts .....	18	13
Piston oil jet spray tube bolt .....	10	7
Rear engine/transmission mounting:		
Connecting link to mounting assembly .....	55	41
Connecting link-to-subframe nut/bolt .....	40	30
Mounting to engine .....	45	33
Right-hand engine mounting:		
Mounting to body .....	60	44
Mounting to support bracket .....	60	44
Support bracket to engine .....	55	41
Sump bolts .....	16	12
Sump plug .....	16	12
Timing belt idler roller bolt .....	25	18
Timing belt tensioner .....	23	17

\* Do not re-use

## 1 General information

### How to use this Chapter

This Part of Chapter 2 describes the repair procedures that can reasonably be carried out on the engine while it remains in the vehicle. If the engine has been removed from the vehicle and is being dismantled as described in Part D, any preliminary dismantling procedures can be ignored.

Note that, while it may be possible physically to overhaul items such as the piston/connecting rod assemblies while the engine is in the car, such tasks are not usually carried out as separate operations. Usually, several additional procedures are required (not to mention the cleaning of components and oilways); for this reason, all such tasks are classed as major overhaul procedures, and are described in Part D of this Chapter.

Part D describes the removal of the engine/transmission from the car, and the full overhaul procedures that can then be carried out.

### DW and DV series engines

The DW series engine is based on the well-proven XUD series engine which has appeared in many Peugeot and Citroën vehicles. In particular, the cylinder block components are very similar to the XUD, however, the remainder of the engine has been completely redesigned. The 1.4 litre DV series engine is the result of development collaboration between Peugeot/Citroën and Ford.

Both engines are of single overhead camshaft 8-valve design. The turbocharged, four-cylinder engines are mounted transversely, with the transmission mounted on the left-hand side.

A toothed timing belt drives the camshaft, high-pressure fuel pump and coolant pump. The camshaft operates the inlet and exhaust valves via rocker arms which are supported at their pivot ends by hydraulic self-adjusting tappets. The camshaft is supported by bearings machined directly in the cylinder head and camshaft bearing housing.

The high-pressure fuel pump supplies fuel to the fuel rail, and subsequently to the electronically-controlled injectors which inject the fuel direct into the combustion chambers. This design differs from the previous type where an injection pump supplies the fuel at high-pressure to each injector. The earlier, conventional type injection pump required fine calibration and timing, and these functions are now completed by the high-pressure pump, electronic injectors and engine management ECU.

The crankshaft runs in five main bearings of the usual shell type. Endfloat is controlled by thrustwashers either side of No 2 main bearing.

The pistons are selected to be of matching weight, and incorporate fully-floating gudgeon pins retained by circlips.

On the 2.0 litre engine, the oil pump is chain-driven from the right-hand end of the crankshaft, whilst on the 1.4 litre engine, the gear type pump is fitted over the end of the crankshaft, and is driven by interlocking machined flats on the crankshaft and pump gear.


Throughout the manual, it is often necessary to identify the engines not only by their cubic capacity, but also by their engine code. The engine code, consists of three letters (eg, RHZ). The code is stamped on a plate attached to the front of the cylinder block.

### Precautions

The engine is a complex unit with numerous accessories and ancillary components. The design of the engine compartment is such that every conceivable space has been utilised, and access to virtually all of the engine components is extremely limited. In many cases, ancillary components will have to be removed, or moved to one side, and wiring, pipes and hoses will have to be disconnected or removed from various cable clips and support brackets.

When working on this engine, read through the entire procedure first, look at the car and engine at the same time, and establish whether you have the necessary tools, equipment, skill and patience to proceed. Allow considerable time for any operation, and be prepared for the unexpected. Any major work on these engines is not for the faint-hearted!

Because of the limited access, many of the engine photographs appearing in this Chapter were, by necessity, taken with the engine removed from the vehicle.

 **Warning: It is essential to observe strict precautions when working on the fuel system components of the engine, particularly the high-pressure side of the system. Before carrying out any engine operations that entail working on, or near, any part of the fuel system, refer to the special information given in Chapter 4B, Section 2.**

### Operations with engine in car

- Compression pressure – testing.
- Cylinder head cover(s) – removal and refitting.
- Crankshaft pulley – removal and refitting.
- Timing belt covers – removal and refitting.
- Timing belt – removal, refitting and adjustment.
- Timing belt tensioner and sprockets – removal and refitting.
- Camshaft oil seal – renewal.
- Camshaft, rocker arms and hydraulic tappets – removal, inspection and refitting.
- Sump – removal and refitting.

- Oil pump – removal and refitting.
- Crankshaft oil seals – renewal.
- Engine/transmission mountings – inspection and renewal.

m) Flywheel/driveplate – removal, inspection and refitting.

## 2 Compression and leakdown tests – description and interpretation

### Compression test

**Note:** A compression tester specifically designed for diesel engines must be used for this test.

1 When engine performance is down, or if misfiring occurs which cannot be attributed to the fuel system, a compression test can provide diagnostic clues as to the engine's condition. If the test is performed regularly, it can give warning of trouble before any other symptoms become apparent.

2 A compression tester specifically intended for diesel engines must be used, because of the higher pressures involved. The tester is connected to an adapter which screws into the glow plug or injector hole. On these engines, an adapter suitable for use in the glow plug holes will be required, so as not to disturb the fuel system components. It is unlikely to be worthwhile buying such a tester for occasional use, but it may be possible to borrow or hire one – if not, have the test performed by a garage.

3 Unless specific instructions to the contrary are supplied with the tester, observe the following points:

- The battery must be in a good state of charge, the air filter must be clean, and the engine should be at normal operating temperature.
- All the glow plugs should be removed as described in Chapter 5C before starting the test.
- The wiring connector on the engine management system ECU (located in the plastic box behind the battery) must be disconnected.

4 The compression pressures measured are not so important as the balance between cylinders. Values are given in the Specifications.

5 The cause of poor compression is less easy to establish on a diesel engine than on a petrol one. The effect of introducing oil into the cylinders ('wet' testing) is not conclusive, because there is a risk that the oil will sit in the swirl chamber or in the recess on the piston crown instead of passing to the rings. However, the following can be used as a rough guide to diagnosis.

6 All cylinders should produce very similar pressures; any difference greater than that specified indicates the existence of a fault.

Note that the compression should build-up quickly in a healthy engine; low compression on the first stroke, followed by gradually-increasing pressure on successive strokes, indicates worn piston rings. A low compression reading on the first stroke, which does not build-up during successive strokes, indicates leaking valves or a blown head gasket (a cracked head could also be the cause). Deposits on the undersides of the valve heads can also cause low compression.

**7** A low reading from two adjacent cylinders is almost certainly due to the head gasket having blown between them; the presence of coolant in the engine oil will confirm this.

**8** If the compression reading is unusually high, the cylinder head surfaces, valves and pistons are probably coated with carbon deposits. If this is the case, the cylinder head should be removed and decarbonised (see Part D).

### Leakdown test

**9** A leakdown test measures the rate at which compressed air fed into the cylinder is lost. It is an alternative to a compression test, and in many ways it is better, since the escaping air provides easy identification of where pressure loss is occurring (piston rings, valves or head gasket).

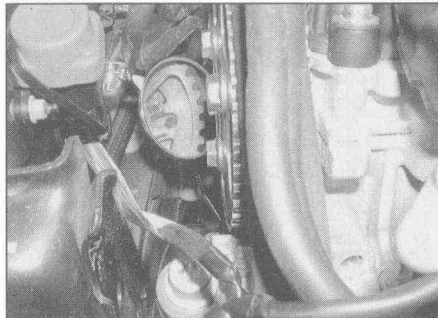
**10** The equipment needed for leakdown testing is unlikely to be available to the home mechanic. If poor compression is suspected, have the test performed by a suitably-equipped garage.

### 3 Engine assembly/valve timing holes – general information and usage

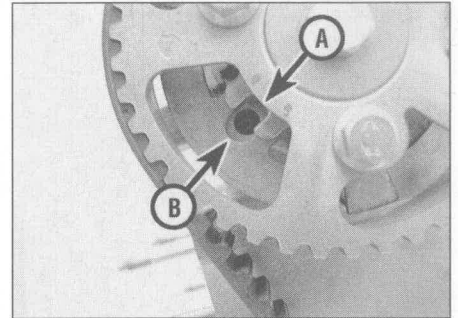


**Note:** Do not attempt to rotate the engine whilst the crankshaft and camshaft are locked in position. If the engine is to be left in this state for a long period of time, it is a good idea to place suitable warning notices inside the vehicle, and in the engine compartment. This will reduce the possibility of the engine being accidentally cranked on the starter motor, which is likely to cause damage with the locking pins in place.

**1** Timing holes or slots are located only in the flywheel/driveplate (2.0 litre) or crankshaft pulley flange (1.4 litre) and camshaft sprocket hub. The holes/slots are used to align the crankshaft and camshaft at the TDC position for Nos 1 and 4 on 2.0 litre models, or position the pistons halfway up the cylinder bores on the 1.4 litre models. This will ensure that the valve timing is maintained during operations that require removal and refitting of the timing belt. When the holes/slots are aligned with their corresponding holes in the cylinder block and cylinder head, suitable diameter bolts/pins can be inserted to lock the crankshaft and camshaft in position, preventing rotation. **Note:** On 2.0 litre models,



**3.7a** Use a mirror to observe the camshaft sprocket hub timing slot (DW10 engine)



**3.7b** Camshaft sprocket hub timing slot (A) aligned with the cylinder head timing hole (B) (DW10 engine)

with the timing holes aligned, No 4 piston is at TDC on its compression stroke.

**2** Note that the HDI type fuel system used on these engines does not have a conventional diesel injection pump, but instead uses a high-pressure fuel pump that does not have to be timed. The alignment of the fuel pump sprocket (and hence the fuel pump itself) with respect to crankshaft and camshaft position, is therefore irrelevant.

**3** To align the engine assembly/valve timing holes, proceed as follows.

**4** Apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the right-hand front roadwheel.

**5** To gain access to the crankshaft pulley, to enable the engine to be turned, the wheel arch plastic liner must be removed. The liner is secured by several plastic expanding rivets. To remove the rivets, push in the centre pins a little, then prise the clips from place. Remove the liner from under the front wing. Where necessary, unclip the coolant hoses from under the wing to improve access further. The crankshaft can then be turned using a suitable socket and extension bar fitted to the pulley bolt.

**6** Remove the upper and lower timing belt covers as described in Section 6.

**7** Turn the crankshaft until the timing hole in the camshaft sprocket hub is aligned with the corresponding hole in the cylinder head. Note that the crankshaft must always be turned in a

clockwise direction (viewed from the right-hand side of vehicle). Use a small mirror so that the position of the sprocket hub timing slot can be observed (see illustrations). When the slot is aligned with the corresponding hole in the cylinder head, the camshaft is positioned correctly. **Note:** On 2.0 litre engines, make sure that the centre part of the slot is aligned with the hole in the cylinder head, as it is possible to incorrectly align the area to each side of the slot.

### 2.0 litre engines

**8** Insert an 8 mm diameter bolt, rod or drill through the hole in the left-hand flange of the cylinder block by the starter motor; if necessary, carefully turn the crankshaft either way until the rod enters the timing hole in the flywheel/driveplate (see illustration).

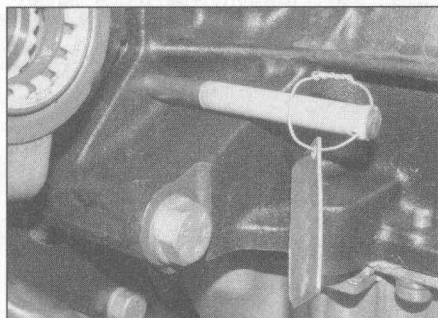
**9** Insert an 8 mm bolt, rod or drill through the hole in the camshaft sprocket hub and into engagement with the cylinder head (see illustration).

### 1.4 litre engines

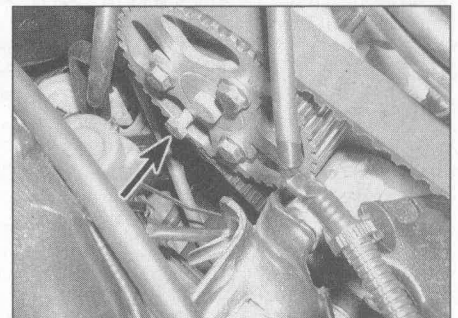
**10** Remove the crankshaft drivebelt pulley as described in Section 5.

**11** Insert a 5 mm diameter bolt, rod or drill through the hole in crankshaft sprocket flange and into the corresponding hole in the oil pump (see illustration), if necessary, carefully turn the crankshaft either way until the rod enters the timing hole in the block.

**12** Insert an 8 mm bolt, rod or drill through



**3.8** Rod (arrowed) inserted through the cylinder block into the flywheel timing hole (2.0 litre engine)



**3.9** Insert an 8 mm bolt (arrowed) through the sprocket timing slot and into the cylinder head to lock the camshaft (2.0 litre engine)



**3.11** Insert a 5 mm drill through the hole in the crankshaft sprocket flange, and into the corresponding hole in the oil pump

the hole in the camshaft sprocket hub and into engagement with the cylinder head (see illustration).

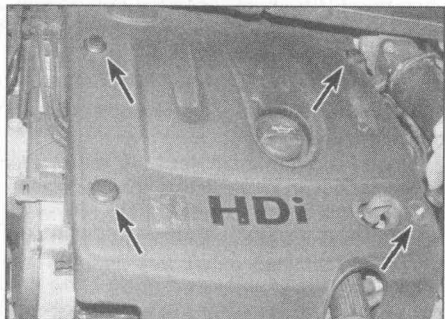
**All engines**

**13** The crankshaft and camshaft are now locked in position, preventing unnecessary rotation.

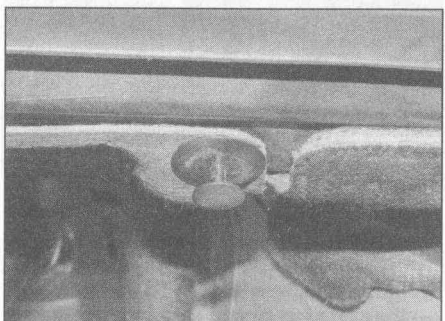
**4 Cylinder head cover – removal and refitting**

**Removal**

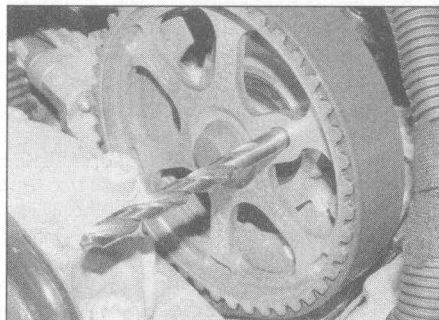
**1** Remove the plastic cover from the top of the engine. On 1.4 litre engines, the cover simply pulls up from place. On 2.0 litre models, the cover is retained by four



**4.1** Rotate the four fasteners (arrowed) 90° anti-clockwise and pull up the plastic cover



**4.2c** Prise up the centre pin and lever out the complete plastic expanding rivet

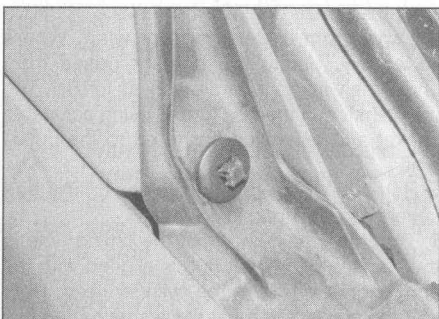


**3.12** Insert an 8 mm drill through the hole in the camshaft sprocket, and into the corresponding hole in the cylinder head

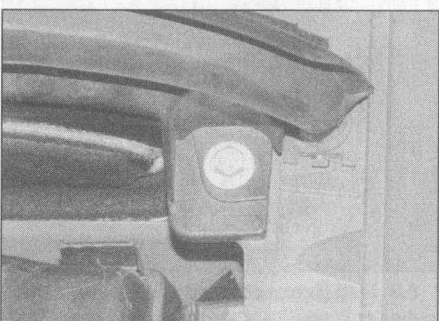
fasteners, which simply unscrew (see illustration)

**2** Carry out the following operations to remove the scuttle trim panel and cross-member (see illustrations):

- a) Remove the wiper blades (see Chapter 12).
- b) Push in the centre pins, and prise out the two plastic rivets at each end of the trim panel.
- c) Pull the outer ends of the panel up, then pull the panel centre down and forwards to release it from the windscreen.
- d) Undo the two screws securing the master cylinder upper fluid reservoir. Do not disconnect the fluid pipes.
- e) Release the clips securing the sound insulation material, then undo the two bolts and remove the scuttle crossmember.



**4.2a** Push in the centre pin and prise out the complete rivet



**4.2d** Undo the bolt at each end and remove the scuttle crossmember

**3** Remove the timing belt upper cover, as described in Section 6.

**2.0 litre engines**

**4** As applicable, slacken or release the clips securing the crankcase ventilation hoses to the cylinder cover and disconnect the hoses.

**5** Undo the bolts and move the engine cover and cable guide support bracket clear of the right-hand end of the cylinder head cover.

**6** Disconnect the camshaft position sensor wiring connector.

**7** Release the wiring harness from the clip on the cylinder head cover and move the harness to one side.

**8** Progressively unscrew the bolts securing the cylinder head cover to the camshaft carrier or inlet manifold (as applicable) and collect the washers. Carefully lift off the cover, taking care not to damage the camshaft position sensor as the cover is removed. Recover the seal from the cover.

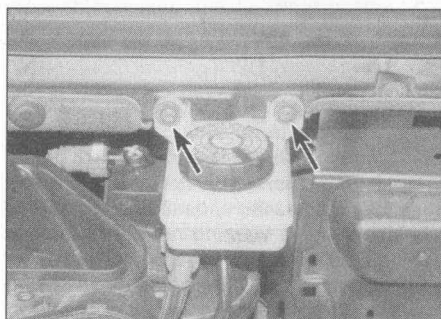
**1.4 litre engines**

**9** The cylinder head cover is integral with the inlet manifold and oil separator. Disconnect the mass airflow meter wiring plug (see illustration).

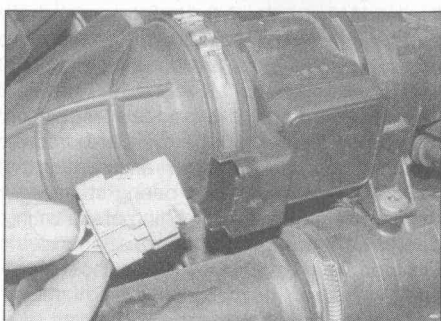
**10** Slacken the retaining clip, and remove the turbocharger outlet elbow (see illustration).

**11** Undo the retaining bolts, lift up the right-hand end and remove the resonator (see illustrations). Recover the O-ring seal.

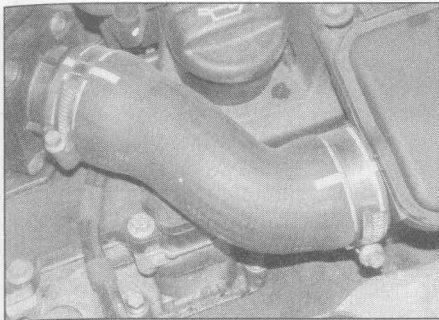
**12** Slacken the retaining clips and remove the air intake ducting and turbocharger intake hose. Slide up the plastic trim in the left-hand front corner of the engine compartment, push



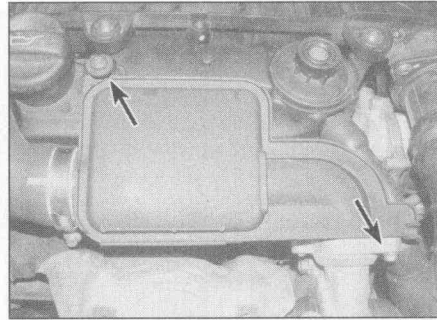
**4.2b** Undo the upper master cylinder fluid reservoir screws (arrowed)



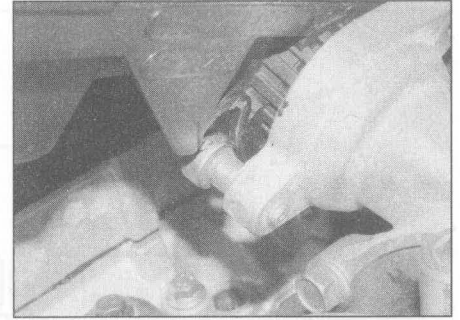
**4.9** Disconnect the mass airflow meter wiring plug



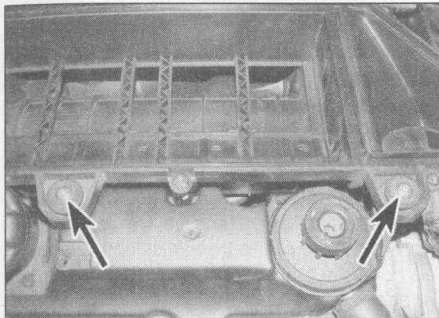
**4.10** Slacken the retaining clamps and disconnect the turbo outlet hose



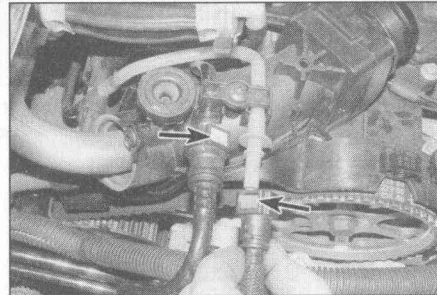
**4.11a** Undo the bolts (arrowed) and lift up the right-hand end . . .



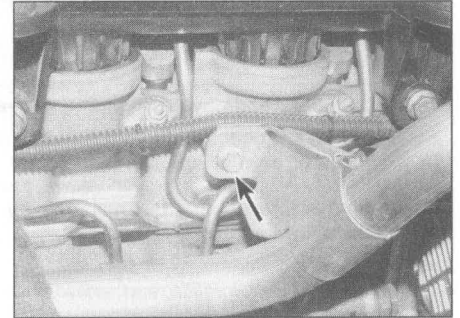
**4.11b** . . . to disengage the resonator box from the turbocharger



**4.13** Undo the two bolts (arrowed) and pull the air filter housing up from its place



**4.17** Depress the locking buttons (arrowed) and disconnect the fuel feed and return hoses



**4.19** Undo the bolt securing the EGR pipe to the rear of the block (arrowed)

in the centre pin a little, prise out the rivet and remove the intake ducting from the bonnet slam panel.

**13** Unscrew the air filter housing bolts, and the filter cover bolts, then remove the cover and filter element – refer to Chapter 4B (see illustration). Release the diesel priming pump bulb from its retaining brackets at the right-hand end of the cylinder head, and remove the air filter housing. Disconnect any wiring plugs as necessary as the housing is withdrawn, having first noted their fitted positions.

**14** Remove the diesel fuel filter as described in Chapter 1B, then undo the 3 bolts securing the diesel filter support bracket.

**15** Disconnect the wiring plugs from the top

of each injector, then make sure all wiring harnesses are freed from any retaining brackets on the cylinder head cover/intake manifold. Disconnect any vacuum pipes as necessary, having first noted their fitted positions.

**16** Prise out the retaining clips and disconnect the fuel return pipes from the injectors. Plug the openings to prevent dirt ingress.

**17** Disconnect the fuel feed and return pipes at the right-hand end of the cylinder head cover. Undo the Torx screw securing the fuel pipes bracket (see illustration).

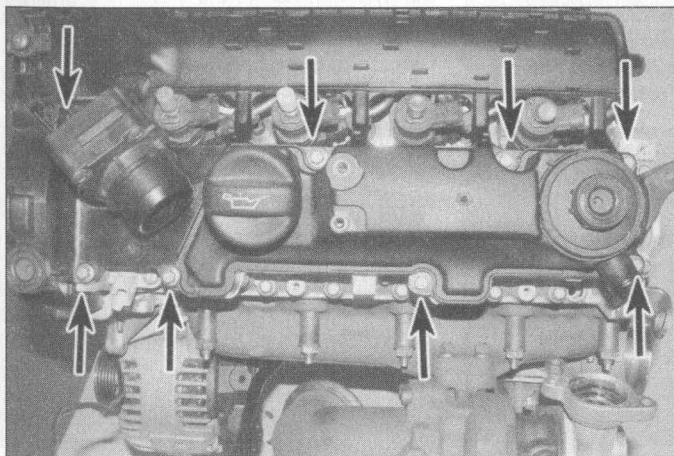
**18** Unclip the fuel temperature sensor from the retaining bracket and move the

pipe/priming bulb assembly to the rear.

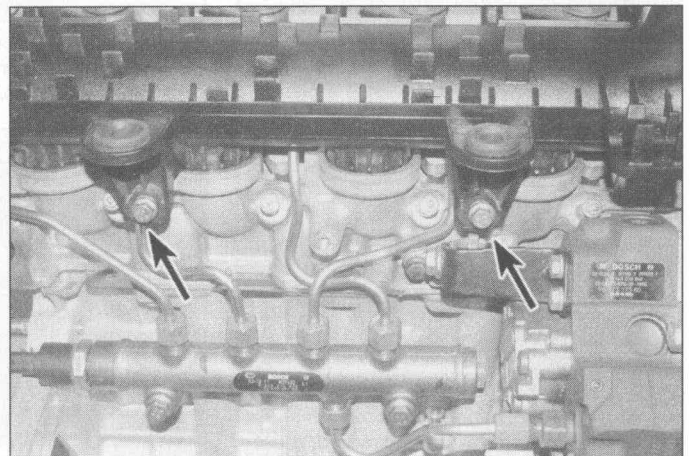
**19** Undo the two screws securing the EGR pipe to the cylinder head cover, and the bolt securing the pipe to the rear of the cylinder head (see illustration).

**20** Undo the two bolts securing the EGR valve to the left-hand end of the cylinder head, disconnect the vacuum hose, then remove the valve along with the EGR pipe. Recover the O-ring seal from the pipe.

**21** Undo the eight bolts securing the cylinder head cover and intake manifold at the front, and the two retaining bolts along the rear edge of the cover. Lift the assembly away (see illustrations). Recover the manifold rubber seals.

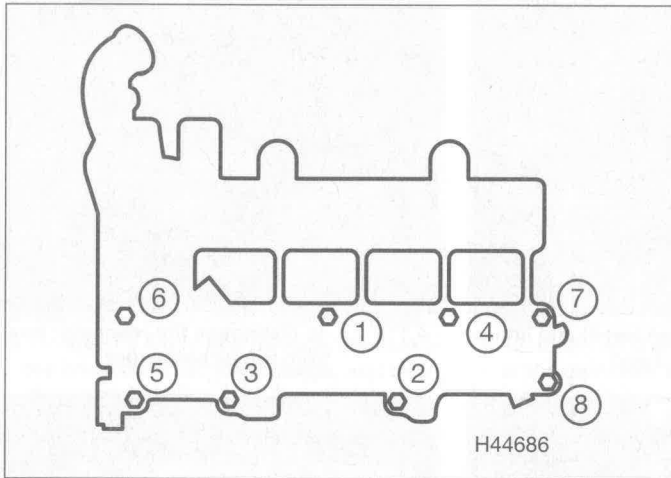


**4.21a** Undo the 8 bolts (arrowed) at the front . . .

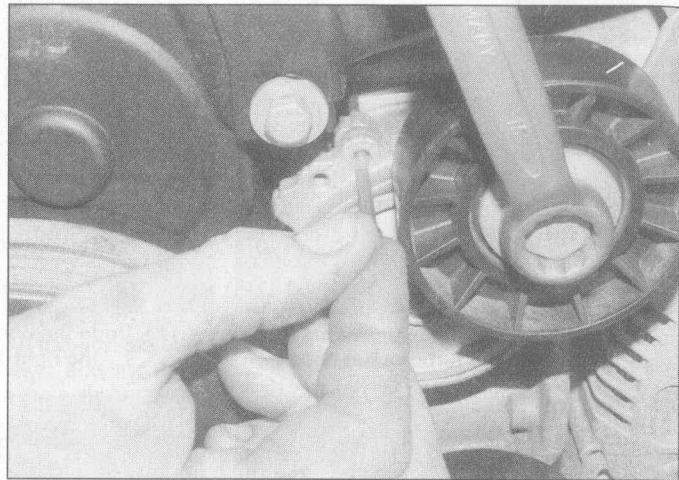


**4.21b** . . . and the two bolts (arrowed) at the rear





4.22 Cylinder head cover tightening sequence (1.4 litre engine)

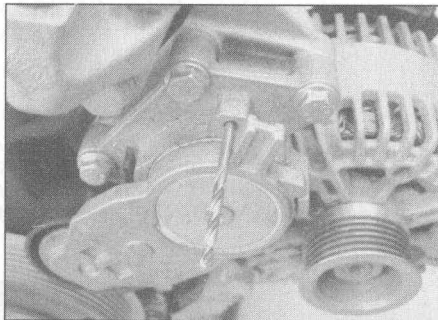


5.1a Insert a drill or pin to lock the auxiliary drivebelt tensioner in position (2.0 litre engines) . . .

**Refitting**

22 Refitting is a reversal of removal, bearing in mind the following points:

- a) Examine the cover seal(s) for signs of damage and deterioration, and renew if necessary. On 1.4 litre engines, smear a little clean engine oil on the manifold seals.
- b) Tighten the cylinder head cover bolts to the specified torque. On 1.4 litre engines, in the order shown (see illustration).
- c) On 2.0 litre engines, before refitting the timing belt upper cover, adjust the camshaft position sensor air gap as described in Chapter 4B, Section 13.



5.1b . . . and 1.4 litre engine

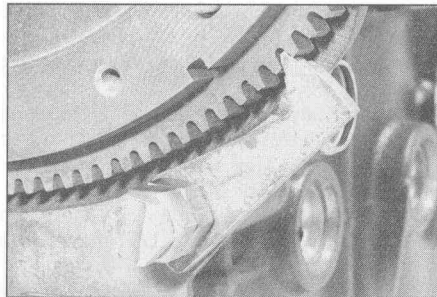
**5 Crankshaft pulley – removal and refitting**

**Removal**

1 Remove the auxiliary drivebelt as described in Chapter 1B. Turn the tensioner anti-clockwise and insert a pin or drill to hold it away from the drivebelt (see illustrations).

**2.0 litre engines**

2 To prevent crankshaft turning whilst the pulley retaining bolt is being slackened, the



5.2 Use a fabricated tool similar to this to lock the flywheel ring gear and prevent crankshaft rotation

flywheel/driveplate ring gear can be locked using a suitable tool made from steel angle (see illustration). Remove the cover plate from the base of the transmission bellhousing and bolt the tool to the bellhousing flange so it engages with the ring gear teeth. Do not attempt to lock the pulley by inserting a bolt/drill through the timing hole. If the timing hole bolt/drill is in position from a previous operation, temporarily remove it prior to slackening the pulley bolt, then refit it once the bolt has been slackened. **Note:** On later 2.0 engines (see Section 7), it is essential that the crankshaft and camshaft timing pins are in place as described in Section 3. This is because, on these engines, the crankshaft sprocket has a wider keyway, to allow it to rotate a little independently of the crankshaft. Failure to lock the crankshaft and camshaft could result in the timing being lost.

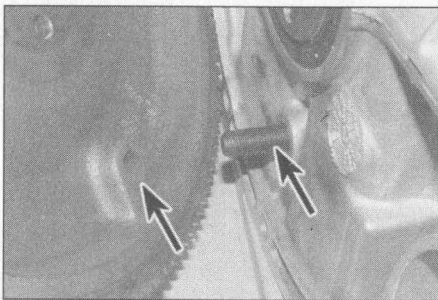
**1.4 litre engines**

3 To lock the crankshaft, working underneath the engine, insert Peugeot tool No 0194-C into the hole in the right-hand face of the engine block casting over the lower section of the flywheel. Rotate the crankshaft until the tool engages in the corresponding hole in the flywheel. In the absence of the Peugeot tool, insert a 12 mm rod or drill into the hole (see illustration). **Note:** The hole in the casting and the hole in the flywheel are provided purely to lock the crankshaft whilst the pulley bolt is undone, it does **not** position the crankshaft at TDC.

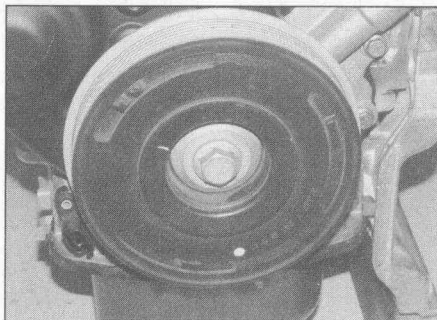
**All engines**

4 Using a suitable socket and extension bar, unscrew the retaining bolt, remove the washer, then slide the pulley off the end of the crankshaft (see illustration). If the pulley is tight fit, it can be drawn off the crankshaft using a suitable puller. If a puller is being used, refit the pulley retaining bolt without the washer, to avoid damaging the crankshaft as the puller is tightened.

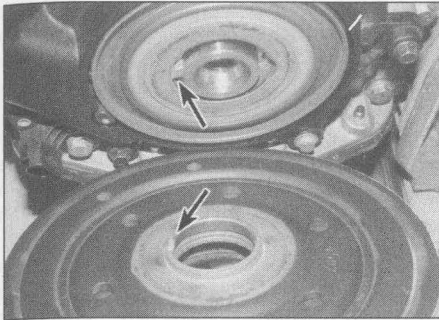
**Caution:** On 1.4 litre engines, do not touch



5.3 The locking pin/bolt (arrowed) must locate in the hole in the flywheel (arrowed) to prevent rotation



5.4 Undo the crankshaft pulley retaining bolt



5.6 On 1.4 litre engines, the notch in the pulley (arrowed) must align with the key in the sprocket (arrowed)

the outer magnetic sensor ring of the sprocket with your fingers, or allow metallic particles to come into contact with it.

5 On 2.0 litre engines, if the pulley locating key is a loose fit, remove it and store it with the pulley for safe-keeping.

**Refitting**

6 Ensure that the key is correctly located in its crankshaft groove (2.0 litre engines only), then refit the pulley to the end of the crankshaft (see illustration).

7 Thoroughly clean the threads of the pulley retaining bolt, then apply a coat of locking compound to the bolt threads. Peugeot recommend the use of Loctite (available from your Peugeot dealer); in the absence of this, any good-quality locking compound may be used.

8 Refit the crankshaft pulley retaining bolt and washer. Tighten the bolt to the specified torque, then through the specified angle, preventing the crankshaft from turning using the method employed on removal.

9 Refit and tension the auxiliary drivebelt as described in Chapter 1B.

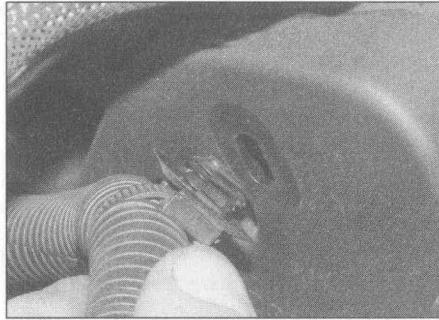
**6 Timing belt covers – removal and refitting**



**Warning:** Refer to the precautionary information contained in Section 1 before proceeding.



6.7 Disconnect the fuel supply and return hose quick-release fittings



6.2 Release the wiring harness from the timing belt upper cover

**Upper cover removal**

**1.4 litre engines**

1 Remove the plastic covers from the top of the engine. The engine cover simply pulls up from its place, whilst the cover over the washer fluid reservoir is retained by two plastic rivets. Push the centre pins in a little then prise the complete rivet from place.

2 Release the wiring harness and fuel pipes from the upper cover (see illustration).

3 Undo the five screws and remove the timing belt upper cover (see illustration).

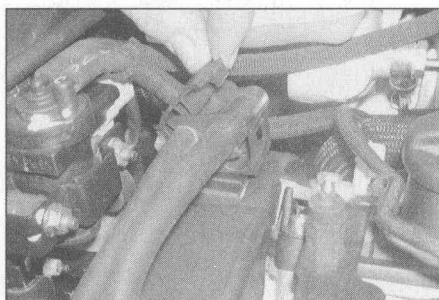
**2.0 litre engines**

4 Remove the plastic covers from the top of the engine, then undo the screws and remove the engine undershield. The cover over the engine is release by rotating the four fasteners anti-clockwise whilst gently pulling up the cover. Push in the centre pins and prise out the two plastic expanding rivets, release the side clip and remove the cover over the coolant/washer reservoirs.

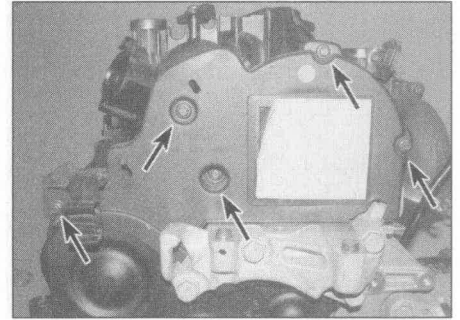
5 Position a trolley jack under the engine and, using a piece of wood on the jack head, support the weight of the engine.

6 Undo the bolts and remove the right-hand engine mounting and support bracket – see Section 17.

7 At the connections above the fuel pump, disconnect the fuel supply and return hose quick-release fittings using a small screwdriver to press down and release the locking clip (see illustration). Cover the open unions to prevent dirt entry, using small plastic bags, or fingers cut from clean rubber gloves.



6.8 Release the two fuel hoses from the retaining clips on the upper timing belt cover



6.3 Undo the 5 screws (arrowed) and remove the upper timing belt cover

8 Release the two hoses from the retaining clips on the upper timing belt cover and move them to one side (see illustration).

9 Release the EGR solenoid valve vacuum hose from the clip on the upper cover.

10 Undo the bolt securing the upper cover to the cylinder head cover (see illustration).

11 Undo the upper bolt on the edge of the cover nearest to the engine compartment bulkhead.

12 Undo the lower bolt/nut on the bulkhead side of the cover at the join between the upper and lower covers. Note that this bolt/stud also retains the coolant pump. Where a bolt is fitted, to avoid coolant leakage after the upper cover is removed, refit the bolt fitted with a 17.0 mm spacer, and tighten it securely.

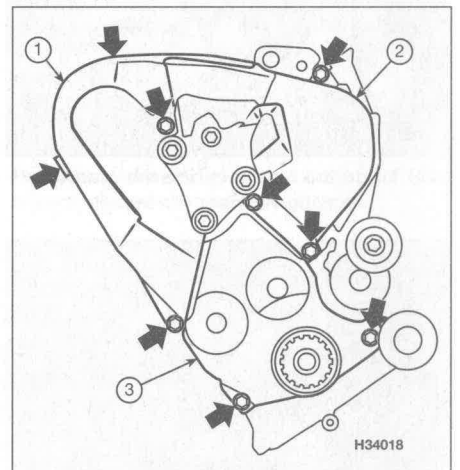
13 Undo the remaining bolt in the centre of the cover.

14 Disengage the upper cover from the intermediate cover and manipulate the upper cover from its location.

**Intermediate cover removal**

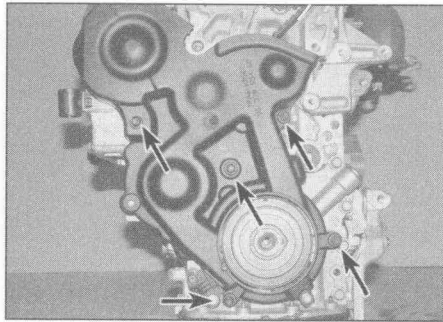
**2.0 litre engines**

15 Remove the upper cover as described previously.



6.10 Timing belt cover retaining bolt locations (arrowed)

- 1 Upper cover
- 2 Intermediate cover
- 3 Lower cover



6.20 Lower cover retaining bolts (arrowed)

16 Undo the upper bolt on the top edge of the intermediate cover.

17 Undo the two remaining bolts at the join between the intermediate cover and lower cover, then manipulate the intermediate cover from its location.

### Lower cover removal

#### 1.4 litre engines

18 Remove the upper cover as described previously.

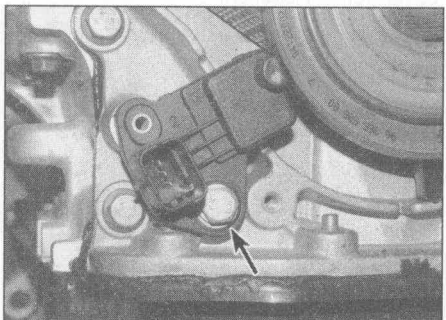
19 Remove the crankshaft pulley as described in Section 5.

20 Undo the five bolts and remove the lower cover (see illustration).

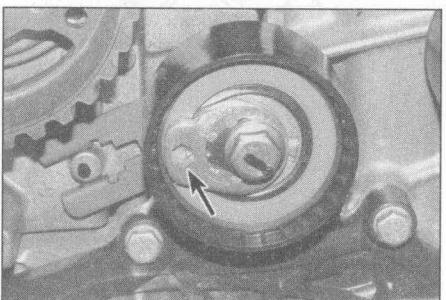
#### 2.0 litre engines

21 Remove the upper and intermediate covers as described previously.

22 Remove the crankshaft pulley as described in Section 5.



7.8 Undo the bolt securing the crankshaft position sensor (arrowed)



7.13 Insert an Allen key into the hole (arrowed), slacken the pulley bolt and allow the tensioner to rotate

23 Undo the two remaining bolts on the edge of the cover, one on either side of the crankshaft pulley location.

24 Lift the cover off the front of the engine.

### Refitting

25 Refitting of all the covers is a reversal of the relevant removal procedure, ensuring that each cover section is correctly located, and that the cover retaining bolts are securely tightened. Ensure that all disturbed hoses are reconnected and retained by their relevant clips.

### 7 Timing belt – removal, inspection, refitting and tensioning

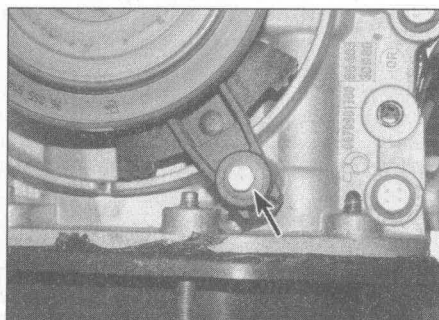


**Note:** On 2.0 litre engines, Peugeot specify the use of an electronic belt tension checking tool (SEEM CTG 105.M) to correctly set the timing belt tension. The following procedure assumes that this equipment (or suitable alternative equipment calibrated to display belt tension in SEEM units) is available. Accurate tensioning of the timing belt is essential, and if the electronic equipment is not available, it is recommended that the work is entrusted to a Peugeot dealer or suitably-equipped garage.

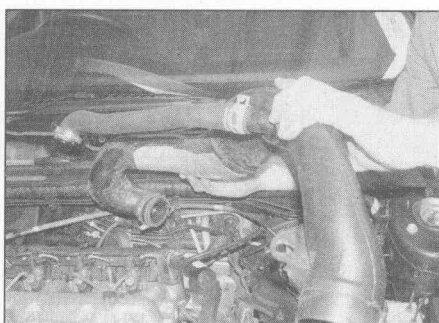
**Note:** Early models are identified by three bolts securing the camshaft sprocket to the hub. Later engines are identified by the camshaft sprocket being retained by one central bolt.

### General

1 The timing belt drives the camshaft(s), high-



7.9 Timing belt protection bracket retaining bolt (arrowed)



7.15 Remove the turbocharger air inlet pipe

pressure fuel pump, and coolant pump from a toothed sprocket on the end of the crankshaft. If the belt breaks or slips in service, the pistons are likely to hit the valve heads, resulting in expensive damage.

2 The timing belt should be renewed at the specified intervals, or earlier if it is contaminated with oil, or at all noisy in operation (a 'scraping' noise due to uneven wear).

3 If the timing belt is being removed, it is a wise precaution to check the condition of the coolant pump at the same time (check for signs of coolant leakage). This may avoid the need to remove the timing belt again at a later stage, should the coolant pump fail.

### Removal

4 Apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the front right-hand roadwheel, wheel arch liner (to expose the crankshaft pulley) and the engine undershield. The wheel arch liner is secured by several plastic expanding rivets. Push the centre pins in a little then prise the rivet from place. The engine undershield is retained by several screw fasteners. Rotate the fasteners 90 degrees anti-clockwise and remove them.

5 Refer to Chapter 4B and remove the complete exhaust system.

**Caution:** If the exhaust system is not removed, the front pipe flexible section will be damaged when the right-hand engine mounting is detached.

6 Remove the auxiliary drivebelt as described in Chapter 1B.

#### 1.4 litre engines

7 Remove the upper and lower timing belt covers, as described in Section 6.

8 Undo the screw and remove the crankshaft position sensor adjacent to the crankshaft sprocket flange, and move it to one side (see illustration).

9 Undo the retaining screw and remove the timing belt protection bracket, again adjacent to the crankshaft sprocket flange (see illustration).

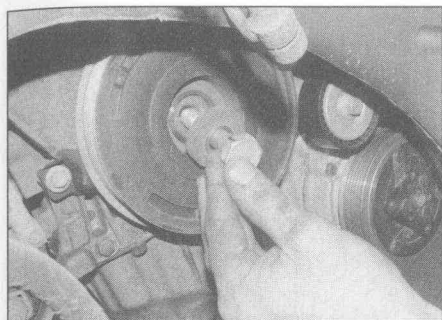
10 Lock the crankshaft and camshaft in the correct position as described in Section 3. If necessary, temporarily refit the crankshaft pulley bolt to enable the crankshaft to be rotated.

11 Position a trolley jack under the engine, and using a block of wood on the jack head, take the weight of the engine.

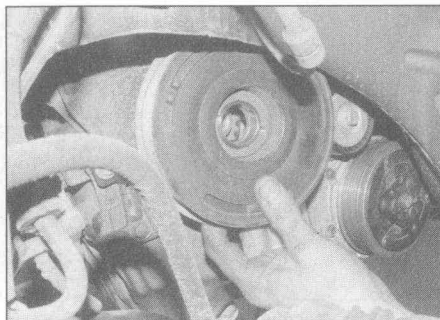
12 Undo the bolts and remove the right hand engine mounting and support bracket – see Section 17.

13 Insert a hexagon key into belt tensioner pulley centre, slacken the pulley bolt, and allow the tensioner to rotate, relieving the belt tension (see illustration). With belt slack, temporarily tighten the pulley bolt.

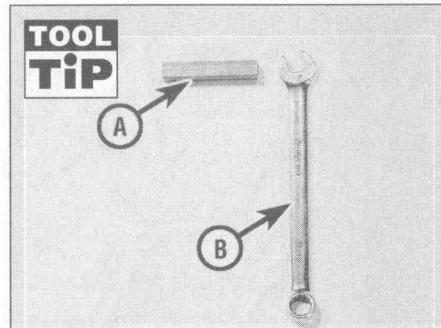
14 Note its routing, then remove the timing belt from the sprockets.



7.18a Unscrew the crankshaft pulley bolt...



7.18b ... then remove the pulley



**TOOL TIP**  
A square section tool to fit the timing belt tensioner pulley can be made from a length of standard 8 mm door handle rod (A), obtained from a DIY shop, and then cut to size. Once the rod has been fitted to the tensioner, the timing belt can be tensioned by turning the rod with an 8 mm spanner (B).

**2.0 litre engines**

15 Remove the turbocharger air inlet pipe (see illustration).

16 Unbolt the closure plate from the bottom of the clutch housing

17 Using a suitable tool, lock the flywheel/driveplate, then loosen the crankshaft pulley bolt. Peugeot technicians use a tool which engages the teeth of the starter ring gear and is bolted to the clutch bellhousing. A similar tool may be made out of a length of angle-iron, bent to engage the teeth, or alternatively an assistant may restrain the starter ring gear with a wide-bladed screwdriver.

18 Unscrew and remove the crankshaft pulley bolt, then remove the pulley from the crankshaft (see illustrations). If it is tight, refit the bolt without its washer, leaving sufficient room to release the pulley. Using a puller, remove the pulley from the front of the crankshaft.

19 Unbolt the rear engine mounting link piece - see Section 17.

20 An 8.0 mm diameter flywheel/driveplate locking pin is now required, and may be obtained from a Peugeot dealer or car accessory shop.

21 Temporarily refit the crankshaft pulley bolt, then turn the engine until the TDC hole in the flywheel/driveplate is aligned with the hole in the front engine flange (next to the transmission bellhousing - see Section 3). Insert the locking pin to lock the engine.

22 Remove the upper, intermediate and lower timing belt covers as described in the previous Section.

23 As a precaution against damage to the radiator, place a card or piece of hardboard over it on the engine side.

24 Insert a suitable drill or metal dowel through the TDC hole in the camshaft sprocket flange, and into the cylinder head (see Section 3).

25 Loosen the bolt on the tensioner roller, and turn the tensioner clockwise to release the tension on the timing belt. If available, use an 8 mm square drive extension in the hole provided, to turn the tensioner bracket against the spring tension (see Tool Tip). Retighten the bolt sufficiently to hold the tensioner in its released position; do not fully tighten the bolt in this position.

26 Mark the timing belt with an arrow to indicate its running direction, if it is to be re-used. Remove the belt from the sprockets.

**Inspection**

27 Renew the belt as a matter of course, regardless of its apparent condition. The cost of a new belt is nothing compared with the cost of repairs, should the belt break in service. If signs of oil contamination are found, trace the source of the oil leak and rectify it. Wash down the engine timing belt area and all related components, to remove all traces of oil. Check that the tensioner and idler pulleys rotate freely without any sign of roughness, and also check that the coolant

pump pulley rotates freely. If necessary, renew these items. **Note:** Peugeot recommend that the tensioner and idler pulleys should not be re-used, regardless of apparent condition.

**Refitting and tensioning**

28 Commence refitting by ensuring that the crankshaft and camshaft timing pins are still in position correctly.

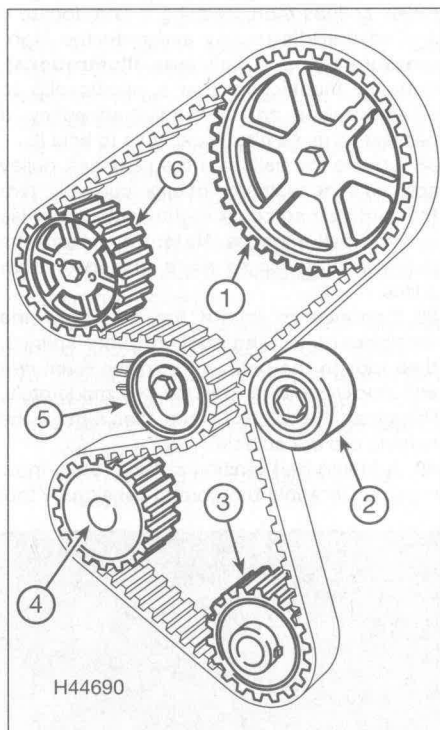
**1.4 litre engines**

29 Locate the timing belt on the crankshaft sprocket then, keeping it taut, locate it around the idler pulley, camshaft sprocket, high-pressure pump sprocket, coolant pump sprocket, and the tensioner roller (see illustration).

30 Refit the timing belt protection bracket and tighten the retaining bolt securely.

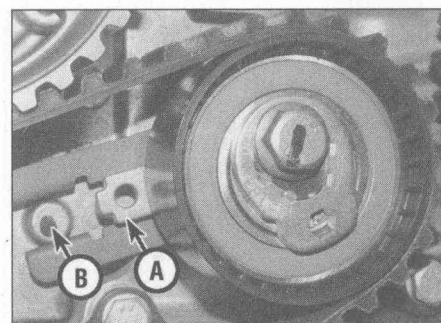
31 Slacken the tensioner pulley bolt and, using a hexagonal key, rotate the tensioner anti-clockwise, which moves the index arm clockwise, until the index arm is aligned (see illustration).

32 Remove the camshaft and crankshaft timing pins and, using a socket on the crankshaft pulley bolt, rotate the engine clockwise 10 complete revolutions. Refit the crankshaft and camshaft locking pins.

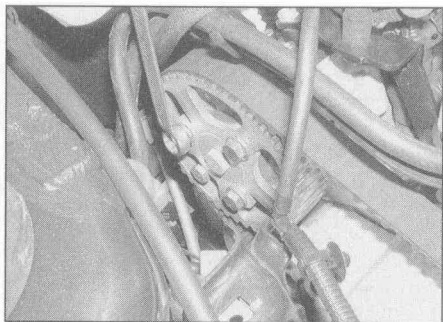


7.29 Timing belt routing (1.4 litre engine)

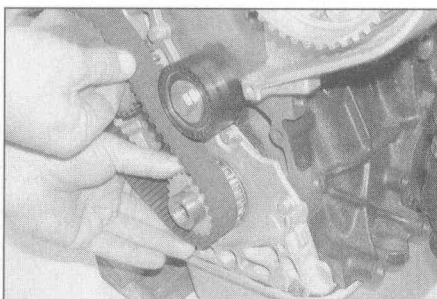
- |                       |                                  |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 Camshaft sprocket   | 4 Coolant pump sprocket          |
| 2 Idler pulley        | 5 Tensioner pulley               |
| 3 Crankshaft sprocket | 6 High-pressure fuel pump pulley |



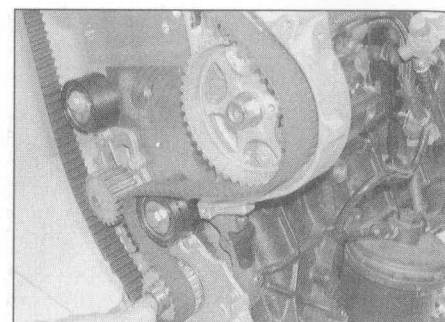
7.31 Align the index arm (A) with the locating stud (B)



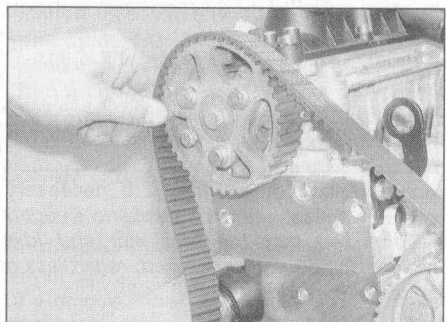
**7.35** Slacken the three camshaft sprocket-to-sprocket hub retaining bolts



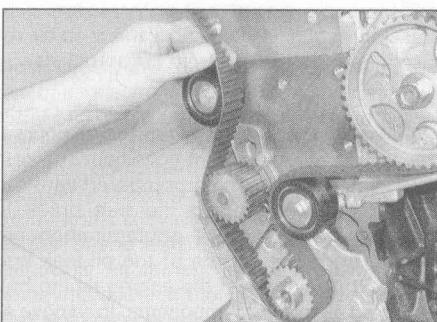
**7.37a** Retain the timing belt on the crankshaft sprocket and feed it around the idler roller ...



**7.37b** ... high pressure fuel pump sprocket ...



**7.37c** ... camshaft sprocket ...



**7.37d** ... coolant pump and tensioner pulley

**33** Check that the tensioner index arm is still aligned between the edges of the area (see illustration 7.31). If it is not, remove and belt and begin the refitting process again, starting at Paragraph 29.

**34** The remainder of refitting is a reversal of removal. Tighten all fasteners to the specified torque where given.

#### Early 2.0 litre engines

**35** Early models are identified by three bolts securing the camshaft sprocket to the hub. Loosen the three bolts securing the camshaft sprocket to the camshaft, so that the sprocket can be turned on its hub (see illustration). To do this, either use a tool engaged with the holes in the sprocket, or alternatively, hold the sprocket with an old timing belt.

**36** Finger-tighten the sprocket bolts, then slacken each bolt by one sixth of a turn. Turn the sprocket clockwise to the end of the slots.

**37** Locate the timing belt on the crankshaft pulley splines then, keeping it taut, locate it around the idler pulley and onto the high-pressure pump pulley (see illustrations). Peugeot technicians use a plastic clip to retain the belt on the crankshaft pulley; if necessary, use a plastic cable tie to hold it.

**38** Locate the belt onto the camshaft pulley splines. If the teeth do not align correctly, turn the camshaft sprocket slightly anti-clockwise until the belt engages. **Note:** Do not turn the pulley anti-clockwise more than one tooth space.

**39** Continue to locate the belt onto the tensioner pulley and coolant pump splines, then loosen the bolt and turn the tensioner anti-clockwise to tension the belt moderately. Pretighten the bolt to 1.0 Nm, then remove the holding clip or cable tie.

**40** A timing belt tension setting tool is now required to apply the correct tension. A tool

which checks SEEM units is necessary, and should be fitted to the belt run between the camshaft sprocket and high-pressure pump sprocket.

**41** Loosen the bolt, then turn the tensioner anti-clockwise until  $98.0 \pm 2.0$  SEEM units is read on the tool (see illustrations). At this point, tighten the tensioner bolt to the specified torque.

**42** Temporarily remove one of the three bolts securing the sprocket to the camshaft, and check that the bolts are not at the anti-clockwise limit of their slots. If they are, repeat the refitting procedure.

**43** Tighten the camshaft sprocket bolts to the specified torque.

**44** Remove the crankshaft and camshaft TDC setting pins. Also remove the tensioning tool.

**45** Turn the engine clockwise 8 times. Do not turn the engine anti-clockwise during this operation.

**46** Refit the crankshaft and camshaft TDC setting pins.

**47** Loosen the camshaft sprocket bolts again, then finger-tighten them, and loosen each by one sixth of a turn.

**48** Refit the tensioning tool midway between the camshaft and high-pressure pump sprocket.

**49** Loosen the tensioner bolt, then turn the tensioner anti-clockwise until the tool reads  $54.0 \pm 2.0$  SEEM units. With the tensioner held in this position, tighten the bolt to the specified torque. It is important to apply the correct tension to the timing belt, otherwise the belt may be noisy in operation, or worse still, may break.

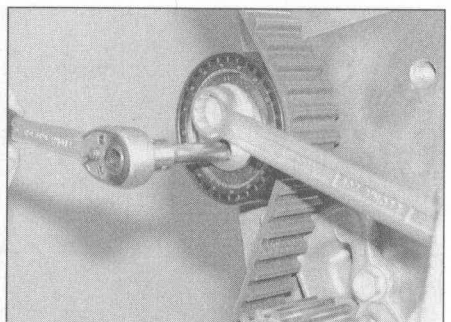
**50** Tighten the camshaft sprocket bolts to the specified torque.

**51** Remove the tensioning tool to release its internal forces, then refit it and check the tension of the belt is between 51.0 and 57.0 SEEM units. If necessary, repeat the tensioning procedure.

**52** Remove the tensioning tool and TDC setting pins.

**53** Turn the engine clockwise 2 times. Do not turn the engine anti-clockwise during this operation.

**54** Refit the crankshaft and camshaft TDC setting/locking pins.



**7.41a** Pivot the tensioner pulley anti-clockwise, then tighten the retaining bolt ...



**7.41b** ... when the specified tension value is shown on the measuring equipment

55 Visually check that the offset between the camshaft hub hole and the corresponding setting hole does not exceed 1.0 mm.

56 Remove the TDC setting/locking pins.

57 The remainder of refitting is a reversal of removal. Tighten all fasteners to the specified torque where given.

**Later 2.0 litre engines**

58 Later engines are identified by the camshaft sprocket being retained by one central bolt.

59 Set the crankshaft sprocket by inserting a 2 mm diameter rod on the left-hand side of the woodruff key (see illustration). Check the flywheel and camshaft timing pins are still in place.

60 Locate the timing belt on the camshaft sprocket splines then, keeping it taut, locate it around the high-pressure pump pulley, idler pulley, crankshaft sprocket, coolant pump sprocket and tensioner pulley. Peugeot technicians use a plastic clip to retain the belt on the camshaft sprocket; if necessary, use a plastic cable tie to hold it.

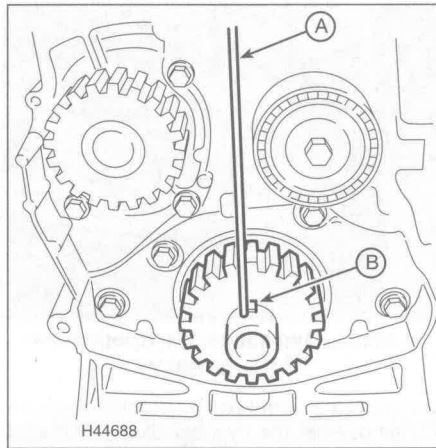
61 Loosen the bolt and turn the tensioner anti-clockwise to tension the belt moderately. Pretighten the bolt to 1.0 Nm, then remove the holding clip or cable tie. Remove the 2 mm diameter rod from alongside the crankshaft sprocket key.

62 A timing belt tension setting tool is now required to apply the correct tension. A tool which checks SEEM units is necessary, and should be fitted to the belt run between the camshaft sprocket and high-pressure pump sprocket.

63 Loosen the bolt, then turn the tensioner anti-clockwise until 98.0 ± 2.0 SEEM units is read on the tool (see illustrations 7.41a and 7.41b). At this point, tighten the tensioner bolt to the specified torque.

64 Immobilise the flywheel as described in Paragraph 17, then refit the crankshaft auxiliary belt pulley, and tighten its retaining bolt to 70 Nm.

65 Remove the crankshaft and camshaft timing pins, and the flywheel locking tool.



7.59 Insert a 2 mm rod (A) on the left-hand side of the Woodruff key (B)

66 Turn the engine clockwise 8 times. Do not turn the engine anti-clockwise during this operation.

67 Refit the crankshaft and camshaft TDC setting pins, then lock the flywheel as described in Paragraph 17.

68 Undo the bolt and remove the auxiliary drivebelt pulley.

69 Refit the tensioning tool midway between the camshaft and high-pressure pump sprocket.

70 Loosen the tensioner bolt, then turn the tensioner anti-clockwise until the tool reads 54.0 ± 2.0 SEEM units. With the tensioner held in this position, tighten the bolt to the specified torque. It is important to apply the correct tension to the timing belt, otherwise the belt may be noisy in operation, or worse still, may break.

71 Remove the tensioning tool to release its internal forces, then refit it and check the tension of the belt is between 51.0 and 57.0 SEEM units. If necessary, repeat the tensioning procedure.

72 Remove the crankshaft and camshaft timing pins, and the flywheel locking tool.

73 The remainder of refitting is a reversal of removal, noting the following points.

a) Ensure the timing covers engage correctly with each other.

b) When refitting the crankshaft auxiliary drivebelt pulley, apply a few drops of

thread locking compound to the pulley bolt.

c) Tighten all fasteners to the specified torque where given.

**8 Timing belt sprockets and tensioner – removal and refitting**

**Camshaft sprocket**

**Removal**

1 Remove the timing belt as described in Section 7.

2 Remove the locking tool from the camshaft sprocket/hub. Slacken the sprocket hub retaining bolt, and the three sprocket-to-hub retaining bolts (where applicable). To prevent the camshaft rotating as the bolt(s) are slackened, a sprocket holding tool will be required. In the absence of the special Peugeot tool, an acceptable substitute can be fabricated at home (see Tool Tip 1). Do not attempt to use the engine assembly/valve timing locking tool to prevent the sprocket from rotating whilst the bolt is slackened.

3 Remove the sprocket hub retaining bolt and washer (where fitted), and slide the sprocket and hub off the end of the camshaft (see illustration). If the Woodruff key is a loose fit in the camshaft on 2.0 litre engines, remove it for safe-keeping. Examine the camshaft oil seal for signs of oil leakage and, if necessary, renew it as described in Section 14.

4 If necessary on early 2.0 litre engines, the sprocket can be separated from the hub after removing the three retaining bolts.

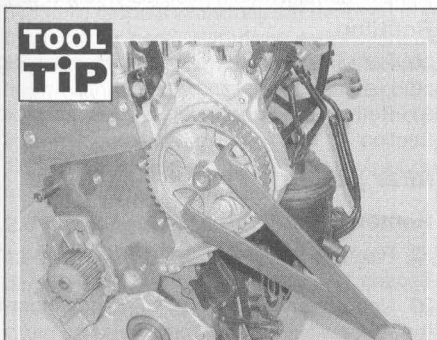
5 Clean the camshaft sprocket thoroughly, and renew it if there are any signs of wear, damage or cracks.

**Refitting**

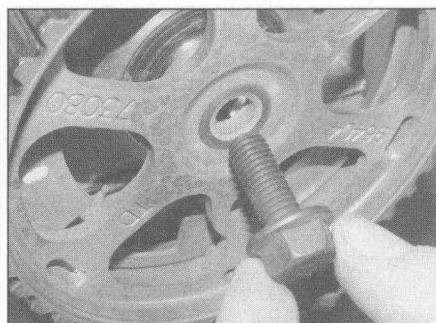
6 If removed on early 2.0 litre engines, refit the sprocket to the hub and secure with the three retaining bolts, tightened finger tight only at this stage.

7 Where applicable, refit the Woodruff key to the end of the camshaft, then refit the camshaft sprocket and hub (see illustration).

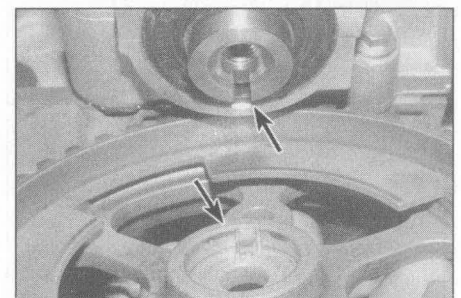
8 Refit the sprocket hub retaining bolt and washer. Tighten the bolt to the specified



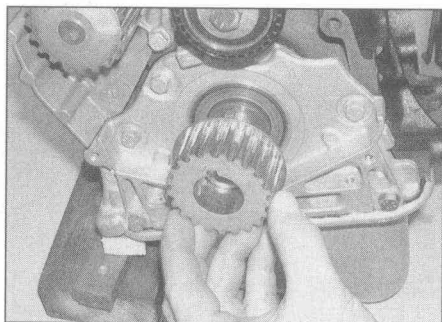
**Tool Tip 1:** A sprocket holding tool can be made from two lengths of steel strip bolted together to form a forked end. Bend the end of the strip through 90° to form the fork 'prongs'.



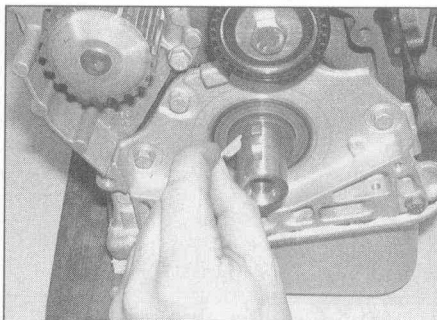
8.3 Undo the retaining bolt and remove the camshaft sprocket (1.4 litre engine)



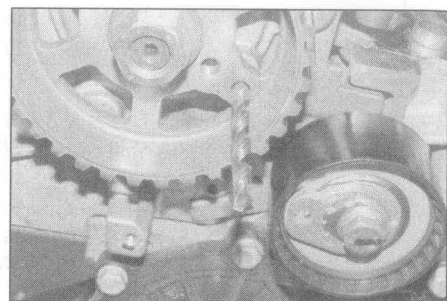
8.7 On 1.4 litre engines, align the sprocket lug with the notch in the end of the camshaft (arrowed)



**8.13a** Slide the crankshaft sprocket off the end of the crankshaft . . .



**8.13b** . . . and collect the Woodruff key (2.0 litre engine)



**8.19** On 1.4 litre engines insert a suitable drill bit through the sprocket into the hole in the back plate

torque, preventing the camshaft from turning as during removal.

**9** Align the engine assembly/valve timing slot in the camshaft sprocket hub with the hole in the cylinder head and refit the timing pin to lock the camshaft in position.

**10** Fit the timing belt around the pump sprocket and camshaft sprocket, and tension the timing belt as described in Section 7.

### Crankshaft sprocket

#### Removal

**11** Remove the timing belt as described in Section 7.

**12** Check that the engine assembly/valve timing holes are still aligned as described in Section 3, and the camshaft sprocket/hub and flywheel/driveplate are locked in position.

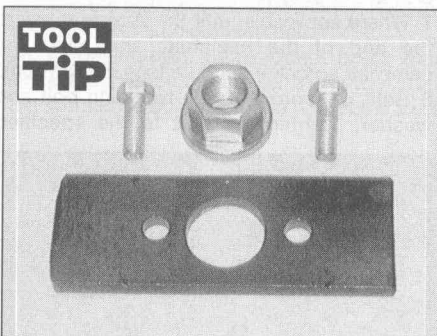
**13** Slide the sprocket off the end of the crankshaft and collect the Woodruff key (see illustrations).

**14** Examine the crankshaft oil seal for signs of oil leakage and, if necessary, renew it as described in Section 14.

**15** Clean the crankshaft sprocket thoroughly, and renew it if there are any signs of wear, damage or cracks. Recover the crankshaft locating key.

#### Refitting

**16** Refit the key to the end of the crankshaft,



**Tool Tip 2:** Make a sprocket releasing tool from a short strip of steel. Drill two holes in the strip to correspond with the two holes in the sprocket. Drill a third hole just large enough to accept the flats of the sprocket retaining nut.

then refit the crankshaft sprocket (with the flange nearest the cylinder block on the 2.0 litre engines, and facing the crankshaft pulley on the 1.4 litre engines).

**17** Fit the timing belt around the crankshaft sprocket, and tension the timing belt as described in Section 7.

### Fuel pump sprocket

#### Removal

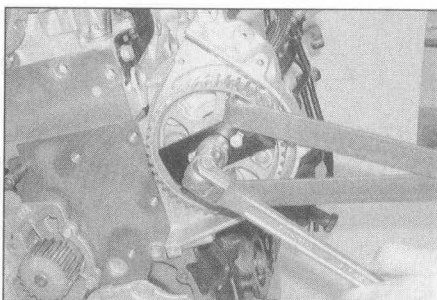
**18** Remove the timing belt as described in Section 7.

**19** Using a suitable socket, undo the pump sprocket retaining nut. The sprocket can be held stationary by inserting a suitably-sized locking pin, drill or rod through the hole in the sprocket, and into the corresponding hole in the backplate (see illustration), or by using a suitable forked tool engaged with the holes in the sprocket (see Tool Tip 1 on previous page).

**20** The pump sprocket is a taper fit on the pump shaft and it will be necessary to make up another tool to release it from the taper (see Tool Tip 2).

**21** Partially unscrew the sprocket retaining nut, fit the home-made tool, and secure it to the sprocket with two suitable bolts. Prevent the sprocket from rotating as before, and unscrew the sprocket retaining nut (see illustration). The nut will bear against the tool as it is undone, forcing the sprocket off the shaft taper. Once the taper is released, remove the tool, unscrew the nut fully, and remove the sprocket from the pump shaft.

**22** Clean the sprocket thoroughly, and renew



**8.21** Using the home-made tools to remove the fuel pump sprocket (2.0 litre engine)

it if there are any signs of wear, damage or cracks.

#### Refitting

**23** Refit the pump sprocket and retaining nut, and tighten the nut to the specified torque. Prevent the sprocket rotating as the nut is tightened using the sprocket holding tool.

**24** Fit the timing belt around the pump sprocket, and tension the timing belt as described in Section 7.

### Coolant pump sprocket

**25** The coolant pump sprocket is integral with the pump, and cannot be removed. Coolant pump removal is described in Chapter 3.

### Tensioner pulley

#### Removal

**26** Remove the timing belt as described in Section 7.

**27** Remove the tensioner pulley retaining bolt, and slide the pulley off its mounting stud.

**28** Clean the tensioner pulley, but do not use any strong solvent which may enter the pulley bearings. Check that the pulley rotates freely, with no sign of stiffness or free play. Renew the pulley if there is any doubt about its condition, or if there are any obvious signs of wear or damage.

**29** Examine the pulley mounting stud for signs of damage and if necessary, renew it.

#### Refitting

**30** Refit the tensioner pulley to its mounting stud, and fit the retaining bolt.

**31** Refit the timing belt as described in Section 7.

### Idler pulley

#### Removal

**32** Remove the timing belt as described in Section 7.

**33** Undo the retaining bolt/nut and withdraw the idler pulley from the engine.

**34** Clean the idler pulley, but do not use any strong solvent which may enter the bearings. Check that the pulley rotates freely, with no sign of stiffness or free play. Renew the idler pulley if there is any doubt about its condition, or if there are any obvious signs of wear or damage.

**Refitting**

**35** Locate the idler pulley on the engine, and fit the retaining bolt/nut. Tighten the bolt/nut to the specified torque.

**36** Refit the timing belt as described in Section 7.

**9 Camshaft, rocker arms and hydraulic tappets – removal, inspection and refitting**



**Removal**

**1** Remove the cylinder head cover as described in Section 4.

**2** Remove the camshaft sprocket as described in Section 8.

**1.4 litre engines**

**3** Refit the right-hand engine mounting, but only tighten the bolts moderately; this will keep the engine supported during the camshaft removal.

**4** Undo the bolts and remove the vacuum pump. Recover the pump O-ring seals (**see illustration**).

**5** Disconnect the wiring plug, unscrew the retaining bolt, and remove the camshaft position sensor from the cylinder head.

**6** Working in a spiral pattern, progressively and evenly unscrew the camshaft upper bearing housing bolts (**see illustration**). Carefully lift the housing away.

**7** Note the orientation of the camshaft, then lift it upwards from the housing and slide off and discard the oil seal.

**8** To remove the rocker arms and hydraulic tappets, undo the 13 bolts and remove the lower half of the camshaft bearing housing.

**9** Obtain eight small, clean plastic containers, and number them 1 to 8; alternatively, divide a larger container into eight compartments.

**10** Lift out each rocker arm. Place the rocker arms in their respective positions in the box or containers (**see illustration**).

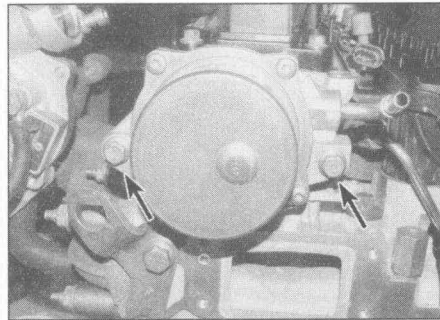
**11** A compartmentalised container filled with engine oil is now required to retain the hydraulic tappets while they are removed from the cylinder head. Withdraw each hydraulic follower and place it in the container, keeping them each identified for correct refitting. The tappets must be totally submerged in the oil to prevent air entering them.

**12** Recover the 5 O-ring seals between the housing and the cylinder head.

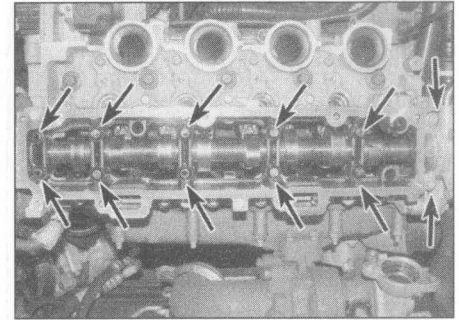
**2.0 litre engines**

**13** Slacken the retaining clamps and disconnect the air intake hose from the left-hand end of the cylinder head. On the DW10ATED engine, remove the intercooler air duct from the left-hand end of the cylinder head.

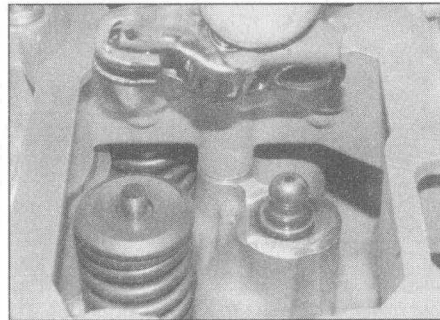
**14** Refit the right-hand engine mounting, but only tighten the bolts moderately; this will keep the engine supported during the camshaft removal.



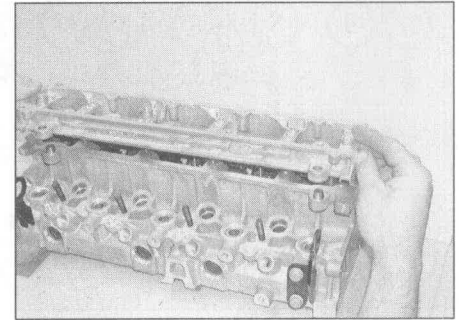
**9.4** Undo the vacuum pump bolts (arrowed)



**9.6** Upper camshaft bearing housing bolts (arrowed)



**9.10** Remove the rocker arms



**9.18** Remove the camshaft bearing housing from the cylinder head . . .

**15** Disconnect the vacuum pipe from the brake vacuum pump on the left-hand end of the cylinder head.

**16** Remove the vacuum pump from the cylinder head with reference to Chapter 9.

**17** Working in a spiral pattern from the outside-in, progressively loosen the camshaft bearing cap housing bolts until they can be removed.

**18** Withdraw the bearing cap housing from the cylinder head. The housing is likely to be initially tight to release as it is located by two dowels on the forward-facing side of the cylinder head. If necessary, very carefully prise up the housing using a screwdriver inserted in the slotted lug adjacent to each dowel location. Once the bearing housing is free, lift it squarely from the cylinder head (**see illustration**). The camshaft will rise up slightly under the pressure of the valve springs – be

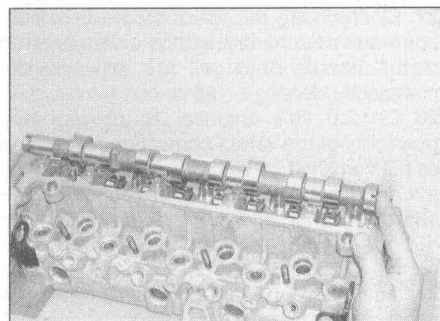
careful it doesn't tilt and jam in the cylinder head or bearing housing section.

**19** Carefully lift the camshaft from its location and remove the oil seal (**see illustration**). Discard the seal, a new one should be used on refitting.

**20** Obtain eight small, clean plastic containers, and number them 1 to 8; alternatively, divide a larger container into eight compartments.

**21** Lift out each rocker arm and release it from the spring clip on the tappet. Place the rocker arms in their respective positions in the box or containers (**see illustration**).

**22** A compartmentalised container filled with engine oil is now required to retain the hydraulic tappets while they are removed from the cylinder head. Using a rubber sucker, withdraw each hydraulic follower and place it in the container, keeping them each identified

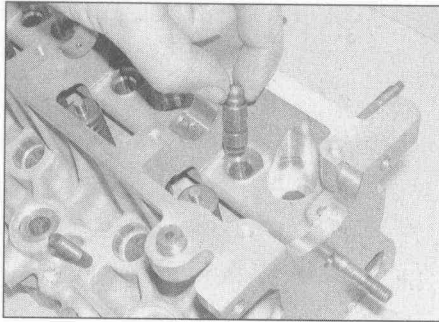


**9.19** . . . then lift out the camshaft

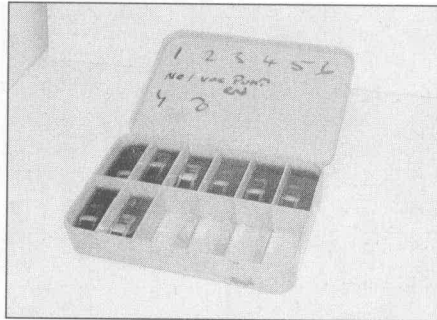


**9.21** Lift out the rocker arms . . .

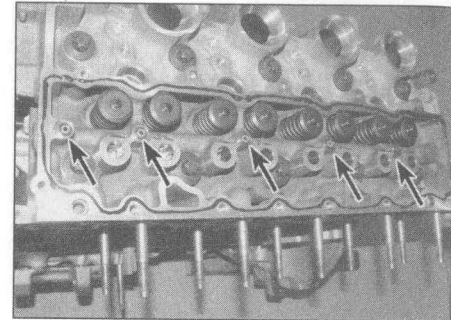




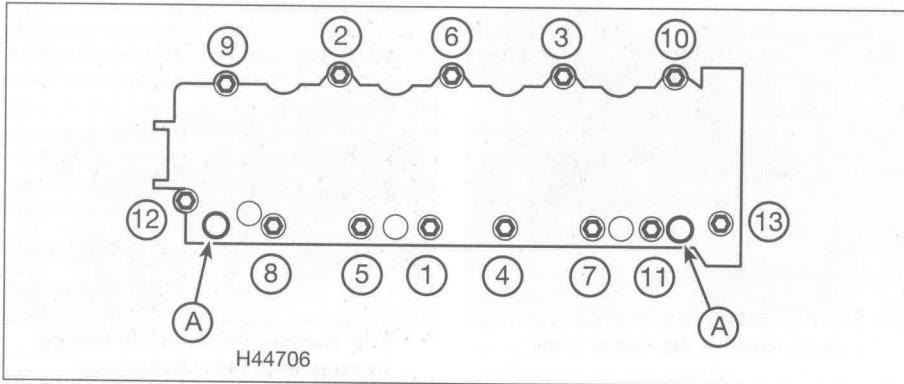
9.22a ... followed by the hydraulic tappets ...



9.22b ... and place all the components in the respective positions in a box



9.33 Apply a bead of sealant, and fit the new O-rings (arrowed)



9.34 Insert guide pins/rods into the guide holes (A), fit the housing and tighten the bolts in sequence

for correct refitting (see illustrations). The tappets must be totally submerged in the oil to prevent air entering them.

### Inspection

**23** Inspect the cam lobes and the camshaft bearing journals for scoring or other visible evidence of wear. Once the surface hardening of the cam lobes has been eroded, wear will occur at an accelerated rate. **Note:** If these symptoms are visible on the tips of the camshaft lobes, check the corresponding rocker arm, as it will probably be worn as well.

**24** Examine the condition of the bearing surfaces in the cylinder head and camshaft bearing housing. If wear is evident, the cylinder head and bearing housing will both

have to be renewed, as they are a matched assembly.

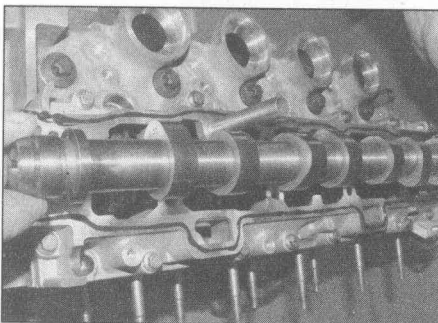
**25** Inspect the rocker arms and tappets for scuffing, cracking or other damage and renew any components as necessary. Also check the condition of the tappet bores in the cylinder head. As with the camshafts, any wear in this area will necessitate cylinder head renewal.

### Refitting

**26** Thoroughly clean the sealant from the mating surfaces of the cylinder head and camshaft bearing housing. Use a suitable liquid gasket dissolving agent (available from Peugeot dealers) together with a soft putty knife; do not use a metal scraper or the faces will be damaged. As there is no conventional gasket used, the cleanliness of the mating faces is of the utmost importance.

**27** Clean off any oil, dirt or grease from both components and dry with a clean lint-free cloth. Ensure that all the oilways are completely clean.

**28** On 2.0 litre engines, to prevent any possibility of the valves contacting the pistons as the camshaft is refitted, remove the locking pin/drill from the flywheel/driveplate/crankshaft sprocket and turn the crankshaft a quarter turn in the *opposite* direction to normal rotation (ie, anti-clockwise), to position all the pistons at mid-stroke. On 1.4 litre engines, with the timing marks aligned as described in Section 3, the pistons are already positioned halfway down the cylinder bores.



9.37 Lay the camshaft in position, and apply a bead of sealant to the housing mating face

**29** Liberally lubricate the hydraulic tappet bores in the cylinder head with clean engine oil.

**30** Insert the hydraulic tappets into their original bores in the cylinder head unless they have been renewed.

**31** Lubricate the rocker arms and place them over their respective tappets and valve stems. On 2.0 litre engines, ensure that the ends of the rocker arms engage with the spring clips on the tappets.

**32** On 2.0 litre engines, lubricate the camshaft bearing journals in the cylinder head sparingly with oil, taking care not to allow the oil to spill over onto the camshaft bearing housing contact areas.

### 1.4 litre engines

**33** Sparingly apply a bead of silicone sealant to the mating face of the cylinder head-to-camshaft lower bearing housing, and position the 5 new O-ring seals (see illustration).

**34** Insert two 12 mm rods or drill bits into the locating holes in the cylinder head to guide the bearing housing into position. Suitable guide rods, No 194-N, are available from Peugeot dealers. Refit the lower bearing housing over the tools, insert the bolts and finger-tighten them in order (see illustration).

**35** Remove the guide pins/rods and tighten the housing bolts in the sequence shown previously to the specified torque.

**36** Lubricate the camshaft bearing journals with clean engine oil, and lay the camshaft in position.

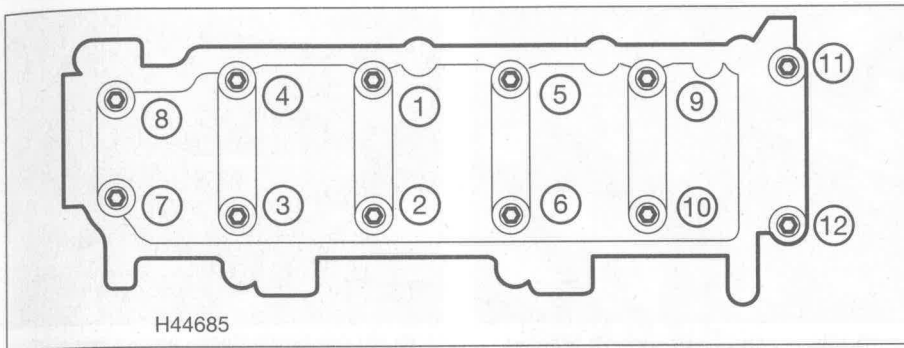
**37** Sparingly apply a bead of silicone sealant to the mating face of the camshaft lower bearing housing (see illustration).

**38** Insert two 12 mm rods or drill bits into the locating holes in the lower camshaft bearing housing to guide the upper housing into position. Suitable guide rods, No 194-N, are available from Peugeot dealers.

**39** Lower the upper housing over the guide pins/rods, and finger-tighten the bolts gradually and evenly, in sequence until the housing makes firm contact with the lower housing (see illustration).

**40** Remove the guides pins/rods and tighten the housing to the specified torque in the same sequence.

**41** Fit a new camshaft oil seal as described in Section 14.



H44685

9.39 Upper camshaft housing bolts tightening sequence

42 Ensure the key is fitted to the camshaft, then refit the camshaft sprocket to the camshaft and tighten the bolt to the specified torque.

43 Refit the camshaft position sensor to the camshaft housing, and position the sensor so that the gap between the sprocket and the sensor end is 1.2 mm for a used sensor. If fitting a new sensor, the small tip of the sensor must be just touching one of the three webs of the signal ring (see illustration). Tighten the bolt to the specified torque.

44 Turn the camshaft sprocket the position where the timing tool can be inserted, then refit the timing belt as described in Section 7.

45 The remainder of refitting is a reversal of removal.

## 2.0 litre engines

46 Lay the camshaft in the cylinder head. On early engines position the camshaft so that the engine assembly/valve timing slot in the sprocket hub is approximately aligned with the timing hole in the cylinder head.

47 Ensure that the mating faces of the cylinder head and camshaft bearing housing are clean and free of any oil or grease.

48 Sparingly apply a bead of silicone sealant to the mating face of the camshaft bearing housing, taking care not to allow the product to contaminate the camshaft bearing journal areas (see illustration).

49 Locate the bearing housing over the camshaft and into position on the cylinder head.

50 Insert all the bearing housing retaining bolts and progressively tighten them to the specified torque, in sequence (see illustration).

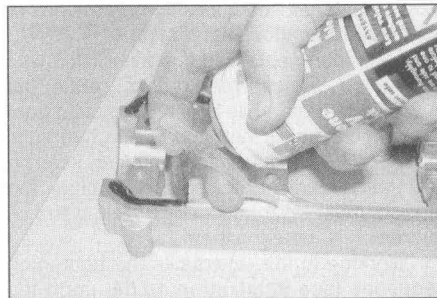
51 Fit a new camshaft oil seal as described in Section 14.

52 Refit the camshaft hub and/or sprocket as described in Section 8.

53 Rotate the crankshaft clockwise until the timing rod can be re-inserted through the hole in the block and into the flywheel/driveplate (see Section 3).

54 Refit the timing belt as described in Section 7.

55 The remainder of refitting is a reversal of removal.



9.48 Apply a bead of silicone sealant to the mating face of the camshaft bearing housing

## 10 Cylinder head – removal and refitting

**Note:** This is an involved procedure, and it is suggested that the Section is read thoroughly before starting work. To aid refitting, make notes on the locations of all relevant brackets and the routing of hoses and cables before removal.

### Removal

1 Apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the front right-hand roadwheel, the engine undershield, and the front wheel arch liner. The undershield is secured by several screws, and the wheel arch liner is secured by several plastic expanding rivets. Push the centre pins in a little, then prise the rivet from place.

2 Remove the battery (see Chapter 5A).

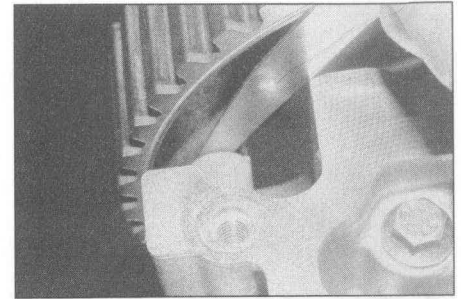
3 Drain the cooling system as described in Chapter 1B. For improved general access, remove the bonnet as described in Chapter 11.

### 1.4 litre engines

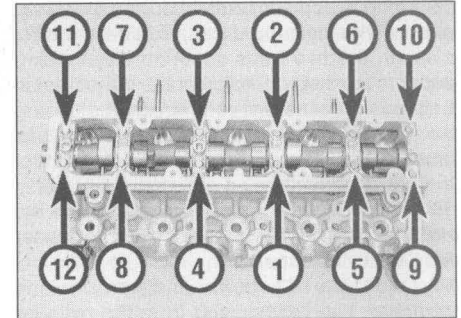
4 Remove the cylinder head cover as described in Section 4.

5 Remove the timing belt as described in Section 7.

6 Disconnect the exhaust front pipe from the manifold, as described in Chapter 4B. **Note:** Do not allow any strain to be placed on the flexible section of the exhaust pipe, as damage will result.



9.43 When fitting a used sensor, the gap between the sensor end and the sensor ring web should be 1.2 mm



9.50 Camshaft bearing housing bolt tightening sequence

7 Remove the glow plugs as described in Chapter 5C.

8 Undo the three bolts and remove the auxiliary drivebelt tensioner from the front of the engine (see illustration).

9 Remove the catalytic converter as described in Section 19 of Chapter 4B.

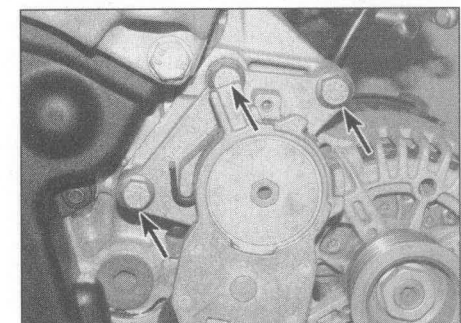
10 Remove the alternator (see Chapter 5A) and mounting bracket.

11 Undo the union bolts and remove the oil feed pipe from the engine block and the turbocharger. Recover the unions sealing washers.

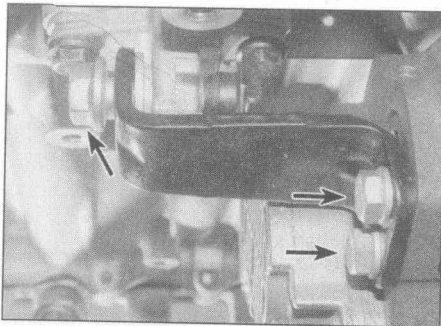
12 Slacken the retaining clamp and disconnect the turbocharger oil return hose from the engine block.

13 Slacken and remove the high-pressure fuel pump rear support bracket bolts and front support bracket upper bolt (see illustrations).

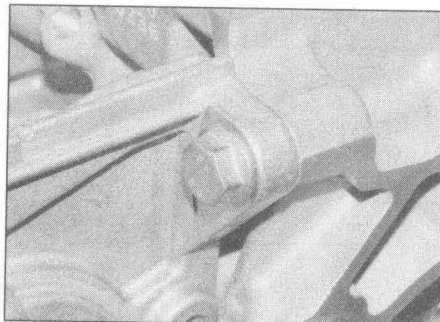
14 Remove the injectors as described in Chapter 4B.



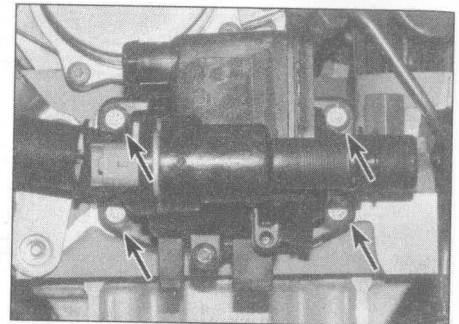
10.8 Auxiliary drivebelt tensioner bolts (arrowed)



**10.13a** Fuel pump rear support bracket bolts (arrowed) . . .



**10.13b** . . . and front support bracket upper bolt



**10.15** Coolant housing bolts (arrowed)

**15** Undo the coolant outlet housing (left-hand end of the cylinder head) retaining bolts, slacken the two bolts securing the housing support bracket to the top of the transmission bellhousing, and move the outlet housing away from the cylinder head a little (**see illustration**). There is no need to disconnect the hoses.

**16** Disconnect the wiring plug, then undo the bolt and remove the camshaft position sensor from the cylinder head.

**17** Undo the 13 bolts and remove the camshaft bearing housing from the cylinder head, complete with camshaft. Recover the 5 small O-ring seals between the housing and the cylinder head.

**18** Obtain eight small, clean plastic containers, and number them 1 to 8; alternatively, divide a larger container into eight compartments.

**19** Lift out each rocker arm. Place the rocker

arms in their respective positions in the box or containers (**see illustration 9.10**).

**20** A compartmentalised container filled with engine oil is now required to retain the hydraulic tappets while they are removed from the cylinder head. Withdraw each hydraulic follower and place it in the container, keeping them each identified for correct refitting. The tappets must be totally submerged in the oil to prevent air entering them.

**21** Working in the reverse of the tightening sequence (**see illustration 10.54**) undo the cylinder head bolts.

### 2.0 litre engines

**22** Remove the air cleaner assembly, airflow meter and inlet air ducts, fuel injectors, common fuel rail and turbocharger as described in Chapter 4B.

**23** Remove the EGR valve with reference to Chapter 4C.

**24** Remove the timing belt as described in Section 7.

**25** Temporarily refit the right-hand engine mounting to support the engine whilst the cylinder head is removed.

**26** Note their fitted positions and routing, then disconnect all coolant and vacuum hoses from the cylinder head.

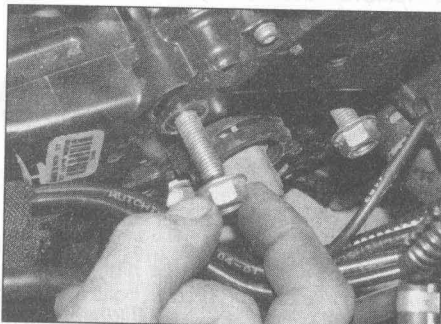
**27** Unscrew the bolts securing the oil level dipstick tube to the cylinder head.

**28** Unscrew the nuts on the two studs securing the coolant outlet manifold to the left-hand end of the cylinder head, then unscrew and remove the studs. Use a stud extractor or alternatively tighten two nuts together on the stud before unscrewing it. Note the location of brackets on the studs for correct refitting (**see illustrations**).

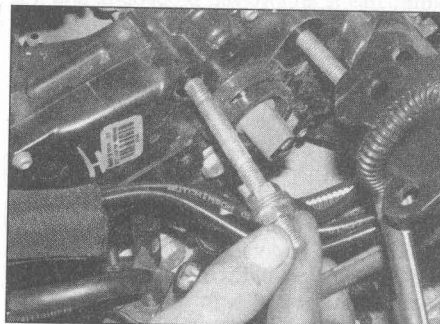
**29** Without disconnecting the hoses, unscrew the mounting bolts and move the coolant outlet manifold away from the left-hand end of the cylinder head (**see illustrations**). If necessary, tie it to one side. Recover the seal. **Note:** At the time of writing, the coolant outlet manifold seal was not available separately. If damaged, the complete outlet manifold must be renewed. Check with a Peugeot dealer.

**30** Disconnect the wiring from the camshaft position sensor then undo the screw and remove the sensor (**see illustration**). Check that all relevant wiring is disconnected from the sensors on the cylinder head, then move the wiring harness to one side.

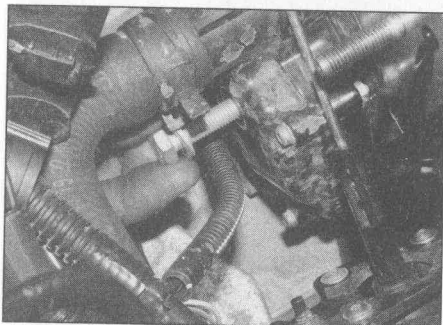
**31** Remove the cylinder head cover as described in Section 4.



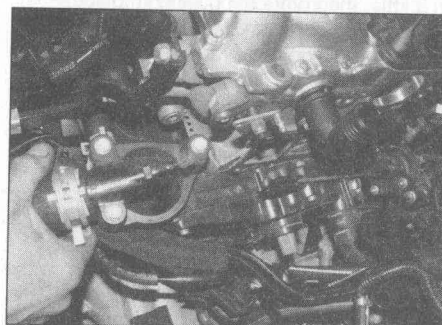
**10.28a** Unscrew the nuts . . .



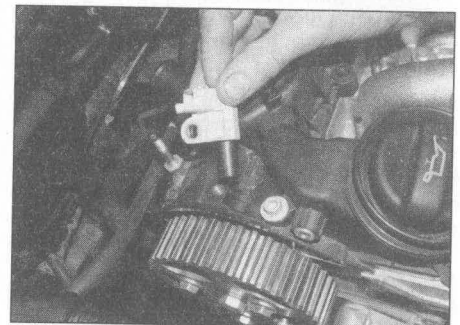
**10.28b** . . . then remove the studs from the coolant outlet manifold



**10.29a** Unscrew the bolts . . .



**10.29b** . . . and move the coolant outlet manifold away from the cylinder head



**10.30** Remove the camshaft position sensor

32 Progressively slacken the cylinder head bolts, in the reverse order to that for tightening (see illustration 10.62). A Torx socket will be required for this.

33 When all the bolts are loose, unscrew them fully and remove them from the cylinder head.

**All engines**

34 Release the cylinder head from the cylinder block and location dowels by rocking it. The Peugeot tool for doing this consists simply of two metal rods with 90-degree angled ends (see illustration). Do not prise between the mating faces of the cylinder head and block, as this may damage the gasket faces.

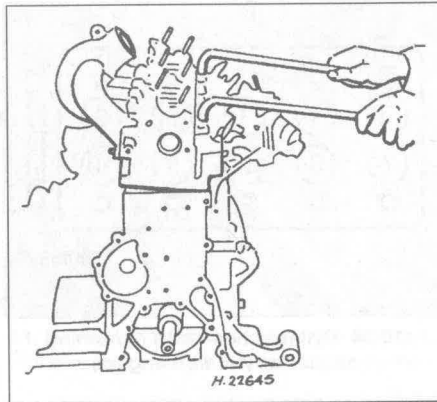
35 Lift the cylinder head from the block, and recover the gasket.

36 If necessary, remove the manifolds (if not already done so) with reference to Chapter 4B.

**Preparation for refitting**

37 The mating faces of the cylinder head and cylinder block must be perfectly clean before refitting the head. Peugeot recommend the use of a scouring agent for this purpose, but acceptable results can be achieved by using a hard plastic or wood scraper to remove all traces of gasket and carbon. The same method can be used to clean the piston crowns. Take particular care to avoid scoring or gouging the cylinder head/cylinder block mating surfaces during the cleaning operations, as aluminium alloy is easily damaged. Make sure that the carbon is not allowed to enter the oil and water passages – this is particularly important for the lubrication system, as carbon could block the oil supply to the engine's components. Using adhesive tape and paper, seal the water, oil and bolt holes in the cylinder block. To prevent carbon entering the gap between the pistons and bores, smear a little grease in the gap. After cleaning each piston, use a small brush to remove all traces of grease and carbon from the gap, then wipe away the remainder with a clean rag.

38 Check the mating surfaces of the cylinder block and the cylinder head for nicks, deep scratches and other damage. If slight, they may be removed carefully with a file, but if excessive, machining may be the only



10.34 Free the cylinder head using angled rods

alternative to renewal. If warpage of the cylinder head gasket surface is suspected, use a straight-edge to check it for distortion. Refer to Part D of this Chapter if necessary.

39 Thoroughly clean the threads of the cylinder head bolt holes in the cylinder block. Ensure that the bolts run freely in their threads, and that all traces of oil and water are removed from each bolt hole.

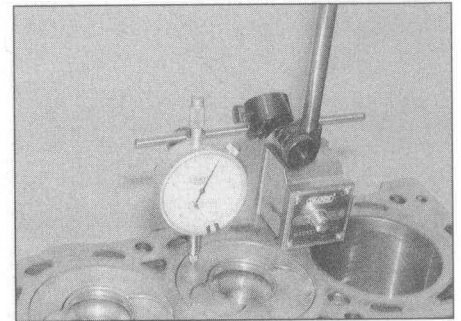
**Gasket selection**

40 Remove the crankshaft timing pin, then turn the crankshaft until pistons 1 and 4 are at TDC (Top Dead Centre). Position a dial test indicator (dial gauge) on the cylinder block adjacent to the rear of No 1 piston, and zero it on the block face. Transfer the probe to the crown of No 1 piston (10.0 mm in from the rear edge), then slowly turn the crankshaft back-and-forth past TDC, noting the highest reading on the indicator. Record this reading as protrusion A.

41 Repeat the check described in paragraph 40, this time 10.0 mm in from the front edge of the No 1 piston crown. Record this reading as protrusion B.

42 Add protrusion A to protrusion B, then divide the result by 2 to obtain an average reading for piston No 1.

43 Repeat the procedure described in paragraphs 40 to 42 on piston 4, then turn the crankshaft through 180° and carry out the procedure on the piston Nos 2 and 3 (see



10.43 Measure the piston protrusion using a DTI gauge

illustration). Check that there is a maximum difference of 0.07 mm protrusion between any two pistons.

44 If a dial test indicator is not available, piston protrusion may be measured using a straight-edge and feeler blades or Vernier calipers. However, this is much less accurate, and cannot therefore be recommended.

45 Note the greatest piston protrusion measurement, and use this to determine the correct cylinder head gasket from the following table. The series of notches/holes on the side of the gasket are used for thickness identification (see illustrations).

**1.4 litre engines**

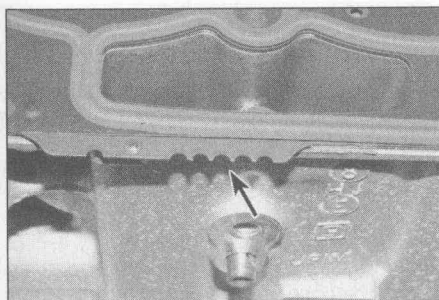
Piston protrusion	Gasket identification
0.618 to 0.725 mm	2 notches
0.726 to 0.775 mm	3 notches
0.776 to 0.825 mm	1 notch
0.826 to 0.875 mm	4 notches
0.876 to 0.983 mm	5 notches

**2.0 litre engines**

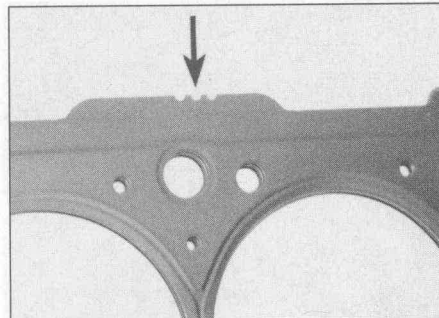
Piston protrusion	Gasket identification
0.470 to 0.604 mm	1 notch
0.605 to 0.654 mm	2 notches
0.655 to 0.704 mm	3 notches
0.705 to 0.754 mm	4 notches
0.755 to 0.830 mm	5 notches

**Head bolt examination**

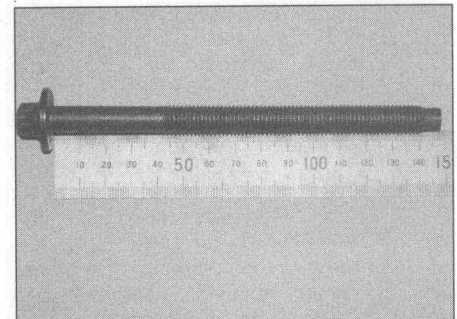
46 Carefully examine the cylinder head bolts for signs of damage to the threads or head, and for any sign of corrosion. If the bolts are in a satisfactory condition, measure the length of each bolt from the underside of the head, to the end of the shank. The bolts may be re-used



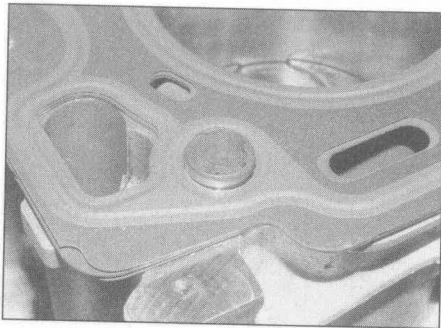
10.45a Cylinder head gasket thickness identification notches (arrowed) (1.4 litre engine) . . .



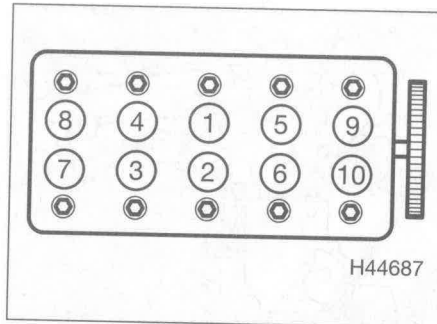
10.45b . . . and 2.0 litre engine (arrowed)



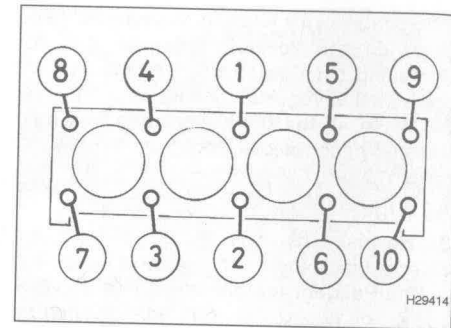
10.46 Measure the length of from under the bolt head to its end (1.4 litre engine)



10.49 Ensure the gasket fits correctly over the locating dowels



10.54 Cylinder head bolt tightening sequence (1.4 litre engine)



10.62 Cylinder head bolt tightening sequence (2.0 litre engine)

providing that the measured length does not exceed 149.0 mm on the 1.4 litre engine, and 133.3 mm on the 2.0 litre engine (see illustration). **Note:** Considering the stress to which the cylinder head bolts are subjected, it is highly recommended that they are all renewed, regardless of their apparent condition.

### Refitting

47 Turn the crankshaft and position Nos 1 and 4 pistons at TDC, then turn the crankshaft a quarter turn (90°) anti-clockwise.

48 Thoroughly clean the surfaces of the cylinder head and block.

49 Make sure that the locating dowels are in place, then fit the correct gasket the right way round on the cylinder block (see illustration).

### 1.4 litre engines

50 If necessary refit the exhaust manifold to the cylinder head as described in Chapter 4B.

51 Carefully lower the cylinder head onto the gasket and block, making sure that it locates correctly onto the dowels.

52 Apply a smear of grease to the threads, and to the underside of the heads, of the cylinder head bolts. Peugeot recommend the use of Molykote G Rapid Plus (available from your Peugeot dealer); in the absence of the specified grease, any good-quality high melting-point grease may be used.

53 Carefully insert the cylinder head bolts into their holes (do not drop them in) and initially finger-tighten them.

54 Working progressively and in sequence, tighten the cylinder head bolts to their Stage 1 torque setting, using a torque wrench and suitable socket (see illustration).

55 Once all the bolts have been tightened to their Stage 1 torque setting, working again in the specified sequence, tighten each bolt to the specified Stage 2 setting. Finally, angle-tighten the bolts through the specified Stage 3 angle. It is recommended that an angle-measuring gauge is used during this stage of tightening, to ensure accuracy. **Note:** Retightening of the cylinder head bolts after running the engine is not required.

56 Refit the hydraulic tappets, rocker arms, and camshaft housing (complete with camshaft) as described in Section 9.

57 Refit the timing belt as described in Section 7.

### 2.0 litre engines

58 If necessary, refit the inlet and exhaust manifolds with reference to Chapter 4B.

59 Check that the camshaft TDC timing pin is in position, then carefully lower the cylinder head onto the gasket and block, making sure that it locates correctly onto the dowels.

60 Apply a smear of grease to the threads, and to the underside of the heads, of the cylinder head bolts. Peugeot recommend the use of Molykote G Rapid Plus (available from your Peugeot dealer); in the absence of the specified grease, any good-quality high-melting-point grease may be used.

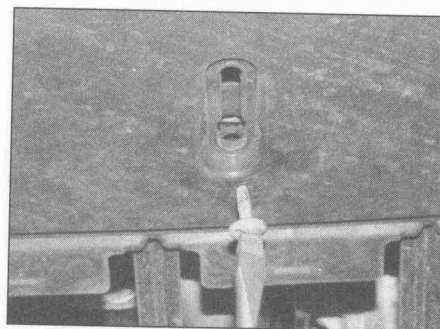
61 Carefully insert the cylinder head bolts into their holes (do not drop them in) and initially finger-tighten them.

62 Working progressively and in the sequence shown, tighten the cylinder head bolts to their Stage 1 torque setting, using a torque wrench and suitable socket (see illustration).

63 Once all the bolts have been tightened to their Stage 1 torque setting, working again in the specified sequence, tighten each bolt to the specified Stage 2 setting. Finally, angle-tighten the bolts through the specified Stage 3 angle. It is recommended that an angle-measuring gauge is used during this stage of tightening, to ensure accuracy. **Note:** Retightening of the cylinder head bolts after running the engine is not required.

64 Refit the cylinder head cover with reference to Section 4.

65 Refit the timing belt as described in Section 7.



11.2 Undo the engine undershield screws

### All models

66 The remainder of refitting is a reversal of removal, noting the following points.

- Use a new seal when refitting the coolant outlet housing.
- When refitting a cylinder head, it is good practice to renew the thermostat.
- Refit the camshaft position sensor and set the air gap with reference to Chapter 4B.
- Tighten all fasteners to the specified torque where given.
- Refill the cooling system as described in Chapter 1B.
- The engine may run erratically for the first few miles, until the engine management ECM relearns its stored values.

## 11 Sump – removal and refitting

### Removal

1 Drain the engine oil, then clean and refit the engine oil drain plug, tightening it securely. If the engine is nearing its service interval when the oil and filter are due for renewal, it is recommended that the filter is also removed, and a new one fitted. After reassembly, the engine can then be refilled with fresh oil. Refer to Chapter 1B for further information.

2 Apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield (see illustration).

3 On 1.4 litre models, to improve access, remove the exhaust front pipe as described in Chapter 4B.

4 On 2.0 litre models with air conditioning, where the compressor is mounted onto the side of the sump, remove the drivebelt as described in Chapter 1B. Unbolt the compressor, and position it clear of the sump. Support the weight of the compressor by tying it to the vehicle, to prevent any excess strain being placed on the compressor lines. Do not disconnect the refrigerant lines from the compressor (refer to the warnings given in Chapter 3).

5 Where necessary, disconnect the wiring

connector from the oil temperature sender unit, which is screwed into the sump.

**6** Progressively slacken and remove all the sump retaining bolts/nuts. Since the sump bolts vary in length, remove each bolt in turn, and store it in its correct fitted order by pushing it through a clearly-marked cardboard template. This will avoid the possibility of installing the bolts in the wrong locations on refitting.

**7** Try to break the joint by striking the sump with the palm of your hand, then lower and withdraw the sump from under the car. If the sump is stuck (which is quite likely) use a putty knife, or similar, carefully inserted between the sump and block. Ease the knife along the joint until the sump is released. While the sump is removed, take the opportunity to check the oil pump pick-up/strainer for signs of clogging or splitting. If necessary, remove the pump as described in Section 12, and clean or renew the strainer. Note that on later 2.0 litre models, the oil dipstick tube extends to the bottom of the sump in order to allow the oil to be sucked out of the tube using special equipment (see illustration).

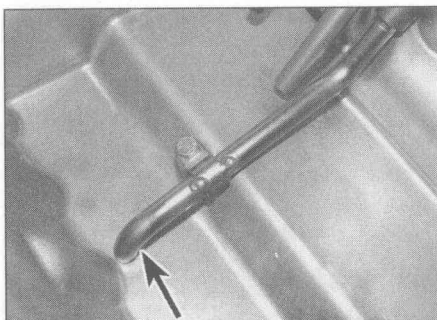
### Refitting

**8** Clean all traces of sealant/gasket from the mating surfaces of the cylinder block/crankcase and sump, then use a clean rag to wipe out the sump and the engine's interior.

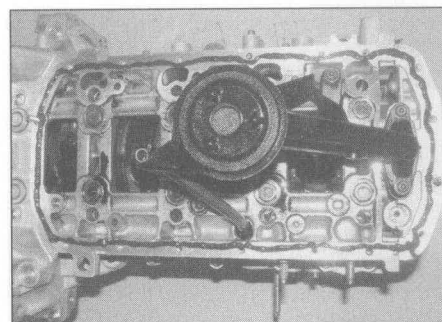
**9** On engines where the sump was fitted without a gasket, ensure that the sump mating surfaces are clean and dry, then apply a thin coating of suitable sealant to the sump or crankcase mating surface (see illustration).

**10** Offer up the sump to the cylinder block/crankcase. Refit its retaining bolts/nuts, ensuring that each bolt is screwed into its original location. Tighten the bolts evenly and progressively to the specified torque setting. On 2.0 litre engines, note the concealed bolts at one end of the sump (see illustrations).

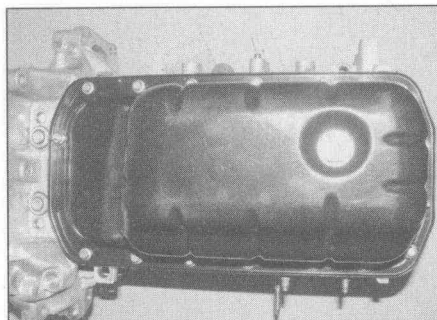
**11** Where necessary, align the air conditioning compressor with its mountings on the sump, and insert the retaining bolts. Securely tighten the compressor retaining bolts, then refit the drivebelt as described in Chapter 1B.



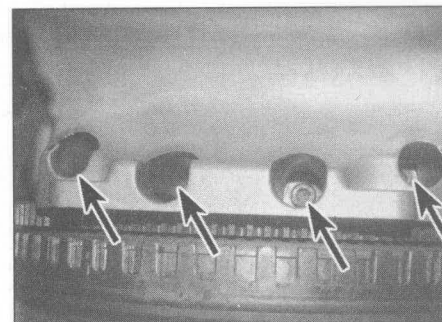
**11.7** On later 2.0 litre models the dipstick tube extends to the bottom of the sump



**11.9** Apply a bead of sealant to the sump of crankcase mating surface



**11.10a** Refit the sump and tighten the bolts (1.4 litre engine)



**11.10b** Concealed bolts (arrowed) at one end of the sump (2.0 litre engine)

**12** Reconnect the wiring connector to the oil temperature sensor (where fitted).

**13** Lower the vehicle to the ground, then refill the engine with oil as described in Chapter 1B.

### 12 Oil pump – removal, inspection and refitting



### Removal

**1** Remove the sump as described in Section 11.

#### 1.4 litre engines

**2** Remove the crankshaft sprocket as described in Section 8. Recover the locating key from the crankshaft.

**3** Disconnect the wiring plug, undo the bolts

and remove the crankshaft position sensor, located on the right-hand end of the cylinder block.

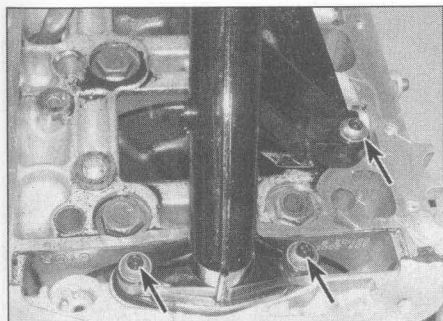
**4** Undo the three Allen bolts and remove the oil pump pick-up tube from the pump/block, complete with the dipstick guide tube (see illustration). Discard the oil seal, a new one must be fitted.

**5** Undo the 8 bolts, and remove the oil pump (see illustration).

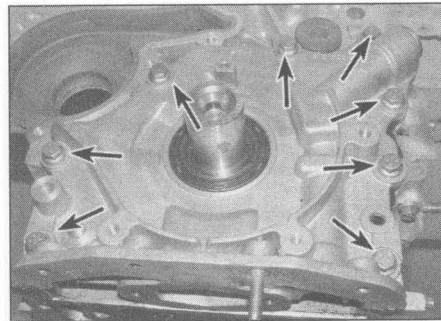
#### 2.0 litre engines

**6** Unscrew and remove the bolts securing the oil pump to the base of the cylinder block/crankcase.

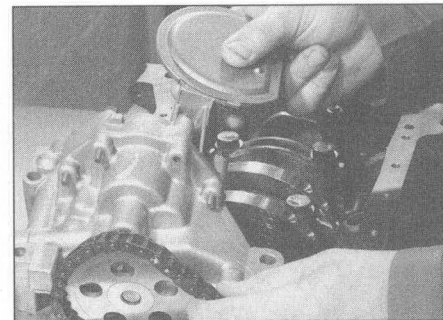
**7** Disengage the pump sprocket from the chain, and remove the oil pump (see illustration). Where necessary, also remove the spacer plate which is fitted behind the oil pump.



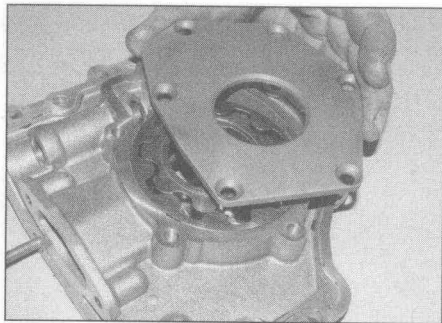
**12.4** Undo the three Allen bolts (arrowed) and remove the oil pick-up tube



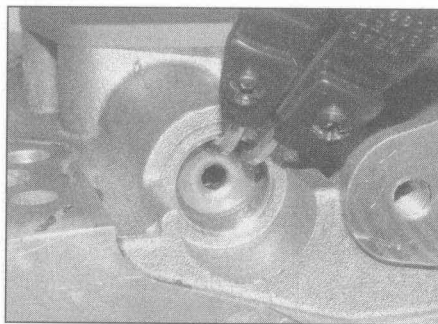
**12.5** Undo the 8 bolts (arrowed) and remove the oil pump



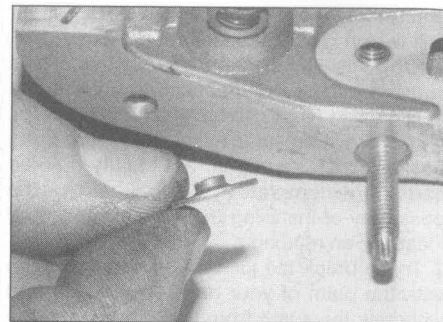
**12.7** Disengage the chain and remove the oil pump



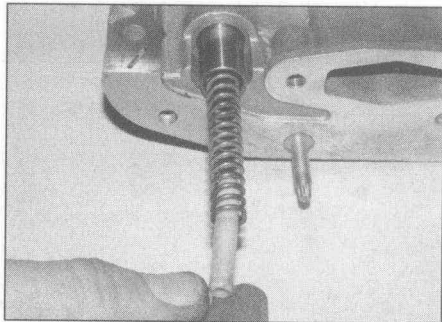
12.8 Undo the Torx screws and remove the pump cover



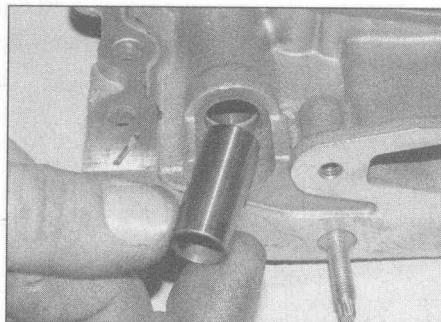
12.9a Remove the circlip ...



12.9b ... cap ...



12.9c ... spring ...



12.9d ... and piston

### Inspection

#### 1.4 litre engine

8 Undo and remove the Torx screws securing the cover to the oil pump (**see illustration**). Examine the pump rotors and body for signs of wear and damage. If worn, the complete pump must be renewed.

9 Remove the circlip, and extract the cap, valve piston and spring, noting which way around they are fitted (**see illustrations**). The condition of the relief valve spring can only be measured by comparing it with a new one; if there is any doubt about its condition, it should also be renewed.

10 Refit the relief valve piston and spring, then secure them in place with the circlip.

11 Refit the cover to the oil pump, and tighten the Torx screws securely.

#### 2.0 litre engines

12 Examine the oil pump sprocket for signs of damage and wear, such as chipped or missing teeth. If the sprocket is worn, the pump assembly must be renewed, since the sprocket is not available separately. It is also recommended that the chain and drive sprocket, fitted to the crankshaft, be renewed at the same time. To renew the chain and drive sprocket, first remove the crankshaft timing belt sprocket, then unbolt the oil seal carrier from the cylinder block. The sprocket, spacer (where fitted) and chain can then be slid off the end of the crankshaft.

13 Unscrew and remove the bolts (along with the baffle plate, where fitted) securing the strainer cover to the pump body. Lift off the strainer cover, and take off the relief valve

piston and spring, noting which way round they are fitted (**see illustrations**).

14 Examine the pump rotors and body for signs of wear ridges or scoring. If worn, the complete pump assembly must be renewed.

15 Examine the relief valve piston for signs of wear or damage, and renew if necessary. The condition of the relief valve spring can only be measured by comparing it with a new one; if there is any doubt about its condition, it should also be renewed. Both the piston and spring are available individually.

16 Thoroughly clean the oil pump strainer with a suitable solvent, and check it for signs of clogging or splitting. If the strainer is damaged, the strainer and cover assembly must be renewed.

17 Locate the relief valve spring and piston in the strainer cover. Refit the cover to the pump body, aligning the relief valve piston with its bore in the pump. Refit the baffle plate (where fitted) and the cover retaining bolts, and tighten them securely.

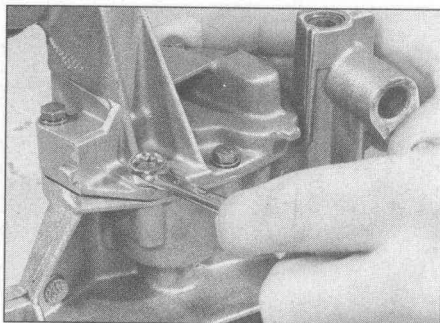
18 Prime the pump by filling it with clean engine oil before refitting.

### Refitting

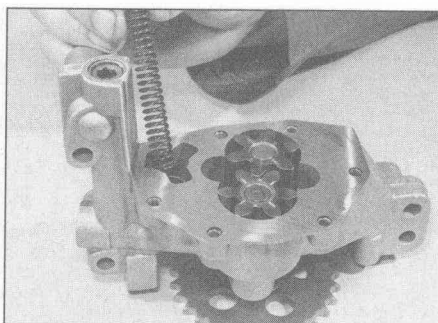
#### 1.4 litre engines

19 Remove all traces of sealant, and thoroughly clean the mating surfaces of the oil pump and cylinder block.

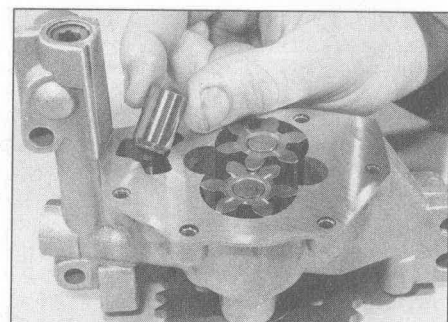
20 Apply a 4 mm wide bead of silicone sealant to the mating face of the cylinder block (**see illustration**). Ensure that no sealant enters any of the holes in the block.



12.13a Remove the oil pump cover bolts ...



12.13b ... then lift off the cover and remove the spring ...



12.13c ... and relief valve piston, noting which way round it is fitted

21 With a new oil seal fitted, refit the oil pump over the end of the crankshaft, aligning the flats in the pump drive gear with the flats machined in the crankshaft (see illustrations). Note that new oil pumps are supplied with the oil seal already fitted, and a seal protector sleeve. The sleeve fits over the end of the crankshaft to protect the seal as the pump is fitted.

22 Install the oil pump bolts and tighten them to the specified torque.

23 Refit the oil pick-up tube to the pump/cylinder block using a new O-ring seal. Ensure the oil dipstick guide tube is correctly refitted.

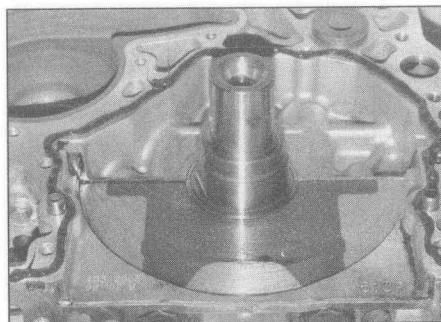
24 Refit the Woodruff key to the crankshaft, and slide the crankshaft sprocket into place.

25 The remainder of refitting is a reversal of removal.

### 2.0 litre engines

26 Offer up the spacer plate (where fitted), then engage the pump sprocket with its drive chain, and seat the pump on the base of the cylinder block/crankcase. Refit the pump retaining bolts, and tighten them to the specified torque setting.

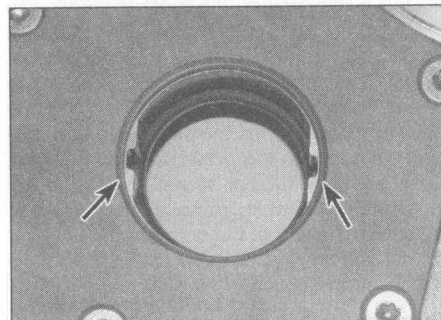
27 Refit the sump as described in Section 11.



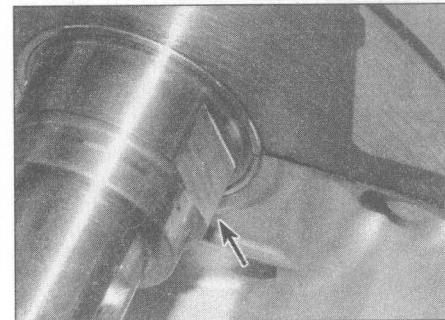
12.20 Apply a bead of sealant to the cylinder block mating surface



12.21a Fit a new oil seal . . .



12.21b . . . align the pump gear flats (arrowed) . . .



12.21c . . . with those of the crankshaft (arrowed)

### 13 Oil cooler – removal and refitting



#### Removal

1 Apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield.

#### 1.4 litre engine

2 The oil cooler is fitted to the front of the oil filter housing. Drain the coolant as described in Chapter 1B.

3 Drain the engine oil as described in Chapter 1B, or be prepared for fluid spillage.

4 Undo the bolts and remove the oil cooler. Recover the O-ring seals (see illustrations).

#### 2.0 litre engines

5 Drain the cooling system as described in Chapter 1B. Alternatively, clamp the oil cooler

coolant hoses directly above the cooler, and be prepared for some coolant loss as the hoses are disconnected.

6 Position a suitable container beneath the oil filter on the front of the engine. Unscrew the filter using an oil filter removal tool if necessary, and drain the oil into the container. If the oil filter is damaged or distorted during removal, it must be renewed. Given the low cost of a new oil filter relative to the cost of repairing the damage which could result if a re-used filter leaks, it is probably a good idea to renew the filter in any case.

7 Release the hose clips, and disconnect the coolant hoses from the oil cooler.

8 Unscrew the oil cooler/oil filter mounting bolt/stud from the cylinder block, and withdraw the cooler. Note the locating notch in the cooler flange, which fits over the lug on the cylinder block (see illustration). Discard

the oil cooler sealing ring; a new one must be used on refitting.

#### Refitting

#### 1.4 litre engine

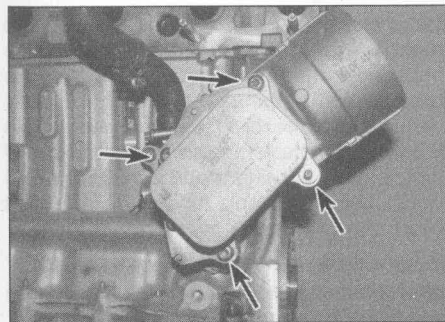
9 Fit new O-ring seals into the recesses in the oil filter housing, and refit the cooler. Tighten the bolts securely.

#### 2.0 litre engines

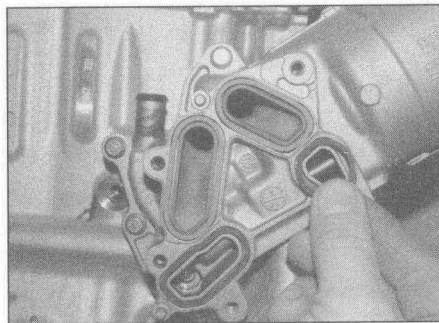
10 Fit a new sealing ring to the recess in the rear of the cooler, then offer the cooler to the cylinder block.

11 Ensure that the locating notch in the cooler flange is correctly engaged with the lug on the cylinder block. Apply locking fluid to the threads of the mounting bolt/stud, then insert it through the oil cooler and tighten securely.

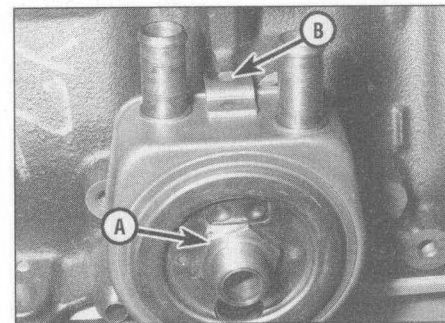
12 Fit the oil filter, then lower the vehicle to the ground.



13.4a Undo the bolts (arrowed), remove the oil cooler . . .

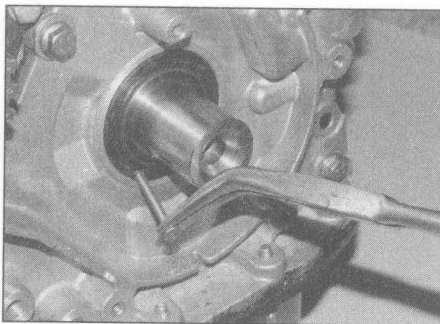


13.4b . . . and recover the O-ring seals



13.8 Oil cooler/oil filter mounting bolt (A) and locating notch (B)





**14.13** Drill a hole then use a self-tapping screw and pliers to extract the oil seal

**All engines**

**13** Refill or top-up the cooling system and engine oil level as described in Chapter 1B or *Weekly Checks* (as applicable). Start the engine, and check the oil cooler for signs of leakage.

**14 Oil seals – renewal**

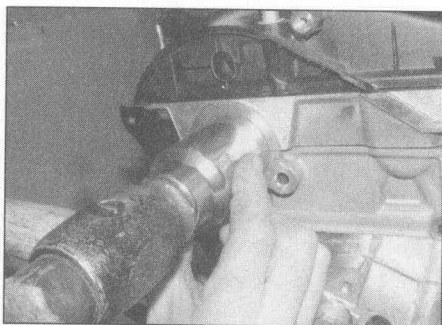


**Crankshaft right-hand oil seal**

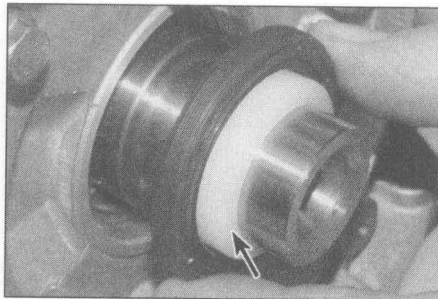
- 1** Remove the crankshaft sprocket as described in Section 8.
- 2** Measure and note the fitted depth of the oil seal.
- 3** Pull the oil seal from the housing using a hooked instrument. Alternatively, drill a small hole in the oil seal, and use a self-tapping screw and a pair of pliers to remove it (see illustration).
- 4** Clean the oil seal housing and the crankshaft sealing surface.
- 5** On 2.0 litre engines, dip the new oil seal in clean engine oil, and press it into the housing (open end first) to the previously-noted depth, using a suitable tube or socket.



**A piece of thin plastic or tape wound around the front of the crankshaft is useful to prevent damage to the oil seal as it is fitted.**



**14.21** Use a tube or socket to press the new seal into place

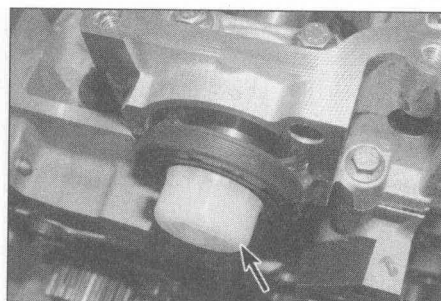


**14.14** The new oil seal comes with a protective sleeve (arrowed) which fits over the end of the crankshaft

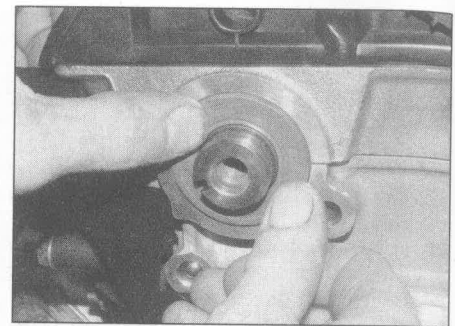
- 6** On 1.4 litre engines, the seal has a Teflon lip and must not be oiled or marked. The new seal should be supplied with a protector sleeve, which fits over the end of the crankshaft to prevent any damage to the seal lip. With the sleeve in place, press the seal (open end first) into the pump to the previously noted depth, using a suitable tube or socket.
- 7** Where applicable, remove the plastic or tape from the end of the crankshaft.
- 8** Refit the timing belt crankshaft sprocket as described in Section 8.

**Crankshaft left-hand oil seal**

- 9** Remove the flywheel/driveplate, as described in Section 16.
- 10** Measure and note the fitted depth of the oil seal.
- 11** Pull the oil seal from the housing using a hooked instrument. Alternatively, drill a small hole in the oil seal, and use a self-tapping screw and a pair of pliers to remove it (see illustration 14.3).
- 12** Clean the oil seal housing and the crankshaft sealing surface.
- 13** On 2.0 litre engines, dip the new oil seal in clean engine oil, and press it into the housing (open end first) to the previously-noted depth, using a suitable tube or socket. A piece of thin plastic or tape wound around the end of the crankshaft is useful to prevent damage to the oil seal as it is fitted.
- 14** On 1.4 litre engines, the seal has a Teflon lip and must not be oiled or marked. The new seal should be supplied with a protector sleeve, which fits over the end of the crankshaft to prevent any damage to the seal



**14.22** The new oil seal comes with a protective sleeve (arrowed) which fits over the end of the camshaft



**14.20** Locate the new seal in the cylinder head

lip (see illustration). With the sleeve in place, press the seal (open end first) into the housing to the previously noted depth, using a suitable tube or socket.

**15** Where applicable, remove the plastic or tape from the end of the crankshaft.

**16** Refit the flywheel/driveplate, as described in Section 16.

**Camshaft right-hand oil seal**

**17** Remove the camshaft sprocket (and hub where applicable) as described in Section 8. In principle there is no need to remove the timing belt completely, but remember that if the belt has been contaminated with oil, it must be renewed.

**18** Pull the oil seal from the housing using a hooked instrument. Alternatively, drill a small hole in the oil seal and use a self-tapping screw and a pair of pliers to remove it (see illustration 14.3).

**19** Clean the oil seal housing and the camshaft sealing surface.

**2.0 litre engines**

**20** Smear the new oil seal with clean engine oil, then fit it over the end of the camshaft, open end first (see illustration). A piece of thin plastic or tape wound around the front of the camshaft is useful to prevent damage to the oil seal as it is fitted.

**21** Press the seal into the housing until it is flush with the end face of the cylinder head. Use an M10 bolt (screwed into the end of the camshaft), washers and a suitable tube or socket that bears only on the outer edge of the seal to press it into position (see illustration).

**1.4 litre engines**

**22** The seal has a Teflon lip and must not be oiled or marked. The new seal should be supplied with a protector sleeve, which fits over the end of the camshaft to prevent any damage to the seal lip (see illustration). With the sleeve in place, press the seal (open end first) into the housing to the previously noted depth, using a suitable tube or socket which bears only of the outer edge of the seal.

**All engines**

**23** Refit the camshaft sprocket (and hub where applicable) as described in Section 8.

**24** Where necessary, fit a new timing belt with reference to Section 7.

## Camshaft left-hand oil seal

### 2.0 litre engines

**25** No oil seal is fitted to the left-hand end of the camshaft. The sealing is provided by an O-ring fitted to the endplate flange. The O-ring can be renewed after unbolting the plate from the cylinder head.

### 15 Oil pressure switch and level sensor – removal and refitting



### Removal

#### Oil pressure switch

**1** The oil pressure switch is located at the front of the cylinder block, adjacent to the oil dipstick guide tube (1.4 litre engines) or above the oil filter mounting (2.0 litre engines). Note that on some models, access to the switch may be improved if the vehicle is jacked up and supported on axle stands, then undo the screws and remove the engine undershield so that the switch can be reached from underneath (see *Jacking and vehicle support*).

**2** Remove the protective sleeve from the wiring plug (where applicable), then disconnect the wiring from the switch.

**3** Unscrew the switch from the cylinder block, and recover the sealing washer (see illustrations). Be prepared for oil spillage, and if the switch is to be left removed from the engine for any length of time, plug the hole in the cylinder block.

#### Oil level sensor

**4** The oil level sensor is located at the rear of the cylinder block. Jack up the front of the vehicle and support it securely on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield.

**5** Reach up between the driveshaft and the cylinder block and disconnect the sensor wiring plug (see illustration).

**6** Using an open-ended spanner, unscrew the sensor and withdraw it from position. On 2.0 litre engines, discard the sealing washer, a new one must be fitted.

### Refitting

#### Oil pressure switch

**7** Examine the sealing washer for any signs of damage or deterioration, and if necessary renew.

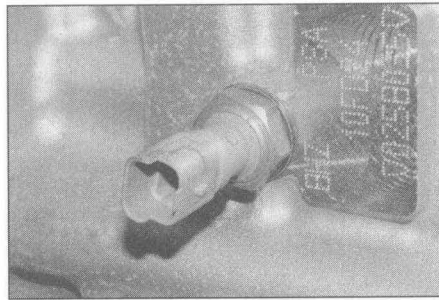
**8** Refit the switch, complete with washer, and tighten it securely.

**9** Refit the engine undershield, and lower the vehicle to the ground.

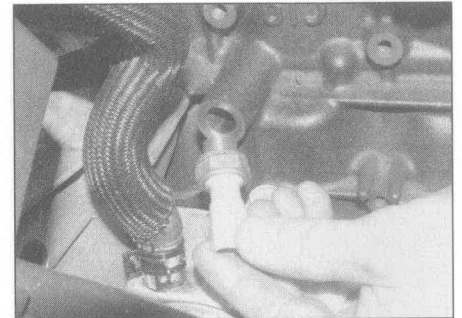
#### Oil level sensor

**10** Smear a little silicone sealant on the threads and refit the sensor to the cylinder block, tightening it securely. On 2.0 litre models renew the sealing washer prior to refitting the sensor.

**11** Reconnect the sensor wiring plug.



**15.3a** On 1.4 litre engines, the oil pressure switch is on the front face of the cylinder block



**15.3b** Oil pressure switch (2.0 litre engine)

**12** Refit the engine undershield, and lower the vehicle to the ground.

### 16 Flywheel/driveplate – removal, inspection and refitting



### Flywheel removal

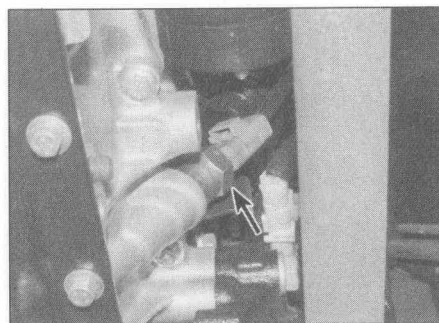
**1** Remove the transmission as described in Chapter 7A, then remove the clutch assembly as described in Chapter 6.

**2** Prevent the flywheel from turning by locking the ring gear teeth (see illustration 5.2). Alternatively, bolt a strap between the flywheel and the cylinder block/crankcase. Do not attempt to lock the flywheel in position using the crankshaft pulley locking tool described in Section 3. On 1.4 litre engines, insert a 12 mm diameter rod or drill bit through the hole in the flywheel cover casting, and into a slot in the flywheel (see illustration 5.3)

**3** Make alignment marks between the flywheel and crankshaft to aid refitment. Slacken and remove the flywheel retaining bolts, and remove the flywheel from the end of the crankshaft. Be careful not to drop it; it is heavy. If the flywheel locating dowel (where fitted) is a loose fit in the crankshaft end, remove it and store it with the flywheel for safe-keeping. Discard the flywheel bolts; new ones must be used on refitting.

### Driveplate removal

**4** Remove the transmission as described in



**15.5** Oil level sensor (arrowed)

Chapter 7B. Lock the driveplate as described in paragraph 2 of this Section. Mark the relationship between the torque converter plate and the driveplate, and slacken all the driveplate retaining bolts.

**5** Remove the retaining bolts, along with the torque converter plate and the two shims (one fitted on each side of the torque converter plate). Note that the shims are of different thickness, the thicker one being on the outside of the torque converter plate. Discard the driveplate retaining bolts; new ones must be used on refitting.

**6** Remove the driveplate from the end of the crankshaft. If the locating dowel is a loose fit in the crankshaft end, remove it and store it with the driveplate for safe-keeping.

### Inspection

**7** On models with manual transmission, examine the flywheel for scoring of the clutch face, and for wear or chipping of the ring gear teeth. If the clutch face is scored, the flywheel may be surface-ground, but renewal is preferable. Seek the advice of a Peugeot dealer or engine reconditioning specialist to see if machining is possible. If the ring gear is worn or damaged, the flywheel must be renewed, as it is not possible to renew the ring gear separately.

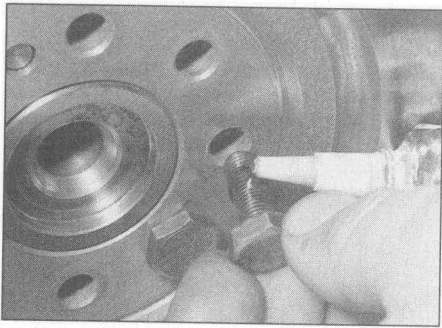
**8** On models with automatic transmission, check the torque converter driveplate carefully for signs of distortion. Look for any hairline cracks around the bolt holes or radiating outwards from the centre, and inspect the ring gear teeth for signs of wear or chipping. If any sign of wear or damage is found, the driveplate must be renewed.

### Flywheel refitting

**9** Clean the mating surfaces of the flywheel and crankshaft. Remove any remaining locking compound from the threads of the crankshaft holes, using the correct size of tap, if available.



**HAYNES** **HiNT** If a suitable tap is not available, cut two slots along the threads of one of the old flywheel bolts, and use the bolt to remove the locking compound from the threads.



**16.10** If the new bolts are not supplied with their threads precoated, apply thread-locking compound to them . . .

**10** If the new flywheel retaining bolts are not supplied with their threads already precoated, apply a suitable thread-locking compound to the threads of each bolt (see illustration).

**DW10ATED with dual mass flywheel**

**11** The dual mass flywheel is designed to reduce harshness and vibration in the action of the engine, clutch and transmission. With this type of flywheel, two flywheel centralising tools are needed (0216-L – available from Peugeot dealers). These are screwed into two opposite flywheel bolt holes in the crankshaft. As the tools are screwed down, their conical shape centralises the flywheel with regard to the crankshaft.

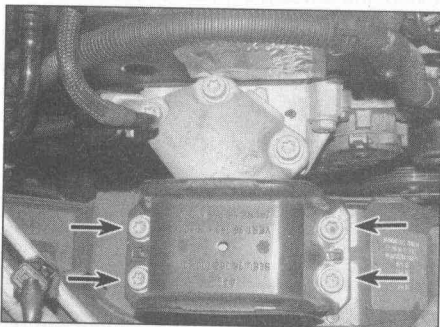
**12** With the flywheel centralised, fit the new bolts into the remaining flywheel holes, then lock the flywheel using the same method employed on dismantling, and tighten the bolts to the specified torque.

**13** Remove the two centralising tools, fit the new bolts and tighten them to the specified torque.

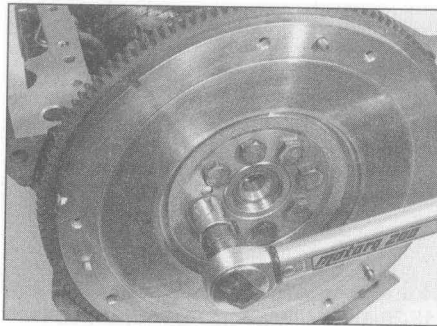
**All other engines**

**14** Ensure that the locating dowel is in position. Offer up the flywheel, locating it on the dowel (where fitted) and fit the new retaining bolts. Where no locating dowel is fitted, align the previously-made marks to ensure the flywheel is refitted in its original position.

**15** Lock the flywheel using the method employed on dismantling, and tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque (see illustration).



**17.7** Undo the bolts (arrowed) and remove the engine mounting



**16.15** . . . then refit the flywheel and tighten the bolts to the specified torque

**All engines**

**16** Refit the clutch as described in Chapter 6. Remove the flywheel locking tool, and refit the transmission as described in Chapter 7A.

**Driveplate refitting**

**17** Carry out the operations described above in paragraphs 9 and 10, substituting 'driveplate' for all references to the flywheel.

**18** Locate the driveplate on its locating dowel.

**19** Offer up the torque converter plate, with the thinner shim positioned behind the plate and the thicker shim on the outside, and align the marks made prior to removal.

**20** Fit the new retaining bolts, then lock the driveplate using the method employed on dismantling. Tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque wrench setting.

**21** Remove the driveplate locking tool, and refit the transmission (see Chapter 7B).

**17 Engine/transmission mountings – inspection and renewal**



**Inspection**

**1** If improved access is required, firmly apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the car and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield.

**2** Check the mounting rubbers to see if they

are cracked, hardened or separated from the metal at any point; renew the mounting if any such damage or deterioration is evident.

**3** Check that all the mountings' fasteners are securely tightened; use a torque wrench to check if possible.

**4** Using a large screwdriver or a crowbar, check for wear in each mounting by carefully levering against it to check for free play. Where this is not possible, enlist the aid of an assistant to move the engine/transmission back-and-forth, or from side-to-side, while you watch the mounting. While some free play is to be expected even from new components, excessive wear should be obvious. If excessive free play is found, check first that the fasteners are correctly secured, then renew any worn components as described below.

**Renewal**

**Right-hand mounting**

**5** Release all the relevant hoses and wiring from their retaining clips. Place the hoses/wiring clear of the mounting so that the removal procedure is not hindered. Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield.

**6** Place a jack beneath the engine, with a block of wood on the jack head. Raise the jack until it is supporting the weight of the engine.

**7** Undo the bolts securing the engine mounting to the body and the support bracket (see illustration).

**8** If required, undo the bolts/nuts securing the support bracket to the cylinder head/cylinder block.

**9** Check all components carefully for signs of wear or damage, and renew as necessary.

**10** Where removed, refit the support bracket to the cylinder head, and tighten the bolts securely.

**11** Refit the mount to the body and support bracket, then tighten the bolts to the specified torque.

**12** Remove the jack from underneath the engine.

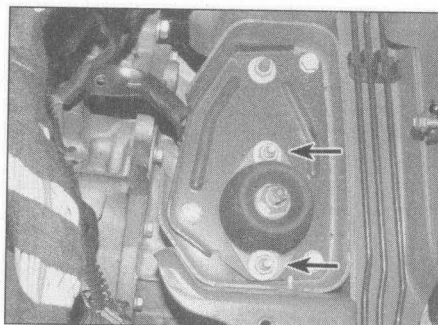
**Left-hand mounting**

**13** Remove the battery and battery tray (see Chapter 5A). Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield.

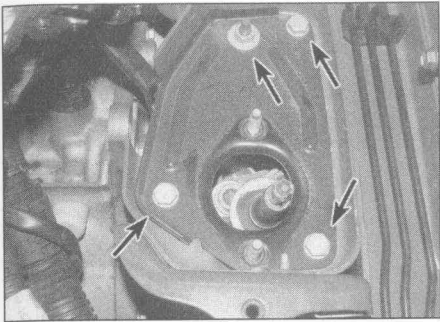
**14** Place a jack beneath the transmission, with a block of wood on the jack head. Raise the jack until it is supporting the weight of the transmission.

**15** Slacken and remove the centre nut and washer from the left-hand mounting, then undo the nuts securing the mounting in position and remove it from the engine compartment. If required, undo the bolts/nut and remove the support bracket (see illustrations).

**16** If necessary, slide the spacer (where fitted) off the mounting stud, then unscrew the stud from the top of the transmission housing, and remove it along with its washer (see illustration). If the mounting stud is tight, a



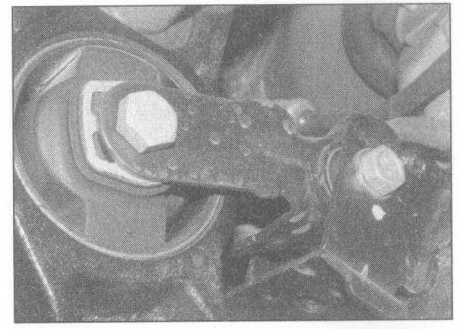
**17.15a** Undo the centre nut followed by the two mounting nuts (arrowed)



**17.15b** Undo the nut/bolts (arrowed) and remove the mounting support bracket



**17.16** Unscrew the mounting stud and recover the washer



**17.22** Lower engine movement limiter

universal stud extractor can be used to unscrew it.

**17** Check all components carefully for signs of wear or damage, and renew as necessary.

**18** Clean the threads of the mounting stud, and apply a coat of thread-locking compound to its threads. Refit the stud and washer to the top of the transmission, and tighten it securely.

**19** Slide the spacer (where fitted) onto the mounting stud, then refit the rubber mounting. Tighten both the mounting-to-body bolts and the mounting centre nut to their specified torque settings, and remove the jack from underneath the transmission.

**20** Refit the battery and tray as described in Chapter 5A.

#### Lower engine movement limiter

**21** If not already done, chock the rear wheels, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it securely on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield.

**22** Unscrew and remove the bolt securing the movement limiter link to the driveshaft intermediate bearing housing (see illustration).

**23** Remove the bolt securing the link to the subframe. Withdraw the link.

**24** To remove the intermediate bearing housing assembly it will first be necessary to remove the right-hand driveshaft as described in Chapter 8.

**25** With the driveshaft removed, undo the retaining bolts and remove the bearing housing from the rear of the cylinder block.

**26** Check carefully for signs of wear or damage on all components, and renew them where necessary. The rubber bush fitted to the bearing housing is available as a separate item (at the time of writing), and can be pressed out of, and back into, place.

**27** On reassembly, fit the bearing housing assembly to the rear of the cylinder block, and tighten its retaining bolts securely. Refit the driveshaft as described in Chapter 8.

**28** Refit the movement limiter link, and tighten both its bolts to their specified torque settings. Refit the engine undershield.

**29** Lower the vehicle to the ground.

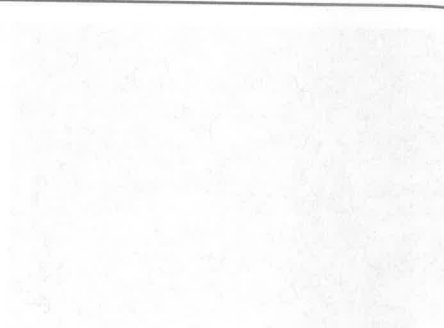


Figure 1: Micrograph of a granular biological specimen.

Figure 2: Micrograph of a granular biological specimen with dark spots.

Figure 3: Micrograph of a granular biological specimen with light structures.

The first micrograph shows a dense, granular texture. The granules are small and uniform in size, packed closely together. The overall appearance is that of a fine, uniform powder or a dense cellular structure.

The second micrograph shows a granular texture with some darker spots. These spots are irregular in shape and size, scattered throughout the granular matrix. They may represent inclusions, impurities, or specific cellular components.

The third micrograph shows a granular texture with distinct, lighter-colored structures. These structures are more prominent than the surrounding granules, appearing as larger, more defined units. They could be specialized cells or specific protein aggregates.

These observations suggest that the specimen has a complex, granular morphology. The presence of different features in the three micrographs indicates a heterogeneous structure. Further analysis, such as electron microscopy or spectroscopy, would be needed to identify the specific components and their arrangement.

The granular nature of the specimen is consistent with a biological or synthetic material composed of small particles. The darker spots in the second micrograph might indicate regions of higher density or different chemical composition. The lighter structures in the third micrograph could be sites of active processes or specific functional groups.

The overall appearance of the granules is uniform, suggesting a well-defined synthesis or biological process. The presence of these distinct features provides valuable information about the internal structure and potential function of the material. The granular texture is a key characteristic of the specimen.

The granular texture is a defining characteristic of the specimen. It is composed of small, uniform particles that are densely packed. This morphology is typical of many biological and synthetic materials. The uniformity of the granules suggests a controlled process of formation.

The presence of darker spots in the second micrograph is a notable feature. These spots are irregular and scattered, indicating a non-uniform distribution of certain components. This could be due to the presence of impurities or specific structural defects within the granular matrix.






The lighter-colored structures in the third micrograph are another significant feature. These structures are more prominent and distinct than the surrounding granules. They may represent specialized cells or specific protein aggregates, which could be of interest for further study.

# Chapter 2 Part D: Engine removal and overhaul procedures

## Contents

Crankshaft – inspection .....	13	Engine overhaul – general information .....	2
Crankshaft – refitting .....	17	Engine overhaul – reassembly sequence .....	15
Crankshaft – removal .....	10	Engine removal – methods and precautions .....	3
Cylinder block/crankcase – cleaning and inspection .....	11	General information .....	1
Cylinder head – dismantling .....	6	Main and big-end bearings – inspection .....	14
Cylinder head – reassembly .....	8	Piston/connecting rod assembly – inspection .....	12
Cylinder head and valves – cleaning and inspection .....	7	Piston/connecting rod assembly – refitting .....	18
Engine – initial start-up after overhaul .....	19	Piston/connecting rod assembly – removal .....	9
Engine – removal and refitting .....	4	Piston rings – refitting .....	16
Engine overhaul – dismantling sequence .....	5		

## Degrees of difficulty

<p><b>Easy</b>, suitable for novice with little experience</p> 	<p><b>Fairly easy</b>, suitable for beginner with some experience</p> 	<p><b>Fairly difficult</b>, suitable for competent DIY mechanic</p> 	<p><b>Difficult</b>, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic</p> 	<p><b>Very difficult</b>, suitable for expert DIY or professional</p> 
--	---	---	--	---

## Specifications

### Cylinder head

Maximum gasket face distortion:	
All engines .....	0.05 mm
New cylinder head height:	
Petrol engines:	
1.4 litre .....	111.20 mm
1.6 litre .....	N/A
2.0 litre .....	138.00 mm
Diesel engines:	
1.4 litre .....	88.00 mm
2.0 litre .....	133.00 mm
Minimum cylinder head height after machining:	
Petrol engines:	
1.4 litre .....	111.00 mm
1.6 litre .....	N/A
2.0 litre .....	137.70 mm
Diesel engines:	
1.4 litre .....	87.60 mm
2.0 litre .....	132.80 mm
Valve head-to-cylinder head measurement – diesel engines:	
1.4 litre .....	1.25 mm maximum
2.0 litre .....	0.20 mm maximum

## 2D•2 Engine removal and overhaul procedures

### Valves

Valve head diameter:	Inlet	Exhaust
Petrol engines:		
1.4 litre	36.7 mm	29.4 mm
1.6 litre	N/A	N/A
2.0 litre	33.3 mm	29.0 mm
Diesel engines:		
1.4 litre	32.8 mm	30.3 mm
2.0 litre	35.6 mm	33.8 mm
Valve stem diameter:		
Petrol engines:		
1.4 litre	6.965 to 6.980 mm	6.945 to 6.960 mm
1.6 litre	N/A	N/A
2.0 litre	5.985 to 5.970 mm	5.975 to 5.960 mm
Diesel engines:		
1.4 litre	N/A	N/A
2.0 litre	N/A	N/A

### Cylinder block

Cylinder bore diameter:	
Petrol engines:	
1.4 litre	75.00 mm (nominal)
1.6 litre	78.50 mm (nominal)
2.0 litre	85.00 mm (nominal)
Diesel engines:	
1.4 litre	73.70 mm (nominal)
2.0 litre	85.00 mm (nominal)
Liner protrusion – 1.4 litre petrol engine:	
Standard	0.03 to 0.10 mm
Maximum difference between any two liners	0.05 mm

### Pistons

Piston diameter:	
Petrol engines:	
1.4 litre	74.950 mm (nominal)
1.6 litre	78.455 mm (nominal)
2.0 litre	84.948 mm (nominal)
Diesel engines:	
1.4 litre	73.520 mm (nominal)
2.0 litre	84.210 mm (nominal)

Check with your Peugeot dealer or engine specialist regarding piston oversizes

### Crankshaft

Endfloat:	
Petrol engines:	
1.4 litre	0.07 to 0.27 mm
1.6 litre	0.07 to 0.27 mm
2.0 litre	0.07 to 0.32 mm
Diesel engines:	
1.4 litre	0.10 to 0.30 mm
2.0 litre	0.07 to 0.32 mm
Main bearing journal diameter:	
Petrol engines:	
1.4 litre	49.965 to 49.981 mm
1.6 litre	49.965 to 49.981 mm
2.0 litre	60.00 mm (nominal)
Diesel engines:	
1.4 litre	49.962 to 49.981 mm
2.0 litre	59.977 to 60.000 mm
Big-end bearing journal diameter:	
Petrol engines:	
1.4 litre	44.975 to 44.991 mm
1.6 litre	44.975 to 44.991 mm
2.0 litre	60.00 mm (nominal)
Diesel engines:	
1.4 litre	44.975 to 44.991 mm
2.0 litre	49.980 to 50.000 mm

**Piston rings**

End gaps:

Petrol engines:

Top compression ring .....	0.20 to 0.45 mm
Second compression ring .....	0.30 to 0.50 mm
Oil control ring .....	0.30 to 0.50 mm

Diesel engines:

1.4 litre:

Top compression ring .....	0.20 to 0.35 mm
Second compression ring .....	0.20 to 0.40 mm
Oil control ring .....	0.80 to 1.00mm

2.0 litre:

Top compression ring .....	0.20 to 0.35 mm
Second compression ring .....	0.80 to 1.00 mm
Oil control ring .....	0.25 to 0.50 mm

**Torque wrench settings**

**1.4 and 1.6 litre (TU series) engines**

Refer to Chapter 2A Specifications

**2.0 litre (EW series) engines**

Refer to Chapter 2B Specifications

**Diesel engines**

Refer to Chapter 2C Specifications

**1 General information**

Included in this Part of Chapter 2 are details of removing the engine/transmission from the car and general overhaul procedures for the cylinder head, cylinder block/crankcase and all other engine internal components.

The information given ranges from advice concerning preparation for an overhaul and the purchase of replacement parts, to detailed step-by-step procedures covering removal, inspection, renovation and refitting of engine internal components.

After Section 5, all instructions are based on the assumption that the engine has been removed from the car. For information concerning in-car engine repair, as well as the removal and refitting of those external components necessary for full overhaul, refer to Part A, B or C of this Chapter, as applicable and to Section 5. Ignore any preliminary dismantling operations described in Parts A, B or C that are no longer relevant once the engine has been removed from the car.

Apart from torque wrench settings, which are given at the beginning of Parts A, B and C, all specifications relating to engine overhaul are at the beginning of this Part of Chapter 2.

**2 Engine overhaul – general information**

**1** It is not always easy to determine when, or if, an engine should be completely overhauled, as a number of factors must be considered.

**2** High mileage is not necessarily an

indication that an overhaul is needed, while low mileage does not preclude the need for an overhaul. Frequency of servicing is probably the most important consideration. An engine which has had regular and frequent oil and filter changes, as well as other required maintenance, should give many thousands of miles of reliable service. Conversely, a neglected engine may require an overhaul very early in its life.

**3** Excessive oil consumption is an indication that piston rings, valve seals and/or valve guides are in need of attention. Make sure that oil leaks are not responsible before deciding that the rings and/or guides are worn. Perform a compression test, as described in Part A, B or C of this Chapter (as applicable), to determine the likely cause of the problem.

**4** Check the oil pressure with a gauge fitted in place of the oil pressure switch, and compare it with that specified. If it is extremely low, the main and big-end bearings, and/or the oil pump, are probably worn out.

**5** Loss of power, rough running, knocking or metallic engine noises, excessive valve gear noise, and high fuel consumption may also point to the need for an overhaul, especially if they are all present at the same time. If a complete service does not remedy the situation, major mechanical work is the only solution.

**6** A full engine overhaul involves restoring all internal parts to the specification of a new engine. During a complete overhaul, the pistons and the piston rings are renewed, and the cylinder bores are reconditioned. New main and big-end bearings are generally fitted; if necessary, the crankshaft may be reground, to compensate for wear in the journals. The valves are also serviced as well, since they are usually in less-than-perfect condition at this point. Always pay careful

attention to the condition of the oil pump when overhauling the engine, and renew it if there is any doubt as to its serviceability. The end result should be an as-new engine that will give many trouble-free miles.

**7** Critical cooling system components such as the hoses, thermostat and water pump should be renewed when an engine is overhauled. The radiator should be checked carefully, to ensure that it is not clogged or leaking. Also, it is a good idea to renew the oil pump whenever the engine is overhauled.

**8** Before beginning the engine overhaul, read through the entire procedure, to familiarise yourself with the scope and requirements of the job. Overhauling an engine is not difficult if you follow carefully all of the instructions, have the necessary tools and equipment, and pay close attention to all specifications. It can, however, be time-consuming. Plan on the car being off the road for a minimum of two weeks, especially if parts must be taken to an engineering works for repair or reconditioning. Check on the availability of parts and make sure that any necessary special tools and equipment are obtained in advance. Most work can be done with typical hand tools, although a number of precision measuring tools are required for inspecting parts to determine if they must be renewed. Often the engineering works will handle the inspection of parts and offer advice concerning reconditioning and renewal.

**9** Always wait until the engine has been completely dismantled, and until all components (especially the cylinder block/crankcase and the crankshaft) have been inspected, before deciding what service and repair operations must be performed by an engineering works. The condition of these components will be the major factor to consider when determining whether to



overhaul the original engine, or to buy a reconditioned unit. Do not, therefore, purchase parts or have overhaul work done on other components until they have been thoroughly inspected. As a general rule, time is the primary cost of an overhaul, so it does not pay to fit worn or sub-standard parts.

**10** As a final note, to ensure maximum life and minimum trouble from a reconditioned engine, everything must be assembled with care, in a spotlessly-clean environment.

### 3 Engine removal – methods and precautions

**1** If you have decided that the engine must be removed for overhaul or major repair work, several preliminary steps should be taken.

**2** Locating a suitable place to work is extremely important. Adequate work space, along with storage space for the car, will be needed. If a workshop or garage is not available, at the very least, a flat, level, clean work surface is required.

**3** Cleaning the engine compartment and engine/transmission before beginning the removal procedure will help keep tools clean and organised.

**4** An engine hoist or A-frame will also be necessary. Make sure the equipment is rated in excess of the weight of the engine. Safety is of primary importance, considering the potential hazards involved in lifting the engine/transmission out of the car.

**5** If this is the first time you have removed an engine, an assistant should ideally be available. Advice and aid from someone more experienced would also be helpful. There are many instances when one person cannot simultaneously perform all of the operations required when lifting the engine out of the vehicle.

**6** Plan the operation ahead of time. Before starting work, arrange for the hire of or obtain all of the tools and equipment you will need. Some of the equipment necessary to perform engine/transmission removal and installation safely and with relative ease (in addition to an engine hoist) is as follows: a heavy duty trolley jack, complete sets of spanners and sockets (see *Tools and working facilities*), wooden blocks, and plenty of rags and cleaning solvent for mopping-up spilled oil, coolant and fuel. If the hoist must be hired, make sure that you arrange for it in advance, and perform all of the operations possible without it beforehand. This will save you money and time.

**7** Plan for the car to be out of use for quite a while. An engineering works will be required to perform some of the work which the do-it-yourselfer cannot accomplish without special equipment. These places often have a busy schedule, so it would be a good idea to consult them before removing the engine, in order to accurately estimate the amount of time required to rebuild or repair components that may need work.

**8** Always be extremely careful when removing and refitting the engine/transmission. Serious

injury can result from careless actions. Plan ahead and take your time, and a job of this nature, although major, can be accomplished successfully.

**Note:** Such is the complexity of the power unit arrangement on these vehicles, and the variations that may be encountered according to model and optional equipment fitted, that the following should be regarded as a guide to the work involved, rather than a step-by-step procedure. Where differences are encountered, or additional component disconnection or removal is necessary, make notes of the work involved as an aid to refitting.

### 4 Engine – removal and refitting

**Note:** This is an involved operation. Read through the procedure thoroughly before starting work, and ensure that adequate lifting tackle and jacking/support equipment is available. Make notes during dismantling to ensure that all wiring/hoses and brackets are correctly repositioned and routed on refitting.

#### Removal

**1** Remove the battery and battery support tray (see Chapter 5A).

**2** Apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove both front roadwheels. Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield.

**3** Where fitted, remove the plastic covers from the top of the engine. On 1.4 litre diesel engines, the engine cover simply pulls up from place. Other covers are retained by either plastic nut type fasteners or plastic expanding rivets. Rotate the nuts 90° anti-clockwise, or push in the centre pins a little and prise up the complete rivets.

**4** Unbolt the brake fluid reservoir, and move it to one side (see illustration).

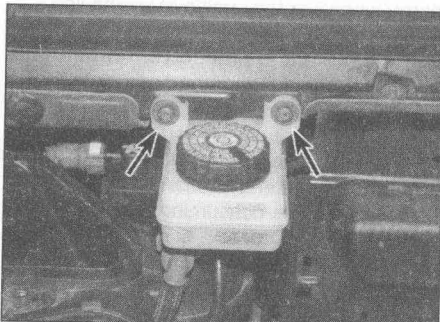
**5** To improve access, remove the bonnet as described in Chapter 11.

**6** Remove the wiper arms (Chapter 12), and remove the plastic scuttle trim and crossmember. The trim is retained by an expanding plastic rivet at each end, then pull up each end of the trim and slide the trim down and off the lower edge of the windscreen. The crossmember is secured by one screw at each end, and expanding plastic rivets securing it to the sound insulation material (see illustrations).

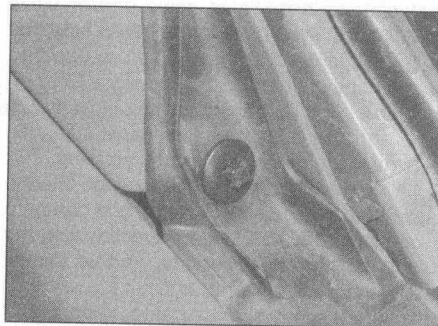
**7** Drain the cooling system with reference to Chapter 1A or 1B.

**8** Drain the transmission oil/fluid as described in Chapter 7A or 7B. Refit the drain and filler plugs, and tighten them to their specified torque settings.

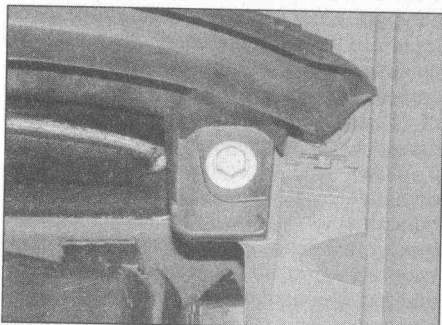
**9** If the engine is to be dismantled, drain the engine oil and remove the oil filter as described in Chapter 1A or 1B. Clean and refit the drain plug, tightening it securely.



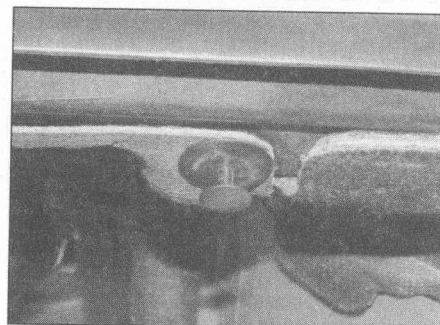
**4.4** Undo the bolts (arrowed) and move the master cylinder upper reservoir to one side



**4.6a** The scuttle trim is secured at each end by a plastic expanding rivet



**4.6b** The scuttle crossmember is bolted at each end . . .



**4.6c** . . . and to the sound insulation material by plastic expanding rivets

**10** Push the centre pins in a little, then prise out the complete plastic expanding rivets and remove the front wheel arch liners from both sides.

**11** Refer to Chapter 8 and remove both front driveshafts.

**12** Remove the front bumper and bumper bar as described in Chapter 11.

**13** Refer to Chapter 1A or 1B and remove the auxiliary drivebelt.

**14** Remove the cooling fan and front panel assembly as described in Chapter 3. On air conditioned models, tie the condenser to one side. **Do not** disconnect the refrigerant pipes.

**15** Undo the four nuts (two each side) and remove the front panel lower crossmember (see illustration).

**16** On 2.0 litre diesel engines with an intercooler, remove the air duct leading from the turbocharger to the intercooler.

**17** Remove the air cleaner housing and ducting as described in Chapter 4A or 4B.

**18** Remove the exhaust system with reference to Chapter 4A or 4B.

**19** Note their fitted positions and harness routing, then disconnect all wiring plugs from the transmission. If necessary label the connectors as they are unplugged. On diesel models, undo the nut and remove the heater control box (still connected) from the front of the plastic electrical box in the front left-hand corner of the engine compartment.

**20** Disconnect the engine wiring harness plugs at the fusebox or ECM depending on model (see illustration). Release the wiring harness from the retaining clips on the timing cover at the right-hand end of the engine (where applicable).

**21** Disconnect the hose from the vacuum pump on the left-hand end of the cylinder head (diesel models) or the brake servo unit vacuum pipe (petrol models) – see Chapter 9.

**22** Disconnect the accelerator cable (where fitted) with reference to Chapter 4A or 4B.

**23** Disconnect the fuel feed and return hoses. Plug the end of the hoses to prevent dirt ingress.

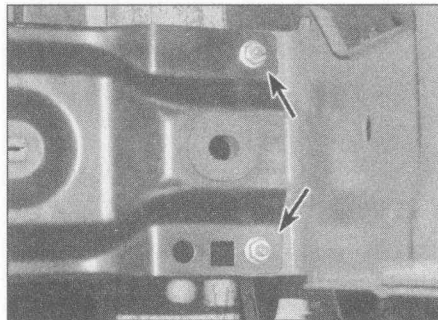
**24** Disconnect the selector cable(s) from the transmission as described in Chapter 7A or 7B.

**25** On manual transmission models, unbolt the clutch slave cylinder, then tie it to one side, without disconnecting the fluid pipe (see Chapter 6). Use an elastic band around the cylinder to prevent the piston from coming out.

**26** From underneath the vehicle, slacken and remove the nuts and bolts securing the rear engine mounting connecting link to the mounting assembly and subframe, and remove the connecting link. Refer to Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C.

**27** On 2.0 litre diesel models, remove the torque reaction link from under the centre of the engine/transmission assembly.

**28** On models with air conditioning, refer to Chapter 3 and unbolt the compressor from the engine. **Do not** disconnect the refrigerant lines. Support or tie the compressor to one side.



**4.15** Front panel lower crossmember nuts (arrowed)

**29** Using a hoist attached to the lifting eyes on the cylinder head, take the weight of the engine and transmission.

**30** Remove the right-hand and left-hand engine mountings and support brackets as described in Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C.

**31** Completely pull out the wire retaining clips and disconnect the heater hoses at the engine compartment bulkhead.

**32** Make a final check to ensure all wiring, hoses and brackets that would prevent the removal of the assembly have been disconnected.

**33** Move the engine/transmission forwards and out from the front of the vehicle. Enlist the help of an assistant during this procedure, as it may be necessary to tilt and twist the assembly slightly to clear the body panels and adjacent components. Move the unit clear of the car and lower it to the ground

### Separation

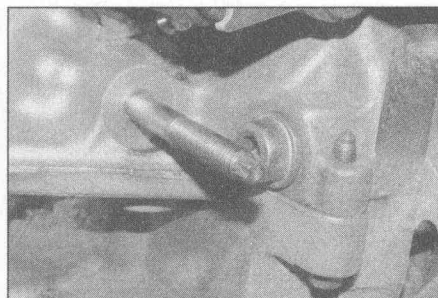
**34** With the engine/transmission assembly removed, support the assembly on suitable blocks of wood on a workbench (or failing that, on a clean area of the workshop floor).

**35** Undo the retaining bolts, and remove the flywheel lower cover plate (where fitted) from the transmission.

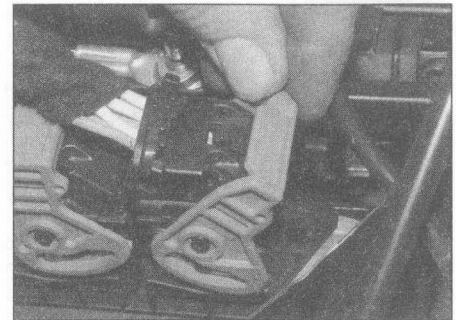
**36** Slacken and remove the retaining bolts, and remove the starter motor from the transmission.

**37** Disconnect any remaining wiring connectors at the transmission, then move the main engine wiring harness to one side.

**38** On automatic transmission models, locate the access hole at the lower rear of the



**4.39** On 1.4 litre diesel models, the stud must be removed to access the front transmission-to-engine bolt



**4.20** Disconnect the ECM wiring plugs

cylinder block, then turn the crankshaft by means of a socket on the crankshaft pulley bolt, until one of the three torque converter retaining nuts is accessible through the access hole. Undo the accessible torque converter bolt, then turn the crankshaft as necessary and undo the remaining two bolts.

**39** Ensure that both engine and transmission are adequately supported, then slacken and remove the remaining bolts securing the transmission housing to the engine. Note the correct fitted positions of each bolt (and the relevant brackets) as they are removed, to use as a reference on refitting. On 1.4 litre diesel models, the left-hand catalytic converter mounting stud must be removed to access the front transmission-to-engine bolt (see illustration).

**40** Carefully withdraw the transmission from the engine, ensuring that the weight of the transmission is not allowed to hang on the input shaft while it is engaged with the clutch friction disc (manual transmission models) or that the torque converter does not slip from the input shaft (automatic transmission models).

**41** If they are loose, remove the locating dowels from the engine or transmission, and keep them in a safe place.

### Refitting

**42** If the engine and transmission have not been separated, perform the operations described below from paragraph 49 onwards.

**43** Apply a smear of high melting-point grease (Peugeot recommend the use of Molykote BR2 plus – available from your Peugeot dealer) to the splines of the transmission input shaft. Do not apply too much, otherwise there is a possibility of the grease contaminating the clutch friction disc.

**44** Ensure that the locating dowels are correctly positioned in the engine or transmission.

**45** Carefully offer the transmission to the engine, until the locating dowels are engaged. On manual transmission models, ensure that the weight of the transmission is not allowed to hang on the input shaft as it is engaged with the clutch friction disc. On automatic transmission models, ensure the torque converter studs engage correctly with the corresponding holes in the driveplate.

**46** Refit the transmission housing-to-engine bolts, ensuring that all the necessary brackets are correctly positioned, and tighten them securely.

**47** Refit the starter motor, and securely tighten its retaining bolts.

**48** Refit the lower flywheel cover plate (where fitted) to the transmission, and securely tighten the bolts.

**49** Reconnect the hoist and lifting tackle to the engine lifting brackets. With the aid of an assistant, lift the assembly into the engine compartment, taking care not to damage surrounding components.

**50** Refit the right-hand engine mounting and support bracket, but leave the bolts finger-tight at this stage.

**51** Working on the left-hand mounting, refit the rubber mounting to the body over the stud, and tighten the bolts, then refit the centre nut and washer and finger-tighten.

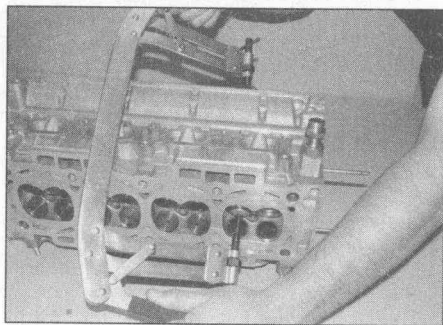
**52** Remove the hoist.

**53** From underneath the vehicle, refit the rear mounting connecting link and finger-tighten the bolts.

**54** Rock the engine to settle it on its mountings, then go around and tighten all the mounting nuts and bolts to their specified torque settings.

**55** The remainder of the refitting procedure is a direct reversal of the removal sequence, with reference to the relevant chapters and noting the following points:

- a) Ensure that the wiring loom is correctly routed and retained by all the relevant retaining clips; all connectors should be correctly and securely reconnected.
- b) Prior to refitting the driveshafts to the transmission, renew the driveshaft oil seals as described in Chapter 7A or 7B.
- c) Ensure that all coolant hoses are correctly reconnected, and securely retained by their retaining clips.
- d) Refill the engine and transmission with the correct quantity and type of lubricant, as described in Chapters 1A or 1B, and 7A or 7B.
- e) Refill the cooling system as described in Chapter 1A or 1B.
- f) Initialise the engine management ECU as follows. Start the engine and run to normal temperature. Carry out a road test



**6.6a** Compress the valve spring using a spring compressor . . .

during which the following procedure should be made. Engage third gear and stabilise the engine at 1000 rpm. Now accelerate fully to 3500 rpm.

## 5 Engine overhaul – dismantling sequence

**1** It is much easier to dismantle and work on the engine if it is mounted on a portable engine stand. These stands can often be hired from a tool hire shop. Before the engine is mounted on a stand, the flywheel/driveplate should be removed, so that the stand bolts can be tightened into the end of the cylinder block/crankcase.

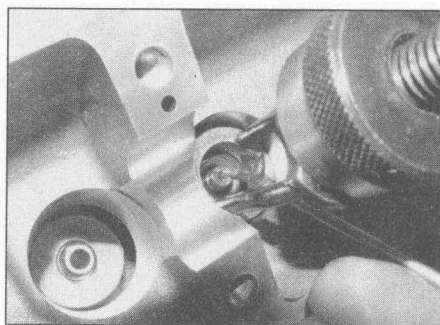
**2** If a stand is not available, it is possible to dismantle the engine with it blocked up on a sturdy workbench, or on the floor. Be extra careful not to tip or drop the engine when working without a stand.

**3** If you are going to obtain a reconditioned engine, all the external components must be removed first, to be transferred to the replacement engine (just as they will if you are doing a complete engine overhaul yourself). These components include the following:

- a) Ancillary unit mounting brackets (oil filter, starter, alternator, power steering pump, etc)
- b) Thermostat and housing (Chapter 3).
- c) Dipstick tube/sensor.
- d) All electrical switches and sensors.
- e) Inlet and exhaust manifolds – where applicable (Chapter 4A or 4B).
- f) Ignition coils and spark plugs – as applicable (Chapter 5B and 1A).
- g) Flywheel/driveplate (Part A, B or C of this Chapter).

**Note:** When removing the external components from the engine, pay close attention to details that may be helpful or important during refitting. Note the fitted position of gaskets, seals, spacers, pins, washers, bolts, and other small items.

**4** If you are obtaining a 'short' engine (which consists of the engine cylinder block/crankcase, crankshaft, pistons and connecting rods all assembled), then the cylinder head, sump,



**6.6b** . . . then extract the collets and release the spring compressor

oil pump, and timing belt will have to be removed also.

**5** If you are planning a complete overhaul, the engine can be dismantled, and the internal components removed, in the order given below, referring to Part A, B or C of this Chapter unless otherwise stated.

- a) Inlet and exhaust manifolds – where applicable (Chapter 4A or 4B).
- b) Timing belts, sprockets and tensioner(s).
- c) Cylinder head.
- d) Flywheel/driveplate.
- e) Sump.
- f) Oil pump.
- g) Piston/connecting rod assemblies (Section 9). *Note:* On 1.4 litre diesel engines, remove the crankshaft before the pistons.
- h) Crankshaft (Section 10).

**6** Before beginning the dismantling and overhaul procedures, make sure that you have all of the correct tools necessary. Refer to *Tools and working facilities* for further information.

## 6 Cylinder head – dismantling

**Note:** New and reconditioned cylinder heads are available from the manufacturer, and from engine overhaul specialists. Be aware that some specialist tools are required for the dismantling and inspection procedures, and new components may not be readily available. It may therefore be more practical and economical for the home mechanic to purchase a reconditioned head, rather than dismantle, inspect and recondition the original head.

**1** Remove the cylinder head as described in Part A, B or C of this Chapter (as applicable).

**2** If not already done, remove the inlet and exhaust manifolds with reference to Chapter 4A or 4B. Remove any remaining brackets or housings as required.

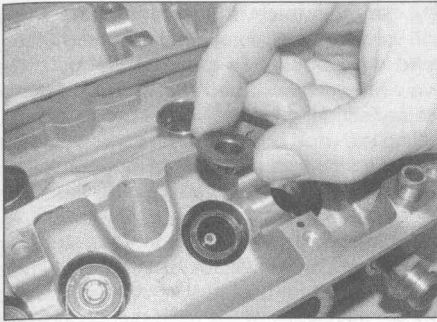
**3** Remove the camshaft(s), hydraulic tappets and rockers (as applicable) as described in Part A, B or C of this Chapter.

**4** If not already done on petrol models, remove the spark plugs as described in Chapter 1A.

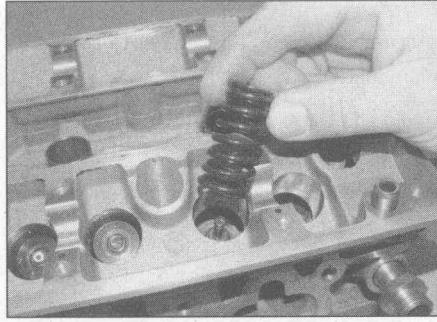
**5** If not already done on diesel models, remove the glow plugs as described in Chapter 5C.

**6** On all models, using a valve spring compressor, compress each valve spring in turn until the split collets can be removed. Release the compressor, and lift off the spring retainer, spring and, where fitted, the spring seat. Using a pair of pliers, carefully extract the valve stem oil seal from the top of the guide. On 1.4 litre diesel and 2.0 litre petrol engines, the valve stem oil seal also forms the spring seat (**see illustrations**).

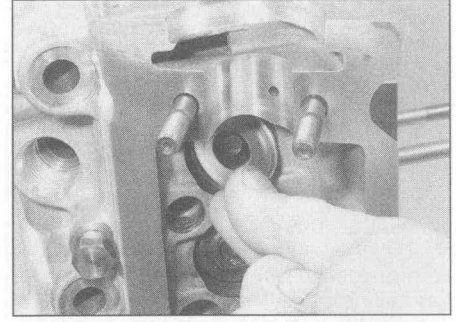
**7** If, when the valve spring compressor is screwed down, the spring retainer refuses to



6.6c Remove the spring retainer . . .



6.6d . . . followed by the valve spring . . .

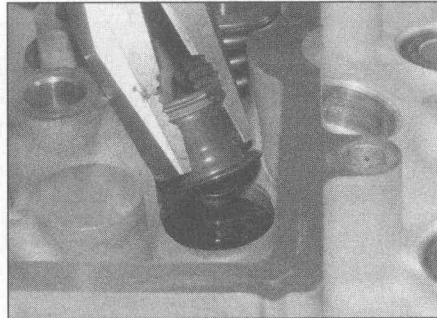


6.6e . . . and the spring seat (not all models)

free and expose the split collets, gently tap the top of the tool, directly over the retainer, with a light hammer. This will free the retainer.

8 Withdraw the valve from the combustion chamber. Remove the valve stem oil seal from the top of the guide, then lift out the spring seat where fitted.

9 It is essential that each valve is stored together with its collets, retainer, spring, and spring seat. The valves should also be kept in their correct sequence, unless they are so badly worn that they are to be renewed. If they are going to be kept and used again, place each valve assembly in a labelled polythene bag or similar small container (see illustration). Note that No 1 valve is nearest to the transmission (flywheel/driveplate) end of the engine.



6.6f Use a pair of pliers to remove the valve stem oil seal. On 1.4 litre diesel and 2.0 litre petrol models the spring seat is integral with the seal



6.9 Place each valve and its associated components in a labelled bag

## 7 Cylinder head and valves – cleaning and inspection



1 Thorough cleaning of the cylinder head and valve components, followed by a detailed inspection, will enable you to decide how much valve service work must be carried out during the engine overhaul. **Note:** *If the engine has been severely overheated, it is best to assume that the cylinder head is warped – check carefully for signs of this.*

### Cleaning

2 Scrape away all traces of old gasket material from the cylinder head.

3 Scrape away the carbon from the combustion chambers and ports, then wash the cylinder head thoroughly with paraffin or a suitable solvent.

4 Scrape off any heavy carbon deposits that may have formed on the valves, then use a power-operated wire brush to remove deposits from the valve heads and stems.

### Inspection

**Note:** *Be sure to perform all the following inspection procedures before concluding that the services of a machine shop or engine overhaul specialist are required. Make a list of all items that require attention.*

### Cylinder head

5 Inspect the head very carefully for cracks, evidence of coolant leakage, and other damage. If cracks are found, a new cylinder head should be obtained. Use a straight-edge and feeler blade to check that the cylinder head gasket surface is not distorted (see illustration). If it is, it may be possible to have it machined, provided that the cylinder head height is not significantly reduced.

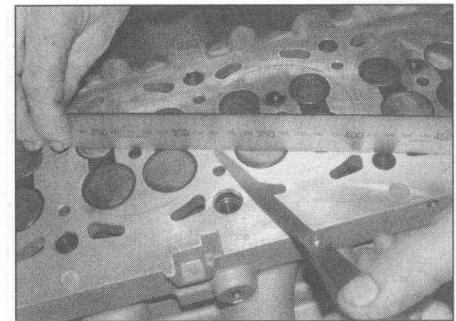
6 Examine the valve seats in each of the combustion chambers. If they are severely pitted, cracked, or burned, they will need to be renewed or recut by an engine overhaul specialist. If they are only slightly pitted, this can be removed by grinding-in the valve heads and seats with fine valve-grinding compound, as described below.

7 Check the valve guides for wear by inserting the relevant valve, and checking for side-to-side motion of the valve. A very small amount of movement is acceptable. If the movement seems excessive, remove the valve. Measure the valve stem diameter (see below), and renew the valve if it is worn. If the valve stem is not worn, the wear must be in the valve guide, and the guide must be renewed. The renewal of valve guides is best carried out by a Peugeot dealer or engine overhaul specialist, who will have the necessary tools available. Where no valve stem diameter is specified, seek the advice of a Peugeot dealer on the best course of action.

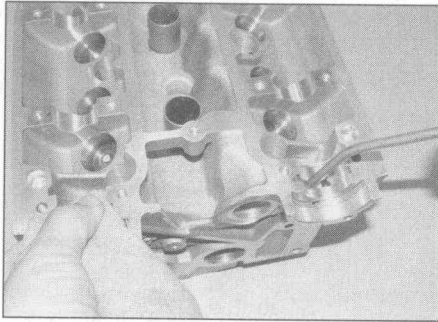
8 If renewing the valve guides, the valve seats

should be recut or reground only *after* the guides have been fitted.

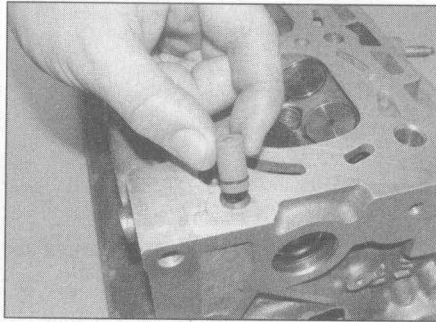
9 On the 2.0 litre petrol engines, examine the camshaft oil supply non-return valve in the oil feed bore at the timing belt end of the cylinder head. Check that the valve is not loose in the cylinder head and that the ball is free to move within the valve body. If the valve is a loose fit in its bore, or if there is any doubt about its condition, it should be renewed. The non-return valve can be removed (assuming it is not loose), using compressed air, such as that generated by a tyre foot pump. Place the pump nozzle over the oil feed bore of the inlet camshaft No 4 bearing journal and seal the corresponding oil feed bore in the exhaust camshaft with a rag. Apply the compressed air and the valve will be forced out of its



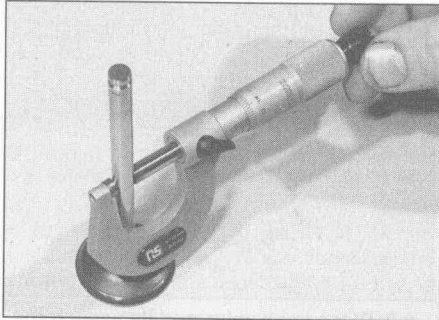
7.5 Check the cylinder head gasket surface for distortion



7.9a Apply compressed air to the oil feed bore of the inlet camshaft, seal the bore in the exhaust camshaft bore with a rag . . .



7.9b . . . and the camshaft oil supply non-return valve will be ejected from the underside of the cylinder head



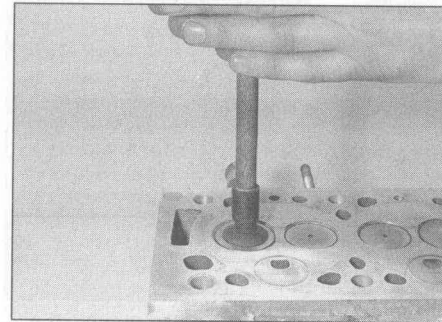
7.11 Measure the valve stem diameter with a micrometer

location in the underside of the cylinder head (see illustrations). Fit the new non-return valve to its bore on the underside of the head ensuring it is fitted the correct way. Oil should be able to pass upwards through the valve to the camshafts, but the ball in the valve should prevent the oil from returning back to the cylinder block. Use a thin socket or similar to push the valve fully into position.

### Valves

10 Examine the head of each valve for pitting, burning, cracks, and general wear. Check the valve stem for scoring and wear ridges. Rotate the valve, and check for any obvious indication that it is bent. Look for pits or excessive wear on the tip of each valve stem. Renew any valve that shows any such signs of wear or damage.

11 If the valve appears satisfactory at this stage, measure the valve stem diameter at



7.14 Grinding-in a valve

several points using a micrometer (see illustration). Any significant difference in the readings obtained indicates wear of the valve stem. Should any of these conditions be apparent, the valve must be renewed.

12 If the valves are in satisfactory condition, they should be ground (lapped) into their respective seats, to ensure a smooth, gas-tight seal. If the seat is only lightly pitted, or if it has been recut, fine grinding compound *only* should be used to produce the required finish. Coarse valve-grinding compound should *not* be used, unless a seat is badly burned or deeply pitted. If this is the case, the cylinder head and valves should be inspected by an expert, to decide whether seat recutting, or even the renewal of the valve or seat insert (where possible) is required.

13 Valve grinding is carried out as follows. Place the cylinder head upside-down on a bench.

14 Smear a trace of (the appropriate grade of) valve-grinding compound on the seat face, and press a suction grinding tool onto the valve head (see illustration). With a semi-rotary action, grind the valve head to its seat, lifting the valve occasionally to redistribute the grinding compound. A light spring placed under the valve head will greatly ease this operation.

15 If coarse grinding compound is being used, work only until a dull, matt even surface is produced on both the valve seat and the valve, then wipe off the used compound, and repeat the process with fine compound. When a smooth unbroken ring of light grey matt finish is produced on both the valve and seat, the grinding operation is complete. *Do not* grind-in the valves any further than absolutely necessary, or the seat will be prematurely sunk into the cylinder head.

16 When all the valves have been ground-in, carefully wash off *all* traces of grinding compound using paraffin or a suitable solvent, before reassembling the cylinder head.

### Valve components

17 Examine the valve springs for signs of damage and discoloration. No minimum free length is specified by Peugeot, so the only way of judging valve spring wear is by comparison with a new component.

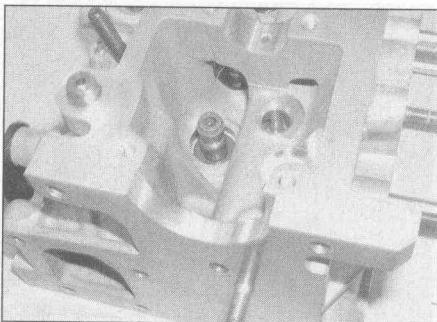
18 Stand each spring on a flat surface, and check it for squareness. If any of the springs are damaged, distorted or have lost their tension, obtain a complete new set of springs. It is normal to renew the valve springs as a matter of course if a major overhaul is being carried out.

19 Renew the valve stem oil seals regardless of their apparent condition.

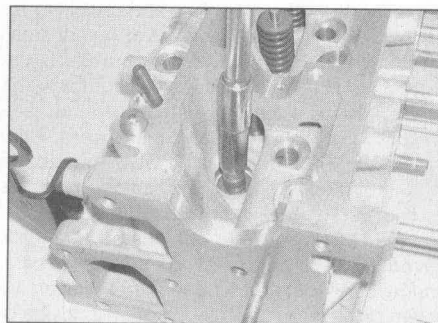
## 8 Cylinder head – reassembly



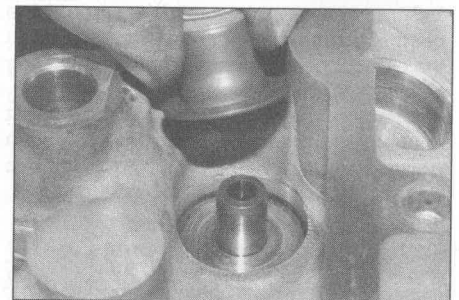
1 Working on the first valve assembly, refit the spring seat then dip the new valve stem oil seal in fresh engine oil. Locate the seal on the valve guide and press the seal firmly onto the guide using a suitable socket (see illustrations). Note that on 2.0 litre diesel engines no spring lower seat is fitted, whilst



8.1a Locate the valve stem oil seal on the valve guide . . .



8.1b . . . and press the seal firmly onto the guide using a suitable socket



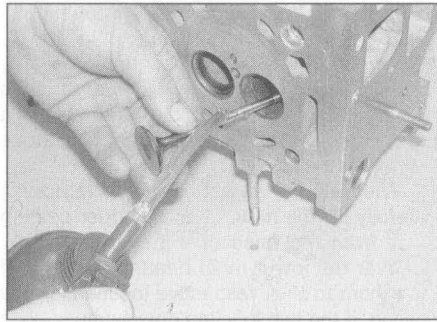
8.1c On 1.4 litre diesel and 2.0 litre petrol models, the valve stem oil seal is integral with the spring seat

on 1.4 litre diesel and 2.0 litre petrol, the seal is integral with the lower spring seat.

**2** Lubricate the stem of the first valve, and insert it in the guide (see illustration).

**3** Locate the valve spring on top of its seat, then refit the spring retainer. Note that on the 2.0 litre petrol engines, the larger diameter of the spring must face the cylinder head.

**4** Compress the valve spring, and locate the split collets in the recess in the valve stem. Release the compressor, then repeat the procedure on the remaining valves. Ensure that each valve is inserted into its original location. If new valves are being fitted, insert them into the locations to which they have been ground.



**8.2 Lubricate the stem of the valve and insert it into the guide**

connecting rod and big-end bearing cap with its respective cylinder number on the flat machined surface provided; if the engine has been dismantled before, note carefully any identifying marks made previously (see illustration). Note that No 1 cylinder is at the transmission (flywheel) end of the engine.

**4** Turn the crankshaft to bring pistons 1 and 4 to BDC (bottom dead centre). On 1.4 litre diesel engines, remove the main bearing ladder as described in Section 10 of this Chapter.

**5** Unscrew the nuts or bolts, as applicable, from No 1 piston big-end bearing cap. Take off the cap, and recover the bottom half bearing shell (see illustration). If the bearing shells are to be re-used, tape the cap and the shell together.

**6** To prevent the possibility of damage to the crankshaft bearing journals, tape over the connecting rod stud threads where fitted (see illustration).

**7** Using a hammer handle, push the piston up through the bore, and remove it from the top of the cylinder block. Recover the bearing shell, and tape it to the connecting rod for safe-keeping.

**8** Loosely refit the big-end cap to the connecting rod, and secure with the nuts/bolts – this will help to keep the components in their correct order.

**9** Remove No 4 piston assembly in the same way.

**10** Turn the crankshaft through 180° to bring pistons 2 and 3 to BDC (bottom dead centre), and remove them in the same way.

**HAYNES HINT** Use a little dab of grease to hold the collets in position on the valve stem while the spring compressor is released.

**5** With all the valves installed, support the cylinder head and, using a hammer and interposed block of wood, tap the end of each valve stem to settle the components.

**6** Refit the camshafts, hydraulic tappets and rocker arms (as applicable) as described in Part A, B or C of this Chapter.

**7** Refit any remaining components using the reverse of the removal sequence and with new seals or gaskets as necessary.

**8** The cylinder head can then be refitted as described in Part A, B or C of this Chapter.

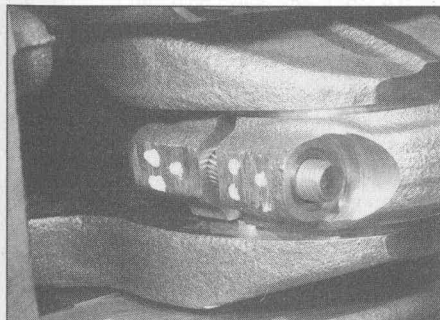
**9 Piston/connecting rod assembly – removal**



**1** Remove the cylinder head, sump and oil pump as described in Part A, B or C of this Chapter.

**2** If there is a pronounced wear ridge at the top of any bore, it may be necessary to remove it with a scraper or ridge reamer, to avoid piston damage during removal. Such a ridge indicates excessive wear of the cylinder bore.

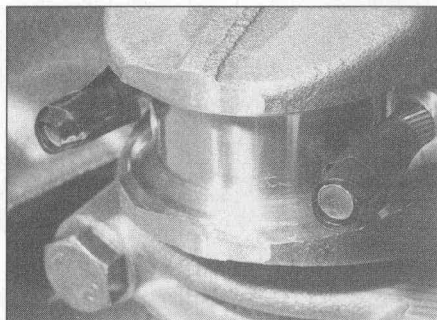
**3** Using quick-drying paint, mark each



**9.3 Connecting rod and big-end bearing cap identification marks (No 3 shown)**



**9.5 Remove the big-end bearing shell and cap**



**9.6 To protect the crankshaft journals, tape over the connecting rod stud threads**

**10 Crankshaft – removal**



**1** Remove the crankshaft sprocket and the oil pump as described in Part A, B or C of this Chapter (as applicable).

**2** Remove the pistons and connecting rods, as described in Section 9. If no work is to be done on the pistons and connecting rods, there is no need to remove the cylinder head, or to push the pistons out of the cylinder bores. The pistons should just be pushed far enough up the bores so that they are positioned clear of the crankshaft journals.

**Note:** On 1.4 litre diesel engines, the main bearing ladder must be removed before the piston/connecting rods.

**3** Check the crankshaft endfloat as described in Section 13, then proceed as follows.

**1.4 litre petrol engine**

**4** Work around the outside of the cylinder block, and unscrew all the small (M6) bolts securing the main bearing ladder to the base of the cylinder block. Note the correct fitted depth of both the left- and right-hand crankshaft oil seals in the cylinder block/main bearing ladder.

**5** Working in a diagonal sequence, evenly and progressively slacken the ten large (M11) main bearing ladder retaining bolts by a turn at a time. Once all the bolts are loose, remove them from the ladder.

**6** With all the retaining bolts removed, carefully lift the main bearing ladder casting away from the base of the cylinder block. Recover the lower main bearing shells, and tape them to their respective locations in the casting. If the two locating dowels are a loose fit, remove them and store them with the casting for safe-keeping.

**7** Lift out the crankshaft, and discard both the oil seals. Remove the oil pump drive chain from the end of the crankshaft. Where necessary, slide off the drive sprocket, and recover the Woodruff key.

**8** Recover the upper main bearing shells, and store them along with the relevant lower bearing shell. Also recover the two



**10.21** On 1.4 litre diesel engines, prise up the two caps to expose the main bearing bolts at the flywheel end

thrustwashers (one fitted either side of No 2 main bearing) from the cylinder block.

### 1.6 litre petrol engine

**9** Unbolt and remove the crankshaft left- and right-hand oil seal housings from each end of the cylinder block, noting the correct fitted locations of the locating dowels. If the locating dowels are a loose fit, remove them and store them with the housings for safe-keeping.

**10** Remove the oil pump drive chain, and slide the drive sprocket off the end of the crankshaft. Remove the Woodruff key, and store it with the sprocket for safe-keeping.

**11** The main bearing caps should be numbered 1 to 5 from the transmission (flywheel/driveplate) end of the engine. If not, mark them accordingly using a centre-punch or paint.

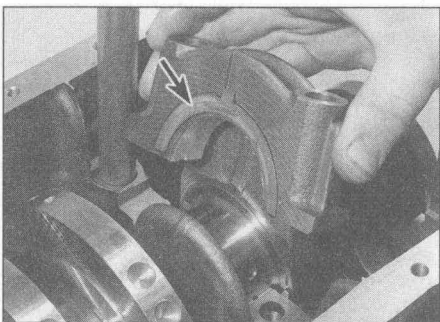
**12** Unscrew and remove the main bearing cap retaining bolts, and withdraw the caps. Recover the lower main bearing shells, and tape them to their respective caps for safe-keeping.

**13** Carefully lift out the crankshaft, taking care not to displace the upper main bearing shell.

**14** Recover the upper bearing shells from the cylinder block, and tape them to their respective caps for safe-keeping. Remove the thrustwasher halves from the side of No 2 main bearing, and store them with the bearing cap.

### 2.0 litre petrol engine

**15** Work around the outside of the cylinder block, and unscrew all the small bolts securing the main bearing ladder to the base of the cylinder block. Note the correct fitted



**10.28** Note the thrustwashers (arrowed) fitted to the No 2 bearing cap

depth of the left-hand crankshaft oil seal in the cylinder block/main bearing ladder.

**16** Working in a diagonal sequence, evenly and progressively slacken the large main bearing ladder retaining bolts by a turn at a time. Once all the bolts are loose, remove them from the ladder.

**17** With all the retaining bolts removed, carefully lift the main bearing ladder casting away from the base of the cylinder block. Recover the lower main bearing shells, and tape them to their respective locations in the casting. If the two locating dowels are a loose fit, remove them and store them with the casting for safe-keeping.

**18** Lift out the crankshaft, and discard both the oil seals.

**19** Recover the upper main bearing shells, and store them along with the relevant lower bearing shell. Also recover the two thrustwashers (one fitted either side of No 2 main bearing) from the cylinder block.

### 1.4 litre diesel engine

**20** Work around the outside of the cylinder block, and unscrew all the small bolts securing the main bearing ladder to the base of the cylinder block. Note the correct fitted depth of the left-hand crankshaft oil seal in the cylinder block/main bearing ladder.

**21** Working in a diagonal sequence, evenly and progressively slacken the large main bearing ladder retaining bolts by a turn at a time. Once all the bolts are loose, remove them from the ladder. **Note:** *Prise up the two caps at the flywheel end of the ladder to expose the two end main bearing bolts (see illustration).*

**22** With all the retaining bolts removed, carefully lift the main bearing ladder casting away from the base of the cylinder block. Recover the lower main bearing shells, and tape them to their respective locations in the casting. If the two locating dowels are a loose fit, remove them and store them with the casting for safe-keeping. Undo the big-end bolts and remove the pistons/connecting rods as described in Section 9.

**23** Lift out the crankshaft, and discard both the oil seals.

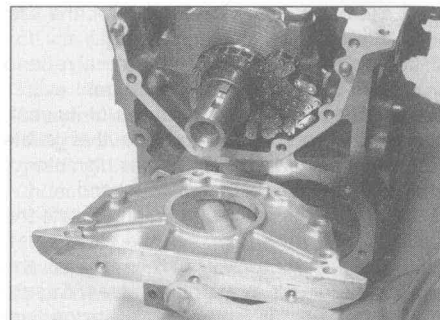
**24** Recover the upper main bearing shells, and store them along with the relevant lower bearing shell. Also recover the two thrustwashers (one fitted either side of No 2 main bearing) from the cylinder block.

### 2.0 litre diesel engine

**25** Slacken and remove the retaining bolts, and remove the oil seal housing from the right-hand (timing belt) end of the cylinder block (see illustration).

**26** Remove the oil pump drive chain, and slide the drive sprocket off from the crankshaft. Remove the Woodruff key, and store it with the sprocket for safe-keeping then remove the sealing ring (where fitted) from the crankshaft.

**27** The main bearing caps should be numbered 1 to 5, starting from the trans-



**10.25** Remove the oil seal housing from the right-hand end of the block

mission (flywheel) end of the engine. If not, mark them accordingly using a centre-punch. Also note the correct fitted depth of the crankshaft oil seal in the bearing cap.

**28** Slacken and remove the main bearing cap retaining bolts, and lift off each bearing cap. Recover the lower bearing shells, and tape them to their respective caps for safe-keeping. Also recover the lower thrustwasher halves from the side of No 2 main bearing cap (see illustration). Remove the sealing strips from the sides of No 1 main bearing cap, and discard them.

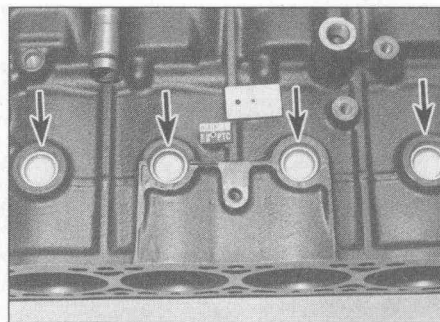
**29** Lift out the crankshaft, and discard the left-hand (flywheel end) oil seal.

**30** Recover the upper bearing shells from the cylinder block, and tape them to their respective caps for safe-keeping. Remove the upper thrustwasher halves from the side of No 2 main bearing, and store them with the lower halves.

## 11 Cylinder block/crankcase – cleaning and inspection

### Cleaning

**1** Remove all external components and electrical switches/sensors from the block. For complete cleaning, the core plugs should ideally be removed (see illustration). Drill a small hole in the plugs, then insert a self-tapping screw into the hole. Pull out the plugs by pulling on the screw with a pair of grips, or by using a slide hammer.



**11.1** Cylinder block core plugs (arrowed)

2 On aluminium block petrol engines with wet liners (1.4 litre), remove the liners – see paragraph 18.

3 Where applicable, undo the retaining bolts and remove the piston oil jet spray tubes (there is one for each piston) from inside the cylinder block (see illustration).

4 Scrape all traces of gasket from the cylinder block/crankcase, and from the main bearing ladder/caps (as applicable), taking care not to damage the gasket/sealing surfaces.

5 Remove all oil gallery plugs (where fitted). The plugs are usually very tight – they may have to be drilled out, and the holes retapped. Use new plugs when the engine is reassembled.

6 If any of the castings are extremely dirty, all should be steam-cleaned.

7 After the castings are returned, clean all oil holes and oil galleries one more time. Flush all internal passages with warm water until the water runs clear. Dry thoroughly, and apply a light film of oil to all mating surfaces, to prevent rusting. On cast-iron block engines, also oil the cylinder bores. If you have access to compressed air, use it to speed up the drying process, and to blow out all the oil holes and galleries.



**Warning: Wear eye protection when using compressed air.**

8 If the castings are not very dirty, you can do an adequate cleaning job with hot (as hot as you can stand), soapy water and a stiff brush. Take plenty of time, and do a thorough job. Regardless of the cleaning method used, be sure to clean all oil holes and galleries very thoroughly, and to dry all components well. On cast-iron block engines, protect the cylinder bores as described above, to prevent rusting.

9 All threaded holes must be clean, to ensure accurate torque readings during reassembly. To clean the threads, run the correct-size tap into each of the holes to remove rust, corrosion, thread sealant or sludge, and to restore damaged threads (see illustration). If possible, use compressed air to clear the holes of debris produced by this operation.

10 Apply suitable sealant to the new oil gallery plugs, and insert them into the holes in the block. Tighten them securely. Also apply suitable sealant to new core plugs, and drive them into the block using a tube or socket.

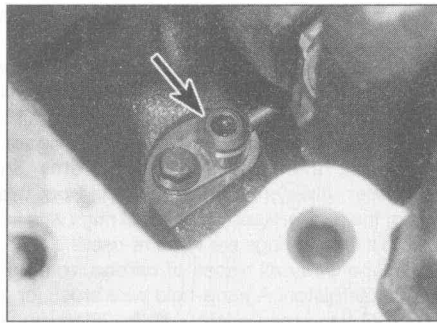
11 Where applicable, clean the threads of the piston oil jet retaining bolts, and apply a drop of thread-locking compound (Peugeot recommend Loctite Frenetanch) to each bolt threads. Refit the piston oil jet spray tubes to the cylinder block, and tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque setting.

12 If the engine is not going to be reassembled right away, cover it with a large plastic bag to keep it clean; protect all mating surfaces and the cylinder bores as described above, to prevent rusting.

## Inspection

### Cast-iron cylinder block

13 Visually check the castings for cracks and



11.3 Piston oil jet spray tube (arrowed) in the cylinder block

corrosion. Look for stripped threads in the threaded holes. If there has been any history of internal water leakage, it may be worthwhile having an engine overhaul specialist check the cylinder block/crankcase with special equipment. If defects are found, have them repaired if possible, or renew the assembly.

14 Check each cylinder bore for scuffing and scoring. Check for signs of a wear ridge at the top of the cylinder, indicating that the bore is excessively worn.

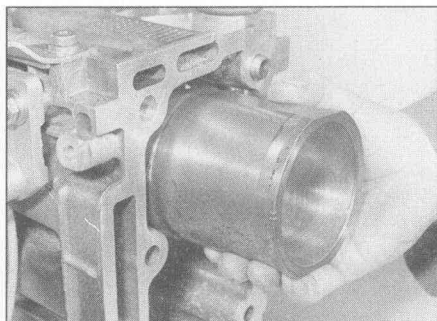
15 If the necessary measuring equipment is available, measure the bore diameter of each cylinder at the top (just under the wear ridge), centre, and bottom of the cylinder bore, parallel to the crankshaft axis.

16 Next, measure the bore diameter at the same three locations, at right-angles to the crankshaft axis. Compare the results with the figures given in the Specifications. Where no figures are stated by Peugeot, or if there is any doubt about the condition of the cylinder bores, seek the advice of a Peugeot dealer or suitable engine reconditioning specialist.

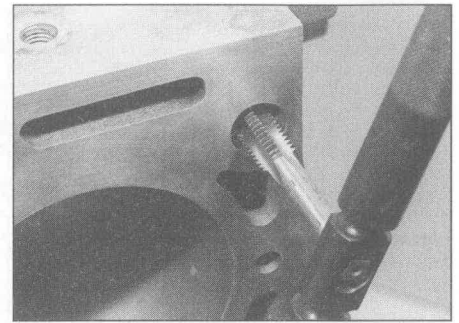
17 At the time of writing, it was not clear whether oversize pistons were available for all models. Consult your Peugeot dealer or engine specialist for the latest information on piston availability. If oversize pistons are available, then it may be possible to have the cylinder bores rebored and fit the oversize pistons. If oversize pistons are not available, and the bores are worn, renewal of the block seems to be the only option.

### Aluminium cylinder block

18 Remove the liner clamps (where used),



11.18a On aluminium block engines, remove each liner ...



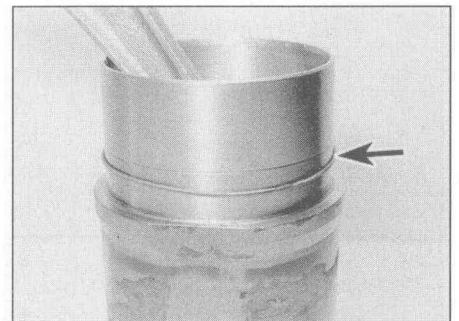
11.9 Use a suitable tap to clean the cylinder block threaded holes

then use a hardwood drift to tap out each liner from the inside of the cylinder block. When all the liners are released, tip the cylinder block/crankcase on its side and remove each liner from the top of the block. As each liner is removed, stick masking tape on its left-hand (transmission side) face, and write the cylinder number on the tape. No 1 cylinder is at the transmission (flywheel/driveplate) end of the engine. Remove the sealing ring from the base of each liner, and discard (see illustrations).

19 Check each cylinder liner for scuffing and scoring. Check for signs of a wear ridge at the top of the liner, indicating that the bore is excessively worn.

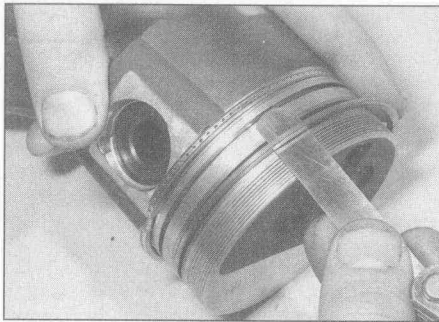
20 Take the liners to a Peugeot dealer or engine reconditioning specialist and have their bores measured to determine if renewal is necessary. If it is, the dealer or specialist will be able to advise you regarding piston/liner availability.

21 Prior to installing the liners, check the liner protrusion as follows. Thoroughly clean the mating surfaces of the liner and cylinder block. Insert the liners into the block ensuring each one is correctly seated; if the original liners are being refitted, ensure the liners are fitted in their original locations. With all four liners correctly installed, use a dial gauge (or a straight-edge and feeler blade) to check that the protrusion of each liner above the upper surface of the cylinder block is within the limits given in the Specifications. The maximum difference between any two liners must not be exceeded. **Note:** If new liners are being fitted, it is permissible to interchange



11.18b ... and recover the bottom O-ring seal (arrowed)





**12.2 Remove the piston rings with the aid of a feeler gauge**

them to bring the difference in protrusion within limits. Remember to keep each piston with its respective liner. If liner protrusion is not within the specified limits, seek the advice of a Peugeot dealer or engine reconditioning specialist before proceeding with the engine rebuild.

**22** Once the protrusions have been checked, remove the liners from the block and fit a new sealing ring carefully to the base of each liner. Lubricate the base of each liner with a smear of oil to aid installation.

**23** Insert each liner into the cylinder block, taking care not to damage the O-ring, and press it home as far as possible by hand. Using a hammer and a block of wood, tap each liner lightly but fully onto its locating shoulder. If the original liners are being refitted, use the marks made on removal to ensure that each is refitted the correct way round, and is inserted into its original bore.

**24** Wipe clean, then lightly oil all exposed liner surfaces, to prevent rusting. Where necessary, clamp the liners back in position.

## 12 Piston/connecting rod assembly – inspection



**1** Before the inspection process can begin, the piston/connecting rod assemblies must be cleaned, and the original piston rings removed from the pistons.

**2** Carefully expand the old rings over the top of the pistons. The use of two or three old feeler

blades will be helpful in preventing the rings dropping into empty grooves (see illustration). Be careful not to scratch the piston with the ends of the ring. The rings are brittle, and will snap if they are spread too far. They are also very sharp – protect your hands and fingers. Note that the third ring incorporates an expander. Always remove the rings from the top of the piston. Keep each set of rings with its piston if the old rings are to be re-used.

**3** Scrape away all traces of carbon from the top of the piston. A hand-held wire brush (or a piece of fine emery cloth) can be used, once the majority of the deposits have been scraped away.

**4** Remove the carbon from the ring grooves in the piston, using an old ring. Break the ring in half to do this (be careful not to cut your fingers – piston rings are sharp). Be careful to remove only the carbon deposits – do not remove any metal, and do not nick or scratch the sides of the ring grooves.

**5** Once the deposits have been removed, clean the piston/connecting rod assembly with paraffin or a suitable solvent, and dry thoroughly. Make sure that the oil return holes in the ring grooves are clear.

**6** If the pistons and cylinder bores are not damaged or worn excessively, and if the cylinder block does not need to be rebored (where possible), the original pistons can be refitted. Normal piston wear shows up as even vertical wear on the piston thrust surfaces, and slight looseness of the top ring in its groove. New piston rings should always be used when the engine is reassembled.

**7** Carefully inspect each piston for cracks around the skirt, around the gudgeon pin holes, and at the piston ring 'lands' (between the ring grooves).

**8** Look for scoring and scuffing on the piston skirt, holes in the piston crown, and burned areas at the edge of the crown. If the skirt is scored or scuffed, the engine may have been suffering from overheating, and/or abnormal combustion which caused excessively high operating temperatures. The cooling and lubrication systems should be checked thoroughly. Scorch marks on the sides of the pistons show that blow-by has occurred. A hole in the piston crown, or burned areas at the edge of the piston crown, indicates that

abnormal combustion (pre-ignition, knocking, or detonation) has been occurring. If any of the above problems exist, the causes must be investigated and corrected, or the damage will occur again. The causes may include incorrect ignition/injection pump timing, or a faulty injector (as applicable).

**9** Corrosion of the piston, in the form of pitting, indicates that coolant has been leaking into the combustion chamber and/or the crankcase. Again, the cause must be corrected, or the problem may persist in the rebuilt engine.

**10** On aluminium block engines with wet liners, it is not possible to renew the pistons separately; pistons are only supplied with piston rings and a liner, as a part of a matched assembly (see Section 11). On iron-block engines, pistons can be purchased from a Peugeot dealer or engine reconditioning specialist.

**11** Examine each connecting rod carefully for signs of damage, such as cracks around the big-end and small-end bearings. Check that the rod is not bent or distorted. Damage is highly unlikely, unless the engine has been seized or badly overheated. Detailed checking of the connecting rod assembly can only be carried out by a Peugeot dealer or engine specialist with the necessary equipment.

**12** The connecting rod big-end cap nuts must be renewed whenever they are disturbed. Although Peugeot do not specify that the bolts must also be renewed, it is recommended that the nuts and bolts are replaced as a complete set.

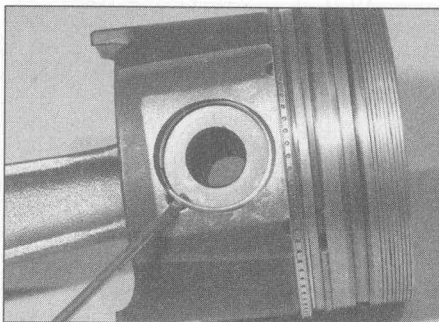
**13** On petrol engines, the gudgeon pins are an interference fit in the connecting rod small-end bearing. Therefore, piston and/or connecting rod renewal should be entrusted to a Peugeot dealer or engine repair specialist, who will have the necessary tooling to remove and install the gudgeon pins.

**14** On diesel engines, the gudgeon pins are of the floating type, secured in position by two circlips. On these engines, the pistons and connecting rods can be separated as follows.

**15** Using a small flat-bladed screwdriver, prise out the circlips, and push out the gudgeon pin (see illustrations). Hand pressure should be sufficient to remove the pin. Identify the piston and rod to ensure correct reassembly. Discard the circlips – new ones *must* be used on refitting.

**16** Examine the gudgeon pin and connecting rod small-end bearing for signs of wear or damage. Wear can be cured by renewing both the pin and bush (where possible) or connecting rod. Bush renewal, however, is a specialist job – press facilities are required, and the new bush must be reamed accurately.

**17** The connecting rods themselves should not be in need of renewal, unless seizure or some other major mechanical failure has occurred. Check the alignment of the connecting rods visually, and if the rods are not straight, take them to an engine overhaul specialist for a more detailed check.



**12.15a** Prise out the circlip . . .



**12.15b** . . . and withdraw the gudgeon pin

18 Examine all components, and obtain any new parts from your Peugeot dealer. If new pistons are purchased, they will be supplied complete with gudgeon pins and circlips. Circlips can also be purchased individually.

19 On 1.4 litre diesel engines, position the piston as shown (see illustration).

20 On 2.0 litre diesel engines, position the piston so that the valve recesses on the piston crown are on the opposite side to the connecting rod big-end bearing shell cut-outs.

21 Ensure the piston and connecting rod are correctly positioned then apply a smear of clean engine oil to the gudgeon pin. Slide it into the piston and through the connecting rod small-end. Check that the piston pivots freely on the rod, then secure the gudgeon pin in position with two new circlips. Ensure that each circlip is correctly located in its groove in the piston.

### 13 Crankshaft – inspection



#### Checking endfloat

1 If the crankshaft endfloat is to be checked, this must be done when the crankshaft is still installed in the cylinder block/crankcase, but is free to move (see Section 10).

2 Check the endfloat using a dial gauge in contact with the end of the crankshaft. Push the crankshaft fully one way, and then zero the gauge. Push the crankshaft fully the other way, and check the endfloat. The result can be compared with the specified amount, and will give an indication as to whether new thrustwashers are required (see illustration).

3 If a dial gauge is not available, feeler blades can be used. First push the crankshaft fully towards the flywheel end of the engine, then use feeler blades to measure the gap between the web of No 2 crankpin and the thrustwasher (see illustration).

#### Inspection

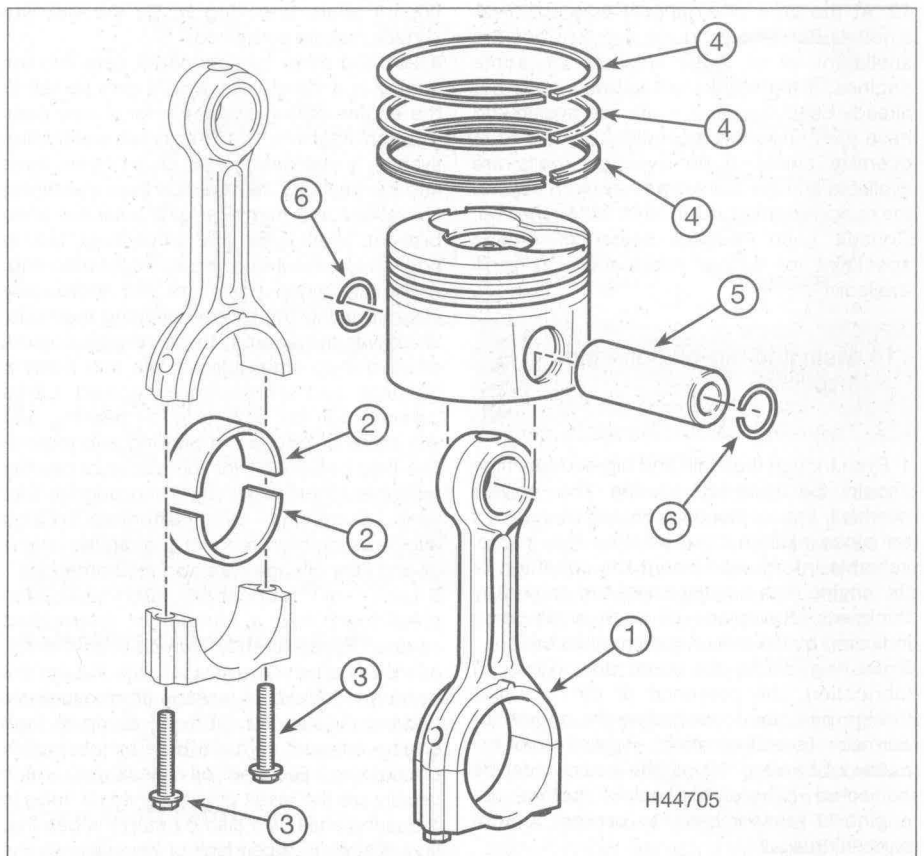
4 Clean the crankshaft using paraffin or a suitable solvent, and dry it, preferably with compressed air if available. Be sure to clean the oil holes with a pipe cleaner or similar probe, to ensure that they are not obstructed.

**Warning: Wear eye protection when using compressed air.**

5 Check the main and big-end bearing journals for uneven wear, scoring, pitting and cracking.

6 Big-end bearing wear is accompanied by distinct metallic knocking when the engine is running (particularly noticeable when the engine is pulling from low speed) and some loss of oil pressure.

7 Main bearing wear is accompanied by severe engine vibration and rumble – getting progressively worse as engine speed



12.19 Piston and connecting rod assembly – 1.4 litre diesel engine

- |                  |                |               |
|------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1 Connecting rod | 3 Big-end bolt | 5 Gudgeon pin |
| 2 Big-end shells | 4 Piston rings | 6 Circlips    |

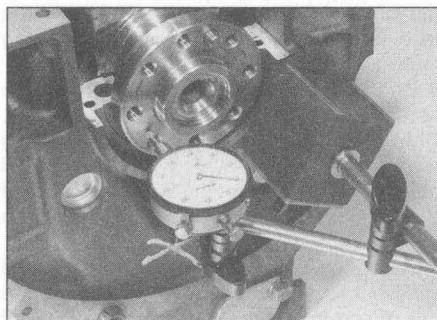
increases – and again by loss of oil pressure.

8 Check the bearing journal for roughness by running a finger lightly over the bearing surface. Any roughness (which will be accompanied by obvious bearing wear) indicates that the crankshaft requires regrinding (where possible) or renewal.

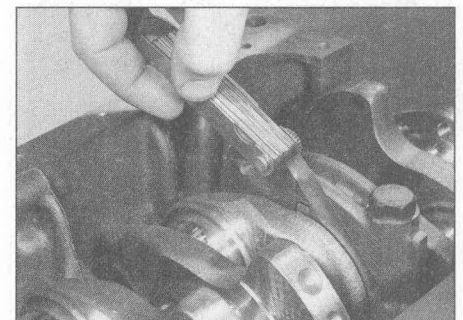
9 Check the oil seal contact surfaces at each end of the crankshaft for wear and damage. If the seal has worn a deep groove in the surface of the crankshaft, consult an engine overhaul specialist; repair may be possible, but otherwise a new crankshaft will be required.

10 Take the crankshaft to a Peugeot dealer or engine reconditioning specialist to have it measured for journal wear. If excessive wear is evident, they will be able to advise you with regard to regrinding the crankshaft and supplying new bearing shells.

11 If the crankshaft has been reground, check for burrs around the crankshaft oil holes (the holes are usually chamfered, so burrs should not be a problem unless regrinding has been carried out carelessly). Remove any burrs with a fine file or scraper, and thoroughly clean the oil holes as described previously.



13.2 The crankshaft endfloat can be checked with a dial gauge ...



13.3 ... or with feeler gauges

12 At the time of writing, it was not clear whether Peugeot produce oversize bearing shells for all of these engines. On some engines, if the crankshaft journals have not already been reground, it may be possible to have the crankshaft reconditioned, and to fit oversize shells. If no oversize shells are available and the crankshaft has worn beyond the specified limits, it will have to be renewed. Consult your Peugeot dealer or engine specialist for further information on parts availability.

### 14 Main and big-end bearings – inspection



1 Even though the main and big-end bearings should be renewed during the engine overhaul, the old bearings should be retained for close examination, as they may reveal valuable information about the condition of the engine. The bearing shells are graded by thickness, the grade of each shell being indicated by the colour code marked on it.

2 Bearing failure can occur due to lack of lubrication, the presence of dirt or other foreign particles, overloading the engine, or corrosion (see illustration). Regardless of the cause of bearing failure, the cause must be corrected (where applicable) before the engine is reassembled, to prevent it from happening again.

3 When examining the bearing shells, remove them from the cylinder block/crankcase, the connecting rods and the connecting rod big-end bearing caps. Lay them out on a clean surface in the same general position as their location in the engine. This will enable you to match any bearing problems with the corresponding crankshaft journal. Do not touch any shell's bearing surface with your

fingers while checking it, or the delicate surface may be scratched.

4 Dirt and other foreign matter gets into the engine in a variety of ways. It may be left in the engine during assembly, or it may pass through filters or the crankcase ventilation system. It may get into the oil, and from there into the bearings. Metal chips from machining operations and normal engine wear are often present. Abrasives are sometimes left in engine components after reconditioning, especially when parts are not thoroughly cleaned using the proper cleaning methods. Whatever the source, these foreign objects often end up embedded in the soft bearing material, and are easily recognised. Large particles will not embed in the bearing, and will score or gouge the bearing and journal. The best prevention for this cause of bearing failure is to clean all parts thoroughly, and keep everything spotlessly-clean during engine assembly. Frequent and regular engine oil and filter changes are also recommended.

5 Lack of lubrication (or lubrication breakdown) has a number of interrelated causes. Excessive heat (which thins the oil), overloading (which squeezes the oil from the bearing face) and oil leakage (from excessive bearing clearances, worn oil pump or high engine speeds) all contribute to lubrication breakdown. Blocked oil passages, which usually are the result of misaligned oil holes in a bearing shell, will also oil-starve a bearing, and destroy it. When lack of lubrication is the cause of bearing failure, the bearing material is wiped or extruded from the steel backing of the bearing. Temperatures may increase to the point where the steel backing turns blue from overheating.

6 Driving habits can have a definite effect on bearing life. Full-throttle, low-speed operation (labouring the engine) puts very high loads on bearings, tending to squeeze out the oil film. These loads cause the bearings to flex, which produces fine cracks in the bearing face (fatigue failure). Eventually, the bearing material will loosen in pieces, and tear away from the steel backing.

7 Short-distance driving leads to corrosion of bearings, because insufficient engine heat is produced to drive off the condensed water and corrosive gases. These products collect in the engine oil, forming acid and sludge. As the oil is carried to the engine bearings, the acid attacks and corrodes the bearing material.

8 Incorrect bearing installation during engine assembly will lead to bearing failure as well. Tight-fitting bearings leave insufficient bearing running clearance, and will result in oil starvation. Dirt or foreign particles trapped behind a bearing shell result in high spots on the bearing, which lead to failure.

9 Do not touch any shell's bearing surface with your fingers during reassembly; there is a risk of scratching the delicate surface, or of depositing particles of dirt on it.

10 As mentioned at the beginning of this

Section, the bearing shells should be renewed as a matter of course during engine overhaul; to do otherwise is false economy.

### 15 Engine overhaul – reassembly sequence

1 Before reassembly begins, ensure that all new parts have been obtained, and that all necessary tools are available. Read through the entire procedure to familiarise yourself with the work involved, and to ensure that all items necessary for reassembly of the engine are at hand. In addition to all normal tools and materials, thread-locking compound will be needed. A tube of suitable liquid sealant will also be required for the joint faces that are fitted without gaskets. It is recommended that Peugeot's own product(s) are used, which are specially formulated for this purpose; the relevant product names are quoted in the text of each Section where they are required.

2 In order to save time and avoid problems, engine reassembly can be carried out in the following order, referring to Part A, B or C of this Chapter unless otherwise stated:

- a) Crankshaft (See Section 17). **Note:** On 1.4 litre diesel engines, the piston/connecting rods must be fitted before the crankshaft.
- b) Piston/connecting rod assemblies (See Section 18).
- c) Oil pump.
- d) Sump.
- e) Flywheel/driveplate.
- f) Cylinder head.
- g) Injection pump and mounting bracket – diesel engine (Chapter 4B).
- h) Timing belt tensioner pulley(s) and sprockets, and timing belt.
- i) Engine external components.

3 At this stage, all engine components should be absolutely clean and dry, with all faults repaired. The components should be laid out (or in individual containers) on a completely clean work surface.

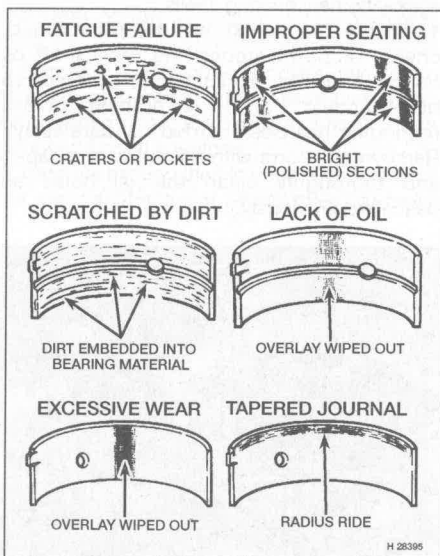
### 16 Piston rings – refitting



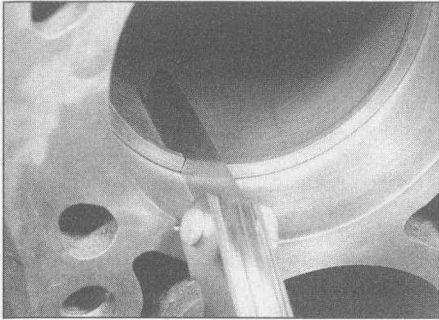
1 Before fitting new piston rings, the ring end gaps must be checked as follows.

2 Lay out the piston/connecting rod assemblies and the new piston ring sets, so that the ring sets will be matched with the same piston and cylinder during the end gap measurement and subsequent engine reassembly.

3 Insert the top ring into the first cylinder, and push it down the bore using the top of the piston. This will ensure that the ring remains square with the cylinder walls. Position the ring near the bottom of the cylinder bore, at the lower limit of ring travel. Note that the top and second compression rings are different.



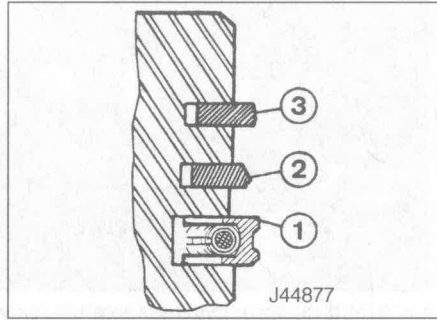
14.2 Typical bearing failures



**16.5 Measure the piston rings end gaps with a feeler gauge**

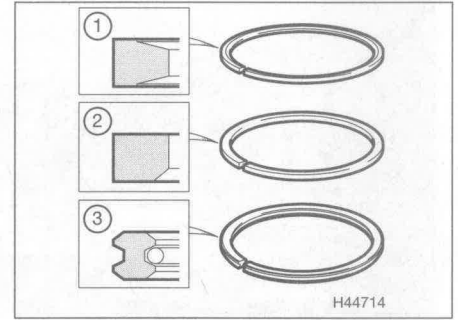
The second ring can be identified by its taper; on petrol engines it also has a step on its lower surface. On 1.4 litre diesel engines, the top ring has a chamfer on its upper/outer edge.

- 4 Measure the end gap using feeler blades.
- 5 Repeat the procedure with the ring at the top of the cylinder bore, at the upper limit of its travel (**see illustration**), and compare the measurements with the figures given in the Specifications. If the end gaps are incorrect, check that you have the correct rings for your engine and for the cylinder bore size.
- 6 Repeat the checking procedure for each ring in the first cylinder, and then for the rings in the remaining cylinders. Remember to keep rings, pistons and cylinders matched up.
- 7 Once the ring end gaps have been checked and if necessary corrected, the rings can be fitted to the pistons.
- 8 Fit the oil control ring expander (where fitted) then install the ring.
- 9 The second and top rings are different and can be identified from their cross-sections; the top ring is symmetrical whilst the second ring is tapered. Fit the second ring, ensuring its identification (TOP) marking is facing upwards, then install the top ring (**see illustrations**). Arrange the oil control, second and top ring end gaps so they are equally spaced 120° apart. **Note:** Always follow any instructions supplied with the new piston ring sets – different manufacturers may specify different procedures. Do not mix up the top and second compression rings, as they have different cross-sections.



**16.9a Piston ring fitting diagram (typical)**

- 1 Oil control ring
- 2 Second compression ring
- 3 Top compression ring



**16.9b Piston rings (1.4 litre diesel engine)**

- 1 Top compression ring
- 2 Second compression ring
- 3 Oil control ring

## 17 Crankshaft – refitting

### Selection of bearing shells

1 Have the crankshaft inspected and measured by a Peugeot dealer or engine reconditioning specialist. They will be able to carry out any regrinding/repairs, and supply suitable main and big-end bearing shells.

### Crankshaft refitting

**Note:** New main bearing cap/lower crankcase bolts must be used when refitting the crankshaft.

2 Where applicable, ensure that the oil spray jets are fitted to the bearing locations in the cylinder block.

### 1.4 litre petrol engine

3 Using a little grease, stick the upper thrustwashers to each side of the No 2 main bearing upper location; ensure that the oilway grooves on each thrustwasher face outwards (away from the block).

4 Clean the backs of the bearing shells, and the bearing locations in both the cylinder block/crankcase and the main bearing ladder/bearing caps.

5 Press the bearing shells into their locations, ensuring that the tab on each shell engages in

the notch in the cylinder block/crankcase or main bearing ladder/bearing cap. Take care not to touch any shell's bearing surface with your fingers. Note that the grooved bearing shells, both upper and lower, are fitted to Nos 2 and 4 main bearings (**see illustration**).

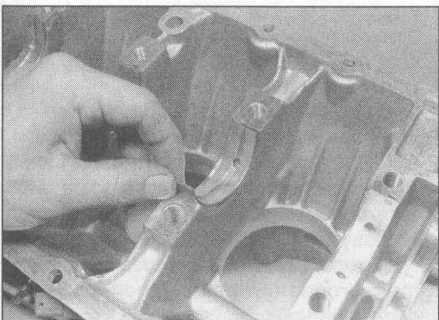
6 Liberally lubricate each bearing shell in the cylinder block/crankcase with clean engine oil.

7 Refit the Woodruff key, then slide on the oil pump drive sprocket, and locate the drive chain on the sprocket (**see illustration**). Lower the crankshaft into position so that Nos 2 and 3 cylinder crankpins are at TDC; Nos 1 and 4 cylinder crankpins will be at BDC, ready for fitting No 1 piston. Check the crankshaft endfloat as described in Section 13.

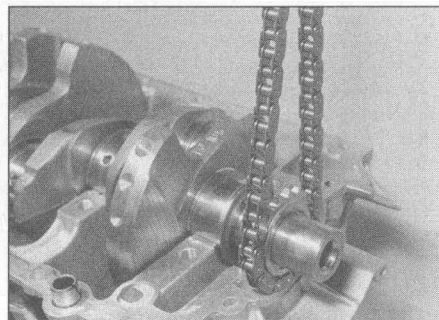
8 Thoroughly degrease the mating surfaces of the cylinder block/crankcase and the main bearing ladder. Apply a thin bead of suitable sealant to the cylinder block mating surface of the main bearing ladder casting, then spread to an even film (**see illustration**).

9 Ensure the locating dowels are in position then lubricate the lower bearing shells with clean engine oil. Refit the main bearing ladder to the cylinder block, ensuring that the lower bearings remain correctly fitted.

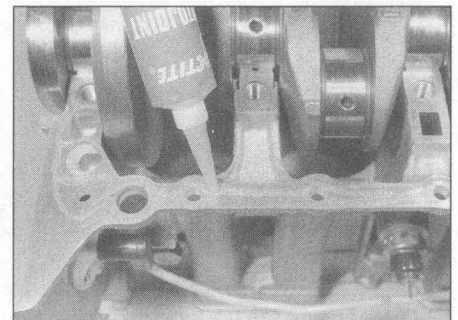
10 Install the main bearing ladder retaining bolts, and tighten them all by hand only. Working in a spiral pattern from the centre bolts outwards, evenly and progressively tighten the bolts to the specified Stage 1



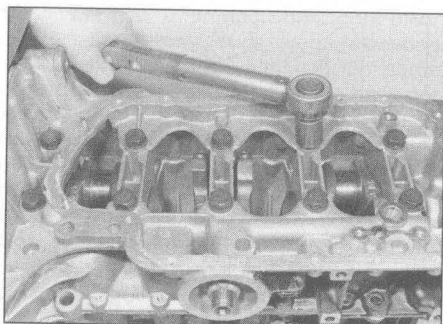
**17.5 Fit the grooved bearing shells to No 2 and 4 main bearings (1.4 litre petrol engine)**



**17.7 Fit the oil pump drive chain and sprocket**



**17.8 Apply a thin film of sealant to the cylinder block mating surface**



**17.10 Tighten the ten main bearing bolts to the specified torque**

torque wrench setting. Once all the bolts have been tightened to the Stage 1 setting, working in the same sequence, angle-tighten the bolts through the specified Stage 2 angle using a socket and extension bar. It is recommended that an angle-measuring gauge is used during this stage of the tightening, to ensure accuracy (**see illustration**). If a gauge is not available, use a dab of white paint to make alignment marks between the bolt head and casting prior to tightening; the marks can then be used to check that the bolt has been rotated sufficiently during tightening.

**11** Refit all the smaller bolts securing the main bearing ladder to the base of the cylinder block, and tighten them to the specified torque. Check that the crankshaft rotates freely.

**12** Refit the piston/connecting rod assemblies to the crankshaft as described in Section 18.

**13** Ensuring that the drive chain is correctly located on the sprocket, refit the oil pump and sump as described in Part A of this Chapter.

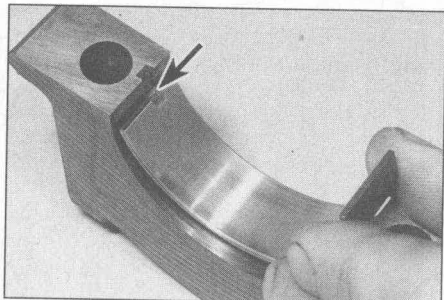
**14** Fit two new crankshaft oil seals as described in Part A.

**15** Refit the flywheel/driveplate as described in Part A of this Chapter.

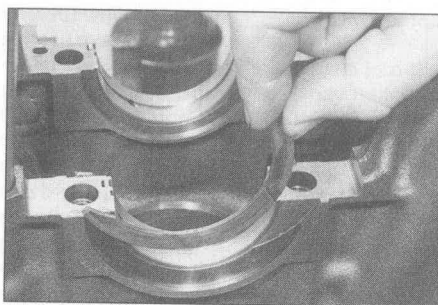
**16** Refit the cylinder head (where removed) as described in Part A. Also refit the crankshaft sprocket and timing belt (see Part A).

### 1.6 litre petrol engine

**17** Using a little grease, stick the upper thrustwashers to each side of the No 2 main bearing upper location. Ensure that the oilway grooves on each thrustwasher face outwards



**17.18 Ensure the tab (arrowed) is located in the cut-out when fitting the bearing shells**



**17.17 Fit the thrustwashers to either side of the No 2 main bearing, with the oilway grooves facing outwards**

(away from the cylinder block) (**see illustration**).

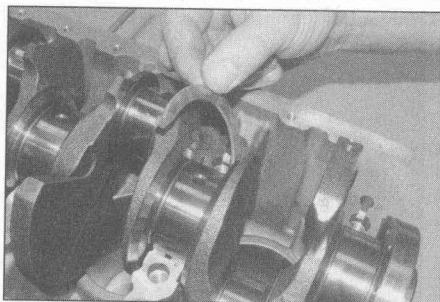
**18** Place the bearing shells in their locations as described in paragraphs 4 and 5 (**see illustration**). If new shells are being fitted, ensure that all traces of protective grease are cleaned off using paraffin. Wipe dry the shells and connecting rods with a lint-free cloth. Liberally lubricate each bearing shell in the cylinder block/crankcase and cap with clean engine oil.

**19** Lower the crankshaft into position so that Nos 2 and 3 cylinder crankpins are at TDC; Nos 1 and 4 cylinder crankpins will be at BDC, ready for fitting No 1 piston. Check the crankshaft endfloat as described in Section 13.

**20** Lubricate the lower bearing shells in the main bearing caps with clean engine oil. Make sure that the locating lugs on the shells engage with the corresponding recesses in the caps.

**21** Fit the main bearing caps to their correct locations, ensuring that they are fitted the correct way round (the bearing shell lug recesses in the block and caps must be on the same side).

**22** Lightly lubricate the threads and the underside of the heads of the main bearing cap bolts with engine oil then refit the bolts. Working in a spiral sequence from the centre bolts outwards, tighten the main bearing cap bolts evenly and progressively to the specified Stage 1 torque wrench setting. Once all the bolts have been tightened to the Stage 1 setting, working in the same sequence, angle-tighten the bolts through the specified Stage 2 angle, using a socket and extension bar. It is



**17.36 Insert the thrustwashers to either side of the No 2 main bearing upper location**

recommended that an angle-measuring gauge is used during this stage of the tightening, to ensure accuracy. If a gauge is not available, use a dab of white paint to make alignment marks between the bolt head and casting prior to tightening; the marks can then be used to check that the bolt has been rotated sufficiently during tightening.

**23** Check that the crankshaft rotates freely.

**24** Refit the piston/connecting rod assemblies to the crankshaft as described in Section 18.

**25** Refit the Woodruff key to the crankshaft groove, and slide on the oil pump drive sprocket. Locate the drive chain on the sprocket.

**26** Ensure that the mating surfaces of right-hand (timing belt end) oil seal housing and cylinder block are clean and dry. Note the correct fitted depth of the oil seal then, using a large flat-bladed screwdriver, lever the seal out of the housing.

**27** Apply a smear of suitable sealant to the oil seal housing mating surface, and make sure that the locating dowels are in position. Slide the housing over the end of the crankshaft, and into position on the cylinder block. Tighten the housing retaining bolts securely.

**28** Repeat the operations in paragraphs 26 and 27, and fit the left-hand (flywheel/driveplate end) oil seal housing.

**29** Fit new crankshaft oil seals as described in Part A of this Chapter.

**30** Ensuring that the chain is correctly located on the drive sprocket, refit the oil pump and sump as described in Part A of this Chapter.

**31** Refit the flywheel/driveplate as described in Part A of this Chapter.

**32** Refit the cylinder head (where removed) and install the crankshaft sprocket and timing belt as described in the relevant Sections of Part A.

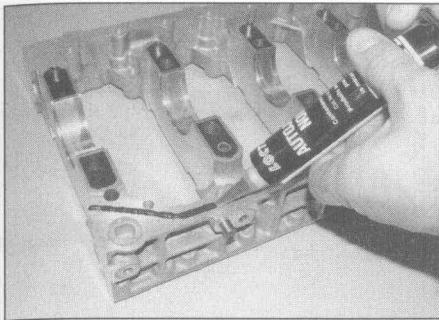
### 2.0 litre petrol engine

**33** Clean the backs of the bearing shells in both the cylinder block/crankcase and the main bearing ladder. If new shells are being fitted, ensure that all traces of protective grease are cleaned off using paraffin. Wipe dry the shells with a lint-free cloth.

**34** Press the bearing shells into their locations, ensuring that the tab on each shell engages in the notch in the cylinder block/crankcase and bearing ladder. Take care not to touch any shell's bearing surface with your fingers. Note that the upper bearing shells all have a grooved surface, whereas the lower shells have a plain bearing surface.

**35** Liberally lubricate each bearing shell in the cylinder block with clean engine oil then lower the crankshaft into position.

**36** Insert the thrustwashers to either side of No 2 main bearing upper location and push them around the bearing journal until their edges are horizontal (**see illustration**). Ensure that the oilway grooves on each thrustwasher face outwards (away from the cylinder block).



**17.37** Apply a thin bead of RTV sealant to the bearing cap housing mating surface

**37** Thoroughly degrease the mating surfaces of the cylinder block and the crankshaft bearing cap housing/main bearing ladder. Apply a thin bead of RTV sealant to the bearing cap housing mating surface (see illustration). Peugeot recommend the use of Loctite Autojoint Noir for this purpose.

**38** Lubricate the lower bearing shells with clean engine oil, then refit the bearing cap housing, ensuring that the shells are not displaced, and that the locating dowels engage correctly.

**39** Install the large and small crankshaft bearing cap housing/ladder retaining bolts, and screw them in until they are just making contact with the housing.

**40** Working in sequence, tighten all the M11 bolts to the Stage 1 torque setting given in the Specifications (see illustration). Now tighten all the M6 bolts to the Stage 2 torque setting (finger-tight).

**41** Fully slacken all the M11 bolts (Stage 3), then tighten them to the Stage 4 setting, working in the correct sequence.

**42** Finally tighten all the M11 bolts, in the correct sequence, through the specified Stage 5 angle, using an angle tightening gauge.

**43** The M6 bolts can now be tightened to the Stage 6 torque setting.

**44** With the bearing cap housing in place, check that the crankshaft rotates freely.

**45** Refit the piston/connecting rod assemblies to the crankshaft as described in Section 18.

**46** Refit the oil pump and sump as described in Part B.

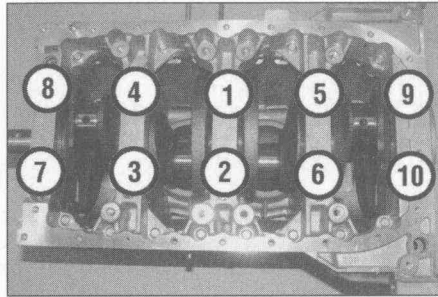
**47** Fit a new crankshaft left-hand oil seal, then refit the flywheel as described in Part B.

**48** Where removed, refit the cylinder head, crankshaft sprocket and timing belt also as described in Part B.

**1.4 litre diesel engine**

**49** Clean the backs of the bearing shells in both the cylinder block/crankcase and the main bearing ladder. If new shells are being fitted, ensure that all traces of protective grease are cleaned off using paraffin. Wipe dry the shells with a lint-free cloth.

**50** Press the bearing shells into their locations, ensuring that the tab on each shell engages in the notch in the cylinder



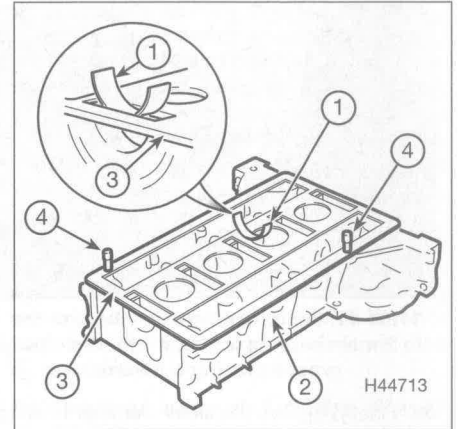
**17.40** Main bearing ladder retaining bolt tightening sequence (2.0 litre petrol engine)

block/crankcase and bearing ladder. Take care not to touch any shell's bearing surface with your fingers. Note that the upper bearing shells all have a grooved surface, whereas the lower shells have a plain bearing surface. It is essential that the lower bearing shell halves are centrally located in the ladder. To ensure this use a Peugeot tool positioned over the ladder, and insert the bearing shells through the slots in the tool (see illustration).

**51** Liberally lubricate each bearing shell in the cylinder block with clean engine oil then lower the crankshaft into position.

**52** Insert the thrustwashers to either side of No 2 main bearing upper location and push them around the bearing journal until their edges are horizontal. Ensure that the oilway grooves on each thrustwasher face outwards (away from the cylinder block). Now refit the piston and connecting rod assemblies as described in Section 18.

**53** Thoroughly degrease the mating surfaces of the cylinder block and the crankshaft bearing cap housing/main bearing ladder. Apply a thin bead of RTV sealant to the bearing cap housing mating surface (see illustration). Peugeot recommend the use of Loctite Autojoint Noir for this purpose. Use two aligning pins (available from Peugeot) inserted into the main bearing ladder, to ensure the



**17.50** Main bearing shell refitment (1.4 litre diesel engine)

- |                       |                          |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 Bearing shell       | 3 Peugeot tool No 0194-Q |
| 2 Main bearing ladder | 4 Aligning pins          |

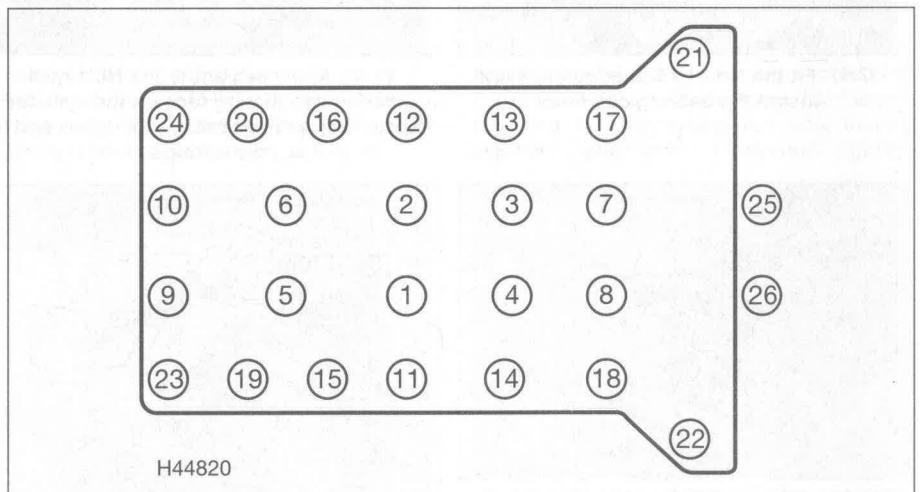
correct positioning of the assembly.

**54** Lubricate the lower bearing shells with clean engine oil, then refit the bearing cap housing, ensuring that the shells are not displaced, and that the locating dowels engage correctly. Remove the aligning pins from the bearing ladder.

**55** Install the large and small crankshaft bearing cap housing/ladder retaining bolts, and screw them in until they are just making contact with the housing. Note that new large (M11) bolts must be used.

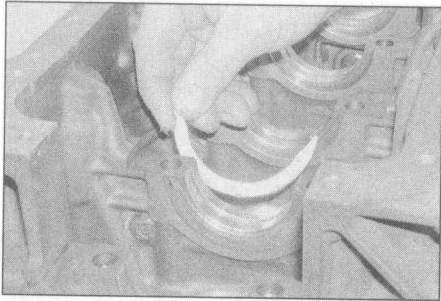
**56** Tighten all the main bearing ladder bolts to their Stage 1 setting in the sequence shown (see illustration).

**57** Slacken (Stage 2) the large diameter bearing ladder bolts half a turn (180°), then tighten them in sequence to the Stage 3 torque setting, followed by the Stage 4 angle-tightening setting. Apply sealant to the two new bearing ladder bolt caps, and tap them into place over the two flywheel end bolts.

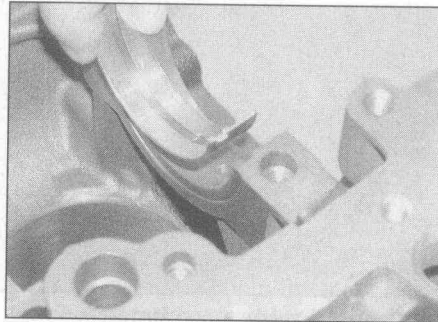


H44820

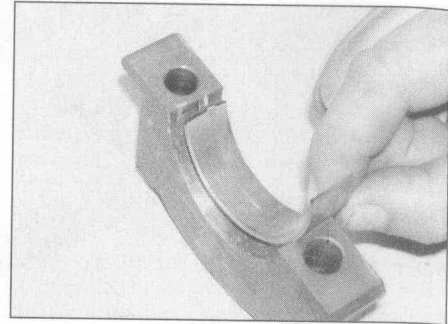
**17.56** Main bearing ladder bolts tightening sequence (1.4 litre diesel engine)



**17.63** Fit the upper thrustwashers to the No 2 main bearing location with the oilway grooves facing outwards



**17.64a** Ensure the grooved main bearing shells are fitted to the cylinder block . . .



**17.64b** . . . and plain bearing shells to the bearing caps

**58** Finally, tighten the small diameter bearing ladder bolts to their Stage 2 setting.

**59** With the bearing cap housing in place, check that the crankshaft rotates freely.

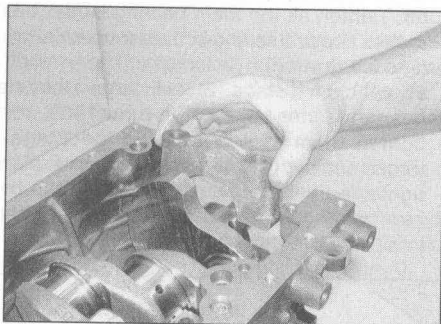
**60** Refit the oil pump and sump as described in Part C.

**61** Fit a new crankshaft left-hand oil seal, then refit the flywheel as described in Part C.

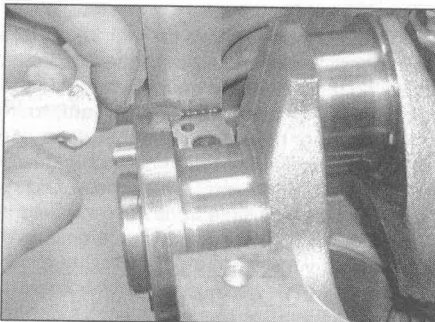
**62** Where removed, refit the cylinder head, crankshaft sprocket and timing belt also as described in Part C.

### 2.0 litre diesel engine

**63** Using a little grease, stick the thrustwashers to each side of No 2 main bearing upper location and bearing cap (**see illustration**). Ensure that the oilway grooves on each thrustwasher face outwards (away from the cylinder block).



**17.67** Fit the No 2 to 5 bearing caps and install the bearing cap bolts



**17.68** Apply sealant to the No 1 main bearing cap mating face on the cylinder block, around the sealing strip holes and in the corners

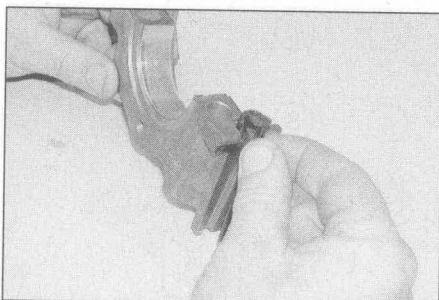
correct locations, ensuring that they are fitted the correct way round (the bearing shell tab recesses in the block and caps must be on the same side) (**see illustration**). Ensure the thrustwashers remain correctly fitted to No 2 bearing cap then refit the bearing cap bolts, tightening them only lightly at this stage. Check the crankshaft endfloat as described in Section 13.

**68** Apply a small amount of sealant to the No 1 main bearing cap mating face on the cylinder block, around the sealing strip holes (**see illustration**).

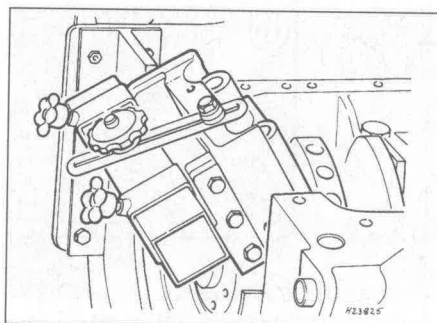
**69** Locate the tab of each sealing strip over the pins on the base of No 1 bearing cap, and press the strips into the bearing cap grooves. It is now necessary to obtain two thin metal strips, of 0.25 mm thickness or less, in order to prevent the strips moving when the cap is being fitted. Peugeot garages use the tool shown, which acts as a clamp. Metal strips (such as old feeler blades) can be used, provided all burrs which may damage the sealing strips are first removed (**see illustrations**).

**70** Where applicable, oil both sides of the metal strips, and hold them on the sealing strips. Fit the No 1 main bearing cap, insert the bolts loosely, then carefully pull out the metal strips in a horizontal direction, using a pair of pliers (**see illustration**).

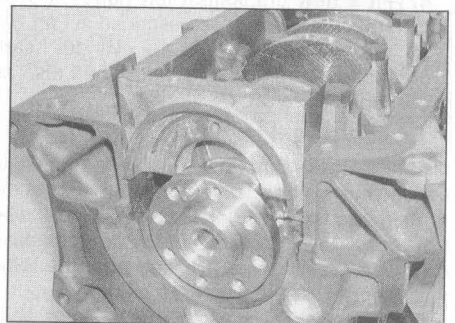
**71** Working in sequence (**see illustration**), tighten the main bearing cap bolts evenly and progressively to the specified Stage 1 torque wrench setting. Once all the bolts have been tightened to the Stage 1 setting, working in



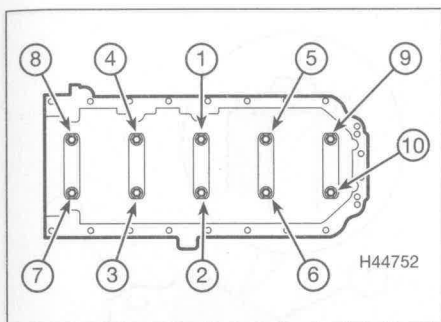
**17.69a** Fit the sealing strips to each side of No 1 main bearing cap, ensuring they are correctly engaged with the pins



**17.69b** Using the Peugeot special tool to fit the No 1 main bearing cap



**17.70** Fit the No 1 main bearing cap using metal strips to retain the sealing strips



**17.71 Main bearing cap bolt tightening sequence (2.0 litre diesel engines)**

the specified sequence, angle-tighten the bolts through the specified Stage 2 angle, using a socket and extension bar. It is recommended that an angle-measuring gauge is used during this stage of the tightening, to ensure accuracy. If a gauge is not available, use a dab of white paint to make alignment marks between the bolt head and casting prior to tightening; the marks can then be used to check that the bolt has been rotated sufficiently during tightening.

**72** Check that the sealing strips protrude slightly from above the cylinder block/crankcase mating surface by approximately 1 mm. If not, remove the bearing cap again and refit; the seals are supplied the correct length and should not be cut. Also check that the crankshaft rotates freely.

**73** Fit a new crankshaft left-hand (flywheel end) oil seal as described in Part C.

**74** Refit the piston/connecting rod assemblies to the crankshaft as described in Section 18.

**75** Fit a new sealing ring (where fitted) the crankshaft then refit the Woodruff key and slide on the oil pump drive sprocket and spacer. Locate the drive chain on the sprocket.

**76** Ensure that the mating surfaces of the right-hand (timing belt end) oil seal housing and cylinder block are clean and dry. Note the correct fitted depth of the oil seal then, using a large flat-bladed screwdriver, lever the old seal out of the housing.

**77** Apply a smear of suitable sealant to the oil seal housing mating surface. Ensure that the locating dowels are in position, then slide the housing over the end of the crankshaft and

into position on the cylinder block. Tighten the housing retaining bolts to the specified torque.

**78** Fit a new crankshaft right-hand (timing belt end) oil seal as described in Part C.

**79** Ensuring that the drive chain is correctly located on the sprocket, refit the oil pump and sump as described in Part C.

**80** Refit the flywheel as described in Part C of this Chapter.

**81** Refit the cylinder head (where removed) as described in Part C. Also refit the crankshaft sprocket and timing belt (see Part C).

**18 Piston/connecting rod assembly – refitting**



**Note:** New big-end cap nuts/bolts must be used on refitting.

**1** Note that the following procedure assumes that the cylinder liners (aluminium block petrol engines) are in position in the cylinder block/crankcase as described in Section 11, and that the crankshaft and main bearing ladder/caps are in place – except on the 1.4 litre diesel engine where the crankshaft is fitted after the pistons (see Section 17).

**2** Clean the backs of the bearing shells, and the bearing locations in both the connecting rod and bearing cap.

**All engines except 1.4 litre diesel**

**3** Press the bearing shells into their locations, ensuring that the tab on each shell engages in the notch in the connecting rod and cap. Take care not to touch any shell's bearing surface with your fingers (see illustration).

**All engines**

**4** Lubricate the cylinder bores, the pistons, and piston rings, then lay out each piston/connecting rod assembly in its respective position.

**5** Start with assembly No 1. Make sure that the piston rings are still spaced as described in Section 16, then clamp them in position with a piston ring compressor.

**6** Insert the piston/connecting rod assembly into the top of cylinder/liner No 1, ensuring the piston is correctly positioned as follows.

a) On petrol engines, ensure that the arrow on the piston crown is pointing towards the timing belt end of the engine.

b) On 1.4 litre diesel engines, ensure that the DIST mark or arrow on the piston crown is towards the timing belt end of the engine.

c) On 2.0 litre diesel engines, ensure that the valve recesses on the piston crown are towards the rear of the cylinder block.

**7** Once the piston is correctly positioned, using a block of wood or hammer handle against the piston crown, tap the assembly into the cylinder/liner until the piston crown is flush with the top of the cylinder/liner (see illustration).

**All engines except 1.4 litre diesel**

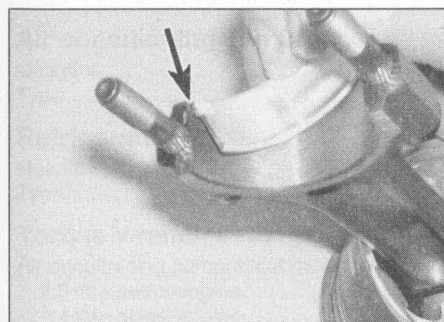
**8** Ensure that the bearing shell is still correctly installed. Liberally lubricate the crankpin and both bearing shells. Taking care not to mark the cylinder/liner bores, pull the piston/connecting rod assembly down the bore and onto the crankpin. Refit the big-end bearing cap and fit the new nuts, tightening them finger-tight at first (see illustration). Note that the faces with the identification marks must match (which means that the bearing shell locating tabs abut each other).

**9** On petrol engines, tighten the bearing cap retaining nuts evenly and progressively to the specified torque setting.

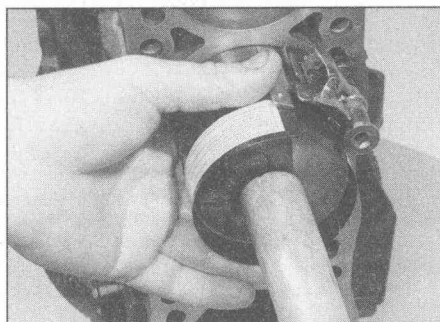
**10** On 2.0 litre diesel engines, tighten the bearing cap retaining nuts evenly and progressively to the Stage 1 torque setting. Once both nuts have been tightened to the Stage 1 setting, angle-tighten them through the specified Stage 2 angle, using a socket and extension bar. It is recommended that an angle-measuring gauge is used during this stage of the tightening, to ensure accuracy. If a gauge is not available, use a dab of white paint to make alignment marks between the nut and bearing cap prior to tightening; the marks can then be used to check that the nut has been rotated sufficiently during tightening.

**1.4 litre diesel engine**

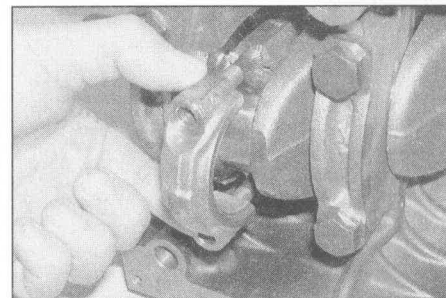
**11** On these engines, the connecting rod is made in one piece, and the big-end bearing cap is 'cracked' off. This ensures that the cap fits onto the connecting rod only in one position, and with maximum rigidity.



**18.3 Ensure the bearing shell tab (arrowed) locates correctly in the cut-out**



**18.7 Tap the piston into the bore using a hammer handle**



**18.8 Fit the big-end bearing cap, ensuring it is fitted the right way around, and screw on the new nuts**



Consequently, there are no locating notches for the bearing shells to fit into.

**12** To ensure that the big-end bearing shells are centrally located in the connecting rod and cap, two special tools are available from Peugeot. These half-moon shaped tools are pressed in from either side of the rod/cap and locate the shell exactly in the centre (**see illustration**). Fit the shells into the connecting rods and big-end caps and lubricate them with plenty of clean engine oil.

**13** Pull the connecting rods and pistons down the bores and onto the crankshaft journals. Fit the big-end caps – they will only fit properly one way round (see paragraph 11), and insert the new bolts.

**14** Tighten the bolts to the Stage 1 torque setting, then slacken them 180° (Stage 2). Tighten the bolts to the Stage 3 setting, followed by the Stage 4 angle-tightening setting.

**15** Continue refitting the main bearing shells and ladder as described in Section 17.

### All engines

**16** Once the bearing cap retaining nuts have been correctly tightened, rotate the crankshaft. Check that it turns freely; some stiffness is to be expected if new components have been fitted, but there should be no signs of binding or tight spots.

**17** Refit the cylinder head and oil pump as described in Part A, B or C of this Chapter (as applicable).

### 19 Engine – initial start-up after overhaul

**1** With the engine refitted in the vehicle, double-check the engine oil and coolant levels. Make a final check that everything has been reconnected, and that there are no tools or rags left in the engine compartment.

**2** Switch on the ignition and immediately turn the engine on the starter (do not allow the glow plugs to heat up on diesel engines) until the oil pressure warning light goes out.

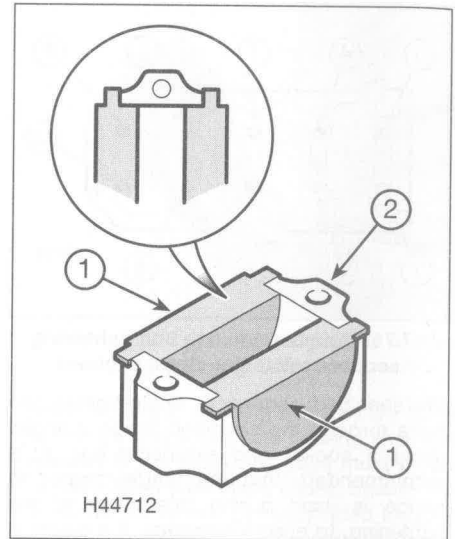
**3** Pressurise/prime the fuel system as described in Chapter 4A, Section 7, or Chapter 4B, Section 3, then start the engine, noting that this may take a little longer than usual, due to the fuel system components having been disturbed.

**4** While the engine is idling, check for fuel, water and oil leaks. Don't be alarmed if there are some odd smells and smoke from parts getting hot and burning off oil deposits.

**5** Assuming all is well, keep the engine idling until hot water is felt circulating through the top hose, then switch off the engine.

**6** Allow the engine to cool then recheck the oil and coolant levels as described in *Weekly checks*, and top-up as necessary.

**7** If new pistons, rings or crankshaft bearings have been fitted, the engine must



**18.12 Big-end bearing shell positioning  
(1.4 litre diesel engine)**

- 1 Peugeot tool No 0194-P
- 2 Bearing shell

be treated as new, and run-in for the first 500 miles (800 km). *Do not* operate the engine at full-throttle, or allow it to labour at low engine speeds in any gear. It is recommended that the oil and filter be changed at the end of this period.






# Chapter 3

## Cooling, heating and ventilation systems

### Contents

Air conditioning system – general information and precautions . . . . 11	Cooling system electrical sensors – general information, removal and refitting . . . . . 7
Air conditioning system components – removal and refitting . . . . 12	Cooling system hoses – disconnection and renewal . . . . . 2
Auxiliary drivebelt – checking and renewal . . . . See Chapter 1A or 1B	Electric cooling fan – removal and refitting . . . . . 6
Coolant expansion tank – removal and refitting . . . . . 3	General information and precautions . . . . . 1
Coolant level check . . . . . See <i>Weekly checks</i>	Heater/ventilation components – removal and refitting . . . . . 10
Coolant pump – removal and refitting . . . . . 8	Heating and ventilation system – general information . . . . . 9
Cooling system – draining . . . . . See Chapter 1A or 1B	Radiator – removal, inspection and refitting . . . . . 4
Cooling system – filling . . . . . See Chapter 1A or 1B	Thermostat – removal, testing and refitting . . . . . 5
Cooling system – flushing . . . . . See Chapter 1A or 1B	

### Degrees of difficulty

<b>Easy</b> , suitable for novice with little experience 	<b>Fairly easy</b> , suitable for beginner with some experience 	<b>Fairly difficult</b> , suitable for competent DIY mechanic 	<b>Difficult</b> , suitable for experienced DIY mechanic 	<b>Very difficult</b> , suitable for expert DIY or professional 
---	--	--	---	--

### Specifications

#### General

Maximum system pressure . . . . . 1.4 bars

#### Thermostat

Start of opening temperature:

Petrol engine models . . . . .	89°C
1.4 litre diesel engine models . . . . .	88°C
2.0 litre diesel engine models . . . . .	83°C

#### Air conditioning compressor oil

Quantity . . . . . 135 cc  
 Type . . . . . SP10

#### Refrigerant

Quantity . . . . . 585 ± 25 g  
 Type . . . . . R134a

#### Torque wrench settings

Air conditioning compressor mounting bolts:

	Nm	lbf ft
2.0 litre petrol engine . . . . .	45	33
1.4 litre diesel engine . . . . .	25	18
2.0 litre diesel engine . . . . .	40	30
Coolant outlet housing . . . . .	10	7

**1 General information and precautions**

**General information**

1 The cooling system is of pressurised type, comprising a coolant pump driven by the timing belt, an aluminium radiator, an expansion tank, an electric cooling fan, a thermostat, a heater matrix, and all associated hoses and switches.


2 The system functions as follows. Cold coolant in the bottom of the radiator passes through the bottom hose to the coolant pump, where it is pumped around the cylinder block and head passages. After cooling the cylinder bores, combustion surfaces and valve seats, the coolant reaches the underside of the thermostat, which is initially closed. The coolant passes through the heater, and is returned via the cylinder block to the coolant pump.

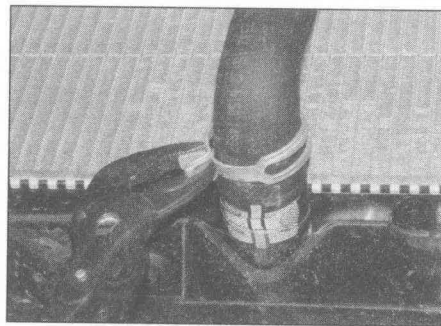
3 When the engine is cold, the coolant circulates only through the cylinder block, cylinder head, and heater. When the coolant reaches a predetermined temperature, the thermostat opens, and the coolant passes through the top hose to the radiator. As the coolant passes down through the radiator, it is cooled by the inrush of air when the car is in forward motion. The airflow is supplemented by the action of the electric cooling fan when necessary. Upon reaching the bottom of the radiator, the coolant has now cooled, and the cycle is repeated.

4 On models with automatic transmission, a proportion of the coolant is recirculated through the transmission fluid cooler mounted on the transmission. On models fitted with an engine oil cooler, the coolant is also passed through the oil cooler.


5 The operation of the electric cooling fan(s) is controlled by the engine management control unit.


**Precautions**


 **Warning: Do not attempt to remove the expansion tank filler cap, or to disturb any part of the cooling system, while the engine is hot, as there is a high risk of scalding. If the expansion tank filler cap must be removed before the engine and radiator have fully cooled (even though this is not recommended), the pressure in the cooling system must first be relieved. Cover the cap with a thick layer of cloth to avoid scalding, and slowly unscrew the filler cap until a hissing sound is heard. When the hissing has stopped, indicating that the pressure has reduced, slowly unscrew the filler cap until it can be removed; if more hissing sounds are heard, wait until they have stopped before unscrewing the cap. At all times keep well away from the filler cap opening, and protect your hands.**



**2.5 Release the retaining clip and move it along the hose**

 **Warning: Do not allow antifreeze to come into contact with your skin, or with the painted surfaces of the vehicle. Rinse off spills immediately, with plenty of water. Never leave antifreeze lying around in an open container, or in a puddle in the driveway or on the garage floor. Children and pets are attracted by its sweet smell, but antifreeze can be fatal if ingested.**

 **Warning: If the engine is hot, the electric cooling fan(s) may start rotating even if the engine is not running. Be careful to keep your hands, hair, and any loose clothing well clear when working in the engine compartment.**

 **Warning: Refer to Section 11 for precautions to be observed when working on models equipped with air conditioning.**

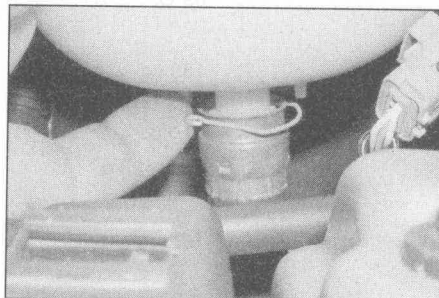
**2 Cooling system hoses – disconnection and renewal**



**Note: Refer to the warnings given in Section 1 of this Chapter before proceeding. Hoses should only be disconnected once the engine has cooled sufficiently to avoid scalding.**

1 If the checks described in the *Hose and fluid leak check* Section in Chapter 1A or 1B reveal a faulty hose, it must be renewed as follows.

2 First drain the cooling system (see Chapter 1A or 1B). If the coolant is not due for renewal, it may be re-used, providing it is collected in a clean container.



**2.12 Where click-fit connectors are used, prise out the circlip then disconnect the hose**

3 To disconnect a hose, proceed as follows, according to the type of hose connection.

**Conventional connections**

4 On conventional connections, the clips used to secure the hoses in position may be either standard worm-drive clips, spring clips or disposable crimped types. The crimped type of clip is not designed to be re-used and should be renewed with a worm drive type on reassembly.

5 To disconnect a hose, release the retaining clips and move them along the hose, clear of the relevant inlet/outlet. Carefully work the hose free. The hoses can be removed with relative ease when new – on an older car, they may have stuck (see illustration).

6 If a hose proves to be difficult to remove, try to release it by rotating its ends before attempting to free it. Gently prise the end of the hose with a blunt instrument (such as a flat-bladed screwdriver), but do not apply too much force, and take care not to damage the pipe stubs or hoses. Note in particular that the radiator inlet stub is fragile; do not use excessive force when attempting to remove the hose. If all else fails, cut the hose with a sharp knife, then slit it so that it can be peeled off in two pieces. Although this may prove expensive if the hose is otherwise undamaged, it is preferable to buying a new radiator. Check first, however, that a new hose is readily available.

7 When fitting a hose, first slide the clips onto the hose, then work the hose into position. If crimped-type clips were originally fitted, use standard worm-drive clips when refitting the hose.

8 Work the hose into position, checking that it is correctly routed, then slide each clip back along the hose until it passes over the flared end of the relevant inlet/outlet, before tightening the clip securely.



**If the hose is stiff, use a little soapy water as a lubricant or soften the hose by soaking it in hot water. Do not use oil or grease as these may attack the rubber.**

9 Refill the cooling system (see Chapter 1A or 1B).

10 Check thoroughly for leaks as soon as possible after disturbing any part of the cooling system.

**Click-fit connections**

**Note: New sealing ring should be used when reconnecting the hose.**

11 On certain models, some cooling system hoses are secured in position with click-fit connectors where the hose is retained by a large circlip.

12 To disconnect this type of hose fitting, carefully prise the wire clip out of position then disconnect the hose connection (see illustration). Once the hose has been disconnected, refit the wire clip to the hose

union. Inspect the hose unit sealing ring for signs of damage or deterioration and renew if necessary.

**13** On refitting, ensure that the sealing ring is in position and wire clip is correctly located in the groove in the union (**see illustration**). Lubricate the sealing ring with a smear of soapy water, to ease installation, then push the hose into its union until it is heard to click into position.

**14** Ensure the hose is securely retained by the wire clip then refill the cooling system as described in Chapter 1A or 1B.

**15** Check thoroughly for leaks as soon as possible after disturbing any part of the cooling system.

### 3 Coolant expansion tank – removal and refitting



#### Removal

**1** Referring to Chapter 1A or 1B, drain the cooling system sufficiently to empty the contents of the expansion tank. Do not drain any more coolant than is necessary.

**2** Remove the plastic cover from over the coolant and washer reservoirs. The cover is secured by two plastic expanding rivets. Push the centre pins in a little, then prise out the complete rivets.

**3** Slide out the retaining clips, then pull the plastic hoses from the expansion tank. On some models, the hoses may be secured by expanding clamps (**see illustrations**).

**4** Disconnect the level sensor wiring plug – where fitted (**see illustration**).

**5** Unscrew the mounting bolt and free the tank from its mount. Take care not to lose the mounting rubber.

**6** Slacken the clip and disconnect the remaining hose as the expansion tank is removed.

#### Refitting

**7** Refitting is the reverse of removal, ensuring the hoses are securely reconnected. On completion, top-up the coolant level as described in *Weekly checks*.

### 4 Radiator – removal, inspection and refitting

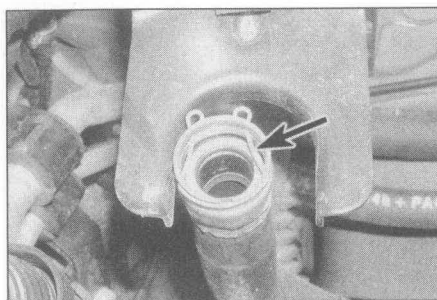


**Note:** If leakage is the reason for removing the radiator, bear in mind that minor leaks can often be cured using a radiator sealant with the radiator in situ.

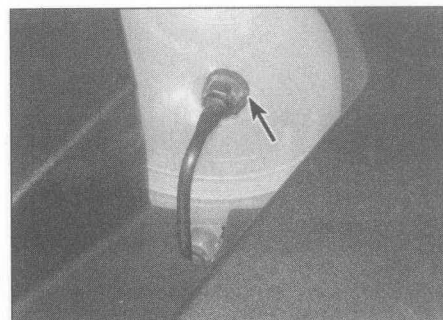
#### Removal

**1** Drain the cooling system (see Chapter 1A or 1B).

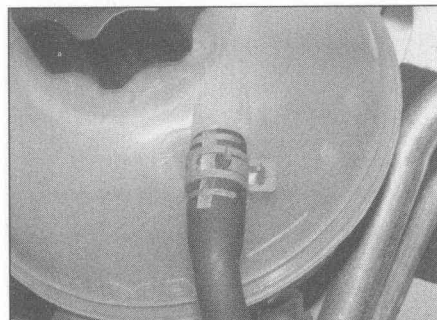
**2** Release the retaining clips and disconnect the expansion tank hose and the upper and lower coolant hoses from the radiator. The



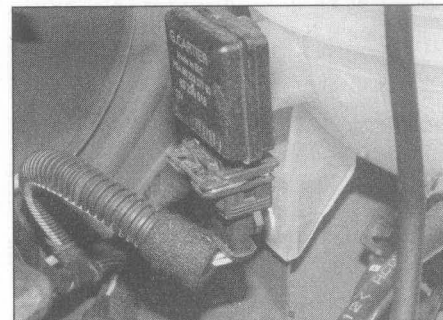
**2.13** Ensure the sealing ring and circlip (arrowed) are correctly fitted to the hose union before reconnecting a connector



**3.3a** Slide up the retaining clip (arrowed) and pull out the hose



**3.3b** Some hoses are secured by expanding clamps

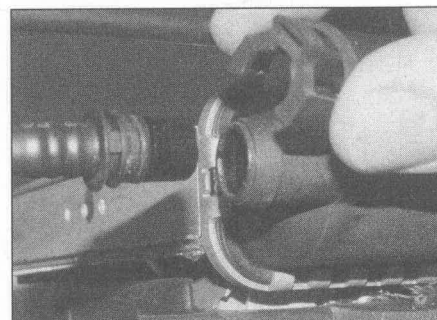


**3.4** Disconnect the level sensor wiring plug

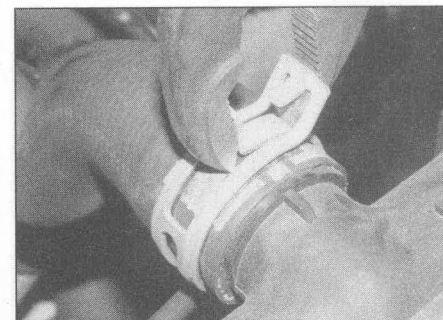
expansion tank hose clip slides up from place. Once disconnected, refit the clip to the hose end fitting (**see illustrations**).

**3** Remove the front bumper as described in Chapter 11.

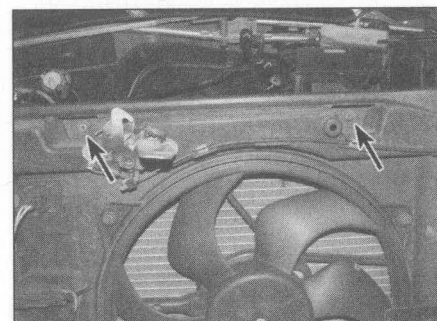
**4** Slacken and remove the retaining screws securing the radiator upper mounting brackets to the front panel. Unclip both brackets from the panel and remove them from the radiator (**see illustrations**).



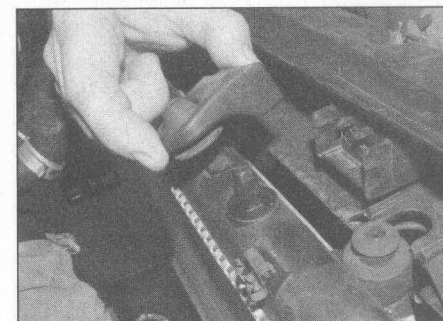
**4.2a** Slide the expansion tank hose clip up and pull out the hose



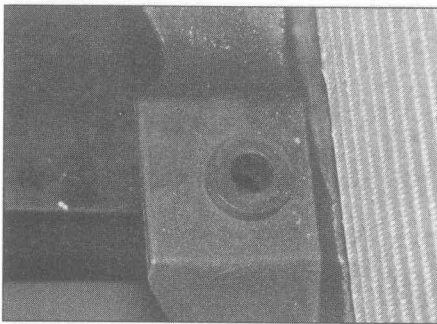
**4.2b** Release the upper and lower hose retaining clips



**4.4a** Undo the retaining screws (arrowed) . . .



**4.4b** . . . and remove the radiator upper brackets



4.5 Recover the radiator lower mounting rubbers

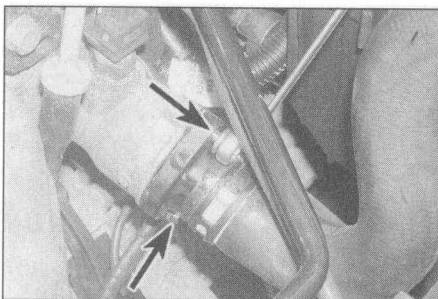
5 Carefully lift the radiator out of position, taking care not to damage the radiator fins. Recover the radiator lower mounting rubbers (see illustration).

**Inspection**

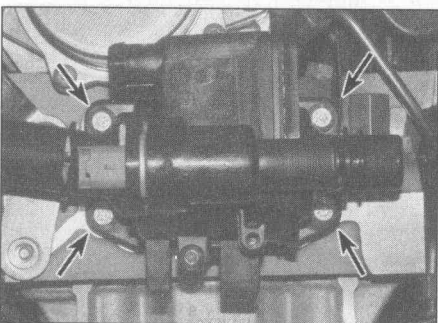
6 If the radiator has been removed due to suspected blockage, reverse-flush it as described in Chapter 1A or 1B. Clean dirt and debris from the radiator fins, using an air line (in which case, wear eye protection) or a soft brush. Be careful, as the fins are sharp, and easily damaged.

7 If necessary, a radiator specialist can perform a 'flow test' on the radiator, to establish whether an internal blockage exists.

8 A leaking radiator must be referred to a specialist for permanent repair. Do not attempt to weld or solder a leaking radiator, as damage to the plastic components may result.



5.4 On petrol engines, unscrew the retaining bolts (arrowed) and free the outlet union from the coolant housing



5.6b Undo the coolant outlet housing retaining bolts (arrowed)

9 Inspect the condition of the radiator mounting rubbers, and renew them if necessary.

**Refitting**

10 Refitting is a reversal of removal, bearing in mind the following points:

- a) Ensure that the lower lugs on the radiator are correctly engaged with the mounting rubbers in the body panel.
- b) Reconnect the hoses with reference to Section 2, using new sealing rings where applicable.
- c) On completion, refill the cooling system as described in Chapter 1A or 1B.

**5 Thermostat – removal, testing and refitting**

**Removal**

1 Drain the cooling system (see Chapter 1A or 1B).

**Petrol engines**

2 The thermostat is fitted to the coolant housing on the left-hand end of the cylinder head. To improve access, remove the battery and battery tray as described in Chapter 5A.

3 On 2.0 litre petrol engines, remove the plastic cover from the top of the engine. The cover is retained by 6 screws – rotate the screws 90° clockwise and lift the cover from place.

4 The thermostat is an integral part of the coolant housing. Disconnect the hoses from

the housing, then undo the two screws and remove the outlet (see illustration). Recover the sealing ring.

**Diesel engines**

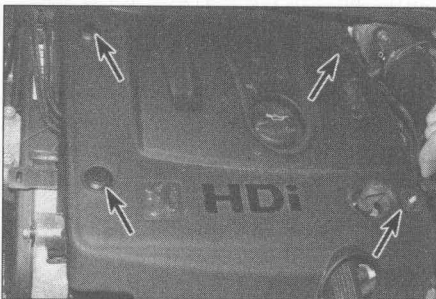
5 On 1.4 litre engines the plastic engine cover simply pulls up away from its mountings. On 2.0 litre engines remove the fasteners (rotate them 90° to release them) and lift off the plastic engine cover (see illustration). On 1.4 litre engines, the thermostat is integral with the coolant outlet housing on the left-hand end of the cylinder head. On 2.0 litre engines, the thermostat is fitted to the top of the coolant outlet housing on the left-hand end of the cylinder head.

6 On 1.4 litre engines, disconnect the coolant hoses from the outlet housing, and the wiring plug from the coolant temperature sensor. Note that some of the hoses are disconnected after pressing down on the white-coloured release button. Undo the four screws and remove the housing (see illustrations).

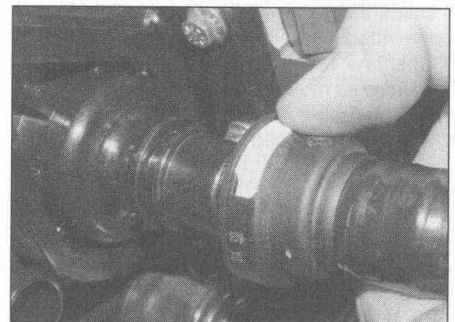
7 On 2.0 litre engines, unscrew the retaining bolts and free the outlet union from the housing to expose the thermostat, taking care not to strain the hose. Remove the thermostat from the housing, noting which way around it is fitted, and recover the sealing ring (see illustrations).

**Testing**

8 A rough test of the thermostat may be made by suspending it with a piece of string in a container full of water. Heat the water to bring it to the boil – the thermostat must open by the time the water boils. If not, renew it.



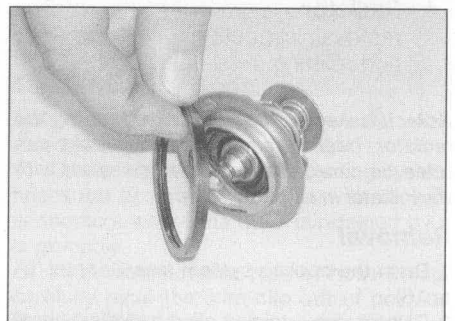
5.5 Undo the fasteners (arrowed) and remove the engine plastic cover (2.0 litre diesel engine)



5.6a Press down the release button and disconnect the hose



5.7a Lift the thermostat from its housing ...



5.7b ... and remove the sealing ring

9 If a thermometer is available, the precise opening temperature of the thermostat may be determined; compare with the figures given in the Specifications. The opening temperature is also marked on the thermostat.

10 A thermostat which fails to close as the water cools must also be renewed.

### Refitting

11 Refitting is a reversal of removal, bearing in mind the following points.

- Examine the sealing ring for damage or deterioration, and if necessary, renew. On 1.4 litre diesel engines, the seal is not available separately from the housing.
- Where a separate thermostat is fitted, ensure that it is fitted the correct way round, with the spring(s) facing into the housing.
- On completion, refill the cooling system as described in Chapter 1A or 1B.

## 6 Electric cooling fan – removal and refitting



### Removal

1 The cooling fan can be removed on its own or complete with the front panel assembly. Proceed as described under the relevant sub-heading.

### Cooling fan

2 Remove the front bumper as described in Chapter 11.

3 Slacken and remove the four bolts and washers securing the cooling fan to the front panel. Recover the collar from the rear of each mounting rubber (see illustration).

4 Release the retaining clips and remove the louvered panel to the right of the fan, then lift the retaining clip then disconnect the wiring connector. Manoeuvre the fan assembly out of position (see illustrations).

### Cooling fan and front panel

5 Remove the radiator as described in Section 4. On models with air conditioning, move the condenser and dehydrator slightly to the rear – there is no need to disconnect the refrigerant pipes.

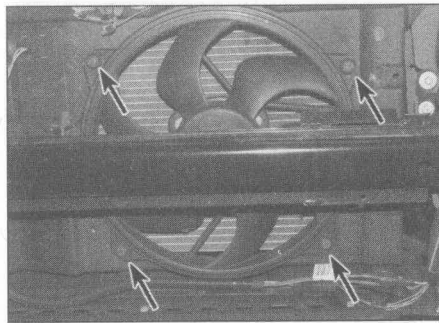
6 Undo the two bolts securing the bonnet lock to the front panel, then remove the retaining clips and free the bonnet release cable from the front panel (see illustration).

7 Disconnect the wiring plugs at the left-hand lower edge of the panel (see illustration).

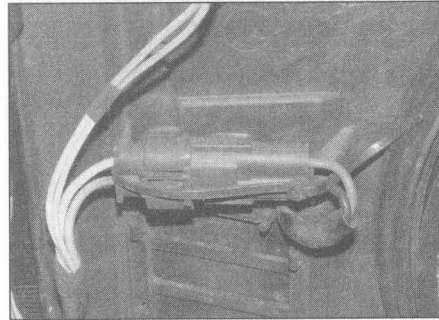
8 Slacken and remove the two retaining screws securing the front trim panel in position. Carefully remove the panel from the vehicle (see illustrations).

### Refitting

9 Refitting is a reversal of removal.



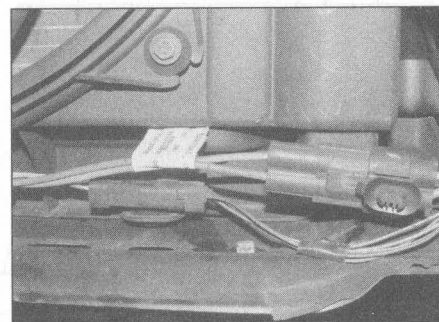
6.3 Undo the four cooling fan screws (arrowed)



6.4b ... then disconnect the fan wiring plug

### Cooling fan relays

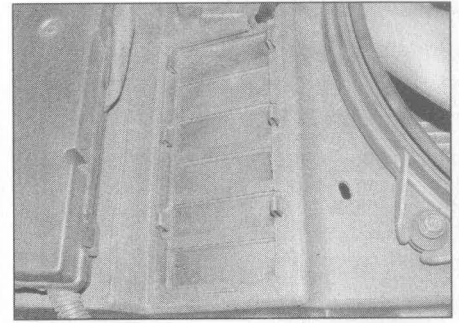
10 The relays are fitted to the front panel and are located behind the cover on the right-hand side of the cooling fan.



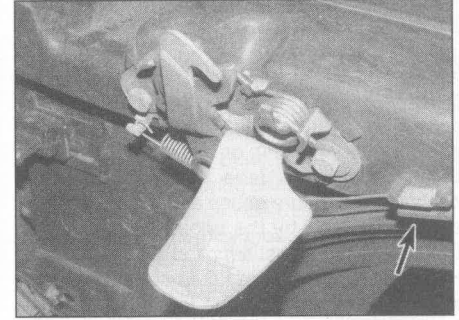
6.7 Disconnect the wiring plugs in the left-hand corner of the cooling fan panel



6.8b ... and the left-hand side



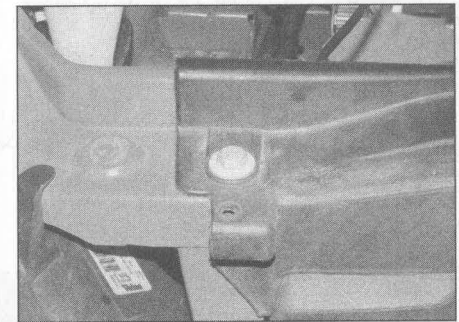
6.4a Release the retaining clips and remove the louvered panel ...



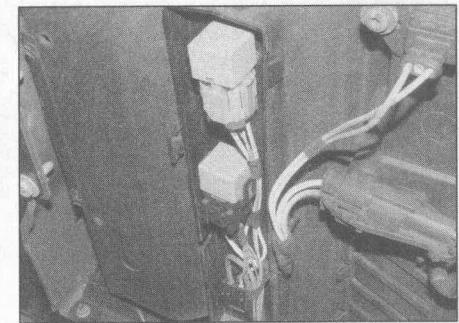
6.6 Undo the bonnet locks bolts, and free the cable from its retaining clips (arrowed)

11 To gain access to the relays, remove the front bumper as described in Chapter 11.

12 Release the clips and remove the cover from the front panel. The relays can then be removed (see illustration).



6.8a Undo the screw on the right ...



6.12 Cooling fan relays

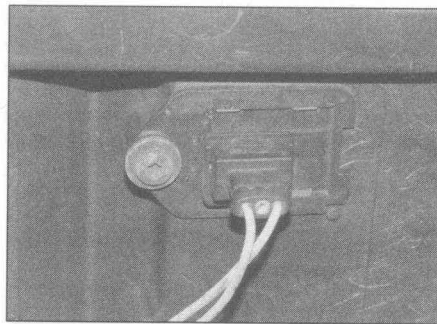
### Cooling fan resistor

#### Models with air conditioning

**13** The cooling fan resistor is fitted to the front panel and is also located on the right-hand side of the cooling fan.

**14** To gain access to the resistor, remove the front bumper as described in Chapter 11.

**15** Disconnect the wiring connector then undo the retaining screw and remove the resistor from the front panel (see illustration).



6.15 Cooling fan resistor

#### 7 Cooling system electrical sensors – general information, removal and refitting



#### General information

**1** There is only one coolant temperature sensor on most models, which is fitted to the coolant outlet housing on the left-hand end of the cylinder head (see illustrations). The coolant temperature gauge and the cooling fan are all operated by the engine management ECU using the signal supplied by this sensor. However, on 1.4 and 1.6 litre models, two sensors are fitted. The one fitted to the outlet housing is for the temperature gauge, and the one screwed into the left-hand end of the cylinder head is for the engine management ECU.

#### Removal

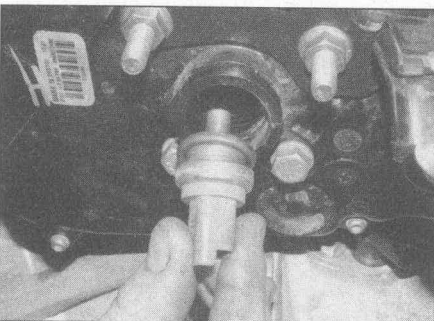
**Note:** Ensure the engine is cold before removing a temperature sensor.



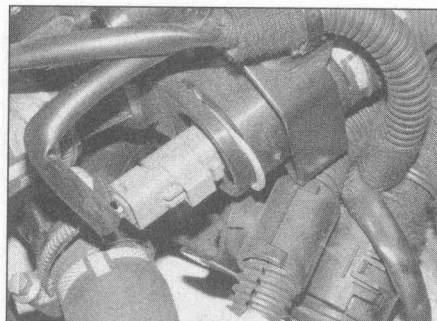
7.1a Coolant temperature sensors (arrowed) (1.6 litre petrol engine, 1.4 litre similar) ...



7.1b ... 2.0 litre petrol engine ...



7.1c ... 2.0 litre diesel engine ...



7.1d ... and 1.4 litre diesel engine

drained, plug the sensor aperture to prevent further coolant loss.

#### Refitting

**6** Where the sensor was clipped in place, fit a new sealing ring to the sensor. Push the sensor firmly into the housing and secure it in position with the circlip, ensuring it is correctly located in the housing groove.

**7** On all other engines, if the sensor was originally fitted using sealing compound, clean the sensor threads thoroughly, and coat them with fresh sealing compound. If the sensor was originally fitted using a sealing washer, use a new sealing washer. Fit the sensor and tighten securely.

**8** Reconnect the wiring connector then refit any components removed from access. If removed, refit the battery.

**9** Top-up the cooling system as described in *Weekly checks*.

#### 8 Coolant pump – removal and refitting



#### Removal

**1** Drain the cooling system (see Chapter 1A or 1B).

**2** Remove the timing belt as described in Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C as applicable.

#### All except 2.0 litre petrol engine

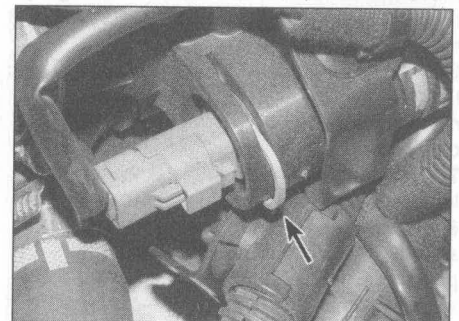
**3** Slacken and remove the retaining bolts and withdraw the pump assembly from the engine. Recover the pump sealing ring/gasket (as applicable) and discard it; a new one must be used on refitting (see illustrations). Note that on some engines, the sealing ring is not available separately from the pump – check with your Peugeot dealer.

#### 2.0 litre petrol engine

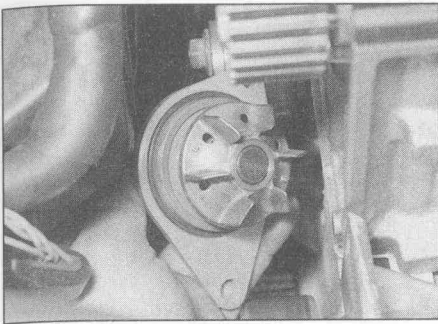
**4** Remove the heat shield from the pump, then undo the bolts securing the pump to the cylinder block (see illustration). Do not undo the bolts securing the two halves of the pump together. Withdraw the pump.

#### Refitting

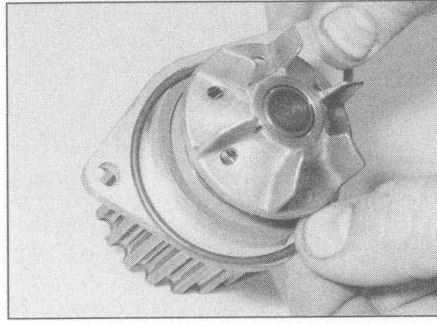
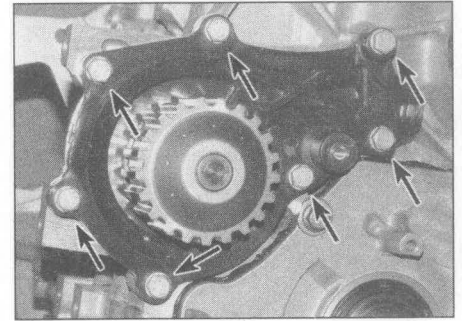
**5** Ensure that the pump and cylinder



7.4 Prise out the clip (arrowed) and pull out the sensor



8.3a Remove the coolant pump . . .

8.3b . . . and recover the sealing ring  
(1.4 litre petrol engine)8.3c Undo the coolant pump bolts  
(arrowed) (1.4 litre diesel engine)

block/housing mating surfaces are clean and dry.

6 Fit the new sealing ring/gasket (as applicable) to the pump then refit the pump assembly, tightening its retaining bolts securely.

7 Refit the timing belt as described in Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C (as applicable).

8 Refill the cooling system as described in Chapter 1A or 1B (as applicable).

## 9 Heating and ventilation system – general information

**Note:** Refer to Section 11 for information on the air conditioning side of the system.

### Manually-controlled system

1 The heating/ventilation system consists of a four-speed blower motor (housed behind the fascia), face level vents in the centre and at each end of the fascia, and air ducts to the front footwells.

2 The control unit is located in the fascia, and the controls operate flap valves to deflect and mix the air flowing through the various parts of the heating/ventilation system. The flap valves are contained in the air distribution housing, which acts as a central distribution unit, passing air to the various ducts and vents.

3 Cold air enters the system through the grille in the scuttle. If required, the airflow is boosted by the blower, and then flows through the various ducts, according to the settings of the controls. Stale air is expelled through ducts at the rear of the vehicle. If warm air is required, the cold air is passed over the heater matrix, which is heated by the engine coolant.

4 A recirculation lever enables the outside air supply to be closed off, while the air inside the vehicle is recirculated. This can be useful to prevent unpleasant odours entering from outside the vehicle, but should only be used briefly, as the recirculated air inside the vehicle will soon become stale.

5 On some diesel engine models an electric heater is fitted into the heater housing. When the coolant temperature is cold, the heater warms the air before it enters the heater matrix. This quickly increases the temperature of the heater matrix on cold starts, resulting in warm air being available to heat the vehicle interior soon after start-up.

### Automatic climate control

6 A fully automatic electronic climate control system was offered as an option on some models. The main components of the system are exactly the same as those described for the manual system, the only major difference

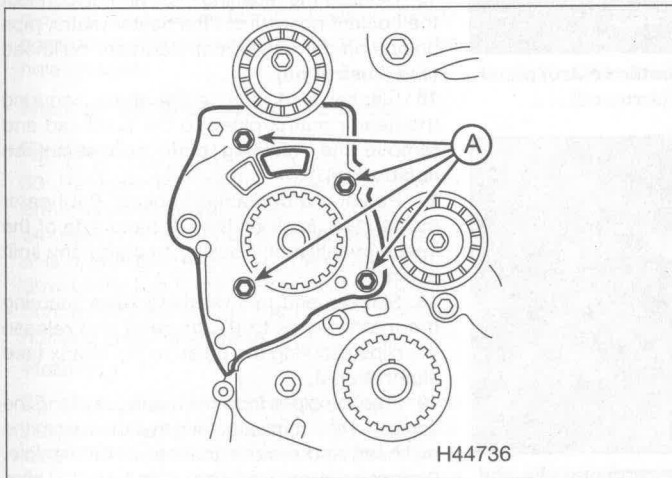
being that the temperature and distribution flaps in the heating/ventilation housing are operated by electric motors rather than cables.

7 The operation of the system is controlled by the electronic control module (which is incorporated in the blower motor assembly) along with the following sensors.

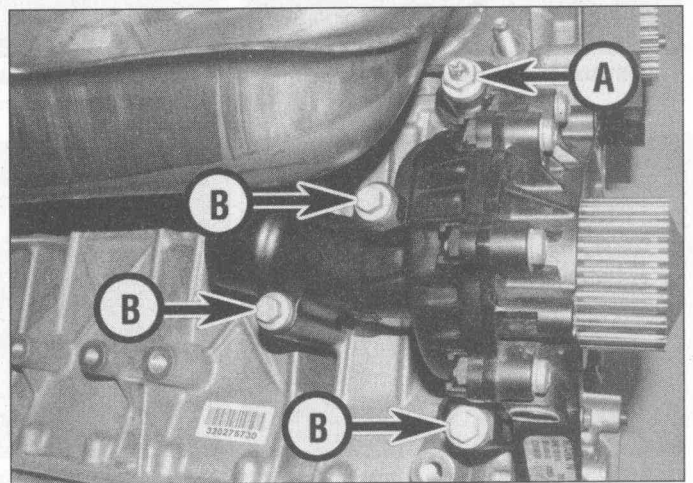
- a) The passenger compartment sensor – informs the control module of the temperature of the air inside the passenger compartment.
- b) Evaporator temperature sensor – informs the control module of the evaporator temperature.
- c) Heater matrix temperature sensor – informs the control module of the heater matrix temperature.

8 Using the information from the above sensors, the control module determines the appropriate settings for the heating/ventilation system housing flaps to maintain the passenger compartment at the desired setting on the control panel.

9 If the system develops a fault, the vehicle should be taken to a Peugeot dealer. A complete test of the system can then be carried out, using a special electronic diagnostic test unit which is simply plugged into the system's diagnostic connector (located next to the fusebox).



8.3d Coolant pump bolts (A) (2.0 litre diesel engine)

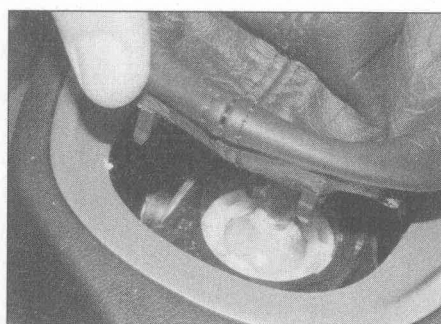


8.4 Coolant pump retaining nut (A) and bolts (B)





10.3 Undo the two screws (arrowed) below the control panel



10.4a Unclip the gear lever gaiter . . .



10.4b . . . or unclip the selector lever display surround trim

## 10 Heater/ventilation components – removal and refitting



### Control panel

#### Removal

- 1 Remove the audio unit (see Chapter 12).
- 2 Press down the retaining clip, and remove the ashtray from the centre console.
- 3 Undo the two screws below the control panel, and remove the storage compartment rubber trim (see illustration).
- 4 On models equipped with manual transmission, unclip the gear lever gaiter from the centre console. On models with automatic transmission, carefully unclip the selector lever display surround trim from place (see illustrations).



10.5 Starting at the top, unclip the trim panel

5 Starting at the top, carefully unclip the trim panel from around the heater controls, and pass the gear lever gaiter/selector lever through the panel (see illustration).

6 Undo the four retaining screws, release the two retaining clips and tilt the control panel forward, then manoeuvre it from the console (see illustrations).

7 On models with a manual control panel, disconnect the wiring connectors from the rear of the control panel. Note the correct fitted location of each control cables (the end fittings are colour-coded) then unhook the cable retaining clips. Detach the cables and remove the control panel from the vehicle.

8 On models with an automatic climate control system, disconnect the wiring connectors and remove the control panel from the vehicle.

#### Refitting

9 Refitting is the reverse of removal. On

models with a manual control panel, ensure the control cables are correctly reconnected and securely held by the retaining clips; check the operation of the control knobs before securing the control panel to the fascia.

### Control cables

#### Removal

- 10 Remove the fascia (see Chapter 11).
- 11 Release the retaining clip and detach the relevant cable from the rear of the control panel and the heating/ventilation housing. Remove the cable, noting its correct routing.

#### Refitting

12 Refitting is the reverse of removal, ensuring the cable is securely retained by its clips. Check the operation of the control panel and cables before refitting the fascia (see Chapter 11).

### Heater matrix

#### Removal

13 To improve access to the matrix unions on the bulkhead, remove the battery and battery tray as described in Chapter 5A. Where necessary also remove the air cleaner housing intake duct (see Chapter 4A or 4B).

14 Drain the cooling system (see Chapter 1A or 1B). Alternatively, clamp the heater matrix coolant hoses to minimise coolant loss.

15 Release the retaining clips and disconnect the coolant hoses from the heater matrix pipe unions on the engine compartment bulkhead (see illustration).

16 Slacken and remove the screw securing the heater matrix pipes to the bulkhead and remove the retaining plate and seal (see illustration).

17 Position a container beneath the heater matrix pipe union on the left-hand side of the heating/ventilation housing to catch any spilt coolant.

18 Slacken and remove the screws securing the matrix pipes to the housing and release the clips securing the pipes to the matrix (see illustrations).

19 Free the pipes from the matrix, catching the coolant in the container, then free them from the bulkhead and remove them from the vehicle. Recover the sealing rings fitted to the pipe unions and discard them; new ones should be



10.6a Undo the four heater control panel retaining screws (arrowed) . . .



10.6b . . . and release the retaining clips (arrowed)



10.15 Prise out the wire retaining clip and disconnect the heater hose

used on refitting. Take care not to lose the bulkhead seal or retaining plate from the pipes.

**20** Release the retaining clips then slide the matrix out from the housing. Keep the matrix unions uppermost as the matrix is removed to prevent coolant spillage (see illustration).

#### Refitting

**21** Ease the matrix into the housing and clip it into position.

**22** Ensure the bulkhead seal and retaining plate are correctly fitted to the matrix pipes and fit a new sealing ring to each of the pipe unions. Manoeuvre the pipe assembly into position and secure it to the matrix.

**23** Working in the engine compartment, refit the seal and retaining plate to the heater matrix pipes and securely tighten the retaining screw. Remove the clamps (where fitted) then reconnect the coolant hoses, securing them in position with the retaining clips.

**24** Refit the battery (see Chapter 5A).

**25** Refill the cooling system (see Chapter 1A or 1B).

#### Heater blower motor

##### Removal

**26** The blower motor is fitted to the top of the heating/ventilation housing, on the left-hand side.

**27** On right-hand drive models, remove the glovebox (see Section 27 of Chapter 11). Access to the motor can then be gained through the glovebox aperture.

**28** On left-hand drive models, remove the steering column as described in Chapter 10 to gain access to the motor.

**29** Where necessary, slacken and remove the retaining screw securing the motor to the housing (this screw may not be fitted).

**30** Disconnect the wiring connector(s) from the blower motor.

**31** Rotate the motor clockwise to free it from the housing then manoeuvre it out of position (see illustrations).

##### Refitting

**32** Refitting is the reverse of removal. If the motor is not a secure fit in the housing, fix it in position by fitting a self-tapping screw to the hole provided.

#### Heater blower motor resistor

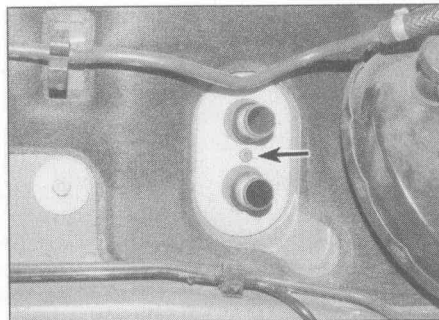
##### Removal

**33** Remove the heater blower motor as previously described.

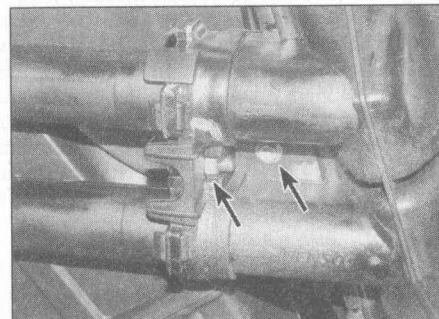
**34** Reach through the blower motor aperture and rotate the resistor to free it, and pull it down into the duct. Disconnect the wiring connector and remove the resistor from the housing (see illustration).

##### Refitting

**35** Manoeuvre the resistor into position and connect it to the wiring connector. Once the connector is securely fitted, locate the resistor in the duct and clip it in position. Refit any components removed for access.



10.16 Undo the heater pipes retaining plate screw (arrowed)

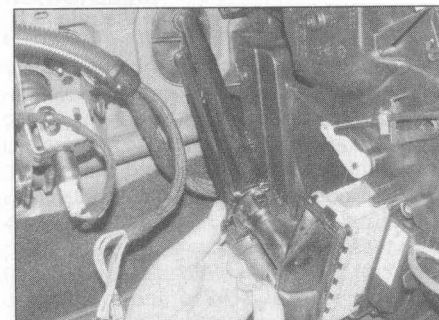


10.18b ... and the matrix (arrowed) ...

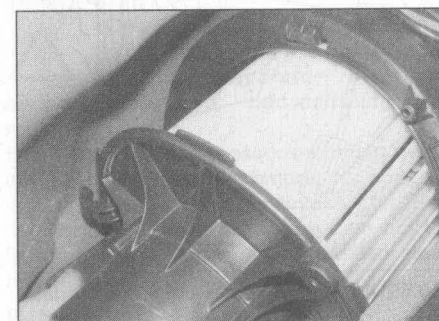
#### Housing assembly

##### Models without air conditioning – removal

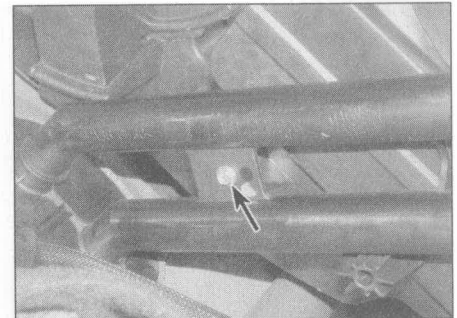
**36** To improve access to the matrix unions



10.20 Slide the matrix from the housing



10.31b ... and withdraw the blower motor



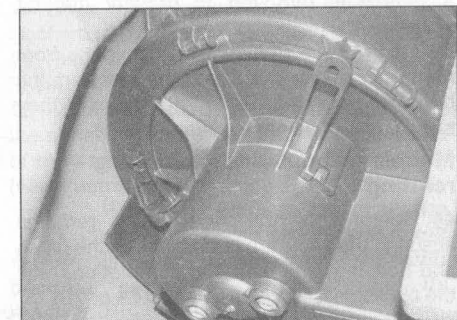
10.18a Undo the screws securing the pipes to the housing (arrowed) ...



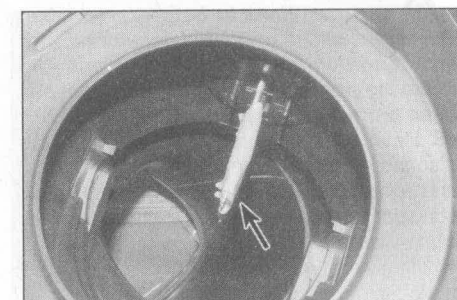
10.18c ... then release the retaining clips

on the bulkhead, remove the battery and battery tray as described in Chapter 5A. Where necessary also remove the air cleaner housing intake duct (see Chapter 4A or 4B).

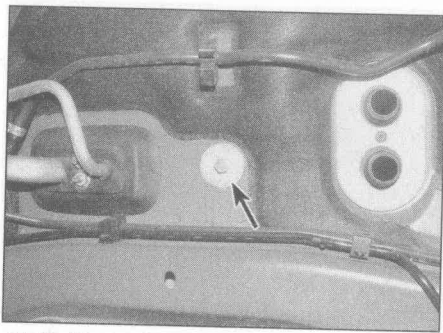
**37** Drain the cooling system (see Chapter 1A



10.31a Rotate the motor cover clockwise ...



10.34 Reach through the blower motor aperture, and rotate the resistor (arrowed) to remove it



10.40 Heater/ventilation housing retaining bolt (arrowed)

or 1B). Alternatively, working in the engine compartment, clamp the heater matrix coolant hoses to minimise coolant loss.

38 Release the retaining clips and disconnect the coolant hoses from the heater matrix pipe unions on the engine compartment bulkhead (see illustration 10.15).

39 Slacken and remove the screw securing the heater matrix pipes to the bulkhead and remove the retaining plate and seal (see illustrations 10.16).

40 Slacken and remove the bolt securing the heating/ventilation housing to the bulkhead (see illustration).

41 Remove the facia assembly as described in Chapter 11.

42 Disconnect the wiring connectors from the heating/ventilation housing components then remove the housing and control panel assembly from the vehicle. Keep the heater matrix pipe unions uppermost as the assembly is removed to prevent coolant spillage.

43 Recover the seal and retaining plate from the heater matrix pipes, and the seal from the housing mounting. Renew the seals if they show signs of damage or deterioration.

#### Models without air conditioning – refitting

44 Refitting is the reverse of removal ensuring the seals are in position on the pipes and housing mounting. On completion, refill the cooling system (see Chapter 1A or 1B).

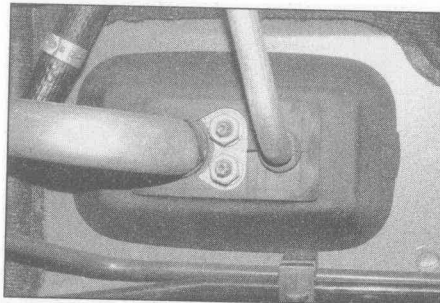
#### Models with air conditioning – removal

**Warning:** Refer to Section 11 for precautions to be observed when working on models equipped with air conditioning. Do not attempt the following procedure unless the system has been professionally discharged.

45 Have the air conditioning system discharged by an air conditioning specialist and obtain some plugs to seal the air conditioning pipe unions whilst the system is disconnected.

46 Carry out the operations described in paragraphs 36 to 39.

47 Unscrew the two nuts securing the air conditioning pipe union to the bulkhead (see illustration). Separate the pipes from the



10.47 Undo the two nuts securing the air conditioning pipes to the engine compartment bulkhead

evaporator and quickly seal the pipe and evaporator unions to prevent the entry of moisture into the refrigerant circuit. Discard the sealing rings, new ones must be used on refitting.



**Warning:** Failure to seal the refrigerant pipe unions will result in the dehydrator reservoir become saturated, necessitating its renewal.

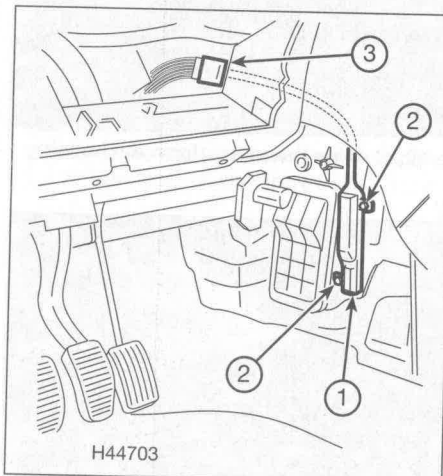
48 Remove the heating/ventilation housing assembly as described in paragraphs 40 to 43 and recover the seal from the evaporator.

#### Models with air conditioning – refitting

49 Ensure the bulkhead seals are correctly fitted to the evaporator, matrix pipes and housing mounting. Manoeuvre the housing assembly into position, locating the housing drain hose correctly in its hole in the floor.

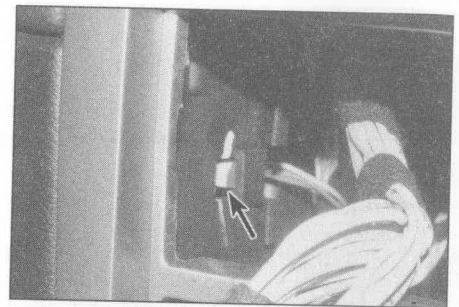
50 Loosely refit the housing mounting bolt then refit the retaining plate to the heater matrix pipe and loosely install the retaining screw.

51 Lubricate the new evaporator union sealing rings with compressor oil. Remove the plugs and install the sealing rings then quickly fit the refrigerant pipe union to the evaporator. Ensure the refrigerant pipes and evaporator



10.60 Additional heater on diesel models (LHD)

- 1 Wiring plug
- 2 Screw and clip
- 3 Heater



10.55 Unclip the passenger compartment air temperature sensor from the audio unit aperture (arrowed)

are correctly joined then refit the retaining nuts, tighten them securely.

52 Tighten the matrix pipe retaining screw securely and securely tighten the housing mounting bolt.

53 The remainder of refitting is the reverse of removal. On completion, refill the cooling system (see Chapter 1A or 1B).

#### Interior air temperature sensor

54 Remove the audio unit as described in Chapter 12.

55 Unclip the sensor from the exposed aperture, and disconnect the wiring plug (see illustration).

56 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

#### Additional heater – diesel models

##### Removal

57 On right-hand drive models, remove the glovebox and passenger side central kick panel as described in Chapter 11.

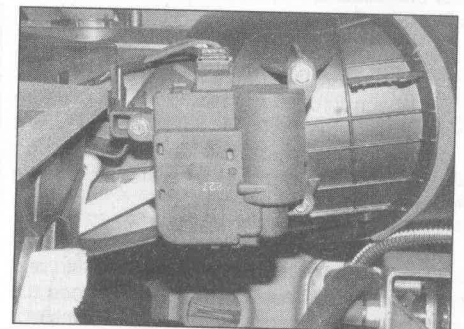
58 On left-hand drive models, remove the trim panel above the pedals, undo the two fasteners and remove the trim panel at the front of the centre console, adjacent to the pedals.

59 Undo the bolt securing the heater earth connection.

60 Disconnect the heater wiring plug, then undo the screw, release the retaining clip at the base of the unit, and slide the heater from the housing (see illustration).

##### Refitting

61 Refitting is the reverse of removal.



10.63 Air recirculation motor

## Air recirculation motor

62 On right-hand drive models, remove the lower fascia trim panel, then undo the two fasteners and remove the centre console side panel at the front (adjacent to the pedals).

63 Disconnect the motor wiring plug, undo the bolts, and remove the motor (see illustration).

64 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

## 11 Air conditioning system – general information and precautions

### General information

1 An air conditioning system is available on certain models. It enables the temperature of incoming air to be lowered, and also dehumidifies the air, which makes for rapid demisting and increased comfort.

2 The cooling side of the system works in the same way as a domestic refrigerator. Refrigerant gas is drawn into a belt-driven compressor, and passes into a condenser mounted on the front of the radiator, where it loses heat and becomes liquid. The liquid passes through an expansion valve to an evaporator, where it changes from liquid under high pressure to gas under low pressure. This change is accompanied by a drop in temperature, which cools the evaporator. The refrigerant returns to the compressor, and the cycle begins again.

3 Air blown through the evaporator passes to the heating/ventilation housing, where it is mixed with hot air blown through the heater matrix to achieve the desired temperature in the passenger compartment.

4 The heating side of the system works in the same way as on models without air conditioning (see Section 9).

5 The operation of the system is controlled electronically by the ECU integral with the control panel. Any problems with the system should be referred to a Peugeot dealer, or suitably-equipped specialist.

### Precautions

6 When an air conditioning system is fitted, it is necessary to observe special precautions whenever dealing with any part of the system, or its associated components. The refrigerant is potentially dangerous, and should only be handled by qualified persons. Uncontrolled discharging of the refrigerant is dangerous and damaging to the environment for the following reasons.

- If it is splashed onto the skin, it can cause frostbite.
- The refrigerant is heavier than air and so displaces oxygen. In a confined space which is not adequately ventilated this could lead to a risk of suffocation. The gas is odourless and colourless so there is no warning of its presence in the atmosphere.

c) Although not poisonous, in the presence of a naked flame (including a cigarette) it forms a noxious gas which causes headaches, nausea, etc.



**Warning:** Never attempt to open any air conditioning system refrigerant pipe/hose union without first having the system fully discharged by an air conditioning specialist. On completion of work, have the system recharged with the correct type and amount of fresh refrigerant.



**Warning:** Always seal disconnected refrigerant pipe/hose unions as soon as they are disconnected. Failure to form an air-tight seal on any union will result in the dehydrator reservoir become saturated, necessitating its renewal. Also renew all sealing rings disturbed.

**Caution:** Do not operate the air conditioning system if it is known to be short of refrigerant as this could damage the compressor.

## 12 Air conditioning system components – removal and refitting



**Warning:** Refer to the precautions given in Section 11 and have the system discharged by an air conditioning specialist before carrying out any work on the air conditioning system

### Compressor

#### Removal

- Have the air conditioning system fully discharged by an air conditioning specialist.
- Remove the auxiliary drivebelt as described in Chapter 1A or 1B (as applicable).
- Disconnect the compressor wiring connector from the engine harness.
- Unscrew the nuts securing the refrigerant pipes retaining plates to the compressor (see illustration). Separate the pipes from the compressor and quickly seal the pipe and compressor unions to prevent the entry of moisture into the refrigerant circuit. Discard the sealing rings, new ones must be used on refitting.

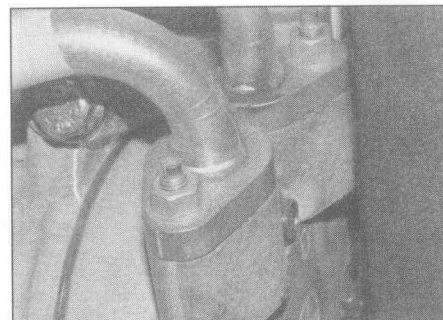


**Warning:** Failure to seal the refrigerant pipe unions will result in the dehydrator reservoir become saturated, necessitating its renewal.

- Unscrew the compressor mounting bolts and nuts then free the compressor from its mounting bracket and remove it from the engine (see illustration). Take care not to lose the spacers from the compressor rear mountings (where fitted).

#### Refitting

- Ensure the spacers are correctly fitted to the rear mountings then manoeuvre the com-



12.4 Unscrew the refrigerant pipes retaining plates nuts

pressor into position and fit the mounting bolts and nuts. Tighten the compressor front (drivebelt pulley) end mounting bolts to the specified torque first then tighten the rear bolts.

7 Lubricate the new refrigerant pipe sealing rings with compressor oil. Remove the plugs and install the sealing rings then quickly fit the refrigerant pipes to the compressor. Ensure the refrigerant pipes are correctly joined then refit the retaining bolt, tighten it securely.

8 Reconnect the wiring connector then refit the auxiliary drivebelt (see Chapter 1A or 1B).

9 Have the air conditioning system recharged with the correct type and amount of refrigerant by a specialist before using the system.

### Condenser

#### Removal

10 Have the air conditioning system fully discharged by an air conditioning specialist.

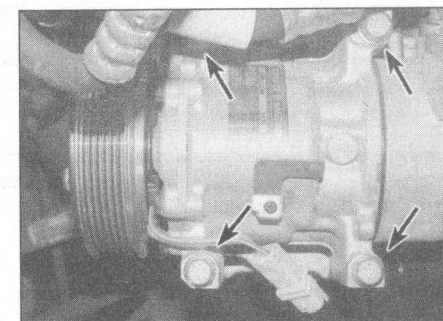
11 Remove the radiator as described in Section 4.

12 Undo the retaining nuts and disconnect the refrigerant pipes from the right-hand side of the condenser. Recover the O-ring seals (see illustration).

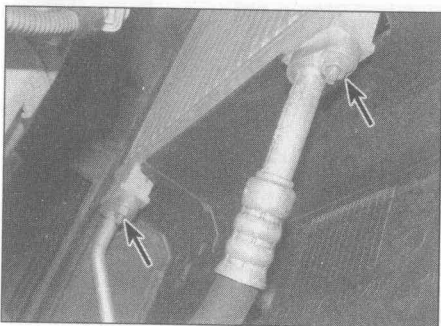


**Warning:** Failure to seal the refrigerant pipe unions will result in the dehydrator reservoir become saturated, necessitating its renewal.

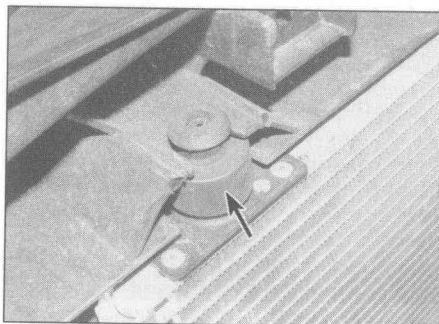
13 Move the top of the condenser to the rear and remove it.



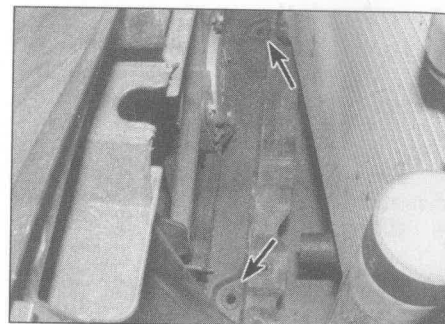
12.5 Remove the compressor mounting bolts (arrowed)



12.12 Undo the nuts (arrowed) securing the refrigerant pipes to the condenser



12.14a Ensure the condenser upper (arrowed) ...



12.14b ... and lower (arrowed) mountings are correctly fitted

**Refitting**

14 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Noting the following points:

- a) Ensure the upper and lower mounting rubbers are correctly fitted then seat the condenser in position in the front panel (see illustrations).
- b) Lubricate the sealing rings with compressor oil. Remove the plugs and install the sealing rings then quickly fit the refrigerant pipes to the condenser. Securely tighten the dehydrator pipe union nut and ensure the compressor pipe is correctly joined.
- c) Have the air conditioning system recharged with the correct type and amount of refrigerant by a specialist before using the system.

**Dehydrator filter**

**Removal**

- 15 The dehydrator filter is located on the left-hand side of the condenser.
- 16 Remove the condenser as described previously.
- 17 Slacken the dehydrator filter clamp screw, and unscrew the filter cartridge using a large Torx bit.

**Warning:** Prior to slackening the clamp, clean the dehydrator and wipe it dry, to avoid moisture/debris entering the air conditioning circuit.

**Refitting**

18 Refitting is a reversal of removal noting the following points:

- a) Lubricate the cartridge seals with compressor oil.
- b) Have the air conditioning system recharged with the correct type and amount of refrigerant by a specialist prior to using the system.

**Evaporator**

**Removal**

- 19 Have the air conditioning system fully discharged by an air conditioning specialist.
- 20 Remove the heating/ventilation housing as described in Section 9.
- 21 Release the retaining clips and separate the two halves of the heater housing.
- 22 Slide the evaporator from the housing.

**Refitting**

23 Refitting is a reversal of removal.






# Chapter 4 Part A:

## Fuel and exhaust systems – petrol models

### Contents

Accelerator cable – removal, refitting and adjustment	3	Fuel filter – renewal	See Chapter 1A
Accelerator pedal – removal and refitting	4	Fuel gauge sender unit – removal and refitting	9
Air cleaner assembly and intake ducts – removal and refitting	2	Fuel pump – removal and refitting	8
Air cleaner filter element renewal	See Chapter 1A	Fuel system – depressurisation and pressurising	7
Engine management system – general information	6	Fuel tank – removal and refitting	10
Engine management system – testing and adjustment	11	General information and precautions	1
Engine management system components – removal and refitting	13	Inlet manifold – removal and refitting	14
Exhaust manifold – removal and refitting	15	Throttle housing – removal and refitting	12
Exhaust system – general information, removal and refitting	16	Unleaded petrol – general information and usage	5

### Degrees of difficulty

<b>Easy</b> , suitable for novice with little experience 	<b>Fairly easy</b> , suitable for beginner with some experience 	<b>Fairly difficult</b> , suitable for competent DIY mechanic 	<b>Difficult</b> , suitable for experienced DIY mechanic 	<b>Very difficult</b> , suitable for expert DIY or professional 
---	--	--	---	--

### Specifications

#### System type

1.4 litre models	Sagem S2000
1.6 litre models	Bosch Motronic ME7.4.4
2.0 litre models	Magneti Marelli 4.8P

#### Fuel system data

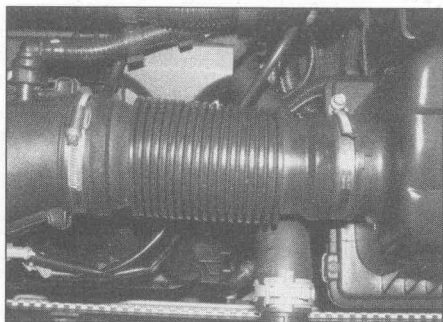
Fuel pump type	Electric, immersed in tank
Fuel pump regulated constant pressure	3.5 ± 0.2 bars
Specified idle speed	850 ± 100 rpm (not adjustable – controlled by ECU)
Idle mixture CO content	Less than 1.0% (not adjustable – controlled by ECU)

#### Recommended fuel

Minimum octane rating	95 RON unleaded (UK unleaded premium). Leaded/lead replacement fuel (LRP) must <b>not</b> be used
-----------------------	---

#### Torque wrench settings

	Nm	lbf ft
Exhaust manifold to catalytic converter	15	11
Exhaust manifold-to-cylinder head nuts	20	15
Inlet manifold nuts:		
M6	10	7
M8	20	15
Roadwheel bolts	90	66



2.1 Slacken the retaining clips and remove the air intake duct

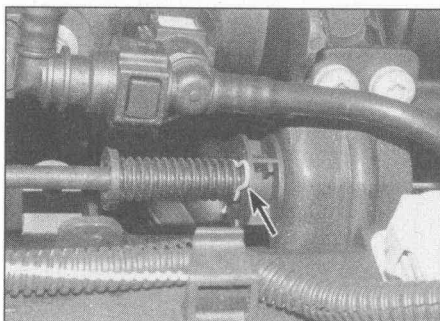
### 1 General information and precautions

1 The fuel supply system consists of a fuel tank (which is mounted under the rear of the car, with an electric fuel pump immersed in it), a fuel filter, fuel feed and return lines. The fuel pump supplies fuel to the fuel rail, which acts as a reservoir for the four fuel injectors which inject fuel into the inlet tracts. The fuel filter incorporated in the feed line from the pump to the fuel rail ensures that the fuel supplied to the injectors is clean.

2 Refer to Section 6 for further information on the operation of the engine management system, and to Section 16 for information on the exhaust system.

**Warning:** Many of the procedures in this Chapter require the removal of fuel lines and connections, which may result in some fuel spillage. Before carrying out any operation on the fuel system, refer to the precautions given in 'Safety first!' at the beginning of this manual, and follow them implicitly. Petrol is a highly dangerous and volatile liquid, and the precautions necessary when handling it cannot be overstressed.

**Note:** Residual pressure will remain in the fuel lines long after the vehicle was last used. When disconnecting any fuel line, first depressurise the fuel system as described in Section 7.



3.1 Remove the spring clip (arrowed) from the outer cable



2.2 Depress the retaining clip (arrowed) and lift the air cleaner housing from its bracket

### 2 Air cleaner assembly and intake ducts – removal and refitting

#### Removal

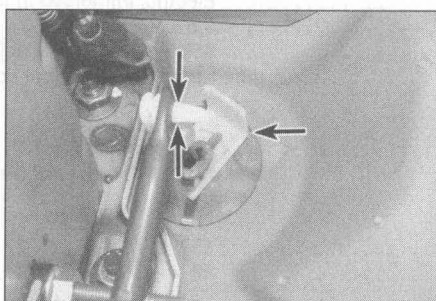
1 Slacken the retaining clips then free the duct from the manifold and air cleaner housing, and remove it from the engine compartment (see illustration).

2 Depress the retaining clip at the side, then lift the air cleaner housing assembly off of its mounting bracket and remove it from the engine compartment. Recover the mounting rubber fitted to the housing lower locating peg and the sealing ring from the housing intake duct (see illustration).

3 To remove the intake duct, firmly apply the handbrake then jack up the front of the car and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Push in the centre pins a little, then prise out the complete expanding plastic rivets, and remove the left-hand wheel arch liner. Remove the retaining bolts and remove the duct assembly from the vehicle (on 1.6 and 2.0 litre engines a resonator chamber is incorporated into the duct to reduce intake noise).

#### Refitting

4 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure, ensuring that all hoses and ducts are properly reconnected and correctly seated and, where necessary, securely held by their retaining clips.



3.4 Squeeze the tabs (arrowed), detach the inner cable from the accelerator pedal, then pull out the grommet clip (arrowed)

### 3 Accelerator cable – removal, refitting and adjustment



#### Removal

1 Working in the engine compartment, free the accelerator inner cable from the throttle housing cam, then pull the outer cable out from its mounting bracket rubber grommet. Recover the spring clip from the outer cable (see illustration).

2 Working back along the length of the cable, free it from any retaining clips or ties, noting its correct routing.

3 Working inside the vehicle, prise up the centre pins a little, then lever out the complete plastic rivets, and remove the trim above the driver's pedals.

4 Reach up behind the facia, squeeze together the sides of the retaining clip, then detach the inner cable from the top of the accelerator pedal and pull out the clip securing the bulkhead grommet (see illustration).

5 Tie a length of string to the end of the cable.

6 Return to the engine compartment, release the cable grommet from the bulkhead and withdraw the cable. When the end of the cable appears, untie the string and leave it in position – it can then be used to draw the cable back into position on refitting.

#### Refitting

7 Tie the string to the end of the cable, then use the string to draw the cable into position through the bulkhead. Once the cable end is visible, untie the string, then secure the inner cable into the pedal end.

8 Refit the bulkhead grommet clip.

9 From within the engine compartment, ensure the outer cable is correctly seated in the bulkhead grommet, then work along the cable, securing it in position with the retaining clips and ties, and ensuring that the cable is correctly routed.

10 Pass the outer cable through its mounting bracket grommet, and reconnect the inner cable to the throttle cam. Adjust the cable as described below.

#### Adjustment

11 Remove the spring clip from the accelerator outer cable (see illustration 3.1). Ensuring that the throttle cam is fully against its stop, gently pull the cable out of its grommet until all free play is removed from the inner cable.

12 With the cable held in this position, refit the spring clip to the last exposed outer cable groove in front of the rubber grommet. When the clip is refitted and the outer cable is released, there should be only a small amount of free play in the inner cable.

13 Have an assistant depress the accelerator pedal, and check that the throttle cam opens fully and returns smoothly to its stop.

#### 4 Accelerator pedal – removal and refitting

##### Removal

##### Models with accelerator cable

- 1 Detach the accelerator cable from the pedal as described in the previous Section.
- 2 On right-hand drive models, remove the retaining clip then slide out the bush and remove the accelerator pedal from the pedal pivot shaft (see illustration).
- 3 On left-hand drive models, remove the retaining clip then slide the pedal off its pivot shaft. The pivot shaft is a screw fit in the body.

##### Models without accelerator cable

- 4 Release the fasteners and remove trim panel above the pedals (see Chapter 11).
- 5 Disconnect the accelerator pedal position sensor wiring plug from the top of the pedal.
- 6 Undo the three nuts and remove the pedal assembly (see illustration).

##### Refitting

- 7 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. On models fitted with a cable, apply a little multi-purpose grease to the pedal pivot point, and adjust the accelerator cable as described in Section 3.

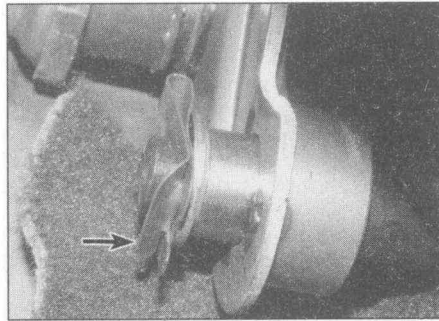
#### 5 Unleaded petrol – general information and usage

**Note:** The information given in this Chapter is correct at the time of writing. If updated information is thought to be required, check with a Peugeot dealer. If travelling abroad, consult one of the motoring organisations (or a similar authority) for advice on the fuel available.

- 1 The fuel recommended by Peugeot is given in the Specifications Section of this Chapter, followed by the equivalent petrol currently on sale in the UK.
- 2 All models are designed to run on fuel with a minimum octane rating of 95 (RON). All models have a catalytic converter, and so must be run on unleaded fuel only. Under no circumstances should leaded/lead replacement fuel (UK 4-star/LRP) be used, as this may damage the converter.
- 3 Super unleaded petrol (98 octane) can also be used in all models if wished, though there is no advantage in doing so.

#### 6 Engine management system – general information

**Note:** The fuel injection ECU is of the 'self-learning' type, meaning that as it operates, it also monitors and stores the settings which

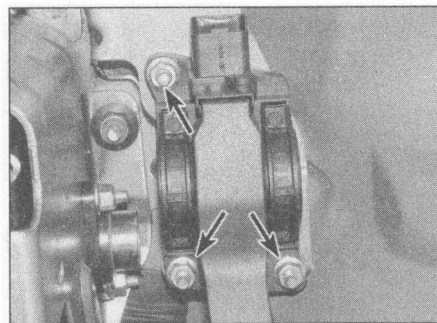


4.2 Remove the clip (arrowed) and slide out the bush

give optimum engine performance under all operating conditions. When the battery is disconnected, these settings are lost and the ECU reverts to the base settings programmed into its memory at the factory. On restarting, this may lead to the engine running/idling roughly for a short while, until the ECU has relearned the optimum settings. This process is best accomplished by taking the vehicle on a road test (for approximately 15 minutes), covering all engine speeds and loads, concentrating mainly in the 2500 to 3500 rpm region.

On all engines, the fuel injection and ignition functions are combined into a single engine management system. The systems fitted are manufactured by Bosch, Magneti Marelli and Sagem, and are very similar to each other in most respects, the only significant differences being in the software contained in the system ECU, and specific component location according to engine type. Each system incorporates a closed-loop catalytic converter and an evaporative emission control system, and complies with the latest emission control standards. Refer to Chapter 5B for information on the ignition side of each system; the fuel side of the system operates as follows.

The fuel pump supplies fuel from the tank to the fuel rail, via a renewable cartridge filter mounted on the side of the fuel tank. The pump itself is mounted inside the tank, with the pump motor permanently immersed in fuel, to keep it cool. The fuel rail is mounted directly above the fuel injectors and acts as a fuel reservoir.



4.6 Accelerator pedal mounting nuts (arrowed)

Fuel rail supply pressure is controlled by the pressure regulator, also located in the fuel tank. The regulator contains a spring-loaded valve, which lifts to allow excess fuel to recirculate within the tank when the optimum operating pressure of the fuel system is exceeded (eg, during low speed, light load cruising).

The fuel injectors are electromagnetic pintle valves, which spray atomised fuel into the combustion chambers under the control of the engine management system ECU. There are four injectors, one per cylinder, mounted in the inlet manifold close to the cylinder head. Each injector is mounted at an angle that allows it to spray fuel directly onto the back of the inlet valve(s). The ECU controls the volume of fuel injected by varying the length of time for which each injector is held open. The fuel injection systems are typically of the sequential type, whereby each injector operates individually in cylinder sequence.

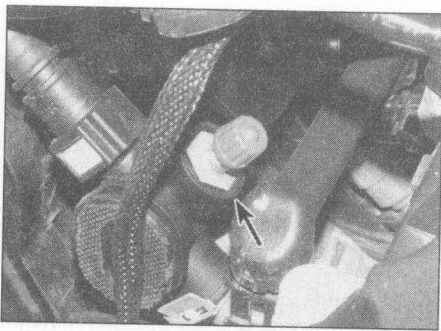
The electrical control system consists of the ECU, along with the following sensors:

- a) Throttle potentiometer – informs the ECU of the throttle valve position, and the rate of throttle opening/closing (Sagem S2000)\*.
- b) Coolant temperature sensor – informs the ECU of engine temperature.
- c) Inlet air temperature sensor – informs the ECU of the temperature of the air passing through the throttle housing.
- d) Oxygen sensors – inform the ECU of the oxygen content of the exhaust gases (explained in greater detail in Part C of this Chapter).
- e) Manifold pressure sensor – informs the ECU of the load on the engine (expressed in terms of inlet manifold vacuum).
- f) Crankshaft position sensor – informs the ECU of engine speed and crankshaft angular position.
- g) Vehicle speed sensor – informs the ECU of the vehicle speed.
- h) Knock sensor – informs the ECU of pre-ignition (detonation) within the cylinders.
- i) Camshaft sensor – informs the ECU of which cylinder is on the firing stroke on systems with sequential injection (MM 4.8.P).
- j) Accelerator pedal position sensor – informs the ECU of the pedal position and rate of change (ME7.4.4, MM 4.8.P)\*.
- k) Throttle valve positioner motor – allows the ECU to control the throttle valve position (ME7.4.4, MM 4.8.P)\*.

\* 2.0 litre petrol engines may be fitted with a manual throttle body with an accelerator cable, or a motorised throttle body with no cable.

Signals from each of the sensors are compared by the ECU and, based on this information, the ECU selects the response appropriate to those values, and controls the fuel injectors (varying the pulse width – the length of time the injectors are held open – to provide a richer or weaker air/fuel mixture, as





7.2 Fuel pressure relief valve (arrowed)

appropriate). The air/fuel mixture is constantly varied by the ECU, to provide the best settings for cranking, starting (with either a hot or cold engine) and engine warm-up, idle, cruising and acceleration.

The ECU also has full control over the engine idle speed, via a stepper motor fitted to the throttle housing. The stepper motor either controls the amount of air passing through a bypass drilling at the side of the throttle or controls the position of the throttle valve itself, depending on model. On some models, a sensor informs the ECU of the position, and rate of change, of the accelerator pedal. The ECU then controls the throttle valve by means of a throttle positioning motor integral with the throttle body – no accelerator cable is fitted. On 1.6 litre models, the accelerator cable is connected to a sensor in the left-hand front corner of the engine compartment, which informs the ECU of the accelerator pedal position. The ECU also carries out 'fine tuning' of the idle speed by varying the ignition timing to increase or reduce the torque of the engine as it is idling. This helps to stabilise the idle speed when electrical or mechanical loads (such as headlights, air conditioning, etc) are switched on and off.

The throttle housing is also fitted with an electric heating element. The heater is supplied with current by the ECU, warming the throttle housing on cold starts to help prevent icing of the throttle valve.

The exhaust and evaporative loss emission control systems are described in more detail in Chapter 4C.

If there is any abnormality in any of the readings obtained from the coolant temperature sensor, the inlet air temperature sensor or the lambda sensor, the ECU enters its 'back-up' mode. If this happens, the erroneous sensor signal is overridden, and the ECU assumes a preprogrammed 'back-up' value, which will allow the engine to continue running, albeit at reduced efficiency. If the ECU enters this mode, the warning lamp on the instrument panel will be illuminated, and the relevant fault code will be stored in the ECU memory.

If the warning light illuminates, the vehicle should be taken to a Peugeot dealer or specialist at the earliest opportunity. Once there, a complete test of the engine management system can be carried out, using a special electronic diagnostic test unit, which is plugged into the system's diagnostic connector, located behind the trim panel to the right of the steering column.

## 7 Fuel system – depressurisation and pressurising

**Note:** Refer to the warning note in Section 1 before proceeding.

### Depressurisation

**Warning:** The following procedure will merely relieve the pressure in the fuel system – remember that fuel will still be present in the system components and take precautions accordingly before disconnecting any of them.

1 The fuel system referred to in this Section is defined as the tank-mounted fuel pump, the fuel filter, the fuel injectors, the fuel rail and the pipes of the fuel lines between these components. All these contain fuel which will be under pressure while the engine is running, and/or while the ignition is switched on. The pressure will remain for some time after the ignition has been switched off, and must be relieved in a controlled fashion when any of these components are disturbed for servicing work.

2 Some models are equipped with a pressure relief valve on the fuel rail (see illustration).

On these models, unscrew the cap from the valve and position a container beneath the valve. Hold a wad of rag over the valve and relieve the pressure in the system by depressing the valve core with a suitable screwdriver. Be prepared for the squirt of fuel as the valve core is depressed and catch it with the rag. Hold the valve core down until no more fuel is expelled from the valve. Once the pressure is relieved, securely refit the valve cap.

3 Where no valve is fitted to the fuel rail, it will be necessary to release the pressure as the fuel pipe is disconnected. Place a container beneath the union and position a large rag around the union to catch any fuel spray which may be expelled. Slowly release and disconnect the fuel pipe and catch any spilt fuel in the container. Plug the pipe/union to minimise fuel loss and prevent the entry of dirt into the fuel system.

### Pressurising

4 After any work is carried out on the fuel system, the system should be pressurised as follows.

5 Depress the accelerator pedal fully then switch on the ignition. Hold the pedal depressed for approximately 1 second then release it. The ECU should then operate the fuel pump for between 20 and 30 seconds to refill the fuel system. Once the fuel pump stops the ignition can be switched off.

## 8 Fuel pump – removal and refitting

### Removal

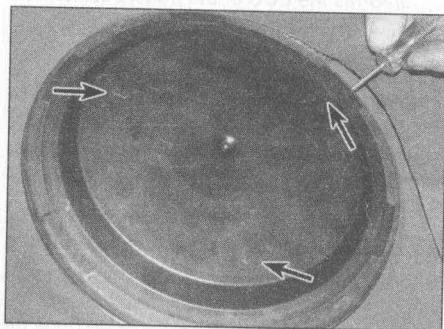
1 For access to the fuel pump, tilt or remove the right-hand rear seat cushion (see Chapter 11).

2 Using a screwdriver, carefully release the three plastic access cover retaining clips at the points indicated by the small arrows, and remove the cover from the floor to expose the fuel pump/sender unit (see illustration).

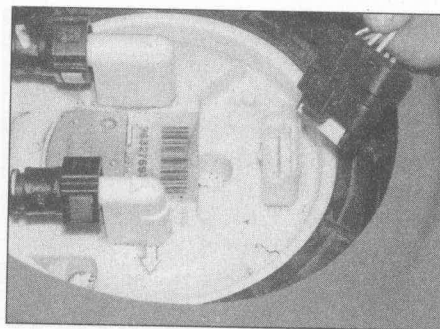
3 Disconnect the wiring connector from the fuel pump, and tape the connector to the vehicle body, to prevent it from disappearing behind the tank (see illustration).

4 Depress the retaining clip and detach the fuel pipe(s) from the top of the pump, bearing in mind the information given in Section 7 on depressurising the fuel system. Plug the pipe end(s) to minimise fuel loss and prevent the entry of dirt. On diesel models, note the pipes are identified with arrows indicating the fuel feed and return (see illustrations).

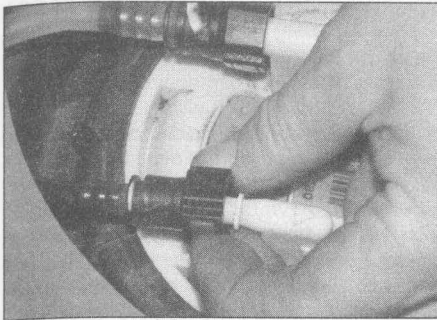
5 Noting the alignment marks on the tank, pump cover and the locking ring, unscrew the ring and remove it from the tank. This is best accomplished by using a screwdriver on the raised ribs of the locking ring. Carefully tap the screwdriver to turn the ring anti-clockwise until it can be unscrewed by hand (see



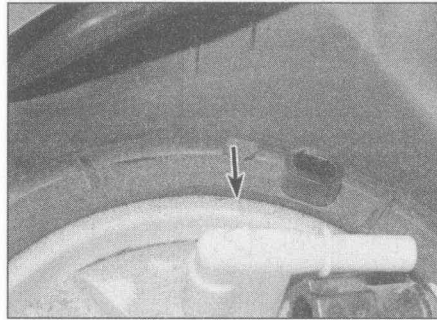
8.2 Fuel pump access cover retaining clips release points (arrowed)



8.3 Disconnect the pump wiring plug



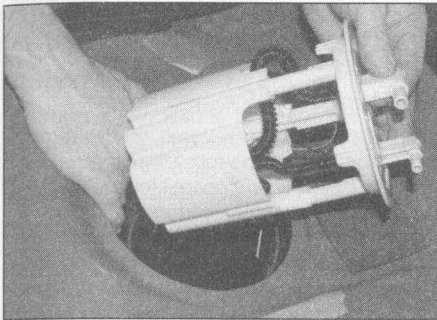
8.4a Depress the release button and disconnect the fuel pipe



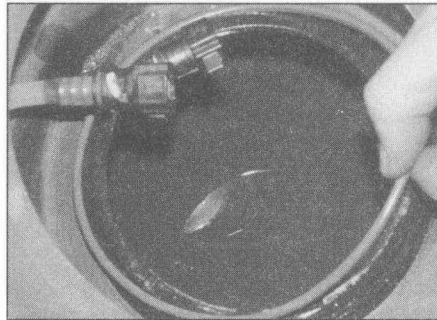
8.4b Note the fuel flow arrows on diesel models (arrowed)



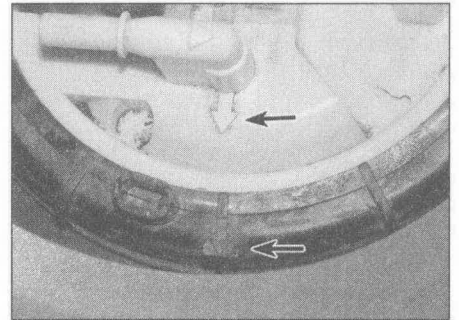
8.5 Tap the screwdriver to rotate the locking ring anti-clockwise



8.6 Lift the fuel pump assembly, taking care not to damage the float arm



8.8 Fit a new sealing ring to the top of the tank



8.11 Rotate the locking ring until the mark aligns with the pump cover mark (arrowed)

illustration). Alternatively, a Peugeot special tool is available which fits over the collar and allows it to be released using a ratchet and extension.

6 Carefully lift the fuel pump assembly out of the fuel tank, taking great care not to damage the fuel gauge sender unit float arm, or to spill fuel onto the interior of the vehicle (see illustration). Recover the rubber sealing ring and discard it – a new one must be used on refitting.

7 Note that the fuel pump is only available as a complete assembly – no components are available separately.

### Refitting

8 Fit the new sealing ring to the top of the fuel tank (see illustration).

9 Carefully manoeuvre the pump assembly into the fuel tank, taking care not to damage the float arm.

10 Align the arrow on the fuel pump cover with previously noted mark on the fuel tank and clip the pump assembly into position.

11 Refit the locking ring and tighten it securely until its alignment mark aligns with the pump cover arrow (see illustration).

12 Securely reconnect the fuel pipe(s) to the pump cover then reconnect the pump wiring connector.

13 Pressurise the fuel system (see Section 7). Start the engine and check the fuel pump feed and return hoses unions for signs of leakage.

14 If all is well, refit the plastic access cover ensuring its locating tab is at the front.

15 Refit the rear seat cushion (see Chapter 11).

## 9 Fuel gauge sender unit – removal and refitting

The fuel gauge sender unit is an integral part of the fuel pump assembly and is not available separately. Refer to Section 8 for removal and refitting details.

## 10 Fuel tank – removal and refitting

**Note:** Refer to the warning note in Section 1 before proceeding.

### Removal

1 Before removing the fuel tank, all fuel must be drained from the tank. Since a fuel tank



10.6a Push in the centre pins a little, then prise out the complete plastic expanding rivets . . .

drain plug is not provided, it is therefore preferable to carry out the removal operation when the tank is nearly empty. Before proceeding, disconnect the battery (see Chapter 5A) and siphon or hand-pump the remaining fuel from the tank.

2 Remove the rear seat cushion and, using a screwdriver, carefully release the three access cover retaining clips at the points indicated by the small arrows, and remove the cover from the floor to expose the fuel pump (see illustration 8.2).

3 Disconnect the wiring connector from the fuel pump, and tape the connector to the vehicle body, to prevent it from disappearing behind the tank (see illustration 8.3).

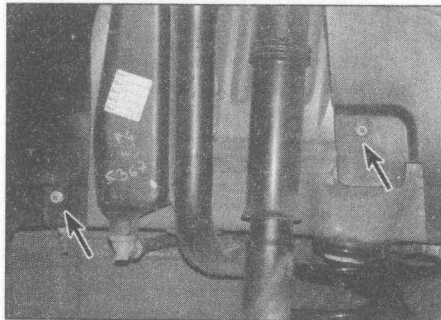
4 Depress the retaining clip and detach the fuel pipe(s) from the top of the pump, bearing in mind the information given in Section 7 on depressurising the fuel system (see illustration 8.4). Plug the pipe end(s) to minimise fuel loss and prevent the entry of dirt.

5 Chock the front wheels then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the right-hand rear roadwheel

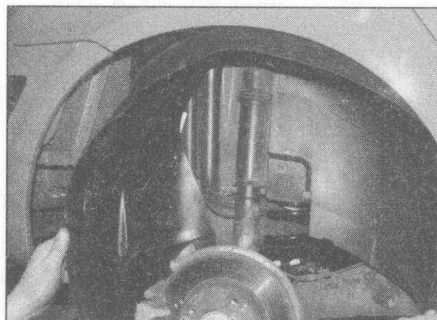
6 Remove the retaining nuts and fasteners (push in the centre pin a little then remove the complete fasteners) and remove the right-hand rear wheel arch liner (see illustrations).

7 Remove the exhaust system as described in Section 16.

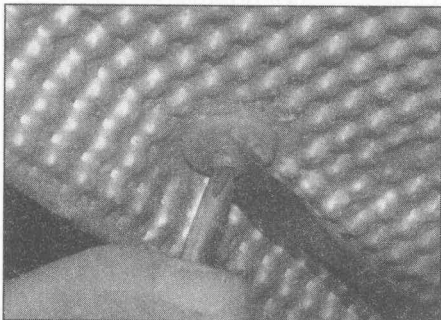
8 Unscrew the centre pins a little, then lever out the complete expanding plastic rivets, and remove the heat shield from the tank underside. On petrol models, undo the nuts,



10.6b ... undo the nuts (arrowed) ...



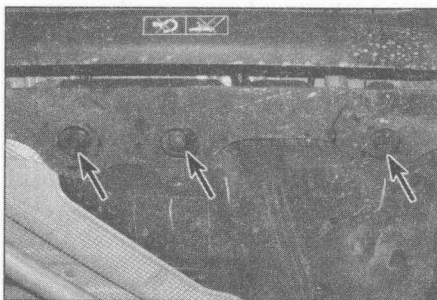
10.6c ... and remove the wheel arch liner



10.8a Unscrew the centre pin a little, then prise out the fastener

release the plastic rivets and remove the plastic undershield(s) from the fuel tank (see illustrations).

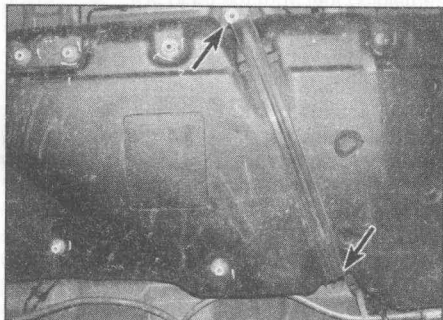
9 Remove the rear suspension coil springs as described in Chapter 10.



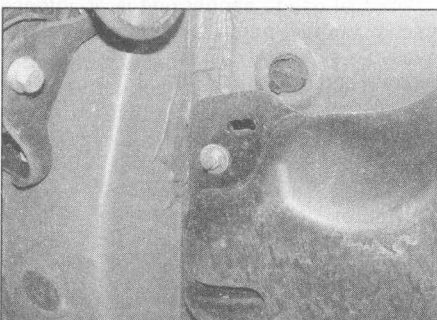
10.8b Undo the nuts, prise out the plastic rivets (arrowed) and remove the plastic undershield

10 Place a trolley jack with an interposed block of wood beneath the tank, then raise the jack until it is supporting the weight of the tank.

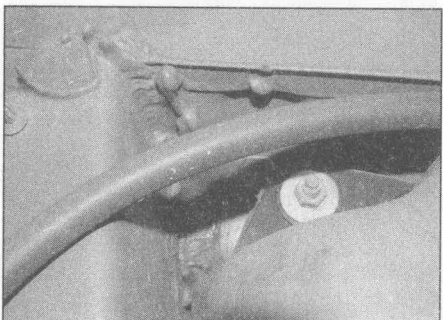
11 Slacken and remove the four bolts



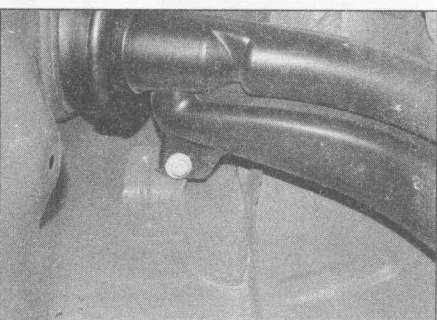
10.11a Fuel tank strap bolts (arrowed) ...



10.11b ... right-hand ...



10.11c ... and left-hand corner bolts



10.11d Fuel filler neck upper ...

securing the fuel tank to the body and the bolts securing the filler neck (see illustrations). Release the filler neck seal from the body at the filler cap aperture.

12 Slowly lower the fuel tank, ensuring the filler neck assembly is guided out of position without placing any stress on it.

13 If the tank is contaminated with sediment or water, remove the fuel pump (Section 8), and swirl the tank out with clean fuel. The tank is injection-moulded from a synthetic material – if seriously damaged, it should be renewed. However, in certain cases, it may be possible to have small leaks or minor damage repaired. Seek the advice of a specialist before attempting to repair the fuel tank.

14 It is not possible to separate the filler neck from the tank. If damaged, the complete assembly must be renewed.

### Refitting

15 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure, noting the following points:

- a) Ensure the wiring connector and fuel pipes are securely reconnected and retained by all the relevant clips. When lifting the tank back into position, take care to ensure that the pipes/wiring do not become trapped between the tank and vehicle body.
- b) Refit the rear suspension springs as described in Chapter 10.
- c) Refit the exhaust as described in Section 16.
- d) On completion, refill the tank with a small amount of fuel and pressurise the fuel system as described in Section 7. Check for signs of leakage prior to taking the vehicle out on the road.

## 11 Engine management system – testing and adjustment

### Testing

1 If a fault appears in the engine management system, first ensure that all the system wiring connectors are securely connected and free of corrosion. Ensure that the fault is not due to poor maintenance; ie, check that the air



10.11e ... and lower fixing bolts

cleaner filter element is clean, the spark plugs are in good condition and correctly gapped, the cylinder compression pressures are correct and that the engine breather hoses are clear and undamaged, referring to Chapters 1A, 2A, 2B and 5B for further information. **2** If these checks fail to reveal the cause of the problem, the vehicle should be taken to a suitably-equipped Peugeot dealer or specialist for testing using a diagnostic tester, which is connected into the diagnostic socket located behind the trim panel to the right of the steering column (**see illustration**). The tester will locate the fault quickly and simply, alleviating the need to test all the system components individually, which is a time-consuming operation that carries a risk of damaging the ECU.

### Adjustment

**3** Whilst it is possible to check the exhaust CO level and the idle speed, if these are found to be in need of adjustment, the car *must* be taken to a suitably-equipped Peugeot dealer or specialist or further testing. Neither the mixture adjustment (exhaust gas CO level) nor the idle speed are adjustable, and should either be incorrect, a fault must be present in the engine management system.

## 12 Throttle housing – removal and refitting



### Removal

**1** On 2.0 litre models, rotate the 6 fasteners 90° anti-clockwise, and remove the plastic cover from the top of the engine. On all models, remove the scuttle trim panel and crossmember as described in Section 13, Paragraph 1.

**2** Slacken the retaining clips then free the air duct from the throttle housing and air cleaner housing and remove it from the engine compartment.

**3** Free the accelerator inner cable from the throttle cam (where fitted).

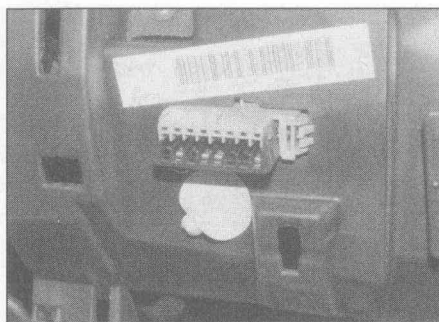
**4** Note their fitted positions, then depress the retaining clip and disconnect the wiring connectors from the throttle body (**see illustration**).

**5** Slacken and remove the three retaining screws and remove the throttle housing from the inlet manifold (**see illustrations**). Recover the sealing ring from manifold and discard it; a new one must be used on refitting.

### Refitting

**6** Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure, noting the following points:

- Fit a new sealing ring to the manifold, then refit the throttle housing and securely tighten its retaining screws.
- Ensure all wiring is correctly routed, and that the connectors are securely reconnected.



11.2 Diagnostic socket

- c) On completion, adjust the accelerator cable (where fitted) as described in Section 3.

## 13 Engine management system components – removal and refitting

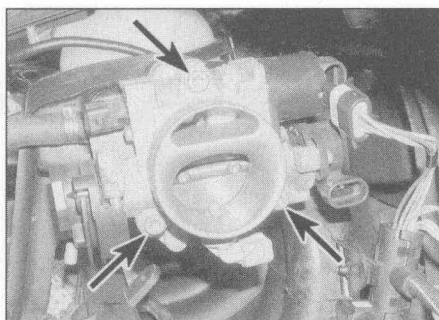


### Fuel rail and injectors

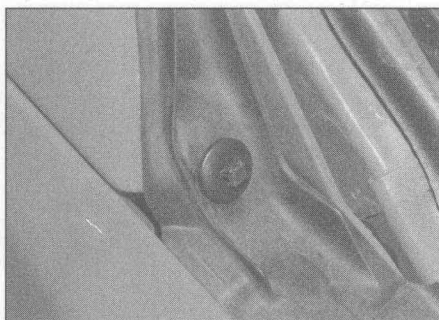
**Note:** Refer to the warning note in Section 1 before proceeding.

**Note:** If a faulty injector is suspected, before condemning the injector, it is worth trying the effect of one of the proprietary injector-cleaning treatments which are available from car accessory shops.

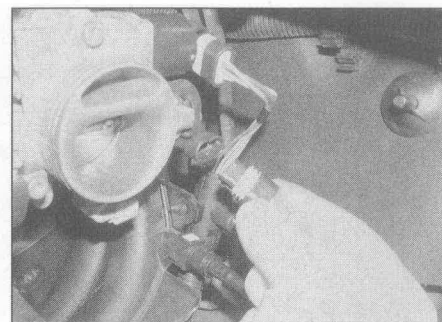
**1** Slacken the retaining clips then free the duct from the throttle housing and air cleaner housing and remove it from the engine



12.5a Undo the three retaining screws (arrowed) ...



13.1a Push in the centre pins a little and prise out the rivets



12.4 Disconnect the wiring connectors from the throttle housing components

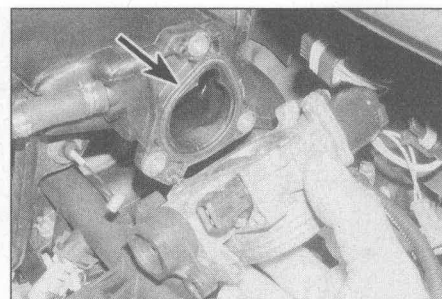
compartment. **Note:** In order to improve access, remove the wiper blades and plastic scuttle trim. The trim is secured by plastic expanding rivets at each end – push in the centre pins a little, then prise out the complete rivet. Undo the two screws and move the master cylinder upper reservoir to one side. Release the sound insulation trim from the scuttle crossmember, undo the bolt at each end, and remove the crossmember from the vehicle (**see illustrations**).

### 1.4 litre models

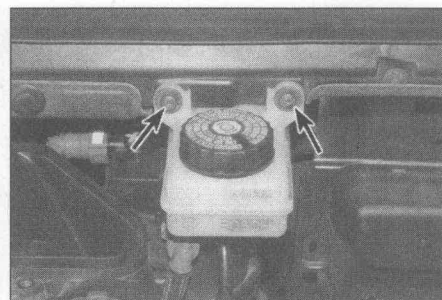
**2** Remove the ignition HT coil as described in Chapter 5B.

**3** Free the accelerator inner cable (where fitted) from the throttle housing cam, then pull the outer cable out from its mounting bracket rubber grommet, complete with its spring clip (**see illustration 3.1**).

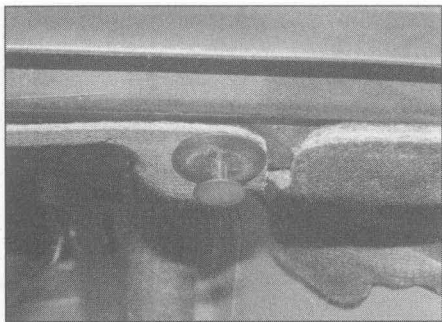
**4** Unscrew the bolts and remove the



12.5b ... then remove the throttle housing from the manifold and recover the sealing ring (1.4 litre engine)



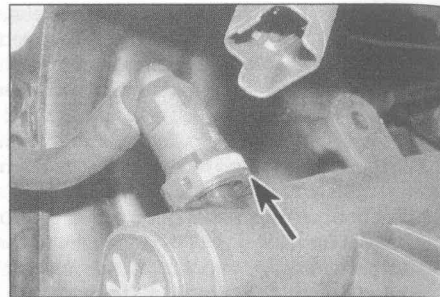
13.1b Undo the screws (arrowed) and move the master cylinder reservoir to one side



**13.1c** Prise up the centre pin and prise out the rivet securing the insulation material



**13.1d** The plastic crossmember is secured by a bolt at each end



**13.5** Depress the retaining clip (arrowed) and disconnect the fuel hose from the fuel rail

accelerator cable bracket (where fitted) from the manifold/cylinder head.

**5** Depress the retaining clip and disconnect the fuel pipe from the right-hand end of the fuel rail, bearing in mind the information given in Section 7 on depressurising the fuel system (see illustration).

**6** Slacken and remove the two bolts securing the fuel rail to the cylinder head, and the nut securing the rail to the manifold. Loosen the bolt securing the fuel rail centre bracket to the inlet manifold, then lift off the bracket (the bracket is slotted to ease removal) (see illustrations).

**7** Disconnect the injector wiring harness connector, then unclip the connector from the rear of the inlet manifold. Also disconnect the wiring connectors from the throttle housing and position the wiring harness clear of the manifold so that it does not hinder fuel rail removal.

**8** Carefully ease the fuel rail and injector assembly out from the cylinder head and manoeuvre it out of position. Remove the seals from the end of each injector and discard them; they must be renewed whenever they are disturbed (see illustration).

**9** Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure, noting the following points.

- a) Fit new seals to all disturbed injector unions.
- b) Apply a smear of engine oil to the seals to aid installation, then ease the injectors and fuel rail into position ensuring that none of the seals are displaced.
- c) On completion, pressurise the fuel system as described in Section 7. Start the engine and check for fuel leaks.

#### 1.6 litre models

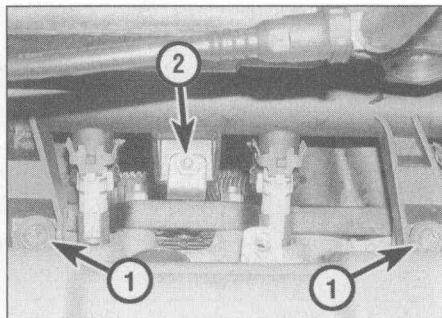
**10** Remove the inlet manifold as described in Section 14.

**11** Undo the two bolts and remove the fuel rail with injectors from the manifold (see illustration).

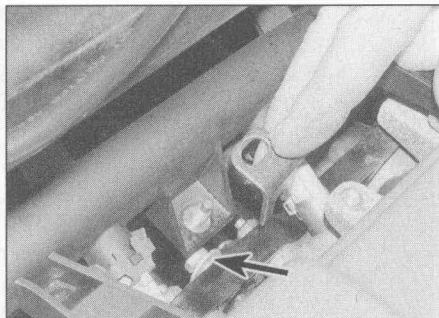
**12** Disconnect the wiring connector(s) then slide out the retaining clip(s) and remove the relevant injector(s) from the fuel rail. Remove the seals from each disturbed injector and discard; all disturbed seals must be renewed (see illustration).

**13** Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure, noting the following points.

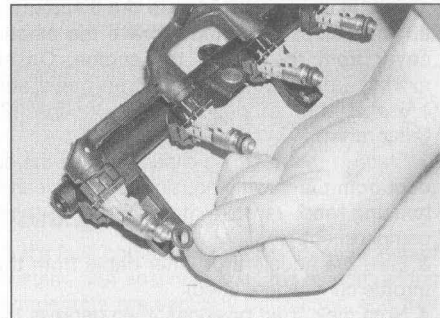
- a) Fit new seals to all disturbed injector unions (see illustration).
- b) Apply a smear of engine oil to the seals to aid installation, then ease the injectors and fuel rail into position ensuring that none of the seals are displaced.
- c) On completion, pressurise the fuel system as described in Section 7. Start the engine and check for fuel leaks.



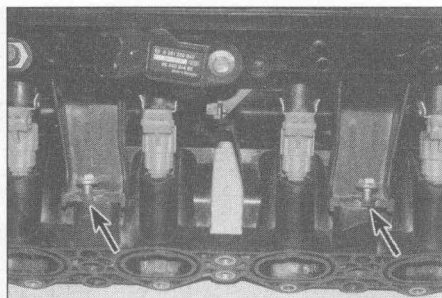
**13.6a** Unscrew the fuel rail mounting bolts (1) and the nut (2) ...



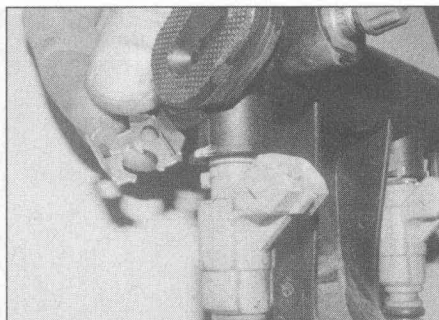
**13.6b** ... then slacken the bolt (arrowed) and lift off the centre bracket



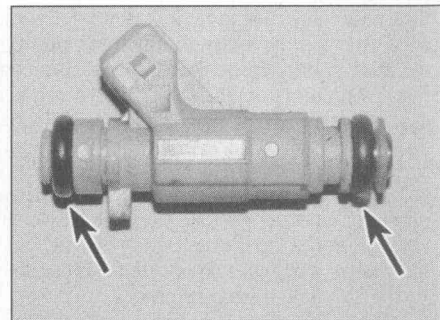
**13.8** Remove the seal from the end of each injector



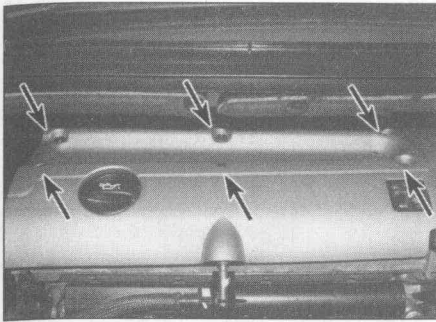
**13.11** Undo the two bolts (arrowed) and remove the injectors and fuel rail from the manifold



**13.12** Slide off the retaining clip and remove the injector from the fuel rail



**13.13** Renew all injector seals (arrowed) disturbed on removal



13.14 Undo the screws (arrowed) and remove the engine top cover

**2.0 litre models**

14 Unbolt and remove the engine top cover (see illustration), then disconnect the air duct from between the air cleaner and throttle body.

15 Disconnect the wiring from the inlet air temperature sensor.

16 Unbolt the wiring tray from the top of the inlet manifold, and position to one side.

17 Depress the release button and disconnect the fuel supply hose from the fuel rail (see illustration)

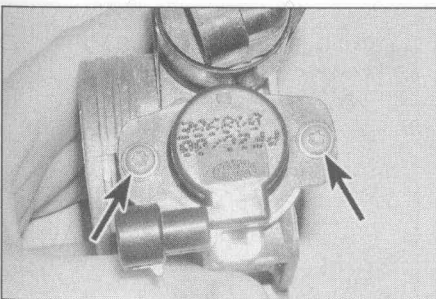
18 Depress the retaining clip(s), and disconnect the wiring connector(s) from the injector(s) (see illustration).

19 Unscrew the mounting bolts and carefully ease the fuel rail, complete with injectors, from the inlet manifold (see illustration). Remove the O-rings from the end of each injector, and discard them; these must be renewed whenever they are disturbed.

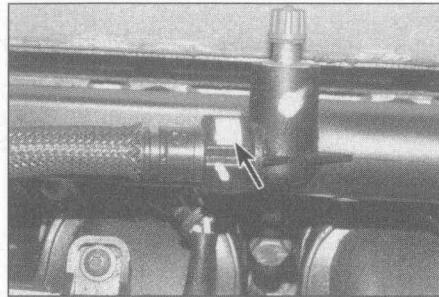
20 Slide out the retaining clip(s) and remove the relevant injector(s) from the fuel rail. Remove the upper O-ring from each disturbed injector and discard; all disturbed O-rings must be renewed.

21 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure, noting the following points.

- a) Fit new O-rings to all disturbed injector unions.
- b) Apply a smear of engine oil to the O-rings to aid installation then ease the injectors and fuel rail into position ensuring that none of the O-rings are displaced.
- c) On completion start the engine and check for fuel leaks.



13.24 ... then undo the retaining screws (arrowed) and remove it from the throttle housing (1.4 litre engine)



13.17 Depress the button (arrowed) and disconnect the fuel supply hose from the fuel rail

**Fuel pressure regulator**

22 The fuel pressure regulator is an integral part of the fuel pump assembly and is not available separately. Refer to Section 8 for removal and refitting details.

**Throttle potentiometer**

23 Depress the retaining clip and disconnect the wiring connector from the throttle potentiometer (see illustration).

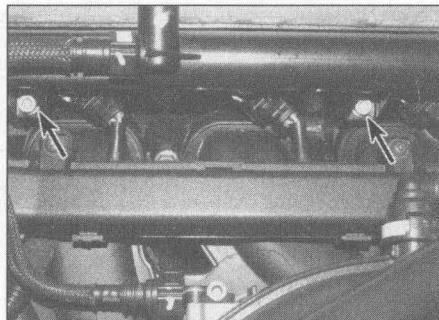
24 Slacken and remove the two retaining screws, then disengage the potentiometer from the throttle valve spindle and remove it from the vehicle (see illustration).

25 Refit in the reverse order of removal.

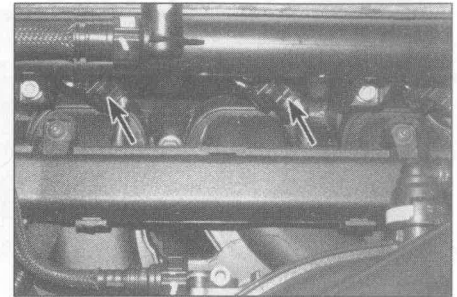
26 Ensure that the potentiometer is correctly engaged with the throttle valve spindle.

**Electronic Control Unit (ECU)**

**Note:** If a new ECU is being fitted, the vehicle



13.19 Undo the fuel rail mounting bolts (arrowed)



13.18 Release the clips and disconnect the injector wiring plugs (centre plugs arrowed)

will not start until the immobiliser ECU has been matched to the engine management ECU. This can only be performed using dedicated test equipment. Consequently, entrust the procedure to a Peugeot dealer or suitably-equipped specialist.

27 The ECU is located on the left-hand side of the engine compartment.

28 Remove the electrical box lid, and disconnect the wiring plugs (see illustration).

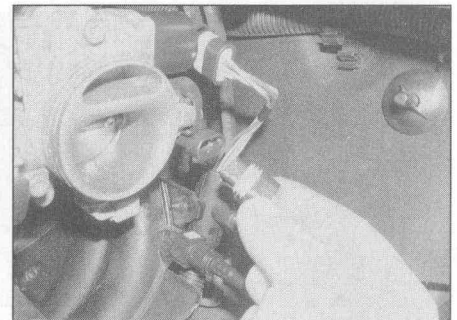
29 The ECU lifts up from the electrical box (see illustration).

30 Refitting is a reverse of the removal procedure ensuring the wiring connectors are securely reconnected.

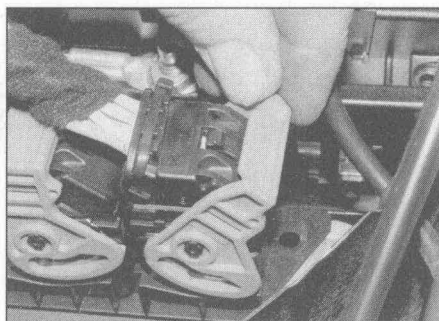
**Idle speed stepper motor**

31 The idle speed stepper motor is fitted to the rear of the throttle housing.

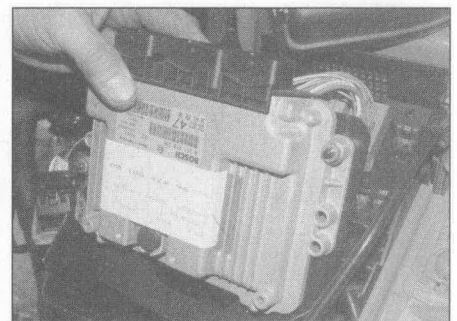
32 Disconnect the wiring connector from the motor (see illustration).



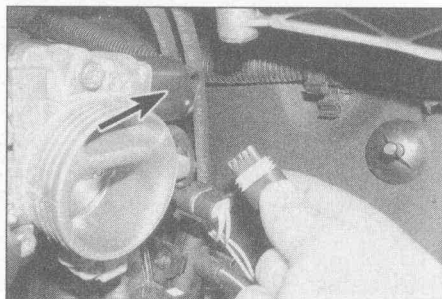
13.23 Disconnect the throttle potentiometer wiring plug ...



13.28 Release the lever catches and disconnect the ECU wiring plugs



13.29 Lift the ECU up from the electrical box



**13.32 Disconnect the idle speed stepper motor wiring plug (arrowed) (1.4 litre engine)**

**33** Slacken and remove the retaining screws then remove the motor from the throttle housing (see illustration). If necessary, remove the throttle potentiometer to improve access to the motor lower screw.

**34** Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure ensuring the seal is in good condition.

**Manifold pressure sensor**

**35** The MAP sensor is mounted on the inlet manifold.

**36** Disconnect the wiring connector then undo the screw and remove the sensor from the manifold (see illustrations).

**37** Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure ensuring the sensor seal is in good condition.

**Coolant temperature sensor**

**38** The coolant temperature sensor is screwed into the coolant outlet housing on the left-hand

end of the cylinder head. Refer to Chapter 3, Section 7, for removal and refitting information.

**Intake air temperature sensor**

**39** The intake air temperature sensor is integral with the throttle housing and is not available separately.

**Crankshaft position sensor**

**40** The crankshaft sensor is situated on the front face of the transmission clutch housing.

**41** Disconnect the sensor wiring connector and unclip the wiring. Undo the retaining bolt and remove the sensor and bracket assembly from the transmission unit (see illustrations).

**42** Refitting is reverse of the removal procedure.

**Throttle housing heating element**

**Note:** The heating element is only fitted to aluminium throttle housings. Plastic housings do not need a heater.

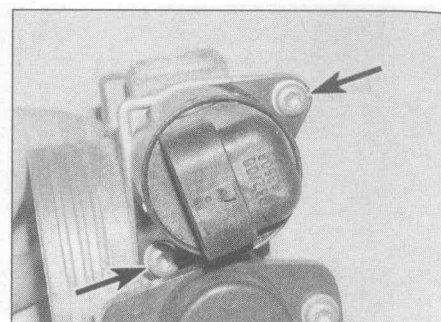
**43** The heating element is fitted to the top of the throttle housing.

**44** Disconnect the wiring connector then unscrew the retaining screw and remove the heating element from the throttle housing (see illustration).

**45** Refitting is the reverse of removal.

**Vehicle speed sensor**

**46** The vehicle speed sensor is an integral part of the speedometer drive on 1.4 litre models. Refer to Chapter 7A for removal and refitting details. On other models, the ECU



**13.33 Undo the retaining screw(s) and remove the motor from the housing**

receives vehicle speed data from the wheel speed sensors, via the ABS ECU.

**Knock sensor**

**47** Refer to Chapter 5B.

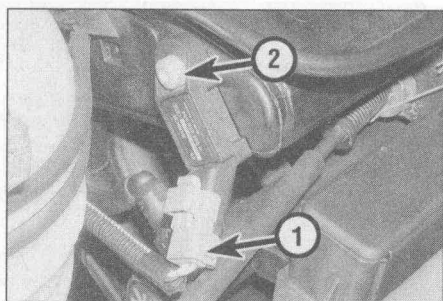
**Air conditioning pressure switch**

**48** The air conditioning pressure switch is fitted to the refrigerant pipe located on the right-hand side of the engine compartment. Switch renewal requires the air conditioning system to be discharged and drained (see Chapter 3).

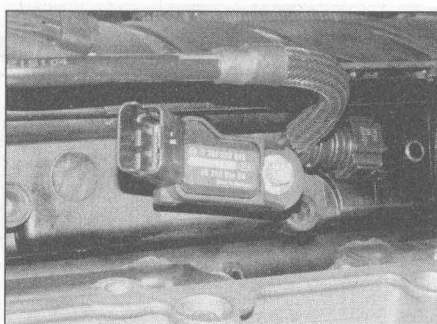
**Camshaft position sensor**

**49** The camshaft position sensor is located on the left-hand end of the exhaust camshaft cylinder head cover on 2.0 litre models only.

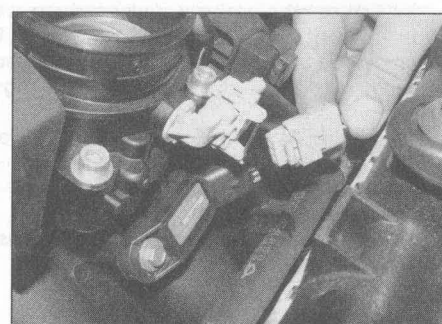
**50** Rotate the 6 fasteners 90° anti-clockwise and remove the plastic cover from the top of the engine.



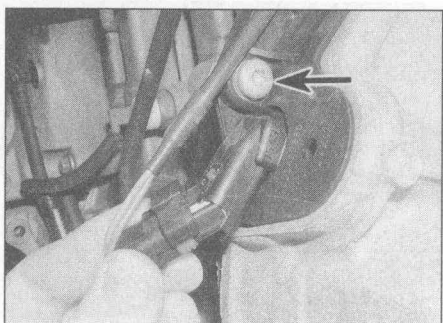
**13.36a Disconnect the wiring connector (1) then undo the retaining screw (2) and remove the MAP sensor (1.4 litre engine) ...**



**13.36b ... 1.6 litre engine ...**



**13.36c ... and 2.0 litre engine**



**13.41a Disconnect the wiring plug then undo the retaining screw (arrowed) ...**



**13.41b ... then remove the crankshaft position sensor from the front of the transmission housing**



**13.44 Remove the throttle housing heating element (1.4 litre engine)**

51 Disconnect the wiring plug, then undo the bolt and remove the sensor from the cylinder head cover (see illustration).

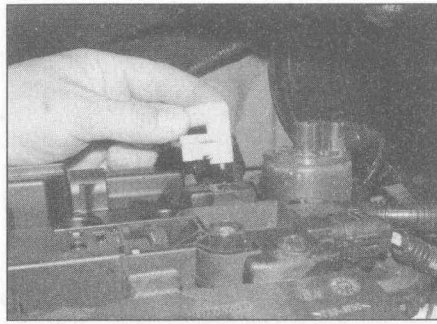
52 Refitting is the reverse of removal ensuring the sensor seal is in good condition.

**Throttle valve positioner motor**

53 The throttle valve positioner motor (where fitted) is integral with the throttle body, and is not available separately.

**Accelerator pedal position sensor**

54 The sensor is integral with the accelerator pedal assembly – see Section 4.



13.51 Camshaft position sensor (2.0 litre engine)

manifold, having first noted their fitted positions. Release the wiring from any retaining clips.

6 Depress the release button and disconnect the fuel pipe and position it clear of the manifold.

7 Where necessary, undo the retaining bolts and remove the support bracket from the underside of the manifold.

8 Undo the manifold retaining nuts and withdraw the manifold from the engine compartment. Recover the four manifold seals and discard them; new ones must be used on refitting (see illustrations).

**Refitting**

9 Refitting is a reverse of the relevant removal procedure, noting the following points:

- a) Ensure that the manifold and cylinder head mating surfaces are clean and dry, then locate the new seals in their recesses in the manifold (see illustrations). Refit

**14 Inlet manifold – removal and refitting**



**Removal**

Note: Refer to the warning note in Section 1 before proceeding.

**1.4 litre models**

1 Remove the fuel rail and injectors as described in Section 13.

2 If not already done, disconnect the wiring connectors from the throttle housing components then unclip the harness and position it clear of the manifold

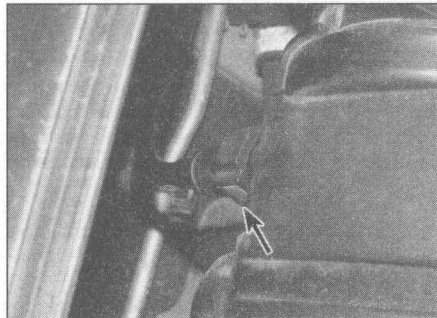
**1.6 and 2.0 litre models**

3 Remove the throttle housing as described in Section 12.

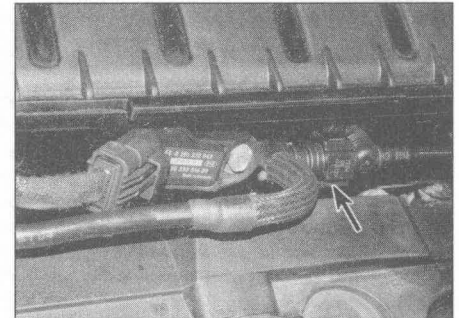
**All models**

4 Release the retaining clips and disconnect the vacuum servo unit pipe and purge valve pipe from the inlet manifold (see illustration).

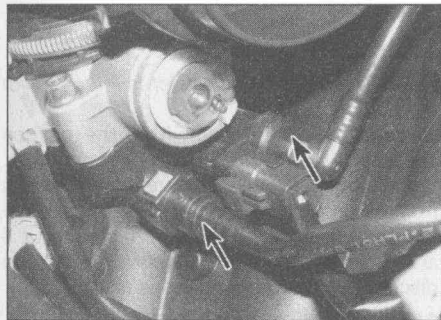
5 Disconnect all wiring connectors from the



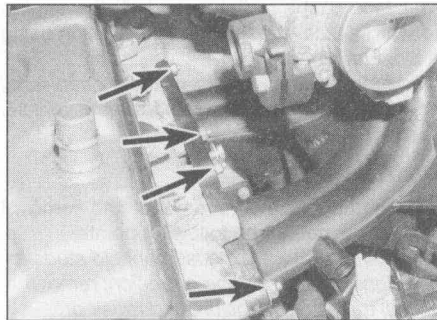
14.4a Disconnect the vacuum servo pipe ...



14.4b ... and purge valve pipe from the manifold (1.6 litre engine) ...



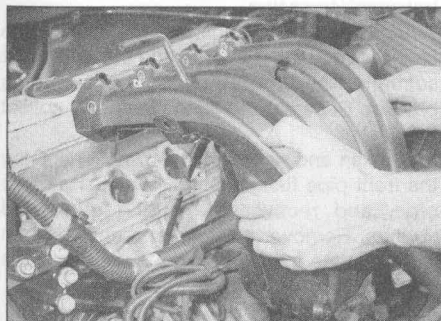
14.4c ... and 2.0 litre engine (arrowed)



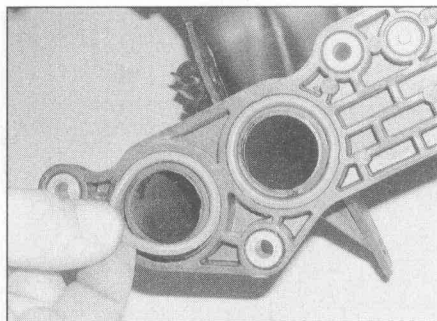
14.8a Inlet manifold nuts (arrowed) (1.4 litre engine)



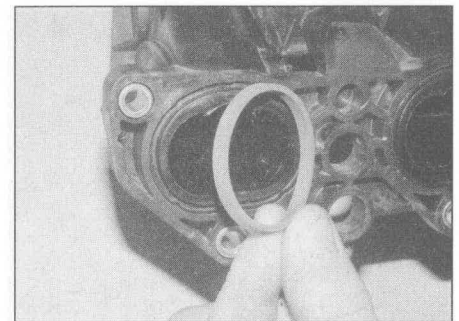
14.8b Note the centre bracket (arrowed) fitted to the 1.6 litre engine



14.8c Withdraw the manifold (2.0 litre engine)



14.9a Ensure new manifold seals are fitted (1.4 litre engine) ...



14.9b ... 1.6 litre engine ...



the manifold and tighten its retaining nuts to the specified torque.

- b) Ensure that all relevant hoses are reconnected to their original positions and are securely held (where necessary) by the retaining clips.
- c) Ensure the wiring is correctly routed and all connectors are securely reconnected.
- d) Adjust the accelerator cable (where fitted) as described in Section 3.

### 15 Exhaust manifold – removal and refitting



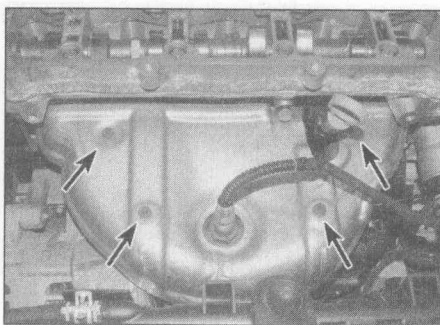
#### Removal

##### 1.4 and 1.6 litre models

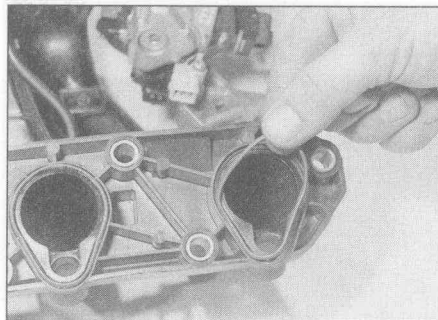
- 1 Disconnect the battery, as described in Chapter 5A.
- 2 Slacken and remove the retaining screws and remove the shroud from the top of the exhaust manifold. It may be necessary to remove the engine lifting eye bracket from the left-hand end of the cylinder head, and undo the bolt and remove the oil dipstick tube (see illustrations).
- 3 Firmly apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Release the screws and remove the engine undershield (where fitted).
- 4 On some models, a second heat shield is fitted on the underside of the manifold, above the oil filter. Undo the bolts and remove the heat shield.
- 5 Trace the oxygen sensors wiring back to the connectors and disconnect them.
- 6 Undo the nuts securing the exhaust front pipe to the manifold, then remove the bolt securing the front pipe to its mounting bracket. Disconnect the front pipe from the manifold, and recover the gasket.

**Caution: Do not place any strain on the flexible section of the exhaust front pipe (where fitted), it is easily damaged.**

- 7 Undo the retaining nuts securing the manifold to the head. Manoeuvre the manifold out of the engine compartment, and discard the manifold gasket(s).



15.2a Undo the heat shield bolts (arrowed) ...



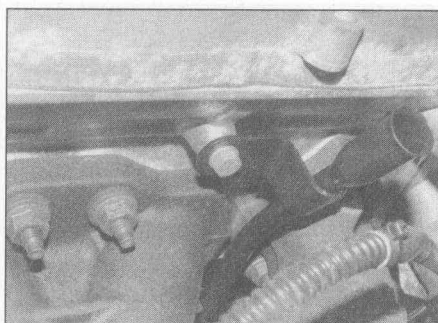
14.9c ... and 2.0 litre engine

##### 2.0 litre models

- 8 Rotate the 6 fasteners 90° anti-clockwise and remove the plastic cover from the top of the engine.
- 9 Remove the right-hand driveshaft as described in Chapter 8.
- 10 Undo the bolts and remove the heat shield from the exhaust manifold and right-hand driveshaft.
- 11 Undo the bolt and remove the exhaust pipe-to-manifold clamp.
- 12 Trace the oxygen sensors wiring back to the connectors and unplug them.
- 13 Release the exhaust system from its mounting points and lower the front pipe. Support the front pipe with a block of wood – do not let it hang unsupported.
- 14 Working underneath the vehicle, undo the bolts and remove the engine movement limiter link (see Chapter 2B).
- 15 Place a sheet of thick cardboard over the rear face of the radiator, and tilt the engine forward a little. Wedge it in this position using a block of wood.
- 16 Undo the manifold-to-cylinder head nuts, and manoeuvre the manifold from the vehicle. Discard the gasket.

#### Refitting

- 17 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure, noting the following points:
  - a) Examine all the exhaust manifold studs for signs of damage and corrosion; remove all traces of corrosion, and repair or renew any damaged studs.
  - b) Ensure that the manifold and cylinder



15.2b ... and the dipstick guide tube bolt

head sealing faces are clean and flat, and fit the new manifold gasket(s). Tighten the manifold retaining nuts to the specified torque.

- c) Reconnect the front pipe to the manifold using the information given in Section 16.
- d) Where necessary, renew the oil dipstick tube O-ring.

### 16 Exhaust system – general information, removal and refitting



#### General information

- 1 The exhaust system consists three sections; the front pipe with integral catalytic converter, the intermediate pipe, and rear silencer with tailpipe. On 1.4 and 1.6 litre models, the front pipe and intermediate pipe sections are joined by flanged joints. All other joints are secured by clamping rings.
- 2 The system is suspended throughout its entire length by rubber mountings.
- 3 Each exhaust section can be removed individually or, alternatively, the complete system can be removed as a unit. Even if only one part of the system needs attention, it is often easier to remove the whole system and separate the sections on the bench.
- 4 To remove the system or part of the system, first jack up the front or rear of the car and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Alternatively, position the car over an inspection pit or on car ramps. Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield.

#### Front pipe removal

**Note: The catalytic converter is integral with the front pipe.**

- 5 Trace the wiring back from the oxygen sensors to their wiring connectors. Disconnect the connectors and free the wiring from all its clips and ties so the sensors are free to be removed with the front pipe. On 1.4 and 1.6 litre models, it is only necessary to disconnect the post-catalyst sensor.

##### 1.4 and 1.6 litre models

- 6 Undo the bolts securing the transmission support bracket to the underside of the transmission casing.
- 7 Undo the nuts securing the front pipe flange joint to the manifold, and the single bolt securing the front pipe to its mounting bracket. Separate the flange joint and collect the gasket.

- 8 Slacken and remove the two nuts securing the front pipe flange joint to the intermediate pipe, and recover the spring cups and springs. Remove the bolts and collars, then withdraw the front pipe from underneath the vehicle. Recover the wire mesh gasket.

##### 2.0 litre models

- 9 Undo the bolt and remove the front pipe-to-manifold clamp.

**10** Undo the bolt and remove the front-to-intermediate pipe clamp. Manoeuvre the pipe/catalytic converter from the vehicle.

**Intermediate pipe removal**

**1.4 and 1.6 litre models**

**11** Undo the two nuts securing the front pipe flange joint to the intermediate pipe. Recover the springs and spring cups, and withdraw the bolts and collars.

**12** Slacken and remove the nut, washer and bolt from the intermediate pipe-to-rear silencer clamping ring and disengage the clamp from the joint.

**13** Free the intermediate pipe and withdraw it from underneath the vehicle. Recover the wire mesh gasket from the front pipe joint.

**2.0 litre models**

**14** Undo the clamp bolts at each end of the intermediate pipe.

**15** Release the pipe from the rubber mounting, and manoeuvre the pipe from under the vehicle.

**Tailpipe/rear silencer removal**

**16** Slacken the tailpipe/silencer-to-intermediate pipe clamp bolt.

**17** Unhook the tailpipe/silencer from its mounting rubbers and remove it from the vehicle.

**Complete system removal (minus front pipe)**

**18** On 1.4 and 1.6 litre models, undo the two nuts securing the front pipe flange joint to the intermediate pipe. Recover the springs and spring cups, and withdraw the bolts and collars.

**19** On 2.0 litre models, slacken the front pipe-to-intermediate pipe clamp bolt.

**20** Free the system from all its mounting rubbers and lower it from under the vehicle. On 1.4 and 1.6 litre models, recover the wire mesh gasket from the front pipe joint.

**Heat shield(s) removal**

**21** The heat shields are secured to the underside of the body by various nuts and fasteners. If a shield is being removed to gain access to a component located behind it, remove the retaining nuts and/or fastener (unscrew the centre screw then pull out the complete fastener), and manoeuvre the shield out of position (**see illustration 10.8b**). On some models it may be necessary to free the

exhaust system from its mountings to gain the clearance necessary to remove the larger heat shield.

**Refitting**

**22** Each section is refitted by reversing the removal sequence, noting the following points:

- a) *Ensure that all traces of corrosion have been removed from the flanges and renew all necessary gaskets.*
- b) *Inspect the rubber mountings for signs of damage or deterioration, and renew as necessary.*
- c) *Where joints are secured together by a clamping ring, apply a smear of exhaust system jointing paste to the flange joint to ensure a gas-tight seal. Insert the bolt through the clamping ring and fit the washer. Ensure the bolt and washer cut-outs are correctly engaged with the clamping ring then securely tighten the nut.*
- d) *Prior to tightening the exhaust system fasteners, ensure that all rubber mountings are correctly located, and that there is adequate clearance between the exhaust system and vehicle underbody.*

**Degree of difficulty**

Easy	10 minutes
Intermediate	15 minutes
Advanced	20 minutes

**Specifications**

General	
System	
Injection	
1.4 litre	
1.6 litre	
2.0 litre	
High pressure	
Type	
1.4 litre	
1.6 litre	
2.0 litre	
Injection	
Type	
Turbocharger	
Type	
1.4 litre	
1.6 litre	
2.0 litre	

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

...the ... of ...

# Chapter 4 Part B:

## Fuel and exhaust systems – diesel models

### Contents

Accelerator cable – removal, refitting and adjustment	5	Fuel injectors – removal and refitting	12
Accelerator pedal – removal and refitting	6	Fuel lift pump – removal and refitting	7
Accumulator rail – removal and refitting	11	Fuel system – priming and bleeding	3
Air cleaner assembly and inlet ducts – removal and refitting	4	Fuel tank and cooler – removal and refitting	9
Air cleaner filter element renewal	.See Chapter 1B	General information and system operation	1
Electronic control system components – testing, removal and refitting	13	High-pressure diesel injection system – special information	2
Exhaust manifold – removal and refitting	15	High-pressure fuel pump – removal and refitting	10
Exhaust system – general information and component renewal	19	Inlet manifold – removal and refitting	14
Fuel filter renewal	.See Chapter 1B	Intercooler and air inlet heater – removal and refitting	18
Fuel filter water draining	.See Chapter 1B	Turbocharger – description and precautions	16
Fuel gauge sender unit – removal and refitting	8	Turbocharger – removal, inspection and refitting	17

### Degrees of difficulty

**Easy**, suitable for novice with little experience



**Fairly easy**, suitable for beginner with some experience



**Fairly difficult**, suitable for competent DIY mechanic



**Difficult**, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic



**Very difficult**, suitable for expert DIY or professional



### Specifications

#### General

System type	HDi (High-pressure Diesel injection) with full electronic control, direct injection and turbocharger
Designation:	
1.4 litre	Bosch EDC 16
2.0 litre	Bosch EDC 15C2
Firing order	1-3-4-2 (No 1 at flywheel end)
Fuel system operating pressure	200 to 1350 bars (according to engine speed)
Idle speed:	
1.4 litre	800 ± 20 rpm (controlled by ECU)
2.0 litre	800 ± 20 rpm (controlled by ECU)
Engine cut-off speed:	
1.4 litre	5000 rpm (controlled by ECU)
2.0 litre	5000 rpm (controlled by ECU)

#### High-pressure fuel pump

Type:	
1.4 litre	CP3.2
2.0 litre	Bosch CP 1
Direction of rotation	Clockwise, viewed from sprocket end

#### Injectors

Type	Electromagnetic
------	-----------------

#### Turbocharger

Type:	
1.4 litre	KKK
2.0 litre	Garrett GT15 or KKK K03
Boost pressure (approximate)	1 bar at 3000 rpm

Torque wrench settings	Nm	lbf ft
Accumulator rail mounting bolts	23	17
Accumulator rail-to-fuel injector fuel pipe unions*:		
1.4 litre engine:		
Stage 1	17	13
Stage 2	22	16
2.0 litre engines:		
Injector end union:		
Stage 1	25	18
Stage 2	27	20
Rail end union:		
Stage 1	24	18
Stage 2	26	19
Camshaft position sensor bolt (1.4 litre engine)	5	4
Clamping ring nuts	20	15
Crankshaft speed/position sensor (1.4 litre engine)	5	4
Exhaust manifold nuts	20	15
Exhaust system fasteners:		
Catalytic converter-to-manifold nuts	40	30
Fuel injector clamp bolt:		
1.4 litre engine	20	15
2.0 litre engine	30	22
Fuel injector clamp stud	7	5
Fuel pressure sensor to accumulator rail	45	33
Fuel pump-to-accumulator rail fuel pipe unions*:		
1.4 litre engine:		
Stage 1	17	13
Stage 2	22	16
2.0 litre engines:		
Rail end union:		
Stage 1	24	18
Stage 2	26	19
Pump end union:		
Stage 1	8	6
Stage 2	26	19
High-pressure fuel pump front mounting bolts/nuts	25	18
High-pressure fuel pump rear mounting bolts/nut (8 mm)	17	13
High-pressure fuel pump sprocket nut	50	37
Turbocharger mounting bolts/nuts	25	18
Turbocharger oil feed pipe banjo bolts	25	18

\* These torque settings are using Peugeot crow's-foot adaptors – see Section 2

## 1 General information and system operation

The fuel system consists of a rear-mounted fuel tank and fuel lift pump, a fuel filter with integral water separator, on some models a fuel cooler mounted under the car, and an electronically-controlled High-pressure Diesel injection (HDI) system, together with a turbocharger.

The exhaust system is conventional, but to meet the latest emission levels an unregulated catalytic converter and an exhaust gas recirculation system are fitted to all models. On some 2.0 litre models, an exhaust emission particulate filter is fitted – refer to Chapter 4C for further details.

The HDi system (generally known as a 'common rail' system) derives its name from the fact that a common rail (referred to as an accumulator rail), or fuel reservoir, is used to supply fuel to all the fuel injectors. Instead of an in-line or distributor type injection pump,

which distributes the fuel directly to each injector, a high-pressure pump is used, which generates a very high fuel pressure (1350 bars at high engine speed) in the accumulator rail. The accumulator rail stores fuel, and maintains a constant fuel pressure, with the aid of a pressure control valve. Each injector is supplied with high-pressure fuel from the accumulator rail, and the injectors are individually controlled via signals from the system electronic control unit (ECU). The injectors are electromagnetically-operated.

In addition to the various sensors used on models with a conventional fuel injection pump, common rail systems also have a fuel pressure sensor. The fuel pressure sensor allows the ECU to maintain the required fuel pressure, via the pressure control valve.

### System operation

For the purposes of describing the operation of a common rail injection system, the components can be divided into three sub-systems; the low-pressure fuel system, the high-pressure fuel system and the electronic control system.

### Low-pressure fuel system

The low-pressure fuel system consists of the following components:

- Fuel tank.
- Fuel lift pump.
- Fuel cooler (not all models).
- Fuel heater (not all models).
- Fuel filter/water trap.
- Low-pressure fuel lines.

The low-pressure system (fuel supply system) is responsible for supplying clean fuel to the high-pressure fuel system.

### High-pressure fuel system

The high-pressure fuel system consists of the following components:

- High-pressure fuel pump with pressure control valve.
- High-pressure fuel accumulator rail.
- Fuel injectors.
- High-pressure fuel lines.

After passing through the fuel filter, the fuel reaches the high-pressure pump, which forces it into the accumulator rail. As diesel fuel has a certain elasticity, the pressure in the

accumulator rail remains constant, even though fuel leaves the rail each time one of the injectors operates. Additionally, a pressure control valve mounted on the high-pressure pump ensures that the fuel pressure is maintained within preset limits.

The pressure control valve is operated by the ECU. When the valve is opened, fuel is returned from the high-pressure pump to the tank, via the fuel return lines, and the pressure in the accumulator rail falls. To enable the ECU to trigger the pressure control valve correctly, the pressure in the accumulator rail is measured by a fuel pressure sensor.

The electromagnetically-controlled fuel injectors are operated individually, via signals from the ECU, and each injector injects fuel directly into the relevant combustion chamber. The fact that high fuel pressure is always available allows very precise and highly flexible injection in comparison to a conventional injection pump: for example combustion during the main injection process can be improved considerably by the pre-injection of a very small quantity of fuel.

### Electronic control system

The electronic control system consists of the following components:

- a) *Electronic control unit (ECU).*
- b) *Crankshaft speed/position sensor.*
- c) *Camshaft position sensor.*
- d) *Accelerator pedal position sensor.*
- e) *Coolant temperature sensor.*
- f) *Fuel temperature sensor.*
- g) *Air mass meter.*
- h) *Fuel pressure sensor.*
- i) *Fuel injectors.*
- j) *Fuel pressure control valve.*
- k) *Preheating control unit.*
- l) *EGR solenoid valve.*

The information from the various sensors is passed to the ECU, which evaluates the signals. The ECU contains electronic 'maps' which enable it to calculate the optimum quantity of fuel to inject, the appropriate start of injection, and even pre- and post-injection fuel quantities, for each individual engine cylinder under any given condition of engine operation.

Additionally, the ECU carries out monitoring and self-diagnostic functions. Any faults in the system are stored in the ECU memory, which enables quick and accurate fault diagnosis using appropriate diagnostic equipment (such as a suitable fault code reader).

### System Components

#### Fuel lift pump

The fuel lift pump (2.0 litre models with particulate filter only) and integral fuel gauge sender unit is electrically-operated, and is mounted in the fuel tank.

#### High-pressure pump

The high-pressure pump is mounted on the engine in the position normally occupied by the conventional distributor fuel injection pump. The pump is driven at half engine

speed by the timing belt, and is lubricated by the fuel which it pumps.

The fuel lift pump forces the fuel into the high-pressure pump chamber, via a safety valve.

The high-pressure pump consists of three radially-mounted pistons and cylinders. The pistons are operated by an eccentric cam mounted on the pump drive spindle. As a piston moves down, fuel enters the cylinder through an inlet valve. When the piston reaches bottom dead centre (BDC), the inlet valve closes, and as the piston moves back up the cylinder, the fuel is compressed. When the pressure in the cylinder reaches the pressure in the accumulator rail, an outlet valve opens, and fuel is forced into the accumulator rail. When the piston reaches top dead centre (TDC), the outlet valve closes, due to the pressure drop, and the pumping cycle is repeated. The use of multiple cylinders provides a steady flow of fuel, minimising pulses and pressure fluctuations.

As the pump needs to be able to supply sufficient fuel under full-load conditions, it will supply excess fuel during idle and part-load conditions. This excess fuel is returned from the high-pressure circuit to the low-pressure circuit (to the tank) via the pressure control valve.

The pump incorporates a facility to effectively switch off one of the cylinders to improve efficiency and reduce fuel consumption when maximum pumping capacity is not required. When this facility is operated, a solenoid-operated needle holds the inlet valve in the relevant cylinder open during the delivery stroke, preventing the fuel from being compressed.

#### Accumulator rail

As its name suggests, the accumulator rail acts as an accumulator, storing fuel and preventing pressure fluctuations. Fuel enters the rail from the high-pressure pump, and each injector has its own connection to the rail. The fuel pressure sensor is mounted in the rail, and the rail also has a connection to the fuel pressure control valve on the pump.

#### Pressure control valve

The pressure control valve is operated by the ECU, and controls the system pressure. The valve is integral with the high-pressure pump and cannot be separated.

If the fuel pressure is excessive, the valve opens, and fuel flows back to the tank. If the pressure is too low, the valve closes, enabling the high-pressure pump to increase the pressure.

The valve is an electromagnetically-operated ball valve. The ball is forced against its seat, against the fuel pressure, by a powerful spring, and also by the force provided by the electromagnet. The force generated by the electromagnet is directly proportional to the current applied to it by the ECU. The desired pressure can therefore be set by varying the current applied to the

electromagnet. Any pressure fluctuations are damped by the spring.

#### Fuel pressure sensor

The fuel pressure sensor is mounted in the accumulator rail, and provides very precise information on the fuel pressure to the ECU.

#### Fuel injector

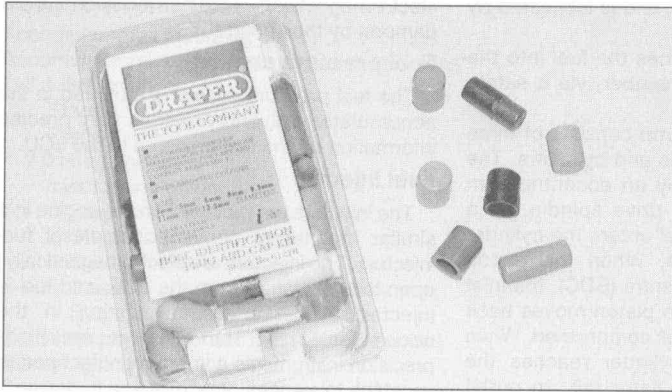
The injectors are mounted on the engine in a similar manner to conventional diesel fuel injectors. The injectors are electromagnetically-operated via signals from the ECU, and fuel is injected at the pressure existing in the accumulator rail. The injectors are high-precision instruments and are manufactured to very high tolerances.

Fuel flows into the injector from the accumulator rail, via an inlet valve and an inlet throttle, and an electromagnet causes the injector nozzle to lift from its seat, allowing injection. Excess fuel is returned from the injectors to the tank via a return line. The injector operates on a hydraulic servo principle: the forces resulting inside the injector due to the fuel pressure effectively amplify the effects of the electromagnet, which does not provide sufficient force to open the injector nozzle directly. The injector functions as follows. Five separate forces are essential to the operation of the injector.

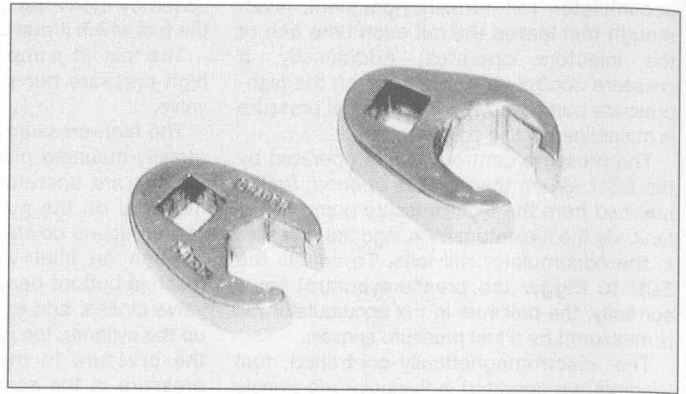
- a) *A nozzle spring forces the nozzle needle against the nozzle seat at the bottom of the injector, preventing fuel from entering the combustion chamber.*
- b) *In the valve at the top of the injector, the valve spring forces the valve ball against the opening to the valve control chamber. The fuel in the chamber is unable to escape through the fuel return.*
- c) *When triggered, the electromagnet exerts a force which overcomes the valve spring force, and moves the valve ball away from its seat. This is the triggering force for the start of injection. When the valve ball moves off its seat, fuel enters the valve control chamber.*
- d) *The pressure of the fuel in the valve control chamber exerts a force on the valve control plunger, which is added to the nozzle spring force.*
- e) *A slight chamfer towards the lower end of the nozzle needle causes the fuel in the control chamber to exert a force on the nozzle needle.*

When these forces are in equilibrium, the injector is in its rest (idle) state, but when a voltage is applied to the electromagnet, the forces work to lift the nozzle needle, injecting fuel into the combustion chamber. There are four phases of injector operation as follows:

- a) *Rest (idle) state – all forces are in equilibrium. The nozzle needle closes off the nozzle opening, and the valve spring forces the valve ball against its seat.*
- b) *Opening – the electromagnet is triggered which opens the nozzle and triggers the injection process. The force from the electromagnet allows the valve ball to*



2.4 Typical plastic plug and cap set for sealing disconnected fuel pipes and components



2.7 Two crow's-foot adaptors will be necessary for tightening the fuel pipe unions

leave its seat. The fuel from the valve control chamber flows back to the tank via the fuel return line. When the valve opens, the pressure in the valve control chamber drops, and the force on the valve plunger is reduced. However, due to the effect of the input throttle, the pressure on the nozzle needle remains unchanged. The resulting force in the valve control chamber is sufficient to lift the nozzle from its seat, and the injection process begins.

- c) Injection – within a few milliseconds, the triggering current in the electromagnet is reduced to a lower holding current. The nozzle is now fully open, and fuel is injected into the combustion chamber at the pressure present in the accumulator rail.
- d) Closing – the electromagnet is switched off, at which point the valve spring forces the valve ball firmly against its seat, and in the valve control chamber, the pressure is the same as that at the nozzle needle. The force at the valve plunger increases, and the nozzle needle closes the nozzle opening. The forces are now in equilibrium once more, and the injector is once more in the idle state, awaiting the next injection sequence.

#### ECU and sensors

The ECU and sensors are described earlier in this Section – see *Electronic control system*.

#### Air inlet sensor and turbocharger

An airflow sensor is fitted downstream of the air filter to monitor the quantity of air supplied to the turbocharger. On 2.0 litre models with the DW10ATED diesel engine, air from the high-pressure side of the turbocharger is either channelled through the intercooler, or into the manifold without being intercooled, depending on the air temperature (see illustration 4.24). The flow and routing of intake air is controlled by the engine management ECU. On these models, an engine coolant-heated matrix is fitted to the base of the air cleaner housing, to warm the incoming air, which decreases harmful exhaust emissions.

The turbochargers are of the fixed-geometry type on 2.0 litre models, and variable nozzle geometry type on the 1.4 litre model.

## 2 High-pressure diesel injection system – special information

### Warnings and precautions

1 It is essential to observe strict precautions when working on the fuel system components, particularly the high-pressure side of the system. Before carrying out any operations on the fuel system, refer to the precautions given in *Safety first!* at the beginning of this manual, and to the following additional information.

- **Do not carry out any repair work on the high-pressure fuel system unless you are competent to do so, have all the necessary tools and equipment required, and are aware of the safety implications involved.**
- **Before starting any repair work on the fuel system, wait at least 30 seconds after switching off the engine to allow the fuel circuit pressure to reduce.**
- **Never work on the high-pressure fuel system with the engine running.**
- **Keep well clear of any possible source of fuel leakage, particularly when starting the engine after carrying out repair work. A leak in the system could cause an extremely high-pressure jet of fuel to escape, which could result in severe personal injury.**
- **Never place your hands or any part of your body near to a leak in the high-pressure fuel system.**
- **Do not use steam cleaning equipment or compressed air to clean the engine or any of the fuel system components.**

### Procedures and information

2 Strict cleanliness must be observed at all times when working on any part of the fuel system. This applies to the working area in general, the person doing the work, and the components being worked on.

3 Before working on the fuel system components, they must be thoroughly cleaned with a suitable degreasing fluid. Specific cleaning products may be obtained from Peugeot dealers. Alternatively, a suitable brake cleaning fluid may be used. Cleanliness is particularly important when working on the fuel system connections at the following components:

- a) Fuel filter.
- b) High-pressure fuel pump.
- c) Accumulator rail.
- d) Fuel injectors.
- e) High-pressure fuel pipes.

4 After disconnecting any fuel pipes or components, the open union or orifice must be immediately sealed to prevent the entry of dirt or foreign material. Plastic plugs and caps in various sizes are available in packs from motor factors and accessory outlets, and are particularly suitable for this application (see illustration). Fingers cut from disposable rubber gloves should be used to protect components such as fuel pipes, fuel injectors and wiring connectors, and can be secured in place using elastic bands. Suitable gloves of this type are available at no cost from most petrol station forecourts.

5 Whenever any of the high-pressure fuel pipes are disconnected or removed, new pipes must be obtained for refitting.

6 On the completion of any repair on the high-pressure fuel system, Peugeot recommend the use of a leak-detecting compound. This is a powder which is applied to the fuel pipe unions and connections and turns white when dry. Any leak in the system will cause the product to darken indicating the source of the leak.

7 The torque wrench settings given in the Specifications must be strictly observed when tightening component mountings and connections. This is particularly important when tightening the high-pressure fuel pipe unions. To enable a torque wrench to be used on the fuel pipe unions, two Peugeot crow's-foot adaptors are required. Suitable alternatives are available from motor factors and accessory outlets (see illustration).

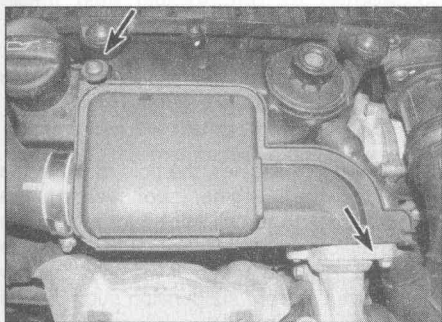


**3.1 Operate the hand priming pump until fuel clear of bubbles appears in the fuel pipe (arrowed) (1.4 litre engine)**

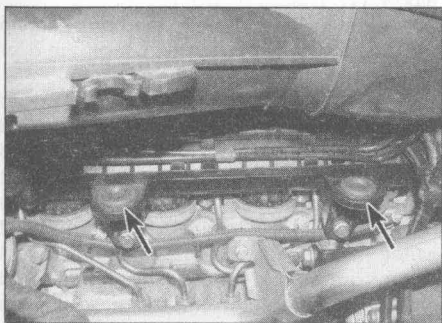
### 3 Fuel system – priming and bleeding

1 Should the fuel supply system be disconnected between the fuel tank and high pressure pump, it is necessary to prime the fuel system. This is achieved by operating the hand priming pump until resistance is felt (2.0 litre models) or fuel appears in the transparent fuel supply pipe in the engine compartment (1.4 litre models) (see illustration). Remove the plastic cover from the top of the engine to access the priming pump. **Note:** A hand priming pump is not fitted to all 2.0 litre models.

2 Once this is achieved, operate the starter until the engine starts.



**4.3b ... then undo the retaining bolts (arrowed) ...**



**4.4b The rear of the air cleaner housing locates in two rubber mountings (arrowed)**

### 4 Air cleaner assembly and inlet ducts – removal and refitting



#### Air cleaner and inlet ducts removal

##### 1.4 litre models

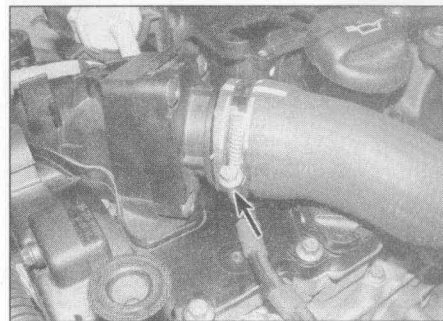
1 Pull the plastic engine cover up and remove it.

2 Slacken the turbocharger inlet hose clip, and release the diesel priming bulb from its brackets at the right-hand end of the housing.

3 Slacken the clip securing the turbo outlet hose, undo the bolt securing the resonator box, and the bolt securing the resonator box to the turbocharger, swivel the box up and remove it (see illustrations). **Note:** In order to improve access, remove the wiper blades and plastic scuttle trim. The trim is secured by plastic expanding rivets at each end – push in the centre pins a little, then prise out the complete rivets. Release the sound insulation trim from the scuttle crossmember, undo the bolt at each end, and remove the crossmember from the vehicle (see illustrations 14.3a, 14.3b and 14.3c).

4 Undo the two screws and remove the air cleaner housing, disconnecting any wiring plugs as necessary as the housing is withdrawn (see illustrations).

5 To remove the air inlet ducting, slacken the retaining clips and remove the relevant section of ducting. The air ducting in the left-



**4.3a Slacken the clip and disconnect the turbo outlet hose (arrowed) ...**

hand front corner of the engine compartment is retained by a plastic expansion rivet. Push down the centre pin then pull the entire rivet from place (see illustration). The air deflector in the left-hand front corner of the engine compartment simply lifts from place and, upon refitting, located over a clip on the front of the electrical box. The ducting at the rear of the engine is only accessible once the battery tray has been removed (see Chapter 5A).

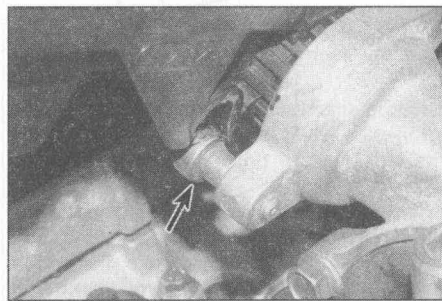
##### 2.0 litre models

6 Undo the four fasteners and lift off the engine cover (see illustration).

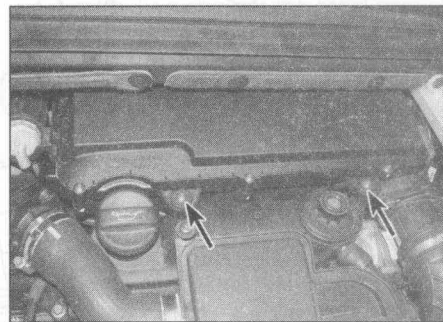
7 Disconnect the air mass meter wiring plug.

8 Slacken the retaining clips and disconnect the flexible air inlet duct from the air mass meter (see illustration).

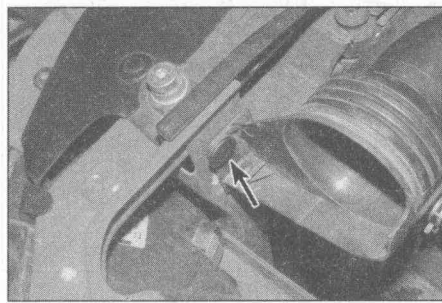
9 Where fitted, disconnect the wiring plug from the accelerator pedal position sensor, adjacent to the air cleaner housing.



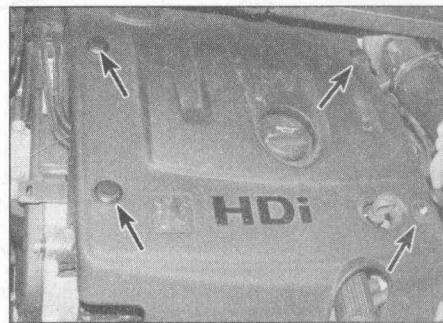
**4.3c ... pivot the right-hand end of the box up and disengage it from the turbo outlet stud (arrowed)**



**4.4a Undo the two air cleaner housing screws (arrowed)**



**4.5 Push in the centre pin, then prise the complete plastic rivet (arrowed) from place, and remove the air inlet ducting**

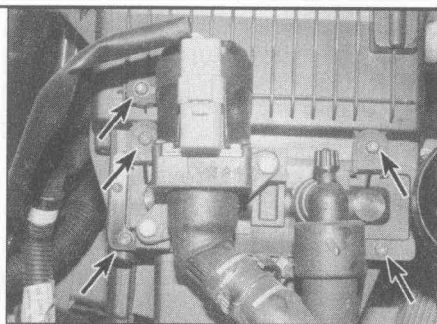


**4.6 Undo the fasteners (arrowed) and remove the plastic engine cover**

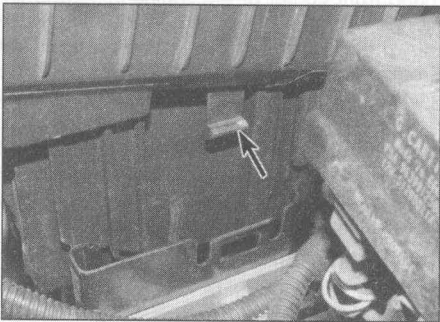




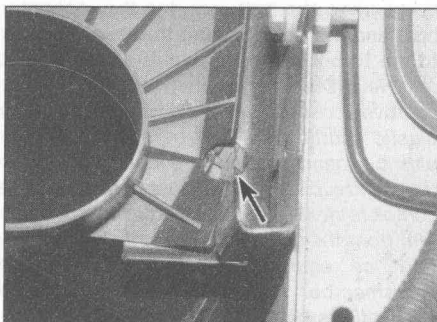
4.8 Slacken the clip (arrowed) and disconnect the flexible ducting from the air mass meter



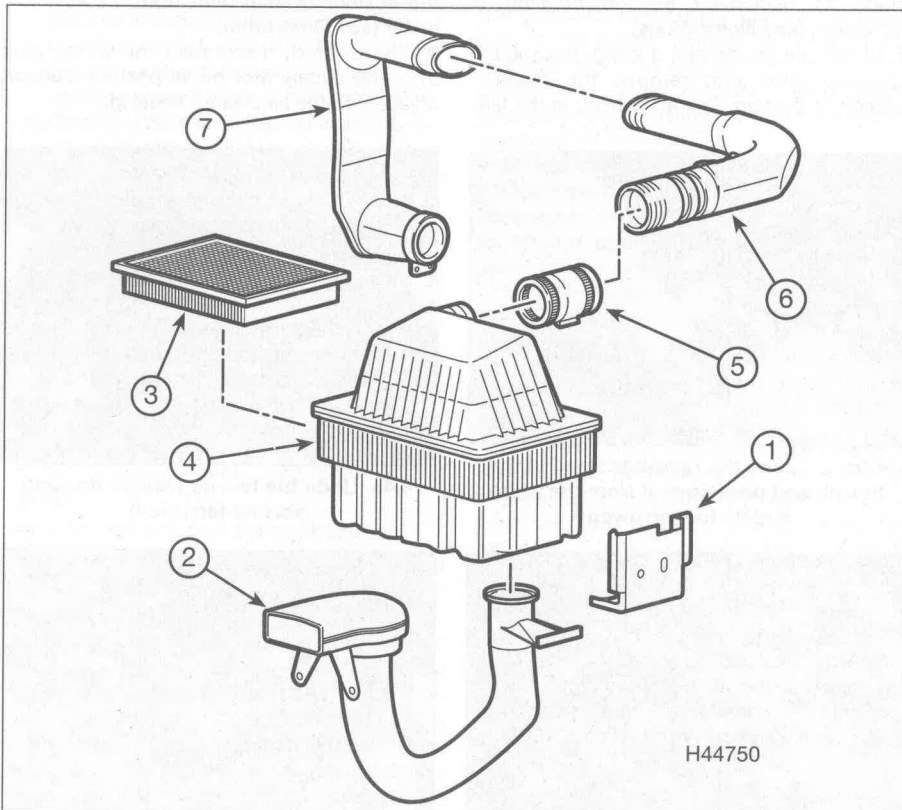
4.11 Undo the five screws (arrowed) securing the heater matrix into the air cleaner housing



4.12 Depress the clip (arrowed) and slide the housing up from the bracket



4.13 Depress the lug (arrowed) and slide the duct from the bracket



4.23 Air inlet ducting (non-intercooled, 2.0 litre DW10TD engine)

- |                               |                       |                         |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 Air cleaner housing bracket | 3 Air filter element  | 6 Air inlet ducting     |
| 2 Inlet ducting               | 4 Air cleaner housing | 7 Rigid plastic ducting |
|                               | 5 Air mass meter      |                         |

10 Rotate the accelerator pedal position sensor quadrant, and release the inner cable from the quadrant.

11 On intercooled models (DW10ATED), disconnect the water valve wiring plug, then undo the five screws securing the valve and heater matrix to the air cleaner housing (see illustration).

12 Release the retaining clip, then lift up the housing. Where fitted, slide the heater matrix out from the housing, and disconnect the water drain hose (see illustration).

13 To remove the air cleaner air inlet duct, depress the retaining lug and slide the duct from the bracket (see illustration).

14 Remove the front bumper as described in Chapter 11.

15 Push in the centre pins a little, then prise out the complete plastic rivets securing the inlet ducting to the bumper bar.

16 Manoeuvre the ducting from the engine compartment.

### Intake air resonator removal

#### 1.4 litre models

17 To remove the resonator, pull up and remove the plastic cover from the top of the engine, then make a note of its fitted position, and slacken the outlet ducting clamp. It must be refitted into its original position.

18 Undo the bolt securing the resonator box, and the bolt securing the turbocharger outlet pipe to the box (see illustrations 4.3a, 4.3b and 4.3c).

19 Lift up the right-hand end of the ducting, and remove the box and ducting from position.

### Turbocharger ducting removal

**Note:** For 1.4 litre models, see Air cleaner and inlet ducts removal.

#### 2.0 litre models

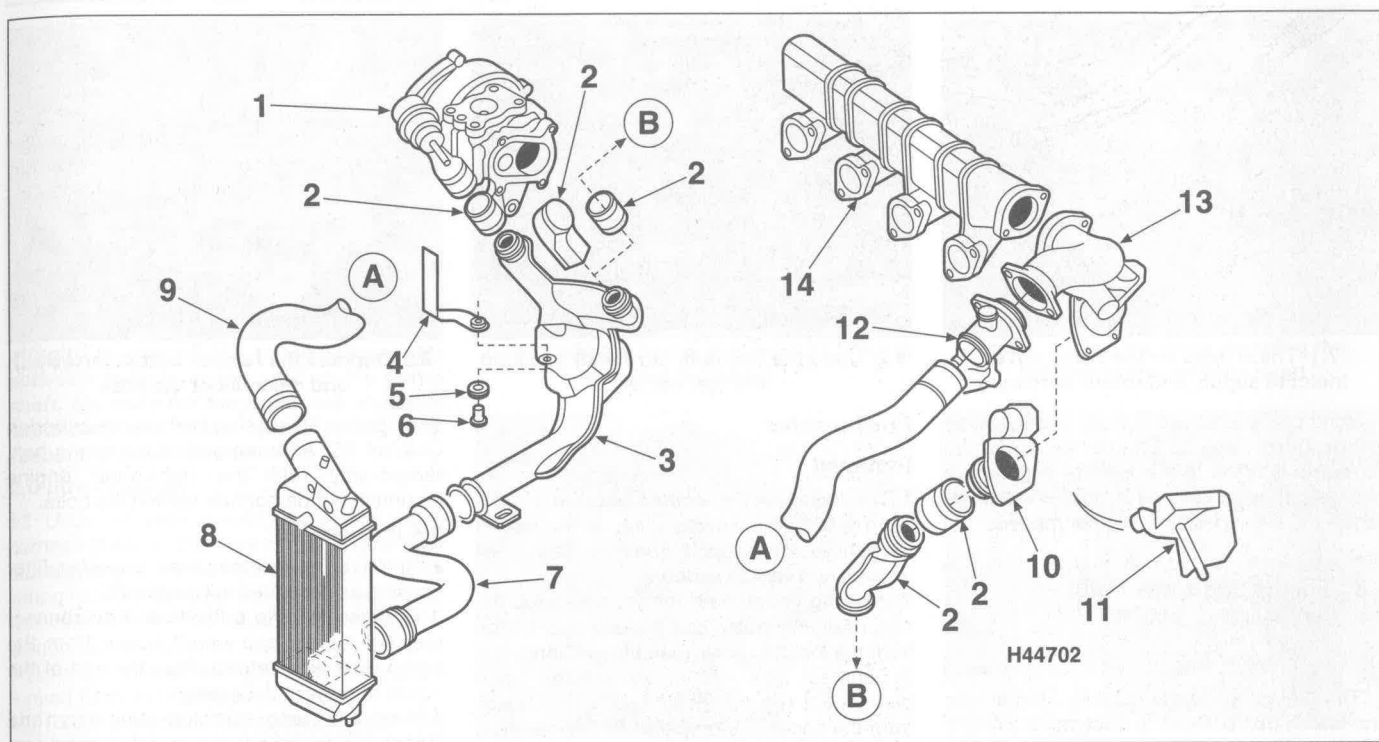
20 On 2.0 litre engines, the rigid ducts at the rear of the engine, connecting the turbocharger to the air inlet duct and to the inlet manifold are inaccessible with the engine in the car. To gain access it will be necessary to remove the front suspension subframe as described in Chapter 10.

21 Once access has been gained, undo the bolt securing the duct to the inlet manifold elbow.

22 At the lower end, undo the bolt securing the duct to the turbocharger. Lift off the duct and recover the seal from the lower end.

23 On DW10TD (non-intercooled) engines, to remove the turbocharger-to-inlet manifold rigid plastic duct, slacken the clamps, and release the connecting hose from the inlet manifold elbow. Slacken the clip securing the connecting hose at the lower end of the duct to the turbocharger. Release the attachment strap from the lug on the turbocharger and withdraw the duct from the engine (see illustration).

24 On DW10ATED engines, the intake air exits the turbocharger and enters an


**4.24 Turbocharger-to-manifold air ducting (2.0 litre DW10ATED engine)**

1 Turbocharger	4 Support bracket	7 Ducting	10 Valve housing	13 Intake elbow
2 Connecting piece	5 Grommet	8 Intercooler	11 Heat shield	14 Intake manifold
3 Intermediate manifold	6 Sleeve	9 Ducting	12 Valve housing	

intermediate manifold, where the air flows through the non-intercooled or intercooled route (**see illustration**). To remove this intermediate manifold, jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield.

**25** Slacken the clamps securing the intake ducting to the intermediate manifold, undo the bolt and manoeuvre the assembly from position.

**26** The remaining ducting is secured by hose clamps. Prior to removing any ducting, note the fitted positions of any vacuum hoses or electrical wiring/connections to aid refitting.

### Refitting

**27** Refitting is a reverse of the removal procedure. Examine the condition of the seals and retaining clips and renew if necessary.

**28** Where applicable, refit the front suspension subframe as described in Chapter 10.

**29** Where necessary, reconnect and adjust the accelerator cable as described in Section 5.

### 5 Accelerator cable – removal, refitting and adjustment



**Note:** The accelerator cable is only fitted to some 2.0 litre models

### Removal

**1** Undo the four fasteners and lift off the engine cover.

**2** Rotate the accelerator pedal position sensor quadrant, and release the inner cable from the quadrant.

**3** Withdraw the outer cable from the grommet in the pedal position sensor body, recover the flat washer from the end of the cable and remove the spring clip.

**4** Release the cable from the remaining clips and brackets in the engine compartment, noting its routing.

**5** Working in the passenger compartment, reach up under the fascia, depress the ends of the cable end fitting, and detach the inner cable from the top of the accelerator pedal.

**6** Release the outer cable grommet from the pedal mounting bracket, then tie a length of string to the end of the cable.

**7** Return to the engine compartment, release the cable grommet from the bulkhead and withdraw the cable. When the end of the cable appears, untie the string and leave it in position – it can then be used to draw the cable back into position on refitting.

### Refitting

**8** Refitting is a reversal of removal, but ensure that the cable is routed as noted before removal and, on completion, adjust the cable as follows.

### Adjustment

**9** Remove the spring clip from the accelerator outer cable. Ensuring that the pedal position sensor quadrant is against its stop, gently pull the cable out of its grommet until all free play is removed from the inner cable.

**10** With the cable held in this position, refit the spring clip to the last exposed outer cable groove in front of the rubber grommet and washer. When the clip is refitted and the outer cable is released, there should be only a small amount of free play in the inner cable.

**11** Have an assistant depress the accelerator pedal, and check that the pedal position sensor quadrant opens fully and returns smoothly to its stop.

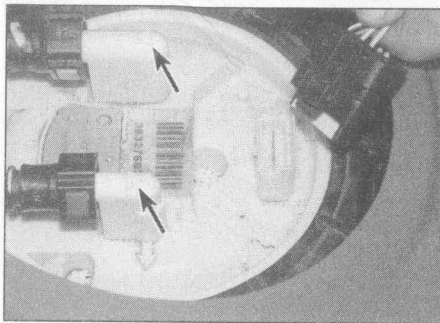
**12** Refit the engine cover on completion.

### 6 Accelerator pedal – removal and refitting

Refer to Chapter 4A.

### 7 Fuel lift pump – removal and refitting

The diesel fuel lift pump is located in the same position as the conventional fuel pump on petrol models, and the removal and



7.1 The arrows on the pump cover indicate supply and return (arrowed)

refitting procedures are virtually identical (see illustration). Refer to Chapter 4A. **Note:** No lift pump is fitted to the 1.4 litre engine, but the fuel gauge sender unit is located in the fuel tank – the same position as other models.

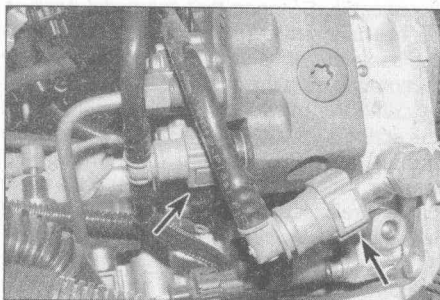
### 8 Fuel gauge sender unit – removal and refitting

The fuel gauge sender unit is integral with the fuel lift pump. Refer to Section 7.

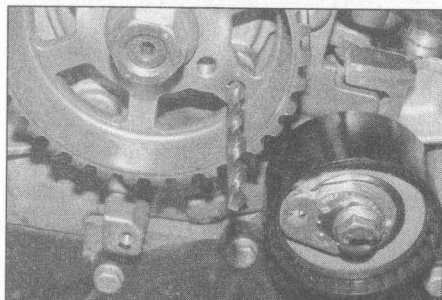
### 9 Fuel tank and cooler – removal and refitting

### Fuel tank

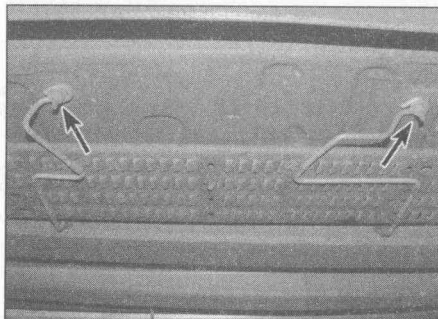
Refer to Chapter 4A.



10.3 Depress the release buttons (arrowed) and disconnect the fuel supply and return hoses from the pump



10.4 Stop the fuel pump sprocket from rotating by inserting an 8 mm drill bit or pin through the sprocket into the backplate



9.2 Undo the two nuts (arrowed) securing the fuel cooler

### Fuel cooler

#### Removal

1 The fuel cooler is located under the right-hand side of the vehicle. Jack up the rear of the vehicle, and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*).

2 Working underneath the vehicle, undo the two retaining nuts, and release the cooler from the locating holes (see illustration).

3 Depress the release buttons and disconnect the fuel feed and return hoses from the cooler. Be prepared for fuel spillage, and plug the hose and cooler openings to prevent dirt ingress (see illustration).

#### Refitting

4 Refitting is a reversal of removal,

### 10 High-pressure fuel pump – removal and refitting

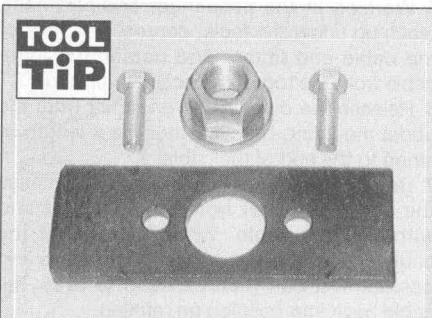


**Warning:** Refer to the information contained in Section 2 before proceeding.

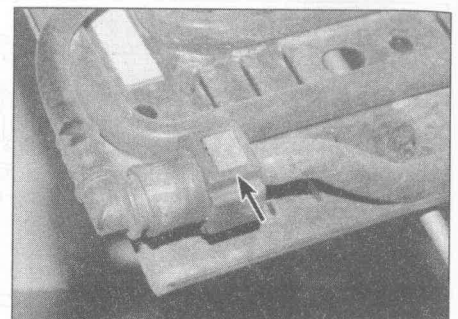
**Note:** A new fuel pump-to-accumulator rail high-pressure fuel pipe will be required for refitting.

#### Removal

1 Disconnect the battery (see Chapter 5A)



**Tip 1:** Make a sprocket releasing tool from a short strip of steel. Drill two holes in the strip to correspond with the two holes in the sprocket. Drill a third hole just large enough to accept the flats of the sprocket retaining nut.



9.3 Depress the release button (arrowed) and disconnect the hose

and remove the timing belt as described in Chapter 2C. After removal of the timing belt, temporarily refit the right-hand engine mounting but do not fully tighten the bolts.

#### 1.4 litre engine

2 Remove the cylinder head cover/air filter housing as described in Chapter 2C.

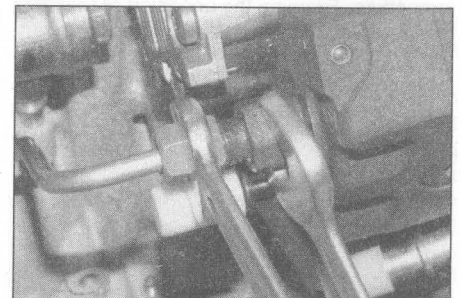
3 Depress the clip buttons and disconnect the fuel supply and return hoses from the pump (see illustration). Plug the end of the hoses to prevent dirt ingress.

4 Hold the pump sprocket stationary, and loosen the centre nut securing it to the pump shaft. The manufacturers recommend using an 8 mm pin inserted through the pulley and into the pump support (see illustration).

5 The fuel pump sprocket is a taper fit on the pump shaft and it will be necessary to make up a tool to release it from the taper (see **Tool Tip 1**). Partially unscrew the sprocket retaining nut, fit the home-made tool, and secure it to the sprocket with two 7.0 mm bolts and nuts. Prevent the sprocket from rotating as before, and screw down the nuts, forcing the sprocket off the shaft taper. Once the taper is released, remove the tool, unscrew the nut fully, and remove the sprocket from the pump shaft.

6 Undo the unions and remove the pump-to-accumulator rail metal pipe. Counterhold the pump union with a second spanner – the union screwed into the pump must not be allowed to unscrew (see illustration). Discard the pipe, a new one must be fitted.

7 Disconnect the wiring plugs from the pump, noting their fitted positions.



10.6 Counterhold the pump union with a second spanner whilst slackening the accumulator-to-pump pipe union

8 Undo the nuts/bolts and remove the pump support bracket from the rear of the pump, and the bracket on the cylinder head (see illustrations).

9 Remove the EGR valve with reference to Chapter 4C.

10 Undo the three bolts, and remove the pump (see illustration).

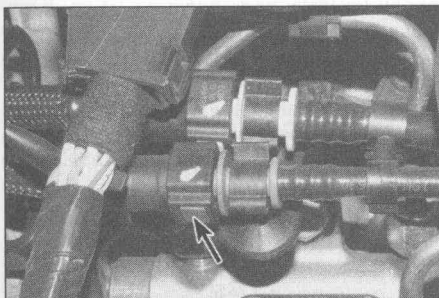
**Caution:** The high-pressure fuel pump is manufactured to extremely close tolerances and must not be dismantled in any way. Do not unscrew the fuel pipe male union on the rear of the pump, or attempt to remove the sensor, piston deactivator switch, or the seal on the pump shaft. No parts for the pump are available separately and if the unit is in any way suspect, it must be renewed.

### 2.0 litre engines

11 Undo the bolts securing the plastic wiring harness guide to the front of the engine (see illustration). It will be necessary to lift up the wiring harness as far as possible for access to the rear of the fuel pump. If necessary, disconnect the relevant wiring connectors to enable the harness and guide assembly to be moved further for additional access.

12 Place a suitable container beneath the fuel filter, then loosen the drain plug and drain the fuel. Retighten the plug.

13 Clean the feed and supply lines to the fuel filter, then unclip the fuel filter from its bracket

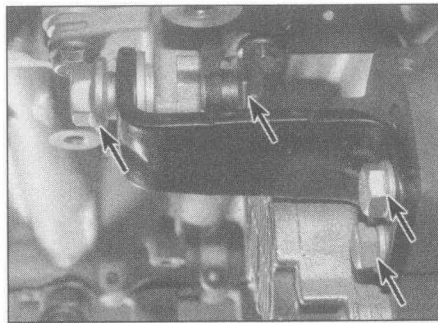


10.13 Press in the buttons (arrowed) and disconnect the fuel supply and return hose quick-release fitting at the connections

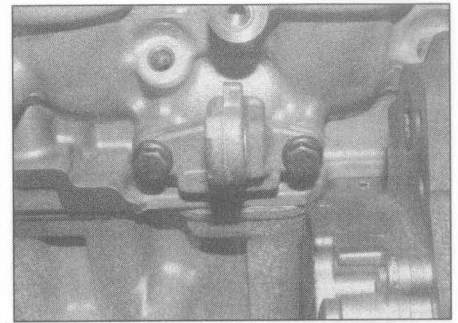
### TOOL TIP



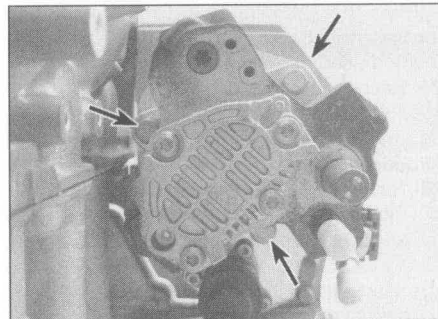
**Tip 2:** A sprocket holding tool can be made from two lengths of steel strip bolted together to form a forked end. Bend the ends of the strip through 90° to form the fork 'prongs'.



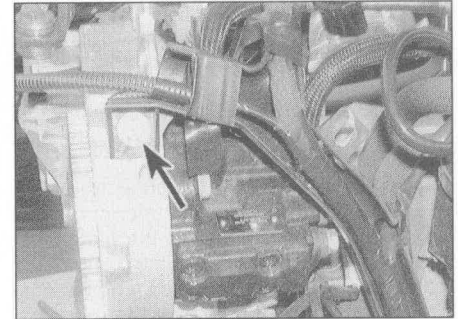
10.8a Undo the pump rear support bracket bolts/nut (arrowed) . . .



10.8b . . . and the bolts securing the bracket to the cylinder head



10.10 Unscrew the three bolts (arrowed) and remove the pump



10.11 Undo the bolt (arrowed) to release the plastic wiring harness guide

and disconnect the quick-release feed and supply lines (see illustration). Tape over or plug the openings in the filter and lines, to prevent entry of dust and dirt.

14 Unbolt and remove the fuel filter support bracket.

15 Hold the pump pulley/sprocket stationary, and loosen the centre nut securing it to the pump shaft. The manufacturers recommend using a pin inserted through the pulley and into the cylinder head, however, a home-made forked tool engaged with the pulley holes can be used instead (see illustration and Tool Tip 2).

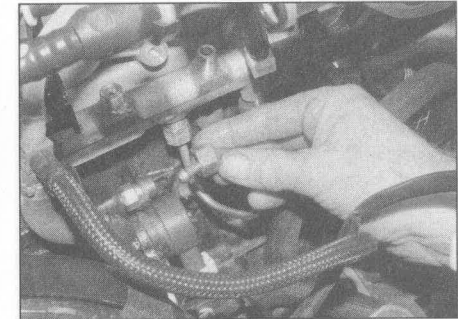
16 The fuel pump sprocket is a taper fit on the pump shaft and it will be necessary to make up a tool to release it from the taper (see Tool Tip 1). Partially unscrew the sprocket retaining nut, fit the home-made tool, and secure it to the sprocket with two 7.0 mm bolts. Prevent the sprocket from rotating as before, and

unscrew the sprocket retaining nut. The nut will bear against the tool as it is undone, forcing the sprocket off the shaft taper. Once the taper is released, remove the tool, unscrew the nut fully, and remove the sprocket from the pump shaft.

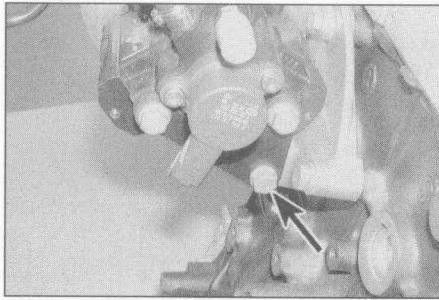
17 Thoroughly clean the high-pressure fuel pipe unions on the fuel pump and accumulator rail. Using an open-ended spanner, unscrew the union nuts securing the high-pressure fuel pipe to the fuel pump and accumulator rail. Counterhold the unions on the pump and accumulator rail with a second spanner, while unscrewing the union nuts. Withdraw the high-pressure fuel pipe and plug or cover the open unions to prevent dirt entry (see illustration). Note that a new high-pressure fuel pipe will be required for refitting. **Note:** The fuel lines must be renewed every time they are removed, as it is possible for minute metal particles to enter them as a



10.15 Using the home-made tools to remove the fuel pump sprocket



10.17 Unscrew the unions and remove the high pressure fuel pipe



**10.18 Undo the nut and bolt (arrowed) securing the fuel pump rear mounting to the mounting bracket**

result of tightening the union nuts. If these particles enter the fuel injectors, fuel at high-pressure can enter the combustion chambers unrestricted.

**18** Unscrew the nut and bolt securing the fuel pump rear mounting to the mounting bracket (see illustration).

**19** Disconnect the wiring connector at the pressure control valve on the rear of the fuel pump (orange wire), and at the piston de-activator switch on the top of the pump.

**20** Disconnect the low pressure hoses from the fuel pump, then tape over the openings. Move the hoses to one side.

**21** Unscrew the nut and two bolts securing the front of the fuel pump to the mounting bracket (see illustrations). Withdraw the pump and lift it off the engine.

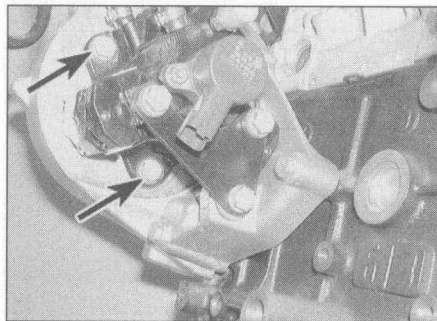
**Caution:** The high-pressure fuel pump is manufactured to extremely close tolerances and must not be dismantled in any way. Do not unscrew the fuel pipe male union on the rear of the pump, or attempt to remove the pressure control valve, piston de-activator switch, or the seal on the pump shaft. No parts for the pump are available separately and if the unit is in any way suspect, it must be renewed.

**Refitting**

**1.4 litre engine**

**22** Locate the pump in the mounting bracket, and refit the three mounting screws. Tighten them to the specified torque.

**23** Refit the sprocket to the pump shaft, and



**10.21a Fuel pump front mounting bolts (arrowed) . . .**

tighten the retaining nut to the specified torque, holding the sprocket by the same method used on removal.

**24** Reconnect the pump wiring plugs.

**25** Refit the pump rear support bracket, tightening the bolts/nut to the specified torque.

**26** Refit the EGR valve (see Chapter 4C).

**27** Fit a new metal fuel pipe between the pump and the accumulator rail. The unions at each end of the pipe must be tightened to the specified torque in two stages. Use a second spanner to counterhold the union screwed into the pump. Do not allow the union to move.

**28** The remainder of refitting is a reversal of removal.

**2.0 litre engines**

**29** Locate the pump on the mounting bracket, and refit the front retaining nut and the two bolts. Refit the nut and bolt securing the fuel pump rear mounting to the mounting bracket, then tighten all the mountings to the specified torque.

**30** Refit the low pressure hoses and tighten the clips.

**31** Reconnect the wiring to the pressure control valve and piston de-activator switch.

**32** Refit the mounting bracket to the rear of the fuel pump and tighten the bolts.

**33** Remove the blanking plugs from the fuel pipe unions on the pump and accumulator rail. Locate a new high-pressure fuel pipe over the unions and screw on the union nuts finger tight at this stage.

**34** Refit the pump sprocket and retaining nut and tighten the nut to the specified torque.

Prevent the sprocket rotating as the nut is tightened using the sprocket holding tool.

**35** Using a torque wrench and crow's-foot adaptor, tighten the fuel pipe union nuts to the specified torque. Counterhold the unions on the pump and accumulator rail with an open-ended spanner, while tightening the union nuts (see illustration).

**36** Reposition and secure the plastic wiring harness guide to the front of the engine, and reconnect any additional wiring disconnected for access.

**37** Refit the filter mounting bracket to the engine and securely tighten the retaining bolts. Locate the fuel filter back in position in the mounting bracket.

**38** Remove the blanking plugs and reconnect the supply and return hose quick-release fittings at the fuel filter, and at the connections above the fuel pump. Secure the hoses with their respective retaining clips.

**39** Refit the timing belt as described in Chapter 2C.

**All engines**

**40** With everything reassembled and reconnected, and observing the precautions listed in Section 2, start the engine and allow it to idle. Check for leaks at the high-pressure fuel pipe unions with the engine idling. If satisfactory, increase the engine speed to 4000 rpm and check again for leaks.

**41** Take the car for a short road test and check for leaks once again on return. If any leaks are detected, obtain and fit another new high-pressure fuel pipe. Do not attempt to cure even the slightest leak by further tightening of the pipe unions. During the road test, initialise the engine management ECU as follows. Engage third gear and stabilise the engine at 1000 rpm, then accelerate fully up to 3500 rpm.

**11 Accumulator rail – removal and refitting**



**Warning:** Refer to the information contained in Section 2 before proceeding.

**Note:** A complete new set of high-pressure fuel pipes will be required for refitting.

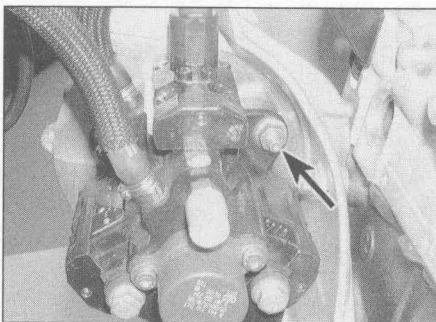
**Removal**

**1** Disconnect the battery (refer to Chapter 5A).  
**2** Remove the plastic cover from the top of the engine. On 1.4 litre models, the cover pulls up from place; on 2.0 litre models, undo the four fasteners and lift away the cover.

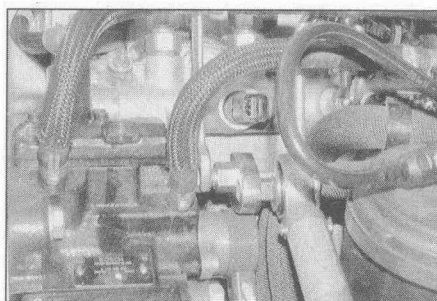
**1.4 litre models**

**3** Remove the cylinder head cover/air filter housing as described in Chapter 2C.

**4** Clean the area around the high-pressure fuel pipes to and from the accumulator rail, then unscrew the pump-to-accumulator rail pipe unions. Use a second spanner to counterhold the union screwed in to the pump



**10.21b . . . and mounting nut (arrowed)**



**10.35 Tighten the fuel pipe union nuts using a torque wrench and crow's-foot adaptor**

body (see illustration 10.6). The screwed-in union must not be allowed to move. Remove the pipe.

5 Repeat the procedure on the accumulator rail-to-injector fuel pipes. Use a second spanner to counterhold the unions screwed in to the injectors (see illustration). These unions must not be allowed to move. Note their fitted locations and remove the pipes.

6 Plug the openings in the accumulator rail and fuel pump to prevent dirt ingress.

7 Disconnect the pressure sensor wiring plug from the accumulator rail (see illustration).

8 Disconnect the fuel return pipe from the rail (see illustration).

9 Unscrew the two rail mounting bolts and manoeuvre it from place (see illustration).

**Note:** Peugeot insist that the fuel pressure sensor on the accumulator rail must not be removed.

### 2.0 litre models

10 Disconnect the wiring connectors at the fuel injectors and at the piston de-activator switch on the top of the fuel pump (see illustrations).

11 Release the retaining clip and disconnect the crankcase ventilation hose from the cylinder head cover. Position it to one side, then remove the plastic engine cover support bracket from the right-hand front end of the engine.

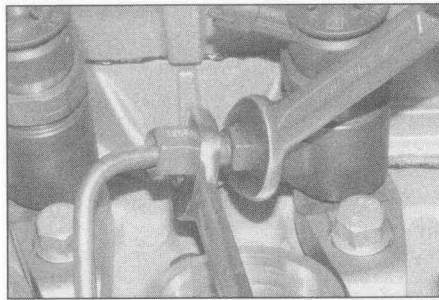
12 Undo the two nuts securing the plastic wiring harness guide to the cylinder head. Lift the guide off the two mounting studs and move it clear of the accumulator rail (see illustration). Disconnect any additional wiring connectors as necessary to enable the harness and guide assembly to be moved further for increased access.

13 At the connections above the fuel pump, disconnect the fuel supply and return hose quick-release fittings using a small screwdriver to release the locking clip. Suitably plug or cover the open unions to prevent dirt entry.

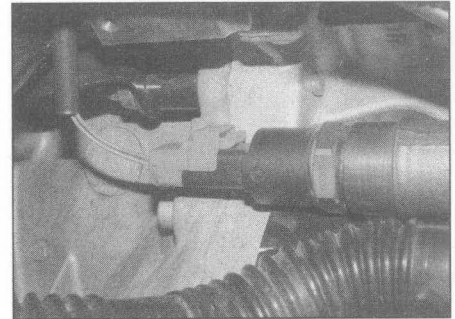
14 Similarly disconnect the supply and return hose quick-release fittings at the fuel filter, and plug or cover the open unions. Release the fuel hoses from the relevant retaining clips.

15 Thoroughly clean all the high-pressure fuel pipe unions on the accumulator rail, fuel pump and injectors. Using an open-ended spanner, unscrew the union nuts securing the high-pressure fuel pipe to the fuel pump and accumulator rail. Counterhold the unions on the pump and accumulator rail with a second spanner, while unscrewing the union nuts. Withdraw the high-pressure fuel pipe and plug or cover the open unions to prevent dirt entry.

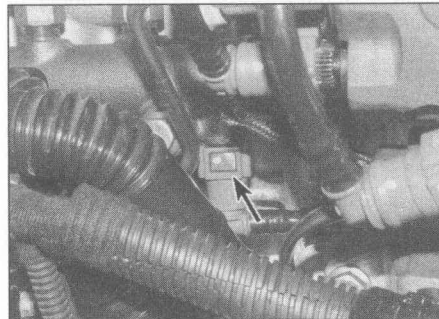
16 Again using two spanners, hold the unions and unscrew the union nuts securing the high-pressure fuel pipes to the fuel injectors and accumulator rail (see illustrations). Withdraw the high-pressure fuel pipes and plug or cover the open unions to prevent dirt entry.



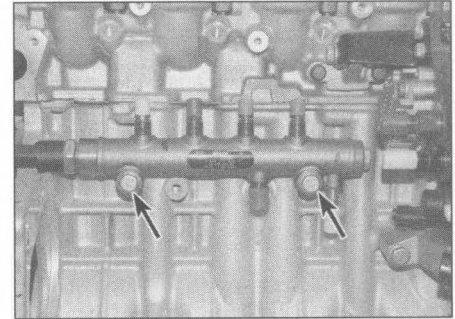
11.5 Use a second spanner to counterhold the fuel injector unions whilst slackening the pipe unions



11.7 Disconnect the accumulator rail pressure sensor wiring plug



11.8 Depress the release button (arrowed) and disconnect the fuel return hose

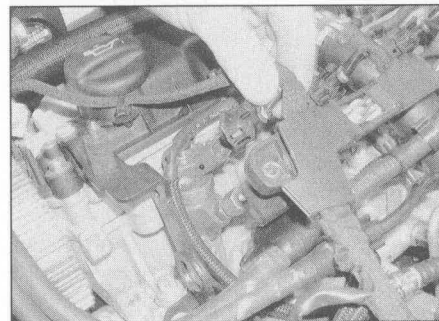


11.9 Remove the accumulator rail mounting bolts (arrowed)

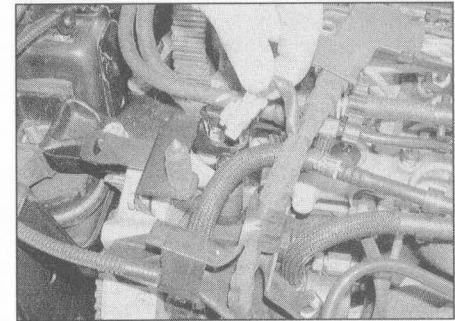
17 Disconnect the wiring connector fuel pressure sensor on the accumulator rail.

18 Undo the three bolts securing the accumulator rail to the cylinder head and withdraw the rail from its location (see illustration).

**Caution:** Do not attempt to remove the four high-pressure fuel pipe male unions from the accumulator rail. These parts are not available separately and if disturbed are likely to result in fuel leakage on reassembly.



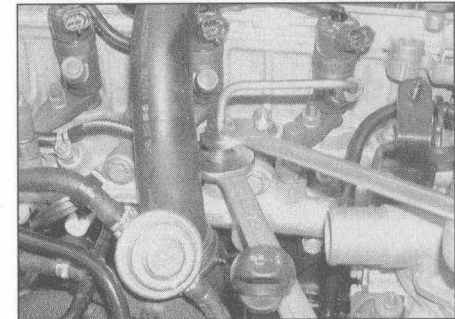
11.10a Disconnect the wiring connectors at the fuel injectors . . .



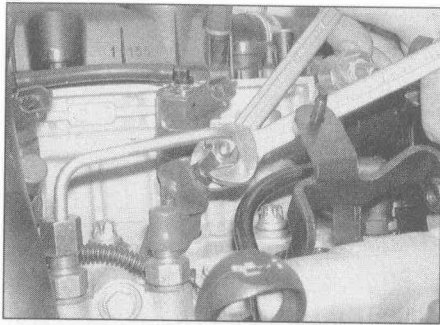
11.10b . . . and at the piston de-activator switch on top of the fuel pump



11.12 Undo the two nuts and lift off the plastic wiring harness guide



11.16a Using two spanners, unscrew the fuel pipe unions at the accumulator rail . . .



11.16b ... and at each injector

### Refitting

19 Locate the accumulator rail in position, refit and finger-tighten the mounting bolts.

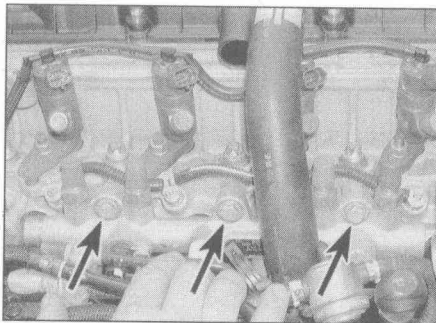
20 Reconnect the accumulator pressure sensor wiring plug.

21 Fit the new pump-to-rail high pressure pipe, and only finger-tighten the unions at first, then tighten the unions to the Stage 1 torque setting, followed by the Stage 2 torque setting. Use a second spanner to counterhold the union screwed into the pump body.

22 Fit the new set of rail-to-injector high pressure pipes, and finger tighten the unions. If it's not possible to fit the new pipes to the injector unions, remove and refit the injectors as described in Section 12. and try again.

23 Tighten the accumulator mounting bolts to the specified torque.

24 Tighten the rail-to-injector pipe unions to the Stage 1 torque setting, followed by the



11.18 Undo the three accumulator rail mounting bolts (arrowed)

Stage 2 setting. Use a second spanner to counterhold the injector unions.

25 The remainder of refitting is a reversal of removal, noting the following points:

- Ensure all wiring connectors and harnesses are correctly refitting and secured.
- Reconnect the battery as described in Chapter 5A.
- Observing the precautions listed in Section 2, start the engine and allow it to idle. Check for leaks at the high-pressure fuel pipe unions with the engine idling. If satisfactory, increase the engine speed to 4000 rpm and check again for leaks. Take the car for a short road test and check for leaks once again on return. If any leaks are detected, obtain and fit additional new high-pressure fuel pipes as required. **Do not attempt to cure even the slightest leak by further tightening of the pipe unions.** During the road test, initialise the engine

management ECU as follows. Engage third gear and stabilise the engine at 1000 rpm, then accelerate fully up to 3500 rpm.

## 12 Fuel injectors – removal and refitting



**Warning:** Refer to the information contained in Section 2 before proceeding.

**Note:** The following procedure describes the removal and refitting of the injectors as a complete set, however each injector may be removed individually if required. New copper washers, upper seals, injector clamp retaining nuts and a high-pressure fuel pipe will be required for each disturbed injector when refitting.

### Removal

1 Remove the plastic cover from the top of the engine. On 1.4 litre models, the cover pulls up from place; on 2.0 litre models, undo the four screws and lift away the cover.

#### 1.4 litre models

2 Remove the cylinder head cover/air filter housing as described in Chapter 2C.

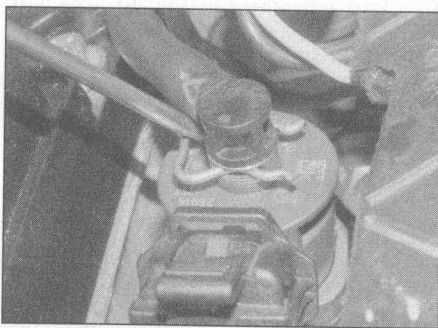
3 Clean the area around the high-pressure fuel pipes between the injectors and the accumulator rail, then unscrew the pipe unions. Use a second spanner to counterhold the union screwed in to the injector body (see illustration 11.5). The injectors screwed-in unions must not be allowed to move. Remove the pipes. Plug the openings in the accumulator rail and injectors to prevent dirt ingress.

4 Extract the retaining circlip and disconnect the leak-off pipe from each fuel injector (see illustration).

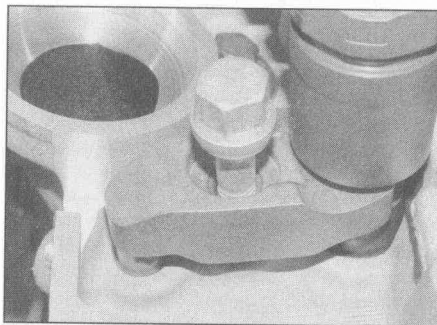
5 Unscrew the injector retaining bolt, and remove the clamp. If loose, recover the clamp locating dowel from the cylinder head (see illustrations).

6 Carefully pull or lever the injector from place. Do not lever against or pull on the solenoid housing at the top of the injector.

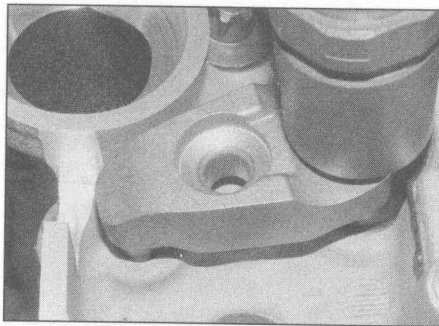
7 Remove the copper washer and the upper seal from each injector, or from the cylinder head if they remained in place during injector removal (see illustration). New copper



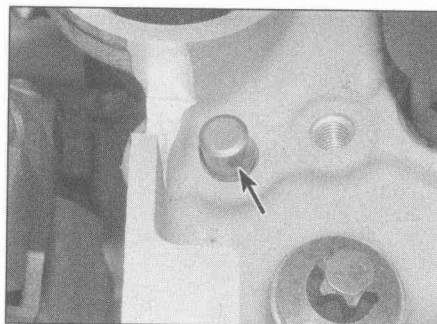
12.4 Prise out the circlip and disconnect the fuel leak-off pipe



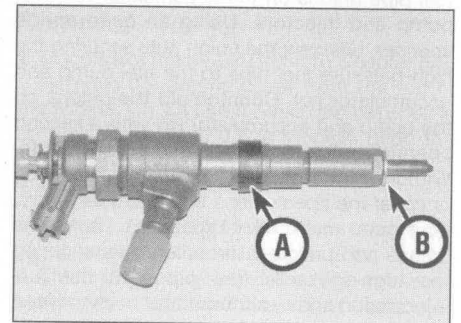
12.5a Undo the injector clamp bolt ...



12.5b ... and remove the clamp



12.5c If it's loose, remove the locating dowel (arrowed)



12.7 Fuel injector upper seal (A) and copper washer (B)

washers and upper seals will be required for refitting. Cover the injector hole in the cylinder head to prevent dirt ingress.

**8** Examine each injector visually for any signs of obvious damage or deterioration. If any defects are apparent, renew the injector(s).

**Caution:** *The injectors are manufactured to extremely close tolerances and must not be dismantled in any way. Do not unscrew the fuel pipe union on the side of the injector, or separate any parts of the injector body. Do not attempt to clean carbon deposits from the injector nozzle or carry out any form of ultrasonic or pressure testing.*

### 2.0 litre models

**9** Disconnect the battery (see Chapter 5A), then unscrew the four fasteners and remove the plastic cover from the top of the engine.

**10** Disconnect the wiring connectors at the fuel injectors (see illustration).

**11** Release the retaining clip and disconnect the crankcase ventilation hose from the cylinder head cover. Position it to one side.

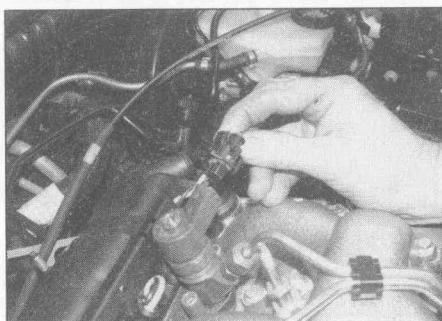
**12** Undo the two nuts securing the plastic wiring harness guide to the cylinder head. Lift the guide off the two mounting studs and move it clear of the accumulator rail. Disconnect any additional wiring connectors as necessary to enable the harness and guide assembly to be moved to one side.

**13** Thoroughly clean all the high-pressure fuel pipe unions on the fuel injectors and accumulator rail. Using two open-ended spanners, unscrew the union nuts securing the high-pressure fuel pipes to the fuel injectors and accumulator rail (see illustrations 11.16a and 11.16b). Withdraw the high-pressure fuel pipes and plug or cover the open unions on the injectors and accumulator rail to prevent dirt entry. Note that a new high-pressure fuel pipe will be required for each removed injector when refitting.

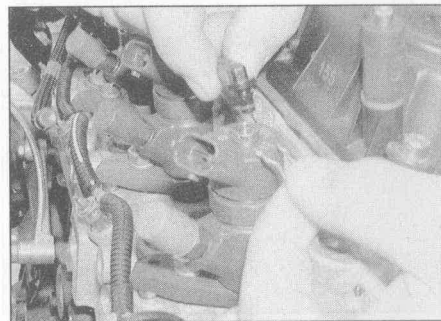
**14** Extract the retaining circlip and disconnect the leak-off pipe from each fuel injector (see illustration).

**15** Unscrew the nut(s) and remove the washer(s) securing each injector clamp to its cylinder head stud(s) (see illustrations). Note that new clamp nuts will be required for refitting.

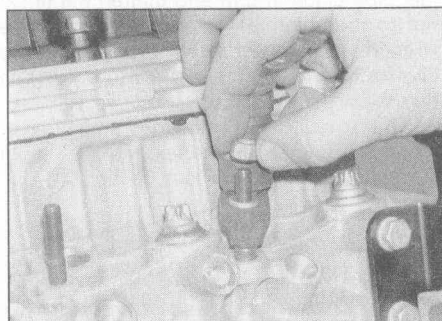
**16** Withdraw the injectors, together with their clamps, from the cylinder head. Slide the



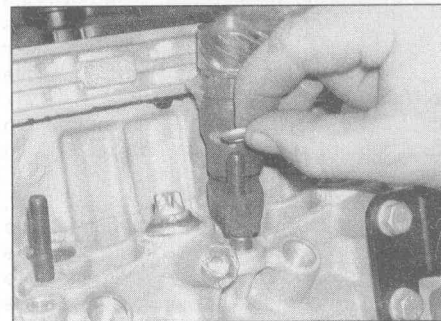
12.10 Disconnect the injector wiring



12.14 Extract the circlip and disconnect the injector leak-off pipes



12.15a Unscrew the injector clamp retaining nut . . .



12.15b . . . and remove the washer

clamp off the injector once it is clear of the mounting stud. If the injectors are a tight fit in the cylinder head and cannot be released, two screwdrivers may be used to carefully lever them out (see illustration). Alternatively, unscrew one mounting stud using a stud extractor and slide off the injector clamp. Using an open-ended spanner engaged with the clamp locating slot on the injector body, free the injector by twisting it and at the same time lifting it upwards.

**17** Recover the injector clamp locating dowel from the cylinder head (see illustration).

**18** Remove the copper washer and the upper seal from each injector, or from the cylinder head if they remained in place during injector removal. New copper washers and upper seals will be required for refitting.

**19** Examine each injector visually for any signs of obvious damage or deterioration. If any defects are apparent, renew the injector(s).

**Caution:** *The injectors are manufactured to extremely close tolerances and must not be dismantled in any way. Do not unscrew the fuel pipe union on the side of the injector, or separate any parts of the injector body. Do not attempt to clean carbon deposits from the injector nozzle or carry out any form of ultrasonic or pressure testing.*

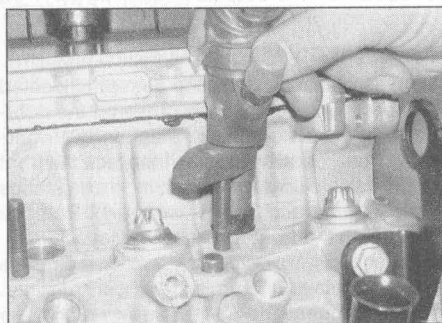
**20** If the injectors are in a satisfactory condition, plug the fuel pipe union (if not already done) and suitably cover the electrical element and the injector nozzle.

### Refitting

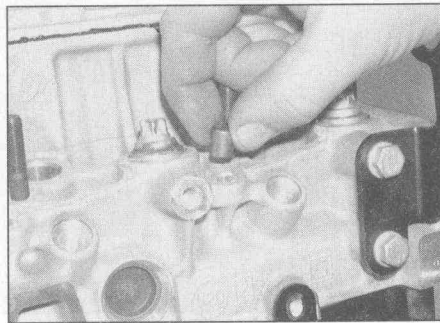
**21** Locate a new upper seal on the body of each injector, and place a new copper washer on the injector nozzle (see illustrations).

**22** Refit the injector clamp locating dowels to the cylinder head.

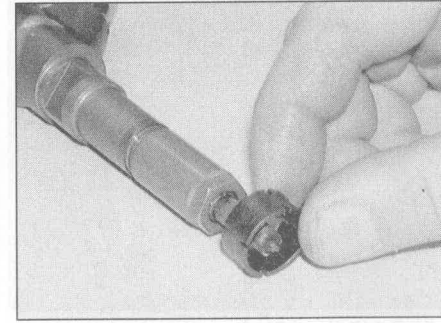
**23** Place the injector clamp in the slot on each injector body and refit the injectors to



12.16 Withdraw the injectors, together with their clamps, from the cylinder head

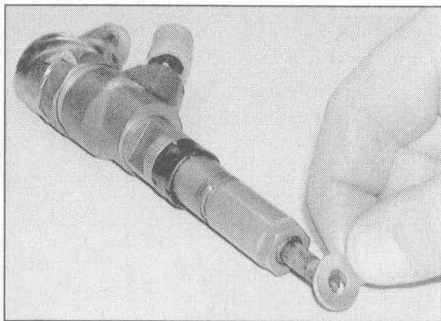


12.17 Recover the clamp locating dowel from the cylinder head



12.21a Locate a new upper seal on the body of each injector . . .





12.21b ... and place a new copper washer on the injector nozzle

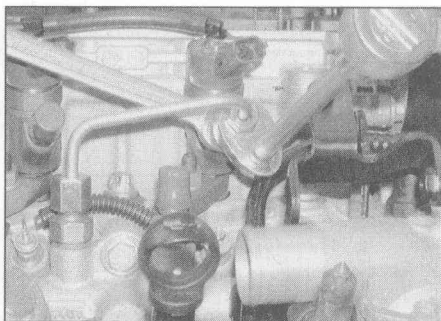
the cylinder head. Guide the clamp over the mounting stud and onto the locating dowel as each injector is inserted. Ensure the upper injector seals are correctly located in the cylinder head.

24 Fit the washer and a new injector clamp retaining nut to each mounting stud. Tighten the nuts finger tight only at this stage.

25 Working on one fuel injector at a time, remove the blanking plugs from the fuel pipe unions on the accumulator rail and the relevant injector. Locate a new high-pressure fuel pipe over the unions and screw on the union nuts. Take care not to cross-thread the nuts or strain the fuel pipes as they are fitted. Once the union nut threads have started, finger-tighten the nuts only at this stage.

26 When all the fuel pipes are in place, tighten the injector clamp retaining nuts to the specified torque.

27 Using an open-ended spanner, hold each



12.27 Using a torque wrench and crow's-foot adaptor, tighten the fuel pipe union nuts

fuel pipe union in turn and tighten the union nut to the specified torque using a torque wrench and crow's-foot adaptor (see illustration). Tighten all the disturbed union nuts in the same way.

28 The remainder of refitting is a reversal of removal, following the points listed in Paragraph 25 of the previous Section.

### 13 Electronic control system components – testing, removal and refitting



#### Testing

1 If a fault is suspected in the electronic control side of the system, first ensure that all the wiring connectors are securely connected and free of corrosion. Ensure that the suspected problem is not of a mechanical nature, or due to poor

maintenance; ie, check that the air cleaner filter element is clean, the engine breather hoses are clear and undamaged, and that the cylinder compression pressures are correct, referring to Chapters 1B and 2C for further information.

2 If these checks fail to reveal the cause of the problem, the vehicle should be taken to a Peugeot dealer or suitably-equipped garage for testing.

3 A diagnostic socket is located behind the trim panel to the right of the steering column, to which a fault code reader or other suitable test equipment can be connected. By using the code reader or test equipment, the engine management ECU (and the various other vehicle system ECUs) can be interrogated, and any stored fault codes can be retrieved. This will allow the fault to be quickly and simply traced, alleviating the need to test all the system components individually, which is a time-consuming operation that carries a risk of damaging the ECU.

#### Electronic control unit (ECU)

**Note:** If a new ECU is to be fitted, this work must be entrusted to a Peugeot dealer or suitably-equipped specialist. It is necessary to initialise the new ECU after installation, which requires the use of dedicated Peugeot diagnostic equipment.

**Note:** Before carrying out the following procedure, disconnect the battery (see Chapter 5A). Reconnect the battery on completion of refitting.

4 The ECU is located in a plastic box which is mounted on the left-hand front wheel arch.

5 Lift off the ECU module box lid.

6 Release the wiring connector(s) by depressing the tab and moving the locking lever on top of the connector from the vertical to the fully horizontal position. Carefully withdraw the connector from the ECU pins (see illustrations)

7 Lift the ECU upwards and remove it from its location (see illustration).

8 To remove the ECU module box, undo the internal and external retaining bolts and remove the module box.

9 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

#### Crankshaft speed/position sensor

**Note:** Before carrying out the following procedure, disconnect the battery (refer to Chapter 5A). Reconnect the battery on completion of refitting.

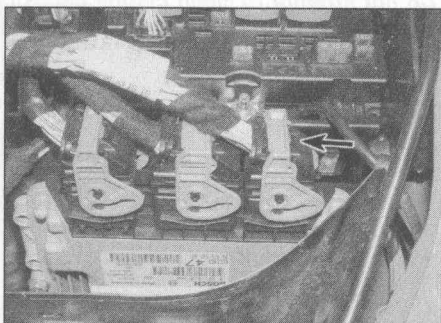
##### 1.4 litre models

10 The crankshaft position sensor is located adjacent to the crankshaft pulley on the right-hand end of the engine. Slacken the right-hand front roadwheel bolts, then jack the front of the vehicle up and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the right-hand front roadwheel.

11 Push in the centre pins a little, then prise out the rivets and remove the wheel arch liner.

12 Disconnect the sensor wiring plug (see illustration).

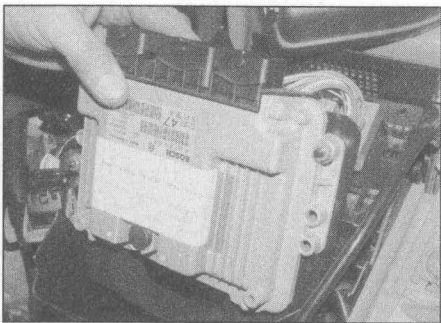
13 Undo the bolt and remove the sensor.



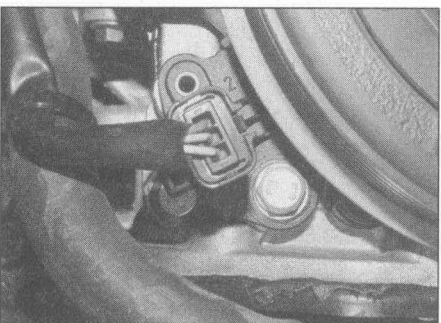
13.6a Depress the retaining tab (arrowed) ...



13.6b ... and move the lever from the vertical to horizontal position



13.7 Lift the ECU from the electrical box



13.12 Disconnect the crankshaft position sensor wiring plug

14 Refitting is a reversal of removal, tightening the sensor retaining bolt securely.

**2.0 litre models**

15 The crankshaft speed/position sensor is located at the top of the transmission bellhousing, directly above the engine flywheel. To gain access, remove the air cleaner assembly as described in Section 4, then remove the battery and battery tray (see Chapter 5A).

16 Undo the retaining nuts and bolts and release the plastic wiring harness guide from its mountings (see illustration).

17 Working below the thermostat housing, disconnect the wiring connector from the crankshaft speed/position sensor.

18 Slacken the bolt securing the sensor to the bellhousing (see illustration). It is not necessary to remove the bolt completely as the sensor mounting flange is slotted.

19 Turn the sensor body to clear the mounting bolt, then withdraw the sensor from the bellhousing (see illustration).

20 Refitting is reverse of the removal procedure ensuring the sensor retaining bolt is securely tightened.

**Camshaft position sensor**

**Note:** Before carrying out the following procedure, disconnect the battery (refer to Chapter 5A). Reconnect the battery on completion of refitting.

21 The camshaft position sensor is mounted on the right-hand end of the cylinder head cover, directly behind the camshaft sprocket.

**1.4 litre models**

22 Remove the upper timing belt cover, as described in Chapter 2C.

23 Unplug the sensor wiring connector (see illustration).

24 Undo the bolt and pull the sensor from position.

25 Upon refitting, position the sensor so that the air gap between the sensor end and the webs of the signal wheel is 1.2 mm, measured with feeler gauges, for a used sensor. If fitting a new sensor, the small tip of the sensor must be just touching one of the three webs of the signal wheel. Tighten the sensor retaining bolt to the specified torque (see illustration).

26 The remainder of refitting is a reversal of removal.

**2.0 litre models**

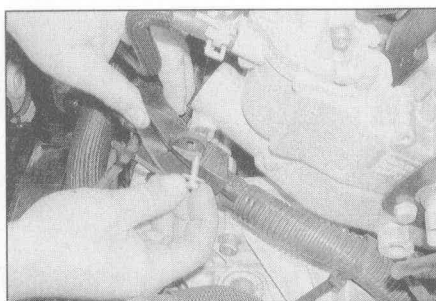
27 Remove the timing belt upper and intermediate covers as described in Chapter 2C.

28 Disconnect the sensor wiring connector (see illustration).

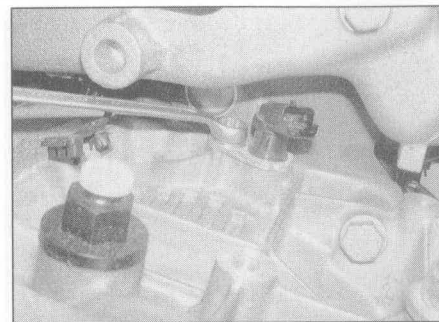
29 Undo the retaining bolt and lift the sensor off the cylinder head cover (see illustration).

30 To refit and adjust the sensor position, locate the sensor on the cylinder head cover and loosely refit the retaining bolt.

31 The air gap between the tip of the sensor and the signal wheel at the rear of the camshaft sprocket hub must be set to 1.2 mm, using feeler blades. Clearance for the feeler blades is limited with the timing belt and



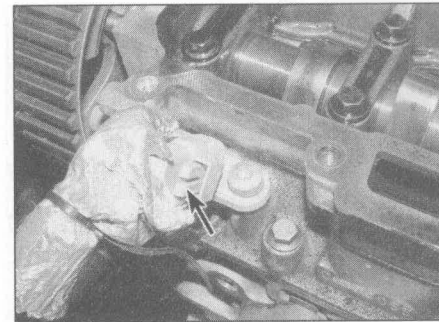
13.16 Release the plastic wiring harness guide for access to the crankshaft position sensor



13.18 Slacken the bolt securing the sensor to the bellhousing



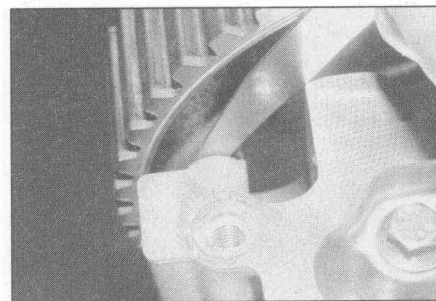
13.19 Turn the sensor body to clear the bolt and withdraw it from the bellhousing



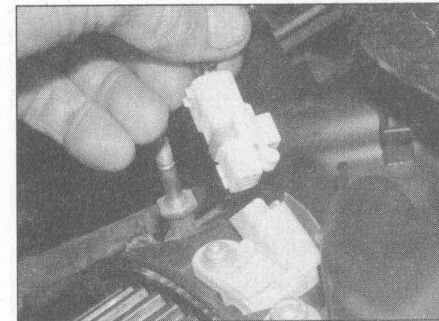
13.23 Disconnect the camshaft position sensor wiring plug (arrowed)

camshaft sprocket in place, but it is just possible if the feeler blades are bent through 90° so they can be inserted through the holes in the sprocket, to rest against the inner face of the signal wheel.

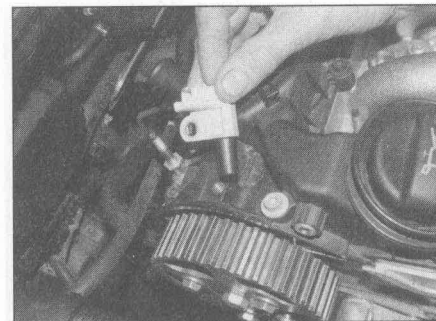
32 With the feeler blades placed against the target plate, move the sensor toward the sprocket until it just contacts the feeler blades. Hold the sensor in this position and tighten the retaining bolt (see illustration).



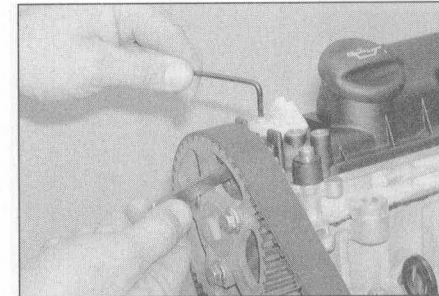
13.25 The gap between the end of the sensor and the webs of the signal wheel must be 1.2 mm (used sensor only)



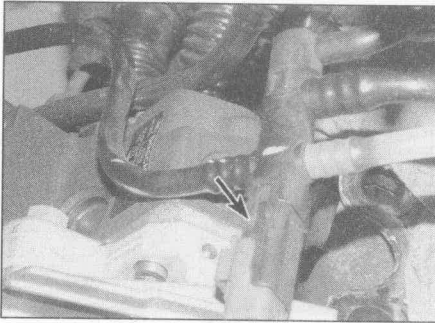
13.28 Disconnect the wiring ...



13.29 ... and remove the sensor



13.32 Insert feeler gauges bent 90° through the sprocket to measure the camshaft position sensor air gap



**13.40 Fuel temperature sensor (arrowed) (1.4 litre engine)**

**33** With the gap correctly adjusted, reconnect the sensor wiring connector, then refit the timing belt upper and intermediate covers as described in Chapter 2C.

**Accelerator pedal position sensor**

**Note:** Before carrying out the following procedure, disconnect the battery (refer to Chapter 5A). Reconnect the battery on completion of refitting.

**Models without accelerator cable**

**34** On these models, the pedal sensor is integral with the accelerator pedal assembly. Refer to the relevant Section of Chapter 4A for the pedal removal procedure.

**Models with accelerator cable**

**35** The accelerator pedal position sensor is located in the left-hand front corner of the engine compartment.

**36** Remove the air cleaner assembly as described in Section 4.

**37** Undo the two nuts and bolts and remove the sensor assembly from the mounting bracket on the side of the air cleaner housing.

**38** Refitting is reverse of the removal procedure.

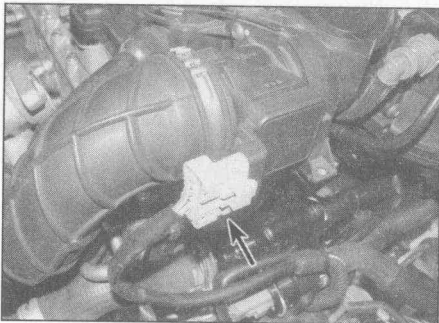
**Coolant temperature sensor**

**39** Refer to Chapter 3, Section 7.

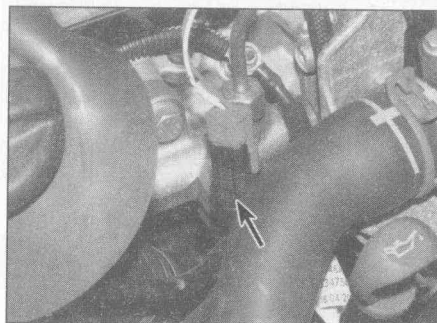
**Fuel temperature sensor**

**Warning:** Refer to the information contained in Section 2 before proceeding.

**Note:** Before carrying out the following procedure, disconnect the battery (refer to



**13.53a Air mass meter wiring plug (arrowed) (1.4 litre engine)**



**13.42 Fuel temperature sensor (arrowed) (2.0 litre engine)**

Chapter 5A). Reconnect the battery on completion of refitting.

**1.4 litre models**

**40** The sensor is clipped in to the plastic fuel manifold at the right-hand rear end of the cylinder head. To remove the sensor, disconnect the wiring plug, then unclip the sensor from the manifold. Be prepared for fuel spillage (see illustration).

**41** Refitting is a reversal of removal.

**2.0 litre models**

**42** The fuel temperature sensor is located to the left-hand side of the oil filler cap (see illustration).

**43** Undo the four plastic fasteners and lift off the engine cover.

**44** Disconnect the fuel temperature sensor wiring connector.

**45** Thoroughly clean the area around the sensor and its location.

**46** Suitably protect the components below the sensor and have plenty of clean rags handy. Be prepared for considerable fuel spillage.

**47** Release the retaining clips and detach the sensor from the fuel pipes.

**48** Refit the sensor to the fuel pipes, ensuring the clips fully engage.

**49** Reconnect the sensor wiring plug.

**50** Refit the engine plastic cover.

**All models**

**51** Observing the precautions listed in Section 2, start the engine and allow it to idle. Check for leaks at the fuel temperature sensor with the engine idling. If satisfactory, increase

the engine speed to 4000 rpm and check again for leaks. Take the car for a short road test and check for leaks once again on return. If any leaks are detected, obtain and fit a new sensor.

**Air mass meter**

**Note:** Before carrying out the following procedure, disconnect the battery (refer to Chapter 5A). Reconnect the battery on completion of refitting.

**52** Air mass meter is located in the intake ducting from the air cleaner housing. On 1.4 litre models, pull the plastic cover from its mountings on top of the engine.

**53** Disconnect the meter wiring plug (see illustrations).

**54** Slacken the retaining clips and disconnect the air inlet ducting from either side of the air mass meter. Suitably plug or cover the turbocharger rigid inlet duct, using clean rag to prevent any dirt or foreign material from entering. On 1.4 litre models, the air cleaner outlet is bolted to the air mass meter.

**55** Refitting is reverse of the removal procedure.

**Fuel pressure sensor**

**56** The fuel pressure sensor is integral with the accumulator rail, and is not available separately. Peugeot insist that the sensor is not removed from the rail.

**Fuel pressure control valve**

**57** The fuel pressure control valve is integral with the high-pressure fuel pump and cannot be separated.

**Preheating system control unit**

**58** Refer to Chapter 5C.

**EGR solenoid valve**

**59** Refer to Chapter 4C, Section 2.

**Vehicle speed sensor**

**60** The engine management ECU receives the vehicle speed signal from the wheels speed sensors via the ABS ECU. Refer to Chapter 9 for wheel speed sensor removal.

**14 Inlet manifold – removal and refitting**



**1.4 litre engine**

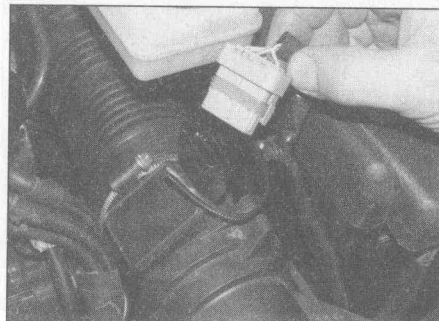
**1** The inlet manifold is integral with the cylinder head cover. Refer to Chapter 2C.

**2.0 litre engines**

**Note:** Renew the manifold gasket when refitting.

**Removal**

**2** The inlet manifold is located on the rear of the cylinder head, together with the exhaust manifold. First, remove the exhaust manifold as described in Section 15.



**13.53b Air mass meter wiring plug (arrowed) (2.0 litre engine)**

3 Remove the windscreen wiper arms (Chapter 12), then unclip the plastic scuttle panel. The trim is secured by plastic expanding rivets at each end – push in the centre pins a little, then prise out the complete rivets. Pull up the ends of the panel to release it from the windscreen clips, then pull the centre of the panel down to release it from the centre windscreen clip. Undo the two bolts securing the brake/clutch master cylinder upper reservoir and move it to one side. Release the sound insulation trim from the scuttle crossmember, undo the bolt at each end, and remove the crossmember from the vehicle (see illustrations).

4 Undo the four bolts and four nuts securing the inlet manifold flanges to the cylinder head (see illustration) and recover the washers. If preferred, the lower mounting nuts may be loosened and not removed, as the lower inlet manifold holes are slotted to allow the manifold to be lifted upwards once the upper bolts have been removed.

5 Lift the manifold off the cylinder head studs and recover the gasket.

### Refitting

6 Refitting is reverse of the removal procedure, bearing in mind the following points.

- Ensure that the manifold and cylinder head mating faces are clean, with all traces of old gasket removed.
- Use a new gasket when refitting the manifold.
- Ensure that all fixings and attachments are securely tightened.
- Refit the exhaust manifold as described in Section 15.

## 15 Exhaust manifold – removal and refitting



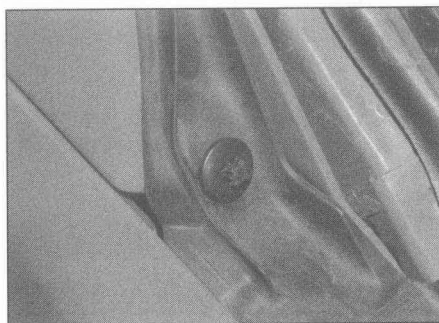
### Removal

#### 1.4 litre engine

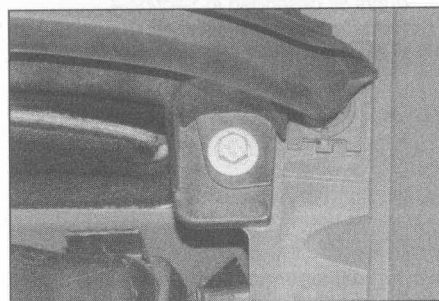
1 Remove the turbocharger as described in Section 17.  
2 Undo the retaining nuts, recover the spacers, and remove the manifold. Recover the gasket (see illustrations).

#### 2.0 litre engines

3 The exhaust manifold is located on the rear of the cylinder head and access is very limited. First, apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*).  
4 Disconnect the battery (see Chapter 5A).  
5 Remove the exhaust front pipe with reference to Section 19.  
6 Remove the turbocharger inlet and outlet ducts as described in Section 4.  
7 Unscrew the union nut securing the turbocharger oil feed pipe to the cylinder



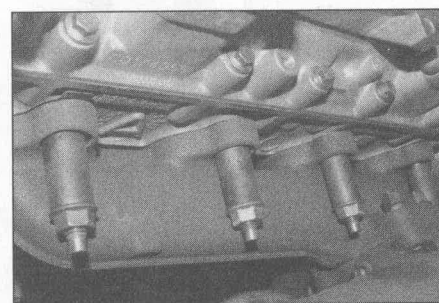
14.3a Push in the centre pins a little, then prise out the complete plastic rivet



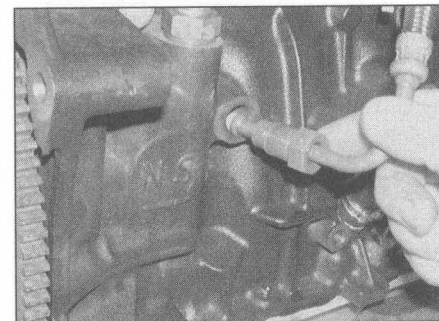
14.3c ... then undo the bolts (one at each end), and remove the plastic scuttle crossmember

block, then withdraw the pipe from its location (see illustration).

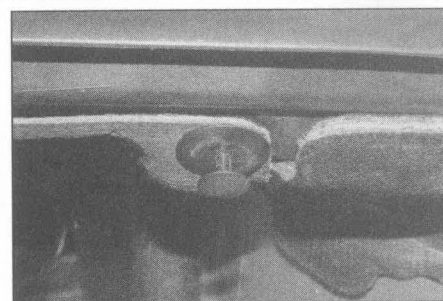
8 Remove the filter from the end of the oil feed pipe, and examine it for contamination (see illustration). Clean or renew if necessary.



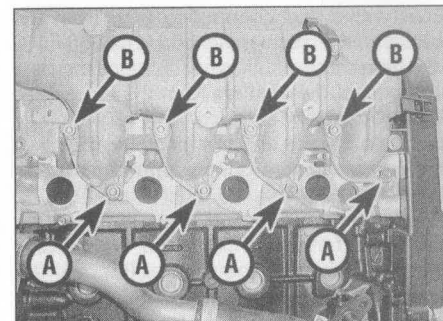
15.2a Undo the exhaust manifold nuts, recover the spacers, and remove the manifold



15.7 Unscrew the turbocharger oil feed pipe union nut



14.3b Lever up the centre pins, prise out the plastic rivet, and detach the insulation material from the crossmember ...



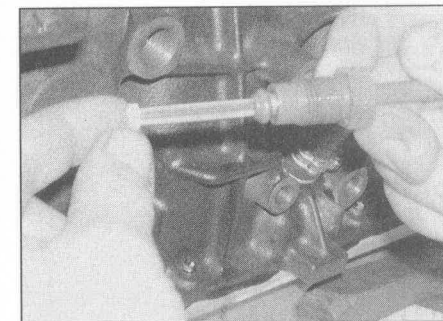
14.4 Inlet manifold retaining nuts (A) and bolts (B)

9 Undo the two bolts securing the oil return pipe flange to the turbocharger. Separate the flange and recover the gasket (see illustrations).

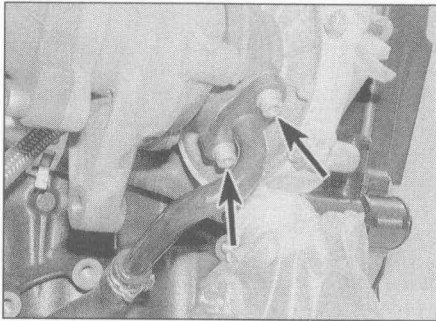
10 Remove the exhaust gas recirculation



15.2b Recover the manifold gasket



15.8 Withdraw the oil feed pipe and remove the filter



**15.9a** Undo the oil return pipe flange securing bolts (arrowed) . . .

(EGR) valve and connecting pipe from the exhaust manifold as described in Chapter 4C.

**11** Undo the exhaust manifold retaining nuts and recover the spacers from the studs (see illustrations).

**12** Undo the nut and bolt securing the base of the turbocharger to the support bracket on the cylinder block.

**13** Withdraw the turbocharger and exhaust manifold off the mounting studs and remove the assembly from the engine. Recover the manifold gasket (see illustrations).

**Refitting**

**14** Refitting is a reverse of the removal

procedure, bearing in mind the following points:

- a) Ensure that the manifold and cylinder head mating faces are clean, with all traces of old gasket removed.
- b) Use new gaskets when refitting the manifold to the cylinder head and, on 2.0 litre engines, the oil return pipe flange to the turbocharger.
- c) Tighten the exhaust manifold retaining nuts to the specified torque.
- d) On 2.0 litre engines, refit the EGR valve and connecting pipe as described in Chapter 4C, Section 2.
- e) Refit the turbocharger rear inlet and outlet ducts as described in Section 4.
- f) Refit the exhaust front pipe as described in Section 19.

**16 Turbocharger – description and precautions**

**Description**

**1** A turbocharger is fitted to increase engine efficiency by raising the pressure in the inlet manifold above atmospheric pressure. Instead of the air simply being sucked into the cylinders, it is forced in.

**2** Energy for the operation of the turbo-charger comes from the exhaust gas. The gas flows through a specially-shaped housing (the turbine housing) and, in so doing, spins the turbine wheel. The turbine wheel is attached to a shaft, at the end of which is another vaned wheel known as the compressor wheel. The compressor wheel spins in its own housing, and compresses the inlet air on the way to the inlet manifold.

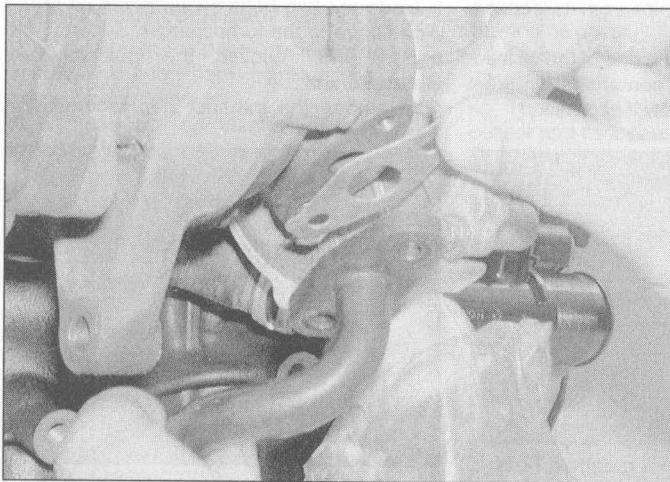
**3** Boost pressure (the pressure in the inlet manifold) is limited by a wastegate, which diverts the exhaust gas away from the turbine wheel in response to a pressure-sensitive actuator. On 1.4 litre models, the turbo-charger incorporates a variable intake nozzle to improve boost pressure at low engine speeds.

**4** The turbo shaft is pressure-lubricated by an oil feed pipe from the main oil gallery. The shaft 'floats' on a cushion of oil. A drain pipe returns the oil to the sump.

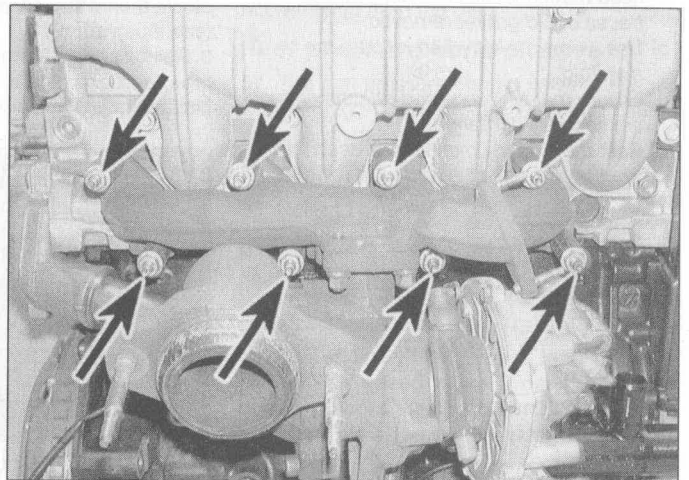
**Precautions**

**5** The turbocharger operates at extremely high speeds and temperatures. Certain precautions must be observed, to avoid premature failure of the turbo, or injury to the operator.

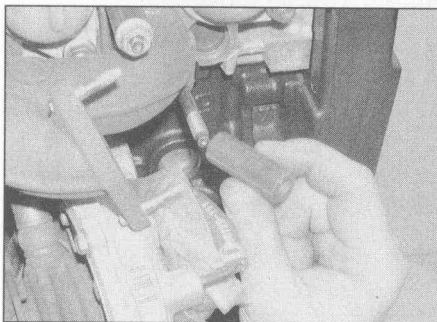
**6** Do not operate the turbo with any of its



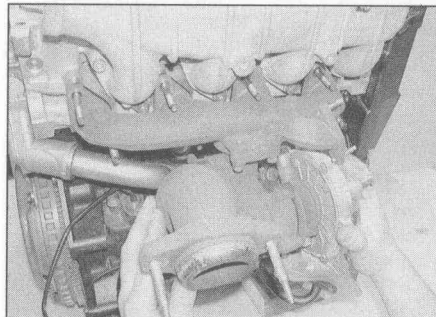
**15.9b** . . . separate the flange and recover the gasket



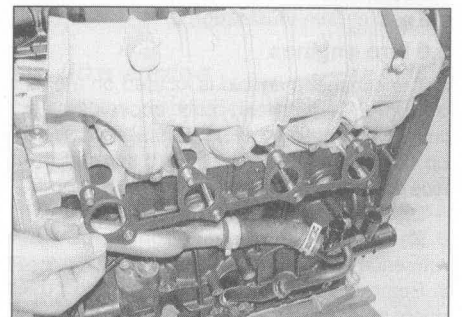
**15.11a** Undo the exhaust manifold retaining nuts (arrowed) . . .



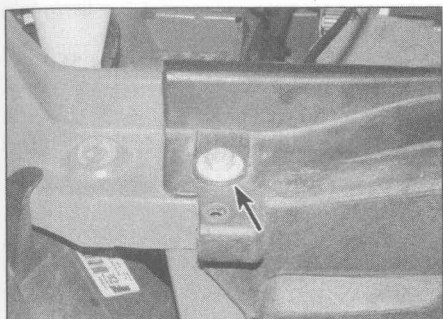
**15.11b** . . . and recover the spacers



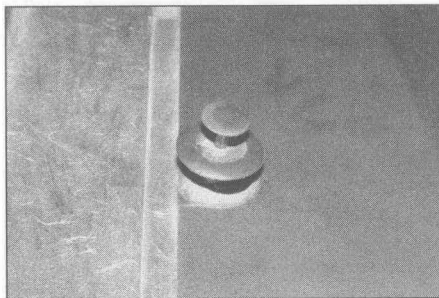
**15.13a** Withdraw the turbocharger and manifold . . .



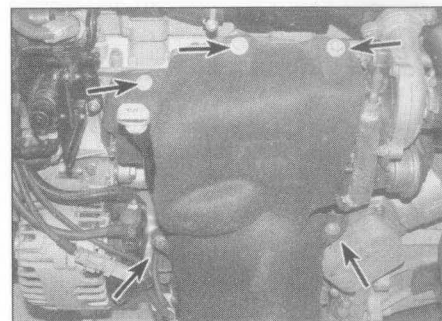
**15.13b** . . . and recover the gasket



17.2a Undo the two bolts (one each side – arrowed) . . .



17.2b . . . prise out the four plastic rivets, and move the bonnet slam panel forward slightly



17.3 Undo the heat shield retaining bolts (arrowed)

parts exposed, or with any of its hoses removed. Foreign objects falling onto the rotating vanes could cause excessive damage, and (if ejected) personal injury.

7 Do not race the engine immediately after start-up, especially if it is cold. Give the oil a few seconds to circulate.

8 Always allow the engine to return to idle speed before switching it off – do not blip the throttle and switch off, as this will leave the turbo spinning without lubrication.

9 Allow the engine to idle for several minutes before switching off after a high-speed run.

10 Observe the recommended intervals for oil and filter changing, and use a reputable oil of the specified quality. Neglect of oil changing, or use of inferior oil, can cause carbon formation on the turbo shaft, leading to subsequent failure.

### 17 Turbocharger – removal, inspection and refitting



#### Removal

1 Apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield.

#### 1.4 litre models

2 Undo the two bolts and four clips, then lift the bonnet slam panel slightly, and move it forward, tilting the radiator (see *illustrations*). Place a sheet of thick cardboard over the rear of the radiator to protect it from accidental damage.

3 Undo the heat shield mounting bolts (see *illustration*), and remove the heat shield from above.

4 Release the clips and remove the turbocharger air intake pipe and resonator box (see *illustrations 4.3a, 4.3b and 4.3c*).

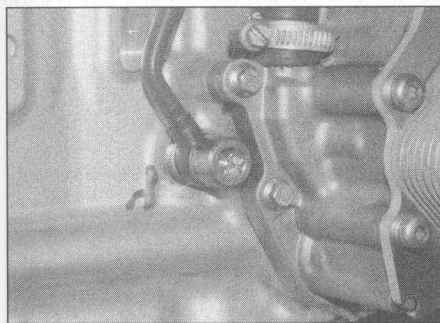
5 Undo the bolts and remove the upper heat shield from the manifold.

6 Slacken the clip securing the front pipe/catalytic converter to the turbocharger.

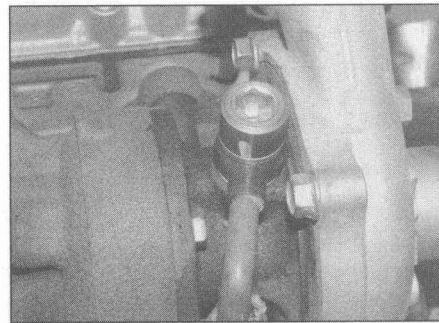
7 Undo the oil supply pipe banjo bolts and recover the sealing washers (see *illustrations*).

8 Slacken the retaining clip and disconnect the oil return pipe from the turbocharger (see *illustration*).

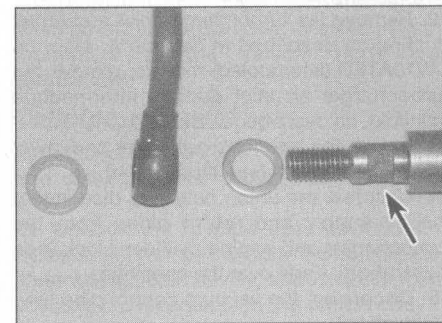
9 Unscrew the four nuts, and remove the turbocharger from the exhaust manifold (see *illustrations*).



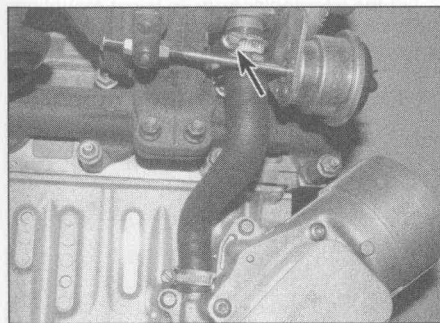
17.7a Undo the turbocharger oil supply pipe banjo bolts from the cylinder block . . .



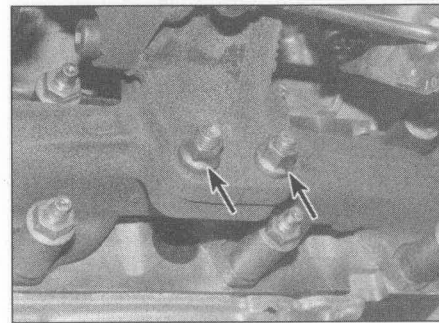
17.7b . . . and the turbocharger



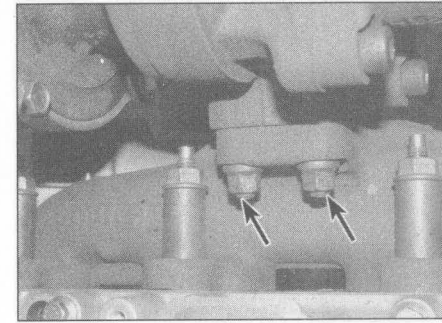
17.7c Note the filter incorporated into the banjo bolt (arrowed)



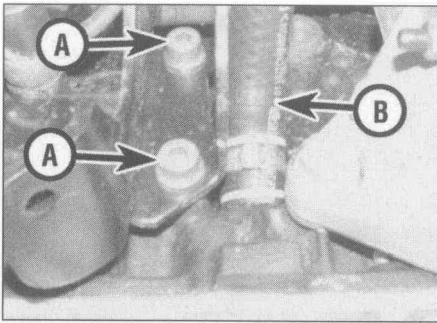
17.8 Slacken the oil return hose clip (arrowed)



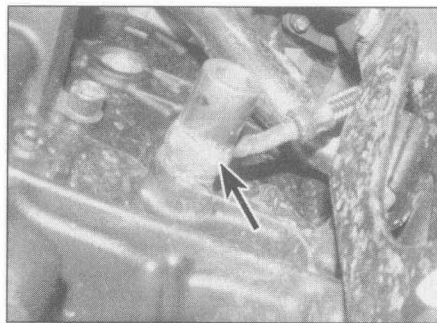
17.9a Undo the lower nuts (arrowed) . . .



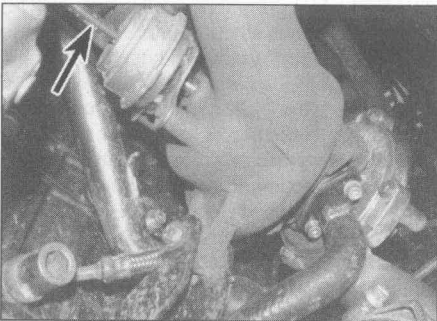
17.9b . . . and upper nuts securing the turbocharger



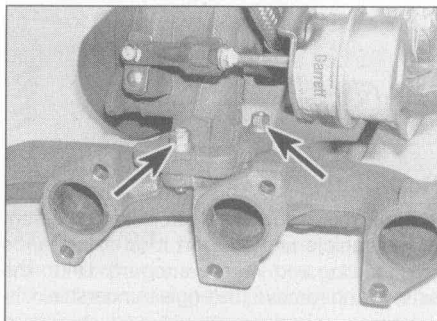
17.13 Turbocharger lower mounting bracket bolts (A) and oil return pipe (B)



17.14 Turbocharger oil supply pipe banjo (arrowed) on the rear of the cylinder block



17.15 Turbocharger vacuum control pipe (arrowed)



17.17 Turbocharger-to-exhaust manifold retaining nuts (arrowed)

### 2.0 litre models

10 Remove the exhaust system as described in Section 19. **Note:** This is necessary to prevent damage to the exhaust flexible joint.

11 Remove the front floor tunnel heat shield, and steering rack heat shield.

12 Remove the turbocharger inlet and outlet ducting as described in Section 4. Also, on DW10ATED (intercooled) models, remove the turbocharger air inlet ducting intermediate manifold, as described in Section 4.

13 Unbolt the turbocharger upper and lower mounting brackets (see illustration).

14 Unscrew the union nuts and disconnect the oil supply and return pipes from the turbocharger and engine cylinder block (see illustration). Tape over the openings.

15 Disconnect the vacuum control pipe (see illustration).

16 On models without an intercooler,

unscrew the three retaining nuts and withdraw the turbocharger from the exhaust manifold studs.

17 Undo the three nuts securing the turbocharger to the exhaust manifold, then remove the turbocharger down through the exhaust tunnel (see illustration). Recover the gasket from the manifold.

### Inspection

18 With the turbocharger removed, inspect the housing for cracks or other visible damage.

19 Spin the turbine or the compressor wheel, to verify that the shaft is intact and to feel for excessive shake or roughness. Some play is normal, since in use, the shaft is 'floating' on a film of oil. Check that the wheel vanes are undamaged.

20 If oil contamination of the exhaust or

induction passages is apparent, it is likely that turbo shaft oil seals have failed.

21 No DIY repair of the turbo is possible and none of the internal or external parts are available separately. If the turbocharger is suspect in any way a complete new unit must be obtained.

### Refitting

22 Refitting is a reverse of the removal procedure, bearing in mind the following points:

- a) Renew the turbocharger retaining nuts and gaskets.
- b) If a new turbocharger is being fitted, change the engine oil and filter. Also renew the filter in the oil feed pipe.
- c) Prime the turbocharger by injecting clean engine oil through the oil feed pipe union before reconnecting the union.

### 18 Intercooler and air inlet heater – removal and refitting

**Note:** The following applies to DW10ATED engines only.

#### Intercooler

##### Removal

1 The intercooler is located at the front of the engine compartment, on the left-hand side of the radiator. First apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield.

2 Remove the engine top cover.

3 Remove the air cleaner assembly as described in Section 4.

4 Remove the front bumper as described in Chapter 11.

5 Loosen the clip and disconnect the outlet air duct from the intercooler.

6 Working under the car, loosen the clip and disconnect the inlet air duct from the intercooler (see illustration).

7 Undo the screw securing the intercooler to the engine compartment front crossmember.

8 Disconnect the wiring plug from the sensor on the top of the intercooler (see illustration).

9 Lift the intercooler from its lower mountings and remove from the vehicle.

##### Refitting

10 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

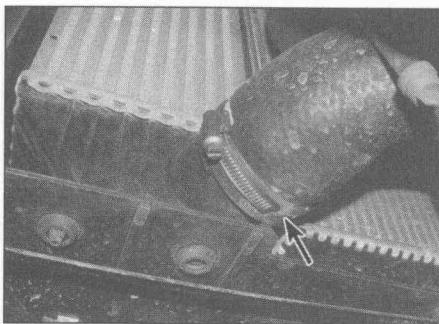
#### Air inlet heater

##### Removal

11 Drain the coolant as described in Chapter 1B.

12 Disconnect the hoses from the matrix and valve (see illustration).

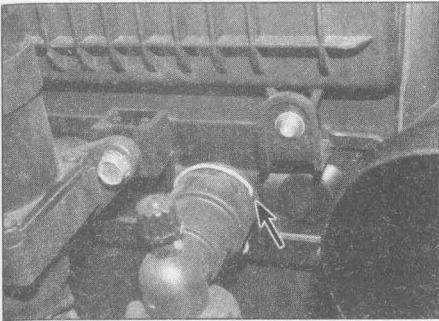
13 Remove the air cleaner housing as described in Section 4, sliding the matrix from the housing.



18.6 Slacken the inlet duct clip (arrowed)



18.8 Disconnect the sensor wiring plug



**18.12 Release the clip (arrowed) and disconnect the hoses from the matrix and valve**

**Refitting**

14 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Refill the coolant as described in Chapter 1B.

**19 Exhaust system – general information and component renewal**



**General information**

1 According to model, the exhaust system consists of either two, three or four sections. Three section systems consist of a catalytic converter, an intermediate pipe, and a tailpipe. The four section system fitted to the DW10ATED diesel engine consists of a particulate filter with flexible coupling, catalytic converter, intermediate pipe and tailpipe. On two section systems, the catalytic

converter and intermediate pipe are combined to form a single section.

2 The exhaust joints are of either the spring-loaded ball type (to allow for movement in the exhaust system) or clamp-ring type.

3 The system is suspended throughout its entire length by rubber mountings.

4 Each exhaust section can be removed individually, or alternatively, the complete system can be removed as a unit. Even if only one part of the system needs attention, it is often easier to remove the whole system and separate the sections on the bench.

5 To remove the system or part of the system, first jack up the front or rear of the car, and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Alternatively, position the car over an inspection pit, or on car ramps.

**Catalytic converter removal**

**1.4 litre models**

6 Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield.

7 Undo the bolts and remove the heat shield from the catalytic converter (see *illustration 17.3*).

8 Slacken the retaining clamps joining the catalytic converter to the turbocharger and exhaust pipe. Take care not to damage the flexible section of the front exhaust pipe (see *illustration*).

9 Undo the bolts securing the catalytic converter to the cylinder block and manoeuvre it down and out of the engine compartment (see *illustration*).

**2.0 litre (DW10TD) models**

10 The catalytic converter is integral with the front section of the exhaust pipe. Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield.

11 Slacken the retaining clamps securing the front pipe to the manifold and intermediate pipe.

12 Release the pipe from the rubber mountings and manoeuvre it from under the vehicle.

**Catalytic converter/particulate filter removal**

**2.0 litre (DW10ATED) models**

13 Disconnect the wiring connector from the particulate filter.

14 Mark or label the additive/pressure pipes to aid refitting, then disconnect them at the connectors (see *illustration*). Be prepared for fluid spillage.

15 Unscrew the temperature sensor from the assembly (see *illustration*). Take care not to damage the sensor probe during removal.

16 Unscrew the assembly front and rear clamp bolts, and carefully lower it from the vehicle.

17 From production number 09436, it is possible to separate the particle filter from the catalytic converter. With the assembly on a bench undo the four bolts/nuts and separate the two halves. Recover the gasket.

**Intermediate pipe removal**

18 Slacken the clamping ring bolts, and disengage both clamps from the flange joints.

19 Release the pipe from its mounting rubber and remove it from underneath the vehicle. Alternatively, undo the nuts/bolts securing the mountings to the vehicle body (see *illustration*).

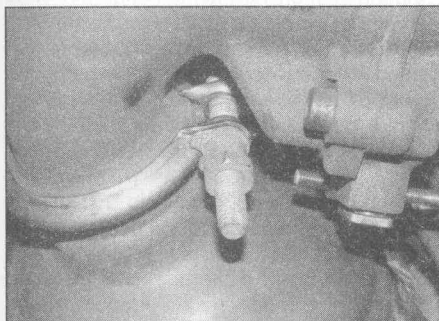
**Tailpipe removal**

20 Slacken the tailpipe clamping ring bolts, and disengage the clamp from the flange joint.

21 Unhook the tailpipe from its mounting rubbers, and remove it from the vehicle (see *illustration*). Alternatively, undo the nuts/bolts securing the mountings to the vehicle body.

**Complete system removal**

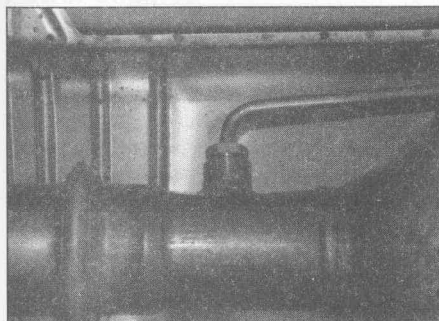
22 Unscrew the front clamp ring bolt and



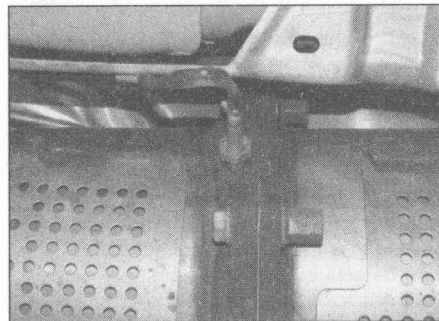
**19.8 Catalytic converter-to-turbocharger clamp bolt**



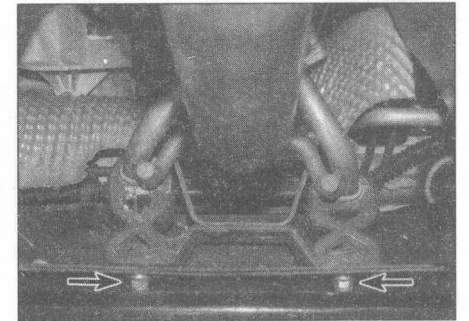
**19.9 Catalytic converter mounting bolts (arrowed)**



**19.14 Particulate filter additive/pressure pipes**

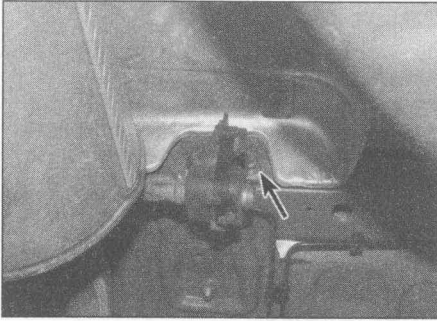


**19.15 Unscrew the temperature sensor**



**19.19 Undo the nuts (arrowed) and remove the pipe along with the mountings**





**19.21 Unhook the tail pipe from the mountings, or undo the mounting nuts (arrowed)**

release the catalytic converter or front pipe from the turbocharger (see illustration 19.8). Free the system from its mounting rubbers and remove it from underneath the vehicle.

Alternatively, undo the nuts/bolts securing the mountings to the vehicle body.

### **Heat shield(s) removal**

**23** The heat shields are secured to the underside of the body by various nuts and bolts. Each shield can be removed once the relevant exhaust section has been removed. If a shield is being removed to gain access to a component located behind it, it may prove sufficient in some cases to remove the retaining nuts and/or bolts, and simply lower the shield, without disturbing the exhaust system.

### **Refitting**

**24** Each section is refitted by reversing the removal sequence, noting the following points:

a) *Ensure that all traces of corrosion have*

*been removed from the flanges, and renew all necessary gaskets.*

b) *Inspect the rubber mountings for signs of damage or deterioration, and renew as necessary.*

c) *On joints secured together by a clamping ring, apply a smear of exhaust system jointing paste to the flange joint, to ensure a gas-tight seal. Tighten the clamping ring nuts evenly and progressively, so that the clearance between the clamp halves remains equal on either side.*

d) *Prior to tightening the exhaust system fasteners, ensure that all rubber mountings are correctly located, and that there is adequate clearance between the exhaust system and vehicle underbody.*

e) *On models fitted with a particulate filter, fill the additive reservoir as described in Chapter 1B.*






# Chapter 4 Part C:

## Emission control systems

### Contents

Catalytic converter – general information and precautions . . . . .	3	General information . . . . .	1
Emission control systems – testing and component renewal . . . . .	2		

### Degrees of difficulty

<b>Easy</b> , suitable for novice with little experience		<b>Fairly easy</b> , suitable for beginner with some experience		<b>Fairly difficult</b> , suitable for competent DIY mechanic		<b>Difficult</b> , suitable for experienced DIY mechanic		<b>Very difficult</b> , suitable for expert DIY or professional	
--	---	---	---	---	---	--	---	---	---

#### 1 General information

All petrol engines use unleaded petrol and also have various other features built into the fuel system to help minimise harmful emissions. In addition, all engines are equipped with the crankcase emission control system described below. All engines are also equipped with a catalytic converter and an evaporative emission control system. Some 2.0 litre petrol engines equipped to emission standard L4 also utilise a secondary air injection system to quickly bring the catalytic converter up to normal working temperature.

All diesel engines are also designed to meet the strict emission requirements and are equipped with a crankcase emission control system and a catalytic converter. To further reduce exhaust emissions, all diesel engines are also fitted with an exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) system. Additionally, 2.0 litre DW10ATED diesel models may be equipped with a particulate emission filter which uses porous silicon carbide substrate to trap particulates of carbon as the exhaust gases pass through.

The emission control systems function as follows.

#### **Petrol engines**

##### **Crankcase emission control**

To reduce the emission of unburned hydrocarbons from the crankcase into the atmosphere, the engine is sealed and the blow-by gases and oil vapour are drawn from inside the crankcase, through a wire mesh oil separator, into the inlet tract to be burned by the engine during normal combustion.

Under all conditions the gases are forced out of the crankcase by the (relatively) higher crankcase pressure; if the engine is worn, the raised crankcase pressure (due to increased blow-by) will cause some of the flow to return under all manifold conditions.

##### **Exhaust emission control**

To minimise the amount of pollutants which escape into the atmosphere, a catalytic converter is fitted in the exhaust system. The system is of the closed-loop type, in which lambda (oxygen) sensors in the exhaust system provides the fuel-injection/ignition system ECU with constant feedback, enabling the ECU to adjust the mixture to provide the best possible conditions for the converter to operate.

The lambda sensors have a heating element built-in that is controlled by the ECU through the lambda sensor relay to quickly bring the sensor's tip to an efficient operating temperature. The sensor's tip is sensitive to oxygen and sends the ECU a varying voltage depending on the amount of oxygen in the exhaust gases; if the inlet air/fuel mixture is too rich, the exhaust gases are low in oxygen so the sensor sends a low-voltage signal, the voltage rising as the mixture weakens and the amount of oxygen rises in the exhaust gases. Peak conversion efficiency of all major pollutants occurs if the inlet air/fuel mixture is maintained at the chemically-correct ratio for the complete combustion of petrol of 14.7 parts (by weight) of air to 1 part of fuel (the 'stoichiometric' ratio). The sensor output voltage alters in a large step at this point, the ECU using the signal change as a reference point and correcting the inlet air/fuel mixture accordingly by altering the fuel injector pulse width.

##### **Evaporative emission control**

To minimise the escape into the atmosphere of unburned hydrocarbons, an evaporative emission control system is fitted. The fuel tank filler cap is sealed and a charcoal canister is mounted behind the wheel arch liner under the right-hand side front wing to collect the petrol vapours generated in the tank when the car is parked. It stores them until they can be cleared from the canister (under the control of the fuel-injection/ignition system ECU) via the purge valve into the inlet tract to be burned by the engine during normal combustion.

To ensure that the engine runs correctly when it is cold and/or idling and to protect the catalytic converter from the effects of an over-rich mixture, the purge control valve is not opened by the ECU until the engine has warmed-up, and the engine is under load; the valve solenoid is then modulated on and off to allow the stored vapour to pass into the inlet tract.

##### **Secondary air injection**

2.0 litre petrol engines equipped to emission standard L4 are also equipped with a secondary air injection system. This system is designed to reduce exhaust emissions in the period between first starting the engine and until the catalytic converter reaches operating (functioning) temperature. Introduction of air into the exhaust system during the initial start-up period, creates an 'afterburner' effect which quickly increases the temperature in the exhaust system front pipe, thus bringing the catalytic converter up to normal operating temperatures very quickly.

The system consists of an air pump, mounted at the front left-hand side of the car, an air injection valve, mounted on a bracket at the front of the cylinder head, a connecting pipe linking the valve to the exhaust manifold, and interconnecting air hoses.

The system operates for between 10 and 45 seconds after engine start-up, dependant on coolant temperature.

#### **Diesel models**

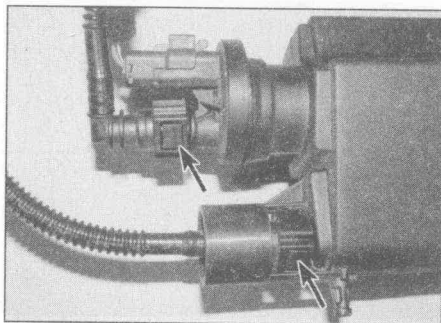
##### **Crankcase emission control**

Refer to the description for petrol engines.

##### **Exhaust emission control**

To minimise the level of exhaust pollutants released into the atmosphere, a catalytic converter is fitted in the exhaust system of all models.

The catalytic converter consists of a canister containing a fine mesh impregnated with a catalyst material, over which the hot exhaust gases pass. The catalyst speeds up



**2.5 Depress the quick-release buttons, and disconnect the hoses (arrowed)**

the oxidation of harmful carbon monoxide, unburnt hydrocarbons and soot, effectively reducing the quantity of harmful products released into the atmosphere via the exhaust gases.

### Exhaust gas recirculation system

This system is designed to recirculate small quantities of exhaust gas into the inlet tract, and therefore into the combustion process. This process reduces the level of oxides of nitrogen present in the final exhaust gas which is released into the atmosphere.

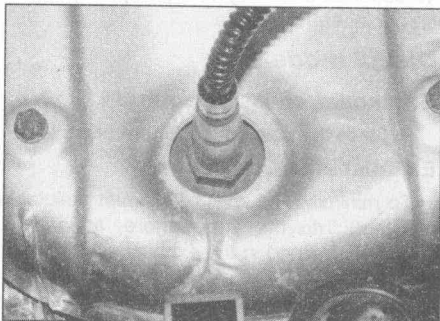
The volume of exhaust gas recirculated is controlled by the system electronic control unit.

A vacuum-operated valve is fitted to the exhaust manifold, to regulate the quantity of exhaust gas recirculated. The valve is operated by the vacuum supplied by the solenoid valve.

### Particulate filter system

The particulate filter is combined with the catalytic converter in the exhaust system, and its purpose is to trap particulates of carbon (soot) as the exhaust gases pass through, in order to comply with latest emission regulations.

The filter can be automatically regenerated (cleaned) by a Peugeot dealership using a special diagnostic tool in conjunction with the system's ECU on-board the vehicle. The engine's high pressure injection system is utilized to inject fuel into the exhaust gases during the post-injection period; this causes the filter temperature to increase sufficient to



**2.12 Lambda sensor (1.6 litre model)**

oxidize the particulates, leaving an ash residue. The regeneration period is automatically controlled by the on-board ECU. Subsequently, at the correct service interval the filter must be removed from the exhaust system, and renewed.

To assist the combustion of the trapped carbon (soot) during the regeneration process, a fuel additive (cerium-based Eolys) is automatically mixed with the diesel fuel in the fuel tank. The additive is stored in a 5 litre container attached to the bottom of the fuel tank, and the ECU regulates the amount of additive to send to the fuel tank by means of an additive injector located on the top of the fuel tank.

## 2 Emission control systems – testing and component renewal

### Petrol models

#### Crankcase emission control

1 The components of this system require no attention other than to check that the hose(s) are clear and undamaged at regular intervals.

#### Evaporative emission control

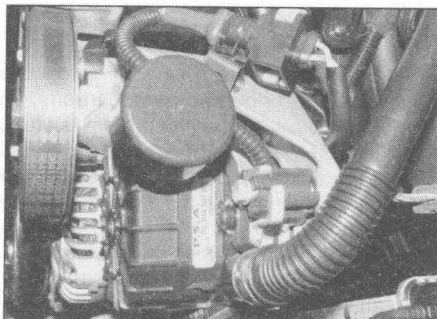
2 If the system is thought to be faulty, disconnect the hoses from the charcoal canister and purge control valve and check that they are clear by blowing through them. If the purge control valve or charcoal canister are thought to be faulty, they must be renewed.

#### Charcoal canister renewal

3 The charcoal canister is located under the wheel arch on the right-hand side. To gain access, slacken the right-hand front roadwheel bolts, jack up the front of the car and support it on axle stands. Remove the roadwheel, push in the centre pins then prise out the plastic expanding rivets, and remove the wheel arch liner.

4 Gently prise the canister from its three retaining clips and lower it from the top of the wheel arch.

5 Identify the location of the two hoses then depress the quick-release button and disconnect hoses from the purge valve and



**2.16 Secondary air injection pump**

the canister. Disconnect the purge valve wiring plug (see illustration).

6 Refitting is a reverse of the removal procedure ensuring that the hoses are correctly reconnected.

#### Purge valve renewal

7 The purge valve is integral with the canister, and cannot be renewed separately.

#### Exhaust emission control

8 The performance of the catalytic converter can be checked only by measuring the exhaust gases using a good-quality, carefully-calibrated exhaust gas analyser.

9 If the CO level at the tailpipe is too high, the vehicle should be taken to a Peugeot dealer or specialist so that the complete fuel injection and ignition systems, including the lambda sensor, can be thoroughly checked using the special diagnostic equipment. Once these have been checked and are known to be free from faults, the fault must be in the catalytic converter, which must be renewed as described in Part A of this Chapter.

#### Catalytic converter renewal

10 Refer to Part A of this Chapter.

#### Lambda sensor renewal

**Note:** The lambda sensor is delicate and will not work if it is dropped or knocked, if its power supply is disrupted, or if any cleaning materials are used on it.

11 Trace the wiring back from the lambda sensor(s), which are located before and after the catalytic converters. On 1.4 and 1.6 litre petrol engines to emission level L4, one sensor is located in the exhaust manifold, and one after the catalytic converter. On 2.0 litre petrol engines one sensor is screwed into the top of the exhaust front pipe, and one after the catalytic converter. Disconnect both wiring connectors and free the wiring from any relevant retaining clips or ties.

12 Unscrew the sensor from the exhaust system front pipe/manifold and remove it along with its sealing washer (see illustration).

13 Refitting is a reverse of the removal procedure using a new sealing washer. Prior to installing the sensor apply a smear of high temperature grease to the sensor threads. Ensure that the sensor is securely tightened and that the wiring is correctly routed and in no danger of contacting either the exhaust system or engine.

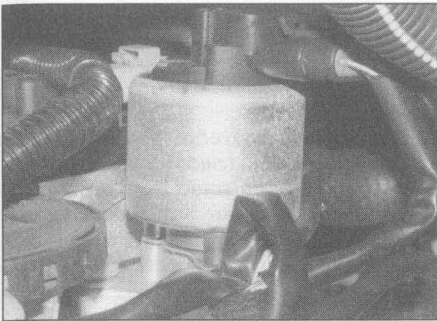
#### Testing secondary air injection

14 The components of this system require no attention other than to check that the hose(s) are clear and undamaged at regular intervals.

15 Accurate testing of the system operation entails the use of diagnostic test equipment and should be entrusted to a Peugeot dealer or specialist.

#### Air pump renewal

16 The air pump is located at the front right-hand corner of the engine (see illustration).



2.23 Secondary air injection valve

- 17 Slacken and remove the three nuts and withdraw the pump from the mounting bracket.  
 18 Disconnect the air hoses and wiring connector and remove the pump.  
 19 Refitting is a reverse of the removal procedure, ensuring that the hoses are correctly reconnected.

#### Air injection valve renewal

- 20 Disconnect the battery (see Chapter 5A).  
 21 Slacken and remove the retaining screws, and remove the shroud from the top of the exhaust manifold.  
 22 Undo the two bolts securing the connecting pipe flange to the exhaust manifold.  
 23 Undo the two bolts securing the valve mounting bracket to the cylinder head (see illustration).  
 24 Withdraw the valve and connecting pipe, disconnect the air hose and remove the air injection valve and connecting pipe as an assembly.  
 25 If necessary, the air pipe can be removed from the valve and the valve removed from the mounting bracket after undoing the two retaining nuts. Collect the flange gasket after removal.  
 26 Refitting is a reverse of the removal procedure, but use a new gasket between the valve and mounting bracket.

#### Diesel models

##### Crankcase emission control

- 27 The components of this system require no attention other than to check that the hose(s) are clear and undamaged at regular intervals.

##### Exhaust emission control

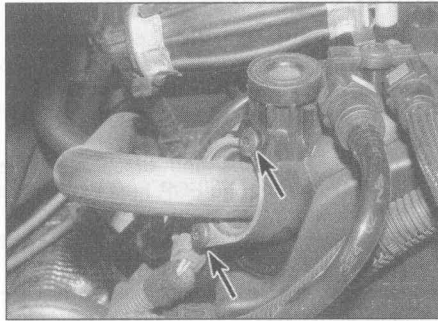
- 28 The performance of the catalytic converter can be checked only by measuring the exhaust gases using a good-quality, carefully-calibrated exhaust gas analyser.  
 29 If the catalytic converter is thought to be faulty, before assuming the catalytic converter is faulty, it is worth checking the problem is not due to a faulty injector(s). Refer to your Peugeot dealer for further information.

##### Catalytic converter renewal

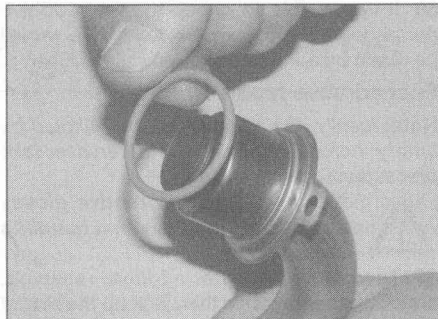
- 30 Refer to Part B of this Chapter.

##### Exhaust gas recirculation system

- 31 Testing of the system should ideally be



2.36a The EGR pipe is secured to the manifold by two screws (arrowed) . . .



2.36c A new EGR pipe-to-manifold O-ring seal must be fitted

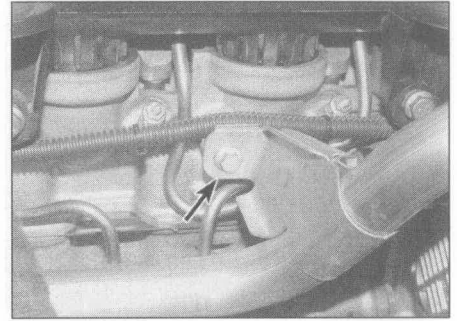
entrusted to a Peugeot dealer since a vacuum pump and vacuum gauge are required.

##### EGR valve renewal – 1.4 litre engine

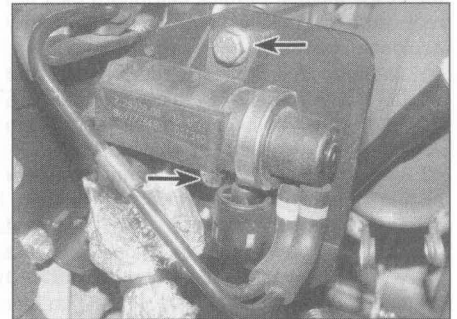
- 32 Carefully pull the plastic cover upwards from the top of the engine.  
 33 Remove the air cleaner housing as described in Chapter 4B.  
 34 Note its fitted location, then disconnect the vacuum pipe from the EGR valve.  
 35 Release the two retaining clamps fitted to the EGR pipe.  
 36 There are three bolts securing the EGR pipe, and two bolts securing the EGR valve. Undo the bolts and remove the pipe complete with valve. Discard the metal gasket from the valve, and the O-ring seal from the pipe – new ones must be fitted (see illustrations).  
 37 To remove the EGR solenoid valve, disconnect the two vacuum hoses and the wiring connector. Undo the mounting bracket



2.39a Push in the centre pins a little, then prise out the complete plastic expanding rivets . . .



2.36b . . . and to the cylinder block by one bolt (arrowed)



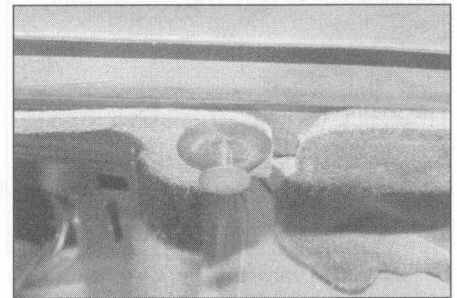
2.37 EGR solenoid valve retaining bolts (arrowed)

bolts and remove the valve from the engine compartment (see illustration).

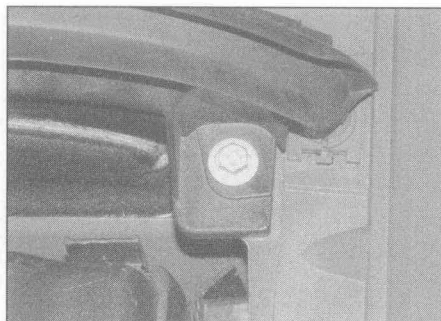
- 38 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

##### EGR valve renewal – 2.0 litre engine

- 39 Undo the four fasteners and remove the plastic cover from the top of the engine. Remove the wiper blades (Chapter 12), then release the clips and remove the plastic scuttle trim panel. The trim is secured by a plastic expanding rivet at each end. Push the centre pins in a little, then prise out the complete rivets. Pull up the ends of the trim to release it from the windscreen clips, then pull the trim down and forward to release it from the centre of the windscreen. Undo the two screws securing the brake/clutch master cylinder reservoir, and move it to one side. Release the sound insulation material from the plastic scuttle crossmember, then undo the two screws and remove the crossmember (see illustrations).



2.39b Lever up the centre pins, remove the rivets, and detach the sound insulation material from the crossmember . . .



**2.39c** ... then undo the screws and remove the crossmember

**40** Place a sheet of thick cardboard over the rear face of the radiator to prevent any accidental damage.

**41** Jack up the front of the vehicle and support it securely on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield.

**42** Undo the nuts/bolts and remove the rear engine mounting link rod.

**43** Disconnect the exhaust pipe in front of the catalytic converter/particle filter. This is to allow the engine to tip forward without damaging the exhaust system.

**44** Use an engine lighting hoist attached to the right-hand engine of the cylinder head, then remove the bolts/nuts and detach the right-hand engine mounting and bracket (see Chapter 2C). Allow the engine to tip forward slightly.

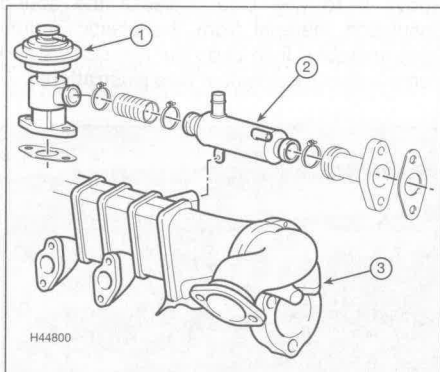
**45** Undo the two retaining bolts and remove the turbo air inlet ducting to allow access to the EGR valve.

**46** Note its fitted location, then disconnect the vacuum pipe from the EGR valve.

**47** Release the EGR valve pipe collar, undo the two nuts and remove the valve. Discard the EGR valve seal – a new one must be fitted.

**48** To remove the EGR solenoid valve, disconnect the two vacuum hoses and the wiring connector. Undo the mounting bracket bolts and remove the valve from the engine compartment.

**49** Refitting is a reversal of removal.



**2.52 EGR valve and heat exchanger (2.0 litre models)**

- 1 EGR valve
- 2 Heat exchanger
- 3 Inlet manifold

**EGR heat exchanger renewal**

**50** Drain the cooling system (see Chapter 1B). Alternatively, fit hose clamps to the hoses connected to the EGR heat exchanger.

**51** Proceed as described in paragraphs 41 to 47.

**52** Loosen the clips and disconnect the coolant hoses from the EGR heat exchanger (see illustration).

**53** Unscrew the bolt(s) securing the heat exchanger.

**54** Loosen the clips and separate the heat exchanger from the EGR valve and the EGR pipe.

**55** Refitting is a reversal of removal.

**Particle filter fuel additive system**

**56** It is possible to check the fuel additive pump delivery pressure, however, this should be made by a Peugeot dealer or specialist.

**Fuel additive reservoir renewal**

**Note:** Ideally, the additive reservoir should be empty before removing it, otherwise take precautions against spillage.

**Warning:** Wear protective gloves and eye protection when handling the reservoir.

**57** To remove the fuel additive reservoir, chock the front wheels then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). The reservoir is attached to the left-hand side of the fuel tank.

**58** Remove the undershield beneath the fuel tank (where fitted).

**59** Undo the three nuts and remove the shield from beneath the additive reservoir (see illustration).

**60** Note the location of the additive pipes on the reservoir, then depress the release buttons and disconnect them (see illustration). Tape over or plug the openings to prevent dirt ingress.

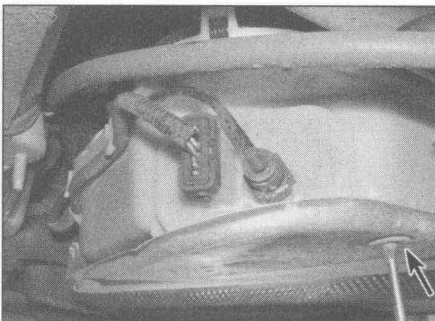
**61** Disconnect the wiring from the level sensor on the rear of the reservoir.

**62** Undo the two nuts and remove the tank retaining strap. Remove the heat shield under the tank.

**63** Have a suitable container available to catch spilled additive, undo the two retaining screws and detach the reservoir.

**64** Refitting is a reversal of removal.

**65** Have the reservoir refilled by a Peugeot dealer or specialist.



**2.59 Additive reservoir heat shield retaining bolt (arrowed)**

**3 Catalytic converter – general information and precautions**

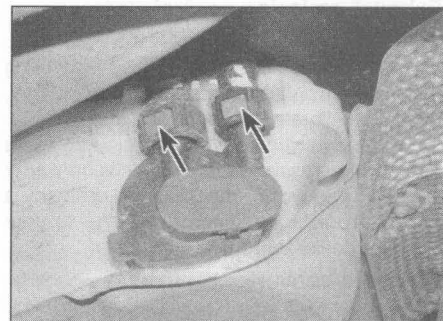
**1** The catalytic converter is a reliable and simple device which needs no maintenance in itself, but there are some facts of which an owner should be aware if the converter is to function properly for its full service life.

**Petrol models**

- a) DO NOT use leaded petrol or LRP – the lead will coat the precious metals, and will eventually destroy the converter.
- b) Always keep the ignition and fuel systems well-maintained to the service schedule.
- c) If the engine develops a misfire, do not drive the car at all (or at least as little as possible) until the fault is cured.
- d) DO NOT push- or tow-start the car – this will soak the catalytic converter in unburned fuel, causing it to overheat when the engine does start.
- e) DO NOT switch off the ignition at high engine speeds.
- f) DO NOT use fuel or engine oil additives – these may contain substances harmful to the catalytic converter.
- g) DO NOT continue to use the car if the engine burns oil to the extent of leaving a visible trail of blue smoke.
- h) Remember that the catalytic converter operates at very high temperatures. DO NOT, therefore, park the car in dry undergrowth, over long grass or piles of dead leaves after a long run.
- i) Remember that the catalytic converter is FRAGILE – do not strike it with tools.
- j) In some cases a sulphurous smell (like that of rotten eggs) may be noticed from the exhaust. This is common to many catalytic converter-equipped cars and once the car has covered a few thousand miles the problem should disappear.
- k) If the converter is no longer effective it must be renewed.

**Diesel models**

**2** Refer to parts f, g, h and i of the petrol models information given above.



**2.60 Depress the buttons and disconnect the pipes from the reservoir (arrowed)**

# Chapter 5 Part A:

## Starting and charging systems

### Contents

Alternator – removal and refitting	7	General information and precautions	1
Alternator – testing and overhaul	8	Ignition switch – removal and refitting	12
Alternator drivebelt – removal, refitting and tensioning	6	Oil level sensor – removal and refitting	14
Battery – removal and refitting	4	Oil pressure warning light switch – removal and refitting	13
Battery – testing and charging	3	Starter motor – removal and refitting	10
Charging system – testing	5	Starter motor – testing and overhaul	11
Electrical fault finding – general information	2	Starting system – testing	9

### Degrees of difficulty

**Easy**, suitable for novice with little experience



**Fairly easy**, suitable for beginner with some experience



**Fairly difficult**, suitable for competent DIY mechanic



**Difficult**, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic



**Very difficult**, suitable for expert DIY or professional



### Specifications

<b>System type</b>	12 volt, negative earth	
<b>Battery</b>		
Type	Low maintenance or 'maintenance-free' sealed for life	
Charge condition:		
Poor	12.5 volts	
Normal	12.6 volts	
Good	12.7 volts	
<b>Alternator</b>		
Type	Denso, Bosch, Magneti Marelli, Valeo or Mitsubishi (depending on model)	
Rating:		
1.4 and 1.6 litre petrol models	70, 80, 90 or 120 amp	
2.0 litre petrol models	80, 90, 120 or 150 amp	
Diesel models	150 amp	
<b>Starter motor</b>		
Type	Mitsubishi, Valeo, Ducellier, Iskra, or Bosch (depending on model)	
<b>Torque wrench settings</b>	<b>Nm</b>	<b>lbf ft</b>
Alternator mounting bolts	40	30
Oil pressure switch	30	22
Starter motor:		
1.4 litre diesel model	20	15
All other models	35	26

## 1 General information and precautions

### General information

The engine electrical system consists mainly of the charging and starting systems. Because of their engine-related functions, these components are covered separately from the body electrical devices such as the lights, instruments, etc (which are covered in Chapter 12). On petrol engine models refer to Part B for information on the ignition system, and on diesel models refer to Part C for information on the preheating system.

The electrical system is of the 12 volt negative earth type.

The battery is of the low maintenance or 'maintenance-free' (sealed for life) type and is charged by the alternator, which is belt-driven from the crankshaft pulley.

The starter motor is of the pre-engaged type incorporating an integral solenoid. On starting, the solenoid moves the drive pinion into engagement with the flywheel ring gear before the starter motor is energised. Once the engine has started, a one-way clutch prevents the motor armature being driven by the engine until the pinion disengages from the flywheel.

### Precautions

Further details of the various systems are given in the relevant Sections of this Chapter. While some repair procedures are given, the usual course of action is to renew the component concerned. The owner whose interest extends beyond mere component renewal should obtain a copy of the *Automotive Electrical & Electronic Systems Manual*, available from the publishers of this manual.

It is necessary to take extra care when working on the electrical system to avoid damage to semi-conductor devices (diodes and transistors), and to avoid the risk of personal injury. In addition to the precautions given in *Safety first!* at the beginning of this manual, observe the following when working on the system:

- **Always remove rings, watches, etc, before working on the electrical system. Even with the battery disconnected, capacitive discharge could occur if a component's live terminal is earthed through a metal object. This could cause a shock or nasty burn.**
- **Do not reverse the battery connections. Components such as the alternator, electronic control units, or any other components having semi-conductor circuitry could be irreparably damaged.**
- **If the engine is being started using jump leads and a slave battery, connect the batteries positive-to-positive and negative-to-negative (see 'Jump starting'). This also**

**applies when connecting a battery charger.**

- **Never disconnect the battery terminals, the alternator, any electrical wiring or any test instruments when the engine is running.**
- **Do not allow the engine to turn the alternator when the alternator is not connected.**
- **Never 'test' for alternator output by 'flashing' the output lead to earth.**
- **Never use an ohmmeter of the type incorporating a hand-cranked generator for circuit or continuity testing.**
- **Always ensure that the battery negative lead is disconnected when working on the electrical system.**
- **Before using electric-arc welding equipment on the car, disconnect the battery, alternator and components such as the fuel injection/ignition electronic control unit to protect them from the risk of damage.**

## 2 Electrical fault finding - general information

Refer to Chapter 12.

## 3 Battery - testing and charging

### Testing

#### Standard and low maintenance battery

1 If the vehicle covers a small annual mileage, it is worthwhile checking the specific gravity of the electrolyte every three months to determine the state of charge of the battery. Use a hydrometer to make the check and compare the results with the following table. Note that the specific gravity readings assume an electrolyte temperature of 15°C (60°F); for every 10°C (18°F) below 15°C (60°F) subtract 0.007. For every 10°C (18°F) above 15°C (60°F) add 0.007.

	Above 25°C	Below 25°C
Fully-charged	1.210 to 1.230	1.270 to 1.290
70% charged	1.170 to 1.190	1.230 to 1.250
Discharged	1.050 to 1.070	1.110 to 1.130

2 If the battery condition is suspect, first check the specific gravity of electrolyte in each cell. A variation of 0.040 or more between any cells indicates loss of electrolyte or deterioration of the internal plates.

3 If the specific gravity variation is 0.040 or more, the battery should be renewed. If the cell variation is satisfactory but the battery is discharged, it should be charged as described later in this Section.

#### Maintenance-free battery

4 In cases where a 'sealed for life'

maintenance-free battery is fitted, topping-up and testing of the electrolyte in each cell is not possible. The condition of the battery can therefore only be tested using a battery condition indicator or a voltmeter.

5 Certain models may be fitted with a 'Delco' type maintenance-free battery, with a built-in charge condition indicator. The indicator is located in the top of the battery casing, and indicates the condition of the battery from its colour. If the indicator shows green, then the battery is in a good state of charge. If the indicator shows black, then the battery requires charging, as described later in this Section. If the indicator shows blue, then the electrolyte level in the battery is too low to allow further use, and the battery should be renewed.

**Caution: Do not attempt to charge, load or jump start a battery when the indicator shows clear/yellow.**

6 If testing the battery using a voltmeter, connect the voltmeter across the battery and compare the result with those given in the Specifications under 'charge condition'. The test is only accurate if the battery has not been subjected to any kind of charge for the previous six hours. If this is not the case, switch on the headlights for 30 seconds, then wait four to five minutes before testing the battery after switching off the headlights. All other electrical circuits must be switched off, so check that the doors and tailgate are fully shut when making the test.

7 If the voltage reading is less than 12.2 volts, then the battery is discharged, whilst a reading of 12.2 to 12.4 volts indicates a partially-discharged condition.

8 If the battery is to be charged, remove it from the vehicle (Section 4) and charge it as described later in this Section.

### Charging

**Note: The following is intended as a guide only. Always refer to the manufacturer's recommendations (often printed on a label attached to the battery) before charging a battery.**

#### Standard and low maintenance battery

9 Charge the battery at a rate of 3.5 to 4 amps and continue to charge the battery at this rate until no further rise in specific gravity is noted over a four hour period.

10 Alternatively, a trickle charger charging at the rate of 1.5 amps can safely be used overnight.

11 Specially rapid 'boost' charges which are claimed to restore the power of the battery in 1 to 2 hours are not recommended, as they can cause serious damage to the battery plates through overheating.

12 While charging the battery, note that the temperature of the electrolyte should never exceed 37.8°C (100°F).

#### Maintenance-free battery

13 This battery type takes considerably

longer to fully recharge than the standard type, the time taken being dependent on the extent of discharge, but it can take anything up to three days.

**14** A constant voltage type charger is required to be set, when connected, to 13.9 to 14.9 volts with a charger current below 25 amps. Using this method, the battery should be usable within three hours, giving a voltage reading of 12.5 volts, but this is for a partially-discharged battery and, as mentioned, full charging can take considerably longer.

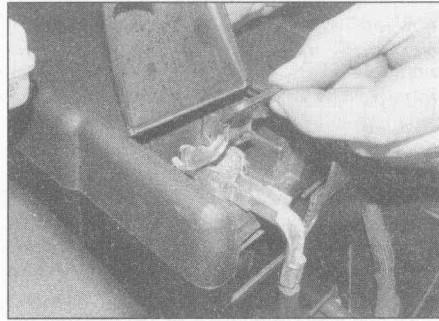
**15** If the battery is to be charged from a fully discharged state (condition reading less than 12.2 volts), have it recharged by your Peugeot dealer or local automotive electrician, as the charge rate is higher and constant supervision during charging is necessary.

#### 4 Battery – removal and refitting

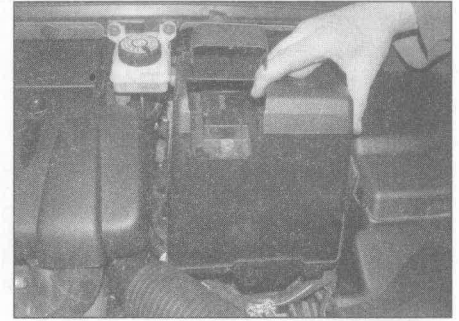


**Note:** The radio/cassette/CD player/auto-changer unit fitted as standard equipment by Peugeot is equipped with an anti-theft system, to deter thieves. If the power source is disconnected, the radio/cassette will automatically recode itself as long as it is still fitted to the correct vehicle. If the unit is removed it will not operate in another vehicle.

**Note:** Prior to disconnecting the battery, wait at least two minutes after switching off the ignition.



**4.3a** Lift up the quick-release lever and disconnect the positive lead . . .



**4.3b** . . . then lift off the cover from the battery

#### Removal

**1** Prior to disconnecting the battery, close all windows and the sunroof, and ensure that the vehicle alarm system is deactivated (see Owner's Handbook or Chapter 12, Section 20).

**2** The battery is located on the left-hand side of the engine compartment.

**3** Lift off the battery positive terminal cover then lift up the quick-release lever (coloured black) and remove the lead. On 2.0 litre diesel models, remove the air filter top cover as described in Chapter 1B. On petrol models, remove the air filter housing as described in Chapter 4A. Remove the cover and insulation from the battery (see illustrations).

**4** Disconnect the negative terminal connector (coloured green) in the same way (see illustration).

**5** Unscrew the bolt and remove the battery retaining clamp (see illustration).

**6** Lift the battery out of the engine compartment.

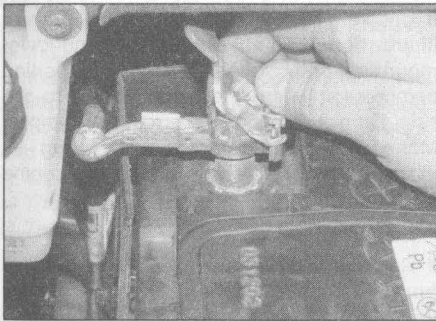
**7** Slacken the left-hand front roadwheel bolts, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it securely on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*).

**8** Push down the centre pins a little, then prise out the complete rivets and remove the wheel arch liner.

**9** Undo the internal bolts securing the battery box/tray to the mounting bracket, including the one from the outer side of the inner wheel arch (see illustrations).

**10** On automatic transmission models, slide out the locking catch and disconnect the transmission ECU wiring plug, or undo the nuts and remove the ECU from the battery box/tray (see illustrations).

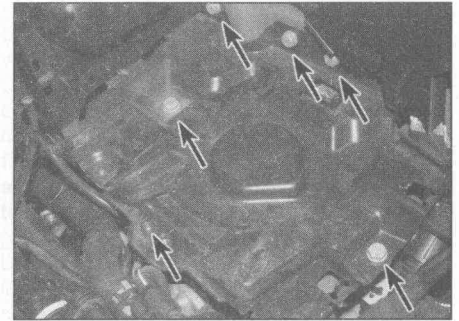
**11** Carefully move aside all cables and hoses, then lift the battery box out of the engine compartment.



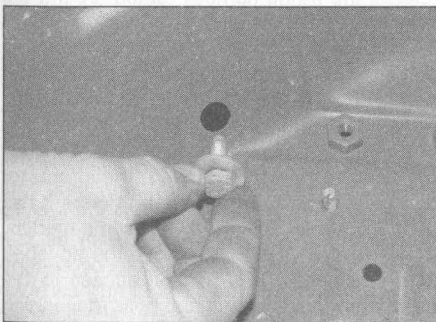
**4.4** Lift the lever and disconnect the negative lead



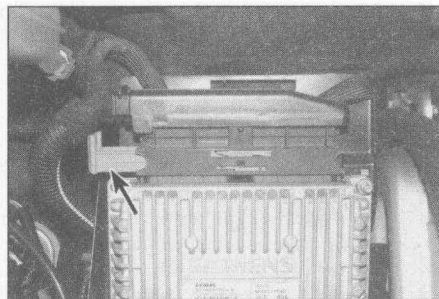
**4.5** Undo the battery clamp bolt (arrowed)



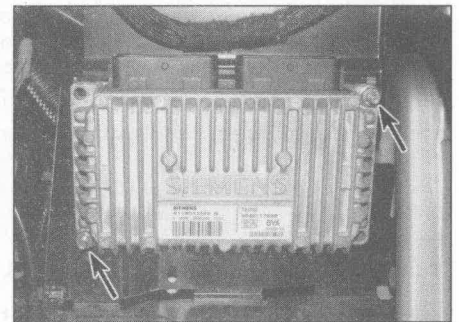
**4.9a** Undo the battery box bolts (arrowed) . . .



**4.9b** . . . including the one from the wheel arch



**4.10a** Slide out the locking catch (arrowed) and disconnect the automatic transmission ECU connector . . .



**4.10b** . . . or undo the nuts (arrowed) and remove the ECU



**Refitting**

**12** Refitting is a reversal of removal, but smear petroleum jelly on the terminals after reconnecting the leads, and reconnect the negative lead first, and positive the lead last.

**13** With the battery reconnected, switch on the ignition and wait at least 1 minute before starting the engine. This will allow the vehicle electronic systems and control units to stabilise. Also refer to Chapter 12, Section 20, on models with the anti-theft alarm system.

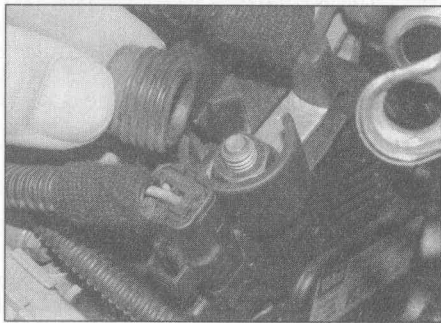
**14** On models with a sunroof, after reconnecting the battery, re-initialise the sunroof mechanism as follows:

- Turn the switch to the maximum-partial opening position (3rd position to the right).
- Keep the control switch pressed in. The sunroof will reach the maximum-partially open position, then close slightly.
- Release the switch within 6 seconds.
- Press the switch within 6 seconds. The sunroof starts to close after 4 seconds from the switch being pressed, then opens completely, then closes completely.

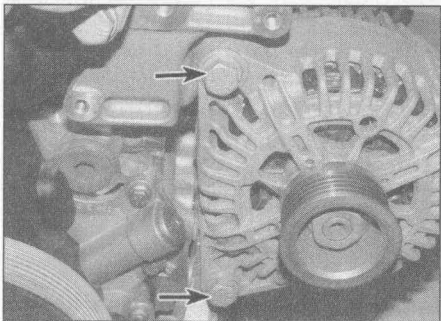
**5 Charging system – testing**

**Note:** Refer to the warnings given in 'Safety first!' and in Section 1 of this Chapter before starting work.

**1** If the ignition warning light fails to illuminate when the ignition is switched on, first check the alternator wiring connections for security.



**7.4** Prise out the rubber cover, then disconnect the alternator wiring and plug



**7.6a** Alternator right-hand mounting bolts (arrowed) ...

If satisfactory, check that the warning light bulb has not blown, and that the bulbholder is secure in its location in the instrument panel. If the light still fails to illuminate, check the continuity of the warning light feed wire from the alternator to the bulbholder. If all is satisfactory, the alternator is at fault and should be renewed or taken to an auto-electrician for testing and repair.

**2** If the ignition warning light illuminates when the engine is running, stop the engine and check that the drivebelt is correctly fitted and tensioned (see Chapter 1A or 1B) and that the alternator connections are secure. If all is so far satisfactory, have the alternator checked by an auto-electrician for testing and repair.

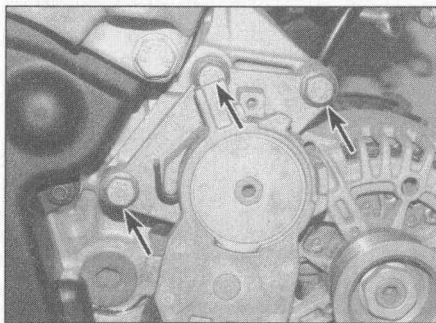
**3** If the alternator output is suspect even though the warning light functions correctly, the regulated voltage may be checked as follows.

**4** Connect a voltmeter across the battery terminals and start the engine.

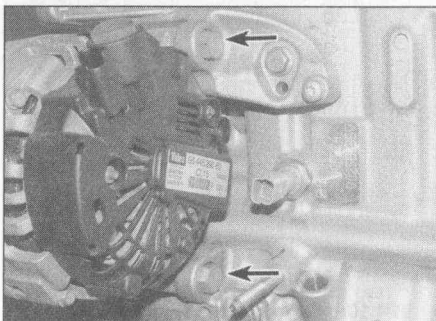
**5** Increase the engine speed until the voltmeter reading remains steady; the reading should be approximately 12 to 13 volts, and no more than 14 volts.

**6** Switch on as many electrical accessories (eg, the headlights, heated rear window and heater blower) as possible, and check that the alternator maintains the regulated voltage of around 13 to 14 volts.

**7** If the regulated voltage is not as stated, the fault may be due to worn brushes, weak brush springs, a faulty voltage regulator, a faulty diode, a severed phase winding or worn or damaged slip-rings. The alternator should be renewed or taken to an auto-electrician for testing and repair.



**7.5** Undo the auxiliary drivebelt tensioner bolts (arrowed)



**7.6b** ... and left-hand mounting bolts (arrowed)

**6 Alternator drivebelt – removal, refitting and tensioning**

Refer to the procedure given for the auxiliary drivebelt in Chapter 1A or 1B.

**7 Alternator – removal and refitting****Removal**

**1** Disconnect the battery (see Section 4).

**2** Remove the auxiliary drivebelt as described in Chapter 1A or 1B. On 1.6 litre models, undo the bolts and remove the auxiliary drivebelt idler pulley bracket bolts, which obscures the lower alternator mounting bolt.

**3** Push in the centre pins a little, then prise out the complete plastic rivets, release the side clip, and remove the plastic cover from the top of the washer and coolant reservoirs.

**1.4 litre diesel models**

**4** Remove the rubber cover from the alternator terminal, then unscrew the retaining nut and disconnect the wiring from the rear of the alternator (see illustration). Prise out the retaining clip to release the wiring harness routed around the left-hand end of the alternator.

**5** Undo the three bolts and remove the auxiliary drivebelt tensioner assembly (see illustration).

**6** Unscrew the alternator mounting bolts (see illustrations). To access the left-hand lower mounting bolt, unbolt the air conditioning compressor (where fitted) and move it to one side. **Do not** disconnect the refrigerant pipes. Manoeuvre the alternator away from its mounting brackets and out from the engine compartment.

**All other models**

**7** Remove the rubber covers (where fitted) from the alternator terminals, then unscrew the retaining nuts and disconnect the wiring from the rear of the alternator (see illustration). Prise out the retaining clip to release the wiring harness routed around the left-hand end of the alternator.

**8** Unscrew the lower nut(s) and/or mounting bolt(s), or undo the nut securing the adjuster bolt bracket to the alternator (as applicable). Note that, where a long through-bolt is used to secure the alternator in position, the bolt does not need to be fully removed; the alternator can be disengaged from the bolt once it has been slackened sufficiently. On some models, it may be necessary to remove the drivebelt idler/tensioner pulley to gain access to the alternator mounting nuts and bolts (depending on specification). On 2.0 litre diesel models, the lower front mounting bolt also carries the auxiliary drivebelt idler pulley which can be left

in position on the bolt as it is removed (see illustration). On 2.0 litre petrol models equipped with secondary air injection, undo the bolts and move the air pump and auxiliary drivebelt idler pulley bracket to one side.

9 Manoeuvre the alternator away from its mounting brackets and out from the engine compartment (see illustration).

### Refitting

10 Refitting is a reversal of removal, tensioning the auxiliary drivebelt as described in Chapter 1A or 1B, and ensuring that the alternator mountings are securely tightened. Note that on diesel models, the upper bolt acts as a centraliser and should be tightened first (see illustration).

## 8 Alternator – testing and overhaul

If the alternator is thought to be suspect, it should be removed from the vehicle and taken to an auto-electrician for testing. Most auto-electricians will be able to supply and fit brushes at a reasonable cost. However, check on the cost of repairs before proceeding as it may prove more economical to obtain a new or exchange alternator.

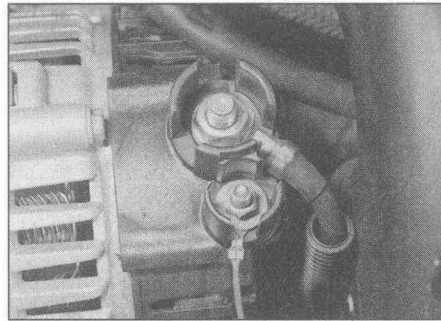
## 9 Starting system – testing

**Note:** Refer to the precautions given in 'Safety first!' and in Section 1 of this Chapter before starting work.

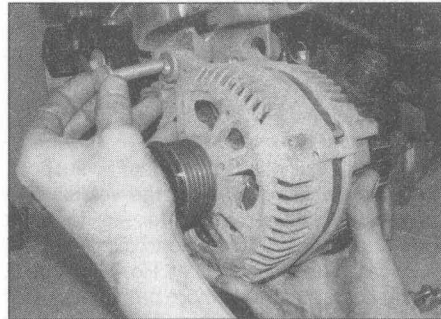
1 If the starter motor fails to operate when the ignition key is turned to the appropriate position, the following possible causes may be to blame.

- The engine immobiliser is faulty.
- The battery is faulty.
- The electrical connections between the switch, solenoid, battery and starter motor are somewhere failing to pass the necessary current from the battery through the starter to earth.
- The solenoid is faulty.
- The starter motor is mechanically or electrically defective.

2 To check the battery, switch on the headlights. If they dim after a few seconds, this indicates that the battery is discharged – recharge (see Section 3) or renew the battery. If the headlights glow brightly, operate the ignition switch and observe the lights. If they dim, then this indicates that current is reaching the starter motor, therefore the fault must lie in the starter motor. If the lights continue to glow brightly (and no clicking sound can be heard from the starter motor solenoid), this indicates that there is a fault in the circuit or solenoid – see following paragraphs. If the starter motor turns slowly



7.7 Alternator wiring connections

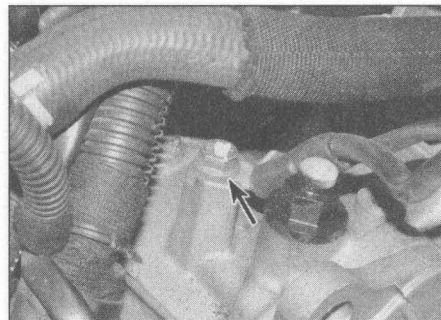


7.9 Remove the alternator from its bracket

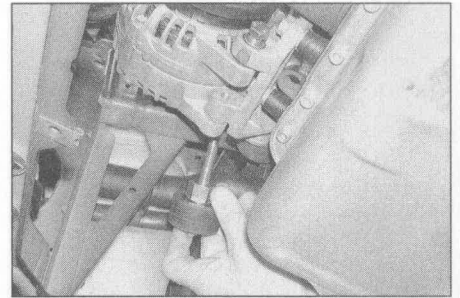
when operated, but the battery is in good condition, then this indicates that either the starter motor is faulty, or there is considerable resistance somewhere in the circuit.

3 If a fault in the circuit is suspected, disconnect the battery leads (including the earth connection to the body), the starter/solenoid wiring and the engine/transmission earth strap – located on the top of the transmission housing (see illustration). Thoroughly clean the connections and reconnect the leads and wiring, then use a voltmeter or test lamp to check that full battery voltage is available at the battery positive lead connection to the solenoid, and that the earth is sound. Smear petroleum jelly around the battery terminals to prevent corrosion – corroded connections are amongst the most frequent causes of electrical system faults.

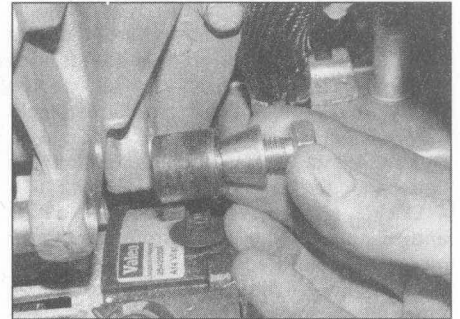
4 If the battery and all connections are in



9.3 Engine/transmission earth strap connection (arrowed)



7.8 On 2.0 litre diesel models, the lower mounting bolt also carries the auxiliary drivebelt pulley



7.10 On diesel engines, the upper bolts act as a centraliser

good condition, check the circuit by disconnecting the wire from the solenoid blade terminal. Connect a voltmeter or test lamp between the wire end and a good earth (such as the battery negative terminal), and check that the wire is live when the ignition switch is turned to the 'start' position. If it is, then the circuit is sound – if not the circuit wiring can be checked as described in Chapter 12.

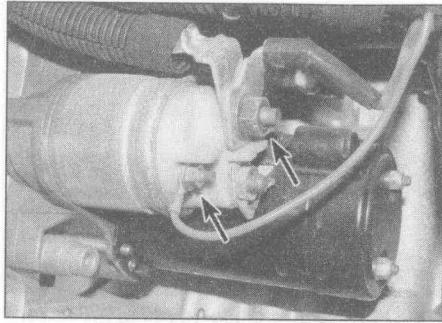
5 The solenoid contacts can be checked by connecting a voltmeter or test lamp between the battery positive feed connection on the starter side of the solenoid, and earth. When the ignition switch is turned to the 'start' position, there should be a reading or lighted bulb, as applicable. If there is no reading or lighted bulb, the solenoid is faulty and should be renewed.

6 If the circuit and solenoid are proved sound, the fault must lie in the starter motor. In this event, it may be possible to have the starter motor overhauled by a specialist, but check on the cost of spares before proceeding, as it may prove more economical to obtain a new or exchange motor.

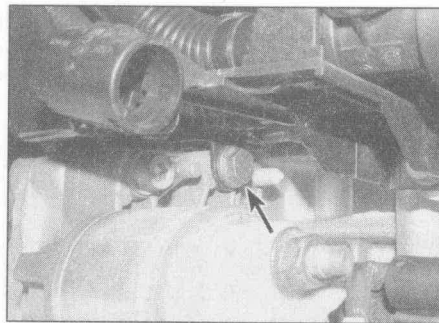
## 10 Starter motor – removal and refitting

### Removal

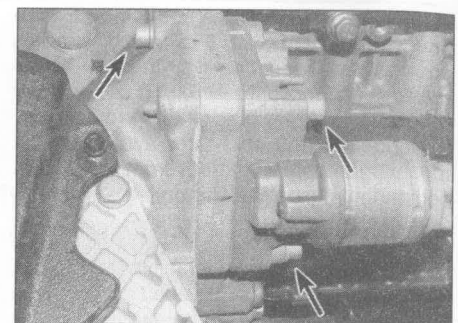
- Disconnect the battery (see Section 4).
- So that access to the motor can be gained both from above and below, apply the



**10.4a** Undo the two nuts (arrowed) and disconnect the starter motor wiring



**10.4b** Undo the bolt (arrowed) securing the wiring loom support plate



**10.5** Starter motor mounting bolts (arrowed)

handbrake then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Release the screws and remove the engine undershield (where fitted).

**3** On 1.4 and 1.6 litre engines, remove the battery and the battery tray.

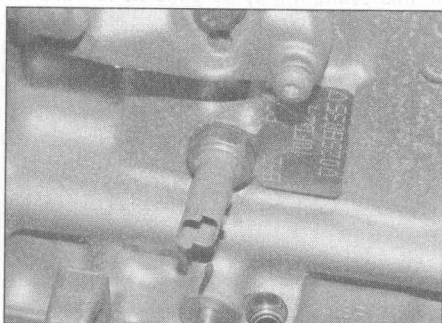
**4** Slacken and remove the two retaining nuts and disconnect the wiring from the starter motor solenoid. Recover the washers under the nuts. On 1.4 litre diesel engines, release the wiring loom from the retaining clips, then undo the bolt securing the wiring loom support plate above the starter motor (see *illustrations*).

**5** Undo the three mounting bolts (two at the rear of the motor, and one which comes through from the top of the transmission housing), supporting the motor as the bolts are withdrawn. Recover the washers from under the bolt heads and note the locations of any wiring or hose brackets secured by the bolts (see *illustration*).

**6** Manoeuvre the starter motor out from underneath the engine and recover the locating dowel(s) from the motor/transmission (as applicable).

### Refitting

**7** Refitting is a reversal of removal, ensuring that the locating dowel(s) are correctly positioned. Also make sure that any wiring or hose brackets are in place under the bolt heads as noted prior to removal.



**13.3a** The oil pressure switch is located at the front of the cylinder block . . .

### 11 Starter motor – testing and overhaul

If the starter motor is thought to be suspect, it should be removed from the vehicle and taken to an auto-electrician for testing. Most auto-electricians will be able to supply and fit brushes at a reasonable cost. However, check on the cost of repairs before proceeding as it may prove more economical to obtain a new or exchange motor.

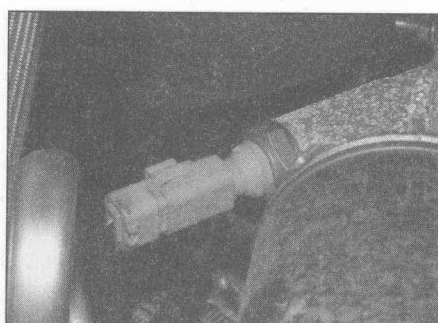
### 12 Ignition switch – removal and refitting

The ignition switch is integral with the steering column lock, and can be removed as described in Chapter 10.

### 13 Oil pressure warning light switch – removal and refitting

#### Removal

**1** The switch is fitted at the front of the cylinder block, in the following locations:



**13.3b** . . . at the base of the oil filter housing (2.0 litre model) . . .

*Petrol engines:*  
Screwed into the base of the oil filter housing.

*1.4 litre diesel engines:*

Adjacent to the oil dipstick guide tube

*2.0 litre diesel engines:*

Above the oil filter mounting.

Note that on some models access to the switch may be improved if the vehicle is jacked up and supported on axle stands, and the engine undershield removed (where fitted), so that the switch can be reached from underneath (see *Jacking and vehicle support*).

**2** Remove the protective sleeve from the wiring plug (where applicable), then disconnect the wiring from the switch.

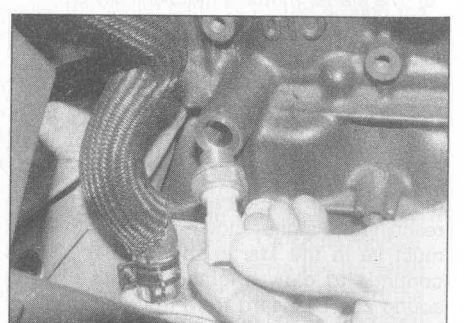
**3** Unscrew the switch from the cylinder block, and recover the sealing washer (see *illustrations*). Be prepared for oil spillage, and if the switch is to be left removed from the engine for any length of time, plug the hole in the cylinder block.

#### Refitting

**4** Examine the sealing washer for signs of damage or deterioration and if necessary renew.

**5** Refit the switch, complete with washer, and tighten it securely. Reconnect the wiring connector.

**6** Lower the vehicle to the ground then check and, if necessary, top-up the engine oil as described in *Weekly Checks*.



**13.3c** . . . or above the oil filter housing

## 14 Oil level sensor – removal and refitting



### 1 The sensor is fitted in the following locations:

#### 1.4 and 1.6 litre petrol engines:

Front side of the cylinder block adjacent to the oil filter housing.

#### 2.0 litre petrol engines:

Rear side of the cylinder block at the sump-to-block joint.

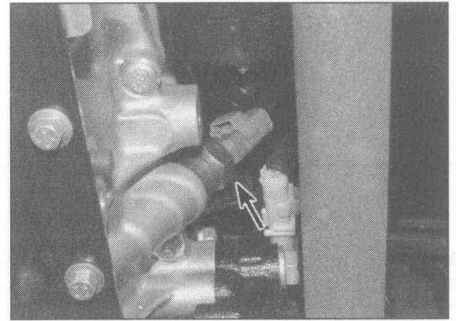
#### 1.4 litre diesel engines:

Rear side of the cylinder block, between cylinders 2 and 3.

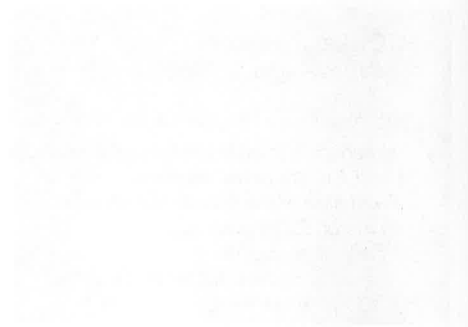
#### 2.0 litre diesel engines:

Rear side of the cylinder block, adjacent to the transmission housing.

2 The removal and refitting procedure is as described for the oil pressure switch in Section 13. Access is most easily obtained from underneath the vehicle (**see illustration**).



14.2 Oil level sensor (arrowed)



# Chapter 5 Part B:

## Ignition system – petrol models

### Contents

Ignition coil unit – removal, testing and refitting .....	3	Ignition timing – checking and adjustment .....	4
Ignition system – general information .....	1	Knock sensor – removal and refitting .....	5
Ignition system – testing .....	2	Spark plugs .....	See Chapter 1A
Ignition system check .....	See Chapter 1A		

### Degrees of difficulty

**Easy**, suitable for novice with little experience



**Fairly easy**, suitable for beginner with some experience



**Fairly difficult**, suitable for competent DIY mechanic



**Difficult**, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic



**Very difficult**, suitable for expert DIY or professional



### Specifications

#### General

System type .....	Static (distributorless) ignition system controlled by engine management ECU
Firing order .....	1-3-4-2 (No 1 cylinder at transmission end)
Spark plugs .....	See Chapter 1A Specifications
Ignition timing .....	Controlled by engine management ECU

#### Torque wrench setting

	Nm	lbf ft
Knock sensor securing bolt .....	20	15

#### 1 Ignition system – general information

The ignition system is integrated with the fuel injection system to form a combined engine management system under the control of one ECU (see Chapter 4A for further information). The ignition side of the system is of the static (distributorless) type, consisting of the ignition coils and spark plugs. The ignition coils are housed in a single unit mounted directly above the spark plugs. The coils are integral with the spark plug caps and are pushed directly onto the spark plugs, one for each plug. This removes the need for any HT leads connecting the coils to the plugs.

Under the control of the ECU, the ignition coils operate on the 'wasted spark' principle, ie, each plug sparks twice for every cycle of the engine, once during the compression stroke and once during the exhaust stroke. The spark voltage is greatest in the cylinder which is under compression; in the cylinder on its exhaust stroke the compression is low and this produces a very weak spark which has no effect on the exhaust gases.

The ECU uses its inputs from the various sensors to calculate the required ignition advance setting and coil charging time,

depending on engine temperature, load and speed. At idle speeds, the ECU varies the ignition timing to alter the torque characteristic of the engine, enabling the idle speed to be controlled. This system operates in conjunction with the idle speed control motor – see Chapter 4A for additional details.

A knock sensor is also incorporated into the ignition system. Mounted onto the cylinder block, the sensor detects the high-frequency vibrations caused when the engine starts to pre-ignite, or 'pink'. Under these conditions, the knock sensor sends an electrical signal to the ECU which in turn retards the ignition advance setting in small steps until the 'pinking' ceases.

#### 2 Ignition system – testing

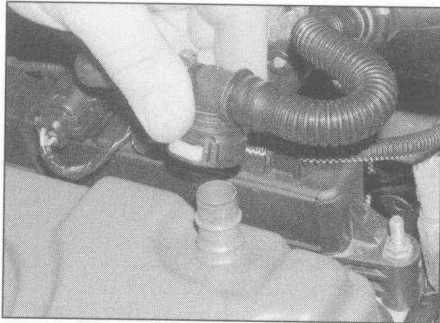


**Warning: Voltages produced by an electronic ignition system are considerably higher than those produced by conventional ignition systems. Extreme care must be taken when working on the system with the ignition switched on. Persons with surgically-implanted cardiac pacemaker devices should keep well clear of the ignition circuits, components and test equipment.**

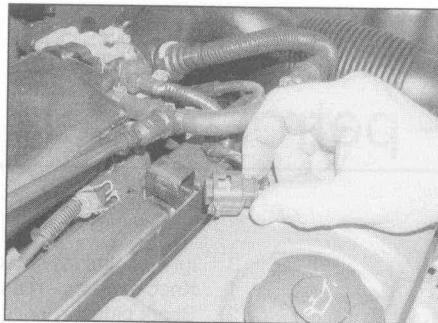
If a fault appears in the engine management (fuel injection/ignition) system, first ensure that the fault is not due to a poor electrical connection or poor maintenance; ie, check that the air cleaner filter element is clean, the spark plugs are in good condition and correctly gapped, that the engine breather hoses are clear and undamaged, referring to Chapter 1A for further information. Also check that the accelerator cable is correctly adjusted as described in Chapter 4A. If the engine is running very roughly, check the compression pressures and the valve clearances as described in Chapter 2A or 2B, where applicable.

If these checks fail to reveal the cause of the problem the vehicle should be taken to a suitably-equipped Peugeot dealer or specialist for testing. A wiring block diagnostic connector is incorporated in the engine management circuit into which a special electronic diagnostic tester can be plugged. The tester will locate the fault quickly and simply alleviating the need to test all the system components individually which is a time-consuming operation that carries a high risk of damaging the ECU.

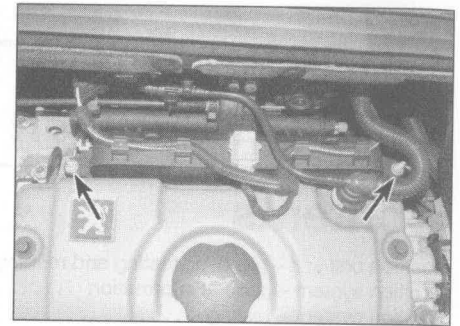
The only ignition system checks which can be carried out by the home mechanic are those described in Chapter 1A relating to the spark plugs.



3.1 Disconnect the breather hose from the cylinder head cover



3.2 Disconnect the wiring plug from the ignition HT coil



3.3 Undo the coil retaining bolts (arrowed) . . .

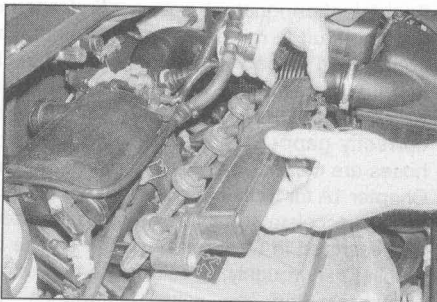
### 3 Ignition coil unit – removal, testing and refitting



#### Removal

##### 1.4 litre engines

- 1 Disconnect the engine breather hose at the quick-release connections on the air cleaner air inlet duct, cylinder head cover and inlet manifold (see illustration). Move the hose to one side.
- 2 Unplug the wiring connector from the top of the ignition coil unit (see illustration).
- 3 Undo the nut securing each end of the ignition coil unit to the mounting studs (see illustration). Note that it is quite likely that the stud will be released with the nut.

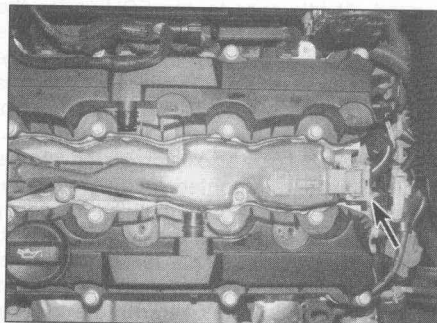


3.4 . . . then ease the ignition HT coil assembly off the spark plugs and remove it from the engine

- 4 Lift the ignition coil unit upwards off the mounting studs and at the same time carefully ease the HT extension pillars away from the tops of the spark plugs. Lift the unit off the plugs and withdraw it from the engine (see illustration).

##### 1.6 litre engines

- 5 Undo the six screws and remove the plastic coil pack cover from the top of the engine between the two camshaft covers.
- 6 Disconnect the wiring plug from the left-hand end of the ignition coil unit (see illustration).
- 7 Depress the clips and remove the two breather pipes from between the camshaft covers (see illustration).
- 8 Undo the four mounting screws securing the coil pack (see illustration).
- 9 Lift the ignition coil unit upwards and at the



3.6 Disconnect the wiring plug from the HT coils (arrowed)

same time carefully ease the HT extension pillars away from the tops of the spark plugs. Lift the unit off the plugs and withdraw it from the engine.

##### 2.0 litre engines

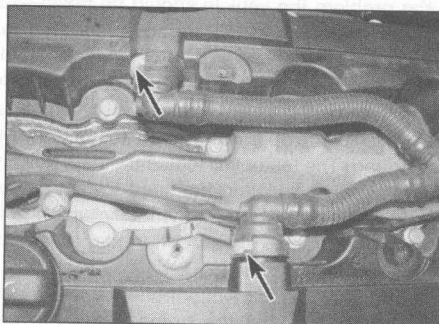
- 10 Undo the six screws and lift off the plastic cover from the top of the engine.
- 11 Disconnect the wiring connector at the left-hand end of the ignition coil unit. Undo the three retaining bolts and lift the coil unit upwards, off the spark plugs and from its location between the cylinder head covers (see illustration).

#### Testing

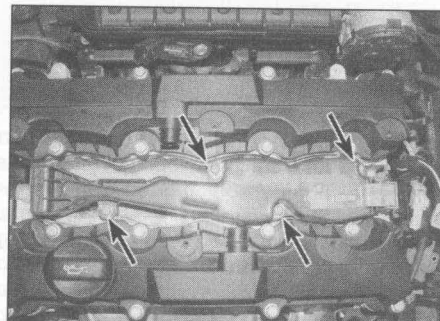
12 The circuitry arrangement of the ignition coil unit on these engines is such that testing of an individual coil in isolation from the remainder of the engine management system is unlikely to prove effective in diagnosing a particular fault. Should there be any reason to suspect a faulty individual coil, the engine management system should be tested by a Peugeot dealer or specialist using diagnostic test equipment (see Section 2).

#### Refitting

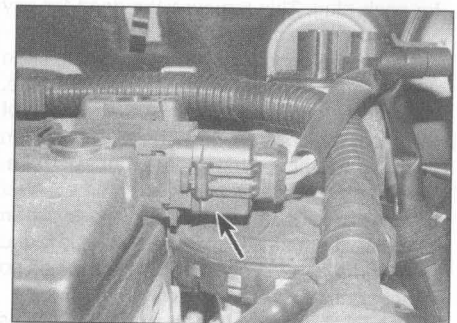
13 Refitting is a reversal of the relevant removal procedure ensuring the wiring connectors are securely reconnected.



3.7 Depress the clips (arrowed) and disconnect the breather pipes



3.8 Undo the four coil pack retaining screws (arrowed)



3.11 Disconnect the HT coil wiring plug (arrowed)

#### 4 Ignition timing – checking and adjustment



1 There are no timing marks on the flywheel or crankshaft pulley. The timing is constantly being monitored and adjusted by the engine management ECU, and nominal values cannot be given. Therefore, it is not possible for the home mechanic to check the ignition timing.

2 The only way in which the ignition timing can be checked is using special electronic

test equipment, connected to the engine management system diagnostic connector (refer to Chapter 4A for further information).

#### 5 Knock sensor – removal and refitting



##### **Removal**

1 On 1.4 and 1.6 litre engines, the knock sensor is screwed into the rear face of the cylinder block, and, on 2.0 litre engines, into the front face.

2 Firmly apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it securely on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield (where fitted).

3 Trace the wiring back from the sensor to its wiring connector, and disconnect it from the main loom.

4 Undo the sensor securing bolt and remove the sensor from the cylinder block.

##### **Refitting**

5 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure, ensuring that the sensor securing bolt is tightened to the specified torque.



Faint, illegible text in the top left column.

Faint, illegible text in the top middle column.

Faint, illegible text in the top right column.

Faint, illegible text in the middle left column.

Faint, illegible text in the middle middle column.

Faint, illegible text in the middle right column.

Faint, illegible text in the lower middle left column.

Faint, illegible text in the lower middle middle column.

Faint, illegible text in the lower middle right column.

Faint, illegible text in the bottom left column.

Faint, illegible text in the bottom middle column.

Faint, illegible text in the bottom right column.

# Chapter 5 Part C:

## Pre/post-heating system – diesel models

### Contents

Glow plugs – removal, inspection and refitting . . . . .	2	Pre/post-heating system relay unit – removal and refitting . . . . .	3
Pre/post-heating system – description and testing . . . . .	1		

### Degrees of difficulty

**Easy**, suitable for novice with little experience



**Fairly easy**, suitable for beginner with some experience



**Fairly difficult**, suitable for competent DIY mechanic



**Difficult**, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic



**Very difficult**, suitable for expert DIY or professional



### Specifications

#### Preheating system

**Note:** At the time of writing no information concerning the 1.4 litre DV4TD engine was available.

##### 2.0 litre engines

Preheating period at ambient temperature of:

-30°C . . . . .	20 seconds
-10°C . . . . .	5 seconds
0°C . . . . .	0.5 seconds
18°C . . . . .	0 seconds

#### Post-heating system

**Note:** At the time of writing no information concerning the 1.4 litre DV4TD engine was available.

##### 2.0 litre engines

Post-heating period at ambient temperature of:

-30°C . . . . .	3 minutes
-10°C . . . . .	3 minutes
0°C . . . . .	1 minute
18°C . . . . .	30 seconds
40°C . . . . .	0 seconds

#### Glow plugs

Resistance (typical) . . . . . 1 ohm approximately

Type:

1.4 litre engine . . . . .	No Bosch recommendation
2.0 litre engine . . . . .	Bosch 0 250 202 032

#### Torque wrench setting

	Nm	lbf ft
Glow plugs:		
1.4 litre engine . . . . .	8	6
2.0 litre engines . . . . .	22	16

#### 1 Pre/post-heating system – description and testing

##### Description

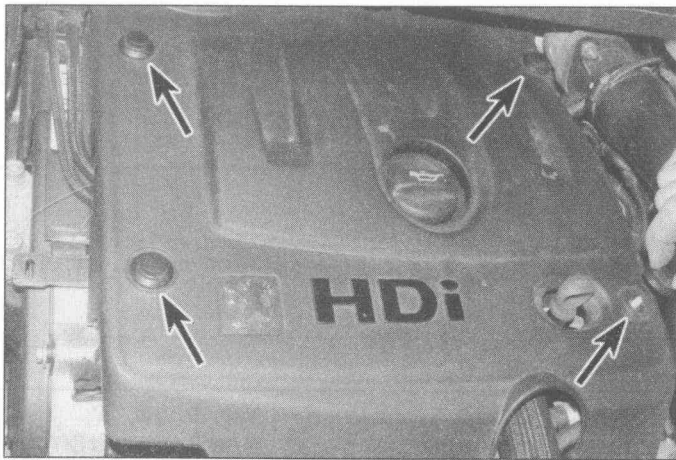
**1** To assist cold starting, diesel engines are fitted with a preheating system, which consists of four of glow plugs (one per cylinder), a glow plug relay unit, a facia-mounted warning lamp, the engine management ECU, and the associated electrical wiring.

**2** The glow plugs are miniature electric

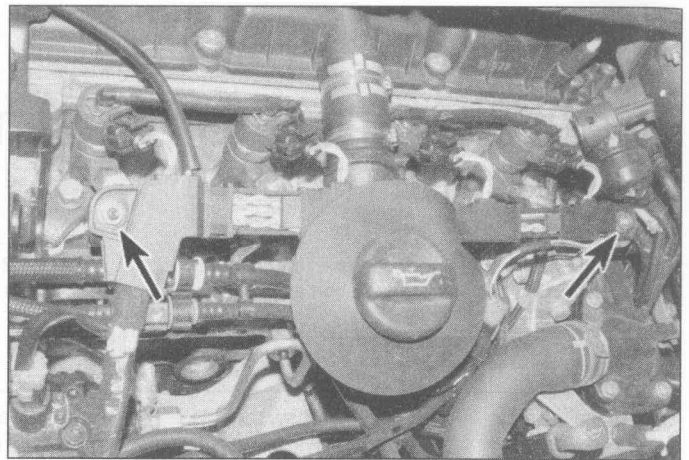
heating elements, encapsulated in a metal case with a probe at one end and electrical connection at the other. Each combustion chamber has one glow plug threaded into it, with the tip of the glow plug probe positioned directly in line with incoming spray of fuel from the injectors. When the glow plug is energised, it heats up rapidly, causing the fuel passing over the glow plug probe to be heated to its optimum temperature, ready for combustion. In addition, some of the fuel passing over the glow plugs is ignited and this helps to trigger the combustion process.

**3** The preheating system begins to operate as

soon as the ignition key is switched to the second position, but only if the engine coolant temperature is below 20°C and the engine is turned at more than 70 rpm for 0.2 seconds. A facia-mounted warning lamp informs the driver that preheating is taking place. The lamp extinguishes when sufficient preheating has taken place to allow the engine to be started, but power will still be supplied to the glow plugs for a further period until the engine is started. If no attempt is made to start the engine, the power supply to the glow plugs is switched off after 10 seconds, to prevent battery drain and glow plug burn-out.



**1.11a** Rotate the four fasteners (arrowed) 90° anti-clockwise and pull the plastic cover from place



**1.11b** Undo the two nuts (arrowed) and move the wiring harness tray to one side

**4** With the electronically-controlled diesel injection systems fitted to models in this manual, the glow plug relay unit is controlled by the engine management system ECU, which determines the necessary preheating time based on inputs from the various system sensors. The system monitors the temperature of the intake air, then alters the preheating time (the length for which the glow plugs are supplied with current) to suit the conditions.

**5** Post-heating takes place after the ignition key has been released from the 'start' position, but only if the engine coolant temperature is below 20°C, the injected fuel flow is less than a certain rate, and the engine speed is less than 2000 rpm. The glow plugs continue to operate for a maximum of 60 seconds, helping to improve fuel combustion whilst the engine is warming-up, resulting in quieter, smoother running and reduced exhaust emissions.

### Testing

**6** If the system malfunctions, testing is ultimately by substitution of known good units, but some preliminary checks may be made as follows.

**7** Connect a voltmeter or 12 volt test lamp between the glow plug supply cable and earth (engine or vehicle metal). Make sure that the

live connection is kept clear of the engine and bodywork.

**8** Have an assistant switch on the ignition, and check that voltage is applied to the glow plugs. Note the time for which the warning light is lit, and the total time for which voltage is applied before the system cuts out. Switch off the ignition.

**9** Compare the results with the information given in the Specifications. Warning light time will increase with lower temperatures and decrease with higher temperatures.

**10** If there is no supply at all, the control unit or associated wiring is at fault.

**11** To gain access to the glow plugs for further testing, remove the following components, according to model:

#### 1.4 litre engine:

*Remove the cylinder head cover/manifold assembly as described in Chapter 2C.*

#### 2.0 litre engines:

*Undo the four plastic fasteners and remove the engine cover from the top of the engine. Disconnect the injector wiring plugs and move the wiring harness tray to one side after undoing the two retaining nuts. For access to No 4 glow plug, undo the three bolts and move the fuel pipe support bracket to one side (see illustrations).*

**12** Disconnect the main supply cable and the

interconnecting wire or strap from the top of the glow plugs. Be careful not to drop the nuts and washers.

**13** Use a continuity tester, or a 12 volt test lamp connected to the battery positive terminal, to check for continuity between each glow plug terminal and earth. The resistance of a glow plug in good condition is very low (less than 1 ohm), so if the test lamp does not light or the continuity tester shows a high resistance, the glow plug is certainly defective.

**14** If an ammeter is available, the current draw of each glow plug can be checked. After an initial surge of 15 to 20 amps, each plug should draw 12 amps. Any plug which draws much more or less than this is probably defective.

**15** As a final check, the glow plugs can be removed and inspected as described in the following Section. On completion, refit any components removed for access.

## 2 Glow plugs – removal, inspection and refitting

**Caution:** If the preheating system has just been energised, or if the engine has been running, the glow plugs will be very hot.

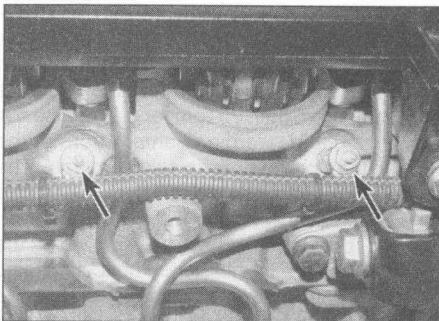
### Removal

**1** Ensure the ignition is turned off. To gain access to the glow plugs, remove the components described in Section 1, according to engine.

**2** Unscrew the nuts from the glow plug terminals, and recover the washers. Note that on some 2.0 litre models, an interconnecting wire/shunt is fitted between the four plugs (see illustration).

**3** Where applicable, carefully move any obstructing pipes or wires to one side to enable access to the relevant glow plug(s).

**4** Unscrew the glow plug(s) and remove from the cylinder head (see illustration).



**2.2** Undo the nuts securing the glow plug connections (arrowed)



**2.4** Unscrew the glow plugs from the cylinder head

### Inspection

**5** Inspect each glow plug for physical damage. Burnt or eroded glow plug tips can be caused by a bad injector spray pattern. Have the injectors checked if this sort of damage is found.

**6** If the glow plugs are in good physical condition, check them electrically using a 12 volt test lamp or continuity tester as described in the previous Section.

**7** The glow plugs can be energised by applying 12 volts to them to verify that they heat up evenly and in the required time. Observe the following precautions.

- a) Support the glow plug by clamping it carefully in a vice or self-locking pliers. Remember it will become red-hot.
- b) Make sure that the power supply or test lead incorporates a fuse or overload trip to protect against damage from a short-circuit.
- c) After testing, allow the glow plug to cool for several minutes before attempting to handle it.

**8** A glow plug in good condition will start to glow red at the tip after drawing current for

5 seconds or so. Any plug which takes much longer to start glowing, or which starts glowing in the middle instead of at the tip, is defective.

### Refitting

**9** Refit by reversing the removal operations. Apply a smear of copper-based anti-seize compound to the plug threads and tighten the glow plugs to the specified torque. Do not overtighten, as this can damage the glow plug element.

**10** Refit any components removed for access.

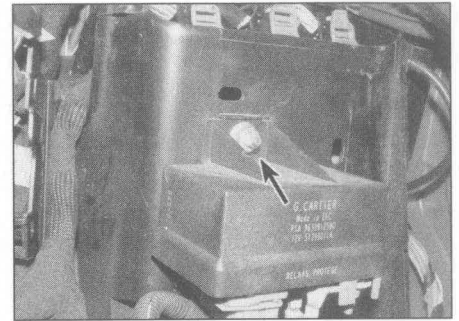
### 3 Pre/post-heating system relay unit – removal and refitting



#### Removal

**1** The unit is located on the left-hand front side of the engine compartment where it is mounted on a bracket just in front of the fuse/relay box.

**2** Disconnect the battery (see Chapter 5A).



#### 3.3 Undo the glow plug control unit mounting nut (arrowed)

**3** Unscrew the retaining nut securing the unit to the mounting bracket (see illustration).

**4** Unscrew the two retaining nuts and free the main feed and supply wires from the base of the unit, then disconnect the wiring connector. Remove the unit from the engine compartment.

#### Refitting

**5** Refitting is a reversal of removal, ensuring that the wiring connectors are correctly connected.

[The page contains extremely faint, illegible text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the document. The text is organized into several columns and paragraphs, but the characters are too light to be transcribed accurately.]

# Chapter 6

## Clutch

### Contents

Clutch assembly – removal, inspection and refitting . . . . .	6	Clutch release mechanism – removal, inspection and refitting . . . . .	7
Clutch hydraulic system – bleeding . . . . .	2	Clutch slave cylinder – removal and refitting . . . . .	4
Clutch master cylinder – removal and refitting . . . . .	3	General checks . . . . .	See Chapter 1A or 1B
Clutch pedal – removal and refitting . . . . .	5	General information . . . . .	1

### Degrees of difficulty

**Easy**, suitable for novice with little experience



**Fairly easy**, suitable for beginner with some experience



**Fairly difficult**, suitable for competent DIY mechanic



**Difficult**, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic



**Very difficult**, suitable for expert DIY or professional



### Specifications

#### Type

All models . . . . . Single dry disc with diaphragm spring, hydraulic operation

#### Clutch operation

All models . . . . . Hydraulic

#### Friction disc diameter

Petrol engine models:

1.4 litre . . . . .	180 mm
1.6 litre . . . . .	200 mm
2.0 litre . . . . .	230 mm

Diesel engine models . . . . . 230 mm

#### Torque wrench setting

	Nm	lbf ft
Pressure plate retaining bolts . . . . .	20	15

#### 1 General information

The clutch consists of a friction disc, a pressure plate assembly, a release bearing and release fork; all of these components are contained in the large cast-aluminium alloy bellhousing, sandwiched between the engine and the transmission. The release mechanism is hydraulic on all models.

The friction disc is fitted between the engine flywheel and the clutch pressure plate, and is allowed to slide on the transmission input shaft splines.

The pressure plate assembly is bolted to the

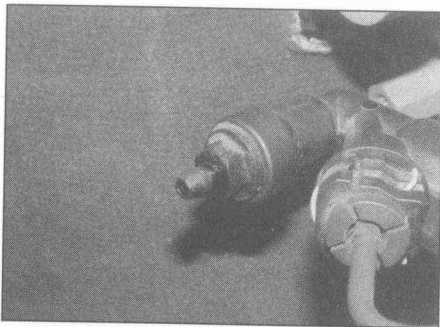
engine flywheel. When the engine is running, drive is transmitted from the crank-shaft, via the flywheel, to the friction disc (these components being clamped securely together by the pressure plate assembly) and from the friction disc to the transmission input shaft.

To interrupt the drive, the spring pressure must be relaxed. This is done by means of the clutch release bearing, fitted concentrically around the transmission input shaft. The bearing is pushed onto the pressure plate assembly by means of the release fork actuated by clutch slave cylinder pushrod.

The clutch pedal is connected to the clutch master cylinder by a short pushrod. The master cylinder is mounted on the engine side of the bulkhead in front of the driver and

receives its hydraulic fluid supply from the brake master cylinder reservoir. Depressing the clutch pedal moves the piston in the master cylinder forwards, so forcing hydraulic fluid through the clutch hydraulic pipe to the slave cylinder. The piston in the slave cylinder moves forward on the entry of the fluid and actuates the clutch release fork by means of a short pushrod. The release fork pivots on its mounting stud, and the other end of the fork then presses the release bearing against the pressure plate spring fingers. This causes the springs to deform and releases the clamping force on the pressure plate.

On all models the clutch operating mechanism is self-adjusting, and no manual adjustment is required.



2.4 Remove the dust cap from the bleed screw

2 Clutch hydraulic system – bleeding



**Warning:** Hydraulic fluid is poisonous; wash off immediately and thoroughly in the case of skin contact, and seek immediate medical advice if any fluid is swallowed or gets into the eyes. Certain types of hydraulic fluid are inflammable, and may ignite when allowed into contact with hot components; when servicing any hydraulic system, it is safest to assume that the fluid IS inflammable, and to take precautions against the risk of fire as though it is petrol that is being handled. Hydraulic fluid is also an effective paint stripper, and will attack plastics; if any is spilt, it should be washed off immediately, using copious quantities of clean water. When topping-up or renewing the fluid, always use the recommended type, and ensure that it comes from a freshly-opened sealed container.

1 Obtain a clean jar, a suitable length of rubber or clear plastic tubing, which is a tight fit over the bleed screw on the clutch slave cylinder, and a tin of the specified hydraulic fluid. The help of an assistant will also be required. (If a one-man do-it-yourself bleeding kit for bleeding the brake hydraulic system is available, this can be used quite satisfactorily for the clutch also. Full information on the use of these kits may be found in Chapter 9.)

2 On all models, except the 1.4 litre diesel, remove the air cleaner housing as described in Chapter 4A or 4B.

3 Remove the filler cap from the brake master cylinder reservoir, and if necessary top-up the fluid. Keep the reservoir topped-up during subsequent operations.

4 Remove the dust cap from the slave cylinder bleed screw, located on the lower front facing side of the transmission (see illustration).

5 Connect one end of the bleed tube to the bleed screw, and insert the other end of the tube in the jar containing sufficient clean hydraulic fluid to keep the end of the tube submerged.

6 Open the bleed screw half a turn and have your assistant depress the clutch pedal and then slowly release it. Continue this procedure until clean hydraulic fluid, free from air bubbles, emerges from the tube. Now tighten the bleed screw at the end of a downstroke. Make sure that the brake master cylinder reservoir is checked frequently to ensure that the level does not drop too far, allowing air into the system.

7 Check the operation of the clutch pedal. After a few strokes it should feel normal. Any sponginess would indicate air still present in the system.

8 On completion remove the bleed tube and refit the dust cover. Top-up the master cylinder reservoir if necessary and refit the cap. Fluid expelled from the hydraulic system should now be discarded as it will be contaminated with moisture, air and dirt, making it unsuitable for further use.

3 Clutch master cylinder – removal and refitting

**Note:** Before starting work, refer to the note at the beginning of Section 2 concerning the dangers of hydraulic fluid.

**Removal**

1 Prise up the centre pins, lever out the complete expanding plastic rivets, and remove the trim panel above the driver's pedals.

2 Depress the clutch pedal, then prise the master cylinder pushrod end from the pedal pin (see illustration 5.2).

3 To minimise hydraulic fluid loss, remove the brake master cylinder reservoir filler cap then tighten it down onto a piece of polythene to obtain an airtight seal.

4 Place absorbent rags under the clutch master cylinder pipe connections in the engine compartment and be prepared for hydraulic fluid loss.

5 Release the master cylinder hydraulic pressure pipe from its retaining clips on the engine compartment bulkhead, then prise out the retaining wire clip and disconnect the pipe from the master cylinder (see illustration). Suitably plug or cap the pipe end to prevent further fluid loss and dirt entry.

6 Depress the quick-release connector tabs and disconnect the hydraulic fluid supply hose (see illustration). Suitably plug or cap the hose end.

7 Rotate the master cylinder 90 degrees clockwise, and remove it from the bulkhead (see illustration).

**Refitting**

8 Refitting the master cylinder is the reverse sequence to removal, bearing in mind the following points.

- a) Ensure all retaining clips are correctly refitted.
- b) Bleed the clutch hydraulic system as described in Section 2 on completion.

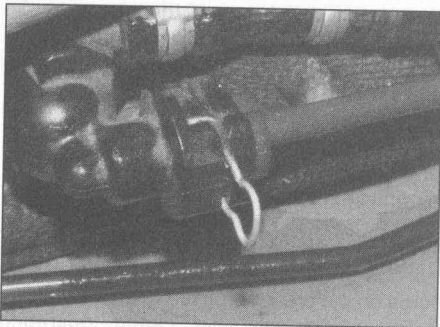
4 Clutch slave cylinder – removal and refitting

**Note:** Before starting work, refer to the note at the beginning of Section 2 concerning the dangers of hydraulic fluid.

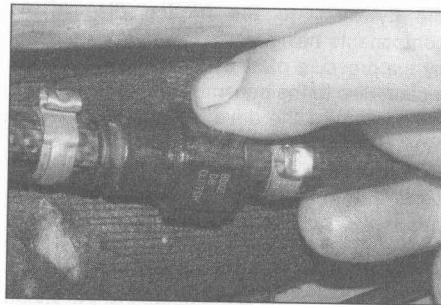
**Removal**

1 To minimise hydraulic fluid loss, remove the brake master cylinder reservoir filler cap then tighten it down onto a piece of polythene to obtain an airtight seal.

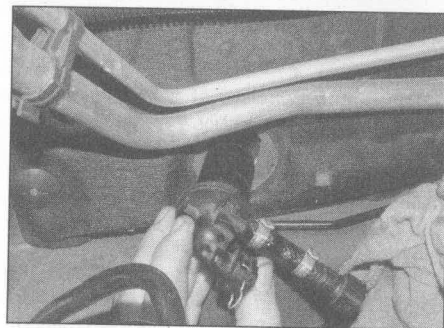
2 On all models except 1.4 litre diesel, remove the air cleaner housing as described in Chapter 4A or 4B.



3.5 Prise out the clip, and disconnect the pipe from the master cylinder



3.6 Squeeze together the sides of the quick-release coupling and disconnect the supply hose



3.7 Turn the master cylinder 90° clockwise, and remove it from the bulkhead

3 Place absorbent rags under the clutch slave cylinder located on the lower front facing side of the transmission. Be prepared for hydraulic fluid loss.

4 Where necessary for access, release the wiring harness from the retaining clips and move the harness clear of the slave cylinder.

5 Lever out the retaining clip a little, then disconnect the hydraulic pipe from the side of the slave cylinder (see illustration). Suitably plug or cap the pipe end to prevent further fluid loss and dirt entry.

6 Undo the two retaining bolts, and remove the cylinder from the transmission housing (see illustration).

### Refitting

7 Refitting the slave cylinder is the reverse sequence to removal, bearing in mind the following points.

- Apply a little Molykote BR2 Plus grease to the end of the slave cylinder pushrod.
- Bleed the clutch hydraulic system as described in Section 2 on completion.

### 5 Clutch pedal – removal and refitting



### Removal

1 Working inside the car, prise up the centre pins, then prise out the complete expanding plastic rivets, and remove the facia lower trim panel above the pedals on the driver's side.

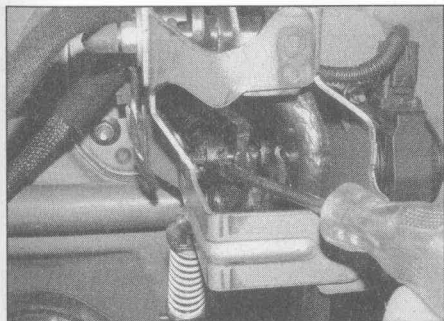
2 Depress the clutch pedal until the end of the master cylinder pushrod is visible through the hole in the side of the pedal bracket. Using a screwdriver, prise the end of the pushrod from the pedal pin (see illustration).

3 Using a screwdriver, compress the helper spring a little, and remove it from the pedal and pedal bracket.

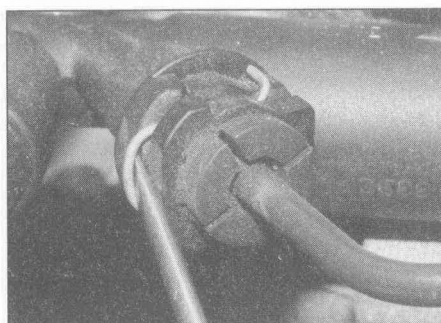
4 Undo the nut from the clutch pedal pivot bolt and withdraw the bolt (see illustration). Note that the bolt also provides a pivot for the brake pedal.

5 Remove the clutch pedal from the pedal bracket and recover the bush from the pedal pivot.

6 Check the condition of the pedal, pivot



5.2 Prise the end of the pushrod from the pedal pin



4.5 Lever out the hydraulic pipe retaining clip

bush and helper spring assembly and renew any components as necessary.

### Refitting

7 Lubricate the pedal pivot bolt with multi-purpose grease, then locate the pedal in the bracket and insert the pivot bolt. Refit the pivot bolt nut and tighten it securely.

8 Reconnect the helper spring to the pedal and pedal bracket.

9 Depress the pedal two or three times and check the operation of the clutch release mechanism.

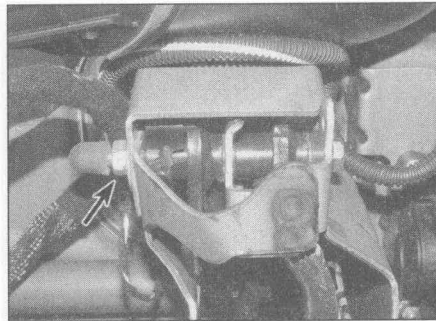
10 Refit the facia lower trim panel and secure with the plastic clips.

### 6 Clutch assembly – removal, inspection and refitting

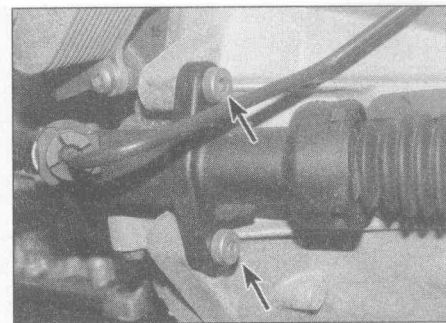


**Warning:** Dust created by clutch wear and deposited on the clutch components may contain asbestos, which is a health hazard. DON'T blow it out with compressed air, nor inhale any of it. DO NOT use petrol or petroleum-based solvents to clean off the dust. Brake system cleaner or methylated spirit should be used to flush the dust into a suitable receptacle. After the clutch components are wiped clean with rags, dispose of the contaminated rags and cleaner in a sealed, marked container.

**Note:** Although most friction materials no longer contain asbestos, it is safest to assume that some still do, and to take precautions accordingly.



5.4 The clutch pedal bolt (arrowed) is also the pivot for the brake pedal



4.6 Undo the two bolts (arrowed) and remove the clutch slave cylinder

### Removal

1 Unless the complete engine/transmission unit is to be removed from the car and separated for major overhaul (see Chapter 2D), the clutch can be reached by removing the transmission as described in Chapter 7A.

2 Before disturbing the clutch, use chalk or a marker pen to mark the relationship of the pressure plate assembly to the flywheel.

3 Working in a diagonal sequence, slacken the pressure plate bolts by half a turn at a time, until spring pressure is released and the bolts can be unscrewed by hand (see illustration).

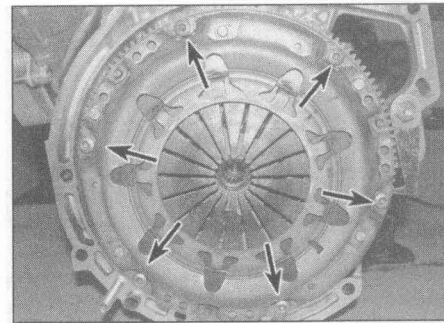
4 Prise the pressure plate assembly off its locating dowels, and collect the friction disc, noting which way round the disc is fitted.

### Inspection

**Note:** Due to the amount of work necessary to remove and refit clutch components, it is considered good practice to renew the clutch friction disc, pressure plate assembly and release bearing as a matched set, even if only one of these is worn enough to require renewal. It is worth considering the renewal of the clutch components on a preventative basis if the engine and/or transmission have been removed for some other reason.

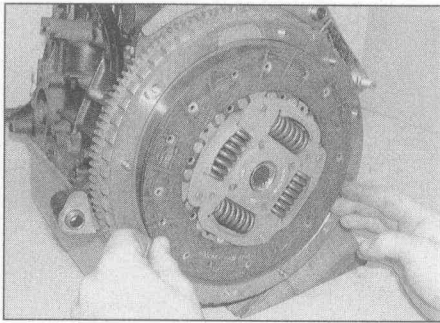
5 When cleaning clutch components, read first the warning at the beginning of this Section; remove dust using a clean, dry cloth, and working in a well-ventilated atmosphere.

6 Check the friction disc facings for signs of wear, damage or oil contamination. If the friction material is cracked, burnt, scored or



6.3 Undo the pressure plate bolts (arrowed)





**6.13** Fit the disc so the spring hub assembly faces away from the flywheel

damaged, or if it is contaminated with oil or grease (shown by shiny black patches), the friction disc must be renewed.

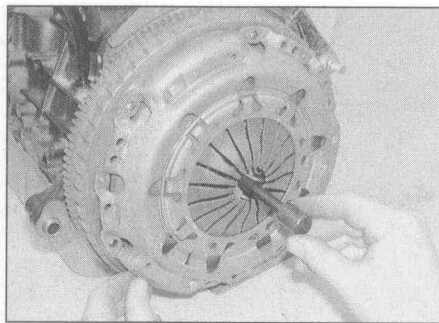
**7** If the friction material is still serviceable, check that the centre boss splines are unworn, that the torsion springs are in good condition and securely fastened, and that all the rivets are tight. If any wear or damage is found, the friction disc must be renewed.

**8** If the friction material is fouled with oil, this must be due to an oil leak from the crankshaft left-hand oil seal, from the sump-to-cylinder block joint, or from the transmission input shaft. Renew the seal or repair the joint, as appropriate, as described in the relevant Part of Chapter 2 or 7, before installing the new friction disc.

**9** Check the pressure plate assembly for obvious signs of wear or damage; shake it to check for loose rivets or worn or damaged fulcrum rings, and check that the drive straps securing the pressure plate to the cover do not show signs (such as a deep yellow or blue discoloration) of overheating. If the diaphragm spring is worn or damaged, or if its pressure is in any way suspect, the pressure plate assembly should be renewed.

**10** Examine the machined bearing surfaces of the pressure plate and of the flywheel; they should be clean, completely flat, and free from scratches or scoring. If either is discoloured from excessive heat, or shows signs of cracks, it should be renewed – although minor damage of this nature can sometimes be polished away using emery paper.

**11** Check that the release bearing contact surface rotates smoothly and easily, with no



**6.16** Using a clutch aligning tool to centralise the friction disc

sign of noise or roughness. Also check that the surface itself is smooth and unworn, with no signs of cracks, pitting or scoring. If there is any doubt about its condition, the bearing must be renewed.

### Refitting

**12** On reassembly, ensure that the bearing surfaces of the flywheel and pressure plate are completely clean, smooth, and free from oil or grease. Use solvent to remove any protective grease from new components.

**13** Fit the friction disc so that its spring hub assembly faces away from the flywheel; there may be a marking showing which way round the disc is to be refitted (**see illustration**).

**14** Refit the pressure plate assembly, aligning the marks made on dismantling (if the original pressure plate is re-used), and locating the pressure plate on its three locating dowels. Fit the pressure plate bolts, but tighten them only finger-tight, so that the friction disc can still be moved.

**15** The friction disc must now be centralised, so that when the transmission is refitted, its input shaft will pass through the splines at the centre of the friction disc.

**16** Centralisation can be achieved by passing a screwdriver or other long bar through the friction disc and into the hole in the crankshaft; the friction disc can then be moved around until it is centred on the crankshaft hole. Alternatively, a clutch-aligning tool can be used to eliminate the guesswork; these can be obtained from most accessory shops (**see illustration**).

**HAYNES**  
**HINT**

A home-made aligning tool can be fabricated from a length of metal rod or wooden dowel which fits closely inside the crankshaft hole, and has insulating tape wound around it to match the diameter of the friction disc splined hole.

**17** When the friction disc is centralised, tighten the pressure plate bolts evenly and in a diagonal sequence to the specified torque setting.

**18** Apply a thin smear of molybdenum disulphide grease (Peugeot recommend the use of Molykote BR2 Plus – available from your dealer) to the splines of the friction disc and the transmission input shaft, and also to the release bearing bore and release fork shaft.

**19** Refit the transmission as described in Chapter 7A.

### 7 Clutch release mechanism – removal, inspection and refitting



**Note:** Refer to the warning concerning the dangers of asbestos dust at the beginning of Section 7.

#### Removal

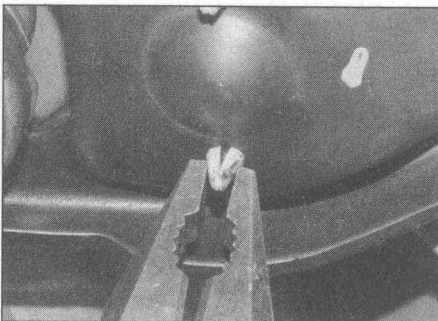
**1** Unless the complete engine/transmission unit is to be removed from the car and separated for major overhaul (see Chapter 2D), the clutch release mechanism can be reached by removing the transmission only, as described in Chapter 7A.

**2** With the transmission removed, squeeze together the tabs of the retaining clip and pull the release fork off the pivot ball-stud. Recover the shim where fitted. The mounting stud unscrews from the transmission housing (**see illustrations**).

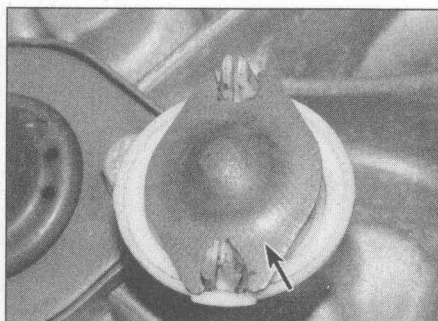
**3** Slide the release bearing off the guide tube and disengage the arms of the release fork (**see illustration**).

#### Inspection

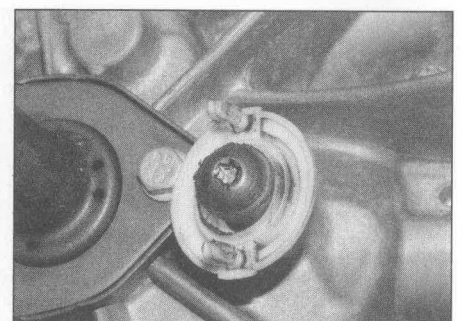
**4** Check that the release bearing contact



**7.2a** Squeeze the tabs of the retaining clip together and remove the release fork . . .



**7.2b** . . . recover the shim (arrowed) . . .



**7.2c** . . . then unscrew the pivot ball-stud

surface rotates smoothly and easily, with no sign of noise or roughness, and that the surface itself is smooth and unworn, with no signs of cracks, pitting or scoring. If there is any doubt about its condition, the bearing must be renewed.

**5** Check the bearing surfaces and points of contact on the release fork and pivot ball-stud, renewing any component which is worn or damaged.

### Refitting

**6** Apply a smear of molybdenum disulphide grease to the pivot ball-stud.

**7** Insert the outer end of the release fork through the rubber boot in the side of the transmission bellhousing.

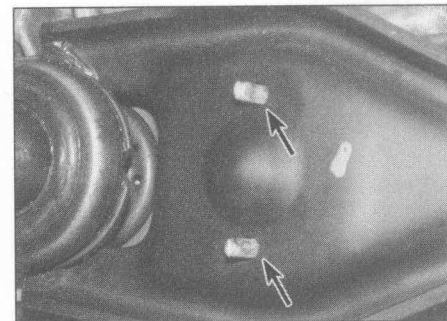
**8** Engage the arms of the release fork with the release bearing collar, then slide the release



**7.3** Disengage the release bearing from the release fork

bearing onto the guide tube.

**9** Position the shim over the tabs of the pivot ball-stud clip, then push the fork over the stud, ensuring the tabs of the retaining clip



**7.9** Ensure the retaining tabs (arrowed) engage correctly with the release fork

engage correctly with the fork (see illustration).

**10** Refit the transmission as described in Chapter 7A.



# Chapter 7 Part A:

## Manual transmission

### Contents

Gearchange lever and cables – removal and refitting	3	Manual transmission overhaul – general information	8
General information	1	Oil seals – renewal	4
Manual transmission – draining and refilling	2	Reversing light switch – testing, removal and refitting	5
Manual transmission – removal and refitting	7	Speedometer drive – removal and refitting	6
Manual transmission oil level check	See Chapter 1A or 1B		

### Degrees of difficulty

**Easy**, suitable for novice with little experience



**Fairly easy**, suitable for beginner with some experience



**Fairly difficult**, suitable for competent DIY mechanic



**Difficult**, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic



**Very difficult**, suitable for expert DIY or professional



### Specifications

#### General

Type	Manual, five forward speeds and reverse. Synchromesh on all forward speeds
Designation:	
Petrol engine models:	
1.4 and 1.6 litre	MA5
2.0 litre	BE4/5
Diesel engine models	BE4/5
Transmission code:	
Petrol models:	
1.4 litre models	20CD78, 20CD79, 20CN18, 20CN19, 20CP41, 20CP42
1.6 litre models	20CD80, 20CN20, 20CP43
2.0 litre models	20DL48, 20DL49, 20DM37, 20DM38
Diesel models:	
1.4 litre models	20DM14, 20DM15
2.0 litre models	20DL50, 20DL51, 20DM09, 20DM39, 20DM40

**Note:** Transmission code is stamped on the front of the clutch housing on petrol engine models, and on the front face of the transmission housing on diesel engine models.

#### Lubrication

Capacity:	
MA5	2.0 litres
BE4/5	1.9 litres
Recommended oil type	See Lubricants and fluids

## Torque wrench settings

## MA5 transmission

	Nm	lbf ft
Clutch release bearing guide sleeve bolts	12	9
Engine-to-transmission fixing bolts	40	30
Gearchange lever mounting nuts	8	6
Left-hand engine/transmission mounting	Refer to Chapter 2A	
Oil drain plug	25	18
Oil filler/level plug	25	18
Rear mounting link	Refer to Chapter 2A	
Reversing light switch	25	18
Roadwheel bolts	90	66
Speedometer drive pinion bracket	10	7

## BE4/5 transmission

Clutch release bearing guide sleeve bolts	12	9
Engine-to-transmission fixing bolts	45	33
Gearchange lever mounting nuts	8	6
Left-hand engine/transmission mounting	Refer to Chapter 2B or 2C	
Oil drain plug	35	26
Oil filler/level plug	20	15
Rear mounting link	Refer to Chapter 2B or 2C	
Reversing light switch	25	18
Roadwheel bolts	90	66
Speedometer drive housing bolts	15	11

## 1 General information

1 The transmission is contained in a cast-aluminium alloy casing bolted to the engine's

left-hand end, and consists of the gearbox and final drive differential – often called a transaxle.

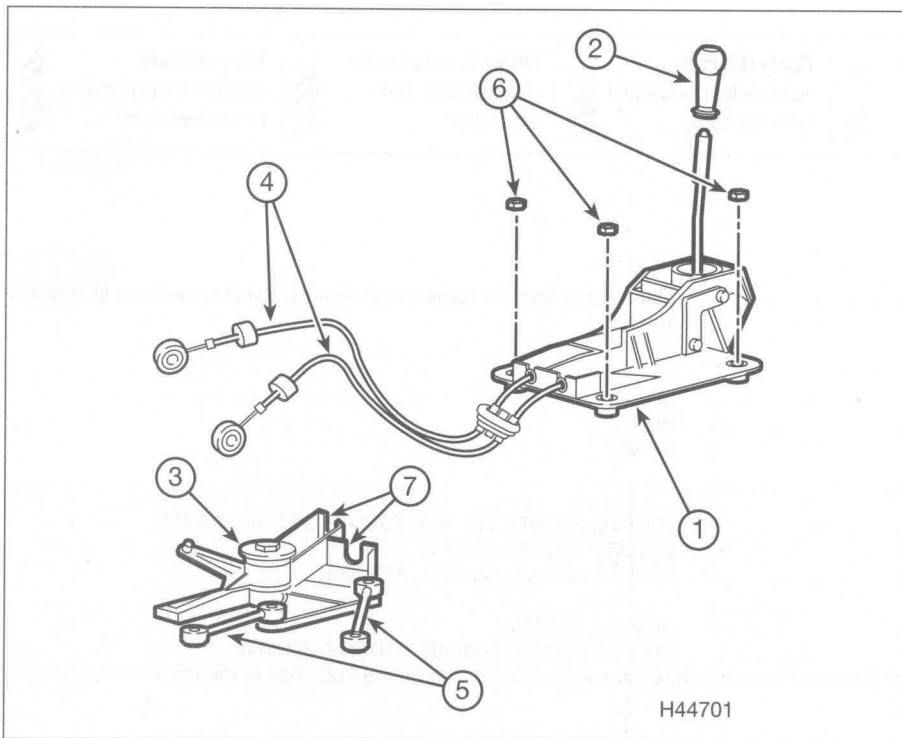
2 Drive is transmitted from the crankshaft via the clutch to the input shaft, which has a splined extension to accept the clutch friction disc, and rotates in sealed ball-bearings.

From the input shaft, drive is transmitted to the output shaft, which rotates in a roller bearing at its right-hand end, and a sealed ball-bearing at its left-hand end. From the output shaft, the drive is transmitted to the differential crownwheel, which rotates with the differential case and planetary gears, thus driving the sun gears and driveshafts. The rotation of the planetary gears on their shaft allows the inner roadwheel to rotate at a slower speed than the outer roadwheel when the car is cornering.

3 The input and output shafts are arranged side-by-side, parallel to the crankshaft and driveshafts, so that their gear pinion teeth are in constant mesh. In the neutral position, the output shaft gear pinions rotate freely, so that drive cannot be transmitted to the crownwheel.

4 Gear selection is via a floor-mounted lever and cable mechanism (see illustration). The selector/gearchange cables causes the appropriate selector fork to move its respective synchro-sleeve along the shaft, to lock the gear pinion to the synchro-hub. Since the synchro-hubs are splined to the output shaft, this locks the pinion to the shaft, so that drive can be transmitted. To ensure that gearchanging can be made quickly and quietly, a synchromesh system is fitted to all forward gears, consisting of baulk rings and spring-loaded fingers, as well as the gear pinions and synchro-hubs. The synchromesh cones are formed on the mating faces of the baulk rings and gear pinions.

5 Two different manual transmissions are used on the models covered in this manual; 1.4 and 1.6 litre petrol engine models have the MA5 transmission, whereas 2.0 litre petrol and all diesel engine models are fitted with the BE4/5 unit.



H44701

## 1.4 Gearchange lever and cables

- |                                |                    |                   |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1 Gearchange lever and housing | 3 Bracket          | 6 Nuts            |
| 2 Gearchange lever knob        | 4 Cables           | 7 Horseshoe clips |
|                                | 5 Gearchange links |                   |

## 2 Manual transmission – draining and refilling



**Note:** A suitable square section wrench may be required to undo the transmission filler/level and drain plugs on some models. These wrenches can be obtained from most motor factors or your Peugeot dealer.

**1** This operation is much quicker and more efficient if the car is first taken on a journey of sufficient length to warm the engine/transmission up to normal operating temperature.

**2** Park the car on level ground, switch off the ignition and apply the handbrake firmly. For improved access, jack up the front of the car and support it securely on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Note that the car must be level to ensure accuracy when refilling and checking the oil level. Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield (where fitted).

**3** To improve access to the filler/level plug, remove the plastic rivets (push in the centre pin a little then remove the complete plastic rivet) and remove the left-hand wheel arch liner.

**4** Wipe clean the area around the filler/level plug, which is situated on the left-hand end of the transmission, next to the end cover. Unscrew the filler/level plug from the transmission and recover the sealing washer (see illustrations).

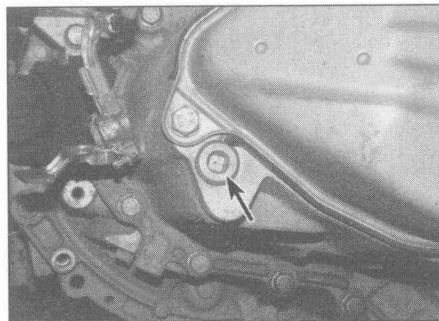
**5** Position a suitable container under the drain plug (situated at the rear of the transmission) and unscrew the plug. On MA5 gearboxes, the plug is on the left-hand side of the differential housing; on BE4/5 gearboxes, it is on the base of the differential housing (see illustrations).

**6** Allow the oil to drain completely into the container. If the oil is hot, take precautions against scalding. Clean both the filler/level and the drain plugs, being especially careful to wipe any metallic particles off the magnetic inserts. Discard the original sealing washers; they should be renewed whenever they are disturbed.

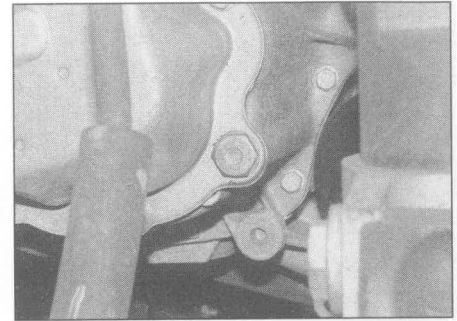
**7** When the oil has finished draining, clean the drain plug threads and those of the transmission casing, fit a new sealing washer and refit the drain plug, tightening it to the specified torque wrench setting. Refit the undercover (where fitted) then lower the vehicle to the ground.

**8** Refilling the transmission is an extremely awkward operation. Above all, allow plenty of time for the oil level to settle properly before checking it. Note that the car must be parked on flat level ground when checking the oil level.

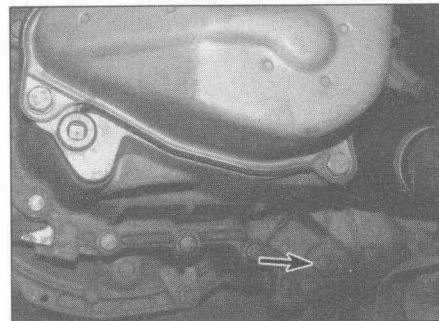
**9** Refill the transmission with the exact amount of the specified type of oil then check the oil level as described in the relevant part of Chapter 1; if the correct amount was poured into the transmission and a large amount flows out on checking the level, refit the



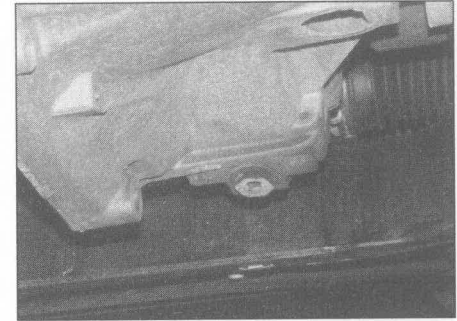
2.4a Oil filler/level plug (arrowed)  
(MA5 transmission)



2.4b Oil filler/level plug  
(BE4/5 transmission)



2.5a Oil drain plug (arrowed)  
(MA5 transmission)



2.5b Oil drain plug  
(BE4/5 transmission)

filler/level plug and take the car on a short journey so that the new oil is distributed fully around the transmission components, then check the level again on your return. Once the oil level is correct, securely refit the inner cover/wheel arch liner (as applicable).

## 3 Gearchange lever and cables – removal and refitting



### Removal

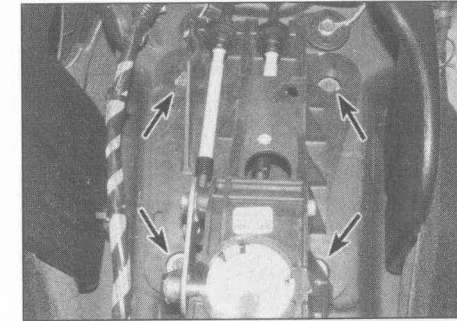
**1** Firmly apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*).

**2** Unclip the gearchange lever gaiter from the centre console.

**3** Pull the gearchange lever knob sharply upwards, and remove it with the gaiter.



3.5 Remove the air ducts from above the gear lever housing



3.6 Undo the four nuts (arrowed) securing the gear lever housing to the floor

**4** Remove the centre console as described in Chapter 11.

**5** Carefully pull the rear passenger compartment air ducts from above the gear lever housing (see illustration).

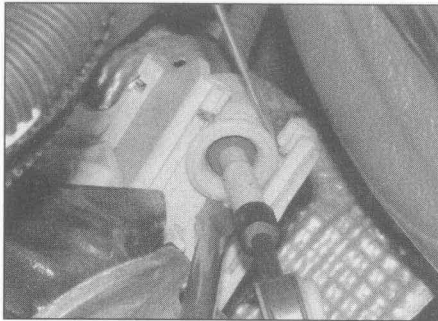
**6** Undo the four nuts securing the gear-change lever housing to the floor (see illustration).

**7** On all models except the 1.4 litre diesel, remove the air cleaner housing as described in Chapter 4A or 4B. On 1.4 litre models, remove the air cleaner intake ducting.

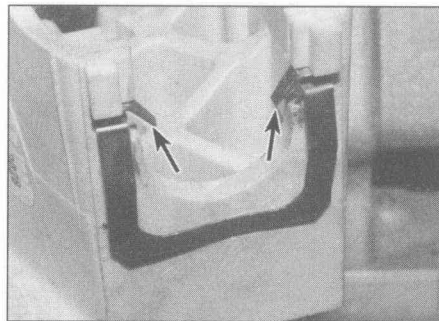
**8** Remove the battery and battery box, as described in Chapter 5A.

**9** Working in the engine compartment, note their fitted locations, then carefully prise the two gearchange cable balljoints from the selector levers on the transmission.

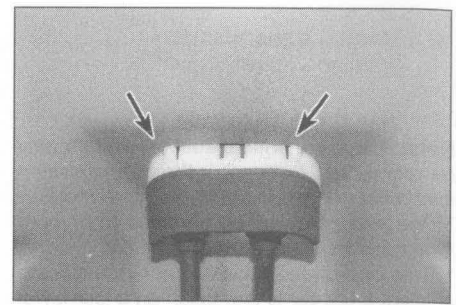
**10** Working underneath the vehicle, remove the front exhaust pipe heat shield fasteners, and allow the heat shield to rest on the exhaust pipe.



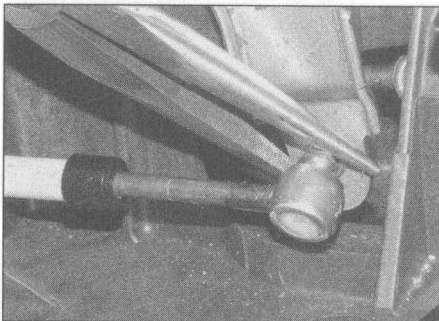
**3.11a** Depress the clip tabs and lever the cable outer upwards



**3.11b** The cable retaining clip tabs (arrowed) – shown with the cable removed

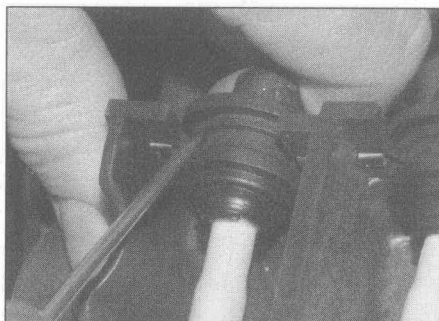


**3.12** Depress the clips (arrowed) and release the cable sealing grommet from the floor



**3.13a** Lever the cable balljoint from the lever . . .

**11** Using a small screwdriver, press down the two horseshoe-shaped retaining clips upper tangs, then lever or pull the cables upwards and release them from the support bracket (see illustrations).



**3.13b** . . . then depress the clips and pull the cable up from the housing

**12** Release the cable sealing grommet from the floor, and manoeuvre the lever, housing and cables assembly from the vehicle (see illustration).

**13** To release the cables from the lever

housing, lever the cable balljoint from the lever, then depress the clips and pull the cable up from the housing (see illustrations)

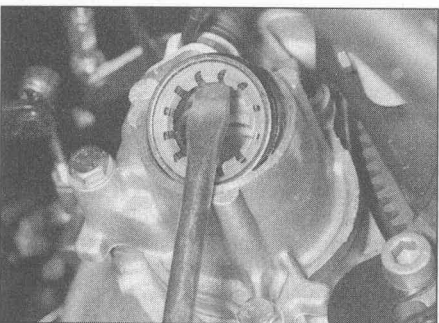
**14** The gearchange lever is integral with the housing, and is not available separately.

### Refitting

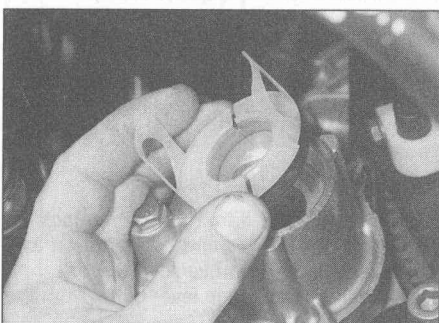
**15** Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure, noting the following points:

- a) Tie the two cables together to make it easier to pass them through the floor to their correct locations..
- b) Apply grease to the balljoints before refitting.
- c) No adjustment of the gearchange cables is possible.

### 4 Oil seals – renewal



**4.2** Use a large flat-bladed screwdriver to prise out the driveshaft oil seals



**4.3a** Fit the new seal to the transmission, noting the plastic seal protector . . .

### Driveshaft oil seals

**1** Remove the appropriate driveshaft as described in Chapter 8.

**2** Carefully prise the oil seal out of the transmission, using a large flat-bladed screwdriver (see illustration).

**3** Remove all traces of dirt from the area around the oil seal aperture, then apply a smear of grease to the outer lip of the new oil seal. Fit the new seal into its aperture, and drive it squarely into position using a suitable tubular drift (such as a socket) which bears only on the hard outer edge of the seal, until it abuts its locating shoulder. If the seal was supplied with a plastic protector sleeve, leave this in position until the driveshaft has been refitted (see illustrations).

**4** Apply a thin film of grease to the oil seal lip.  
**5** Refit the driveshaft as described in Chapter 8.

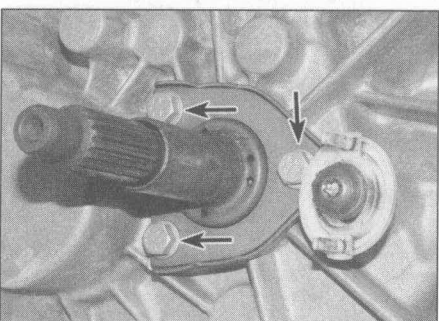
### Input shaft oil seal

**6** Remove the transmission as described in Section 7, and the clutch release mechanism as described in Chapter 6.

**7** Undo the three bolts securing the clutch release bearing guide sleeve in position, and slide the guide off the input shaft, along with its sealing ring or gasket (as applicable) (see illustration). Recover any shims or thrust-



**4.3b** . . . and tap it into position using a tubular drift



**4.7** Undo the three bolts (arrowed) securing the guide sleeve

washers which have stuck to the rear of the guide sleeve, and refit them to the input shaft.

**8** Carefully lever the oil seal out of the guide using a suitable flat-bladed screwdriver (see illustration).

**9** Before fitting a new seal, check the input shaft's seal rubbing surface for signs of burrs, scratches or other damage, which may have caused the seal to fail in the first place. It may be possible to polish away minor faults of this sort using fine abrasive paper; however, more serious defects will require the renewal of the input shaft. Ensure that the input shaft is clean and greased, to protect the seal lips on refitting.

**10** Dip the new seal in clean oil, and fit it to the guide sleeve.

**11** Fit a new sealing ring or gasket (as applicable) to the rear of the guide sleeve, then carefully slide the sleeve into position over the input shaft. Refit the retaining bolts and tighten them to the specified torque setting (see illustration).

**12** Take the opportunity to inspect the clutch components if not already done (Chapter 6). Finally, refit the transmission as described in Section 7.

### Selector shaft oil seal

#### MA5 transmissions

**13** On these models, to renew the selector shaft seal, the transmission must be dismantled. This task should therefore be entrusted to a Peugeot dealer or transmission specialist.

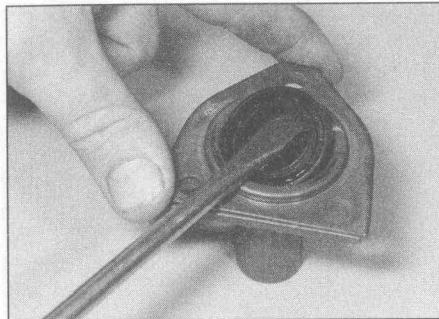
#### BE4/5 transmissions

**14** Park the car on level ground, apply the handbrake, slacken the left-hand front roadwheel bolts, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the left-hand front roadwheel.

**15** Using a large flat-bladed screwdriver, lever the link rod balljoint off the transmission selector shaft, and disconnect the link rod.

**16** Using a large flat-bladed screwdriver, carefully prise the selector shaft seal out of the housing, and slide it off the end of the shaft.

**17** Before fitting a new seal, check the selector shaft's seal rubbing surface for signs



**4.8** Remove the input shaft seal from the guide sleeve

of burrs, scratches or other damage, which may have caused the seal to fail in the first place. It may be possible to polish away minor faults of this sort using fine abrasive paper; however, more serious defects will require the renewal of the selector shaft.

**18** Apply a smear of grease to the new seal's outer edge and sealing lip, then carefully slide the seal along the selector rod. Press the seal fully into position in the transmission housing.

**19** Refit the link rod to the selector shaft, ensuring that its balljoint is pressed firmly onto the shaft. Lower the car to the ground.

### 5 Reversing light switch – testing, removal and refitting

#### Testing

**1** The reversing light circuit is controlled by a plunger-type switch screwed into the top of the transmission casing. If a fault develops, first ensure that the circuit fuse has not blown.

**2** To test the switch, disconnect the wiring connector, and use a multimeter (set to the resistance function) or a battery-and-bulb test circuit to check that there is continuity between the switch terminals only when reverse gear is selected. If this is not the case, and there are no obvious breaks or other damage to the wires, the switch is faulty, and must be renewed.

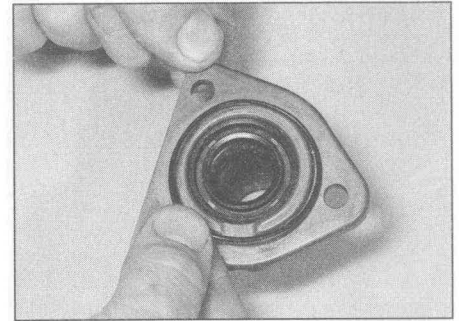
#### Removal

**3** Where necessary, to improve access to the switch, remove the air cleaner housing intake duct assembly/battery and battery box (as applicable – see the relevant part of Chapters 4 and 5A).

**4** Disconnect the wiring connector, then unscrew the switch from the transmission casing along with its sealing washer (see illustration).

#### Refitting

**5** Fit a new sealing washer to the switch, then screw it back into position in the top of the transmission housing and tighten it to the specified torque setting. Refit the wiring plug, and test the operation of the circuit. Refit any components removed for access.



**4.11** Fit a new O-ring/gasket (as applicable) to the guide sleeve

### 6 Speedometer drive – removal and refitting

**Note:** According to Peugeot, only the transmission fitted to the 1.4 petrol model is equipped with a speedometer drive pinion. On other models, the speedometer receives vehicle speed data from the engine management ECU, supplied by the wheel speed sensors and the ABS ECU.

#### Removal

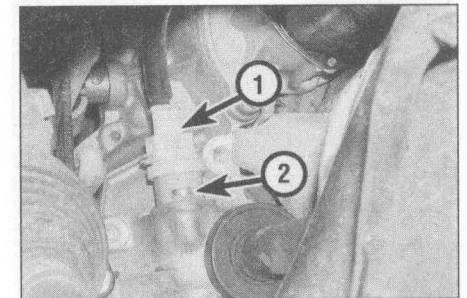
**1** Chock the rear wheels, firmly apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the car and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). The speedometer drive is on the rear of the transmission housing, next to the inner end of the right-hand driveshaft. Undo the screws and remove the engine/transmission undershield (where fitted).

**2** Disconnect the wiring connector from the speedometer drive (see illustration).

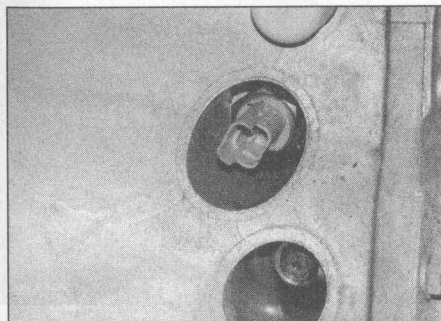
**3** Slacken and remove the retaining bolt and remove the heat shield (where fitted). Withdraw the speedometer drive and driven pinion assembly from the transmission housing, along with its sealing ring.

**4** If necessary, the pinion can be slid out of the housing, and the oil seal removed from the top of the housing. Examine the pinion for signs of damage, and renew if necessary. Renew the housing sealing ring as a matter of course.

**5** If the driven pinion is worn or damaged, also examine the drive pinion in the transmission housing for similar signs.

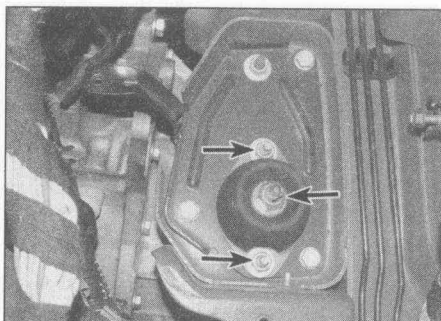


**6.2** Disconnect the wiring plug (1) then undo the retaining bolt (2) and withdraw the speedometer drive assembly



**5.4** Unscrew the reversing light switch from the transmission casing





**7.15a** Undo the centre nut (arrowed), followed by the mounting retaining nuts (arrowed) . . .

6 To renew the drive pinion, the transmission must be dismantled and the differential gear removed. This task should therefore be entrusted to a Peugeot dealer or a transmission specialist.

### Refitting

7 Apply a smear of grease to the lips of the seal and to the driven pinion shaft, and slide the pinion into position in the speedometer drive.

8 Fit a new sealing ring to the speedometer drive and refit it to the transmission, ensuring that the drive and driven pinions are correctly engaged. Refit the drive retaining bolt, complete with heat shield (where fitted), and tighten securely.

9 Reconnect the wiring connector to the speedometer drive then lower the vehicle to the ground.

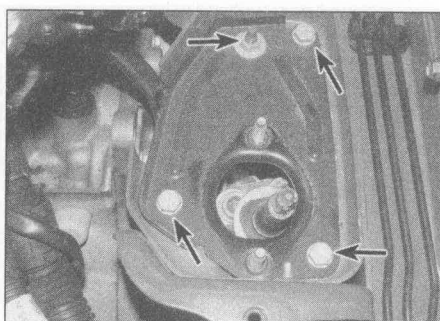
## 7 Manual transmission - removal and refitting



### Removal

1 Chock the rear wheels, then firmly apply the handbrake. Slacken both front roadwheel bolts. Jack up the front of the vehicle, and securely support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove both front roadwheels.

2 Drain the transmission oil as described in



**7.15b** . . . then undo the nut/bolts (arrowed) securing the bracket to the body

Section 2, then refit the drain and filler plugs, and tighten to their specified torque settings.

3 Remove both driveshafts as described in Chapter 8.

4 In order to prevent any damage, remove the exhaust system as described in Chapter 4A or 4B.

5 Remove the battery and battery box (see Chapter 5A).

6 On all models except the 1.4 litre diesel, remove the air cleaner housing and intake duct as described in the relevant part of Chapter 4. On 1.4 litre diesel models, remove the air intake ducting above the transmission.

7 Remove the starter motor (Chapter 5A).

8 Detach the clutch slave cylinder from the transmission as described in Chapter 6. Note there is no need to disconnect the fluid pipe from the cylinder.

9 Disconnect the gearchange cables from the transmission and support bracket as described in Section 3.

10 Note their fitted positions, then disconnect all wiring plugs from the transmission. Note the harness routing and move the harness to one side.

11 Undo the retaining bolt(s), and remove the flywheel lower cover plate (where fitted) from the transmission.

12 On 2.0 litre diesel engines, remove the engine/transmission support bracket from under the vehicle.

13 Place a jack with a block of wood beneath the engine, to take the weight of the engine. Alternatively, attach a couple of lifting eyes to

the engine, and fit a hoist or support bar to take the engine weight. If using a support bar, it may be necessary to remove the wiper arms, and remove the scuttle plastic trim panel.

14 Place a jack and block of wood beneath the transmission, and raise the jack to take the weight of the transmission.

15 Slacken and remove the centre nut and washer from the left-hand engine/transmission mounting then undo the mounting nuts and remove the mounting. Unscrew the nut/bolts securing the mounting bracket to the body and remove the bracket (see illustrations).

16 On MA5 transmissions, undo the three retaining nuts and remove the mounting plate from the top of the transmission.

17 On BE4/5 transmissions, slide the spacer off the mounting stud (where fitted), then unscrew the stud from the top of the transmission housing and remove it, along with its washer (see illustration).

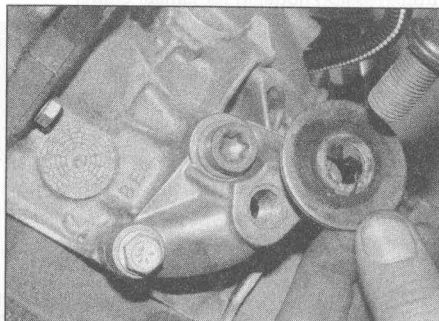
18 On all models, unscrew the nuts and bolts and remove the mounting link securing the rear engine/transmission mounting to the subframe (see illustration).

19 With the jack positioned beneath the transmission taking the weight, slacken and remove the remaining bolts securing the transmission housing to the engine. Note the correct fitted positions of each bolt and the necessary brackets, as they are removed, to use as a reference on refitting. On 1.4 litre diesel engines, unscrew the left-hand catalytic converter mounting stud to allow access to the front transmission-to-engine bolt (see illustration).

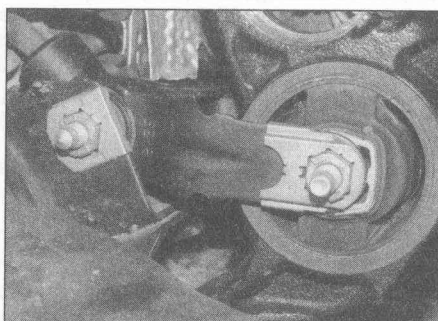
20 Make a final check that all components have been disconnected, and are positioned clear of the transmission so that they will not hinder the removal procedure.

21 With the bolts removed, move the trolley jack and transmission to the left, to free it from its locating dowels. Lower the engine slightly to enable the transmission to be freed.

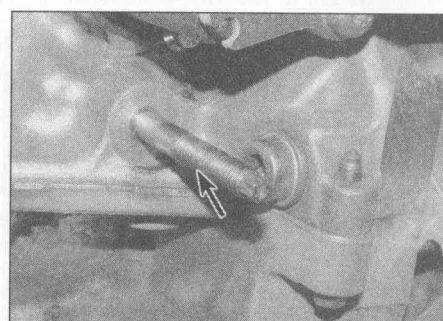
**Caution:** Take great care not to damage the radiator if the engine is moved - place a sheet of thick cardboard over the rear face of the radiator. On models equipped with air conditioning, care must also be



**7.17** Remove the mounting stud and washer from the transmission casing



**7.18** Undo the nuts and bolts securing the rear engine mounting link



**7.19** On 1.4 litre diesel engines, remove the mounting stud (arrowed) which obscures the transmission-to-engine bolt

**taken to ensure the auxiliary drivebelt pulleys do not damage the air conditioning pipes on the right-hand side of the engine compartment.**

**22** Once the transmission is free, lower the jack and manoeuvre the unit out from under the car. Remove the locating dowels from the transmission or engine if they are loose, and keep them in a safe place.

### Refitting

**23** The transmission is refitted by a reversal of the removal procedure, bearing in mind the following points:

- a) Prior to refitting, check the clutch assembly and release mechanism components (see Chapter 6). Lubricate the release bearing guide with a little high melting-point grease (Peugeot recommend the use of Molykote BR2 Plus). Do not apply too much grease, otherwise there is a possibility of the grease contaminating the clutch friction disc, and ensure no grease is applied to the input shaft/friction disc splines.
- b) Ensure that the locating dowels are correctly positioned prior to installation.
- c) On BE4/5 transmissions, apply thread-

locking fluid to the left-hand engine/transmission mounting stud threads, prior to refitting it to the transmission. Tighten the stud to the specified torque.

- d) Tighten all nuts and bolts to the specified torque (where given).
- e) Renew the driveshaft oil seals, then refit the driveshafts (see Chapter 8).
- f) Refit the slave cylinder (see Chapter 6).
- g) On completion, refill the transmission with the specified type and quantity of lubricant, as described in Section 2.

## 8 Manual transmission overhaul – general information

**1** Overhauling a manual transmission is a difficult and involved job for the DIY home mechanic. In addition to dismantling and reassembling many small parts, clearances must be precisely measured and, if necessary, changed by selecting shims and spacers. Internal transmission components are also often difficult to obtain, and in many instances, extremely expensive. Because of

this, if the transmission develops a fault or becomes noisy, the best course of action is to have the unit overhauled by a specialist repairer, or to obtain an exchange/reconditioned unit.

**2** Nevertheless, it is not impossible for the more experienced mechanic to overhaul the transmission, provided the special tools are available, and the job is done in a deliberate step-by-step manner, so that nothing is overlooked.

**3** The tools necessary for an overhaul include internal and external circlip pliers, bearing pullers, a slide hammer, a set of pin punches, a dial test indicator, and possibly a hydraulic press. In addition, a large, sturdy workbench and a vice will be required.

**4** During dismantling of the transmission, make careful notes of how each component is fitted, to make reassembly easier and more accurate.

**5** Before dismantling the transmission, it will help if you have some idea what area is malfunctioning. Certain problems can be closely related to specific areas in the transmission, which can make component examination and replacement easier. Refer to the *Fault finding* Section for more information.

[Faint, illegible text in the top left column]

[Faint, illegible text in the middle left column]

[Faint, illegible text in the bottom left column]

[Faint, illegible text in the bottom left column]

[Faint, illegible text in the top middle column]

[Faint, illegible text in the middle middle column]

[Faint, illegible text in the bottom middle column]

[Faint, illegible text in the bottom middle column]

[Faint, illegible text in the top right column]

[Faint, illegible text in the middle right column]

[Faint, illegible text in the bottom right column]

[Faint, illegible text in the bottom right column]

# Chapter 7 Part B:

## Automatic transmission

### Contents

Automatic transmission – removal and refitting	9	Oil seals – renewal	6
Automatic transmission fluid – draining and refilling	2	Selector cable – adjustment	3
Automatic transmission fluid level check	See Chapter 1A or 1B	Selector lever and cable – removal and refitting	4
Automatic transmission overhaul – general information	10	Speedometer drive – removal and refitting	5
Fluid cooler – removal and refitting	7	Transmission control system components – removal and refitting	8
General information	1		

### Degrees of difficulty

**Easy**, suitable for novice with little experience



**Fairly easy**, suitable for beginner with some experience



**Fairly difficult**, suitable for competent DIY mechanic



**Difficult**, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic



**Very difficult**, suitable for expert DIY or professional



### Specifications

#### General

Type	Auto-adaptive four-speed electronically-controlled automatic with three (normal, sport and snow) driving modes
Designation	AL4

#### Lubrication

Capacity:	
Refilling after draining	3.0 litres*
From dry	6.0 litres
Recommended fluid	See <i>Lubricants and fluids</i> on page 0•18

\* If the torque converter is also removed and drained, add a further 2 litres

#### Torque wrench settings

	Nm	lbf ft
Engine-to-transmission fixing bolts	35	26
Fluid cooler centre bolt	50	37
Fluid drain plug	33	24
Fluid filler plug	24	18
Fluid level plug	24	18
Fluid pressure sensor bolts	9	7
Input shaft speed sensor bolt	10	7
Left-hand engine/transmission mounting	Refer to Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C	
Multi-function switch retaining bolts	10	7
Output shaft speed sensor bolt	10	7
Rear mounting link	Refer to Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C	
Roadwheel bolts	90	66
Torque converter-to-driveplate nuts:		
Stage 1	10	7
Stage 2	30	22

#### 1 General information

**1** Certain models were offered with the option of a four-speed electronically-controlled automatic transmission, consisting of a torque converter, an epicyclic geartrain, and hydraulically-operated clutches and brakes. The unit is controlled by the electronic control unit (ECU) via the electrically-operated solenoid valves in the hydraulic block within

the transmission unit. The transmission has three driving modes: normal, sport and snow; the mode buttons are situated on the right-hand side of the selector lever and the mode indicator lights are incorporated in the instrument panel.

**2** The normal mode is the standard mode for driving in which the transmission shifts up at relatively low engine speeds to combine reasonable performance with economy. If the transmission unit is switched into sport mode, the transmission will shift up only at high engine speeds, giving improved acceleration

and overtaking performance. In snow mode, the transmission will select 2nd gear when the vehicle pulls away from a standing start; this helps maintain traction on slippery surfaces.

**3** The torque converter provides a fluid coupling between the engine and transmission, which acts as an automatic clutch, and also provides a degree of torque multiplication when accelerating.

**4** The epicyclic geartrain provides either of the four forward or one reverse gear ratios, according to which of its component parts are held stationary or allowed to turn. The

components of the geartrain are held or released by brakes and clutches which are controlled by the ECU via the electrically-operated solenoid valves in the hydraulic unit. A fluid pump within the transmission provides the necessary hydraulic pressure to operate the brakes and clutches.

**5** Driver control of the transmission is by a six-position selector lever. The transmission has a 'drive' position, and a 'hold' facility on the first three gear ratios. The 'drive' position D provides automatic changing throughout the range of all four gear ratios, and is the one to select for normal driving. An automatic kickdown facility shifts the transmission down a gear if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed. The 'hold' facility is very similar, but limits the number of gear ratios available – ie, when the selector lever is in the 3 position, only the first three ratios can be selected; in the 2 position, only the first two can be selected. When the lever is in the 2 position, the transmission can be locked in first gear using the button on the right-hand side of the selector lever. These lower ratio 'hold' settings are useful for providing engine braking when travelling down steep gradients, or for preventing unwanted selection of top gear on twisty roads. Note, however, that the transmission should never be shifted down at high engine speeds.

**6** On some models, the selector lever is equipped with a shift-lock function. This prevents the selector lever being moved from the P position unless the brake pedal is depressed.

**7** Due to the complexity of the automatic transmission, any repair or overhaul work must be left to a Peugeot dealer with the necessary special equipment for fault diagnosis and repair. The contents of the

following Sections are therefore confined to supplying general information, and any service information and instructions that can be used by the owner.

**Note:** *The automatic transmission unit is of the 'auto-adaptive' type. This means that it takes into account your driving style and modifies the transmission shift points to provide optimum performance and economy to suit. When the battery is disconnected, the transmission will lose its memory and will resort to one of its many base shift programs. The transmission will then relearn the optimum shift points when the vehicle is driven a few miles. During these first few miles of driving, there may be a noticeable difference in performance whilst the transmission adapts to your individual style.*

## 2 Automatic transmission fluid – draining and refilling

**Note:** *A suitable square section wrench may be required to undo the transmission filler plug. These wrenches can be obtained from most motor factors or your Peugeot dealer.*

**Note:** *The transmission unit is equipped with a fluid wear sensor to inform the driver when the fluid needs renewing (the ECU flashes the Sport and Snow mode indicator lights when fluid renewal is necessary). If the transmission unit is drained and refilled with new fluid, this sensor should be reset. This can only be done using the Peugeot diagnostic test box.*

### Draining

**1** This operation is much quicker and more efficient if the car is first taken on a journey of sufficient length to warm the engine/transmission up to normal operating temperature.

**2** Park the car on level ground, switch off the ignition and apply the handbrake firmly. For improved access, jack up the front of the car and support it securely on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Undo the screws and remove the engine/transmission undershield (where fitted).

**3** Position a suitable container under the drain plug, situated on the base of the transmission. Unscrew the drain plug (the smaller plug in the centre of the drain plug is the level plug – see Chapter 1A or 1B) and recover the sealing washer (**see illustration**). Allow the fluid to drain completely into the container.



**Warning:** *If the fluid is hot, take precautions against scalding.*

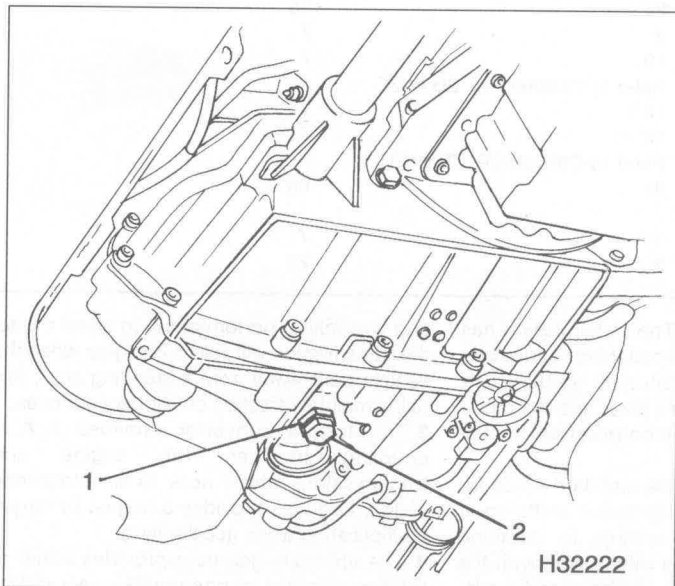
**4** Clean the drain plug, being especially careful to wipe off any metallic particles. Discard the sealing washer; it should be renewed whenever it is disturbed.

**5** When the fluid has finished draining, clean the drain plug threads and those of the transmission casing, fit a new sealing washer and refit the drain plug, tightening it to the specified torque wrench setting. If the car was raised for the draining operation, now lower it to the ground.

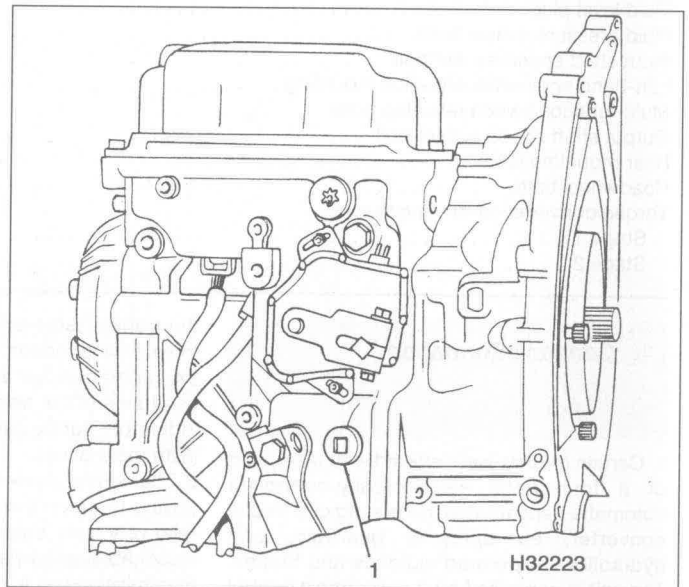
### Refilling

**6** To improve access to the filler plug, remove air cleaner housing (Chapter 4A or 4B), and the battery and battery box as described in Chapter 5A. If necessary, also unclip the selector cable end fitting from its balljoint on the transmission lever.

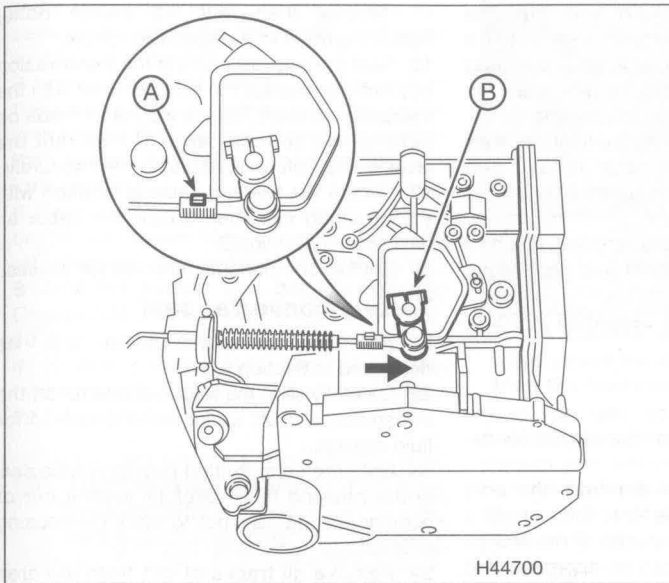
**7** Wipe clean the area around the filler plug which is situated directly behind the transmission selector lever (**see illustration**). Unscrew the filler plug from the transmission and recover the sealing washer.



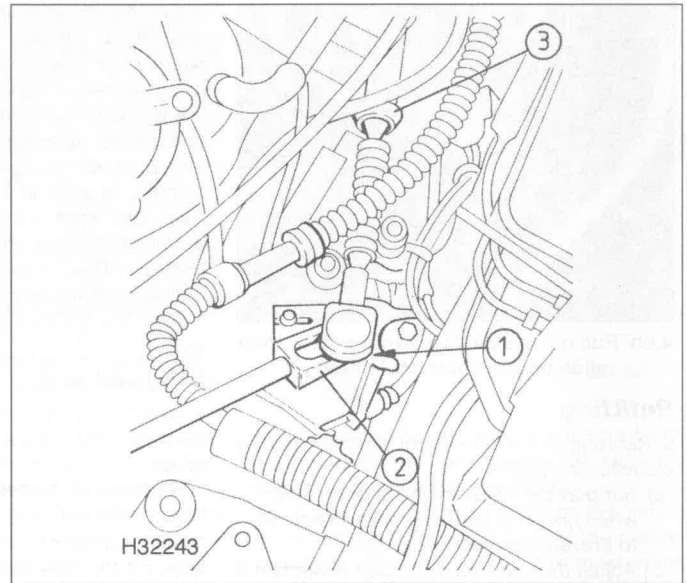
**2.3** Transmission fluid drain plug (1) and oil level plug (2), inside the drain plug



**2.7** Transmission fluid filler plug (1) as viewed from above



3.3 Press the yellow plastic part (A) to unlock the adjuster, then push the selector lever (B) fully to the front



4.3 Prise off the selector cable balljoint (1) using a forked tool (2), then remove the cable from the bracket (3)

**Caution: Do not unscrew the selector shaft bolt (located in front of the selector lever).**

8 Carefully refill the transmission with the correct amount of the specified type of fluid. Fit the new sealing washer to the filler plug then refit the plug, tightening it to the specified torque. Reconnect the selector cable to the lever (where disconnected – support the lever when pressing the cable onto its balljoint to prevent the lever being bent) then refit the battery (see Chapter 5A) and air cleaner housing (Chapter 4A or 4B).

9 Take the vehicle on a short journey to warm the transmission up to normal operating temperature.

10 On your return, check the transmission fluid level as described in Chapter 1A or 1B.

### 3 Selector cable – adjustment



1 To gain access to the transmission end of the selector cable, remove the battery and battery box as described in Chapter 5A.

2 Position the selector lever firmly against its detent in the P (park) position.

3 Press the yellow plastic part on the cable end fitting to unlock the adjustment system (see illustration).

4 Ensure that the selector lever on top of the transmission is fully forward, then press the yellow part on the selector cable again, to lock it in position.

5 Check the operation of the selector lever before refitting the battery box and battery (see Chapter 5A) and air cleaner housing (Chapter 4A or 4B).

### 4 Selector lever and cable – removal and refitting



#### Removal

1 Firmly apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Position the selector lever in the P position.

2 To gain access to the transmission end of

the selector cable, remove the battery and battery box/tray as described in Chapter 5A.

3 Unclip the selector cable end fitting from the balljoint on the transmission lever. Remove the retaining clip and free the cable from the transmission bracket (see illustration).

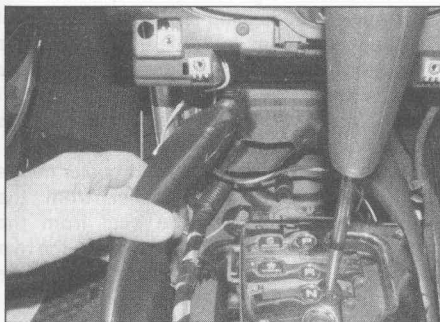
4 Remove the centre console as described in Chapter 11.

5 Carefully pull the plastic rear air vents from place (see illustration).

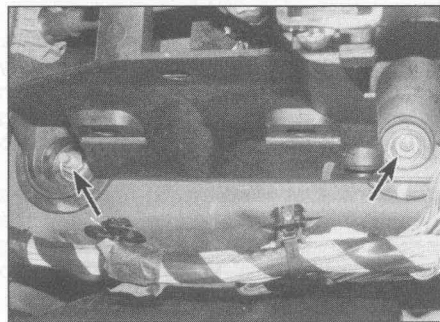
6 Note their fitted positions and disconnect all wiring plugs from the lever housing.

7 Undo the four nuts and manoeuvre the lever housing and cables from the vehicle (see illustration). Prise the cable sealing grommet from the floor as the assembly is withdrawn.

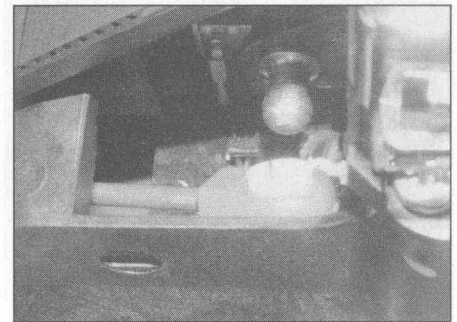
8 Lever the selector cable off the selector lever balljoint then pull out the spring-loaded black pin and pull the outer cable from the front of the housing (see illustrations). Note that at the time of writing, the lever and housing was only available as a complete assembly – check with your Peugeot dealer for parts availability.



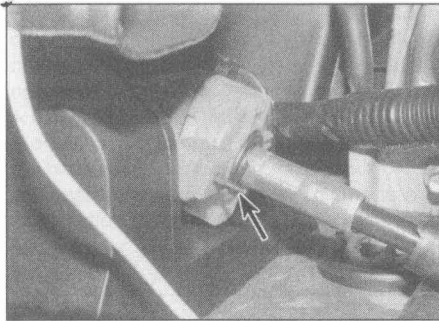
4.5 Move the plastic air vents to one side



4.7 Undo the four nuts (arrowed – two each side) and remove the housing



4.8a Lever the selector cable end fitting from the balljoint



4.8b Pull out the pin (arrowed) a little, then slide up the outer cable fitting

### Refitting

9 Refitting is the reverse of removal, noting the following points.

- a) Support the transmission selector lever when pressing the cable onto its balljoint to prevent the lever being bent.
- b) Adjust the cable as described in Section 3 before refitting all components removed for access.

### 5 Speedometer drive – removal and refitting

Refer to Chapter 7A, Section 6.

### 6 Oil seals – renewal

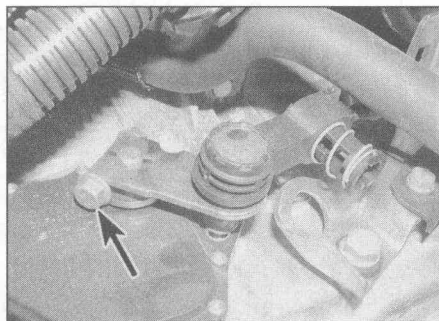


### Driveshaft oil seals

1 Remove the appropriate driveshaft as described in Chapter 8.

#### Right-hand seal

2 Remove the O-ring from the differential sun gear shaft then carefully remove the oil seal from of the transmission, taking care not to damage the shaft or housing. To remove the seal, carefully punch or drill two small holes opposite each other into the seal. Screw a self-tapping screw into each hole and pull on the screws to extract the seal.



6.12 Unscrew the nut and clamp bolt (arrowed) and free the selector lever from the transmission shaft

3 Remove all traces of dirt from the area around the oil seal aperture, then apply a smear of grease to the outer edge and sealing lip of the new oil seal. Ease the new seal onto the shaft, taking care not to damage its lip, and into its aperture. Drive the seal squarely into position using a suitable tubular drift (such as a socket) which bears only on the hard outer edge of the seal.

4 Once the seal is correctly installed, fit a new O-ring to the sun gear shaft and slide along until it abuts the seal.

5 Refit the driveshaft as described in Chapter 8.

#### Left-hand seal

6 Carefully prise the oil seal out of the transmission, using a large flat-bladed screwdriver.

7 Remove all traces of dirt from the area around the oil seal aperture, then apply a smear of grease to the outer lip of the new oil seal. Fit the new seal into its aperture, and drive it squarely into position using a suitable tubular drift (such as a socket) which bears only on the hard outer edge of the seal, until it abuts its locating shoulder. If the seal was supplied with a plastic protector sleeve, leave this in position until the driveshaft has been refitted.

8 Apply a thin film of grease to the oil seal lip.

9 Refit the driveshaft as described in Chapter 8.

### Selector shaft oil seal

10 To gain access to the transmission selector shaft, remove the battery and battery tray as described in Chapter 5A.

11 Position the selector lever firmly against its detent mechanism in the P position.

12 Slacken and remove the nut and clamp bolt securing the selector lever to the transmission shaft (**see illustration**). Make alignment marks between the shaft and lever then free the lever from the shaft.

13 Remove the retaining clip and free the selector cable from transmission bracket (**see illustration 4.3**). Position the cable clear of the selector shaft.

14 Make alignment marks between the multi-function switch and transmission unit then unscrew the retaining bolts and remove the switch.

15 Carefully remove the oil seal from of the transmission, taking care not to damage the shaft or housing. To remove the seal, carefully punch or drill two small holes opposite each other into the seal. Screw a self-tapping screw into each hole and pull on the screws to extract the seal.

16 Remove all traces of dirt from the area around the oil seal aperture, then apply a smear of grease to the outer edge and sealing lip of the new oil seal. Ease the new seal onto the shaft, taking care not to damage its lip, and press it squarely into its aperture.

17 Locate the multi-function switch back on the selector shaft. Align the marks prior

to removal then refit the switch bolts, tightening them to the specified torque.

18 Seat the selector cable in the transmission bracket and engage the selector lever with the transmission shaft. Ensure the marks made on removal are correctly aligned then refit the lever clamp bolt and nut and tighten securely.

19 Secure the selector cable in position with the retaining clip then adjust the cable as described in Section 3.

20 Refit all components removed for access.

### Torque converter seal

21 Remove the transmission unit as described in Section 9.

22 Carefully slide the torque converter off the transmission shaft whilst being prepared for fluid spillage.

23 Note the correct fitted position of the seal in the housing then carefully lever it out of position, taking care not to mark the housing or shaft.

24 Remove all traces of dirt from the area around the oil seal aperture. Ease the new seal into its aperture, ensuring its sealing lip is facing inwards, then press it squarely into position.

25 Engage the torque converter with the transmission shaft splines and slide it into position, taking care not to damage the oil seal.

26 Refit the transmission unit as described in Section 9.

### 7 Fluid cooler – removal and refitting



**Caution:** Be careful not to allow dirt into the transmission unit during this procedure.

#### Removal

1 The fluid cooler is mounted on the rear of the transmission housing. To gain access to the cooler, remove the battery and battery box as described in Chapter 5A.

2 Remove all traces of dirt from around the fluid cooler before proceeding.

3 Using a hose clamp or similar, clamp both the fluid cooler coolant hoses to minimise coolant loss during subsequent operations.

4 Release the retaining clips, and disconnect both coolant hoses from the fluid cooler – be prepared for some coolant spillage (**see illustration**). Wash off any spilt coolant immediately with cold water, and dry the surrounding area before proceeding further.

5 Slacken and remove the fluid cooler centre bolt, and remove the cooler from the transmission. Remove the seal from the centre bolt, and the two seals fitted to the rear of the cooler, and discard them; new ones must be used on refitting (**see illustration**).

#### Refitting

6 Lubricate the new seals with clean auto-

matic transmission fluid, then fit the two new seals to the rear of the fluid cooler, and a new seal to the centre bolt.

7 Locate the fluid cooler on the rear of transmission housing then refit the centre bolt. Ensure the cooler is correctly positioned then tighten the centre bolt to the specified torque setting.

8 Reconnect the coolant hoses to the fluid cooler, and secure them in position with their retaining clips. Remove the hose clamps.

9 Refit the battery and battery box (see Chapter 5A).

10 Top-up the cooling system as described in *Weekly checks* and check the transmission unit fluid level as described in Chapter 1A or 1B.

## 8 Transmission control system components – removal and refitting



### Electronic control unit (ECU)

**Note:** The automatic transmission electronic control system relies on accurate communication between the engine management ECU and the automatic transmission ECU. If the accelerator cable (where fitted) is removed and/or adjusted, or if either ECU is renewed, then both ECUs must be 'initialised'. The initialisation procedure requires access to specialised electronic test equipment and so it is recommended that this operation is entrusted to a suitably-equipped Peugeot dealer or specialist.

#### Removal

1 Remove the battery and battery box (see Chapter 5A).

2 Slide out the locking catch and disconnect the wiring connector from the ECU (see illustration).

3 Undo the two mounting nuts and remove the ECU from the mounting plate (see illustration).

#### Refitting

4 Refitting is the reverse of removal, ensuring the wiring connector is securely reconnected.

### Output shaft speed sensor

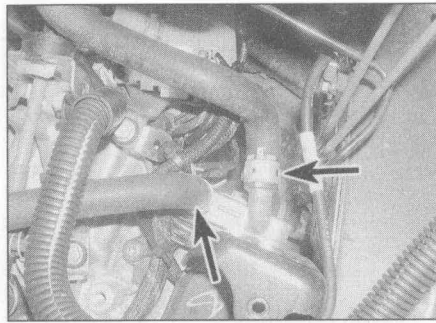
**Caution:** Be careful not to allow dirt into the transmission unit during this procedure.

#### Removal

5 The output shaft sensor is fitted to the rear of the transmission unit.

6 To gain access to the sensor, jack up the front of the vehicle and support it securely on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Undo the screws and remove the engine/transmission undershield (where fitted).

7 Trace the sensor wiring back to its connector, located next to the transmission main wiring harness connector. Unclip the connector from its bracket then disconnect it.



7.4 Release the retaining clips and disconnect the coolant hoses (arrowed) from the fluid cooler (viewed from above)

8 Wipe clean the area around the sensor then slacken and remove the sensor retaining bolt. Remove the sensor along with its sealing ring; discard the sealing ring, a new one must be used on refitting.

#### Refitting

9 Refitting is the reverse of removal, noting the following points.

- Fit a new sealing ring to the sensor and tighten the sensor bolt to the specified torque.
- On completion, check the transmission fluid level as described in Chapter 1A or 1B.

### Input shaft speed sensor

**Caution:** Be careful not to allow dirt into the transmission unit during this procedure.

#### Removal

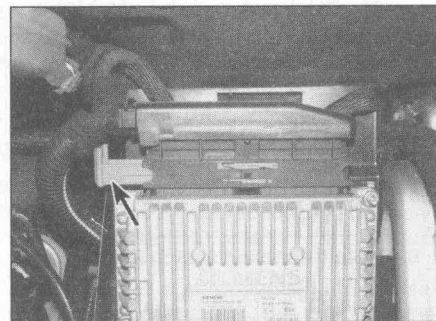
10 The input shaft speed sensor is located on the left-hand end of the transmission unit.

11 To gain access to the sensor, chock the rear wheels, firmly apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and securely support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*).

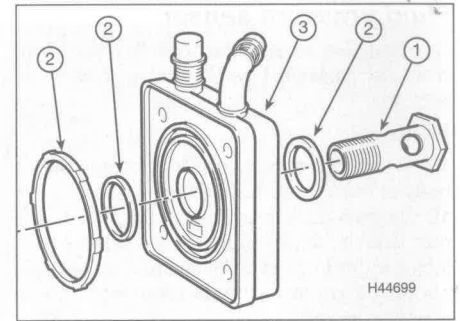
12 To gain access to the main wiring connector, remove the battery and battery box (see Chapter 5A).

13 Lift the retaining clip and disconnect the main wiring connector from the top of the transmission unit.

14 Unscrew the two bolts and free the main wiring connector from the transmission unit.



8.2 Slide out the locking catch (arrowed) and disconnect the ECU wiring plug



7.5 Fluid cooler

- |         |                |
|---------|----------------|
| 1 Bolt  | 3 Fluid cooler |
| 2 Seals |                |

Cut the cable tie securing the wiring to the connector cover then release the clips and slide the cover off the connector.

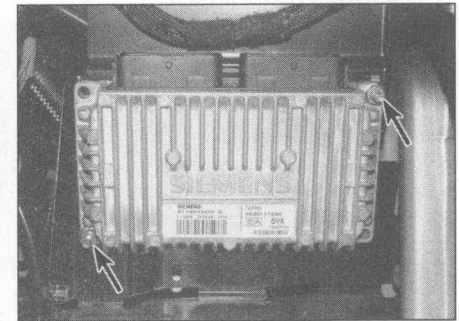
15 Trace the wiring back from the sensor being removed, freeing it from all the relevant retaining clips and ties, to the main wiring connector. Carefully release the retaining clips then slide the sensor connector out from the rear of the main connector, noting which way around it is fitted.

16 Wipe clean the area around the sensor. Slacken and remove the retaining bolt then remove the sensor, along with its sealing ring. Discard the sealing ring, a new one must be used on refitting.

#### Refitting

17 Refitting is the reverse of removal, noting the following points.

- Fit a new sealing ring to the sensor and tighten the sensor bolt to the specified torque.
- Ensure the sensor wiring is correctly routed and retained by all the necessary clips and ties.
- Clip the sensor wiring back into the main wiring connector, ensuring it is fitted the right way around. Slide the cover back onto the main connector, ensuring it is clipped securely in position, and secure the wiring to the cover with a new cable tie. Secure the connector to the transmission unit with the retaining bolts.
- On completion, check the transmission fluid level as described in Chapter 1A or 1B.



8.3 Undo the ECU mounting nuts (arrowed)



### Fluid pressure sensor

**Caution:** Be careful not to allow dirt into the transmission unit during this procedure.

#### Removal

**18** The fluid pressure sensor is located on the base of the transmission unit.

**19** To gain access to the sensor, chock the rear wheels, firmly apply the handbrake then jack up the front of the vehicle and securely support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*).

**20** Remove the battery and battery box as described in Chapter 5A.

**21** Unscrew the two bolts and free the main wiring connector from the transmission unit. Cut the cable tie securing the wiring to the connector cover then release the clips and slide the cover off the connector.

**22** Trace the wiring back from the sensor being removed, freeing it from all the relevant retaining clips and ties, to the main wiring connector. Carefully release the retaining clips then slide the green 3-way sensor connector out from the rear of the main connector, noting which way around it is fitted.

**23** Wipe clean the area around the sensor. Slacken and remove the retaining bolts then remove the sensor, along with its sealing ring (see illustration). Discard the sealing ring, a new one must be used on refitting. Be prepared for fluid spillage, and plug the opening to minimise fluid loss.

#### Refitting

**24** Refitting is the reverse of removal, noting the following points.

- Fit a new sealing ring to the sensor and tighten the sensor bolts to the specified torque.
- Ensure the sensor wiring is correctly routed and retained by all the necessary clips and ties.
- Clip the sensor wiring back into the main wiring connector, ensuring it is fitted the right way around. Slide the cover back onto the main connector, ensuring it is clipped securely in position, and secure the wiring to the cover with a new cable tie.
- On completion, check the transmission fluid level as described in Chapter 1A or 1B.

### Multi-function switch

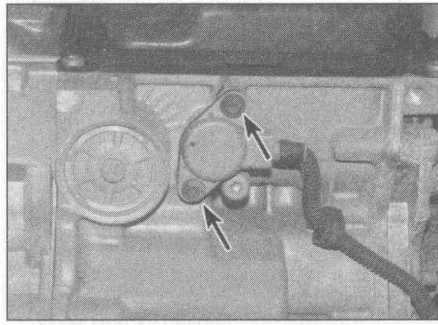
**Note:** The multi-function switch is slotted to allow for adjustment. Accurate adjustment requires the use an accurate multi-meter – see the text later in this Section.

#### Removal

**25** Remove the battery and battery box/tray (see Chapter 5A).

**26** Position the selector lever firmly against its detent mechanism in the P position.

**27** Slacken and remove the nut and clamp bolt securing the selector lever to the transmission shaft (see illustration 6.12). Make alignment marks between the shaft and lever then free the lever from the shaft.



**8.23** The fluid pressure sensor is secured to the base of the transmission by two bolts (arrowed)

**28** Remove the retaining clip and free the selector cable from transmission bracket. Position the cable clear of the selector shaft.

**29** Unscrew the two bolts and free the main wiring connector from the transmission unit. Cut the cable tie securing the wiring to the connector cover then release the clips and slide the cover off the connector.

**30** Trace the wiring back from the switch to the main wiring connector, freeing it from all the relevant retaining clips and ties. Carefully release the retaining clips then slide the green 12-way connector out from the rear of the main connector, noting which way around it is fitted.

**31** Make accurate alignment marks between the multi-function switch and transmission unit then unscrew the retaining bolts and remove the switch.

#### Refitting

**32** Locate the multi-function switch back on the selector shaft. Align the marks made prior to removal then refit the switch bolts, tightening them to the specified torque.

**33** Clip the wiring back into the main wiring connector, ensuring it is fitted the right way around. Slide the cover back onto the main connector, ensuring it is clipped securely in

position, and secure the wiring to the cover with a new cable tie. Locate the connector on the transmission unit and securely tighten its retaining bolts.

**34** Reconnect the main wiring connector to the transmission unit.

**35** Seat the selector cable in the transmission bracket and engage the selector lever with the transmission shaft. Ensure the marks made on removal are correctly aligned then refit the lever clamp bolt and nut, and tighten securely.

**36** Secure the selector cable in position with the retaining clip then adjust the cable as described in Section 3, and the multi-function switch as described next.

#### Adjustment

**37** Slacken the switch mounting bolts and rotate the switch fully anti-clockwise as far as it will go.

**38** Set the multi-meter to measure ohms, and connect meter terminals to the external switch contacts.

**39** Slowly rotate the switch clockwise until the switch contacts close (the meter should register zero ohms – no resistance).

**40** In this position, make an alignment mark between the switch and the transmission casing.

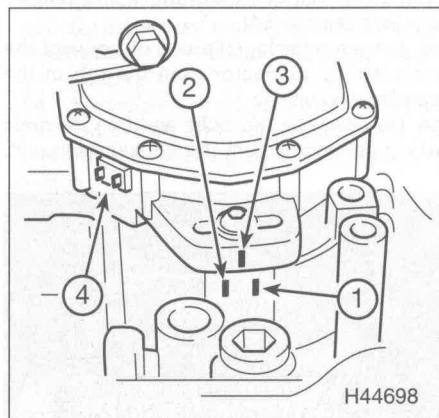
**41** Continue to rotate the switch clockwise until the contacts open (the meter should register infinite ohms or similar)

**42** Make another alignment mark between the transmission casing and the mark made previously on the switch (see illustration).

**43** Rotate the switch until the alignment mark on the switch body is exactly half-way between the two marks made on the transmission casing. Tighten the switch mounting bolts to the specified torque.

**44** Refit the battery and battery box/tray as described in Chapter 5A.

**45** Check that the selector lever position corresponds to the display on the instrument panel.



**8.42** Multi-function switch adjustment

- 1st alignment mark
- 2nd alignment mark
- Switch body alignment mark
- Switch external contacts

## 9 Automatic transmission – removal and refitting

### Removal

**1** Chock the rear wheels, then firmly apply the handbrake. Slacken both front roadwheel bolts. Jack up the front of the vehicle, and securely support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove both front roadwheels.

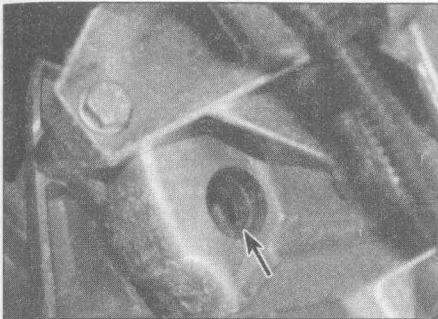
**2** Remove both driveshafts as described in Chapter 8.

**3** Remove the air cleaner housing and intake duct as described in Chapter 4A or 4B.

**4** Remove the automatic transmission ECU as described in Section 8.

**5** Remove the starter motor (Chapter 5A).

**6** Remove the exhaust system as described in Chapter 4A or 4B.



**9.12** Access to the torque converter nuts is gained via the access hole (arrowed) above the driveshaft

**7** Unclip the selector cable end fitting off the balljoint on the transmission lever. Remove the retaining clip then free the outer cable from its bracket and position it clear of the transmission unit (see illustration 4.3).

**8** Using a hose clamp or similar, clamp both the fluid cooler coolant hoses to minimise coolant loss. Release the retaining clips and disconnect both coolant hoses from the fluid cooler – be prepared for some coolant spillage. Wash off any spilt coolant immediately with cold water, and dry the surrounding area before proceeding further.

**9** Lift the retaining clip and disconnect the main wiring connector from the transmission wiring block, located at the rear of the unit. Also disconnect the output shaft speed sensor wiring connector (located next to the main connector) then position the wiring harness clear of the transmission unit.

**10** Undo the retaining nut/bolt(s), and disconnect the earth straps from the top of the transmission housing. Free the wiring from any relevant retaining clips, and position it clear of the transmission.

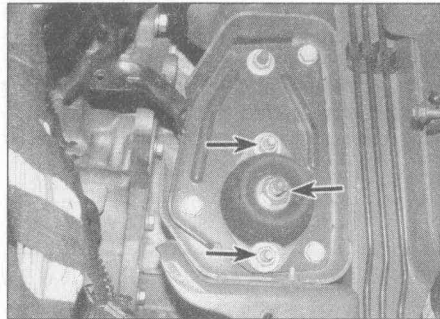
**11** Undo the retaining bolts and remove the lower driveplate cover plate (where fitted) from the transmission.

**12** Access to the torque converter retaining nuts is gained via an access hole above the right-hand driveshaft on the back of the cylinder block. Use a socket and extension bar to rotate the crankshaft pulley to align the first nut with the aperture (see illustration). Unscrew the nut then rotate the crankshaft 120°. Remove the second nut then rotate the crankshaft another 120°. Unscrew the third and final nut and discard all three nuts; new ones must be used on refitting.

**13** To ensure that the torque converter does not fall out as the transmission is removed, secure it in position using a length of metal strip bolted to one of the starter motor bolt holes.

**14** Place a jack with a block of wood beneath the engine, to take the weight of the engine. Alternatively, attach a couple of lifting eyes to the engine, and fit a hoist or support bar to take the engine weight.

**15** Place a jack and block of wood beneath



**9.16a** Undo the centre nut (arrowed), followed by the mounting retaining nuts (arrowed) . . .

the transmission, and raise the jack to take the weight of the transmission.

**16** Slacken and remove the centre nut and washer from the left-hand engine/transmission mounting then undo the mounting bolts and remove the mounting. Unscrew the bolts securing the mounting bracket to the body and remove the bracket (see illustrations).

**17** Slide the spacer off the mounting stud, then unscrew the stud from the top of the transmission housing and remove it along with its washer. If the mounting stud is tight, a universal stud extractor can be used to unscrew it.

**18** Unscrew the nuts and bolts and remove the mounting link securing the rear engine/transmission mounting to the subframe (see illustration).

**19** With the jack positioned beneath the transmission taking the weight, slacken and remove the remaining bolts securing the transmission housing to the engine. Note the correct fitted positions of each bolt and the necessary brackets as they are removed, to use as a reference on refitting. Make a final check that all components have been disconnected, and are positioned clear of the transmission so that they will not hinder the removal procedure.

**20** With the bolts removed, move the trolley jack and transmission to the left, to free it from its locating dowels. If necessary, lower the engine slightly to enable the transmission to be freed.

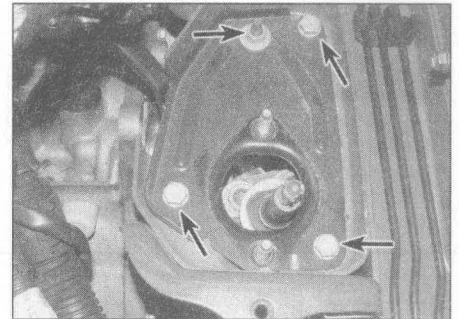
**21** Once the transmission is free, lower the jack and manoeuvre the unit out from under the car. Remove the locating dowels from the transmission or engine if they are loose, and keep them in a safe place.

### Refitting

**22** Ensure that the bush fitted to the centre of the crankshaft is in good condition, and apply a little Molykote BR2 grease to the torque converter centring pin.

**Caution: Do not apply too much, otherwise there is a possibility of the grease contaminating the torque converter.**

**23** Ensure that the engine/transmission locating dowels are correctly positioned then



**9.16b** . . . then undo the nut/bolts (arrowed) securing the bracket to the body

raise the transmission unit into position. Align the torque converter studs with the driveplate holes then engage the transmission unit with the engine.

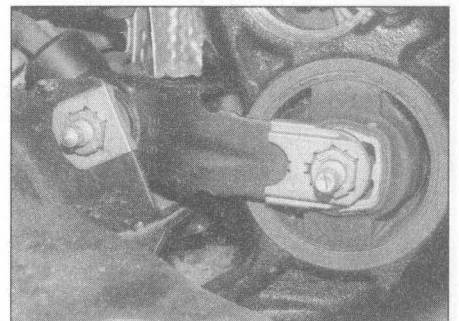
**Caution: Do not allow the weight of the transmission unit to hang on the torque converter as the unit is installed.**

**24** With the transmission and engine correctly joined, refit the transmission-to-engine unit bolts and tighten them to the specified torque.

**25** Screw the new nuts onto the torque converter studs, tightening them lightly only, rotating the crankshaft as necessary. Tighten all three nuts to the specified Stage 1 torque setting. Once all have been tightened to the Stage 1 torque, go around and tighten them to the specified Stage 2 torque setting.

**26** The remainder of refitting is the reverse of removal, noting the following.

- Apply thread-locking fluid to the left-hand engine/transmission mounting stud threads, prior to refitting it to the transmission. Tighten the stud to the specified torque.
- Tighten all nuts and bolts to the specified torque (where given).
- Renew the driveshaft oil seals, then refit the driveshafts (see Chapter 8).
- Reconnect the selector cable and adjust as described in Section 3.
- On completion, check the transmission fluid level as described in Chapter 1A or 1B.



**9.18** Undo the nuts and bolts securing the engine rear mounting link

**10 Automatic transmission  
overhaul –  
general information**

1 In the event of a fault occurring with the transmission, it is first necessary to determine whether it is of an electrical, mechanical or hydraulic nature and, to do this, special test equipment is required. It is therefore essential to have the work carried out by a Peugeot dealer

or specialist if a transmission fault is suspected. 2 Do not remove the transmission from the car for possible repair before professional fault diagnosis has been carried out, since most tests require the transmission to be in the vehicle.

# Chapter 8

## Driveshafts

### Contents

Driveshaft overhaul – general information . . . . .	4	Driveshafts – removal and refitting . . . . .	2
Driveshaft rubber gaiter and constant velocity (CV) joint check . . . . .	.See Chapter 1A or 1B	General information . . . . .	1
Driveshaft rubber gaiters – renewal . . . . .	3	Right-hand driveshaft intermediate bearing – renewal . . . . .	5

### Degrees of difficulty

**Easy**, suitable for novice with little experience



**Fairly easy**, suitable for beginner with some experience



**Fairly difficult**, suitable for competent DIY mechanic



**Difficult**, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic



**Very difficult**, suitable for expert DIY or professional



### Specifications

#### Lubrication (overhaul only – see text)

Lubricant type/specification . . . . .	Use only special grease supplied in sachets with gaiter kits – joints are otherwise pre-packed with grease and sealed
--	---

#### Torque wrench settings

	Nm	lbf ft
Driveshaft retaining nut . . . . .	325	240
Right-hand driveshaft intermediate bearing retaining bolt nuts . . . . .	10	7
Roadwheel bolts . . . . .	90	66
Suspension strut-to-hub carrier bolts . . . . .	90	66

#### 1 General information

Drive is transmitted from the differential to the front wheels by means of two solid-steel driveshafts of unequal length.

Both driveshafts are splined at their outer ends, to accept the wheel hubs, and are threaded so that each hub can be fastened by a large nut. The inner end of each driveshaft is splined, to accept the differential sun gear.

Constant velocity (CV) joints are fitted to each end of the driveshafts, to ensure that the smooth and efficient transmission of power at all suspension and steering angles. The outer constant velocity joints are of the ball-and-cage type, and the inner constant velocity joints are of the tripod type.

On the right-hand side, due to the length of the driveshaft, the inner constant velocity joint is situated approximately halfway along the shaft's length, and an intermediate support bearing is mounted in the engine/transmission rear mounting bracket. The inner end of the driveshaft passes through the bearing (which prevents any lateral movement of the driveshaft inner end) and the inner constant

velocity joint outer member. On automatic transmission models, the inboard end of the right-hand driveshaft fits over a splined shaft from the transmission differential.

#### 2 Driveshafts – removal and refitting



**Note:** A new suspension lower balljoint nut will be required on refitting.

##### Removal

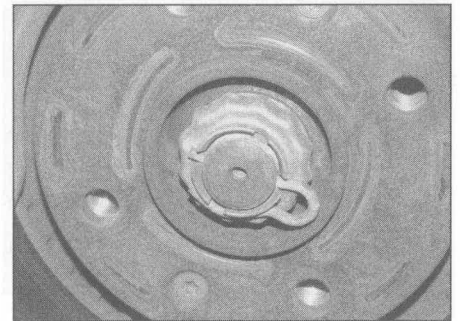
**1** Remove the wheel trim/hub cap (as applicable) then withdraw the R-clip and remove the locking cap from the driveshaft retaining nut. Slacken the driveshaft nut with the vehicle resting on its wheels. Also slacken the wheel bolts.

**2** Chock the rear wheels of the car, firmly apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the car and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the appropriate front roadwheel.

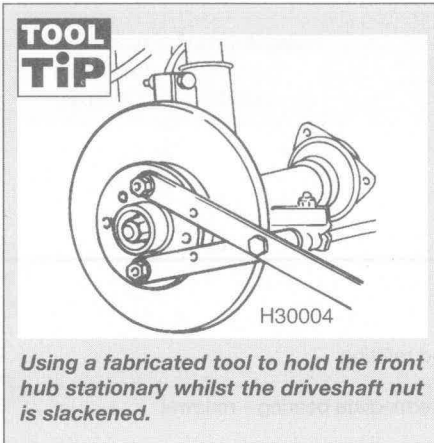
**3** On manual transmission models drain the transmission oil as described in Chapter 7A. On automatic transmission models there is no need to drain the fluid.

**4** Remove the wheel sensor as described in Chapter 9, Section 19.

**5** Slacken and remove the driveshaft retaining nut. If the nut was not slackened with the wheels on the ground (see paragraph 1), withdraw the R-clip and remove the locking cap (see illustration). Refit at least two roadwheel bolts to the front hub, tightening them securely, then have an assistant firmly depress the brake pedal to prevent the front hub from rotating, whilst you slacken and remove the driveshaft retaining nut. Alternatively, a tool can be fabricated from



**2.5** Use a screwdriver to prise out the R-clip



two lengths of steel strip (one long, one short) and a nut and bolt; the nut and bolt forming the pivot of a forked tool (see Tool tip).

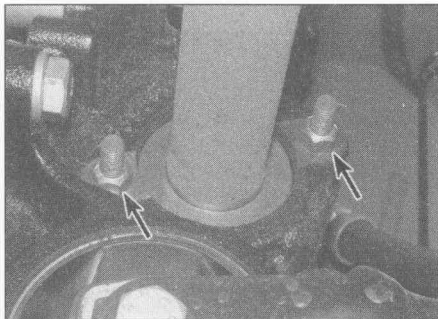
**6** Undo the brake caliper guide pin bolts and slide the caliper from the disc. Suspend the caliper from the suspension coil spring using a cable tie to prevent straining the brake hose. Discard the guide pin bolts, new ones must be fitted.

#### Left-hand driveshaft

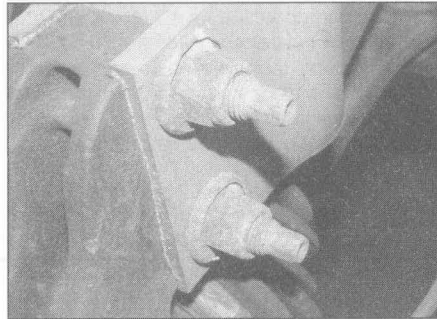
**7** Slacken and remove the two bolts securing the steering hub carrier to the base of the suspension strut. Pull the hub carrier outwards to free it from the strut. **Note:** After releasing the hub carrier, rotate the base of the strut 90° towards the rear of the vehicle to minimise the chances of damaging the rubber driveshaft gaiter (see illustrations).

**8** Turn the steering to full left-hand lock, and carefully pull the swivel hub assembly outwards, and withdraw the driveshaft outer constant velocity joint from the hub assembly. If necessary, the shaft can be tapped out of the hub using a soft-faced mallet.

**9** Support the driveshaft, then withdraw the inner constant velocity joint from the transmission, taking care not to damage the driveshaft oil seal. Remove the driveshaft from the vehicle. **Note:** Do not allow the vehicle to rest on its wheels with one or both driveshafts removed, as damage to the wheel bearing(s) may result. If moving the vehicle is unavoidable, temporarily insert the outer end



**2.10a** Slacken the two intermediate bearing retaining nuts (arrowed) . . .



**2.7a** Remove the two bolts securing the base of the suspension strut to the hub carrier

of the driveshaft(s) in the hub(s) and tighten the driveshaft nut(s). Support the inner end(s) of the driveshaft(s) to avoid damage.

#### Right-hand driveshaft

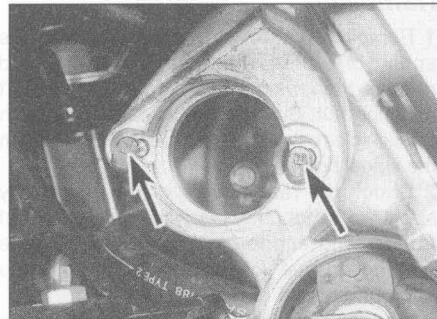
**10** Loosen the two intermediate bearing retaining bolt nuts, then rotate the bolts through 90°, so that their offset heads are clear of the bearing outer race (see illustrations).

**11** Slacken and remove the two bolts securing the steering hub carrier to the base of the suspension strut. Pull the hub carrier outwards to free it from the strut. **Note:** After releasing the hub carrier, rotate the base of the strut 90° towards the rear of the vehicle to minimise the chances of damaging the rubber driveshafts gaiter (see illustrations 2.7a and 2.7b).

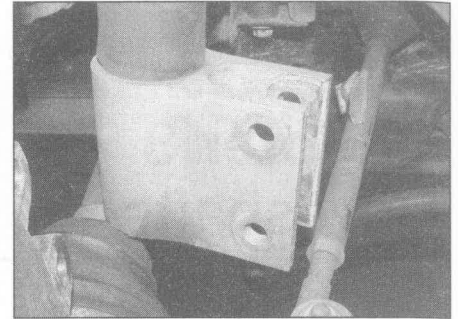
**12** Carefully pull the swivel hub assembly outwards, and withdraw the driveshaft outer constant velocity joint from the hub assembly. If necessary, the shaft can be tapped out of the hub using a soft-faced mallet.

**13** Support the outer end of the driveshaft, then pull on the inner end of the shaft to free the intermediate bearing from its mounting bracket.

**14** Once the driveshaft end is free from the transmission, slide the dust seal (where fitted) off the inner end of the shaft, noting which way around it is fitted, and remove the driveshaft from the vehicle. On automatic transmission models, the inboard end of the shaft fits over a splined shaft from the differential. Check the condition of the splined



**2.10b** . . . rotate the bolts through 90° so the offset heads (arrowed) are clear of the outer race (driveshaft removed for clarity)



**2.7b** Rotate the base of the strut 90° towards the rear to minimise any chance of damaging the driveshaft gaiter

shaft O-ring. **Note:** Do not allow the vehicle to rest on its wheels with one or both driveshafts removed, as damage to the wheel bearing(s) may result. If moving the vehicle is unavoidable, temporarily insert the outer end of the driveshaft(s) in the hub(s) and tighten the driveshaft nut(s). Support the inner end(s) of the driveshaft(s) to avoid damage.

#### Refitting

**15** Before installing the driveshaft, examine the driveshaft oil seal in the transmission for signs of damage or deterioration and, if necessary, renew it as described in Chapter 7A or 7B. It is highly recommended that the seal is renewed, regardless of its apparent condition.

**16** Thoroughly clean the driveshaft splines, and the apertures in the transmission and hub assembly. Apply a thin film of grease to the oil seal lips, and to the driveshaft splines and shoulders. Check that all gaiter clips are securely fastened.

#### Left-hand driveshaft

**17** Offer up the driveshaft, and locate the joint splines with those of the differential sun gear, taking great care not to damage the oil seal. Push the joint fully into position.

**18** Locate the outer constant velocity joint splines with those of the swivel hub, and slide the joint back into position in the hub.

**19** Rotate the base of the strut 90° and align the hub carrier with the brackets on the strut. Insert the bolts and tighten them to the specified torque.

**20** Lubricate the inner face and threads of the driveshaft nut with clean engine oil, and refit it to the end of the driveshaft. Use the method employed on removal to prevent the hub from rotating (see paragraph 5), and tighten the driveshaft retaining nut to the specified torque. Check that the hub rotates freely then engage the locking cap with the driveshaft nut, so that one of its cut-outs is aligned with the driveshaft hole, and secure the cap in position with the R-clip (see illustrations). Alternatively, lightly tighten the nut at this stage, and tighten it to the specified torque once the car is resting on its wheels again.

**21** Refit the ABS wheel sensor and brake caliper as described in Chapter 9.

**22** Refit the roadwheel, then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the roadwheel bolts to the specified torque. If not already done, tighten the driveshaft retaining nut to the specified torque then refit the locking cap, aligning its cut-outs with the driveshaft hole, and secure it in position with the R-clip.

**23** Refill the transmission with the specified type and amount of oil, and check the level using the information given in the relevant Part of Chapter 1.

### Right-hand driveshaft

**24** Check that the intermediate bearing rotates smoothly, without any sign of roughness or undue free play between its inner and outer races. If necessary, renew the bearing as described in Section 5. Examine the dust seal for signs of damage or deterioration, and renew if necessary. Check the condition of the differential splined shaft O-ring seal and renew if necessary.

**25** Apply a smear of grease to the outer race of the intermediate bearing, and to the inner lip of the dust seal (where fitted).

**26** Pass the inner end of the shaft through the bearing mounting bracket then, where necessary, carefully slide the dust seal into position on the driveshaft, ensuring that its flat surface is facing the transmission (see illustration).

**27** On manual transmission models, carefully locate the inner driveshaft splines with those of the differential sun gear, taking care not to damage the oil seal.

**28** On automatic transmission models, located the end of the driveshaft over the differential splined shaft.

**29** On all models, align the intermediate bearing with its mounting bracket, and push the driveshaft fully into position. If necessary, use a soft-faced mallet to tap the outer race of the bearing into position in the mounting bracket.

**30** Locate the outer constant velocity joint splines with those of the swivel hub, and slide the joint back into position in the hub.

**31** Ensure that the intermediate bearing is correctly seated, then rotate its retaining bolts back through 90°, so that their offset heads are resting against the bearing outer race. Tighten the retaining nuts to the specified torque. Where necessary, ensure that the dust seal is tight against the driveshaft oil seal (see illustration).

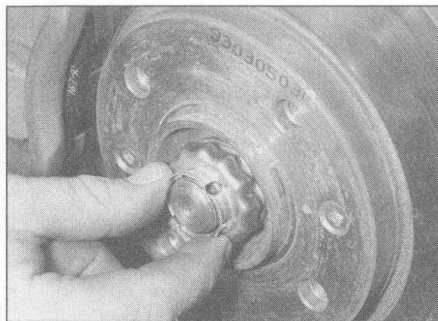
**32** Carry out the operations described above in paragraphs 18 to 23.

### 3 Driveshaft rubber gaiters – renewal



#### Outer joint

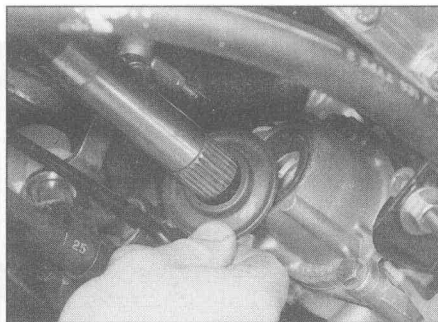
**1** Remove the driveshaft from the vehicle as described in Section 2.



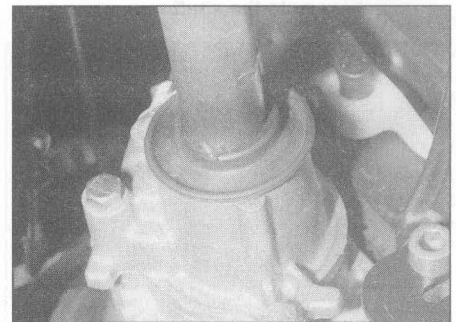
**2.20a** Tighten the driveshaft nut to the specified torque, then refit the locking cap . . .



**2.20b** . . . and secure it in position with the R-clip



**2.26** Locate the dust seal (where fitted) on the inner end of the right-hand driveshaft, ensuring it is fitted the right-way around



**2.31** Secure the intermediate bearing in position then (if necessary) slide the dust seal up tight against the driveshaft oil seal

**2** Secure the driveshaft in a vice equipped with soft jaws, and release the two outer gaiter retaining clips. If necessary, the gaiter retaining clips can be cut to release them.

**3** Slide the rubber gaiter down the shaft, to expose the outer constant velocity joint. Scoop out the excess grease.

**4** Using a hammer and suitable soft metal drift, sharply strike the inner member of the outer joint to drive it off the end of the shaft. The joint is retained on the driveshaft by a circlip, and striking the joint in this manner forces the circlip into its groove, so allowing the joint to slide off.

**5** Once the joint assembly has been removed, remove the circlip from the groove in the driveshaft splines, and discard it. A new circlip must be fitted on reassembly.

**6** Withdraw the rubber gaiter from the driveshaft. Where necessary, slide off the gaiter inner end plastic bush.

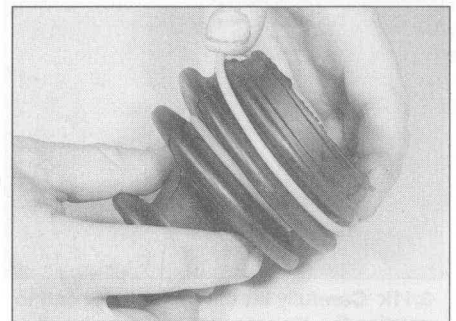
**7** With the constant velocity joint removed from the driveshaft, thoroughly clean the joint using paraffin, or a suitable solvent, and dry it thoroughly. Carry out a visual inspection of the joint.

**8** Move the inner splined driving member from side-to-side, to expose each ball in turn at the top of its track. Examine the balls for cracks, flat spots, or signs of surface pitting.

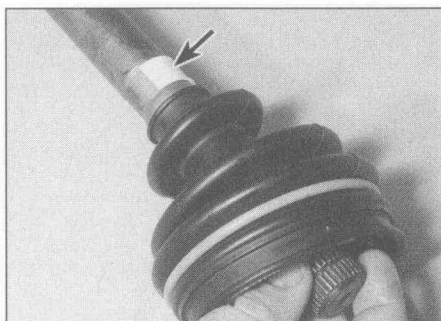
**9** Inspect the ball tracks on the inner and outer members. If the tracks have widened, the balls will no longer be a tight fit. At the same time, check the ball cage windows for wear or cracking between the windows.

**10** If, on inspection, any of the constant velocity joint components are found to be worn or damaged, it will be necessary to renew the complete joint assembly (where available), or even the complete driveshaft (where no joint components are available separately). Refer to your Peugeot dealer for further information on parts availability. If the joint is in satisfactory condition, obtain a repair kit consisting of a new gaiter, circlip, retaining clips, and the correct type and quantity of grease.

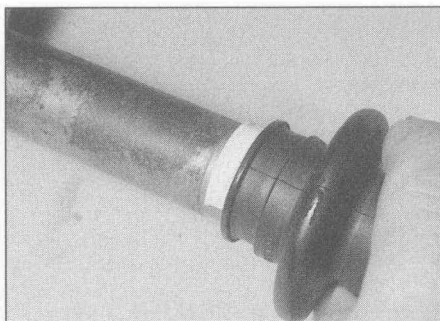
**11** To install the new gaiter, perform the operations shown (see illustrations). Be sure to stay in order, and follow the captions carefully. Note that the hard plastic rings and plastic bushes are not fitted to all gaiters, and the gaiter retaining clips supplied with the repair kit may be different to those shown in



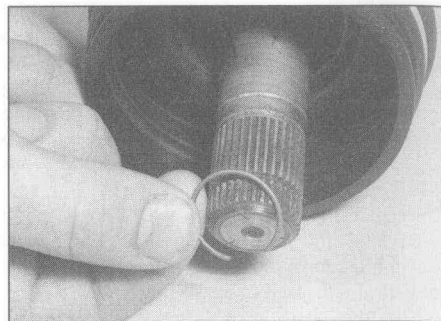
**3.11a** Fit the hard plastic rings to the outer CV joint gaiter . . .



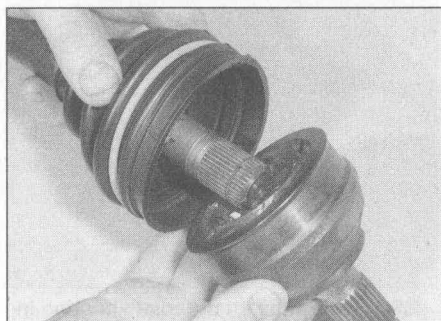
**3.11b** ... then slide on the new plastic bush (arrowed - where fitted), and seat it in its recess in the shaft. Slide the gaiter onto the shaft ...



**3.11c** ... and seat the gaiter inner end on top of the plastic bush (as applicable)



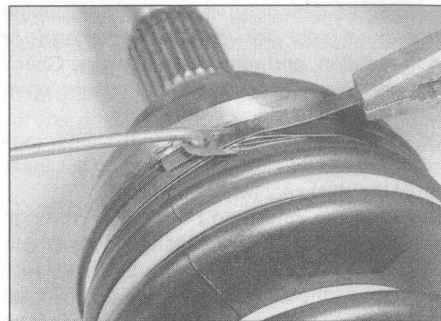
**3.11d** Fit the new circlip to its groove in the driveshaft splines ...



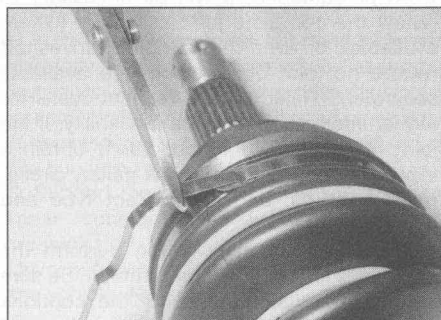
**3.11e** ... then locate the joint outer member on the splines, and slide it into position over the circlip. Ensure that the joint is securely retained by the circlip



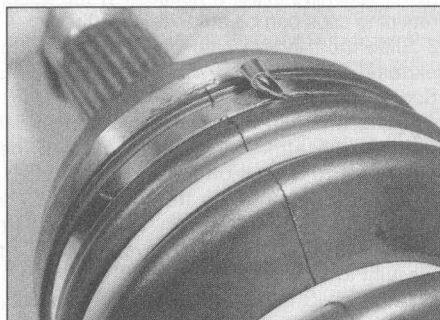
**3.11f** Pack the joint with grease, working it into the ball tracks while twisting the joint, then locate the gaiter outer lip in its groove on the outer member



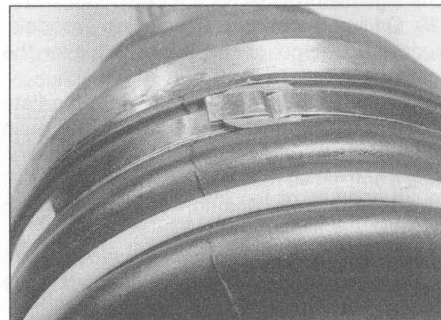
**3.11g** Fit the outer gaiter retaining clip and, using a hook fabricated out of welding rod and a pair of pliers, pull the clip tight to remove all the slack



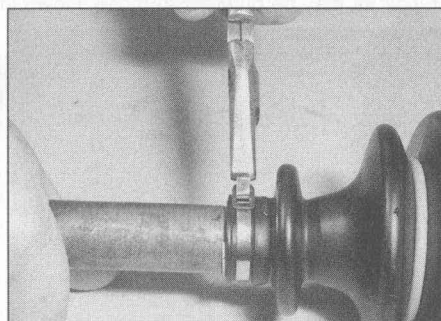
**3.11h** Bend the clip end back over the buckle, then cut off the excess



**3.11i** Fold the clip end underneath the buckle ...



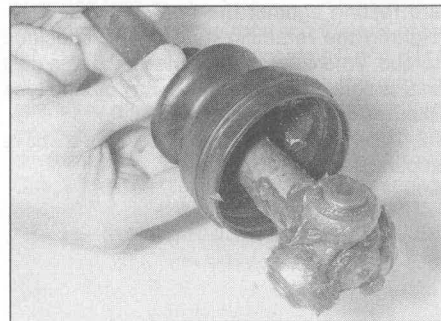
**3.11j** ... then fold the buckle firmly down onto the clip to secure the clip in position



**3.11k** Carefully lift the gaiter inner end to equalise the air pressure in the gaiter, then secure the inner gaiter retaining clip in position using the same method



**3.16a** Release the inner gaiter retaining clips, and remove the joint outer member



**3.16b** Slide the gaiter off the end of the driveshaft ...

the sequence. To secure this other type of clip in position, lock the ends of the clip together, then remove any slack in the clip by carefully compressing the raised section of the clip using a pair of side-cutters.

**12** Check that the constant velocity joint moves freely in all directions, then refit the driveshaft to the vehicle as described in Section 2.

### Inner joint

**13** Remove the driveshaft from the vehicle as described in Section 2.

**14** Remove the outer constant velocity joint as described above in paragraphs 1 to 5.

**15** Tape over the splines on the driveshaft, and carefully remove the outer constant velocity joint rubber gaiter, and (where fitted) the gaiter inner end plastic bush. It is recommended that the outer joint gaiter is also renewed, regardless of its apparent condition.

**16** Release the retaining clips, then slide the inner gaiter off the shaft and (where fitted) remove its plastic bush. As the gaiter is released, the joint outer member will also be freed from the end of the shaft (see illustrations).

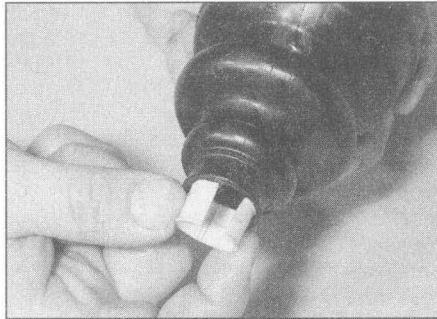
**17** Thoroughly clean the joint using paraffin, or a suitable solvent, and dry it thoroughly. Check the tripod joint bearings and joint outer member for signs of wear, pitting or scuffing on their bearing surfaces. Check that the bearing rollers rotate smoothly and easily around the tripod joint, with no traces of roughness.

**18** If, on inspection, the tripod joint or outer member reveal signs of wear or damage, it will be necessary to renew the complete driveshaft assembly, since the joint is not available separately. If the joint is in satisfactory condition, obtain a repair kit consisting of a new gaiter, retaining clips, and the correct type and quantity of grease.

**19** On reassembly, pack the inner joint with the grease supplied in the gaiter kit. Work the grease well into the bearing tracks and rollers, while twisting the joint.

**20** Clean the shaft, using emery cloth to remove any rust or sharp edges which may damage the gaiter, then slide the plastic bush (where fitted) and inner joint gaiter along the driveshaft. Locate the plastic bush in its recess on the shaft, and seat the inner end of the gaiter on top of the bush; where no bush is fitted, seat the inner end of the driveshaft in the recess on the shaft.

**21** Fit the outer member over the end of the



**3.16c** ... and remove the plastic bush

shaft, and locate the gaiter in the groove on the joint outer member. Push the outer member onto the joint, so that its spring-loaded plunger is compressed, then lift the outer edge of the gaiter to equalise air pressure in the gaiter. Fit both the inner and outer retaining clips, securing them in position using the information given in paragraph 11. Ensure that the gaiter retaining clips are securely tightened, then check that the joint moves freely in all directions.

**22** Refit the outer constant velocity joint components using the information given in paragraph 11.

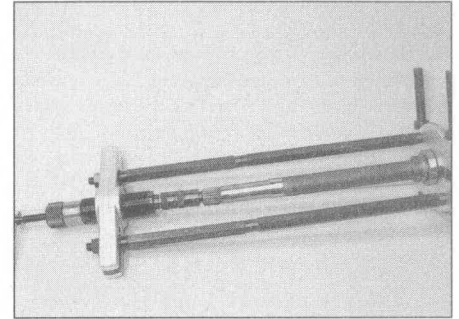
### 4 Driveshaft overhaul – general information

**1** If any of the checks described in Chapter 1A or 1B reveal wear in any driveshaft joint, first remove the roadwheel trim or centre cap (as appropriate).

**2** If the R-clip is still in position, the driveshaft nut should be correctly tightened; if in doubt, remove the R-clip and locking cap, and use a torque wrench to check that the nut is securely fastened. Once tightened, refit the locking cap and R-clip, then refit the centre cap or trim. Repeat this check on the remaining driveshaft nut.

**3** Road test the vehicle, and listen for a metallic clicking from the front as the vehicle is driven slowly in a circle on full-lock. If a clicking noise is heard, this indicates wear in the outer constant velocity joint. This means that the joint must be renewed; reconditioning is not possible.

**4** If vibration, consistent with road speed, is felt through the car when accelerating, there is a possibility of wear in the inner joints.



**5.3** Using a long-reach bearing puller to remove the intermediate bearing from the right-hand driveshaft

**5** To check the joints for wear, remove the driveshafts, then dismantle them as described in Section 3; if any wear or free play is found, the affected joint must be renewed. In the case of the inner joints (and on some models, the outer joints), this means that the complete driveshaft assembly must be renewed, as the joints are not available separately. Refer to your Peugeot dealer for latest information on the availability of driveshaft components.

### 5 Right-hand driveshaft intermediate bearing – renewal

**Note:** A suitable bearing puller will be required, to draw the bearing and collar off the driveshaft end.

**1** Remove the right-hand driveshaft as described in Section 2 of this Chapter.

**2** Check that the bearing outer race rotates smoothly and easily, without any signs of roughness or undue free play between the inner and outer races. If necessary, renew the bearing as follows.

**3** Using a long-reach universal bearing puller, carefully draw the collar and intermediate bearing off the driveshaft inner end (see illustration). Apply a smear of grease to the inner race of the new bearing, then fit the bearing over the end of the driveshaft. Using a hammer and suitable piece of tubing which bears only on the bearing inner race, tap the new bearing into position on the driveshaft, until it abuts the constant velocity joint outer member. Once the bearing is correctly positioned, tap the bearing collar onto the shaft until it contacts the bearing inner race.

**4** Check that the bearing rotates freely, then refit the driveshaft as described in Section 2.



Faint, illegible text in the top left column.

Faint, illegible text in the middle left column.

Faint, illegible text in the lower middle left column.

Faint, illegible text in the lower left column.

Faint, illegible text in the bottom left column.

Faint, illegible text in the top middle column.

Faint, illegible text in the middle middle column.

Faint, illegible text in the lower middle middle column.

Faint, illegible text in the lower middle right column.

Faint, illegible text in the bottom middle column.

Faint, illegible text in the top right column.

Faint, illegible text in the middle right column.

Faint, illegible text in the lower middle right column.

Faint, illegible text in the lower right column.

Faint, illegible text in the bottom right column.

# Chapter 9

## Braking system

### Contents

Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) – general information	18	Hydraulic fluid renewal	See Chapter 1A or 1B
Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) components – removal and refitting	19	Hydraulic pipes and hoses – renewal	3
Brake pedal – removal and refitting	11	Hydraulic system – bleeding	2
Front brake caliper – removal, overhaul and refitting	8	Master cylinder – removal, overhaul and refitting	10
Front brake disc – inspection, removal and refitting	6	Rear brake caliper – removal, overhaul and refitting	9
Front brake pad wear check	See Chapter 1A or 1B	Rear brake disc – inspection, removal and refitting	7
Front brake pads – renewal	4	Rear brake pad wear check	See Chapter 1A or 1B
General information	1	Rear brake pads – renewal	5
Handbrake – adjustment	14	Stop-light switch – removal, refitting and adjustment	17
Handbrake cables – removal and refitting	16	Vacuum pump (diesel engine models) – removal and refitting	20
Handbrake lever – removal and refitting	15	Vacuum pump (diesel engine models) – testing	21
Hydraulic fluid level check	See <i>Weekly checks</i>	Vacuum servo unit – testing, removal and refitting	12
		Vacuum servo unit check valve – removal, testing and refitting	13

### Degrees of difficulty

**Easy**, suitable for novice with little experience



**Fairly easy**, suitable for beginner with some experience



**Fairly difficult**, suitable for competent DIY mechanic



**Difficult**, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic



**Very difficult**, suitable for expert DIY or professional



### Specifications

#### Front brakes

Type	Disc, with single-piston sliding caliper
Disc diameter:	
1.4 litre models	266 mm
All other models	283 mm
Disc thickness:	
1.4 litre models:	
New	22.0 mm
Minimum	20.0 mm
All other models:	
New	26.0 mm
Minimum	24.0 mm
Maximum disc run-out	0.05 mm
Brake pad friction material thickness:	
New	13.0 mm
Minimum	2.0 mm

#### Rear disc brakes

Disc diameter	247 mm
Disc thickness:	
New	9.0 mm
Minimum thickness	7.0 mm
Maximum disc run-out	0.05 mm
Brake pad friction material thickness:	
New	11.0 mm
Minimum	2.0 mm

**Torque wrench settings**

	Nm	lbf ft
ABS system components:		
Regulator unit nuts	20	15
Wheel sensor retaining bolts*	10	7
Crossover linkage housing nuts and bolts (right-hand drive models)	25	18
Disc retaining screws	10	7
Front brake caliper:		
Guide pin bolts*	30	22
Mounting bracket bolts*	105	77
Handbrake lever nuts	15	11
Hydraulic hose/pipe union nuts	15	11
Master cylinder retaining nuts	20	15
Rear brake caliper:		
Guide pin bolts*	30	22
Mounting bracket bolts*	50	37
Roadwheel bolts	90	66
Vacuum servo unit mounting nuts	20	15

\*Do not re-use.

## 1 General information

The braking system is of the servo-assisted, dual-circuit hydraulic type. The arrangement of the hydraulic system is such that each circuit operates one front and one rear brake from a tandem master cylinder. Under normal circumstances, both circuits operate in unison. However, in the event of hydraulic failure in one circuit, full braking force will still be available at two wheels.

All models are equipped with disc brakes on all wheels. ABS is fitted as standard (refer to Section 18 for further information on ABS operation).

The disc brakes are actuated by single-piston sliding type calipers, which ensure that equal pressure is applied to each disc pad.

On all models, the handbrake provides an independent mechanical means of rear brake application. All models are fitted with rear brake calipers with an integral handbrake function. The handbrake cable operates a lever on the caliper which forces the piston to press the pad against the disc surface. A self-adjust mechanism is incorporated, to automatically compensate for brake pad wear.

On diesel engines, there is insufficient vacuum in the inlet manifold to operate the braking system servo effectively at all times. To overcome this problem, a vacuum pump is fitted to the engine, to provide sufficient vacuum to operate the servo unit. The vacuum pump is mounted on the end of the cylinder head, and is driven directly off the end of the camshaft.

**Note:** When servicing any of the system, work carefully and methodically; also observe scrupulous cleanliness when overhauling any of the hydraulic system. Always renew components (in axle sets, where applicable) if in doubt about their condition, and use only genuine Peugeot replacement parts, or at least those of known good quality. Note the

warnings given in 'Safety first!' and at relevant points in this Chapter concerning the dangers of asbestos dust and hydraulic fluid.

## 2 Hydraulic system – bleeding



**Warning:** Hydraulic fluid is poisonous; wash off immediately and thoroughly in the case of skin contact, and seek immediate medical advice if any fluid is swallowed or gets into the eyes. Certain types of hydraulic fluid are inflammable, and may ignite when allowed into contact with hot components; when servicing any hydraulic system, it is safest to assume that the fluid is inflammable, and to take precautions against the risk of fire as though it is petrol that is being handled. Hydraulic fluid is also an effective paint stripper, and will attack plastics; if any is spilt, it should be washed off immediately, using copious quantities of fresh water. Finally, it is hygroscopic (it absorbs moisture from the air) – old fluid may be contaminated and unfit for further use. When topping-up or renewing the fluid, always use the recommended type, and ensure that it comes from a freshly-opened sealed container.

**Caution:** Ensure the ignition is switched off before starting the bleeding procedure, to avoid any possibility of voltage being applied to the hydraulic modulator before the bleeding procedure is complete. Ideally, the battery should be disconnected. If voltage is applied to the modulator before the bleeding procedure is complete, this will effectively drain the hydraulic fluid in the modulator, rendering the unit unserviceable. Do not, therefore, attempt to 'run' the modulator in order to bleed the brakes.

**Note:** If difficulty is experienced in bleeding the braking circuit, this may be due to air being

trapped in the ABS regulator unit. If this is the case then the vehicle should be taken to a Peugeot dealer or suitably-equipped specialist so that the system can be bled using special electronic test equipment.

**Note:** A hydraulic clutch shares its fluid reservoir with the braking system, and may also need to be bled (see Chapter 6).

### General

1 The correct operation of any hydraulic system is only possible after removing all air from the components and circuit; this is achieved by bleeding the system.

2 During the bleeding procedure, add only clean, unused hydraulic fluid of the recommended type; never re-use fluid that has already been bled from the system. Ensure that sufficient fluid is available before starting work.

3 If there is any possibility of incorrect fluid being already in the system, the brake components and circuit must be flushed completely with uncontaminated, correct fluid, and new seals should be fitted to the various components.

4 If hydraulic fluid has been lost from the system, or air has entered because of a leak, ensure that the fault is cured before proceeding further.

5 Park the vehicle on level ground, switch off the engine and select first or reverse gear, then chock the wheels and release the handbrake.

6 Check that all pipes and hoses are secure, unions tight and bleed screws closed. Clean any dirt from around the bleed screws.

7 Unscrew the master cylinder reservoir cap, and top the master cylinder reservoir up to the MAX level line; refit the cap loosely, and remember to maintain the fluid level at least above the MIN/DANGER level line throughout the procedure, or there is a risk of further air entering the system.

8 There is a number of one-man, do-it-yourself brake bleeding kits currently available from motor accessory shops. It is recommended that one of these kits is used

whenever possible, as they greatly simplify the bleeding operation, and also reduce the risk of expelled air and fluid being drawn back into the system. If such a kit is not available, the basic (two-man) method must be used, which is described in detail below.

**9** If a kit is to be used, prepare the vehicle as described previously, and follow the kit manufacturer's instructions, as the procedure may vary slightly according to the type being used; generally, they are as outlined below in the relevant sub-section.

**10** Whichever method is used, the same sequence must be followed (paragraphs 11 and 12) to ensure that the removal of all air from the system.

## Bleeding

### Sequence

**11** If the system has been only partially disconnected, and suitable precautions were taken to minimise fluid loss, it should be necessary only to bleed that of the system (ie, the primary or secondary circuit).

**12** If the complete system is to be bled, then it should be done working in the following sequence:

- a) Left-hand front brake.
- b) Right-hand front brake.
- c) Left-hand rear brake.
- d) Right-hand rear brake.

### Basic (two-man) method

**13** Collect a clean glass jar, a suitable length of plastic or rubber tubing which is a tight fit over the bleed screw, and a ring spanner to fit the screw. The help of an assistant will also be required.

**14** Remove the dust cap from the first screw in the sequence. Fit the spanner and tube to the screw, place the other end of the tube in the jar, and pour in sufficient fluid to cover the end of the tube.

**15** Ensure that the master cylinder reservoir fluid level is maintained at least above the MIN/DANGER level line throughout the procedure.

**16** Have the assistant fully depress the brake pedal several times to build up pressure, then maintain it on the final downstroke.

**17** While pedal pressure is maintained, unscrew the bleed screw (approximately one turn) and allow the compressed fluid and air to flow into the jar. The assistant should maintain pedal pressure, following it down to the floor if necessary, and should not release it until instructed to do so. When the flow stops, tighten the bleed screw again, have the assistant release the pedal slowly, and recheck the reservoir fluid level.

**18** Repeat the steps given in paragraphs 16 and 17 until the fluid emerging from the bleed screw is free from air bubbles. If the master cylinder has been drained and refilled, and air is being bled from the first screw in the sequence, allow approximately five seconds between cycles for the master cylinder passages to refill.

**19** When no more air bubbles appear, tighten the bleed screw securely, remove the tube and spanner, and refit the dust cap. Do not overtighten the bleed screw.

**20** Repeat the procedure on the remaining screws in the sequence, until all air is removed from the system and the brake pedal feels firm again.

### Using a one-way valve kit

**21** As their name implies, these kits consist of a length of tubing with a one-way valve fitted, to prevent expelled air and fluid being drawn back into the system; some kits include a translucent container, which can be positioned so that the air bubbles can be more easily seen flowing from the end of the tube.

**22** The kit is connected to the bleed screw, which is then opened (see illustration). The user returns to the driver's seat, depresses the brake pedal with a smooth, steady stroke, and slowly releases it; this is repeated until the expelled fluid is clear of air bubbles.

**23** Note that these kits simplify work so much that it is easy to forget the master cylinder reservoir fluid level; ensure that this is maintained at least above the MIN/DANGER level line at all times.

### Using a pressure-bleeding kit

**24** These kits are usually operated by the reservoir of pressurised air contained in the spare tyre. However, note that it will probably be necessary to reduce the pressure to a lower level than normal; refer to the instructions supplied with the kit.

**25** By connecting a pressurised, fluid-filled container to the master cylinder reservoir, bleeding can be carried out simply by opening each screw in turn (in the specified sequence), and allowing the fluid to flow out until no more air bubbles can be seen in the expelled fluid.

**26** This method has the advantage that the large reservoir of fluid provides an additional safeguard against air being drawn into the system during bleeding.

**27** Pressure-bleeding is particularly effective when bleeding 'difficult' systems, or when bleeding the complete system at the time of routine fluid renewal.

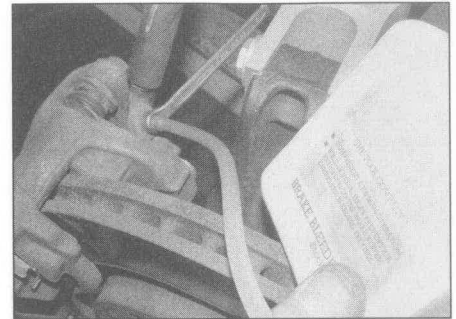
### All methods

**28** When bleeding is complete, and firm pedal feel is restored, wash off any spilt fluid, tighten the bleed screws securely, and refit their dust caps.

**29** Check the hydraulic fluid level in the master cylinder reservoir, and top-up if necessary (see *Weekly checks*).

**30** Discard any hydraulic fluid that has been bled from the system; it will not be fit for re-use.

**31** Check the feel of the brake pedal. If it feels at all spongy, air must still be present in the system, and further bleeding is required. Failure to bleed satisfactorily after a reasonable repetition of the bleeding procedure may be due to worn master cylinder seals.



2.22 Connect the kit to the bleed screw

## 3 Hydraulic pipes and hoses - renewal

**Caution:** Ensure the ignition is switched off before disconnecting any braking system hydraulic union and do not switch it on until after the hydraulic system has been bled. Failure to do this could lead to air entering the regulator unit requiring the unit to be bled using special Peugeot test equipment (see Section 2).

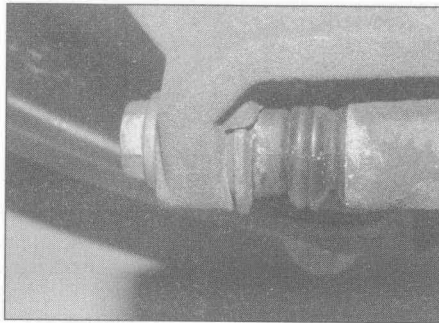
**Note:** Before starting work, refer to the note at the beginning of Section 2 concerning the dangers of hydraulic fluid.

**1** If any pipe or hose is to be renewed, minimise fluid loss by first removing the master cylinder reservoir cap, then tightening it down onto a piece of polythene to obtain an airtight seal. Alternatively, flexible hoses can be sealed, if required, using a proprietary brake hose clamp; metal brake pipe unions can be plugged (if care is taken not to allow dirt into the system) or capped immediately they are disconnected. Place a wad of rag under any union that is to be disconnected, to catch any spilt fluid.

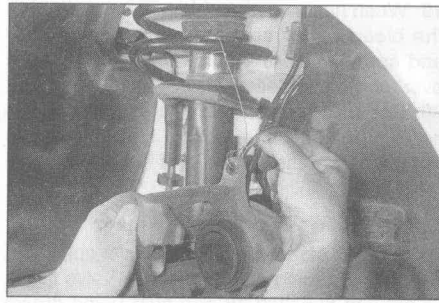
**2** If a flexible hose is to be disconnected, unscrew the brake pipe union nut before removing the spring clip which secures the hose to its mounting bracket.

**3** To unscrew the union nuts, it is preferable to obtain a brake pipe spanner of the correct size; these are available from most large motor accessory shops. Failing this, a close-fitting open-ended spanner will be required, though if the nuts are tight or corroded, their flats may be rounded-off if the spanner slips. In such a case, a self-locking wrench is often the only way to unscrew a stubborn union, but it follows that the pipe and the damaged nuts must be renewed on reassembly. Always clean a union and surrounding area before disconnecting it. If disconnecting a component with more than one union, make a careful note of the connections before disturbing any of them.

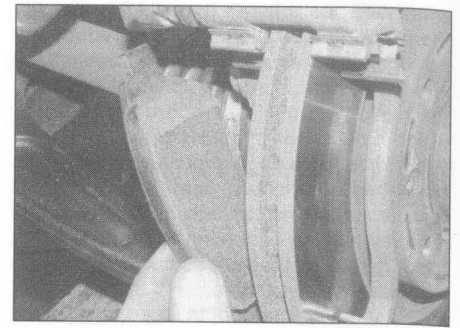
**4** If a brake pipe is to be renewed, it can be obtained, cut to length and with the union nuts and end flares in place, from Peugeot dealers. All that is then necessary is to bend it



4.3 Remove the caliper lower guide pin bolt . . .



4.4 . . . then pivot the caliper upwards and away from the brake pads, and tie it to the suspension strut



4.5 Withdraw the brake pads from the caliper mounting bracket

to shape, following the line of the original, before fitting it to the car. Alternatively, most motor accessory shops can make up brake pipes from kits, but this requires very careful measurement of the original, to ensure that the replacement is of the correct length. The safest answer is usually to take the original to the shop as a pattern.

5 On refitting, do not overtighten the union nuts. It is not necessary to exercise brute force to obtain a sound joint.

6 Ensure that the pipes and hoses are correctly routed, with no kinks, and that they are secured in the clips or brackets provided. After fitting, remove the polythene from the reservoir, and bleed the hydraulic system as described in Section 2. Wash off any spilt fluid, and check carefully for fluid leaks.

#### 4 Front brake pads – renewal



**Warning:** Renew both sets of front brake pads at the same time – never renew the pads on only one wheel, as uneven braking may result. Note that the dust created by wear of the pads may contain asbestos, which is a health hazard. Never blow it out with compressed air, and don't inhale any of it. An approved filtering mask should be worn when working on the brakes. DO NOT use petrol or petroleum-based solvents to clean brake parts; use brake cleaner or methylated spirit only.

**Note:** New guide pin bolts must be used on refitting.

1 Apply the handbrake, slacken the front roadwheel bolts, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands. Remove the front roadwheels.

2 Push the piston into its bore by pulling the caliper outwards.

3 Slacken and remove the caliper lower guide pin bolt (see illustration). Discard the guide pin bolt – a new one must be used on refitting.

4 With the lower guide pin bolt removed, pivot the caliper away from the brake pads and mounting bracket, and tie it to the suspension strut using a suitable piece of wire (see illustration).

5 Withdraw the two brake pads from the caliper mounting bracket; the shims (where fitted) should be bonded to the pad, but may have come unstuck in use (see illustration).

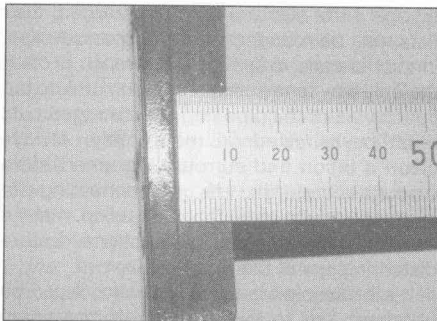
6 First measure the thickness of each brake pad's friction material (see illustration). If either pad is worn at any point to the specified minimum thickness or less, all four pads must be renewed. Also, the pads should be renewed if any are fouled with oil or grease; there is no satisfactory way of degreasing friction material, once contaminated. If any of the brake pads are worn unevenly, or are fouled with oil or grease, trace and rectify the cause before reassembly.

7 If the brake pads are still serviceable, carefully clean them using a clean, fine wire brush or similar, paying particular attention to the sides and back of the metal backing.

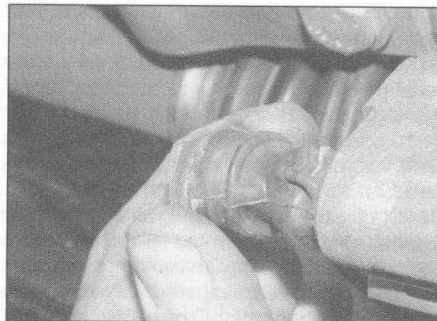
Clean out the grooves in the friction material, and pick out any large embedded particles of dirt or debris. Carefully clean the pad locations in the caliper mounting bracket.

8 Prior to fitting the pads, check that the guide pins are free to slide easily in the caliper mounting bracket, and check that the rubber guide pin gaiters are undamaged (see illustration). Brush the dust and dirt from the caliper and piston, but do not inhale it, as it is a health hazard. Inspect the dust seal around the piston for damage, and the piston for evidence of fluid leaks, corrosion or damage. If attention to any of these components is necessary, refer to Section 8.

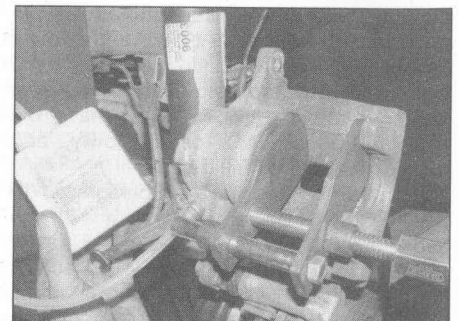
9 If new brake pads are to be fitted, the caliper piston must be pushed back into the cylinder to make room for them. Either use a G-clamp or similar tool, or use suitable pieces of wood as levers. Clamp off the flexible brake hose leading to the caliper then connect a brake bleeding kit to the caliper bleed nipple. Open the bleed nipple as the piston is retracted, the surplus brake fluid will then be collected in the bleed kit vessel (see illustration). Close the bleed nipple just before the caliper piston is pushed fully into the caliper. This should ensure no air enters the hydraulic system. **Note:** The ABS unit contains hydraulic components that are very sensitive to impurities in the brake fluid. Even the smallest particles can cause the system to fail through blockage. The pad retraction method described here prevents any debris in the brake fluid expelled from the caliper from



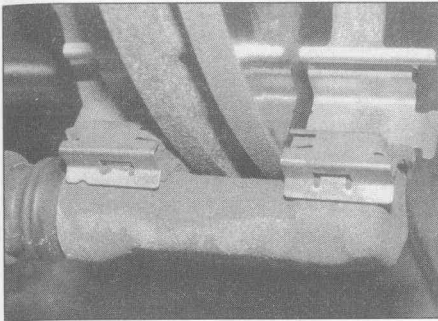
4.6 Measure the thickness of the pads friction material



4.8 Check the condition of the guide pin rubbers



4.9 Open the bleed nipple and push the piston back (piston retraction tool shown)



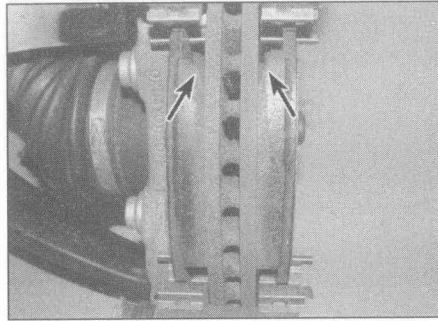
**4.10** Ensure the shims at the top and bottom of the caliper mounting bracket are correctly fitted

being passed back to the ABS hydraulic unit, as well as preventing any chance of damage to the master cylinder seals.

**10** Check to make sure the shims at the top and bottom of the caliper bracket are correctly fitted (see illustration).

**11** Ensuring that the friction material of each pad is against the brake disc, fit the pads to the caliper mounting bracket. If the shims (where fitted) have become detached, ensure that they are correctly positioned on each pads backing plate. If the pads have a chamfer at one edge, fit the pads so that the chamfer is at the top (see illustration).

**12** Pivot the caliper down into position over the pads. If the threads of the new guide pin bolt are not already pre-coated with locking compound, apply a suitable thread-locking compound to them (Peugeot recommend Loctite Frenetanch – available from your



**4.11** Refit the pads, with the chamfer (arrowed) at the top

Peugeot dealer). Press the caliper into position, then install the guide pin bolt, tightening it to the specified torque setting (see illustration).

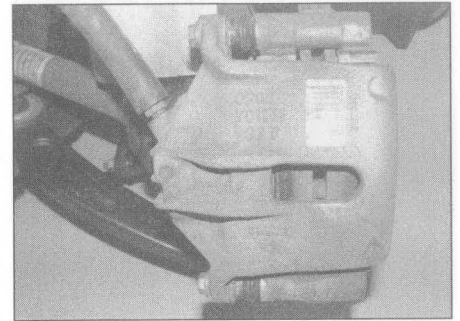
**13** Depress the brake pedal repeatedly, until the pads are pressed into firm contact with the brake disc, and normal (non-assisted) pedal pressure is restored.

**14** Repeat the above procedure on the remaining front brake caliper.

**15** Refit the roadwheels, then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the roadwheel bolts to the specified torque.

**16** Check the hydraulic fluid level as described in *Weekly checks*.

**Caution:** New pads will not give full braking efficiency until they have bedded-in. Be prepared for this, and avoid hard braking as far as possible for the first hundred miles or so after pad renewal.



**4.12** Pivot the caliper down and over the pads, then fit and tighten the new caliper guide pin bolt

## 5 Rear brake pads – renewal



**Warning:** Renew both sets of rear brake pads at the same time – never renew the pads on only one wheel, as uneven braking may result. Note that the dust created by wear of the pads may contain asbestos, which is a health hazard. Never blow it out with compressed air, and don't inhale any of it. An approved filtering mask should be worn when working on the brakes. DO NOT use petrol or petroleum-based solvents to clean brake parts; use brake cleaner or methylated spirit only.

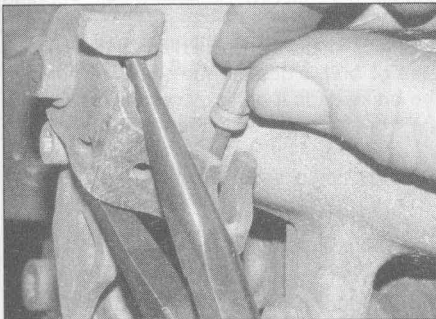
**Note:** New guide pin bolts must be fitted on reassembly.

**1** Check the front wheels, slacken the rear roadwheel bolts, then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the rear roadwheels.

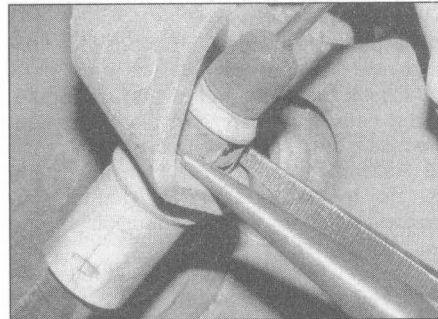
**2** Using a pair of pliers, release the handbrake cable from the caliper lever. Compress the clip and pull the cable from the support bracket (see illustrations).

**3** Slacken and remove the caliper lower guide pin bolt, and swing the caliper up, pivoting around the top guide pin bolt, and tie it in place (see illustration).

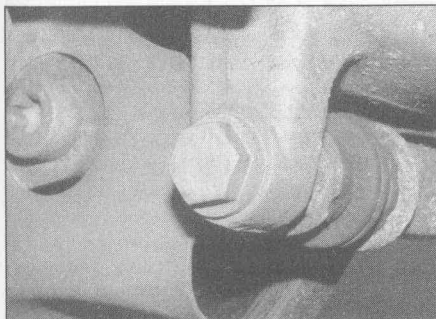
**4** Withdraw the inner and outer pads from the caliper bracket, and note the location of any shims fitted between the pads and caliper (see illustrations).



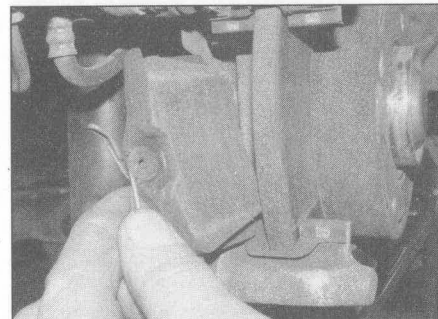
**5.2a** Disengage the handbrake cable from the caliper lever . . .



**5.2b** . . . then squeeze the clip and pull the outer cable from the support bracket



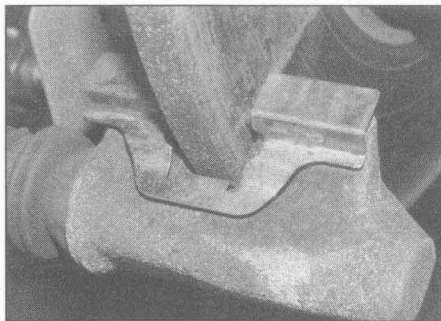
**5.3** Remove the caliper lower guide pin bolt



**5.4a** Withdraw the inner . . .



**5.4b** . . . and outer pads



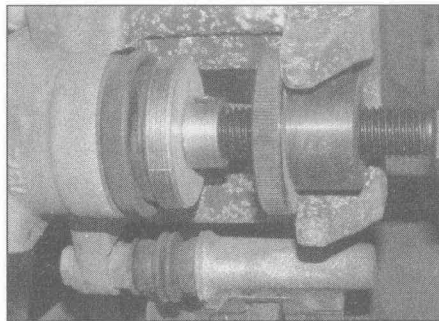
**5.4c** Note the fitted location of any shims fitted between the pads and caliper

**5** First measure the thickness of the friction material of each brake pad. If either pad is worn at any point to the specified minimum thickness or less, all four pads must be renewed. Also, the pads should be renewed if any are fouled with oil or grease; there is no satisfactory way of degreasing friction material, once contaminated. If any of the brake pads are worn unevenly, or fouled with oil or grease, trace and rectify the cause before reassembly. Examine the retaining pins for signs of wear and renew if necessary. New brake pads and retaining pin kits are available from Peugeot dealers.

**6** If the brake pads are still serviceable, carefully clean them using a clean, fine wire brush or similar, paying particular attention to the sides and back of the metal backing. Clean out the grooves in the friction material, and pick out any large embedded particles of dirt or debris. Carefully clean the pad locations in the caliper body/mounting bracket.

**7** Prior to fitting the pads, check that the guide sleeves are free to slide easily in the caliper body, and check that the rubber guide sleeve gaiters are undamaged. Brush the dust and dirt from the caliper and piston, but **do not** inhale it, as it is a health hazard. Inspect the dust seal around the piston for damage, and the piston for evidence of fluid leaks, corrosion or damage. If attention to any of these components is necessary, refer to Section 9.

**8** If new brake pads are to be fitted, the caliper piston must be pushed back into the cylinder to make room for them. In order to retract the piston, the piston must be turned clockwise as it is pushed into the caliper. Peugeot tool No DF61 is available to retract the pistons, as are several available from good accessory/parts retailers (see illustration). Clamp off the flexible brake hose leading to the caliper then connect a brake bleeding kit to the caliper bleed nipple. Open the bleed nipple as the piston is retracted, the surplus brake fluid will then be collected in the bleed kit vessel. Close the bleed nipple just before the caliper piston is pushed fully into the caliper. This should ensure no air enters the hydraulic system. **Note:** The ABS unit contains hydraulic components that are very sensitive to impurities in the brake fluid. Even



**5.8** Use a retraction tool to rotate the piston whilst pushing at the same time

the smallest particles can cause the system to fail through blockage. The pad retraction method described here prevents any debris in the brake fluid expelled from the caliper from being passed back to the ABS hydraulic unit, as well as preventing any chance of damage to the master cylinder seals.

**9** Slide the brake pads into position in the caliper, ensuring each pad's friction material is facing the brake disc. If the shims (where fitted) have become detached, ensure that they are correctly positioned on each pad's backing plate (see illustration).

**10** Untie the caliper and lower it into position. Insert the new caliper lower guide pin bolt, and tighten it to the specified torque.

**11** Slide the handbrake cable into the support bracket and reconnect the cable end fitting.

**12** Depress the brake pedal repeatedly until the pads are pressed into firm contact with the brake disc, and normal (non-assisted) pedal pressure is restored.

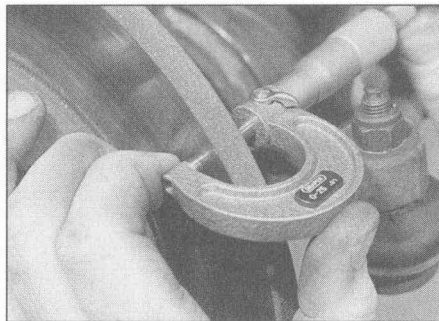
**13** Repeat the above procedure on the remaining rear brake caliper.

**14** Check the operation of the handbrake, and if necessary, carry out the adjustment procedure as described in Section 14.

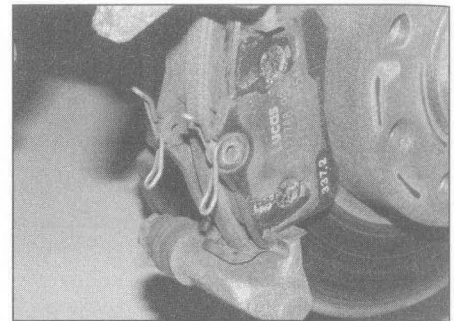
**15** Refit the roadwheels, then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the roadwheel bolts to the specified torque setting.

**16** Check the hydraulic fluid level as described in *Weekly checks*.

**Caution:** New pads will not give full braking efficiency until they have bedded-in. Be



**6.3** Use a micrometer to measure the disc thickness



**5.9** Ensure the pads are fitted with the friction material facing the brake disc

prepared for this, and avoid hard braking as far as possible for the first hundred miles or so after pad renewal.

## 6 Front brake disc – inspection, removal and refitting

**Note:** Before starting work, refer to the note at the beginning of Section 4 concerning the dangers of asbestos dust.

### Inspection

**Note:** If either disc requires renewal, BOTH should be renewed at the same time, to ensure even and consistent braking. New brake pads should also be fitted.

**1** Apply the handbrake, slacken the front roadwheel bolts, then jack up the front of the car and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the appropriate front roadwheel.

**2** Slowly rotate the brake disc so that the full area of both sides can be checked; remove the brake pads if better access is required to the inboard surface. Light scoring is normal in the area swept by the brake pads, but if heavy scoring or cracks are found, the disc must be renewed.

**3** It is normal to find a lip of rust and brake dust around the disc's perimeter; this can be scraped off if required. If, however, a lip has formed due to excessive wear of the brake pad swept area, then the disc's thickness must be measured using a micrometer. Take measurements at several places around the disc, at the inside and outside of the pad swept area; if the disc has worn at any point to the specified minimum thickness or less, the disc must be renewed (see illustration).

**4** If the disc is thought to be warped, it can be checked for run-out. Either use a dial gauge mounted on any convenient fixed point, while the disc is slowly rotated, or use feeler blades to measure (at several points all around the disc) the clearance between the disc and a fixed point, such as the caliper mounting bracket (see illustration). If the measurements obtained are at the specified maximum or beyond, the disc is excessively warped, and must be renewed; however, it is worth

checking first that the hub bearing is in good condition (Chapter 1A or 1B). Also try the effect of removing the disc and turning it through 180°, to reposition it on the hub; if the run-out is still excessive, the disc must be renewed.

**5** Check the disc for cracks, especially around the wheel bolt holes, and any other wear or damage, and renew if necessary.

### Removal

**6** Slacken and remove the two bolts securing the brake caliper mounting bracket to the hub carrier. Slide the assembly off the disc and tie it to the coil spring, using a piece of wire or string, to avoid placing any strain on the hydraulic brake hose.

**7** Use chalk or paint to mark the relationship of the disc to the hub, then remove the screws securing the brake disc to the hub, and remove the disc (see illustration). If it is tight, lightly tap its rear face with a hide or plastic mallet.

### Refitting

**8** Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure, noting the following points:

- Ensure that the mating surfaces of the disc and hub are clean and flat.
- Align (if applicable) the marks made on removal, and tighten the disc retaining screws to the specified torque setting.
- If a new disc has been fitted, use a suitable solvent to wipe any preservative coating from the disc, before refitting the caliper.
- Refit the roadwheel then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the wheel bolts to the specified torque. Apply the footbrake several times to force the pads back into contact with the disc before driving the vehicle.

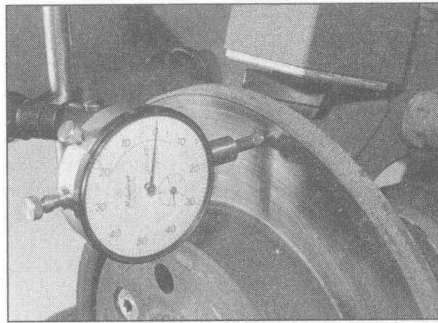
### 7 Rear brake disc – inspection, removal and refitting



**Note:** Before starting work, refer to the note at the beginning of Section 5 concerning the dangers of asbestos dust.

### Inspection

**Note:** If either disc requires renewal, BOTH



**6.4** Check the disc run-out using a dial gauge

should be renewed at the same time, to ensure even and consistent braking. New brake pads should also be fitted.

**1** Firmly chock the front wheels, slacken the appropriate rear roadwheel bolts, then jack up the rear of the car and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the relevant rear roadwheel.

**2** Inspect the disc as described in Section 6.

### Removal

**3** Remove the brake pads as described in Section 5.

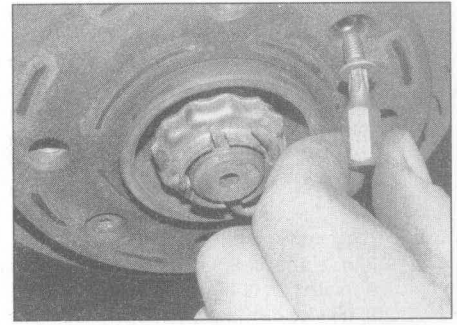
**4** Slacken the two Torx bolts securing the caliper mounting bracket to the stub axle (see illustration).

**5** Use chalk or paint to mark the relationship of the disc to the hub, then undo the screw(s) securing the disc to the hub. If necessary, gently tap the disc from behind and release it from the hub (see illustration).

### Refitting

**6** Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure, noting the following points:

- Ensure that the mating surfaces of the disc and hub are clean and flat.
- Align (if applicable) the marks made on removal, and tighten the disc retaining screws to the specified torque.
- If a new disc has been fitted, use a suitable solvent to wipe any preservative coating from the disc, before refitting the caliper.
- Refit the roadwheel, then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the roadwheel bolts to the specified torque. Depress the



**6.7** Undo the two Torx screws, and remove the disc

brake pedal several times to force the pads back into contact with the disc.

### 8 Front brake caliper – removal, overhaul and refitting



**Caution:** Ensure the ignition is switched off before disconnecting any braking system hydraulic union and do not switch it on until after the hydraulic system has been bled. Failure to do this could lead to air entering the regulator unit requiring the unit to be bled using special Peugeot test equipment (see Section 2).

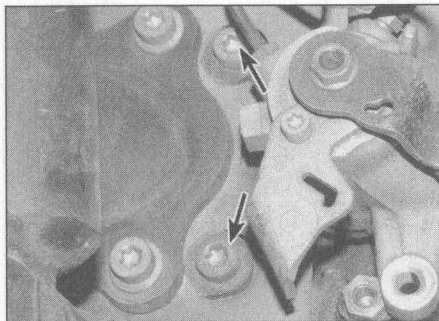
**Note:** Before starting work, refer to the note at the beginning of Section 2 concerning the dangers of hydraulic fluid, and to the warning at the beginning of Section 4 concerning the dangers of asbestos dust.

**Note:** New caliper guide pin bolts and caliper mounting bracket bolts will be required on reassembly.

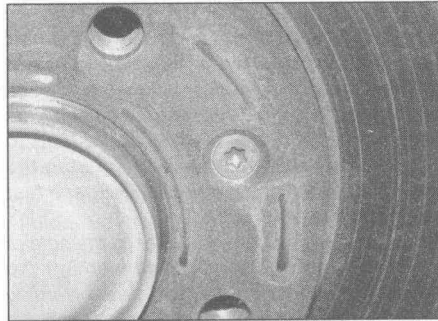
### Removal

**1** Apply the handbrake, slacken the relevant front roadwheel bolts, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the appropriate roadwheel.

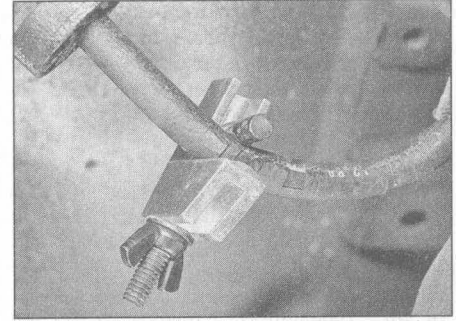
**2** Minimise fluid loss by first removing the master cylinder reservoir cap, and then tightening it down onto a piece of polythene, to obtain an airtight seal. Alternatively, use a brake hose clamp, a G-clamp or a similar tool to clamp the flexible hose (see illustration).



**7.4** Slacken the two caliper mounting bracket Torx screws (arrowed)



**7.5** Undo the Torx screws and remove the disc



**8.2** To minimise fluid loss, fit a brake hose clamp to the flexible hose



3 Clean the area around the caliper hose union, then loosen the union.

4 Slacken and remove the upper and lower caliper guide pin bolts (see illustration 4.12). Discard the bolts, new ones must be used on refitting. Lift the caliper away from the brake disc, then unscrew the caliper from the end of the brake hose. Note that the brake pads need not be disturbed, and can be left in position in the caliper mounting bracket.

5 If required, the caliper mounting bracket can be unbolted from the hub carrier. Discard the bolts, new ones must be fitted.

### Overhaul

**Note:** Check the availability of repair kits for the caliper before dismantling.

6 With the caliper on the bench, wipe away all traces of dust and dirt, but avoid inhaling the dust, as it is a health hazard.

7 Withdraw the partially ejected piston from the caliper body, and remove the dust seal.

#### HAYNES HINT

*If the piston cannot be withdrawn by hand, it can be pushed out by applying compressed air to the brake hose union hole. Only low pressure should be required, such as is generated by a foot pump. As the piston is expelled, take great care not to trap your fingers between the piston and caliper.*

8 Using a small screwdriver, extract the piston hydraulic seal, taking great care not to damage the caliper bore.

9 Thoroughly clean all components, using only methylated spirit, isopropyl alcohol or clean hydraulic fluid as a cleaning medium. Never use mineral-based solvents such as petrol or paraffin, as they will attack the hydraulic system's rubber components. Dry the components immediately, using compressed air or a clean, lint-free cloth. Use compressed air to blow clear the fluid passages.

10 Check all components, and renew any that are worn or damaged. Check particularly the cylinder bore and piston; these should be renewed (note that this means the renewal of the complete body assembly) if they are scratched, worn or corroded in any way. Similarly check the condition of the guide pins and their gaiters; both pins should be undamaged and (when cleaned) a reasonably tight sliding fit in the caliper bracket. If there is any doubt about the condition of any component, renew it.

11 If the assembly is fit for further use, obtain the appropriate repair kit; the components should be available from Peugeot dealers in various combinations. All rubber seals should be renewed as a matter of course; these should never be re-used.

12 On reassembly, ensure that all components are clean and dry.

13 Soak the piston and the new piston (fluid)

seal in clean brake fluid. Smear clean fluid on the cylinder bore surface.

14 Fit the new piston (fluid) seal, using only your fingers (no tools) to manipulate it into the cylinder bore groove.

15 Fit the new dust seal to the rear of the piston and seat the outer lip of the seal in the caliper body groove. Carefully ease the piston squarely into the cylinder bore using a twisting motion. Press the piston fully into position, and seat the inner lip of the dust seal in the piston groove.

16 If the guide pins are being renewed, lubricate the pin shafts with the special grease supplied in the repair kit, and fit the gaiters to the pin grooves. Insert the pins into the caliper bracket and seat the gaiters correctly in the bracket grooves.

### Refitting

17 If previously removed, refit the caliper mounting bracket to the hub carrier, and tighten the new bolts to the specified torque.

18 Screw the caliper body fully onto the flexible hose union.

19 Ensure that the brake pads are correctly fitted in the caliper mounting bracket and refit the caliper (see Section 4).

20 If the threads of the new guide pin bolts are not already pre-coated with locking compound, apply a suitable locking compound to them (Peugeot recommend Loctite Frenetanch – available from your Peugeot dealer). Fit the new lower guide pin bolt, then press the caliper into position and fit the new upper guide pin bolt. Tighten both guide pin bolts to the specified torque.

21 Tighten the brake hose union nut to the specified torque, then remove the brake hose clamp or polythene (where fitted).

22 Bleed the hydraulic system as described in Section 2. Note that, providing the precautions described were taken to minimise brake fluid loss, it should only be necessary to bleed the relevant front brake.

23 Refit the roadwheel, then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the roadwheel bolts to the specified torque.

## 9 Rear brake caliper – removal, overhaul and refitting



**Caution:** Ensure the ignition is switched off before disconnecting any braking system hydraulic union and do not switch it back on until after the hydraulic system has been bled. Failure to do this could lead to air entering the regulator unit requiring the unit to be bled using special Peugeot test equipment (see Section 2).

**Note:** Before starting work, refer to the note at the beginning of Section 2 concerning the dangers of hydraulic fluid, and to the warning at the beginning of Section 5 concerning the dangers of asbestos dust.

**Note:** New caliper mounting bracket bolts and

guide pin bolts when be required on reassembly.

### Removal

1 Chock the front wheels, slacken the relevant rear roadwheel bolts, then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the relevant rear wheel.

2 Remove the brake pads (see Section 5).

3 Minimise fluid loss by first removing the master cylinder reservoir cap, and then tightening it down onto a piece of polythene, to obtain an airtight seal. Alternatively, use a brake hose clamp, a G-clamp or a similar tool to clamp the flexible hose at the nearest convenient point to the brake caliper.

4 Wipe away all traces of dirt around the brake hose union on the caliper. Unscrew the union nut and disconnect the brake pipe from the caliper (see illustration). Plug the pipe and caliper unions to minimise fluid loss and prevent dirt entry.

5 Slacken and remove the guide pin bolt. Remove the caliper from the vehicle. If required, the caliper mounting bracket can be unbolted from the hub carrier. Discard the bolts, new ones must be fitted.

### Overhaul

6 At the time of writing, no parts were available to recondition the rear caliper assembly, with the exception of the guide pin bolts, guide pins and guide pin gaiters. Check the condition of the guide pins and their gaiters; both pins should be undamaged and (when cleaned) a reasonably tight sliding fit in the caliper bracket. If there is any doubt about the condition of any component, renew it.

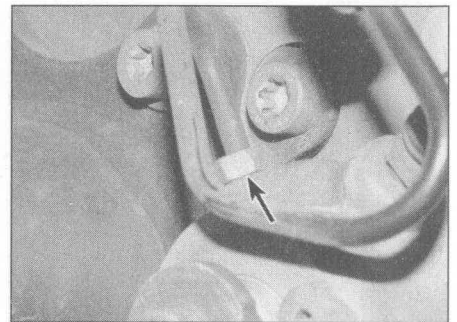
### Refitting

7 If previously removed, refit the caliper mounting bracket to the hub carrier, and tighten the new bolts to the specified torque.

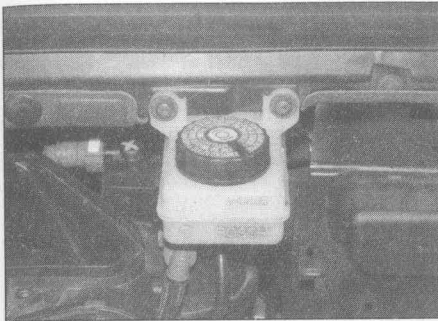
8 Refit the caliper and insert the new guide pin bolts, tightening them to the specified torque settings.

9 Reconnect the brake pipe to the caliper, and tighten the brake hose union nut to the specified torque. Remove the brake hose clamp or polythene (where fitted).

10 Refit the brake pads as described in Section 5.



9.4 Unscrew the union nut (arrowed)



**10.3a** Undo the two bolts securing the upper reservoir . . .

**11** Bleed the hydraulic system as described in Section 2. Note that, providing the precautions described were taken to minimise brake fluid loss, it should only be necessary to bleed the relevant rear brake.

**12** Refit the roadwheel, then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the roadwheel bolts to the specified torque.

## 10 Master cylinder – removal, overhaul and refitting



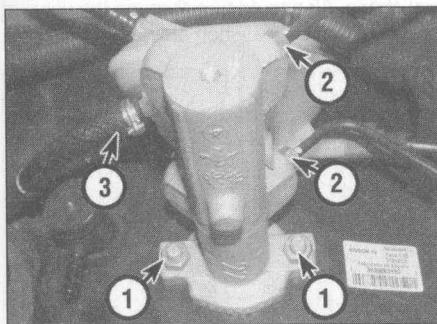
**Caution:** Ensure the ignition is switched off before disconnecting any braking system hydraulic union and do not switch it back on until after the hydraulic system has been bled. Failure to do this could lead to air entering the regulator unit requiring the unit to be bled using special Peugeot test equipment (see Section 2).

**Note:** Before starting work, refer to the warning at the beginning of Section 2 concerning the dangers of hydraulic fluid.

### Removal

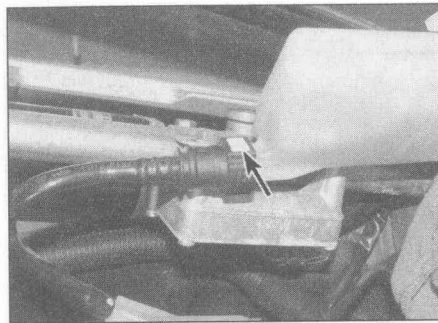
**1** Remove the battery and battery box as described in Chapter 5A.

**2** Remove the master cylinder reservoir cap and filter, and syphon the hydraulic fluid from the reservoir. **Note:** Do not syphon the fluid by mouth, as it is poisonous; use a syringe or an old antifreeze tester. Alternatively, open any



**10.5** Brake master cylinder

- 1 Mounting nuts
- 2 Pipe union nuts
- 3 Clutch master cylinder fluid supply pipe



**10.3b** . . . then depress the button (arrowed) and disconnect the pipe

convenient bleed screw in the system, and gently pump the brake pedal to expel the fluid through a plastic tube connected to the screw until the reservoir is emptied (see Section 2).

**3** Undo the two bolts and remove the upper reservoir, then depress the release button and disconnect the plastic pipe from the upper reservoir to the lower reservoir on the master cylinder (see illustrations). Be prepared for fluid spillage.

**4** Disconnect the wiring connector from the brake fluid level sender unit (see illustration).

**5** Empty the lower reservoir by disconnecting the clutch master cylinder fluid supply pipe and draining the fluid into a container (see illustration). Plug the pipe opening to prevent dirt ingress.

**6** Wipe clean the area around the brake pipe unions on the side of the master cylinder, and place absorbent rags beneath the pipe unions to catch any surplus fluid. Make a note of the correct fitted positions of the unions, then unscrew the union nuts and carefully withdraw the pipes. Plug or tape over the pipe ends and master cylinder orifices, to minimise the loss of brake fluid, and to prevent the entry of dirt into the system. Wash off any spilt fluid immediately with cold water.

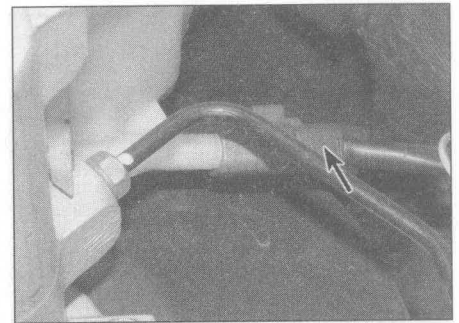
**7** Slacken and remove the two nuts securing the master cylinder to the vacuum servo unit, then withdraw the unit from the engine compartment. If the sealing ring fitted to the rear of the master cylinder shows signs of damage or deterioration, it must be renewed. If required, pull retaining lugs and separate the reservoir from the master cylinder (see illustration).

### Overhaul

**8** The master cylinder may be overhauled after obtaining the relevant repair kit from a Peugeot dealer. Ensure that the correct repair kit is obtained for the master cylinder being worked on. Note the locations of all components to ensure correct refitting, and lubricate the new seals using clean brake fluid. Follow the assembly instructions supplied with the repair kit.

### Refitting

**9** Remove all traces of dirt from the master cylinder and servo unit mating surfaces and



**10.4** Disconnect the level sensor wiring plug (arrowed)

ensure that the sealing ring is correctly fitted to the rear of the master cylinder.

**10** Fit the master cylinder to the servo unit. Refit the master cylinder mounting nuts, and tighten them to the specified torque.

**11** Wipe clean the brake pipe unions and refit them to the master cylinder ports, tightening them to the specified torque.

**12** Press the mounting seals fully into the master cylinder ports then carefully ease the fluid reservoir into position. Slide the reservoir retaining pin into position and secure it in position, making sure the retaining clip is correctly located in the pin groove.

**13** Reconnect the clutch master cylinder supply pipe, and level sensor wiring plug.

**14** Refit the upper reservoir and tighten the retaining screws securely.

**15** Refit any components removed to improve access then refill the master cylinder reservoir with new fluid. Bleed the complete hydraulic system as described in Section 2.

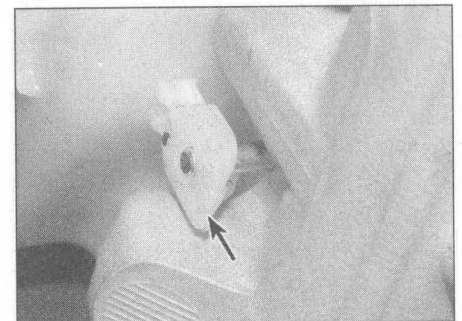
**Note:** A hydraulic clutch shares its fluid reservoir with the braking system, and may also need to be bled (see Chapter 6).

## 11 Brake pedal – removal and refitting

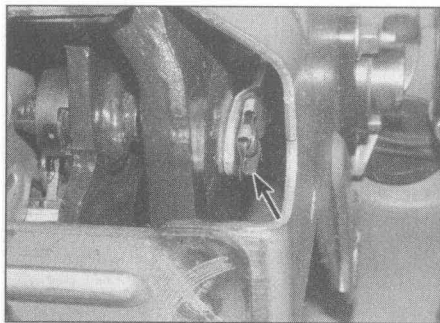


### Removal

**1** Prise up the centre pins, prise out the complete expanding plastic rivets, and remove the driver's side lower facia panel above the pedals.



**10.7** Pull the mounting lugs (arrowed) of the reservoir over the retaining pin



**11.2 Slide off the clevis pin retaining clip (arrowed)**

2 Slide off the retaining clip and withdraw the clevis pin securing the pedal crossover linkage pushrod to the pedal (see illustration). Discard the clevis pin, a new one must be fitted.

3 Slacken and remove the pivot bolt and nut (see illustration), and remove the brake pedal from the vehicle. Slide the spacer and washer (where fitted) out from the pedal pivot. Examine all components for signs of wear or damage, renewing them as necessary.

**Refitting**

4 Apply a smear of multi-purpose grease to the spacer and washer, and insert it into the pedal pivot bore.

5 Manoeuvre the pedal into position, making sure it is correctly engaged with the pushrod, and insert the pivot bolt. Refit the nut to the pivot bolt and tighten it securely.

6 Align the pedal with the pushrod and insert the new clevis pin, securing it in position with the retaining clip(s).

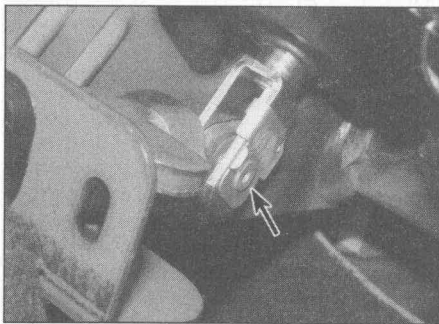
7 Refit the lower panel to the facia.

**12 Vacuum servo unit – testing, removal and refitting**

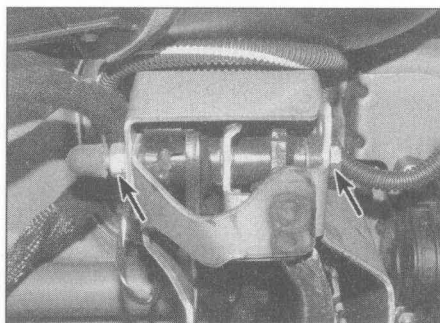


**Testing**

1 To test the operation of the servo unit, depress the footbrake several times to exhaust the vacuum, then start the engine whilst keeping the pedal firmly depressed. As the engine starts, there should be a noticeable



**12.8 Rotate the clip (arrowed) then pull it from place**



**11.3 Slacken and remove the pivot bolt and nut (arrowed)**

'give' in the brake pedal as the vacuum builds-up. Allow the engine to run for at least two minutes, then switch it off. If the brake pedal is now depressed it should feel normal, but further applications should result in the pedal feeling firmer, with the pedal stroke decreasing with each application.

2 If the servo does not operate as described, first inspect the servo unit check valve as described in Section 13. On diesel engine models, also check the operation of the vacuum pump as described in Section 21.

3 If the servo unit still fails to operate satisfactorily, the fault lies within the unit itself. Repairs to the unit are not possible – if faulty, the servo unit must be renewed.

**Removal**

4 Remove the master cylinder as described in Section 10.

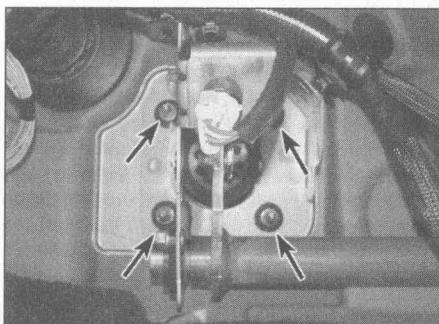
5 Release the wiring harness adjacent to the servo from its retaining clips, and move it to one side.

6 Slacken or release the retaining clip (depending on type of securing clip), then disconnect the vacuum pipe from the servo unit check valve.

7 Working in the passenger's footwell, prise up the centre pins, lever out the complete plastic expanding rivets, and remove the trim beneath the passenger's glovebox.

8 Rotate the crossover shaft-to-servo pushrod clevis pin and remove it from the linkage (see illustration). Discard the clevis pin, a new one must be fitted.

9 Slacken and remove the four nuts securing the housing to the bulkhead (see illustration).



**12.9 Undo the four servo mounting nuts (arrowed)**

10 Depress the two retaining clips (one to the left of the servo gaiter, and one to the right), then ease the housing away from the bulkhead (see illustration).

11 Manoeuvre the servo unit out of position, along with its gasket which is fitted between the servo and housing. Renew the gasket if it shows signs of damage.

**Refitting**

12 Refitting is the reverse of removal, noting the following points.

- a) Prior to refitting, measure the distance from the end of the vacuum servo unit pushrod to the servo master cylinder mating surface. This should be  $19.85 \pm 0.3$  mm; if not seek the advice of a Peugeot dealer before refitting the master cylinder.
- b) Lubricate all crossover linkage pivot points with multi-purpose grease.
- c) Tighten the servo unit and mounting bracket nuts and bolts to their specified torque settings.
- d) Refit the master cylinder as described in Section 10 and bleed the complete hydraulic system as described in Section 2.
- e) Always renew the crossover shaft clevis pins.

**13 Vacuum servo unit check valve – removal, testing and refitting**



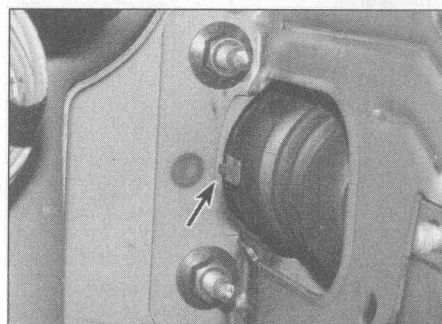
**Removal**

1 Slacken or release the retaining clip (depending on type of securing clip), then disconnect the vacuum hose from the servo unit check valve.

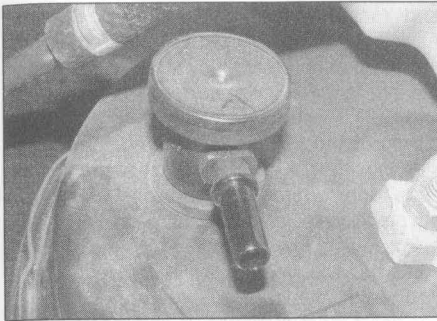
2 Withdraw the valve from its rubber sealing grommet, using a pulling and twisting motion (see illustration). Remove the grommet from the servo.

**Testing**

3 Examine the check valve for signs of damage, and renew if necessary. The valve may be tested by blowing through it in both directions. Air should flow through the valve in one direction only – when blown through from



**12.10 Release the servo retaining clips (left-hand one arrowed)**



13.2 Servo unit check valve

the servo unit end of the valve. Renew the valve if this is not the case.

4 Examine the rubber sealing grommet and flexible vacuum hose for signs of damage or deterioration, and renew as necessary.

### Refitting

5 Fit the sealing grommet into position in the servo unit.

6 Carefully ease the check valve into position, taking great care not to displace or damage the grommet. Reconnect the vacuum hose to the valve and, where necessary, securely tighten its retaining clip.

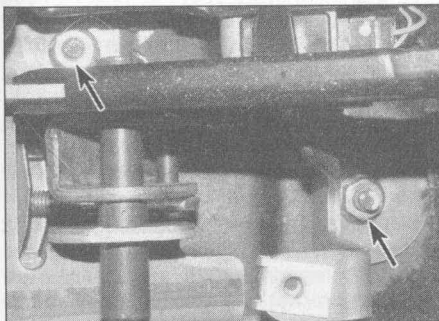
7 On completion, start the engine and check for air leaks from the check valve-to-servo unit connection.

### 14 Handbrake – adjustment

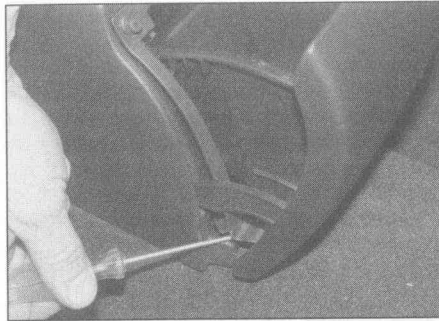


1 To check the handbrake adjustment, applying normal moderate pressure, pull the handbrake lever to the fully-applied position, counting the number of clicks emitted from the handbrake ratchet mechanism. If adjustment is correct, there should be 2 clicks before the brakes begins to apply, and no more than 8 before the handbrake is fully applied. If this is not the case, adjust as follows.

2 Working at the rear of the centre console, pull open the lid, gently prise out the lower edge on each side and remove the ashtray (see illustration).



15.5 Undo the handbrake lever nuts (arrowed)



14.2 Gently prise out the lower edge and remove the ashtray

3 Chock the front wheels, then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*).

4 Slacken the adjuster nut behind the equaliser plate on the rod from the lever (see illustration).

5 Start the engine and depress the brake pedal approximately 40 times. Stop the engine.

6 Tighten the adjuster nut just enough to eliminate any free play in the cables.

7 Pull the handbrake lever on 10 times. On the last application, pull the lever up and stop after the second click is emitted.

8 Tighten the adjuster nut until the rear brake pads begin to make contact with the discs.

9 Release the lever and check by hand that the rear wheels rotate freely, then check that no more than eight clicks are emitted before the handbrake is fully applied.

10 Refit the ashtray, then lower the vehicle to the floor.

### 15 Handbrake lever – removal and refitting



#### Removal

1 Chock the front wheels then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*).

2 Referring to Section 14, release the handbrake lever and back off the adjuster nut to obtain maximum freeplay in the cable.

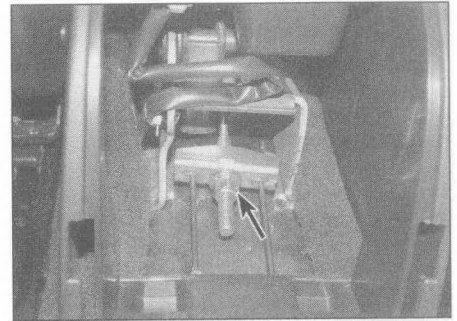
3 Remove the centre console as described in Chapter 11.

4 Peel back the gaiter (where necessary) and disconnect the wiring connector from the handbrake warning light switch.

5 Detach the handbrake cable from the lever then slacken and remove the lever retaining nuts, and remove the lever from the vehicle (see illustration).

#### Refitting

6 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Tighten the lever retaining nuts to the specified torque, and adjust the handbrake (see Section 14).



14.4 Equaliser plate adjustment nut (arrowed)

### 16 Handbrake cables – removal and refitting



#### Removal

1 The handbrake cable consists of a left-hand section and a right-hand section connecting the rear brakes to the adjuster mechanism on the handbrake lever rod. The cables can be removed separately.

2 Firmly chock the front wheels, slacken the relevant rear roadwheel bolts, then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*).

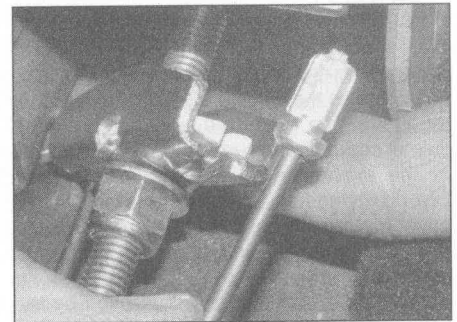
3 Slacken the handbrake adjuster nut sufficiently to be able to disengage the relevant cable end fitting from the equaliser plate with reference to Section 14 (see illustration).

4 Release the cable end fitting from the lever on the brake caliper, and remove the cable from the support bracket (see illustration 5.2a).

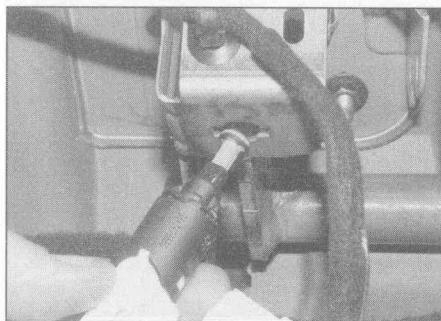
5 Working underneath the vehicle, note its fitted location, then free the cable from the various retaining clips/brackets along its route, and pull the front end of the cable from the opening in the floor. Withdraw the cable from underneath the vehicle

#### Refitting

6 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure, adjusting the handbrake as described in Section 14.



16.3 Disengage the cable end fitting from the equaliser plate



**17.3 Rotate the stop-light switch 90° anti-clockwise, and pull it from the bracket**

### 17 Stop-light switch – removal, refitting and adjustment



1 The stop-light switch is located on the pedal crossover shaft bracket behind the passenger side of the fascia. On models with automatic transmission or cruise control there are two switches fitted to the bracket – the stop-light switch is the left-hand of the two.

#### Removal

2 Working in the passenger's footwell, prise up the centre pins, lever out the complete plastic rivets, and remove the trim beneath the passenger's glovebox.

3 Disconnect the wiring, then rotate the switch 90 degrees anti-clockwise and remove it from the bracket (**see illustration**).

#### Refitting and adjustment

4 Pull the switch plunger out to its full extent, then depress the brake pedal by hand.

5 Refit the switch back into position in the mounting bracket, then release the brake pedal, and pull it up as far as it will go. The switch should now be correctly positioned.

6 Reconnect the wiring connector, and check the operation of the stop-lights. Refit the glovebox.

### 18 Anti-lock braking system (ABS) – general information

ABS is fitted to all models as standard, the system comprises a hydraulic regulator unit and the four roadwheel sensors. The regulator unit contains the electronic control unit (ECU), the hydraulic solenoid valves and the electrically-driven return pump. The purpose of the system is to prevent the wheel(s) locking during heavy braking. This is achieved by automatic release of the brake on the relevant wheel, followed by re-application of the brake.

The solenoid valves are controlled by the ECU, which itself receives signals from the four wheel sensors (front sensors are fitted to the hubs, and the rear sensors are fitted to the

caliper mounting brackets), which monitor the speed of rotation of each wheel. By comparing these signals, the ECU can determine the speed at which the vehicle is travelling. It can then use this speed to determine when a wheel is decelerating at an abnormal rate, compared to the speed of the vehicle, and therefore predicts when a wheel is about to lock. During normal operation, the system functions in the same way as a non-ABS braking system.

If the ECU senses that a wheel is about to lock, it closes the relevant outlet solenoid valves in the hydraulic unit, which then isolates the relevant brake(s) on the wheel(s) which is/are about to lock from the master cylinder, effectively sealing-in the hydraulic pressure.

If the speed of rotation of the wheel continues to decrease at an abnormal rate, the ECU opens the inlet solenoid valves on the relevant brake(s), and operates the electrically-driven return pump which pumps the hydraulic fluid back into the master cylinder, releasing the brake. Once the speed of rotation of the wheel returns to an acceptable rate, the pump stops; the solenoid valves switch again, allowing the hydraulic master cylinder pressure to return to the caliper, which then re-applies the brake. This cycle can be carried out many times a second.

The action of the solenoid valves and return pump creates pulses in the hydraulic circuit. When the ABS system is functioning, these pulses can be felt through the brake pedal.

The operation of the ABS system is entirely dependent on electrical signals. To prevent the system responding to any inaccurate signals, a built-in safety circuit monitors all signals received by the ECU. If an inaccurate signal or low battery voltage is detected, the ABS system is automatically shut-down, and the warning light on the instrument panel is illuminated, to inform the driver that the ABS system is not operational. Normal braking should still be available, however.

The Peugeot 307 is also equipped with additional safety features built around the ABS system. These systems are EBF (Electronic Brake Force Distribution), which automatically apportions braking effort between the front

and rear wheels, EBA (Emergency Brake Assist) which guarantees full braking effort in the event of an emergency stop by monitoring the rate at which the brake pedal is depressed, and ESP (Electronic Stability Program) which monitors the vehicles cornering forces and steering wheel angle, then applies the braking force to the appropriate roadwheel to enhance the stability of the vehicle.

If a fault does develop in the any of these systems, the vehicle must be taken to a Peugeot dealer or suitably-equipped specialist for fault diagnosis and repair.

### 19 Anti-lock braking system (ABS) components – removal and refitting



#### Regulator assembly

**Caution:** Disconnect the battery (*see Chapter 5A*) before disconnecting the regulator hydraulic unions, and do not reconnect the battery until after the hydraulic system has been bled. Also ensure that the unit is stored upright (in the same position as it is fitted to the vehicle) and is not tipped onto its side or upside down. Failure to do this could lead to air entering the regulator unit, requiring the unit to be bled using special Peugeot test equipment on refitting (*see Section 2*).

**Note:** Before starting work, refer to the warning at the beginning of Section 2 concerning the dangers of hydraulic fluid.

#### Removal

1 Disconnect the battery (*see Chapter 5A*).

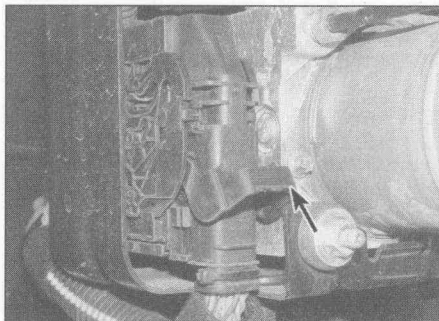
2 The regulator assembly is located in the front left-hand corner of the engine compartment. Slacken the left-hand front roadwheel bolts, jack up the front of the vehicle and support it securely on axle stands (*see Jacking and vehicle support*).

3 Push in the centre pins a little, then prise out the complete plastic rivets and remove the left-hand front wheel arch liner.

4 Lift off the plastic cover and release the retaining clip and disconnect the main wiring connector from the regulator assembly (**see illustration**). Where applicable, unscrew the retaining nut and disconnect the earth lead from the regulator.

5 Mark the locations of the hydraulic fluid pipes to ensure correct refitting, then unscrew the union nuts, and disconnect the pipes from the regulator assembly (**see illustration**). Be prepared for fluid spillage, and plug the open ends of the pipes and the regulator to prevent dirt ingress and further fluid loss.

6 Slacken and remove the regulator mounting nuts and remove the assembly from the engine compartment. If necessary, the mounting bracket can then be unbolted and removed from the vehicle. Renew the regulator mountings if they show signs of wear or damage.



**19.4 Lift the lever (arrowed) and disconnect the regulator wiring plug**

## Refitting

**7** Manoeuvre the regulator into position and locate it in the mounting bracket. Refit the mounting nuts and tighten them to the specified torque setting.

**8** Reconnect the hydraulic pipes to the correct unions on the regulator and tighten the union nuts to the specified torque.

**9** Reconnect the wiring connector to the regulator and connect the earth lead, tightening its retaining nut securely.

**10** Bleed the complete hydraulic system as described in Section 2. Once the system is correctly bled, refit the wheels arch liner, roadwheel and reconnect the battery.

## Electronic control unit (ECU)

**11** The ECU is integral with the regulator assembly, and is not available separately.

## Front wheel sensor

### Removal

**12** Ensure the ignition is turned off.

**13** Apply the handbrake, slacken the appropriate front roadwheel bolts, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support securely on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*).

**14** Trace the wiring back from the sensor, releasing it from all the relevant clips and ties whilst noting its correct routing, and disconnect the wiring connector.

**15** Slacken and remove the retaining bolt and withdraw the sensor from the hub carrier (see illustration).

### Refitting

**16** Ensure that the mating faces of the sensor and the swivel hub are clean, and apply a little anti-seize grease to the swivel hub bore before refitting.

**17** Make sure the sensor tip is clean and ease it into position in the swivel hub.

**18** Clean the threads of the sensor bolt and apply a few drops of thread-locking compound (Peugeot recommend Loctite Frenetanch – available from your Peugeot dealer). Refit the retaining bolt and tighten it to the specified torque.

**19** Work along the sensor wiring, making sure it is correctly routed, securing it in position with all the relevant clips and ties. Reconnect the wiring connector.

**20** Lower the vehicle and tighten the wheel bolts to the specified torque.

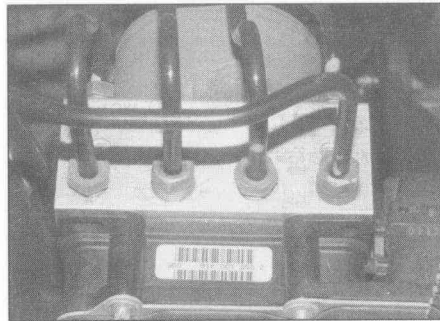
## Rear wheel sensor

### Removal

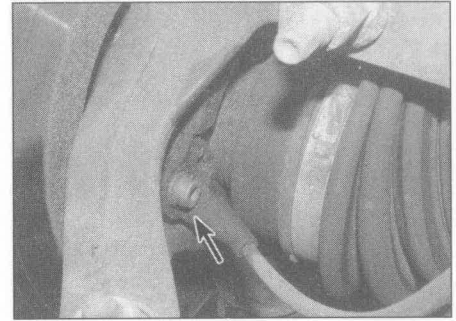
**21** Ensure the ignition is turned off.

**22** Chock the front wheels, slacken the appropriate rear roadwheel bolts, then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the appropriate roadwheel.

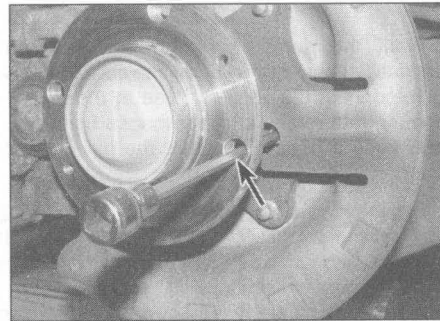
**23** Trace the wiring back from the sensor, releasing it from all the relevant clips and ties



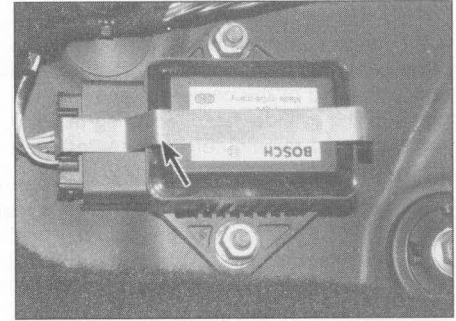
**19.5** Mark the location of the various brake pipes before disconnecting them from the regulator



**19.15** Undo the wheel speed sensor bolt (arrowed)



**19.24** Insert the tool (arrowed) through one of the roadwheel bolt holes to undo the speed sensor retaining bolt



**19.30** Release the clip (arrowed) and disconnect the Yaw rate sensor wiring plug

whilst noting its correct routing, and disconnect the wiring connector.

**24** Slacken and remove the retaining bolt and withdraw the sensor (see illustration).

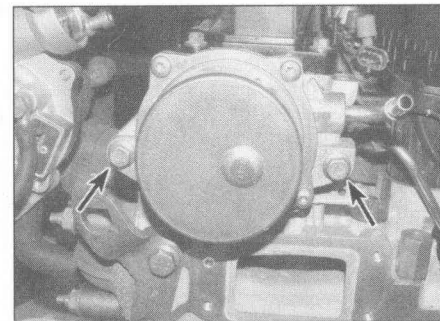
### Refitting

**25** Ensure that the mating faces of the sensor and the hub are clean, and apply a little anti-seize grease to the hub bore before refitting.

**26** Make sure the sensor tip is clean and ease it into position in the swivel hub.

**27** Clean the threads of the sensor bolt and apply a few drops of thread-locking compound (Peugeot recommend Loctite Frenetanch – available from your Peugeot dealer). Refit the retaining bolt and tighten it to the specified torque.

**28** Work along the sensor wiring, making sure it is correctly routed, securing it in position with all the relevant clips and ties.



**20.3** Vacuum pump mounting bolts (arrowed) (1.4 litre models)

Reconnect the wiring connector, then lower the vehicle and (where necessary) tighten the wheel bolts to the specified torque.

## Yaw rate sensor

**29** Remove the centre console as described in Chapter 11.

**30** Release the clip then disconnect the wiring plug (see illustration).

**31** Undo the two nuts and remove the sensor.

**32** Refitting is a reversal of removal, ensuring the arrow on the top of the sensor points to the front of the vehicle.

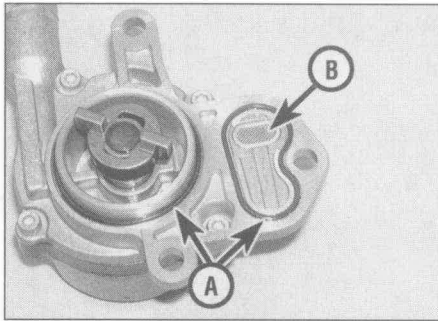
## 20 Vacuum pump (diesel engine models) – removal and refitting

### Removal

**1** The pump is located at the left-hand end of the cylinder head. If necessary, to improve access to the vacuum pump, remove the air cleaner duct (see Chapter 4B), battery and battery box/tray (see Chapter 5A)

**2** Depress the retaining clip button and disconnect the vacuum hose from the pump.

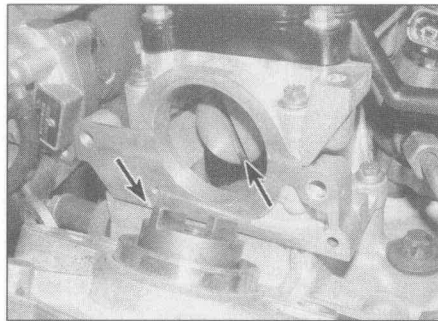
**3** Slacken and remove the retaining bolts/nut (as applicable) securing the pump to the left-hand end of the cylinder head, then remove the pump (see illustration). Discard the sealing rings – new ones must be used on refitting.



**20.4a Vacuum pump O-ring seals location (A) and gauze filter (B) (2.0 litre models)**

**Refitting**

4 Fit new sealing ring(s) to the pump recess(es), then align the drive dog with the slot in the end of the camshaft, and refit the pump to the cylinder head, ensuring that the sealing ring(s) remain correctly seated (see illustrations).



**20.4b Ensure the pump drive dog engages with the slot in the end of the camshaft (arrowed)**

5 Refit the pump mounting bolts/nut (as applicable) and tighten them securely.  
6 Reconnect the vacuum hose to the pump, ensuring its retaining clip engages correctly, and (where necessary) refit the air cleaner duct.

**21 Vacuum pump (diesel engine models) – testing**



- 1 The operation of the braking system vacuum pump can be checked using a vacuum gauge.
- 2 Disconnect the vacuum pipe from the pump, and connect the gauge to the pump union using a suitable length of hose.
- 3 Start the engine and allow it to idle, then measure the vacuum created by the pump. As a guide, after one minute, a minimum of approximately 500 mm Hg should be recorded. If the vacuum registered is significantly less than this, it is likely that the pump is faulty. However, seek the advice of a Peugeot dealer before condemning the pump.
- 4 Overhaul of the vacuum pump is not possible, since no components are available separately for it. If faulty, the complete pump assembly must be renewed.

# Chapter 10

## Suspension and steering

### Contents

Front hub bearings – renewal	3	Rear hub assembly – removal and refitting	11
Front hub carrier assembly – removal and refitting	2	Rear hub bearings – renewal	12
Front suspension anti-roll bar – removal and refitting	8	Rear suspension coil spring – removal and refitting	14
Front suspension anti-roll bar connecting link – removal and refitting	9	Rear suspension shock absorber – removal, testing and refitting	13
Front suspension lower arm – removal, overhaul and refitting	6	Rear suspension stub axle – removal, overhaul and refitting	15
Front suspension lower balljoint – removal and refitting	7	Steering and suspension check	See Chapter 1A or 1B
Front suspension strut – overhaul	5	Steering column – removal, inspection and refitting	18
Front suspension strut – removal and refitting	4	Steering rack assembly – removal, overhaul and refitting	20
Front suspension subframe – removal and refitting	10	Steering rack rubber gaiters – renewal	21
General information	1	Steering wheel – removal and refitting	17
Ignition switch/lock cylinder/steering lock – removal and refitting	19	Track rod – removal and refitting	25
Power steering fluid level check	See <i>Weekly checks</i>	Track rod balljoint – removal and refitting	24
Power steering pump – removal and refitting	23	Wheel alignment and steering angles – general information, checking and adjustment	26
Power steering system – bleeding	22	Wheel and tyre maintenance	See Chapter 1A or 1B
Rear beam axle – removal, overhaul and refitting	16		

### Degrees of difficulty

**Easy**, suitable for novice with little experience



**Fairly easy**, suitable for beginner with some experience



**Fairly difficult**, suitable for competent DIY mechanic



**Difficult**, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic



**Very difficult**, suitable for expert DIY or professional



### Specifications

#### Wheel alignment and steering angles

Front wheel:	
Toe setting	-0° 11' ± 4'
Camber	0° ± 30'
Castor (dependant on body style and tyre size)	5° 00' ± 30' (nominal)
King pin inclination	11° 41' ± 30'
Rear wheel:	
Toe setting:	
Hatchback	0° 28' ± 4'
Estate	0° 30' ± 4'
Camber	1° 45' ± 30'

#### Roadwheels

Type	Pressed-steel or aluminium alloy (depending on model)
Tyre pressures	See end of <i>Weekly checks</i> on page 0•18



Torque wrench settings	Nm	lbf ft
<b>Front suspension</b>		
Anti-roll bar:		
Connecting link nuts* .....	36	27
Mounting clamp bolts .....	104	77
Brake caliper mounting bracket bolts* .....	105	77
Driveshaft retaining nut .....	325	240
Hub carrier to strut .....	90	66
Lower arm-to-subframe bolts .....	110	81
Lower balljoint:		
Balljoint to hub carrier .....	230	170
Retaining nut* .....	50	37
Subframe mounting bolts .....	100	74
Suspension strut:		
Upper mounting plate nut .....	69	51
Upper spring seat nut .....	69	51
<b>Rear suspension</b>		
Caliper mounting bracket bolts* .....	50	37
Hub nut* .....	210	155
Rear axle mounting bracket-to-body bolts .....	62	46
Rear axle-to-mounting bracket .....	76	56
Shock absorber:		
Lower mounting nut* .....	57	42
Upper mounting bolts .....	62	46
Stub axle bolts .....	62	46
<b>Steering</b>		
Column-to-steering rack pinch-bolt .....	22	16
Power steering pump mounting bolts:		
Lower mounting .....	17	13
Upper mounting .....	22	16
Steering column mounting bolts .....	22	16
Steering rack mounting nuts* .....	80	59
Steering wheel bolt .....	33	24
Track rod:		
Balljoint-to-hub carrier nut* .....	35	26
Balljoint locknut .....	40	30
Inner balljoint to steering rack .....	80	59
<b>Roadwheels</b>		
Wheel bolts .....	90	66

\*Do not re-use

## 1 General information

The independent front suspension is of the MacPherson strut type, incorporating coil springs and integral telescopic shock absorbers. The MacPherson struts are located by transverse lower suspension arms, which utilise rubber inner mounting bushes. The front hub carriers, which carry the wheel bearings, brake calipers and the hub/disc assemblies and lower balljoints, are bolted to the MacPherson struts, and connected to the

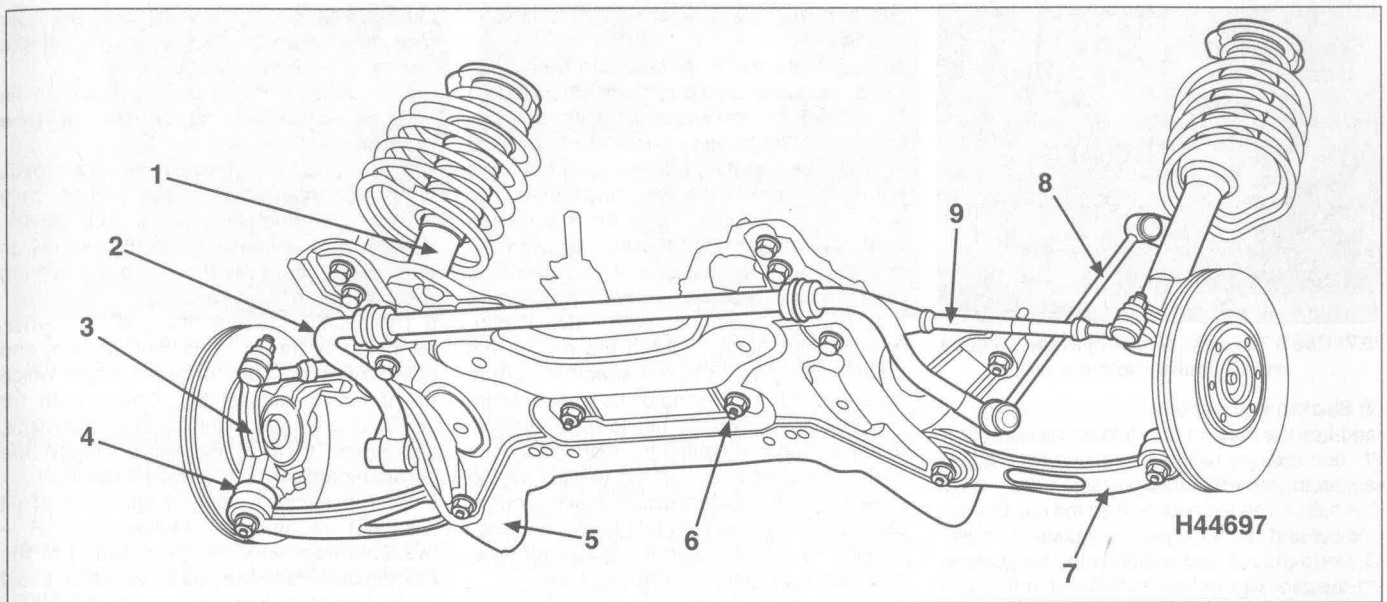
lower arms via the balljoints. A front anti-roll bar is fitted to all models. The anti-roll bar is rubber-mounted onto the subframe, and is connected to the front suspension struts by link rods (see illustration opposite).

The rear suspension has separate telescopic shock absorbers and coil springs fitted between the beam axle and the vehicle body. The rear beam axle has an integral anti-roll bar, and pivots around rubber bushes which are bolted to the front mounting brackets (see illustration opposite).

The steering column has a universal joint fitted to its lower end, which is connected to the steering rack pinion by means of a clamp bolt.

The steering rack is mounted onto the front subframe, and is connected by two track rods, with balljoints at their outer ends, to the steering arms projecting rearwards from the hub carriers. The track rod ends are threaded, to facilitate adjustment. The hydraulic steering system is powered by an electrically operated pump, which is controlled by the engine management ECU.

A variable power steering system is fitted. The hydraulic pump alters the hydraulic pressure supplied to the steering rack to suit all conditions, ie, supplies high pressure when the vehicle is being driven slowly/parked and lower pressure when the vehicle is being driven at speed.



**1.1 Front suspension**

- |                    |                               |                      |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 MacPherson strut | 4 Lower balljoint             | 7 Lower pivot arm    |
| 2 Anti-roll bar    | 5 Subframe                    | 8 Anti-roll bar link |
| 3 Hub carrier      | 6 Steering rack mounting nuts | 9 Track rod          |

**2 Front hub carrier assembly – removal and refitting**

**Note:** A new track rod balljoint nut, lower balljoint nut, brake caliper mounting bracket bolts, and strut-to-hub carrier nuts will be required on refitting.

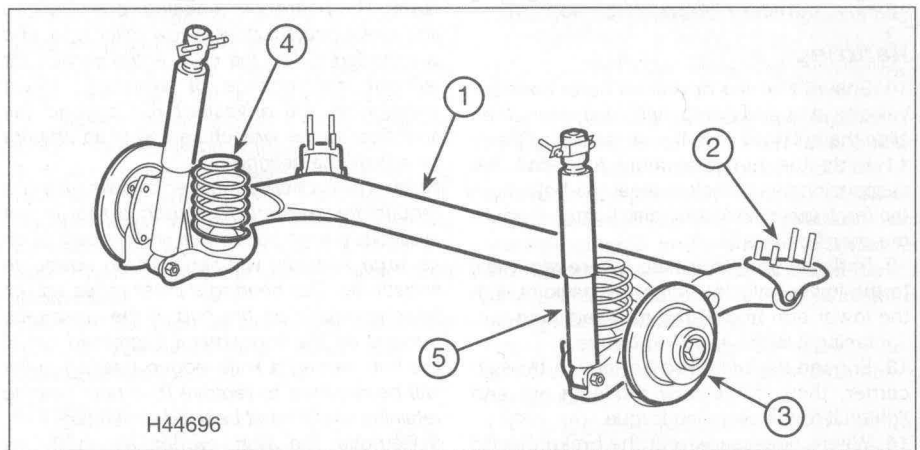
**Removal**

**1** Remove the wheel trim/hub cap (as applicable) then withdraw the R-clip and remove the locking cap from the driveshaft retaining nut. Slacken the driveshaft nut with the vehicle resting on its wheels (see illustration). Also slacken the wheel bolts.

**2** Chock the rear wheels of the car, firmly apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the car and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the appropriate front roadwheel.

**3** Unbolt the wheel sensor and position it clear of the hub assembly (see Chapter 9). Note that there is no need to disconnect the wiring.

**4** Slacken and remove the driveshaft retaining nut. If the nut was not slackened with the wheels on the ground (see paragraph 1), withdraw the R-clip and remove the locking cap. Refit at least two roadwheel bolts to the front hub, tightening them securely, then have an assistant firmly depress the brake pedal to prevent the front hub from rotating, whilst you slacken and remove the driveshaft retaining nut. Alternatively, a tool can be fabricated to hold the hub stationary (see Chapter 8, Section 2).



**1.2 Rear suspension**

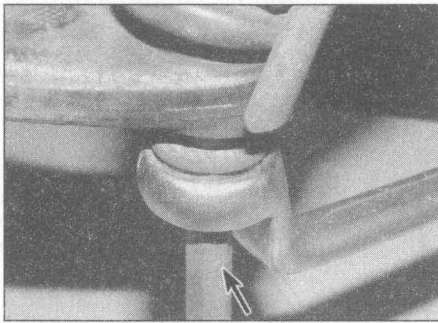
- |   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| 1 Beam axle with integral anti-roll bar | 3 Brake disc     |
| 2 Mounting bracket                      | 4 Coil spring    |
|   | 5 Shock absorber |

**5** Slacken and remove the nut securing the steering rack track rod to the hub carrier then free the balljoint from the hub. If the balljoint is tight, use a universal balljoint separator to free it. Discard the nut, a new one should be used on refitting.

**6** If the hub bearings are to be disturbed, remove the brake disc as described in Chapter 9. If not, unscrew the two bolts securing the brake caliper mounting bracket assembly to the hub carrier, and slide the caliper assembly off the disc. Using a piece of wire or string, tie the caliper to the front suspension coil spring, to avoid placing any strain on the hydraulic brake hose.



**2.1** Prise out the R-clip (arrowed), remove the locking collar and slacken the driveshaft nut



**2.7 Use a Torx bit (arrowed) in the balljoint end to counterhold the nut**

7 Slacken and remove the lower balljoint nut and free the balljoint shank from the lower arm, if necessary, using a universal balljoint separator (see illustration). Use a Torx bit in the balljoint end to counterhold the nut. Discard the nut and lift off the protector plate (if loose).

8 Undo the nut and withdraw the hub carrier-to-suspension strut bolts, noting that the bolts are inserted from the front of the vehicle.

9 Free the hub carrier assembly from the end of the strut, then release it from the outer constant velocity joint splines, and remove it from the vehicle. Suspend the driveshaft by string from the suspension strut to prevent and damage to the constant velocity joints.

**Refitting**

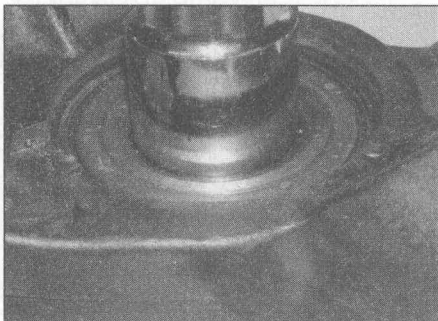
10 Ensure that the driveshaft outer constant velocity joint and hub splines are clean, then slide the hub fully onto the driveshaft splines.

11 Slide the hub assembly fully into the suspension strut bracket. Inset the bolts from the front using new nuts, and tighten them to the specified torque.

12 Refit the protector plate (where removed) to the lower balljoint. Align the balljoint with the lower arm and fit the new retaining nut, tightening it to the specified torque.

13 Engage the track rod balljoint in the hub carrier, then fit the new retaining nut and tighten it to the specified torque.

14 Where necessary, refit the brake disc to the hub, referring to Chapter 9 for further information. Slide the caliper into position, making sure the pads pass either side of the disc, and tighten the new caliper bracket bolts to the specified torque setting.



**3.2 Press the hub flange from the bearing**

15 Refit the wheel sensor as described in Chapter 9.

16 Lubricate the inner face and threads of the driveshaft retaining nut with clean engine oil, and refit it to the end of the driveshaft. Use the method employed on removal to prevent the hub from rotating (see paragraph 4), and tighten the driveshaft retaining nut to the specified torque. Check that the hub rotates freely then engage the locking cap with the driveshaft nut, so that one of its cut-outs is aligned with the driveshaft hole, and secure the cap in position with the R-clip. Alternatively, lightly tighten the nut at this stage and tighten it to the specified torque once the vehicle is resting on its wheels again.

17 Refit the roadwheel, then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the roadwheel bolts to the specified torque. If not already having done so, tighten the driveshaft retaining nut to the specified torque then refit the locking cap, aligning its cut-outs with the driveshaft hole, and secure it in position with the R-clip.

**3 Front hub bearings – renewal**



**Note:** The bearing is a sealed, pre-adjusted and prelubricated, double-row roller type, and is intended to last the car's entire service life without maintenance or attention. Never overtighten the driveshaft nut beyond the specified torque wrench setting in an attempt to 'adjust' the bearing.

**Note:** A press will be required to dismantle and rebuild the assembly; if such a tool is not available, a large bench vice and spacers (such as large sockets) will serve as an adequate substitute. The bearing's inner races are an interference fit on the hub; if the inner race remains on the hub when it is pressed out of the hub carrier, a knife-edged bearing puller will be required to remove it. A new bearing retaining circlip must be used on refitting.

1 Remove the hub carrier assembly as described in Section 2.

2 Support the hub carrier securely on blocks or in a vice. Using a tubular spacer which bears only on the inner end of the hub flange, press the hub flange out of the bearing (see

illustration). If the bearing's outboard inner race remains on the hub, remove it using a bearing puller (see note above).

3 Extract the bearing retaining circlip from the inner end of the hub carrier assembly (see illustration).

4 Where necessary, refit the inner race back in position over the ball cage, and securely support the inner face of the hub carrier. Using a tubular spacer which bears only on the inner race, press the complete bearing assembly out of the hub carrier.

5 Thoroughly clean the hub and hub carrier, removing all traces of dirt and grease, and polish away any burrs or raised edges which might hinder reassembly. Check both for cracks or any other signs of wear or damage, and renew them if necessary. Renew the circlip, regardless of its apparent condition.

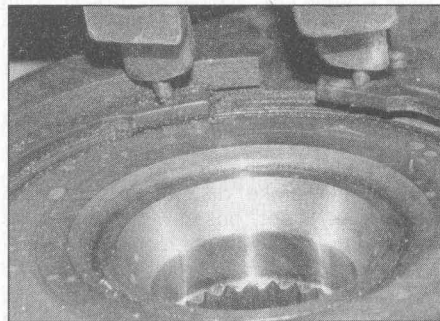
6 On reassembly, apply a light film of oil (Peugeot recommend Molykote 321R – available from your Peugeot dealer) to the bearing outer race and hub flange shaft, to aid installation of the bearing.

7 Securely support the hub carrier, and locate the bearing in the hub. Press the bearing fully into position, ensuring that it enters the hub squarely, using a tubular spacer which bears only on the bearing outer race. Note that the bearing is equipped with a magnetic encoder on its inboard face. When fitting the bearing ensure this face is inboard adjacent to the ABS wheel speed sensor (see illustration). Take care not to damage this encoder, or place it adjacent to a magnetic source. Ensure the encoder face is clean.

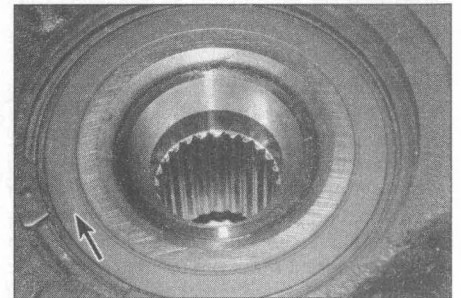
8 Once the bearing is correctly seated, secure the bearing in position with the new circlip, ensuring that it is correctly located in the groove in the hub carrier. **Note:** Align the gap between the ends of the circlip with the gap for the ABS wheel speed sensor.

9 Securely support the outer face of the hub flange, and locate the hub carrier bearing inner race over the end of the hub flange. Press the bearing onto the hub, using a tubular spacer which bears only on the inner race of the hub bearing, until it seats against the hub shoulder. Check that the hub flange rotates freely, and wipe off any excess oil or grease.

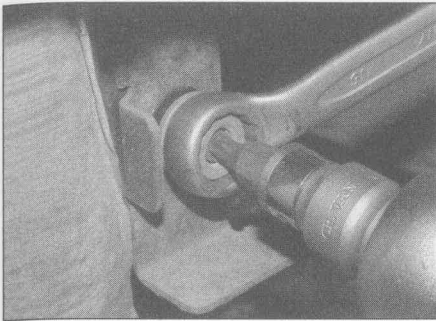
10 Refit the hub carrier assembly as described in Section 2.



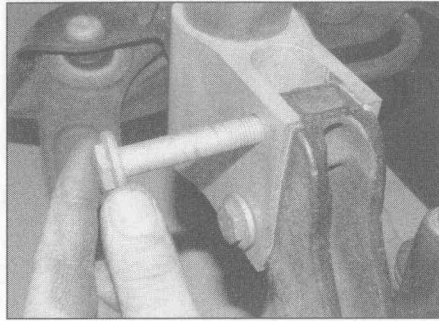
**3.3 Extract the circlip from the inner side of the hub carrier**



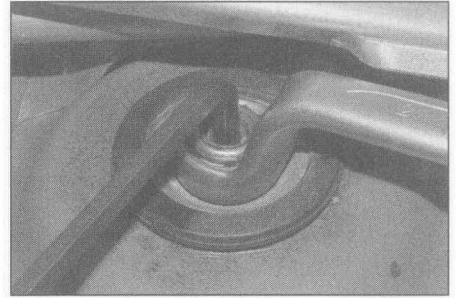
**3.7 Take great care not to damage the seal in the bearing (arrowed) – it contains the encoder for the wheel speed sensor**



4.2 Use a Torx bit to prevent rotation whilst the anti-roll bar link nut is undone



4.3 Note that the strut-to-hub carrier bolts are inserted from the front of the vehicle



4.6 Use an Allen key in the end of the rod to counterhold whilst slackening the strut nut

#### 4 Front suspension strut – removal and refitting



**Note:** Always renew any self-locking nuts when working on the suspension/steering components.

##### Removal

1 Chock the rear wheels, apply the handbrake, slacken the appropriate front roadwheel bolts, then jack up the front of the car and support on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the appropriate roadwheel.

2 Unscrew the nut securing the anti-roll bar connecting link to the strut, and position the link clear of the strut; if necessary, retain the balljoint shank with a Torx bit to prevent

rotation whilst the nut is slackened (see illustration). Discard the nut, a new one should be used on refitting.

3 Undo the bolts and pull the hub carrier from the lower end of the strut, noting that the bolts fit from the front of the strut (see illustration). To prevent the hub carrier assembly dropping whilst the strut is removed support the lower arm. Take care not to strain the brake hose and the wiring attached to the brake caliper and the hub carrier.

4 Remove both wiper arms as described in Chapter 12.

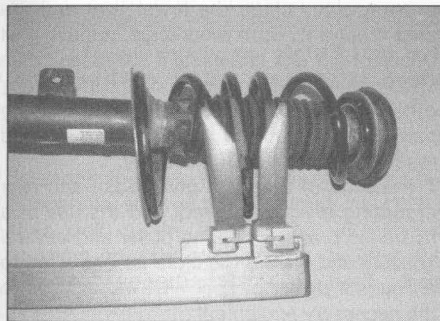
5 Remove the plastic scuttle trim from in front of the windscreen. The trim is secured by a plastic expanding rivet at each end. Push in the centre pins a little, then prise the complete rivets from place. Lift up the ends of the trim to release the trim, then pull it down to release it from the lower edge of the windscreen,

6 Working in the scuttle aperture, slacken and remove the strut upper mounting nut, counterholding the strut rod with an Allen key located in the end of the rod. Withdraw the strut from under the wheel arch (see illustration).

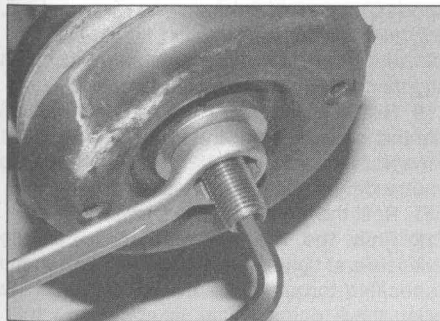
**Caution:** As soon as the upper mounting nut is removed, the strut will be unsupported.

##### Refitting

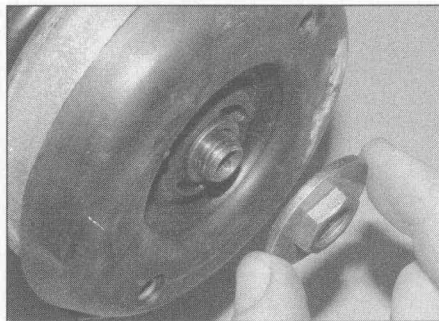
7 Manoeuvre the strut assembly into position, ensuring that the end of the strut rod is correctly located in the corresponding hole in the inner wing. Fit the upper mounting nut and tighten it to the specified torque.



5.1 Fit the coil compressors to the springs



5.2 Slacken the top nut whilst retaining the rod with an Allen key



5.3a Remove the nut . . .

8 Engage the lower end of the strut with the hub carrier, insert the bolts from the front and tighten them to the specified torque.

9 Refit the scuttle plastic trim, and the wiper arms.

10 Reconnect the anti-roll bar connecting link to the strut. Do not omit the wiring support bracket. Tighten the nut to the specified torque.

11 Refit the roadwheel, then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the roadwheel bolts to the specified torque.

#### 5 Front suspension strut – overhaul



**Warning:** Before attempting to dismantle the front suspension strut, a suitable tool to hold the coil spring in compression must be obtained. Adjustable coil spring compressors are readily-available, and are recommended for this operation. Any attempt to dismantle the strut without such a tool is likely to result in damage or personal injury.

**Note:** Always renew any self-locking nuts when working on the suspension/steering components.

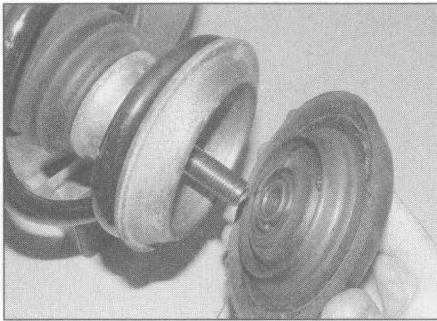
1 With the strut removed from the car (as described in Section 4), clean away all external dirt, then mount it upright in a vice. Fit the spring compressor and compress the coil spring until tension is relieved from the spring seats (see illustration).

2 Slacken and remove the upper spring seat nut whilst retaining the shock absorber piston with a suitable Allen key (see illustration).

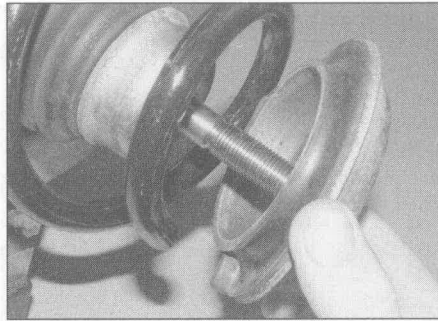
3 Remove the nut then lift off the thrust bearing followed by the spring seat (see illustrations).

4 Lift off the coil spring and remove the cap, dust gaiter and rubber bump stop from the shock absorber piston (see illustrations).

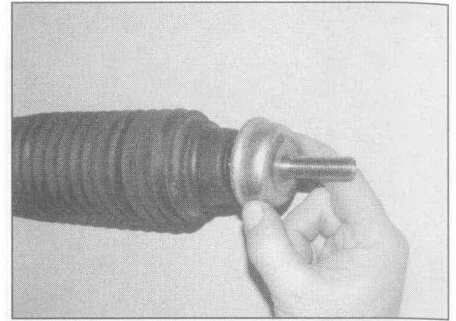
5 Examine the shock absorber for signs of fluid leakage. Check the piston for signs of pitting along its entire length, and check the shock body for signs of damage. While holding it in an upright position, test the operation of the shock absorber by moving the piston through a full stroke, and then



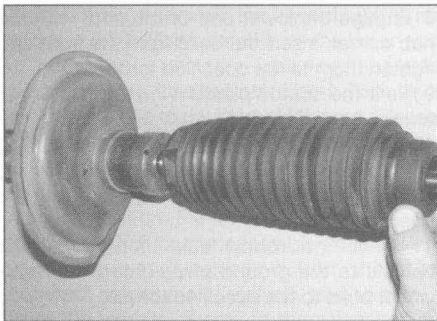
5.3b ... the thrust bearing ...



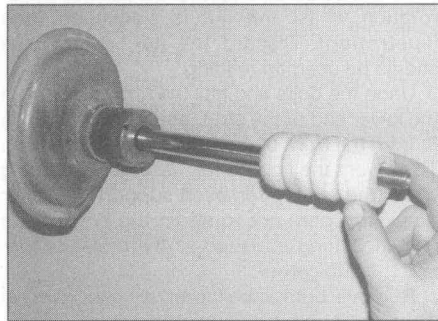
5.3c ... the spring seat ...



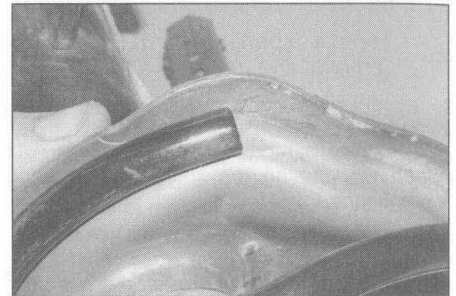
5.4a ... followed by the cap ...



5.4b ... the dust gaiter ...



5.4c ... and the bump stop



5.8 Ensure the lower end of the spring locates correctly against the spring seat stop

through short strokes of 50 to 100 mm. In both cases, the resistance felt should be smooth and continuous. If the resistance is jerky, or uneven, or if there is any visible sign of wear or damage to the shock absorber, renewal is necessary.

**6** Inspect all other components for signs of damage or deterioration, and renew any that are suspect.

**7** Slide the rubber bump stop onto the piston. Fit the dust gaiter and cap, making sure the lower end of gaiter is correctly positioned over the shock absorber end.

**8** Refit the coil spring, making sure its lower end is correctly seated against the spring seat stop. Fit the upper spring seat, aligning its stop with the spring end, then the thrust-bearing (see illustration).

**9** Fit the new nut. Retain the shock absorber piston and tighten the upper spring seat to the specified torque.



6.3 Undo the lower arm front pivot bolt ...

## 6 Front suspension lower arm – removal, overhaul and refitting

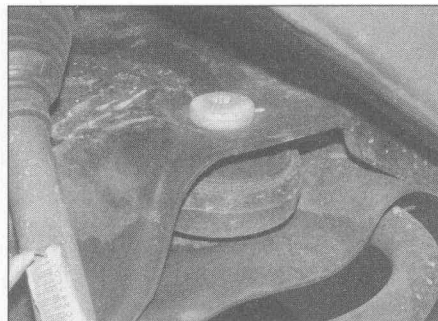
**Note:** Always renew any self-locking nuts when working on the suspension/steering components.

### Removal

**1** Remove the relevant driveshaft as described in Chapter 8.

**2** Slacken and remove the nut, then free the lower balljoint shank from the lower arm, if necessary, using a universal balljoint separator. Discard the nut and lift off the protector plate (if loose). Use a Torx bit in the end of the balljoint shank to counterhold the nut.

**3** Slacken and remove the lower arm front pivot bolt and nut (see illustration).



6.4 ... and rear pivot bolt

**4** Slacken and remove the rear pivot bolt and nut (see illustration).

**5** Manoeuvre the lower arm assembly out from underneath the vehicle.

### Overhaul

**6** Thoroughly clean the lower arm and the area around the arm mountings, removing all traces of dirt and underseal if necessary, then check carefully for cracks, distortion or any other signs of wear or damage, paying particular attention to the pivot bushes, and renew components as necessary.

**7** Renewal of the front pivot bush and rear mounting bracket will require the use of a hydraulic press, a bearing puller and several spacers and should therefore be entrusted to a Peugeot dealer or specialist with access to the necessary equipment.

### Refitting

**8** Manoeuvre the lower arm assembly into position, and refit the front pivot bolt and nut, tightening it finger-tight only.

**9** Refit the rear pivot bolt and nut, then tighten them to the specified torque.

**10** Refit the protector plate (where removed) to the lower balljoint, then locate the balljoint shank in the lower arm. Fit the new retaining nut and tighten it to the specified torque.

**11** Refit the driveshaft (see Chapter 8).

**12** Refit the roadwheel, then lower the vehicle and tighten the roadwheel bolts to the specified torque. Rock the car to settle the disturbed components in position, then tighten the lower arm front pivot bolt to the specified torque.

13 Check and, if necessary, adjust the front wheel alignment as described in Section 26.

## 7 Front suspension lower balljoint – removal and refitting



### Removal

- 1 Remove the hub carrier assembly as described in Section 2.
- 2 Remove the protector plate from the balljoint and mount the assembly securely in a vice (see illustration).
- 3 Using a hammer and pointed-nose chisel, tap up the staking securing the balljoint in position (see illustration).
- 4 Fit a deep socket to the balljoint, then unscrew it and remove it from the hub carrier.

### Refitting

- 5 Screw the balljoint into the hub carrier assembly. Fit the special tool, taking care not to damage the balljoint gaiter, and tighten the balljoint to the specified torque. Secure the balljoint in position by firmly staking it into one of the hub carrier notches using a hammer and punch.
- 6 Fit the new protector plate to the balljoint and secure it in position by staking it into the one of the balljoint notches.
- 7 Refit the hub carrier (see Section 2).

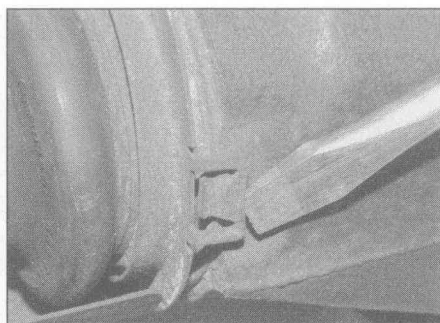
## 8 Front suspension anti-roll bar – removal and refitting



**Note:** Always renew any self-locking nuts when working on the suspension/steering components.

### Removal

- 1 Chock the rear wheels, firmly apply the handbrake, slacken the front roadwheel bolts, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove both front roadwheels.
- 2 Slacken and remove the nuts securing the left- and right-hand connecting links to the anti-roll bar, and position the links clear of the bar; if necessary, retain the balljoint shank with a Torx bit to prevent rotation whilst the nut is slackened (see illustration). Discard the nuts, new ones should be used on refitting.
- 3 Slacken the two anti-roll bar mounting clamp retaining bolts and nuts, and remove both clamps from the top of the subframe (see illustration).
- 4 Manoeuvre the anti-roll bar out from underneath the vehicle, and remove the mounting bushes from the bar.
- 5 Carefully examine the anti-roll bar components for signs of wear, damage or deterioration, paying particular attention to



7.2 Release the clips and remove the balljoint protector plate

the mounting bushes. Renew worn components as necessary.

### Refitting

- 6 Fit the rubber mounting bushes to the anti-roll bar. Position each bush so that its flat surface is at the bottom and its internal flats are correctly engaged with the flats on the anti-roll bar; the bush split should be facing towards the rear.
- 7 Offer up the anti-roll bar, and manoeuvre it into position on the subframe. Refit the mounting clamps, ensuring that their ends are correctly located in the hooks on the subframe, and refit the retaining bolts and nuts. Engage the connecting links with the ends of the bar then tighten the mounting clamp retaining bolts to the specified torque.
- 8 Fit the new retaining nuts to the connecting links and tighten them to the specified torque setting.
- 9 Refit the roadwheels then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the wheel bolts to the specified torque.

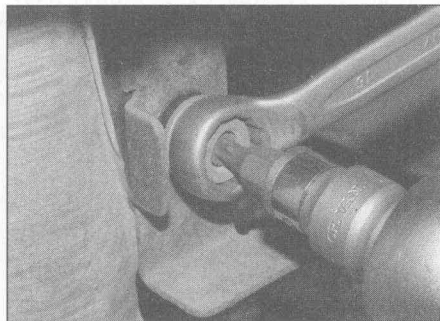
## 9 Front suspension anti-roll bar connecting link – removal and refitting



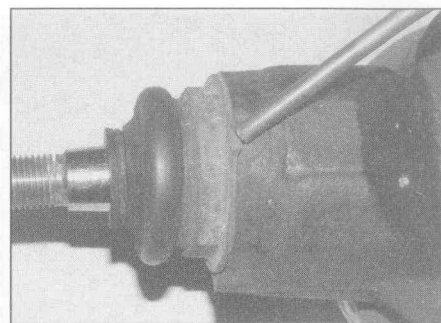
**Note:** New connecting link nuts will be required on refitting.

### Removal

- 1 Chock the rear wheels, firmly apply the handbrake, slacken the relevant roadwheel bolts, then jack up the front of the vehicle and



8.2 Use a Torx bit to counterhold the lower anti-roll bar link nut



7.3 Use a chisel or a punch to unstage the balljoint

support on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the relevant roadwheel.

- 2 Slacken and remove the nuts securing the connecting link to the anti-roll bar and suspension strut and remove the link from the vehicle; if necessary, retain the balljoint shanks with a Torx bit to prevent rotation whilst each nut is slackened (see illustration 4.2).
- 3 Inspect the link for signs of wear or damage and renew if necessary.

### Refitting

- 4 Refitting is the reverse of removal, using new nuts and tightening them to the specified torque setting.

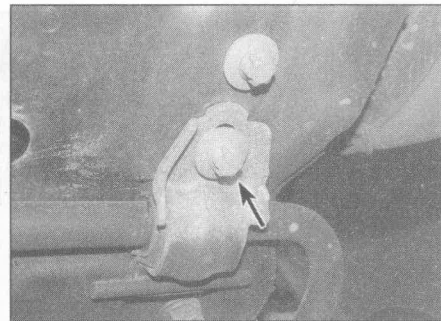
## 10 Front suspension subframe – removal and refitting



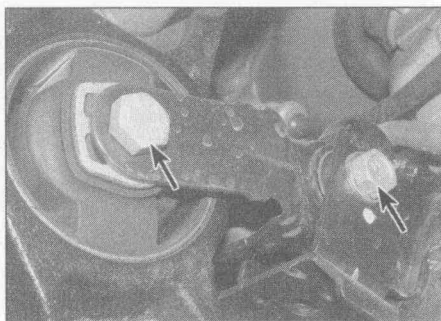
**Note:** Always renew any self-locking nuts when working on the suspension/steering components.

### Removal

- 1 Chock the rear wheels, firmly apply the handbrake, slacken the front roadwheel bolts, and then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove both front roadwheels.
- 2 Remove the anti-roll bar as described in Section 8.
- 3 Slacken and remove the engine/transmission rear lower mounting bolt and nut, then undo the



8.3 Undo the anti-roll bar clamp bolts (right-hand side arrowed)



**10.3 Undo the bolts (arrowed) securing the rear engine/transmission link rod**

nut and bolt securing the link rod to the subframe and remove the link (see illustration).

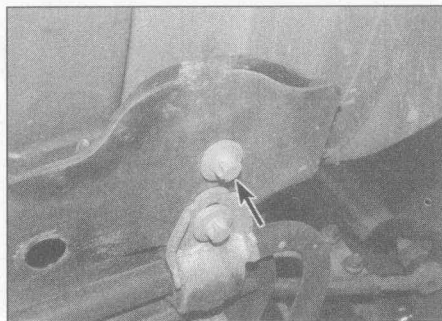
**4** Slacken and remove the left-hand lower balljoint nut and free the balljoint shank from the lower arm, if necessary, using a universal balljoint separator. Discard the nut. Repeat the procedure on the right-hand side.

**5** Slacken and remove the steering rack mounting nuts and washers. Discard the nuts, new ones must be fitted.

**6** Unclip the heat shield from the steering rack, then undo the bolt securing the power steering pipe bracket to the subframe.

**7** Make a final check that all control cables/hoses that are attached to the subframe have been released and positioned clear so that they will not hinder the removal procedure.

**8** Place a jack and a suitable block of wood under the subframe to support the subframe as it is lowered.



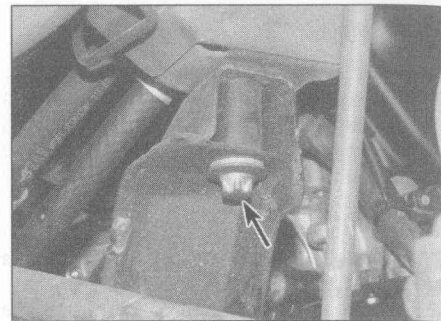
**10.9a Undo the front subframe rear mounting bolts (arrowed) . . .**

**9** Slacken and remove the subframe mounting bolts then carefully lower the subframe assembly out of position and remove it from underneath the vehicle, taking great care to ensure that the subframe assembly does not catch the power steering pipes as it is lowered out of position. Recover the washers between the steering rack and the subframe (see illustrations).

### Refitting

**10** Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure, noting the following points:

- a) Use new connecting link and lower balljoint nuts, and steering rack nuts.
- b) Tighten all nuts and bolts to the specified torque settings (where given).
- c) On completion check and, if necessary, adjust the front wheel alignment as described in Section 26.



**10.9b . . . and front mounting bolts (arrowed)**

### 11 Rear hub assembly – removal and refitting



**Note:** Do not remove the hub assembly unless it is absolutely necessary. A puller will be required to draw the hub assembly off the stub axle, and the hub bearing will almost certainly be damaged by the removal procedure, necessitating renewal of the hub assembly. A new hub nut and centre cap must be used on refitting.

### Removal

**1** Remove the rear brake disc as described in Chapter 9.

**2** Prise out the cap from the centre of the hub and discard; a new cap should be used on refitting (see illustration).

**3** Using a hammer and punch, tap up the staking securing the hub retaining nut to the groove in the stub axle (see illustration).

**4** Using a socket and long bar, unscrew the rear hub nut and discard it; a new hub nut should be used on refitting.

**5** Using a puller, draw the hub assembly off the stub axle, along with the outer bearing race (see illustration). If necessary, with the hub removed, use the puller to draw the inner bearing race off the stub axle.

**6** Check the hub bearing for signs of roughness. It is recommended that the hub bearing should be renewed as a matter of course, as it is likely to have been damaged during removal. This means that the complete hub assembly must be renewed, since it is not possible to obtain the bearing separately.

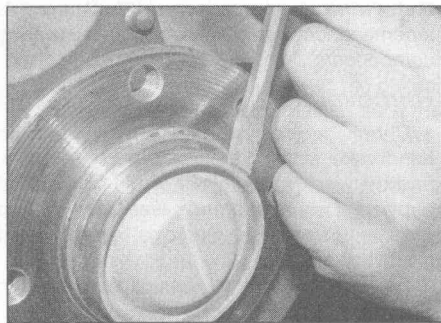
**7** With the hub removed, examine the stub axle shaft for signs of wear or damage, and if necessary renew it (see Section 15).

### Refitting

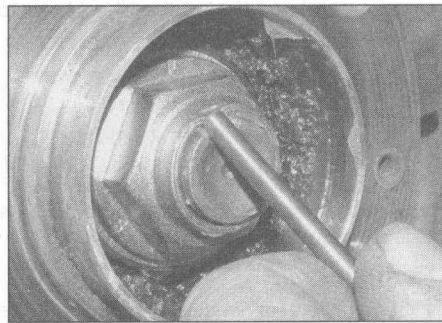
**8** Ensure that the bearing is packed with grease and lubricate the stub axle shaft with clean engine oil.

**9** Fit the new bearing assembly, tapping it fully onto the stub axle using a hammer and a tubular drift which bears only on the flat inside edge of the bearing inner race.

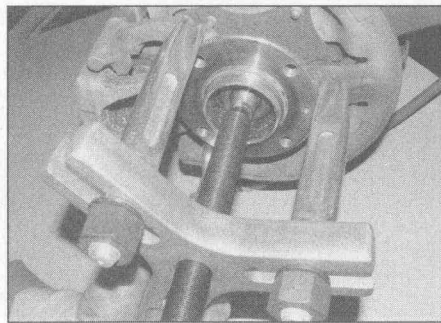
**10** Fit the new hub nut and tighten it to the specified torque. Stake the nut firmly into the



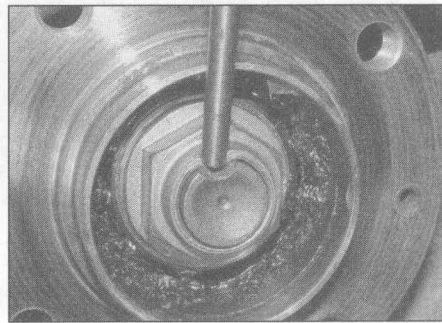
**11.2 Prise the cap from the hub**



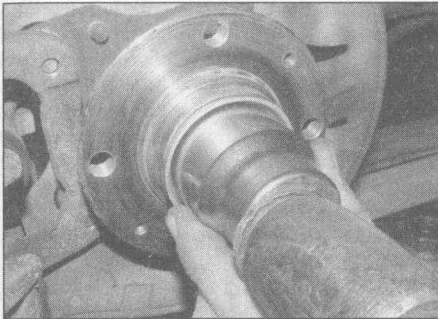
**11.3 Unstake the retaining nut**



**11.5 Use a puller to remove the hub**



**11.10a Stake the new nut . . .**



**11.10b** ... then fit a new hub cap using a large socket

groove on the stub axle to secure it in position, then tap the new hub cap into place in the centre of the hub (see illustrations).

**11** Refit the rear brake disc as described in Chapter 9.

## 12 Rear hub bearings – renewal

The hub bearing is an integral part of the hub assembly and is not available separately. If the bearing is worn, renew the complete hub assembly as described in Section 11.

## 13 Rear suspension shock absorber – removal, testing and refitting



**Note:** Always renew any self-locking nuts when working on the suspension/steering components.

### Removal

**1** Chock the front wheels, slacken the relevant rear roadwheel bolts, then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the relevant rear roadwheel.

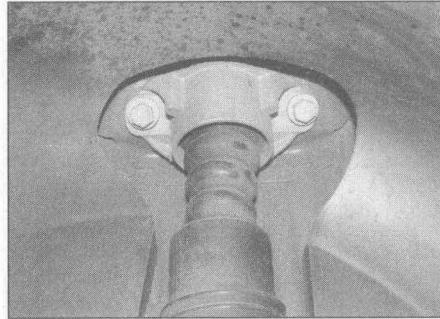
**2** Using a trolley jack positioned under the spring cup, raise the lower arm until the rear suspension coil spring is slightly compressed.

**3** Working in the wheel arch, undo the two shock absorber upper mounting bolts (see illustration).

**4** Slacken and remove the lower mounting bolt and nut then manoeuvre the shock absorber out of position (see illustration).

### Testing

**5** Examine the shock absorber for signs of fluid leakage or damage. Test the operation of the shock absorber, while holding it in an upright position, by moving the piston through a full stroke and then through short strokes of 50 to 100 mm. In both cases, the resistance felt should be smooth and continuous. If the resistance is jerky, or uneven, or if there is any visible sign of wear or damage, renewal is necessary. Also check the rubber mountings



**13.3** Undo the two shock absorber upper mounting bolts

for damage and deterioration. Renew worn components as necessary. Inspect the shank of the mounting bolt for signs of wear or damage, and renew as necessary. The self-locking nuts should be renewed as a matter of course.

### Refitting

**6** Prior to refitting the shock absorber, mount it upright in the vice, and operate it fully through several strokes in order to prime it. Apply a smear of multi-purpose grease to the lower mounting bolt and contact face of the new nut (Peugeot recommend Molykote G Rapide Plus – available from your Peugeot dealer).

**7** Fully extend the piston and manoeuvre the assembly into position. Refit the upper mounting bolts, and tighten them to the specified torque.

**8** Align the shock absorber lower mounting with the lower arm and refit the mounting bolt. Fit the new nut, tightening it lightly only at this stage.

**9** Refit the rear roadwheel then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the wheel bolts to the specified torque. Rock the vehicle to settle the shock absorber in position then tighten the shock absorber lower mounting to the specified torque setting.

## 14 Rear suspension coil spring – removal and refitting



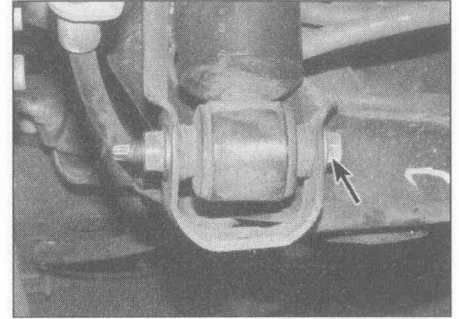
**Note:** Always renew any self-locking nuts when working on the suspension/steering components.

### Removal

**1** Chock the front wheels, slacken the rear roadwheel bolts, then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the rear roadwheels.

**2** Position a trolley jack underneath one of the lower arms' spring cup and raise the arm until the rear suspension coil spring on that side is slightly compressed.

**3** Unscrew the shock absorber lower mounting bolt/nut and withdraw the bolt.



**13.4** Remove the lower shock absorber mounting bolt (arrowed)

Discard the nut; a new should be used on refitting.

**4** Slowly lower the jack as far as the lower arm will go, then position the jack under the lower arm spring cup on the other side, and raise the arm until the coil spring on that side is slightly compressed.

**5** Slacken and remove the shock absorber lower mounting bolt. Again, discard the nut a new one must be fitted.

**6** Lower the jack until all tension in the springs is released, then remove the springs.

**7** Inspect the coil spring and its seats for signs of wear or damage and renew if necessary.

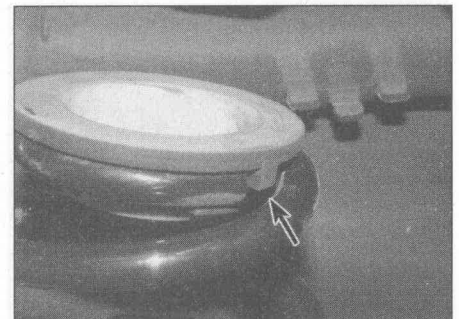
### Refitting

**8** Fit the lower spring seat in position on the lower arm, and seat the upper seat on top of the coil spring. Lubricate the shanks of the shock absorber and lower arm bolts and the contact faces of the new nuts with multi-purpose grease (Peugeot recommend Molykote G Rapide Plus – available from your Peugeot dealer).

**9** Manoeuvre the springs into position and carefully raise one lower arm with the jack, ensuring that the coil spring ends are correctly aligned with both seats, and point to the front of the vehicle (see illustration).

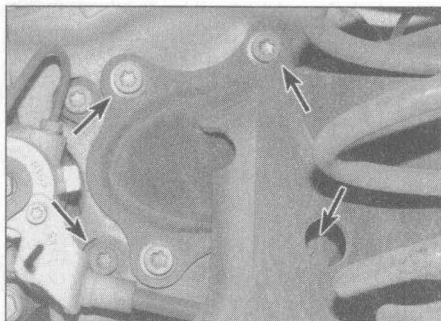
**10** Align the shock absorber with the lower arm and refit its mounting bolt. Fit the new nut to the bolt, tightening it lightly only at this stage.

**11** Remove the jack from underneath the lower arm, and position it under the lower arm spring cup on the remaining side.



**14.9** Ensure the ends of the coil springs align correctly with the seats (arrowed)





**15.5 Undo the four bolts (arrowed) securing the stub axle to the lower arm**

**12** Raise the jack and align the lower mounting of the shock absorber with the arm. Insert the bolt, and fit a new nut, tightening it lightly only at this stage.

**13** Refit the rear roadwheel then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the wheel bolts to the specified torque. Rock the vehicle to settle the lower arm in position then tighten the shock absorber lower mounting bolts/nuts to their specified torque settings.

**15 Rear suspension stub axle – removal, overhaul and refitting**

**Note:** Always renew any self-locking nuts when working on the suspension/steering components.

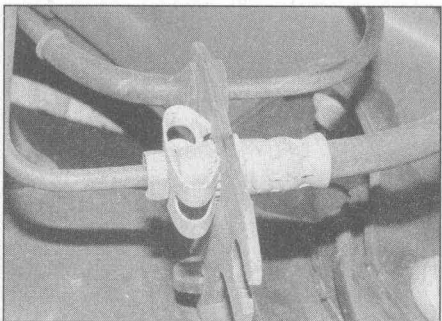
**Removal**

**1** Chock the front wheels, slacken the relevant rear roadwheel bolts, then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the relevant roadwheel.

**2** Unbolt the wheel sensor and position it clear of the stub axle (see Chapter 9). Note that there is no need to disconnect the wiring.

**3** Remove the hub assembly as described in Section 11. **Note:** If the stub axle is to be renewed, there is no need to remove the hub assembly, as the act of removal destroys the bearing necessitating its renewal.

**4** Undo the two rear brake caliper mounting bracket retaining bolts, and slide the caliper and bracket assembly from the disc. There is



**16.3 Undo the nut where the metal brake pipe joins the flexible pipe**

no need to disconnect the handbrake cable or caliper hose.

**5** Undo the four bolts securing the stub axle to the lower arm and remove it, complete with disc backplate (see illustration).

**6** Inspect the stub axle for signs of wear or damage. If the stub axle shaft is worn or damaged then the assembly must be renewed.

**Refitting**

**7** Obtain all the new nuts required and lubricate the shanks of the pivot bolts and contact faces of the new nuts with multi-purpose grease (Peugeot recommend Molykote G Rapide Plus – available from your Peugeot dealer).

**8** Offer up the stub axle and backplate, insert the bolts and tighten them to the specified torque.

**9** Fit the new hub assembly as described in Section 11.

**10** Refit the disc to the hub, and securely tighten the two disc retaining screws.

**11** Slide the brake caliper and bracket assembly over the edge of the disc, and tighten the mounting bracket bolts to the specified torque.

**12** Refit the wheel sensor to the stub axle (see Chapter 9).

**13** Refit the rear roadwheel then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the wheel bolts to the specified torque.

**16 Rear beam axle – removal, overhaul and refitting**

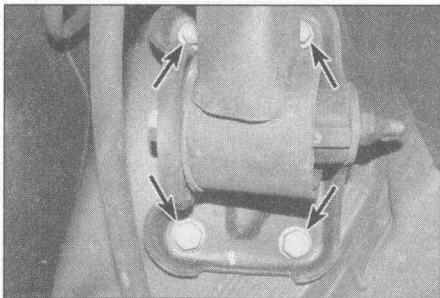
**Note:** Always renew any self-locking nuts when working on the suspension/steering components.

**Removal**

**1** Remove the coil springs as described in Section 14.

**2** Trace the ABS wheel speed sensor wiring back to its connector, and unplug it. Free the sensor harness from any retaining clips on the axle.

**3** Clamp the flexible brake hose, and undo the hose union where the flexible hose



**16.5 Undo the four bolts each side (arrowed) securing the axle brackets to the vehicle body**

connects to the rigid hose (see illustration). Plug the end of the hose/pipe to prevent dirt ingress. Repeat this procedure on the remaining side.

**4** Release the handbrake cables from the retaining clips along the axle, then release the ends of the cables from the caliper levers and support brackets (see Chapter 9). Repeat the procedure on the remaining side.

**5** Make alignment marks between the axle mounting brackets and the vehicle body to aid refitment. Undo the 4 bolts each side securing the mounting brackets to the vehicle body, and lower the axle to the floor (see illustration). If the axle is to be renewed, remove the brake caliper and disc (Chapter 9), and the stub axle (Section 15).

**Overhaul**

**6** Thoroughly clean the axle and the area around the axle mountings, removing all traces of dirt and underseal if necessary, then check carefully for cracks, distortion or any other signs of wear or damage, paying particular attention to the pivot bushes.

**7** Renewal of the pivot bushes will require the use of a hydraulic press and several spacers, and should therefore be entrusted to a Peugeot dealer or specialist with access to the necessary equipment.

**Refitting**

**8** Lubricate the shanks of the axle mounting bracket bolts with multi-purpose grease (Peugeot recommend Molykote G Rapide Plus – available from your Peugeot dealer).

**9** Offer up the axle and mounting brackets, aligning the previously made marks, and insert the retaining bolts. Tighten them to the specified torque.

**10** Refit the handbrake cables to their retaining clips on the axle, and reconnect the cable ends to the caliper levers (see Chapter 9).

**11** Reconnect the rear brake flexible hoses, tightening the hose/pipe unions securely. Remove the hose clamps.

**12** Refit the coil spring with reference to Section 14. On completion bleed the brakes as described in Chapter 9.

**17 Steering wheel – removal and refitting**

**Note:** All models are equipped with a driver's airbag.



**Warning:** Refer to the precautions given in Chapter 12 before proceeding.

**Removal**

**1** Remove the airbag unit as described in Chapter 12. Disconnect the lower wiring connector (see illustration).

**2** Position the front wheels in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering lock.

3 Slacken and remove the steering wheel retaining bolt then mark the steering wheel and steering column shaft in relation to each other (see illustration).

4 Lift the steering wheel off the column splines, feeding the airbag wires through the aperture in the steering wheel as it is withdrawn.



**If the wheel is tight, tap it up near the centre, using the palm of your hand, or twist it from side-to-side, whilst carefully pulling it upwards to release it from the shaft splines.**

**Refitting**

5 Prior to refitting the steering wheel, ensure that the front wheels are still in the straight-ahead position.

6 Refitting is a reversal of removal, noting the following points:

- a) Prior to refitting, ensure that the indicator switch stem is in its central position. Failure to do this could lead to the steering wheel lug breaking the switch tab as the steering wheel is refitted.
- b) On refitting, align the marks made on removal, taking great care not to damage the airbag unit wiring, then tighten the retaining bolt to the specified torque.
- c) On completion, refit the airbag unit as described in Chapter 12.

**18 Steering column – removal, inspection and refitting**

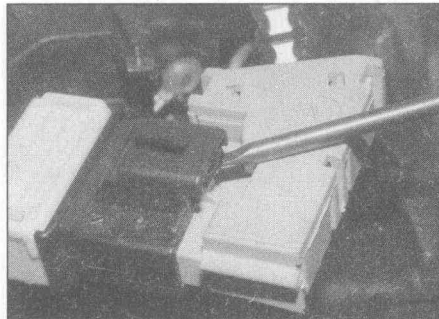


**Note:** As all models are equipped with a driver's airbag, refer to the precautions given in Chapter 12 before proceeding.

**Note:** A new pinch-bolt nut will be needed on refitting.

**Removal**

- 1 Remove the steering wheel as described in Section 17.
- 2 Move the driver's seat as far back as possible.
- 3 Working in the driver's footwell, make



**17.1 Lift the locking tab to disconnect the steering wheel lower wiring connector**

alignment marks between the universal joint and the steering rack pinion, release the retaining clip, then undo and remove the pinch-bolt/nut from the joint at the base of the column (see illustration).

4 Remove the combination switches from the top of the steering column as described in Chapter 12.

5 Release the retaining clips and remove the lower facia panel above the driver's pedals.

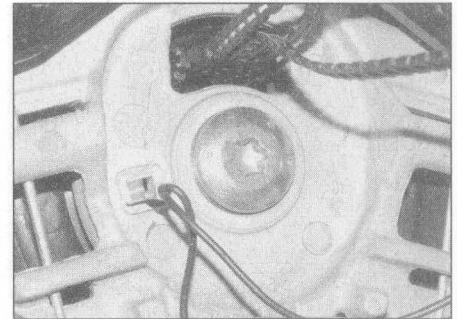
6 Trace the wiring back from the ignition switch and disconnect it at the wiring connectors.

7 Where applicable, undo the retaining bolt and free the wiring retaining bracket from the column. Note its fitted position, then release the wiring from its retaining clips and position it clear so that it does not hinder column removal.

8 Slacken and remove the four mounting bolts from the top of the column (see illustration). Slide the column assembly upwards, and free from the steering rack pinion, and remove it from the vehicle.

**Inspection**

9 Before refitting the steering column, examine the column and mountings for signs of damage and deformation, and renew as necessary. Check the steering shaft for signs of free play in the column bushes, and check the universal joints for signs of damage or roughness in the joint bearings. If any damage or wear is found on the steering column universal joint or shaft bushes, the column must be renewed as an assembly.



**17.3 Undo the steering wheel retaining bolt**

**Refitting**

10 Align the marks made prior to removal and engage the column universal joint with the steering rack pinion.

11 Slide the column assembly into position making sure its mounting bracket is correctly engaged with the facia bracket. Refit the column mounting bolts and tighten them to the specified torque setting.

12 Refit the universal joint pinch-bolt and nut, tighten them to the specified torque setting, then refit the retaining clip.

13 The remainder of refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure, noting the following.

- a) Ensure that all wiring is correctly routed and retained by all the necessary clips and ties.
- b) Refit the steering wheel as described in Section 17.

**19 Ignition switch/lock cylinder/steering lock – removal and refitting**



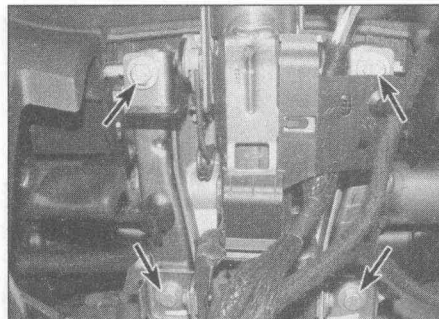
**Ignition switch/steering lock**

**Removal**

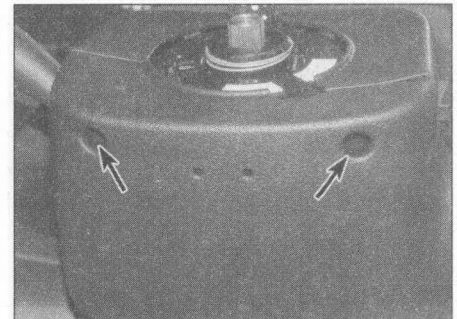
- 1 Disconnect the battery (see Chapter 5A).
- 2 Unclip and remove the facia panel below the steering column (see Chapter 11, Section 27).
- 3 Undo the retaining screws securing the steering column lower shroud in position, then lift the rear edge of the upper shroud, and release it from the two retaining clips at its front edge (see illustration).



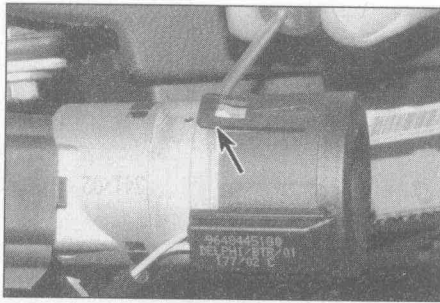
**18.3 Release the retaining clip (arrowed) then remove the pinch-bolt/nut**



**18.8 Undo the steering column mounting bolts (arrowed)**



**19.3 Undo the lower shroud retaining screws (arrowed)**



**19.6** Lift the transponder ring clips (upper arrowed) and slide it from the ignition switch

4 Release the ignition switch wiring harness from the retaining clip on the underside of the column.

5 Use a centre punch to mark the centre of the lock housing retaining screw then, using a drill and an extractor, remove the screw. Obviously, a new screw will be required.

6 Lift the two retaining clips and carefully pull the transponder immobiliser unit, to release it from the ignition switch housing (see illustration). The transponder can then be put to one side, with its wiring still connected. Take care not to damage the transponder assembly.

7 Note its routing, then trace the wiring back from the ignition switch, and disconnect its wiring connectors from the main wiring harness.

8 Insert the key into the steering lock and turn it to the first position.

9 Use a small screwdriver to depress the locating peg and slide the assembly from the steering column housing (see illustration).

10 Manoeuvre the ignition switch complete with the wiring block connectors out from the column.

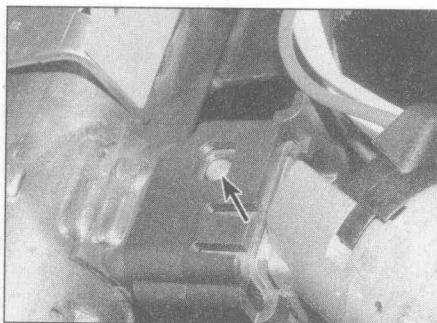
### Refitting

11 Refitting is a reversal of removal, noting the following points:

- a) Ensure all wiring is correctly routed, and securely clipped back into its original positions.
- b) Refit the steering lock housing with a new screw, tightening it until it shears.

### Lock cylinder

12 At the time of writing, the lock cylinder



**19.9** Depress the peg (arrowed) and slide the switch from the steering column

was not available separately from the ignition switch assembly.

## 20 Steering rack assembly – removal, overhaul and refitting

**Note:** Always renew any self-locking nuts when working on the suspension/steering components.

### Removal

1 Firmly apply the handbrake, slacken the front roadwheel bolts, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove both front roadwheels.

2 Slacken and remove the nuts securing the steering rack track rod balljoints to the hub carriers. Release the balljoint tapered shanks using a universal balljoint separator. Discard the nuts, new ones will be needed on refitting.

3 Remove the plastic cover from the front right-hand corner of the engine compartment, and unscrew the power steering fluid reservoir cap.

4 Working underneath the vehicle, undo the rack mounting nuts and studs. Recover the washers fitted between the rack and the subframe, noting their fitted positions (see illustration). Discard the rack mounting studs and nuts, new ones must be fitted.

5 Unclip the heat shield from the steering rack, then undo the bolt securing the steering rack pipes bracket to the front of the subframe (see illustration).

6 Position a jack under the centre of the front subframe. Remove the four subframe mounting bolts (see illustrations 10.9a and 10.9b). **Note:** On diesel models, detach the exhaust rubber mountings from the subframe.

7 Undo the bolt and detach the rear engine mounting link from the bracket on the rear of the cylinder block. Lower the subframe approximately 60 mm (see illustration 10.3).

8 Clean the area around the rack pinion housing, then undo the nuts securing the fluid pipes to the rack pinion housing, release the pipes from the retaining clamp, and drain the fluid into a container (see illustration). Turn the steering wheel from lock-to-lock to assist the draining process, remembering to recentre the steering wheel afterwards. Discard the pipes' O-ring seals, new ones must be fitted. Plug the ends of the pipes to prevent dirt ingress.

9 Working in the driver's footwell, using paint or a suitable marker pen, make alignment marks between the steering column universal joint and the steering rack pinion, then slacken and remove the universal joint pinch-bolt, and release the retaining clip (see illustration 18.3).

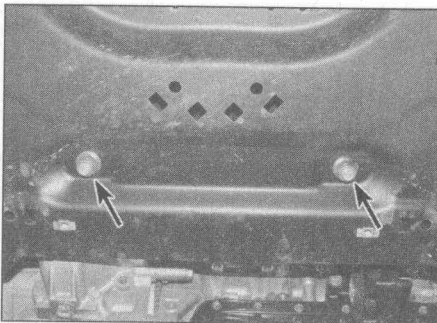
10 Still in the driver's footwell, undo the two retaining nuts and remove the seal around the steering rack pinion.

11 Free the steering rack pinion from the column universal joint and manoeuvre it out through the driver's side wheel arch aperture.

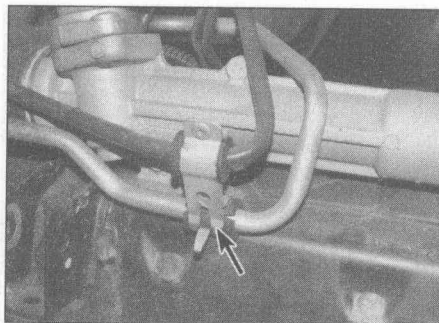
### Overhaul

12 Examine the steering rack assembly for signs of wear or damage, and check that the rack moves freely throughout the full length of its travel, with no signs of roughness or excessive free play between the steering rack pinion and rack. Inspect all the steering rack fluid unions for signs of leakage, and check that all union nuts are securely tightened.

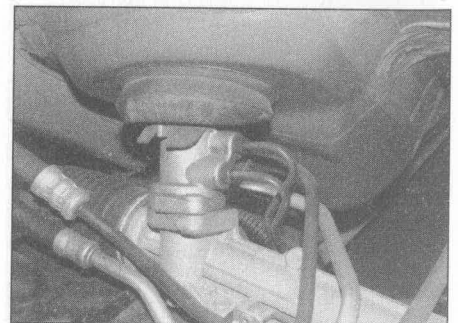
13 It is possible to overhaul the steering rack assembly housing components, but this task should be entrusted to a Peugeot dealer or specialist. The only components which can be renewed easily by the home mechanic are the steering rack gaiters, the track rod balljoints and the track rods which are covered elsewhere in this Chapter.



**20.4** Steering rack mounting nuts (arrowed)



**20.5** Steering rack pipes bracket (arrowed)



**20.8** Undo the fluid pipes unions

## Refitting

- 14 Manoeuvre the steering rack into position and engage it with the column universal joint, aligning the marks made prior to removal.
- 15 Slide the washers into position between the subframe and steering rack. Insert the new mounting studs, and tighten the nuts to the specified torque.
- 16 The remainder of refitting is a reversal of removal, noting the following points:
  - a) Top-up the fluid reservoir and bleed the hydraulic system as described in Section 22.
  - b) On completion check and, if necessary adjust the front wheel alignment as described in Section 26.

### 21 Steering rack rubber gaiters – renewal

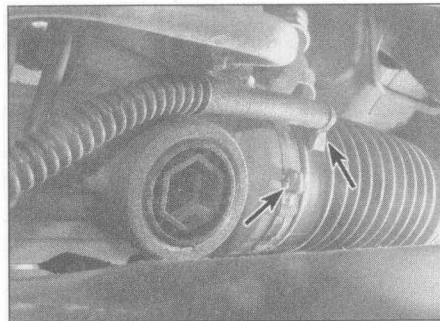


- 1 Remove the track rod balljoint as described in Section 24.
- 2 If renewing the left-hand side gaiter, remove the battery and battery box as described in Chapter 5A.
- 3 Disconnect the breather pipe from the gaiter (see illustration).
- 4 Mark the correct fitted position of the gaiter on the track rod, then release the retaining clips and slide the gaiter off the steering rack housing and track rod end (see illustration).
- 5 Thoroughly clean the track rod and the steering rack housing, using fine abrasive paper to polish off any corrosion, burrs or sharp edges, which might damage the new gaiter's sealing lips on installation. Scrape off all the grease from the old gaiter, and apply it to the track rod inner balljoint. (This assumes that grease has not been lost or contaminated as a result of damage to the old gaiter. Use fresh grease if in doubt.)
- 6 Carefully slide the new gaiter onto the track rod end, and locate it on the steering rack housing. Align the outer edge of the gaiter with the mark made on the track rod prior to removal, then secure it in position with new retaining clips (where fitted).
- 7 Reconnect the breather pipe to the gaiter.
- 8 Where applicable, refit the battery box and battery as described in Chapter 5A.
- 9 Refit the track rod balljoint as described in Section 24.

### 22 Power steering system – bleeding



- 1 This procedure will only be necessary when any of the hydraulic system has been disconnected.
- 2 Referring to *Weekly checks*, remove the fluid reservoir filler cap, and top-up with the new specified fluid to the upper level mark.
- 3 Start the engine and allow it to idle for 3 minutes without moving the steering wheel.



21.3 Rack gaiter breather pipe and inner clip (arrowed)

Check the fluid level frequently during this period and top it up if necessary.

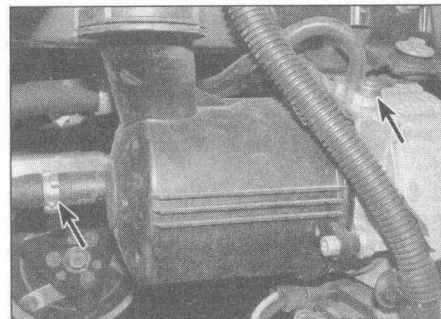
- 4 Slowly move the steering from lock-to-lock several times to purge out the trapped air, then top-up the level in the fluid reservoir. Repeat this procedure until the fluid level in the reservoir does not drop any further.
- 5 Turn the engine off and allow the system to cool. Once cool, check that fluid level is up to the upper mark on the power steering fluid reservoir, topping-up if necessary.

### 23 Power steering pump – removal and refitting

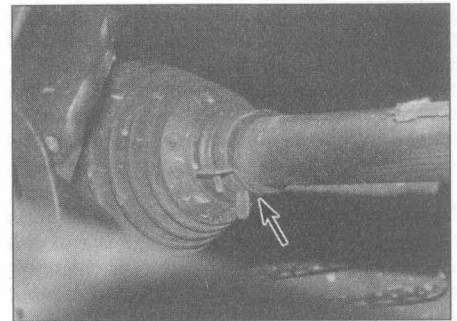


#### Removal

- 1 Remove the windscreen washer fluid reservoir from the right-hand front wheel arch as described in Chapter 12.
- 2 Release the retaining clips and disconnect the fluid pipes from the power steering pump (see illustration). Be prepared for fluid spillage, and plug the pump and pipe openings to prevent dirt ingress.
- Caution: Do not bend the rigid power steering pump fluid pipe.**
- 3 Disconnect the power steering pump wiring plug(s).
- 4 Undo the upper and lower pump mounting bolt/nuts and remove the pump from the wheel arch (see illustration).
- 5 If the power steering pump is faulty it must be renewed. The pump is a sealed unit and cannot be overhauled.



23.2 Disconnect the fluid pipes (arrowed) from the pump



21.4 Rack gaiter outer retaining clip (arrowed)

## Refitting

- 6 Manoeuvre the pump into position, then refit its mounting bolts and tighten them to the specified torque.
- 7 Reconnect the feed pipe to the pump and securely tighten the union nut. Refit the supply pipe to the pump, and secure it with a new clip.
- 8 Refit the windscreen washer fluid reservoir as described in Chapter 12.
- 9 Refit the plastic cover to the right-hand side of the engine compartment.
- 10 On completion, bleed the hydraulic system as described in Section 22.

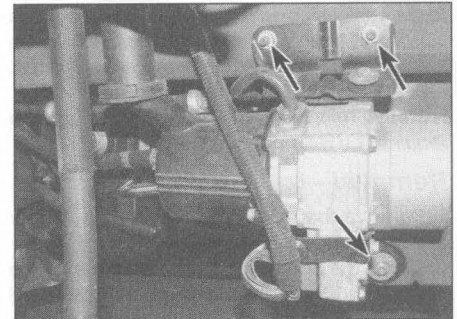
### 24 Track rod balljoint – removal and refitting



**Note:** A new balljoint retaining nut will be required on refitting.

#### Removal

- 1 Apply the handbrake, slacken the appropriate front roadwheel bolts, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the appropriate front roadwheel.
- 2 If the balljoint is to be re-used, use a straight-edge and a scribe, or similar, to mark its relationship to the track rod.
- 3 Hold the track rod, and unscrew the balljoint locknut by a quarter of a turn. Do not move the locknut from this position, as it will serve as a handy reference mark on refitting.



23.4 Undo the upper and lower pump mounting bolt/nuts

4 Slacken and remove the nut securing the track rod balljoint to the hub carrier; discard the nut, a new one will be needed on refitting. Release the balljoint tapered shank using a universal balljoint separator (see illustrations).

5 Counting the **exact** number of turns necessary to do so, unscrew the balljoint from the track rod end.

6 Count the number of exposed threads between the end of the balljoint and the locknut, and record this figure. If a new balljoint is to be fitted, unscrew the locknut from the old balljoint.

7 Carefully clean the balljoint and the threads. Renew the balljoint if its movement is sloppy or too stiff, if excessively worn, or if damaged in any way; carefully check the stud taper and threads. If the balljoint gaiter is damaged, the complete balljoint assembly must be renewed; it is not possible to obtain the gaiter separately.

### Refitting

8 If a new balljoint is to be fitted, screw the locknut onto its threads, and position it so that the same number of exposed threads are visible, as was noted prior to removal.

9 Screw the balljoint into the track rod by the number of turns noted on removal. This should bring the balljoint locknut to within a quarter of a turn of the alignment marks that were made on removal (if applicable).

10 Ensure that the protector plate is in position then locate the balljoint shank in the hub carrier. Fit a new retaining nut and tighten it to the specified torque.

11 Refit the roadwheel, then lower the vehicle to the ground and tighten the roadwheel bolts to the specified torque.

12 Check and, if necessary, adjust the front wheel alignment as described in Section 26, then securely tighten the balljoint locknut.

## 25 Track rod – removal and refitting



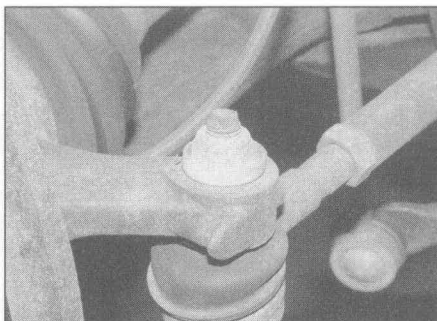
**Note:** A special wrench (Peugeot number 0721-A) will be required to remove/refit the track rod inner balljoint from the end of the steering rack. Without the clamp damage to the assembly is likely. The special wrench engages with the balljoint housing allowing the track rod to be easily slackened/tightened without the risk of damage. Note that without access to the special tool, track rod removal will be difficult, especially without causing damage.

**Note:** A new balljoint retaining nut will be required on refitting.

### Removal

1 Remove the relevant steering rack rubber gaiter as described in Section 21.

2 Using the special wrench (see note at the start of the Section), unscrew the track rod inner balljoint from the steering rack end. Take great care not to place excess strain on the rack as the joint is unscrewed, if necessary,



24.4a Undo the balljoint nut . . .

prevent the steering rack from turning by holding it carefully with a pair of grips. Take great care not to mark the surfaces of the rack and balljoint. To eliminate the possibility of damage, a Peugeot special tool (0721-B) is available to prevent the rack from twisting.

3 Remove the track rod assembly. Examine the track rod inner balljoint for signs of slackness or tight spots, and check that the track rod itself is straight and free from damage. If necessary, renew the track rod; it is also recommended that the steering rack gaiter/dust cover is renewed.

### Refitting

4 Screw the balljoint into the steering rack, and tighten it to the specified torque. If necessary, retain the steering rack with a pair of grips or the special Peugeot tool, again taking great care not to damage or mark the track rod balljoint or steering rack.

5 Carefully slide on the new gaiter, and locate it on the steering rack housing. Turn the steering fully from lock-to-lock, to check that the gaiter is correctly positioned on the track rod, then secure it in position with new retaining clips (where fitted).

6 Refit the track rod balljoint as described in Section 24.

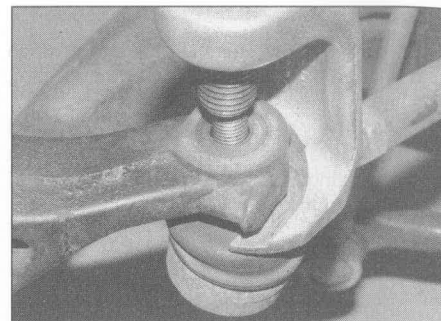
## 26 Wheel alignment and steering angles – information, checking and adjustment



### Definitions

1 A car's steering and suspension geometry is defined in four basic settings – all angles are expressed in degrees (toe settings are also expressed as a measurement); the steering axis is defined as an imaginary line drawn through the axis of the suspension strut, extended where necessary to contact the ground.

2 **Camber** is the angle between each roadwheel and a vertical line drawn through its centre and tyre contact patch, when viewed from the front or rear of the car. Positive camber is when the roadwheels are tilted outwards from the vertical at the top; negative camber is when they are tilted inwards. The camber angle is not adjustable.



24.4b . . . then use a balljoint separator to release the tapered shank

3 **Castor** is the angle between the steering axis and a vertical line drawn through each roadwheel's centre and tyre contact patch, when viewed from the side of the car. Positive castor is when the steering axis is tilted so that it contacts the ground ahead of the vertical; negative castor is when it contacts the ground behind the vertical. The castor angle is not adjustable.

4 **Toe** is the difference, viewed from above, between lines drawn through the roadwheel centres and the car's centre-line. 'Toe-in' is when the roadwheels point inwards, towards each other at the front, while 'toe-out' is when they splay outwards from each other at the front.

5 The front wheel toe setting is adjusted by screwing the track rod in or out of its balljoints, to alter the effective length of the track rod assembly.

6 Rear wheel toe setting is not adjustable.

### Checking and adjustment

7 Due to the special measuring equipment necessary to check the wheel alignment and steering angles, and the skill required to use it properly, the checking and adjustment of these settings is best left to a Peugeot dealer or similar expert. Note that most tyre-fitting shops now possess sophisticated checking equipment. The following is provided as a guide, should the owner decide to carry out a DIY check.

#### Front wheel toe setting

8 The front wheel toe setting is checked by measuring the angle of the wheels in relation to the longitudinal axis of the vehicle. Proprietary toe measurement gauges are available from motor accessory shops. Adjustment is made by screwing the balljoints in or out of their track rods, to alter the effective length of the track rod assemblies.

9 For **accurate** checking, the vehicle **must** be at the reference height. This height is the distance between the lower edge of the reinforced sill seam of the jack support at the front of the sill (H1) and the rear of the sill (H2). These two reference heights (H1 and H2) are dependant on the tyre sizes:

Tyre size	H1	H2
195/65	157 mm	150 mm
205/55	152 mm	147 mm
205/50	160 mm	153 mm

These heights can be obtained by pulling the vehicle down by using clamps on a four poster vehicle ramp, although it may be possible to achieve the reference height by placing weights centrally within the vehicle. Consequently, checking the wheel alignment with gauges without the vehicle at reference height will only produce an approximate setting.

**10** Before starting work, check first that the tyre sizes and types are as specified, then check the tyre pressures and tread wear, the roadwheel run-out, the condition of the hub bearings, the steering wheel free play, and the condition of the front suspension components (see *Weekly checks* and the relevant Part of Chapter 1). Correct any faults found.

**11** Park the vehicle on level ground, check that the front roadwheels are in the straight-ahead position, then rock the rear and front ends to settle the suspension. Release the handbrake, and roll the vehicle backwards 1 metre, then forwards again, to relieve any stresses in the steering and suspension components. If possible, set the reference height of the vehicle as described in Paragraph 9.

**12** Follow the tracking gauge manufacturer's instructions and measure the toe setting.

**13** If adjustment is necessary, apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it securely on axle stands. Turn the steering wheel onto full-left lock, and record the number of exposed threads on the right-hand track rod end. Now turn the steering onto full-right lock, and record the number of threads on the left-hand side. If there are the same number of threads visible on both sides, then subsequent adjustment should be made equally on both sides. If there are more threads visible on one side than the other, it will be necessary to compensate for this during adjustment. **Note:** *It is most important that after adjustment, the same number of threads are visible on each track rod end.*

**14** First clean the track rod threads; if they are corroded, apply penetrating fluid before starting adjustment. Release the rubber gaiter outboard clips (where necessary), and peel back the gaiters; apply a smear of grease to the inside of the gaiters, so that both are free, and will not be twisted or strained as their respective track rods are rotated.

**15** Use a straight-edge and a scribe or similar to mark the relationship of each track rod to its balljoint then, holding each track rod in turn, unscrew its locknut fully.

**16** Alter the length of the track rods, bearing in mind the note made in paragraph 13. Screw them into or out the balljoints, rotating the track rod using an open-ended spanner fitted to the flats provided on the track rod. Shortening the track rods (screwing them into their balljoints) will reduce toe-in/increase toe-out.

**17** When the setting is correct, hold the track rods and tighten the balljoint locknuts to the specified torque setting. Check that the balljoints are seated correctly in their sockets, and count the exposed threads to check the length of both track rods. If they are not the same, then the adjustment has not been made equally, and problems will be encountered with tyre scrubbing in turns; also, the steering wheel spokes will no longer be horizontal when the wheels are in the straight-ahead position.

**18** If the track rod lengths are the same, lower the vehicle to the ground and recheck the toe setting; re-adjust if necessary. When the setting is correct, tighten the track rod balljoint locknuts to the specified torque. Ensure that the rubber gaiters are seated correctly, and are not twisted or strained, and secure them in position with new retaining clips (where necessary).



# Chapter 11

## Bodywork and fittings

### Contents

Body exterior fittings – removal and refitting	21	Maintenance – bodywork and underframe	2
Bonnet – removal, refitting and adjustment	8	Maintenance – upholstery and carpets	3
Bonnet lock – removal and refitting	10	Major body damage – repair	5
Bonnet release cable – removal and refitting	9	Minor body damage – repair	4
Central locking components – removal and refitting	17	Mirrors and mirror glass – removal and refitting	18
Centre console – removal and refitting	26	Rear bumper – removal and refitting	7
Door – removal, refitting and adjustment	11	Scuttle grille panel – removal and refitting	22
Door handle and lock components – removal and refitting	13	Seat belt components – removal and refitting	24
Door inner trim panel – removal and refitting	12	Seats – removal and refitting	23
Door window glass, regulator and quarter light – removal and refitting	14	Sunroof – general information	20
Facia panel components – removal and refitting	27	Tailgate and support struts – removal and refitting	15
Front bumper – removal and refitting	6	Tailgate lock components – removal and refitting	16
General information	1	Windscreen, tailgate and fixed/hinged side window glass – general information	19
Interior trim – removal and refitting	25		

### Degrees of difficulty

**Easy**, suitable for novice with little experience



**Fairly easy**, suitable for beginner with some experience



**Fairly difficult**, suitable for competent DIY mechanic



**Difficult**, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic



**Very difficult**, suitable for expert DIY or professional



### Specifications

#### Torque wrench setting

Seat belt mountings

Nm

30

lbf ft

22

#### 1 General information

The bodysell is made of pressed-steel sections, and is available in a three or five-door Hatchback version or five-door Estate. Most components are welded together, but some use is made of structural adhesives. The front wings are bolted on.

The bonnet, doors and some other vulnerable panels are made of zinc-coated metal, and are further protected by being coated with an anti-chip primer prior to being sprayed.

Extensive use is made of plastic materials, mainly in the interior, but also in exterior components. The front and rear bumpers and the front grille are injection-moulded from a synthetic material which is very strong, yet light. Plastic components such as wheel arch liners are fitted to the underside of the vehicle, to improve the body's resistance to corrosion.

#### 2 Maintenance – bodywork and underframe



The general condition of a vehicle's bodywork is the one thing that significantly affects its value. Maintenance is easy, but needs to be regular. Neglect, particularly after minor damage, can lead quickly to further deterioration and costly repair bills. It is important also to keep watch on those parts of the vehicle not immediately visible, for instance the underside, inside all the wheel arches, and the lower part of the engine compartment.

The basic maintenance routine for the bodywork is washing – preferably with a lot of water, from a hose. This will remove all the loose solids which may have stuck to the vehicle. It is important to flush these off in such a way as to prevent grit from scratching the finish. The wheel arches and underframe need washing in the same way, to remove any

accumulated mud which will retain moisture and tend to encourage rust. Paradoxically enough, the best time to clean the underframe and wheel arches is in wet weather, when the mud is thoroughly wet and soft. In very wet weather, the underframe is usually cleaned of large accumulations automatically, and this is a good time for inspection.

Periodically, except on vehicles with a wax-based underbody protective coating, it is a good idea to have the whole of the underframe of the vehicle steam-cleaned, engine compartment included, so that a thorough inspection can be carried out to see what minor repairs and renovations are necessary. Steam-cleaning is available at many garages, and is necessary for the removal of the accumulation of oily grime, which sometimes is allowed to become thick in certain areas. If steam-cleaning facilities are not available, there are one or two excellent grease solvents available, which can be brush-applied; the dirt can then be simply hosed off. Note that these methods should



not be used on vehicles with wax-based underbody protective coating, or the coating will be removed. Such vehicles should be inspected annually, preferably just prior to winter, when the underbody should be washed down, and any damage to the wax coating repaired using underseal. Ideally, a completely fresh coat should be applied. It would also be worth considering the use of wax-based protection for injection into door panels, sills, box sections, etc, as an additional safeguard against rust damage, where such protection is not provided by the vehicle manufacturer.

After washing paintwork, wipe off with a chamois leather to give an unspotted clear finish. A coat of clear protective wax polish will give added protection against chemical pollutants in the air. If the paintwork sheen has dulled or oxidised, use a cleaner/polisher combination to restore the brilliance of the shine. This requires a little effort, but such dulling is usually caused because regular washing has been neglected. Care needs to be taken with metallic paintwork, as a special non-abrasive cleaner/polisher is required to avoid damage to the finish. Always check that the door and ventilator opening drain holes and pipes are completely clear, so that water can be drained out. Brightwork should be treated in the same way as paintwork. Windscreens and windows can be kept clear of the smeary film which often appears, by the use of proprietary glass cleaner. Never use any form of wax or other body or chromium polish on glass.

### 3 Maintenance – upholstery and carpets



Mats and carpets should be brushed or vacuum-cleaned regularly, to keep them free of grit. If they are badly stained, remove them from the vehicle for scrubbing or sponging, and make quite sure they are dry before refitting. Seats and interior trim panels can be kept clean by wiping with a damp cloth and a proprietary upholstery cleaner. If they do become stained (which can be more apparent on light-coloured upholstery), use a little liquid detergent and a soft nail brush to scour the grime out of the grain of the material. Do not forget to keep the headlining clean in the same way as the upholstery. When using liquid cleaners inside the vehicle, do not over-wet the surfaces being cleaned. Excessive damp could get into the seams and padded interior, causing stains, offensive odours or even rot. If the inside of the vehicle gets wet accidentally, it is worthwhile taking some trouble to dry it out properly, particularly where carpets are involved.

**Caution: Do not leave oil or electric heaters inside the vehicle for this purpose.**

### 4 Minor body damage – repair



#### Scratches

If the scratch is very superficial, and does not penetrate to the metal of the bodywork, repair is very simple. Lightly rub the area of the scratch with a paintwork renovator, or a very fine cutting paste, to remove loose paint from the scratch, and to clear the surrounding bodywork of wax polish. Rinse the area with clean water.

Apply touch-up paint to the scratch using a fine paint brush; continue to apply fine layers of paint until the surface of the paint in the scratch is level with the surrounding paintwork. Allow the new paint at least two weeks to harden, then blend it into the surrounding paintwork by rubbing the scratch area with a paintwork renovator or a very fine cutting paste. Finally apply wax polish.

Where the scratch has penetrated right through to the metal of the bodywork, causing the metal to rust, a different repair technique is required. Remove any loose rust from the bottom of the scratch with a penknife, then apply rust-inhibiting paint, to prevent the formation of rust in the future. Using a rubber or nylon applicator, fill the scratch with bodystopper paste. If required, this paste can be mixed with cellulose thinners, to provide a very thin paste which is ideal for filling narrow scratches. Before the stopper-paste in the scratch hardens, wrap a piece of smooth cotton rag around the top of a finger. Dip the finger in cellulose thinners, and quickly sweep it across the surface of the stopper-paste in the scratch; this will ensure that the surface of the stopper-paste is slightly hollowed. The scratch can now be painted over as described earlier in this Section.

#### Dents

When deep denting of the vehicle's bodywork has taken place, the first task is to pull the dent out, until the affected bodywork almost attains its original shape. There is little point in trying to restore the original shape completely, as the metal in the damaged area will have stretched on impact, and cannot be reshaped fully to its original contour. It is better to bring the level of the dent up to a point which is about 3 mm below the level of the surrounding bodywork. In cases where the dent is very shallow anyway, it is not worth trying to pull it out at all. If the underside of the dent is accessible, it can be hammered out gently from behind, using a mallet with a wooden or plastic head. Whilst doing this, hold a suitable block of wood firmly against the outside of the panel, to absorb the impact from the hammer blows and thus prevent a large area of the bodywork from being 'belled-out'.

Should the dent be in a section of the

bodywork which has a double skin, or some other factor making it inaccessible from behind, a different technique is called for. Drill several small holes through the metal inside the area – particularly in the deeper section. Then screw long self-tapping screws into the holes, just sufficiently for them to gain a good purchase in the metal. Now the dent can be pulled out by pulling on the protruding heads of the screws with a pair of pliers.

The next stage of the repair is the removal of the paint from the damaged area, and from an inch or so of the surrounding 'sound' bodywork. This is accomplished most easily by using a wire brush or abrasive pad on a power drill, although it can be done just as effectively by hand, using sheets of abrasive paper. To complete the preparation for filling, score the surface of the bare metal with a screwdriver or the tang of a file, or alternatively, drill small holes in the affected area. This will provide a really good 'key' for the filler paste.

To complete the repair, see the Section on filling and respraying.

#### Rust holes or gashes

Remove all paint from the affected area, and from an inch or so of the surrounding 'sound' bodywork, using an abrasive pad or a wire brush on a power drill. If these are not available, a few sheets of abrasive paper will do the job most effectively. With the paint removed, you will be able to judge the severity of the corrosion, and therefore decide whether to renew the whole panel (if this is possible) or to repair the affected area. New body panels are not as expensive as most people think, and it is often quicker and more satisfactory to fit a new panel than to attempt to repair large areas of corrosion.

Remove all fittings from the affected area, except those which will act as a guide to the original shape of the damaged bodywork (eg headlight shells etc). Then, using tin snips or a hacksaw blade, remove all loose metal and any other metal badly affected by corrosion. Hammer the edges of the hole inwards, in order to create a slight depression for the filler paste.

Wire-brush the affected area to remove the powdery rust from the surface of the remaining metal. Paint the affected area with rust-inhibiting paint; if the back of the rusted area is accessible, treat this also.

Before filling can take place, it will be necessary to block the hole in some way. This can be achieved by the use of aluminium or plastic mesh, or aluminium tape.

Aluminium or plastic mesh, or glass-fibre matting, is probably the best material to use for a large hole. Cut a piece to the approximate size and shape of the hole to be filled, then position it in the hole so that its edges are below the level of the surrounding bodywork. It can be retained in position by several blobs of filler paste around its periphery.

Aluminium tape should be used for small or very narrow holes. Pull a piece off the roll, trim it to the approximate size and shape required, then pull off the backing paper (if used) and stick the tape over the hole; it can be overlapped if the thickness of one piece is insufficient. Burnish down the edges of the tape with the handle of a screwdriver or similar, to ensure that the tape is securely attached to the metal underneath.

### Filling and respraying

Before using this Section, see the Sections on dent, minor scratch, rust holes and gash repairs.

Many types of bodyfiller are available, but generally speaking, those proprietary kits which contain a tin of filler paste and a tube of resin hardener are best for this type of repair; some can be used directly from the tube. A wide, flexible plastic or nylon applicator will be found invaluable for imparting a smooth and well-contoured finish to the surface of the filler.

Mix up a little filler on a clean piece of card or board – measure the hardener carefully (follow the maker's instructions on the pack), otherwise the filler will set too rapidly or too slowly. Using the applicator, apply the filler paste to the prepared area; draw the applicator across the surface of the filler to achieve the correct contour and to level the surface. As soon as a contour that approximates to the correct one is achieved, stop working the paste – if you carry on too long, the paste will become sticky and begin to 'pick-up' on the applicator. Continue to add thin layers of filler paste at 20-minute intervals, until the level of the filler is just proud of the surrounding bodywork.

Once the filler has hardened, the excess can be removed using a metal plane or file. From then on, progressively-finer grades of abrasive paper should be used, starting with a 40-grade production paper, and finishing with a 400-grade wet-and-dry paper. Always wrap the abrasive paper around a flat rubber, cork, or wooden block – otherwise the surface of the filler will not be completely flat. During the smoothing of the filler surface, the wet-and-dry paper should be periodically rinsed in water. This will ensure that a very smooth finish is imparted to the filler at the final stage.

At this stage, the 'dent' should be surrounded by a ring of bare metal, which in turn should be encircled by the finely 'feathered' edge of the good paintwork. Rinse the repair area with clean water, until all of the dust produced by the rubbing-down operation has gone.

Spray the whole area with a light coat of primer – this will show up any imperfections in the surface of the filler. Repair these imperfections with fresh filler paste or bodystopper, and once more smooth the surface with abrasive paper. If bodystopper is

used, it can be mixed with cellulose thinners, to form a really thin paste which is ideal for filling small holes. Repeat this spray-and-repair procedure until you are satisfied that the surface of the filler, and the feathered edge of the paintwork, are perfect. Clean the repair area with clean water, and allow to dry fully.

The repair area is now ready for final spraying. Paint spraying must be carried out in a warm, dry, windless and dust-free atmosphere. This condition can be created artificially if you have access to a large indoor working area, but if you are forced to work in the open, you will have to pick your day very carefully. If you are working indoors, dousing the floor in the work area with water will help to settle the dust which would otherwise be in the atmosphere. If the repair area is confined to one body panel, mask off the surrounding panels; this will help to minimise the effects of a slight mismatch in paint colours. Bodywork fittings (eg chrome strips, door handles etc) will also need to be masked off. Use genuine masking tape, and several thicknesses of newspaper, for the masking operations.

Before commencing to spray, agitate the aerosol can thoroughly, then spray a test area (an old tin, or similar) until the technique is mastered. Cover the repair area with a thick coat of primer; the thickness should be built up using several thin layers of paint, rather than one thick one. Using 400 grade wet-and-dry paper, rub down the surface of the primer until it is really smooth. While doing this, the work area should be thoroughly doused with water, and the wet-and-dry paper periodically rinsed in water. Allow to dry before spraying on more paint.

Spray on the top coat, again building up the thickness by using several thin layers of paint. Start spraying at the top of the repair area, and then, using a side-to-side motion, work downwards until the whole repair area and about 2 inches of the surrounding original paintwork is covered. Remove all masking material 10 to 15 minutes after spraying on the final coat of paint.

Allow the new paint at least two weeks to harden, then, using a paintwork renovator or a very fine cutting paste, blend the edges of the paint into the existing paintwork. Finally, apply wax polish.

### Plastic components

With the use of more and more plastic body components by the vehicle manufacturers (eg bumpers, spoilers, and in some cases major body panels), rectification of more serious damage to such items has become a matter of either entrusting repair work to a specialist in this field, or renewing complete components. Repair of such damage by the DIY owner is not really feasible, owing to the cost of the equipment and materials required for effecting such repairs. The basic technique involves making

a groove along the line of the crack in the plastic, using a rotary burr in a power drill. The damaged part is then welded back together, using a hot air gun to heat up and fuse a plastic filler rod into the groove. Any excess plastic is then removed, and the area rubbed down to a smooth finish. It is important that a filler rod of the correct plastic is used, as body components can be made of a variety of different types (eg polycarbonate, ABS, polypropylene).

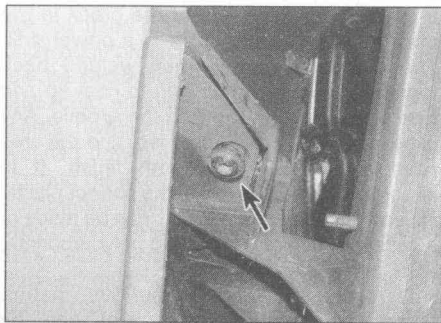
Damage of a less serious nature (abrasions, minor cracks etc) can be repaired by the DIY owner using a two-part epoxy filler repair material. Once mixed in equal proportions, this is used in similar fashion to the bodywork filler used on metal panels. The filler is usually cured in twenty to thirty minutes, ready for sanding and painting.

If the owner is renewing a complete component himself, or if he has repaired it with epoxy filler, he will be left with the problem of finding a suitable paint for finishing which is compatible with the type of plastic used. At one time, the use of a universal paint was not possible, owing to the complex range of plastics encountered in body component applications. Standard paints, generally speaking, will not bond to plastic or rubber satisfactorily. However, it is now possible to obtain a plastic body parts finishing kit which consists of a pre-primer treatment, a primer and coloured top coat. Full instructions are normally supplied with a kit, but basically, the method of use is to first apply the pre-primer to the component concerned, and allow it to dry for up to 30 minutes. Then the primer is applied, and left to dry for about an hour before finally applying the special-coloured top coat. The result is a correctly-coloured component, where the paint will flex with the plastic or rubber, a property that standard paint does not normally possess.

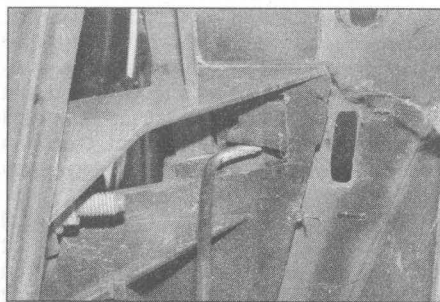
## 5 Major body damage – repair



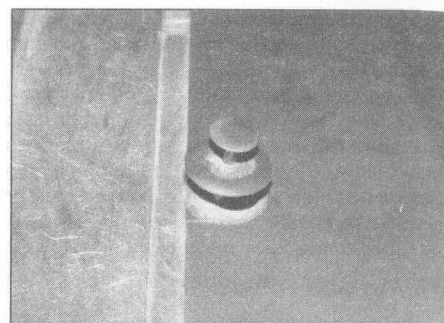
Where serious damage has occurred, or large areas need renewal due to neglect, it means that complete new panels will need welding-in, and this is best left to professionals. If the damage is due to impact, it will also be necessary to check completely the alignment of the bodyshell, and this can only be carried out accurately by a Peugeot dealer, or accident repair specialist, using special jigs. If the body is left misaligned, it is primarily dangerous, as the car will not handle properly, and secondly, uneven stresses will be imposed on the steering, suspension and possibly transmission, causing abnormal wear, or complete failure, particularly to such items as the tyres.



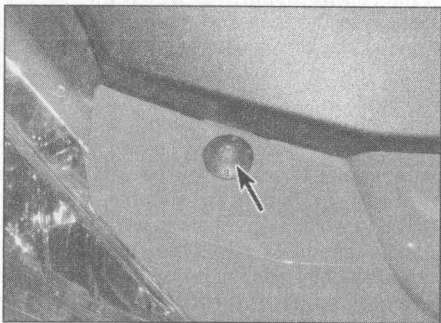
6.4 Undo the bumper-to-wing screws (arrowed)



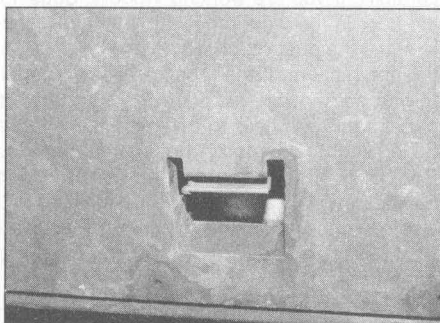
6.5 Insert the rod into the slot alongside the clip, then twist the rod and pull down the clip



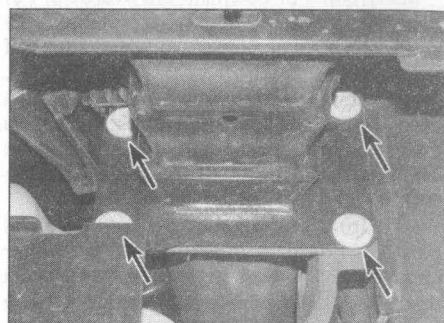
6.6a Prise up the centre pins, and lever out the expansion rivets



6.6b Undo the screws (arrowed)



6.7 Depress the levers to release the clips



6.11 Undo the bumper bar bolts (arrowed)

## 6 Front bumper – removal and refitting



**Note:** The help of an assistant is useful to support the bumper during the removal and refitting procedure.

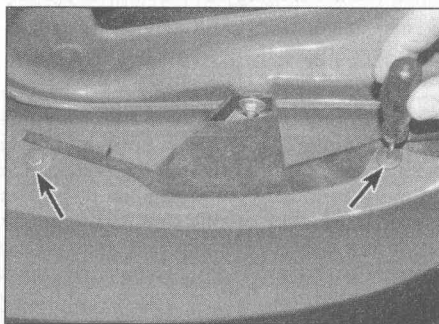
### Removal

- 1 Firmly apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it securely on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). To improve access to the bumper fasteners, remove both front roadwheels.
- 2 Remove the headlamp washer jets as described in Chapter 12.
- 3 Push in the centre pins a little, then prise out the complete plastic expanding rivets securing bolt wheel arch liners to the body.
- 4 Remove the screws (one each side) securing the upper edge of the bumper to the underside of the wing (see illustration).
- 5 Using a length of rod with a bend at the end, release the four clips (two each side) securing the bumper to the wing (see illustration). Insert the rod along side the clip, then twist the rod 90° to pull the clips down and release the bumper.
- 6 The bumper is secured by four plastic expanding rivets along its top edge, and two screws adjacent to the headlamps. Prise up the centre pins a little, lever the complete rivets from place, then undo the screws (see illustrations).
- 7 Depress the levers to release the two clips

- on the underside of the bumper, and unscrew the three fasteners securing the engine undershield to the bumper (see illustration).
- 8 With the help of an assistant, carefully pull the bumper forward. Take care no to damage the grille as it's manoeuvred over the bonnet lock assembly.
  - 9 If required, the rubber bumper inserts can be carefully prised from place using a plastic spatula.
  - 10 To remove the bumper bar, remove the washer fluid reservoir and headlamps as described in Chapter 12.
  - 11 Undo the four bolts each side and remove the bumper bar (see illustration). Tie the horn to one side, or disconnect the wiring plug and remove it from the vehicle.

### Refitting

- 12 Refitting is a reversal of removal, ensuring



7.3 Remove the bolt and plastic rivet beneath the rear light aperture (arrowed)

that the bumper correctly engages with the retaining clips each side as it is located in position.

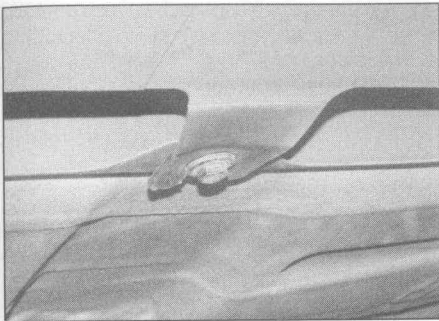
## 7 Rear bumper – removal and refitting



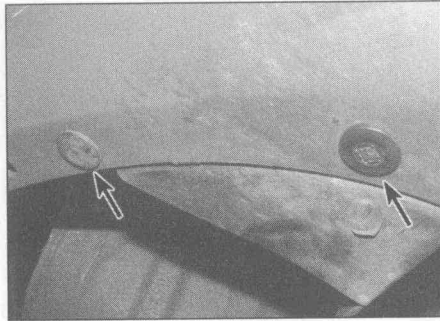
**Note:** The help of an assistant is useful to support the bumper during the removal and refitting procedure.

### Removal

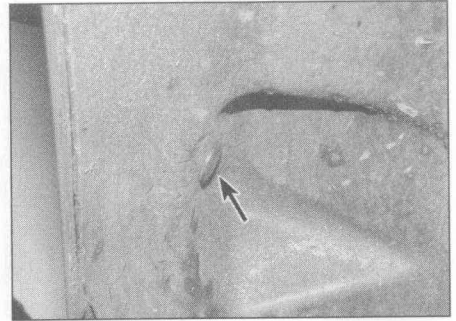
- 1 Chock the front wheels, then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support securely on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*).
- #### Hatchback models
- 2 Remove the rear light cluster on both sides as described in Chapter 12.
  - 3 Push down the centre pin, prise up the expanding plastic rivet, then undo the bolt beneath the rear light aperture (see illustration). Repeat this procedure on the remaining side.
  - 4 Undo the screw at the centre underside of the bumper (see illustration).
  - 5 At each end of the underside of the bumper, push in the centre pins, and prise out the plastic expanding rivets (see illustration).
  - 6 Push in the centre pin, prise out the nut and pull the rear section of the rear wheel arch liner forward (see illustrations).



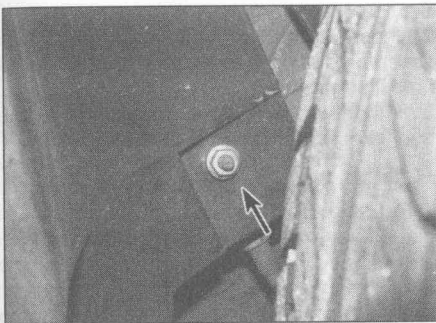
7.4 Undo the screw in the centre of the bumper underneath



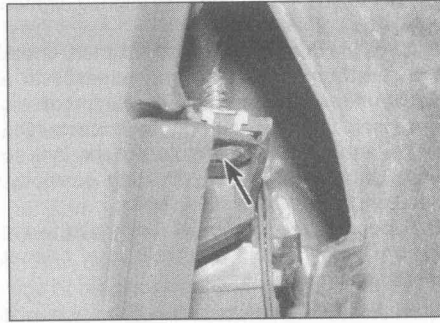
7.5 Push in the centre pins and prise out the plastic rivets (arrowed)



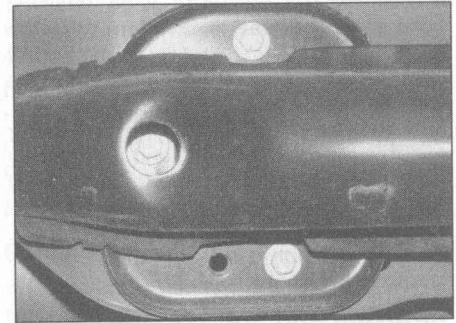
7.6a Push in the centre pin, prise out the plastic rivet (arrowed) . . .



7.6b . . . then undo the nut (arrowed) and pull the rear section of the wheel arch liner forward



7.7 Undo the Torx screw (arrowed) at the front upper edge of the bumper



7.9 Undo the bumper bar bolts (left-hand side)

7 At the front upper edge of the bumper undo the Torx screw (see illustration).

8 Disconnect the number plate lights as the bumper is withdrawn.

9 To remove the bumper bar, undo the three bolts on the left-hand side, and the four bolts on the right-hand side (lift the luggage compartment floor to access the inner bolt), and withdraw the bar from the vehicle (see illustration).

10 If required, the rubber bumper inserts can be prised from place using a plastic spatula after the bumper cover has been removed.

#### Estate/SW models

11 Remove the rear light cluster on both sides as described in Chapter 12.

12 Undo the bolt each side under the light cluster aperture (see illustration).

13 Push in the centre pins, prise out the complete rivets, undo the nuts and remove the wheel arch liner.

14 Undo the two screws each side securing the upper front corner of the bumper cover to the rear wing (see illustration).

15 Push in the centre pins, and prise out the two complete plastic expanding rivets securing the under side of the bumper each side (see illustration).

16 Undo the three screws underneath the centre of the rear bumper and manoeuvre the bumper from the vehicle.

17 If required, remove the bumper bar as described in Paragraph 9.

#### Refitting

18 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

### 8 Bonnet – removal, refitting and adjustment

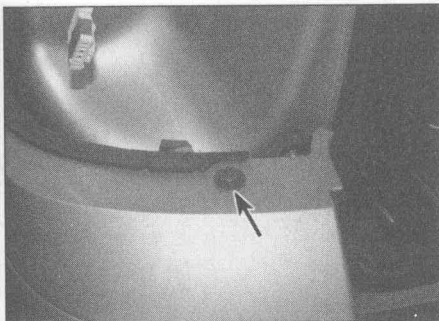


#### Removal

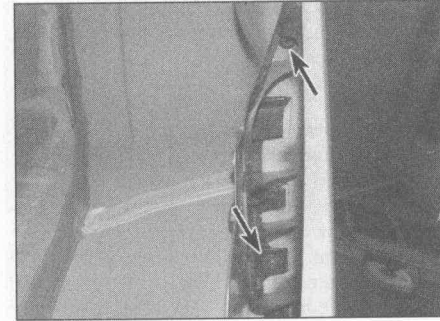
1 Open the bonnet and have an assistant support it then, using a pencil or felt tip pen, mark the outline of each bonnet hinge relative to the bonnet, to use as a guide on refitting.

2 The bonnet insulation panel is secured by plastic expanding rivets. Prise up the centre pins a little, lever out the rivets, and remove the insulation panel (see illustration).

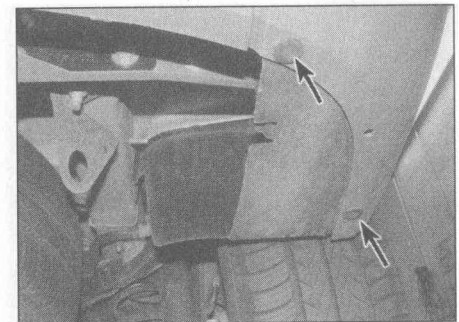
3 Disconnect the washer jet tubing, and jet heater wiring (where fitted). Release the tubing and wiring from any retaining clips.



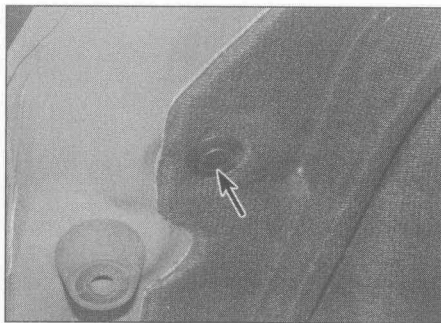
7.12 Undo the bolt under the rear light aperture (arrowed)



7.14 Two Torx screws secure the upper edge of the bumper (arrowed)



7.15 Push in the centre pins and prise out the two rivets each side (arrowed)



8.2 Prise up the centre pin then lever out the plastic rivet (arrowed)

4 Unscrew the bonnet-to-hinge retaining bolts each side (see illustration). With the help of the assistant, carefully lift the bonnet from the vehicle. Store the bonnet out of the way in a safe place.

5 Inspect the bonnet hinges for signs of wear and free play at the pivots, and if necessary renew. Each hinge is secured to the body by two bolts, accessible after removing the scuttle grille panel as described in Section 22. On refitting, apply a smear of multi-purpose grease to the hinges.

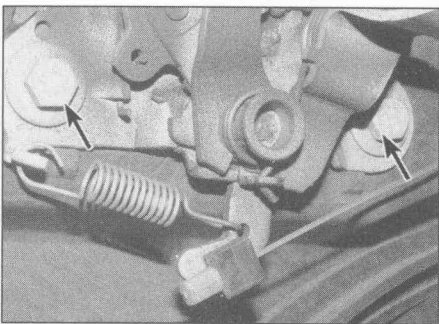
#### Refitting and adjustment

6 With the aid of an assistant, offer up the bonnet, and engage the retaining bolts. Align the hinges with the marks made on removal, then tighten the retaining bolts securely.

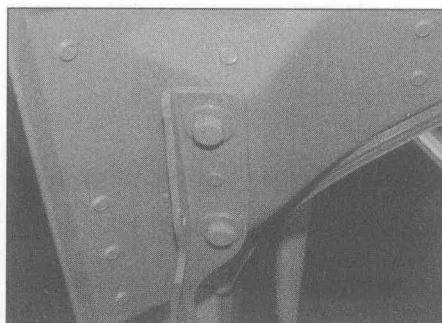
7 Close the bonnet, and check for alignment with the adjacent panels. If necessary, slacken the hinge bolts and re-align the



9.5 Undo the bolt securing the bonnet release handle



10.2 Bonnet lock retaining bolts (arrowed)



8.4 Undo the two bonnet hinge bolts each side

bonnet to suit. When correctly aligned, tighten the hinge bolts securely.

8 Once the bonnet is correctly aligned, check that the bonnet fastens and releases in a satisfactory manner. If adjustment is necessary, slacken the bonnet lock retaining bolts, and adjust the position of the lock to suit. Once the lock is operating correctly, securely tighten its retaining bolts.

9 Reconnect the washer jet tuning and wiring (where applicable), and refit the bonnet insulation panel

#### 9 Bonnet release cable – removal and refitting

##### Removal

1 Remove the front bumper as described in Section 6.

2 Working in the engine compartment, disconnect the end of the cable from the lock lever. Work along the length of the cable in the engine compartment, note their fitted locations, and release the cable retaining clips.

3 Use a screwdriver to push the cable bulkhead grommet into the passenger cabin.

4 Remove the built-in systems interface/fusebox as described in Chapter 12.

5 Working under the fascia on the left-hand side, unscrew the release lever bolt, and withdraw the lever assembly from its location (see illustration).

6 Tie a length of string to the end of the cable in the engine compartment, note its routing, then carefully pull the cable through into the passenger compartment. Untie the string from the end of the cable, and leave it in position to aid refitting.

##### Refitting

7 Locate the cable in position in the passenger compartment.

8 Tie the end of the new cable to the string, and pull it through into the engine compartment.

9 Check that the bulkhead grommet is securely seated, then remove the string and connect the cable to the bonnet lock lever.

10 Secure the release lever in place, tightening its retaining bolt securely.

11 Secure the cable in place with its retaining clips. Check the lock operates satisfactorily before proceeding.

12 Refit the built-in systems interface/fusebox as described in Chapter 12.

13 Refit the front bumper as described in Section 6.

#### 10 Bonnet lock – removal and refitting

##### Removal

1 Remove the front bumper as described in Section 6.

2 Unscrew the two bolts securing the lock assembly to the body upper crossmember (see illustration).

3 Withdraw the lock and disconnect the bonnet release cable from the lock lever.

##### Refitting

4 Refitting is a reversal of removal. On completion, check the operation of the lock and, if necessary, adjust the position of the lock within the elongated bolt holes to achieve satisfactory operation prior to closing the bonnet.

#### 11 Door – removal, refitting and adjustment

##### Front door

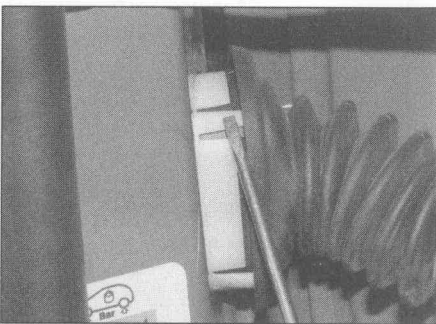
##### Removal

1 Using a small screwdriver, release the wiring harness guide retaining clips, and pull the harness and guide from the door pillar (see illustration).

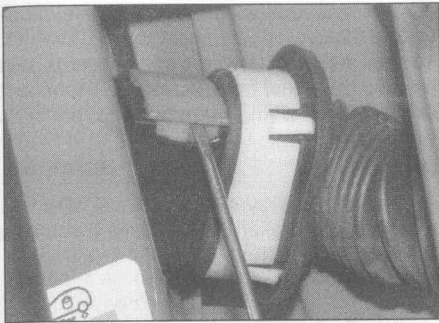
2 Prise up the locking catch and disconnect the door wiring connector (see illustration).

3 Unscrew the securing bolt, and disconnect the door check strap from the door pillar (see illustration).

4 Ensure that the door is adequately supported, slide out the hinge pin clips, then remove the upper and lower hinge pins. Carefully lift the door from the vehicle.



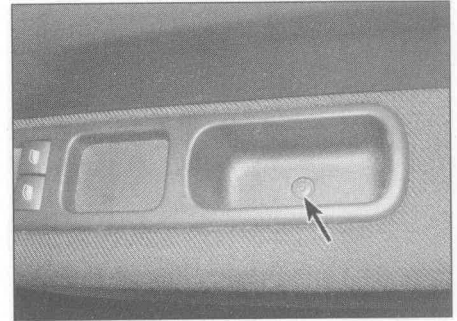
11.1 Prise out the wiring harness guide



11.2 Lever up the locking catch and disconnect the wiring plug



11.3 Undo the door check strap bolt



12.1a Undo the screw (arrowed) ...

**Refitting**

5 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

**Rear door**

6 The procedure is as described for the front doors, but the hinge-to-body bolts are accessed for adjustment with the front door open.

**12 Door inner trim panel – removal and refitting**



**Front door**

**Removal**

1 Undo the door handle switch retaining screw, and carefully prise up the switch/panel

assembly. Disconnect the switch wiring plug (see illustrations).

2 Carefully pull the exterior mirror mounting cover from place (see illustration).

3 Open the interior door release handle, insert a small screwdriver into the hole on the in the top of the recess trim. Release the retaining clip and withdraw the handle trim (see illustration).

4 Undo the two screws located at the front edge of the door trim, and the single screw at its rear edge (see illustrations).

5 Using a suitable forked tool, work around the edge of the trim panel, and release the securing clips (see illustration).

6 Pull the panel outwards, lift it up and remove it from the door. Disconnect the speaker wiring plugs as the panel is withdrawn.

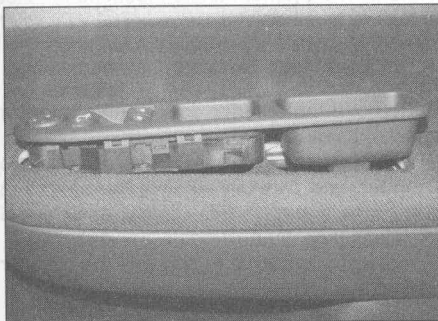
**Refitting**

7 Before refitting, check whether any of the trim panel retaining studs were broken on removal. Renew the panel retaining studs as necessary, then refit the panel using a reversal of removal.

**Rear door**

**Removal**

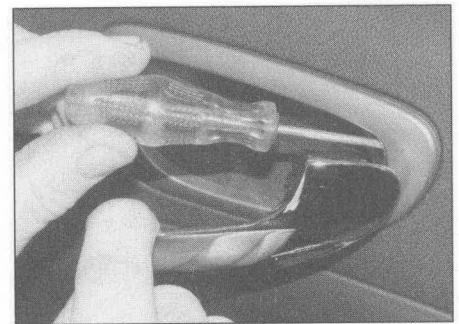
8 Open the interior door release handle, insert a small screwdriver in the hole in the top of the recess trim. Release the retaining clip and withdraw the handle trim (see illustration 12.3). On Estate and SW models, the handle surround trim must first be carefully prised from place (see illustration). Disconnect the window switch wiring plug (if applicable) as the trim is withdrawn.



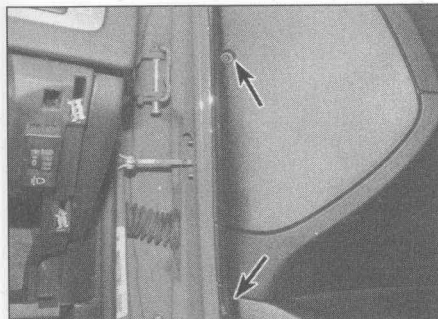
12.1b ... then lever up the switch/panel assembly



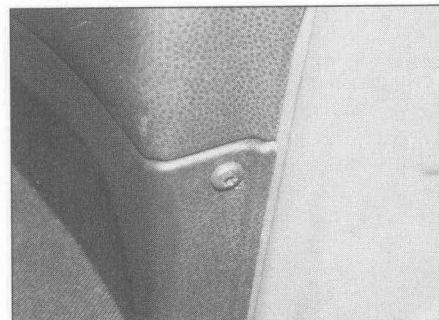
12.2 Pull the exterior mirror mounting cover from place



12.3 Insert a small screwdriver into the hole to release the retaining clip



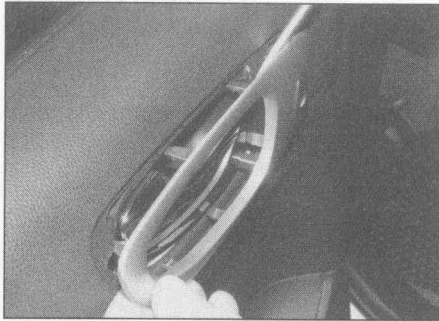
12.4a Undo the two screws (arrowed) at the front edge of the door trim ...



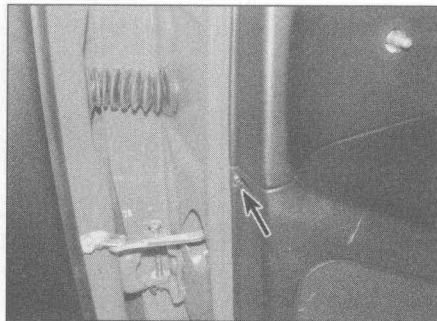
12.4b ... and the one at the rear



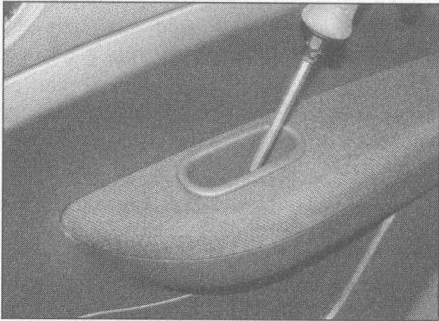
12.5 Using a forked tool, release the retaining clips around the door trim



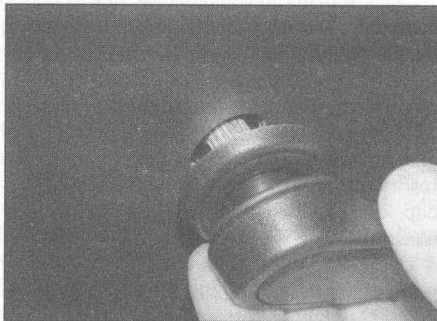
12.8 Carefully prise the handle surround trim from place (Estate/SW models)



12.9a One screw (arrowed) is located at the front of the door trim . . .



12.9b . . . and one in the handle recess



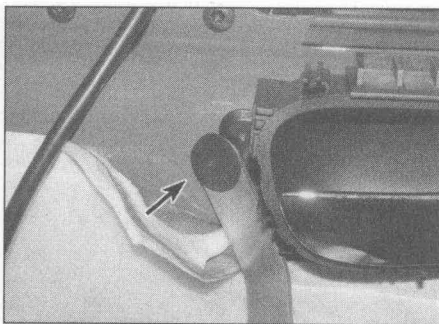
12.10 Pull the manual window winder handle from the spindle

9 Undo the two panel retaining screws. One screw is located at the front edge of the panel, and the second is located in the recess of the door grab handle (see illustrations).

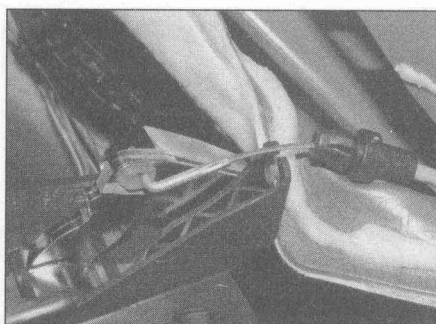
10 On models with manual windows, pull the

winder handle off the spindle, and then remove the spindle trim plate (see illustration).

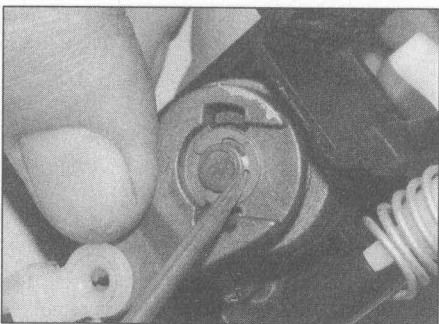
11 Using a suitable forked tool, work around the lower and side edges of the trim panel,



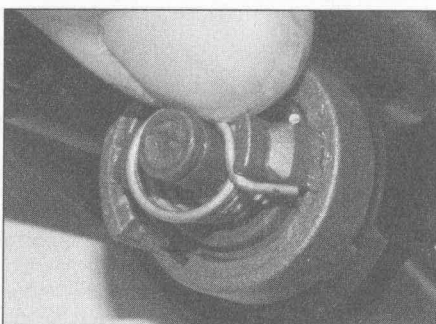
13.2 On front doors, prise out the interior door handle retaining clip (arrowed)



13.3 Unclip the connecting rod from the handle



13.6a Prise off the circlip followed by the operating arm . . .



13.6b . . . spring . . .

and release the securing clips (see illustration 12.5).

12 Pull the panel upwards and outwards, and remove the panel from the door. Disconnect the speaker wiring plug as the panel is withdrawn.

### Refitting

13 Refitting is a reversal of removal, after first renewing any broken panel retaining studs as necessary.

## 13 Door handle and lock components – removal and refitting

### Interior door handle

#### Removal

1 Remove the door inner trim panel, as described in Section 12.

2 Release the handle from its location by prising out the retaining clip (front door only), then pulling it towards the front edge of the door (see illustration).

3 Unclip the connecting rod from the handle (see illustration).

#### Refitting

4 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but ensure that the link rod is correctly reconnected, and refit the inner trim panel (see Section 12).

### Front door lock cylinder

**Note 1:** A new door sealing sheet may be required on refitting.

**Note 2:** The exterior handle mounting bracket is riveted to the door. Ensure that new rivets of the correct size are available for refitting.

#### Removal

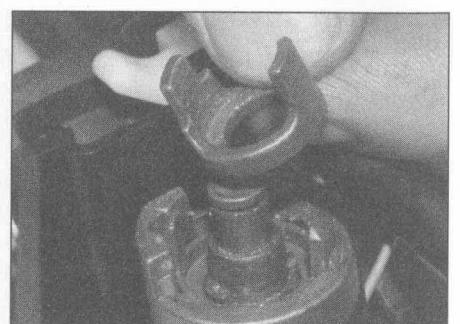
5 Remove the exterior door handle support bracket as described in Paragraphs 18 to 23.

6 Prise off the circlip on the rear of the cylinder, and carefully remove the operating arm, spring and collar, noting their fitted positions (see illustrations).

7 Insert the ignition key and pull the cylinder from place.

#### Refitting

8 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but ensure



13.6c . . . and collar

that the lock cylinder retaining clip is securely refitted.

**Front door lock**

**Note:** A new door sealing sheet may be required on refitting.

**Removal**

9 Remove the interior door handle as described previously.

10 Using a sharp knife, carefully release the plastic sealing sheet from the adhesive bead and remove the sheet from the area around the door lock. If care is taken, it may just be possible to remove the sheet in one piece and re-use it when refitting

11 Undo the two nuts securing the rear window guide channel, and move the channel towards the front of the door to access the lock (see illustration).

12 Unclip the door lock link rod from the lever on the exterior handle and door lock (see illustration).

13 Undo the three screws securing the lock assembly to the edge of the door (see illustration).

14 Release the interior handle link cable from the guide clips on the door, then lower the lock assembly and manipulate it out through the door aperture.

15 Disconnect the central locking motor wiring plug and remove the lock assembly.

16 If required, the interior door handle cable can be unclipped from the lock assembly (see illustrations).

**Refitting**

17 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Fit a new sealing sheet to the door if the original was damaged in any way during removal. On completion, refit the door inner trim panel as described in Section 12.

**Front door exterior handle**

**Note 1:** A new door sealing sheet may be required for refitting.

**Note 2:** The exterior handle mounting bracket is riveted to the door. Ensure that new rivets of the correct size are available for refitting.

**Removal**

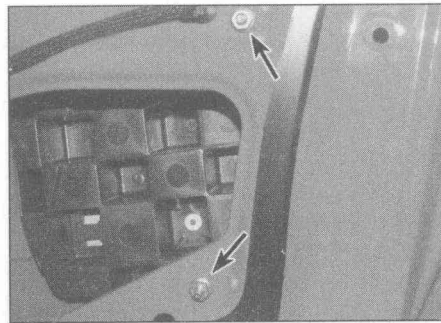
18 Remove the interior door handle as described previously.

19 Using a sharp knife, carefully release the plastic sealing sheet from the adhesive bead and remove the sheet from the area around the door lock. If care is taken, it may just be possible to remove the sheet in one piece and re-use it when refitting

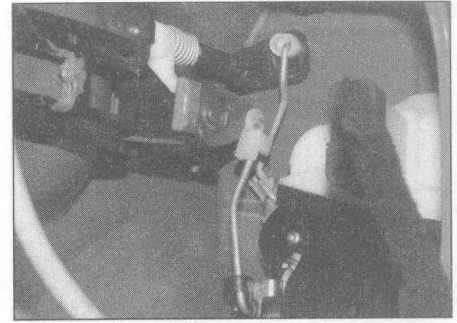
20 Undo the two nuts securing the rear window guide channel, and move the channel towards the front of the door to access the handle (see illustration 13.11).

21 Slide the white plastic operating lever forward so that the locking clip engages in the groove, and the rear of the exterior handle no longer engages with it (see illustration).

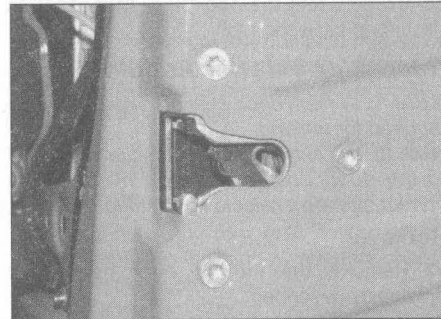
22 Pull the rear of the exterior handle outwards, and use a screwdriver to lever the



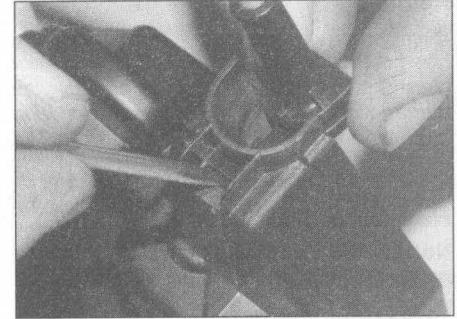
13.11 Undo the window rear guide channel retaining nuts (arrowed)



13.12 Unclip the link rod from the handle to the lock



13.13 Three screws secure the lock to the edge of the door

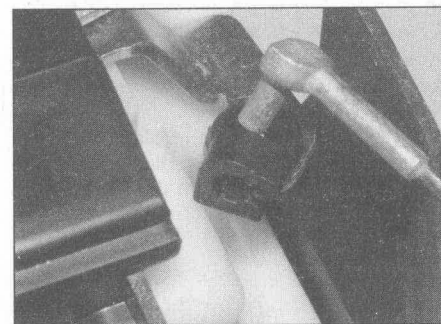


13.16a Depress the clip and slide out the cable outer . . .

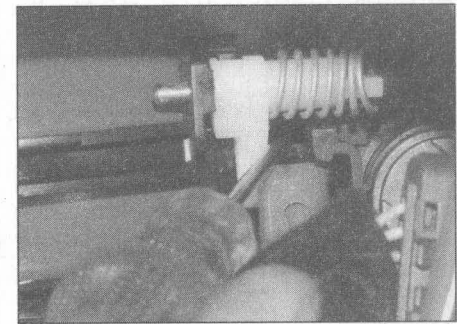
front of the handle from the front pivot pin (see illustration). Manoeuvre the handle from the door.

23 If required, unclip the operating rod from the lock cylinder and operating arm, and the

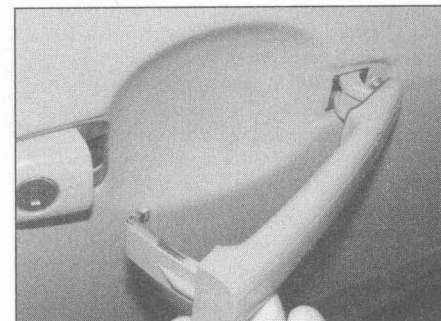
plastic lock cylinder exterior cover. Then, using a 6.0 mm diameter drill bit, drill off the rivet heads from the outside, and remove the handle bracket from the door (see illustration).



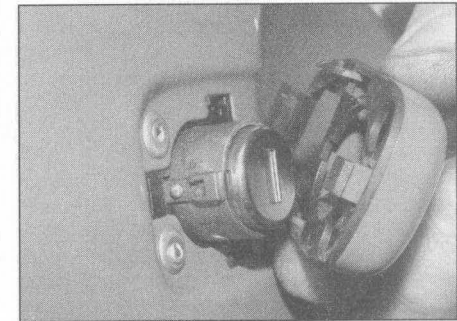
13.16b . . . then disconnect the cable inner



13.21 Slide the white lever forwards so the handle no longer engages with it

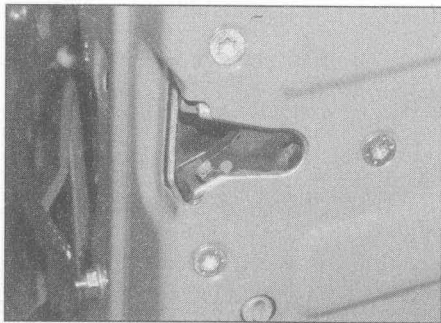


13.22 Pull out the rear of the handle and disengage the pin at the front

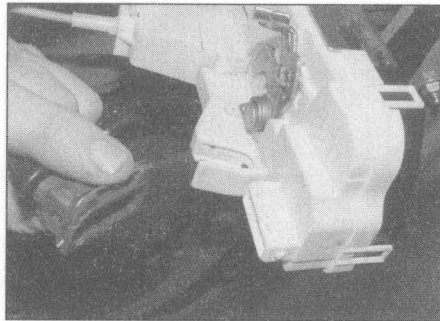


13.23 Prise off the cover to expose the two rear rivets





13.30a Undo the three lock screws . . .



13.30b . . . disconnect the wiring plug as the lock is withdrawn

**14 Door window glass, regulator and quarter light – removal and refitting**



**Front door window glass**

**Note:** A new door sealing sheet may be required on refitting.

1 Fully lower the window, and carefully remove the interior and exterior waist seal from the window aperture (**see illustration**). Raise the window approximately one-third of the way up.

2 Remove the door inner trim panel as described in Section 12.

3 Drill out the rivets securing the door trim panel support bracket (**see illustration**).

4 Using a sharp knife, carefully release the plastic sealing sheet from the adhesive bead and remove the sheet from the door. If care is taken, it may just be possible to remove the sheet in one piece and re-use it when refitting.

5 Undo the two window clamp screws, and remove the window up through the aperture, and out of the door (**see illustration**).

6 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but fit a new sealing sheet to the door if the original was damaged in any way during removal. On completion, refit the inner trim panel as described in Section 12.

**Front door window regulator**

7 Position the window approximately one-third of the way up.

8 Remove the door inner trim panel as described in Section 12.

9 Drill out the rivets securing the door trim panel support bracket to the door frame (**see illustration 14.3**).

10 Using a sharp knife, carefully release the plastic sealing sheet from the adhesive bead and remove the sheet from the door. If care is taken, it may just be possible to remove the sheet in one piece and re-use it when refitting.

11 Undo the two window clamp bolts (**see illustration 14.5**).

12 Slide the window up to the fully closed position and secure it in this position with masking tape over the top of the door frame. Temporarily reconnect the window switch and fully lower the mechanism.

**Refitting**

24 Refitting is a reversal of removal, using new pop rivets to secure the handle. Fit a new sealing sheet to the door if the original was damaged in any way during removal. On completion, refit the inner trim panel as described in Section 12.

**Rear door lock**

**Note:** A new door sealing sheet may be required on refitting.

**Removal**

25 Remove the interior door handle as previously described.

26 Using a sharp knife, carefully release the plastic sealing sheet from the adhesive bead and remove the sheet from the door in the area of the lock. If care is taken, it may just be possible to remove the sheet in one piece and re-use it when refitting.

27 Free the interior handle link cable from the guide clips on the door.

28 Release the wiring harness clip from the door frame.

29 Disengage the exterior handle link rod from the lever on the door lock.

30 Undo the three screws securing the lock assembly to the edge of the door, then manipulate the unit out through the door aperture (**see illustrations**). Disconnect the lock wiring plug as it is withdrawn.

**Refitting**

31 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Fit a new sealing sheet to the door if the original was damaged in any way during removal. On

completion, refit the door inner trim panel as described in Section 12.

**Rear door exterior handle**

**Note 1:** A new door sealing sheet may be required for refitting.

**Note 2:** The exterior handle bracket is riveted to the door. Ensure that new rivets of the correct size are available for refitting.

**Removal**

32 Remove the interior door handle as previously described.

33 Using a sharp knife, carefully release the plastic sealing sheet from the adhesive bead and remove the sheet from the door. If care is taken, it may just be possible to remove the sheet in one piece and re-use it when refitting.

34 Slide the white plastic operating lever forward so that the locking clip engages in the groove, and the rear of the exterior handle no longer engages with it (**see illustration 13.21**).

35 Pull the rear of the exterior handle outwards, and use a screwdriver to lever the front of the handle from the front pivot pin (**see illustration 13.22**). Manoeuvre the handle from the door.

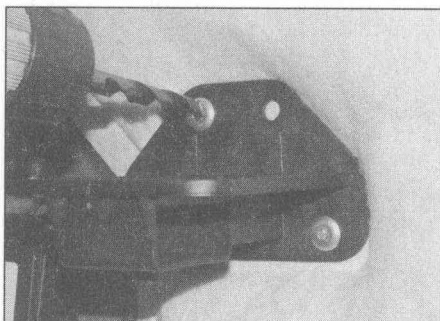
36 If required, remove the plastic exterior cover, then using a 6.0 mm diameter drill bit, drill off the rivet heads from the outside, and remove the handle bracket from the door.

**Refitting**

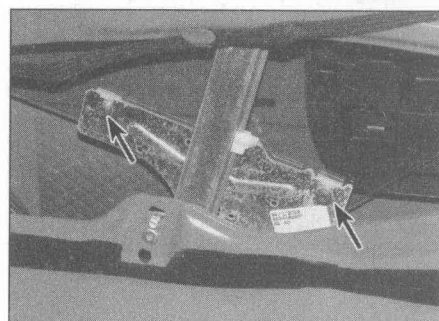
37 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Fit a new sealing sheet to the door if the original was damaged in any way during removal. On completion, refit the inner trim panel as described in Section 12.



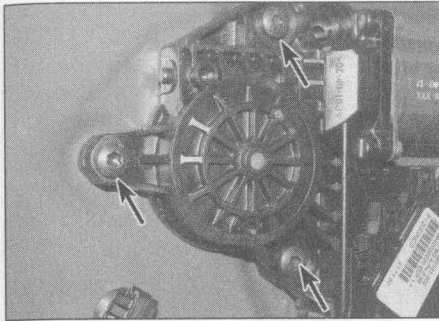
14.1 Carefully prise up the door waist seals



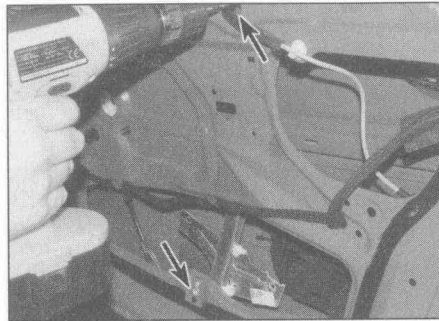
14.3 Drill out the door trim panel support bracket rivets



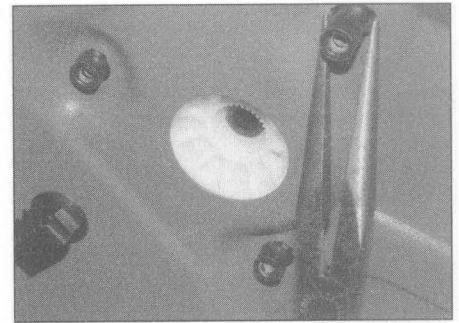
14.5 Undo the two window clamp screws (arrowed)



**14.13 Undo the three Torx screws (arrowed) and remove the window motor**



**14.14 Drill out the two rivets (arrowed) . . .**



**14.15 . . . and release the clips**

**13** Undo the three Torx screws and remove the electric motor from the regulator (see illustration). Disconnect the motor wiring plug.

**14** Drill out the two rivets securing the regulator assembly to the door frame (see illustration).

**15** Release the three clips securing the regulator assembly to the door panel (see illustration).

**16** Lower the regulator, and manoeuvre it from the door.

**17** Refitting is a reversal of removal.

### Rear door window glass

**Note:** A new door sealing sheet may be required on refitting.

**18** Remove the interior door handle as described in Section 13.

**19** Drill out the rivet securing the door trim support bracket to the door frame, then lift the bracket upwards and remove it.

**20** Using a sharp knife, carefully release the plastic sealing sheet from the adhesive bead and remove the sheet from the door. If care is taken, it may just be possible to remove the sheet in one piece and re-use it when refitting.

**21** Prise the door interior waistline rubber seal from the door frame (see illustration).

### 5-door Hatchback models

**22** Temporarily reconnect the window switch/regulator handle, and raise the window until the window clamp screws are visible through the opening in the door frame. Undo the two window clamp screws (see illustration).

### Estate/SW models

**23** Carefully prise of the triangular plastic trim from the rear lower corner of the window outer aperture. The trim is retained by two push-on clips (see illustration).

**24** Prise up and remove the exterior waist seal from the window aperture.

### All models

**25** Beginning in the rear lower corner carefully remove the window aperture channel seal from the door frame.

**26** Undo the two nuts at the rear of the door frame securing the window guide channel, and withdraw the guide channel (see illustration).

**27** Slide the window up to the fully closed position and secure it in this position with masking tape over the top of the door frame.

**28** Using the switch/regulator handle, fully lower the regulator mechanism.

**29** Fully lower the window, then lift the rear of the window glass upwards and remove it from the outside of the door (see illustration). Take care not to damage the paintwork on the door.

**30** Refitting is a reversal of removal, but fit a new sealing sheet to the door if the original was damaged in any way during removal. On completion, refit the interior door handle as described in Section 13.

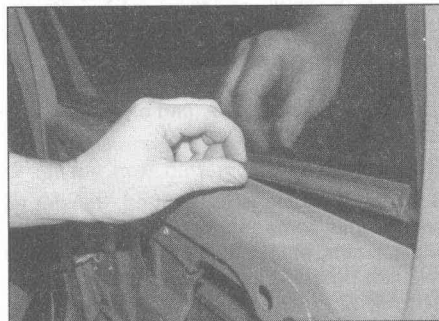
### Rear door window regulator

**Note:** A new door sealing sheet may be required on refitting.

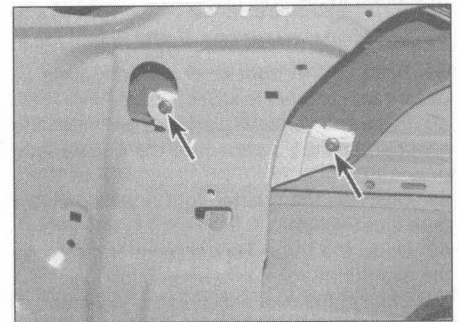
**31** Remove the interior door handle as described in Section 13.

**32** Drill out the rivet securing the door trim support bracket to the door frame, then lift the bracket upwards and remove it.

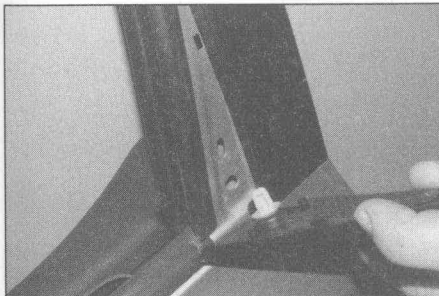
**33** Using a sharp knife, carefully release the plastic sealing sheet from the adhesive bead and remove the sheet from the door. If care is



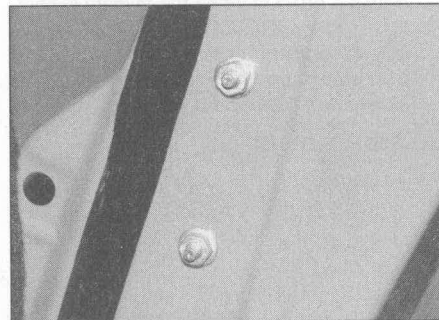
**14.21 Prise the interior waistline seal from the door**



**14.22 Undo the two window clamp screws (arrowed)**



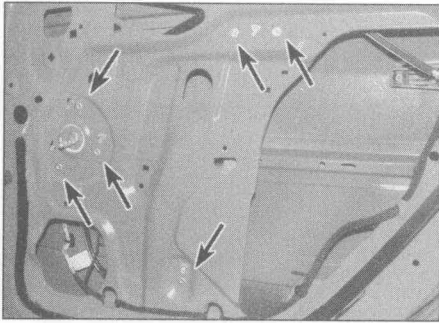
**14.23 On Estate/SW models, prise the triangular shaped trim from the door exterior**



**14.26 Undo the two nuts securing the window guide channel**



**14.29 Lift up the rear end and manoeuvre the window from the door**



**14.37** Drill out the rivets (arrowed) and remove the regulator assembly

taken, it may just be possible to remove the sheet in one piece and re-use it when refitting.

**34** Temporarily reconnect the window switch or refit the regulator handle, and position the window so the attachment to the lifting channel is accessible through the door aperture. Release the clamping screws on the lifting channel bracket (see illustration 14.22).

**35** Slide the window glass upwards by hand, and tape it to the top of the door frame to secure it in the raised position.

**36** Fully lower the window regulator mechanism using the switch or handle.

**37** Drill out the rivets, or undo the bolts securing the regulator assembly to the door frame, and manoeuvre it from the door (see illustration).

**38** Refitting is a reversal of removal, but fit a new sealing sheet to the door if the original was damaged in any way during removal. On completion, refit the interior door handle as described in Section 13.

**Front door quarter light**

**39** Remove the front door window glass as described earlier in this Section.

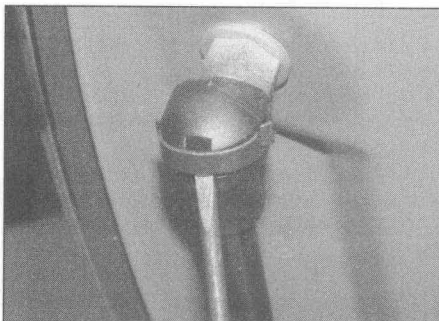
**40** Prise the window guide rubber from the window aperture adjacent to the quarter light pillar.

**41** Unscrew the quarter light retaining screw (see illustration).

**42** Undo the three Torx screws and remove the exterior mirror.

**43** Drill out the rivet securing the lower end of the front window guide (see illustration).

**44** Pull up the exterior weather seal, then pull the top of the quarter light pillar to the rear,



**15.9** Prise out the clip and pull the strut from the balljoint



**14.41** Undo the quarter light frame retaining screw (arrowed)

and manoeuvre the quarter light from the door.

**45** Refitting is a reversal of removal.

**15 Tailgate and support struts – removal and refitting**

**Tailgate**

**Removal**

**1** Remove the tailgate trim panels as described in Section 25.

**2** Disconnect the wiring harness connectors at the tailgate internal components, referring to the relevant procedures contained in Chapter 12. Release the grommet from the tailgate and withdraw the wiring harness.

**3** Remove the high-level brake light as described in Chapter 12.

**4** With the aid of an assistant, suitably support the tailgate, then prise out the support strut spring clips, and pull the struts from the balljoints on the tailgate.

**5** Unscrew the two bolts each side securing the hinges to the tailgate, and carefully lift the tailgate from the vehicle.

**Refitting**

**6** If a new tailgate is to be fitted, transfer all serviceable components (lock mechanism, wiper motor, etc) to it, with reference to the relevant procedures in this Chapter, and in Chapter 12.

**7** Refitting is a reversal of removal, bearing in mind the following points:

- a) *If necessary, adjust the rubber buffers to obtain a good fit when the tailgate is shut.*
- b) *If necessary, adjust the position of the tailgate lock and/or hinge bolts within their elongated holes to achieve satisfactory lock operation.*

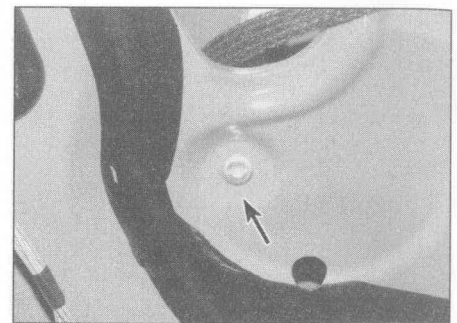
**Support struts**

**Removal**

**8** Support the tailgate in the open position, with the help of an assistant, or using a stout piece of wood.

**9** Using a small screwdriver, release the spring clip, and pull the support strut from its balljoint on the body (see illustration).

**10** Similarly, release the strut from the



**14.43** Drill out the front window guide rivet (arrowed)

balljoint on the tailgate, and withdraw the strut from the vehicle.

**Refitting**

**11** Refitting is a reversal of removal, but ensure the spring clips are correctly engaged.

**16 Tailgate lock components – removal and refitting**

**Tailgate lock**

**1** Remove the tailgate lower trim panel as described in Section 25.

**2** Disconnect the wiring connector.

**3** Undo the two lock retaining screws and withdraw the lock (see illustration).

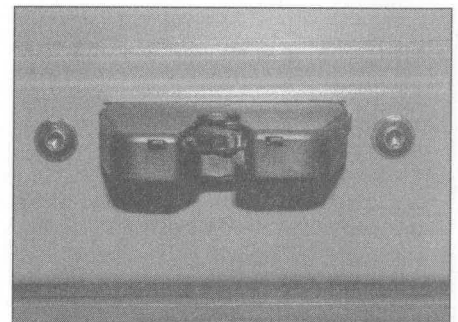
**4** Refitting is a reversal of removal, but adjust the tailgate lock striker as necessary to obtain satisfactory closure.

**Tailgate lock striker**

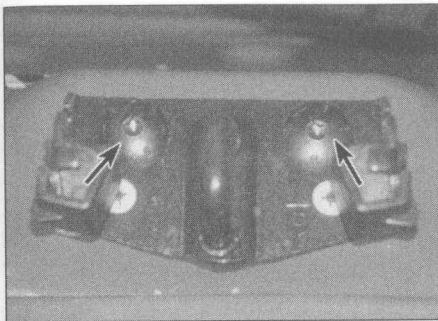
**5** Undo the screws and remove the tailgate aperture lower panel (see Section 25) for access to the striker plate retaining bolts.

**6** Mark the position of the striker on the body, for use when refitting. Unscrew the two securing bolts, and remove the striker from the body (see illustration).

**7** Refitting is a reversal of removal. Before tightening the securing bolts, the position of the striker should be altered (the securing bolt holes are elongated) until satisfactory lock operation is obtained. Use the marks made prior to removal, if appropriate.



**16.3** Undo the two bolts and remove the lock



**16.6 Undo the two bolts and remove the lock striker (arrowed)**

**Tailgate exterior handle**

**8** Removal the tailgate lower trim panel as described in Section 25.

**9** Disconnect the handle wiring plug (see illustration).

**Hatchback models**

**10** Undo the two handle retaining nuts, and remove the handle assembly complete with seal.

**Estate/SW models**

**11** Undo the four nuts, release the two retaining clips and remove the handle housing/number plate light cowling from the exterior of the tailgate (see illustrations).

**12** Release the two retaining clips, and slide the handle out (see illustration).

**All models**

**13** Refitting is a reversal of removal.

**17 Central locking components – removal and refitting**



**Control unit**

**1** The central locking system is controlled by the Built-in Systems Interface (BSI) which is the vehicle central computer controlling the main body electrical system functions. The unit is located under the facia adjacent to the steering column. Refer to Chapter 12 for further information.

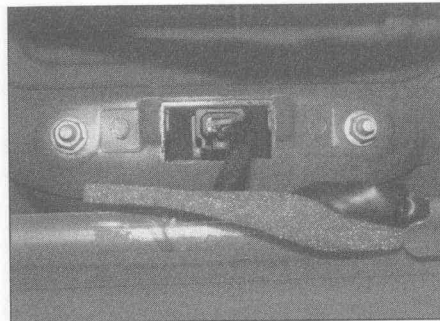
**2** Should any problems be experienced with the operation of the central locking system or any of the other functions controlled by the BSI, the vehicle should be taken to a Peugeot dealer for diagnostic investigation.

**Door lock motor**

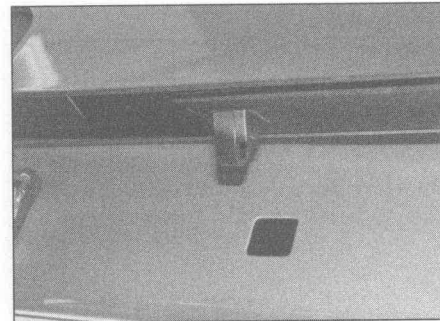
**3** The motor is integral with the door lock assembly. Removal and refitting of the lock assembly is described in Section 13.

**Tailgate lock motor**

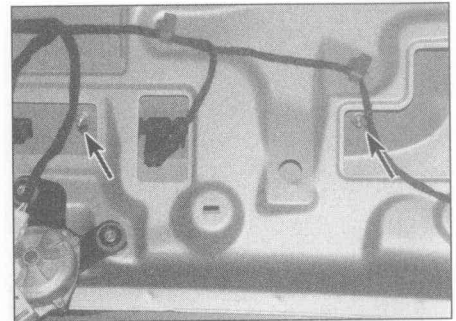
**4** Removal of the tailgate lock motor is described as part of the tailgate lock removal and refitting procedure described in Section 16.



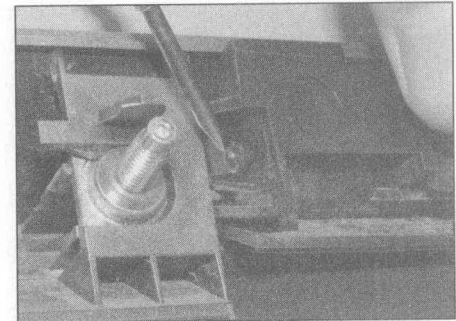
**16.9 Disconnect the handle wiring plug (Hatchback models)**



**16.11b ... then release the retaining clips**



**16.11a Undo the four nuts (two left-hand ones arrowed) ...**



**16.12 Release the clips and slide the handle out**

**Remote control transmitter**

**Battery renewal**

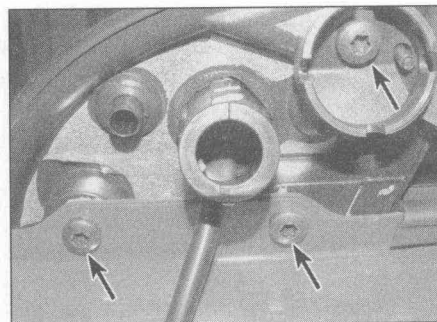
**5** When the remote control transmitter battery is nearing the end of its life, an audible signal will be emitted from within the vehicle, accompanied by a message on the instrument panel multi-function screen. The battery should then be renewed with a type CR 2016 (3 volt) battery.

**6** Using a small screwdriver, undo the screw, carefully prise the two halves of the transmitter apart, and remove the battery.

**7** Fit the new battery and reassemble the transmitter.

**Initialisation**

**8** To initialise the unit after renewing the battery, switch off the ignition, then switch on the ignition and immediately press the locking button. Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition lock.



**18.4 Undo the three screws (arrowed) and remove the mirror from the door frame**

**18 Mirrors and mirror glass – removal and refitting**

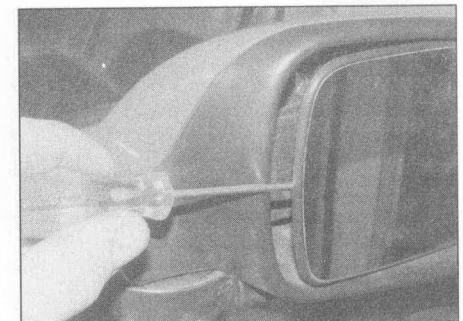


**Exterior mirror assembly**

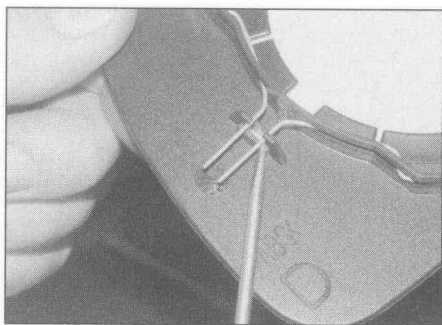
- 1** Ensure the ignition is turned off.
- 2** Remove the door inner trim panel as described in Section 12.
- 3** Disconnect the mirror wiring plugs.
- 4** Undo the three retaining screws and remove the mirror from the door frame (see illustration).
- 5** Refitting is a reversal of removal.

**Exterior mirror glass**

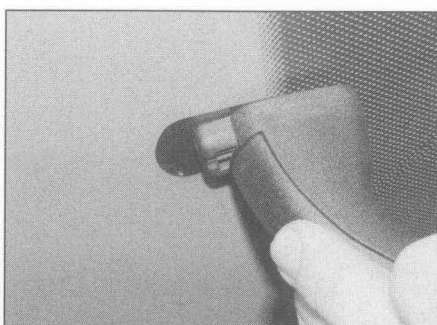
**6** Working through the gap at the inner edge of the mirror glass, using a screwdriver, release the ends of the spring clip which secures the glass to the mirror body (see illustrations).



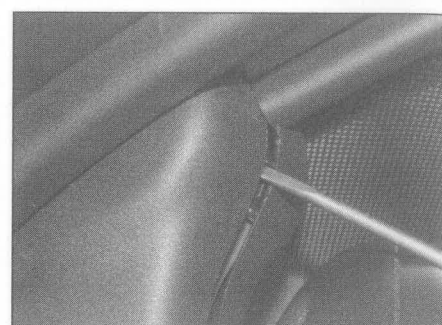
**18.6a Insert a screwdriver at the inner edge of the mirror glass ...**



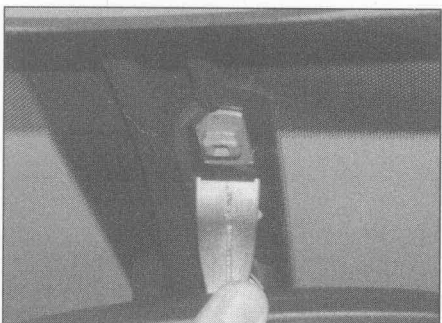
18.6b ... to release the retaining clip



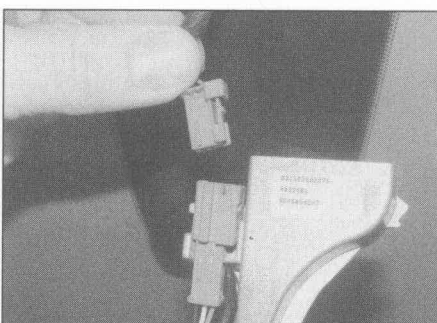
18.10 Slide the mirror up from the base



18.11 Prise apart the plastic cover over the mirror



18.12a Push the mirror housing down to release it ...



18.12b ... then disconnect the wiring plug

7 Withdraw the glass, and disconnect the wiring connector (where fitted).

8 Refit the ends of the spring clip to the rear of the mirror glass, ensuring the clip is correctly located in the slots in the rear of the mirror glass.

9 Push the mirror glass into the mirror until the spring clip locks into position in the mirror adjuster groove.

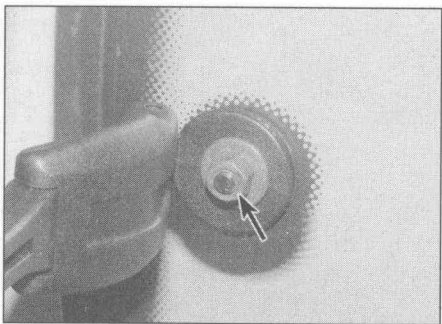
### Interior mirror

#### Basic mirror

10 Slide the mirror up from the base on the windscreen (see illustration).

#### Anti-dazzle mirror

11 Using a small flat-bladed screwdriver, carefully prise apart the two plastic covers over the mirror base housing, then release the clips and detach the right-hand cover from the housing (see illustration).



19.2 Prise off the cap and undo the hinge nut (arrowed)

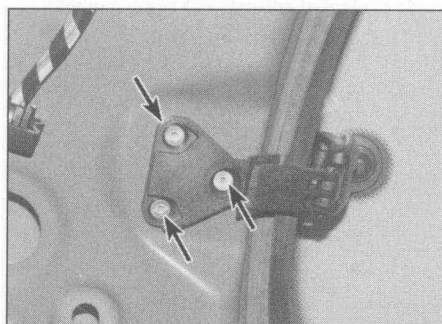
12 Push the mirror base housing sharply downwards to release it from the base bonded to the windscreen. Disconnect the wiring plug as the mirror is withdrawn (see illustrations).

#### All mirrors

13 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

### 19 Windscreen, tailgate and fixed/hinged side window glass – general information

These areas of glass are secured by the tight fit of the weatherstrip in the body aperture, and are bonded in position with a special adhesive. Renewal of such fixed glass is a difficult, messy and time-consuming task, which is considered beyond the scope of the home mechanic. It is difficult, unless one has



19.3 Drill out the three rivets (arrowed)

plenty of practice, to obtain a secure, waterproof fit. Furthermore, the task carries a high risk of breakage; this applies especially to the laminated glass windscreen. In view of this, owners are strongly advised to have this sort of work carried out by one of the many specialist windscreen fitters.

Note that the rear side hinged windows on the 3-door models is also bonded in at the front edge, and therefore replacement should be entrusted to a specialist.

### Rear side window hinge

#### 3-door Hatchback models

1 Remove the C-pillar trim as described in Section 25.

2 Carefully prise the cap from place, then undo the retaining nut at the window end of the hinge (see illustration).

3 Drill out the rivets securing the hinge to the C-pillar (see illustration).

4 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

### 20 Sunroof – general information

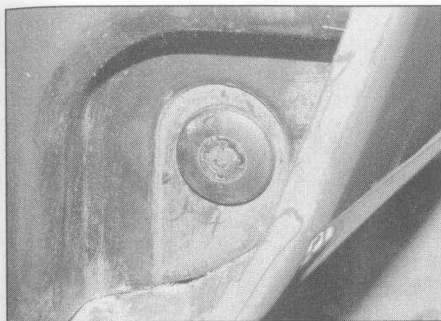
The factory-fitted sunroof is of the electric tilt/slide type.

Due to the complexity of the sunroof mechanism, considerable expertise is required to repair, renew or adjust the sunroof components successfully. Removal of the roof first requires the headlining to be removed, which is a tedious operation, and not a task to be undertaken lightly. Any problems with the sunroof should be referred to a Peugeot dealer.

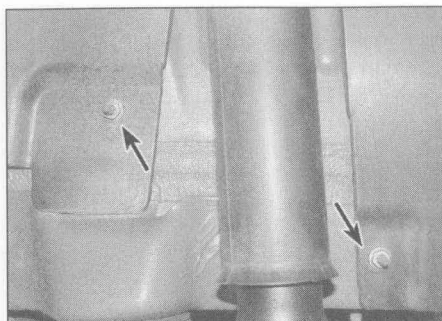
### 21 Body exterior fittings – removal and refitting

#### Wheel arch liners/mud shields

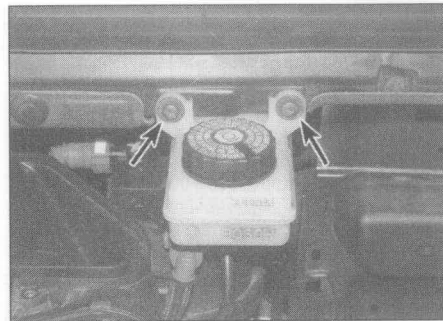
1 The wheel arch liners are secured by expanding plastic rivets. To remove the liners, push in the centre pins a little, then prise the complete rivet from place. With all the rivets removed, manoeuvre the liner from the wheel



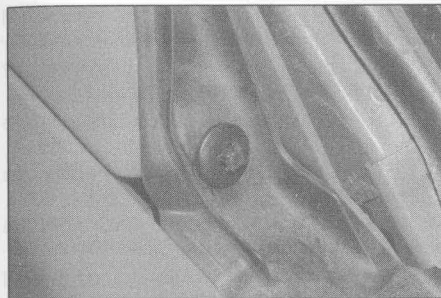
21.1a Push in the centre pins a little then prise out the plastic rivets



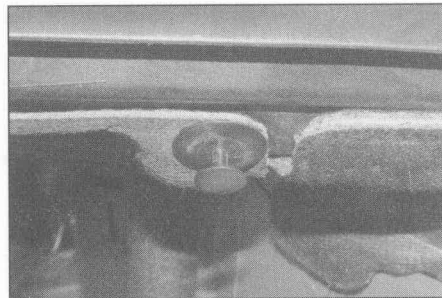
21.1b The rear liners are also secured by two nuts (arrowed)



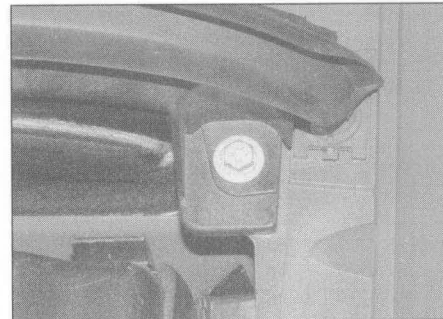
22.3 Undo the two screws securing the master cylinder upper reservoir (arrowed)



22.4 Push in the centre pins and prise out the plastic rivet at each end of the scuttle panel trim



22.5 Prise up the centre pins, and lever out the rivets securing the sound insulation material



22.6 Undo the bolt at each end securing the plastic scuttle crossmember

arch. Note that the rear liners are also secured by two nuts each side (see illustrations)

### Body trim strips and badges

2 The various body trim strips and badges are held in position with a special adhesive membrane. Removal requires the trim/badge to be heated, to soften the adhesive, and then cut away from the surface. Due to the high risk of damage to the vehicle paintwork during this operation, it is recommended that this task should be entrusted to a Peugeot dealer.

### 22 Scuttle grille panel – removal and refitting



#### Removal

- 1 Open the bonnet and support it in the highest position.
- 2 Remove the windscreen wiper arms as described in Chapter 12.
- 3 Undo the two screws securing the brake/clutch master cylinder reservoir to the crossmember, and move it to one side. There is no need to disconnect the reservoir hose (see illustration).
- 4 Push in the centre pins a little, then prise up the complete plastic expanding rivet at each end of the panel (see illustration).
- 5 Prise up the centre pins, then prise out the complete plastic rivets securing the sound insulation material to the scuttle crossmember (see illustration).
- 6 Undo the bolt at each end securing the

scuttle crossmember, and remove it (see illustration).

7 Pull the scuttle panel up at each end to release it from the windscreen clips, then downwards and forwards to release it from the lower centre windscreen clip.

#### Refitting

8 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

### 23 Seats – removal and refitting



#### Front seats



**Warning:** The front seats are equipped with side airbags built into the outer sides of the seats.

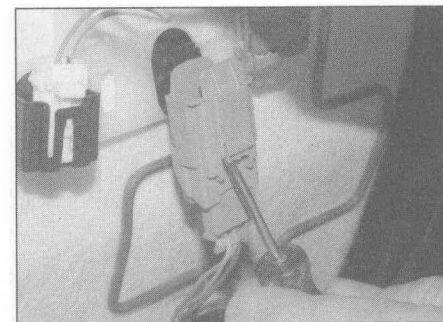
Refer to Chapter 12 for the precautions which should be observed when dealing

with an airbag system. Do not tamper with the airbag unit in any way, and do not attempt to test any airbag system components. Note that the airbag is triggered if the mechanism is supplied with an electrical current (including via an ohmmeter), or if the assembly is subjected to a temperature of greater than 100°C.

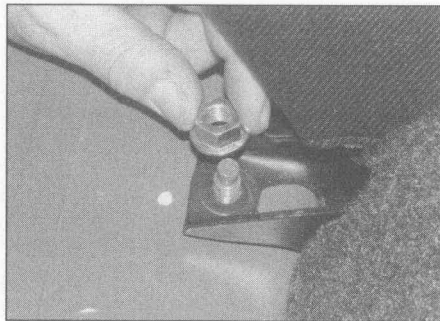
- 1 De-activate the airbag system (see Chapter 12) before attempting to remove the seat.
- 2 Move the seat fully forwards.
- 3 Remove the bolts (one on each side) securing the rear of the seat rails to the vehicle floor.
- 4 Move the seat fully rearwards.
- 5 Remove the bolts (one bolt on each side) securing the front of the seat frame to the floor (see illustration).
- 6 Disconnect the seat wiring plugs and remove it from the passenger cabin (see illustration).



23.5 Undo the two bolts at the front of the seal rails (arrowed)



23.6 Disconnect the seat wiring plug(s)



23.9 Undo the hinge nut in the centre

7 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but observe the following precautions before reconnecting the battery.

- a) Ensure that there are no occupants in the vehicle, and that there are no loose objects around the vicinity of the seats.
- b) Ensure that the ignition is switched off then reconnect the airbag ECM and the battery.
- c) Open the driver's door and switch on the ignition. Check that the airbag warning light illuminates briefly then extinguishes.
- d) Switch off the ignition.
- e) If the airbag warning light does not operate as described in paragraph c), consult a Peugeot dealer before driving the vehicle.

### Rear seats

#### Hatchback/Estate models seat cushion

8 Lift the front edge first, followed by the rear edge, then push the stays to the side and remove the seat from the vehicle.

#### Hatchback/Estate models seat backs

9 With the seat cushions folded forward, undo the hinge nut in the centre (see illustration).

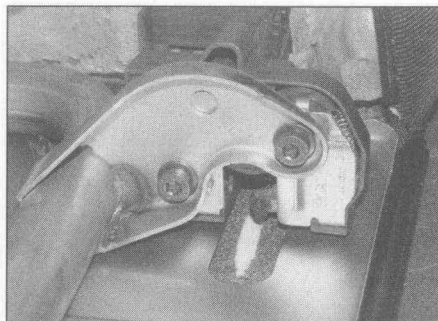
10 Fold the seat back forward and undo the bolt securing the hinge to the vehicle floor.

11 Lift the seat back up at the hinge, disengage the outer hinge, and remove it from the vehicle.

12 To remove the rear seat back catch, unclip the inner lower and side edges of the seat cover (see illustrations 24.13a and 24.13b).



24.5a Undo the seat belt lower anchor bolt (arrowed)



23.13 Undo the two bolts and remove the catch from the seat

13 Undo the two bolts and manoeuvre the catch from the seat back (see illustration).

#### SW models

14 Fold the seat back forward, followed by the seat base. Release the retaining clip and lift the seat from the passenger cabin (see illustration).

#### All models

15 Refitting is a reversal of removal, tightening the hinge bolts securely.

### 24 Seat belt components – removal and refitting

**Note:** Record the positions of the washers and spacers on the seat belt anchors, and ensure they are refitted in their original positions.

#### Front seat belt

**Warning:** The front seat belt inertia reels are equipped with a pyrotechnic pretensioner mechanism. Refer to the airbag system precautions contained in Chapter 12 which apply equally to the seat belt pretensioners. Do not tamper with the inertia reel pretensioner unit in any way, and do not attempt to test the unit. Note that the unit is triggered if the mechanism is supplied with an electrical current (including via an ohmmeter), or if the assembly is subjected to a temperature of greater than 100°C.



24.5b Prise off the rubber cap and undo the anchor bolt (3-door model)



23.14 Release the clip (arrowed) and lift the seat from place

1 De-activate the airbag system (which will also de-activate the pyrotechnic pretensioner mechanism) as described in Chapter 12 before attempting to remove the seat belt.

2 If desired, to improve access, remove the relevant front seat as described in Section 23.

3 Remove the B-pillar trim panels as described in Section 25.

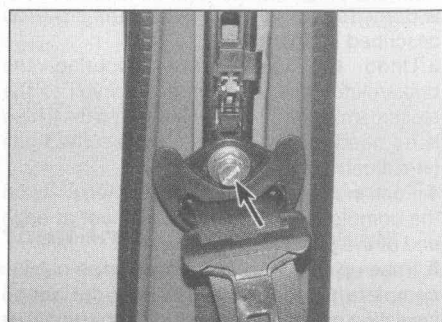
4 Disconnect the wiring connector from the inertia reel pretensioner unit.

5 Undo the seat belt lower anchor bolt and the inertia reel anchor bolt, and recover the washers (see illustration).

6 Undo the seat belt upper anchor bolt and withdraw the inertia reel from the door pillar (see illustration). Remove the seat belt assembly from the vehicle.

7 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but observe the following precautions before reconnecting the battery.

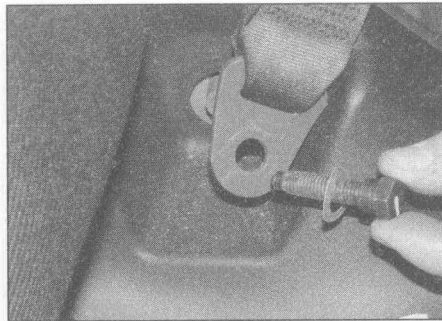
- a) Ensure that there are no occupants in the vehicle, and that there are no loose objects around the vicinity of the seats.
- b) Ensure that the ignition is switched off then reconnect the battery.
- c) Open the driver's door and switch on the ignition. Check that the airbag warning light illuminates briefly then extinguishes.
- d) Switch off the ignition.
- e) If the airbag warning light does not operate as described in paragraph c), consult a Peugeot dealer before driving the vehicle.
- f) Tighten the seat belt mountings to the specified torque.



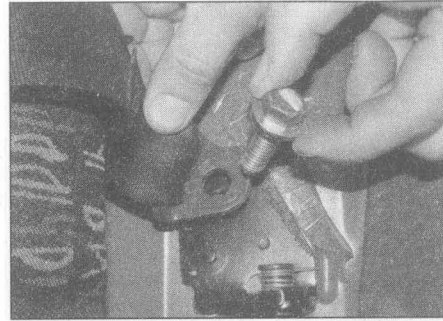
24.6 Seat belt upper anchor bolt (arrowed)



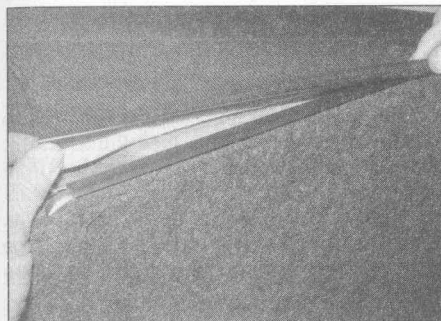
24.9 Undo the seat belt reel nut (arrowed)



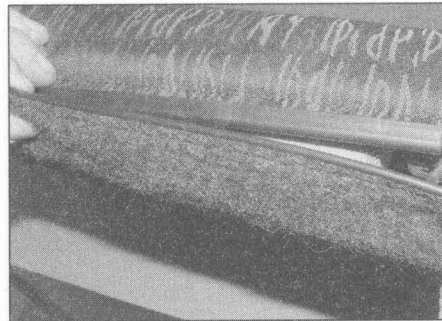
24.10 Undo the seat belt anchor bolt



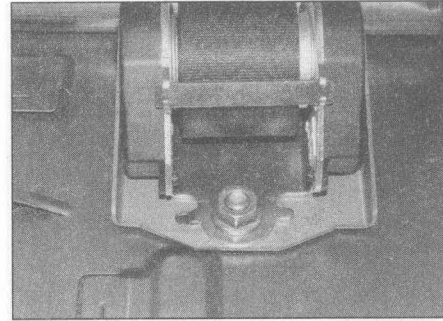
24.11 Rear seat belt stalk bolt



24.13a Unclip the lower ...



24.13b ... and side edges of the seat back cover ...



24.13c ... to expose the centre seat belt inertia reel

## Rear seat belts

### Hatchback and Estate models

8 Remove the C-pillar trim as described in Section 25.

9 Undo the nut securing the seat belt inertia reel to the vehicle body (see illustration).

10 Undo the bolt securing the seat belt anchor to the vehicle body (see illustration).

11 To remove the seat belt stalk, fold forward the rear seat cushions, and undo the bolt securing the seat belt stalk to the vehicle body (see illustration).

12 To remove the centre seat belt inertia reel, the seat back cover must be partially removed. Remove the seat back as described in Section 23.

13 Unclip the inner lower and side edges of the seat cover to expose the inertia reel retaining nut (see illustrations).

14 Use a screwdriver to release the seat belt webbing trim piece from the top of the seat, then undo the nut and remove the inertia reel and belt assembly (see illustration).

### SW models

15 Remove the luggage compartment side trim as described in Section 25.

16 Undo the bolts securing the upper anchorage points to the C- or D-pillar trims (see illustration).

17 Undo the bolts securing the inertia seat belt reels (see illustrations).

18 To remove the central seat belt inertia reel, pull out the belt a little, then undo the Torx screw at the front of the trim (see illustration).

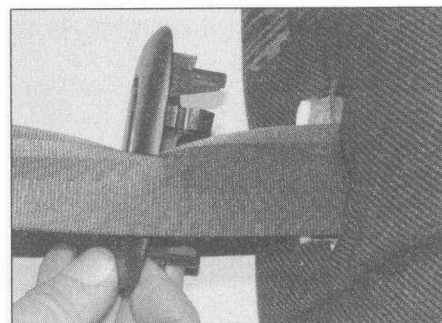
19 Pull the trim down to release it from the retaining clips at the rear.

20 Undo the bolt securing the inertia reel to the vehicle (see illustration).

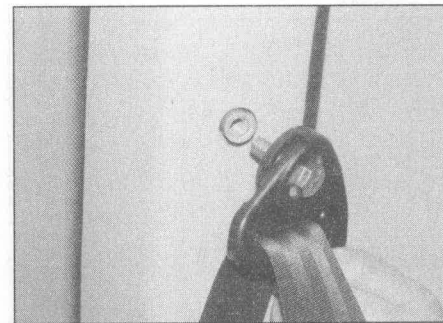
21 To remove the seat belt stalks, fold the

rear seat backs and cushions forward, then undo the screw securing the trim over the stalk (see illustration).

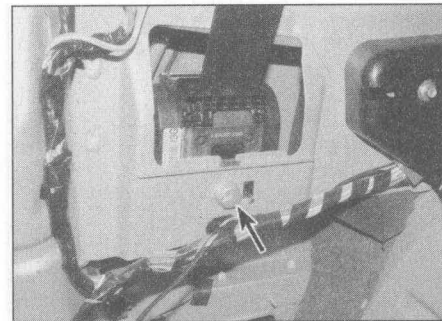
22 Pull out the base of the trim, then slide it up.



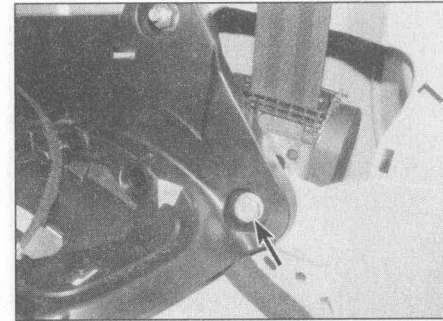
24.14 Unclip the seat belt webbing trim piece



24.16 Undo the seat belt upper anchorage bolt

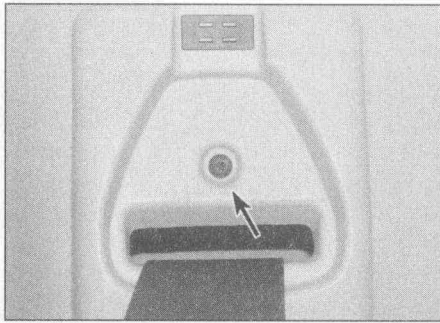


24.17a Rear seat belt inertia reel bolt (arrowed) ...

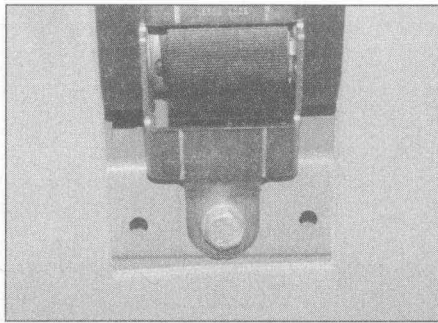


24.17b ... and middle row seat belt inertia reel bolt (arrowed)

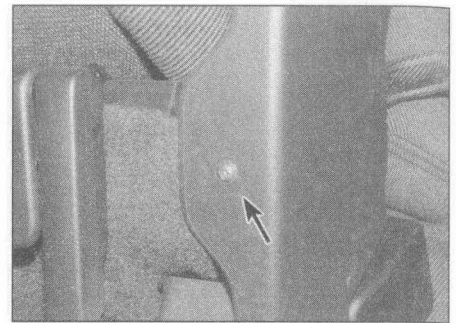




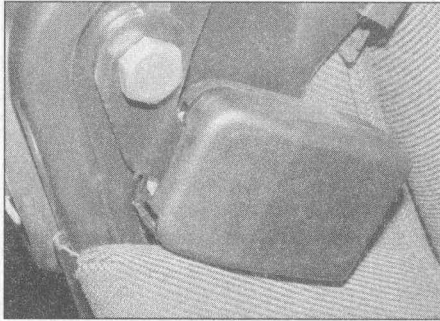
24.18 Undo the Torx screw at the front of the trim (arrowed)



24.20 Rear central inertia reel bolt



24.21 Undo the seat belt stalk trim cover screw (arrowed)



24.23 Undo the seat belt stalk bolt

23 Undo the bolt securing the seat belt stalk (see illustration).

**All models**

24 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Tighten the mounting bolts to the specified torque.

**25 Interior trim – removal and refitting**

**Door inner trim**

1 Refer to Section 12.

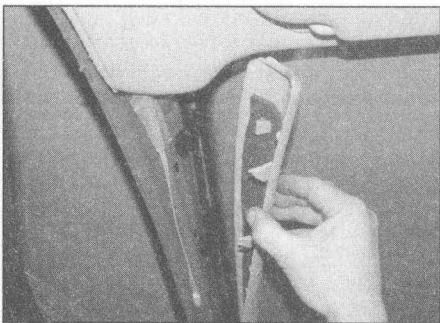
**A-pillar trim**

2 Prise the weatherstrip from the front door aperture in the vicinity of the pillar trim.

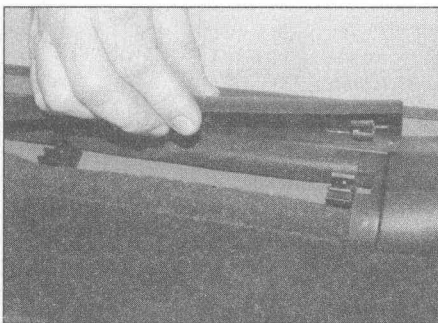
3 Carefully prise the trim away from the pillar starting at the middle, then pull the top edge from behind the headlining (see illustration).

4 Lift the trim up to disengage the lower locating lugs and remove it from the vehicle.

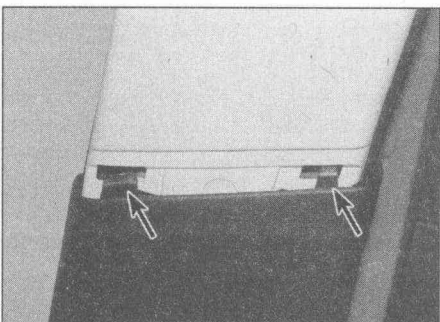
5 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but ensure that all retaining clips are fully engaged and that the weatherstrip is fully seated.



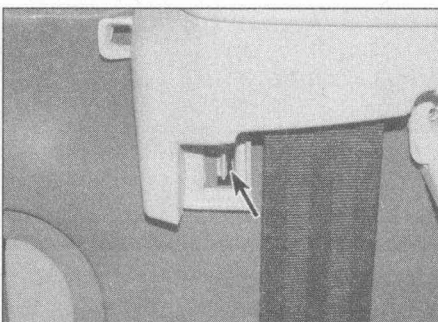
25.3 Unclip the trim from the A-pillar



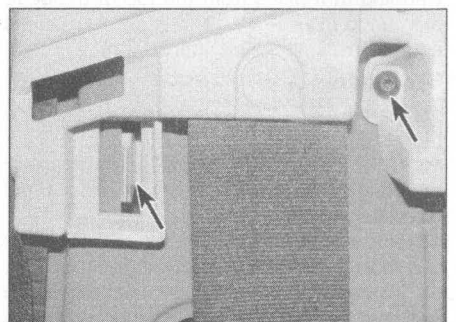
25.6 Pull the door sill trim up from its clips



25.7 Pull the centre pillar trim down to disengage the lugs at the top (arrowed)



25.10 Release the clip (arrowed) and pull the trim from place



25.13 Undo the screw and clip at the lower edge of the trim (arrowed)

**Lower B-pillar trim**

**5-door Hatchback and Estate/SW models**

6 Carefully pull the front sill trim upwards to release its retaining clips (see illustration). Release the front edge of the rear sill trim from its retaining clips.

7 Pull the lower end of the trim from its retaining clips, then pull it down to disengage it from the locating lugs at the top (see illustration).

**Upper B-pillar trim**

**3-door Hatchback models**

8 Remove the rear side trim panel as described in this Section.

9 Undo the bolt securing the lower seat belt anchor rail to the vehicle.

10 Release the clip at its base, then pull the trim towards the centre of the vehicle, and release it from the retaining clips (see illustration). Feed the seat belt through as the trim is removed.

11 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but ensure that all retaining clips are fully engaged.

**5-door Hatchback and Estate/SW models**

12 Remove the lower pillar trim as previously described. Undo the seat belt lower anchor bolt, and recover any washer/spacers, noting the fitted positions.

13 Undo the screw/clip securing the lower edge of the trim (see illustration).

14 Pull the trim towards the centre of the

vehicle, and release it from the retaining clips. Feed the seat belt through as the trim is withdrawn (see illustration).

15 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but ensure that all retaining clips are fully engaged.

### C-pillar trim

#### 5-door Hatchback models

16 Remove the parcel shelf support as described below.

17 Undo the screw securing the lower edge of the C-pillar/rear door sill trim panel, then carefully pull the pillar trim from the vehicle body to release its retaining clips (see illustrations).

18 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

#### 3-door Hatchback models

19 Remove the parcel shelf support and side trim panel as described below.

20 Carefully pull the trim from the pillar, releasing the push-on retaining clips.

#### Estate/SW models

21 Remove the parcel shelf support panel as described below.

22 Prise off the plastic cap, then undo the bolt securing the seat belt upper bracket.

23 Undo the screw at the base of the trim, release the retaining clip and carefully pull the trim from the vehicle (see illustration).

#### All models

24 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

### D-pillar trim

#### Estate/SW models

25 Pull away the rubber weatherstrip from the tailgate aperture adjacent to the D-pillar trim.

26 Carefully pull the D-pillar trim away, releasing the retaining clips as it is removed (see illustration).

27 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

### Parcel shelf support panel

#### Hatchback models

28 Fold the relevant rear seat back forward.

29 Undo the screw and nut securing the parcel shelf support to the body sidemember (see illustration).

30 Disconnect the wiring connectors from the accessories socket and interior light (as applicable) as the support is removed..

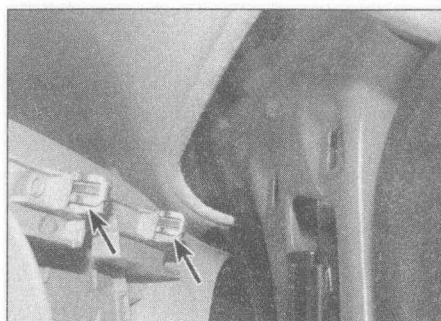
#### Estate/SW models

31 Remove the D-pillar trim as described in this Section. Lift the luggage compartment cover/crossmember from the vehicle.

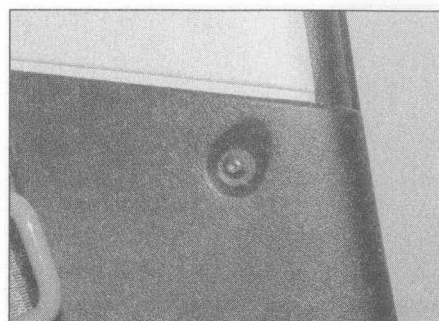
32 On SW models, prise up the centre pin a little, then lever out the complete plastic expanding rivet at the front of the panel (see illustration).

33 Prise out the air grille at the top of the panel, and undo the two Torx screws in the grille aperture (see illustration).

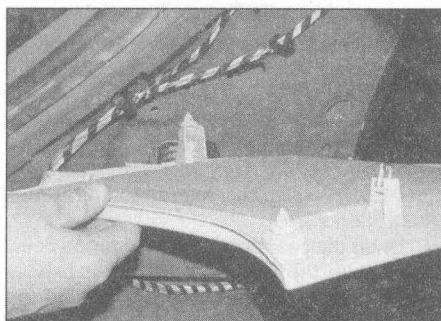
34 Undo the two screws, release the retaining clips and remove the support panel (see illustration). Disconnect the accessory



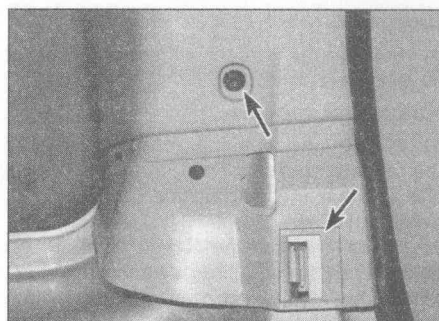
25.14 Release the clips (arrowed) at the upper edge of the trim



25.17a Undo the screw at the lower edge of the pillar trim . . .



25.17b . . . then pull the pillar trim from the retaining clips



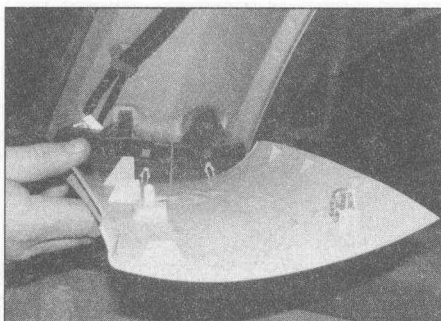
25.23 Undo the screw and release the clip (arrowed)

socket wiring plug (where fitted) as the panel is withdrawn

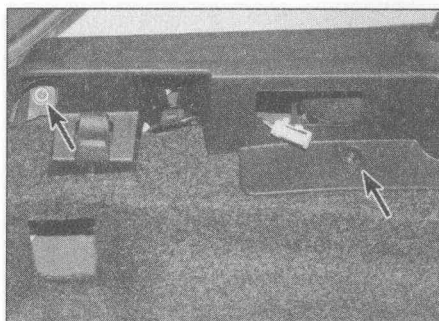
#### All models

35 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but

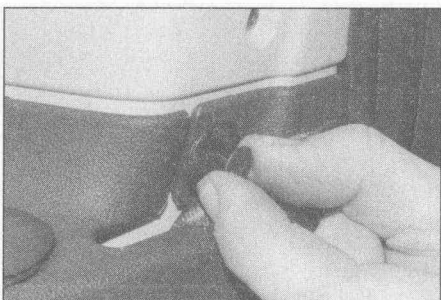
ensure that all retaining clips are fully engaged, that the seat belt is correctly located in the slot in the support, and the luggage compartment light wiring is correctly routed (where applicable).



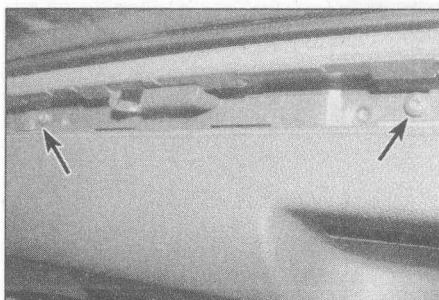
25.26 Pull the trim away from the pillar to release the clips



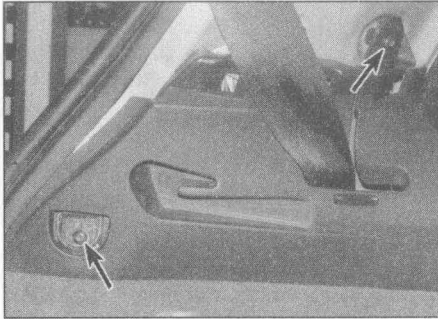
25.29 The parcel shelf is secured by a screw and nut (arrowed)



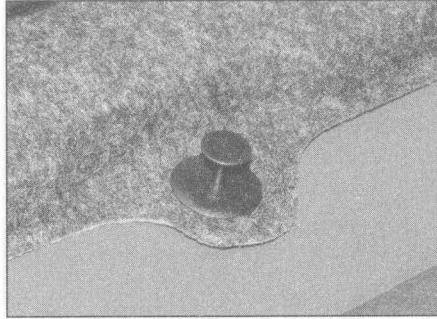
25.32 Prise up the centre pin a little, then prise out the complete expanding plastic rivet



25.33 Prise out the grille and undo the two Torx screws (arrowed)



25.34 Undo the two screws (arrowed) and remove the parcel shelf support panel



25.39 Remove the expanding rivet at the lower edge of the trim



25.43 Unclip the lower C-pillar/rear door sill plastic trim

**Luggage area lower side trim**

36 Remove the parcel shelf support bracket as described previously.

**Hatchback models**

37 Prise the weatherstrip from the bottom of the tailgate aperture, then undo the screws and remove the tailgate sill trim panel as described in paragraphs 73 to 75.

38 If working on the left-hand side, on vehicles with a satellite navigation system, remove the storage bin cover. Undo the three bolts securing the navigation unit to the body sidemember. Withdraw the unit and disconnect the wiring connectors.

39 Prise up the centre pin, then lever up the complete expanding plastic rivet(s) at the lower edge of the trim (see illustration).

40 Undo the screw securing the upper edge of the lower C-pillar/rear door sill trim panel (see illustration 25.17a). Pull the top edge of

the panel out and manoeuvre the luggage area lower side trim from the vehicle.

**Estate models**

41 Remove the rear seat back on the relevant side, as described in Section 23.

42 Undo the four Torx screws and remove the lower tailgate aperture trim (see illustration 25.76).

43 Undo the seat belt lower anchorage point, then unclip the rear door sill/lower C-pillar plastic trim (see illustration).

44 Starting at the front of the unit, prise out the luggage compartment light and disconnect the wiring plug.

45 Prise up the centre pins a little, then lever out the two plastic rivets at the front of the side trim, and the one at the rear (see illustrations).

46 Carefully prise the storage compartment trim surround from place (see illustration).

47 Lift the luggage compartment carpet adjacent to the side trim and prise up the centre pins a little, then lever out the two plastic rivets at the base of the side trim (see illustration).

48 Manoeuvre the side trim from the vehicle.

**SW models**

49 Pull up the fabric cover from the top of the wheel arch to release its retaining clips. Undo the two Torx screws and remove the plastic grab handle from the top of the wheel arch (see illustration).

50 Undo the four Torx screws and remove the lower tailgate aperture trim (see illustration 25.76).

51 Reach behind the side trim and disconnect the luggage compartment light wiring plug.

52 Undo the bolt securing the seat belt lower anchorage point at the front of side trim.

53 Carefully pull the rear of the door sill plastic trim towards the centre of the vehicle to release it from the retaining clip.

54 Lever up the centre pins a little, then prise out the two plastic rivets at the front lower edge of the side trim, and manoeuvre the trim from the vehicle (see illustration).

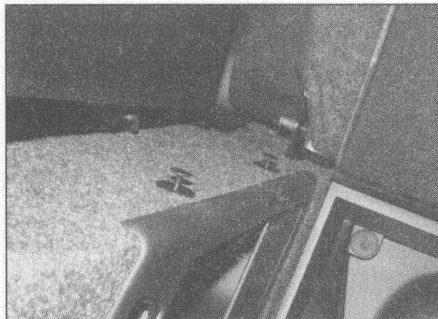
**All models**

55 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but ensure that all retaining clips are fully engaged.

**Rear side trim panel**

**3-door models**

56 Remove the rear seats as described in Section 23.



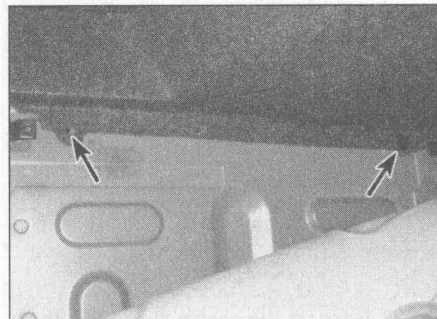
25.45a Remove the two plastic expanding rivets at the front of the trim . . .



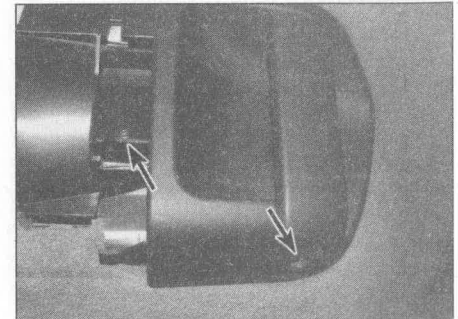
25.45b . . . and the one at the rear



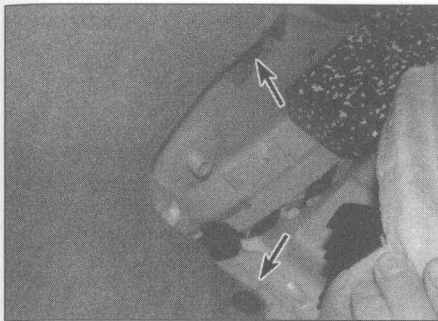
25.46 Remove the storage compartment trim surround



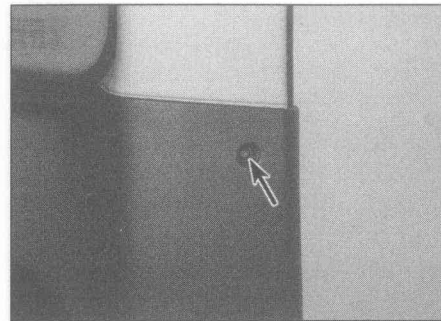
25.47 Lift the carpet and remove the plastic rivets (arrowed)



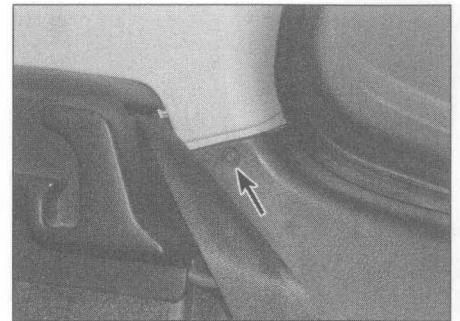
25.49 Undo the two screws (arrowed) and remove the grab handle



25.54 Remove the two plastic rivets (arrowed) at the front of the side trim



25.58a Undo the screw (arrowed) at the front . . .



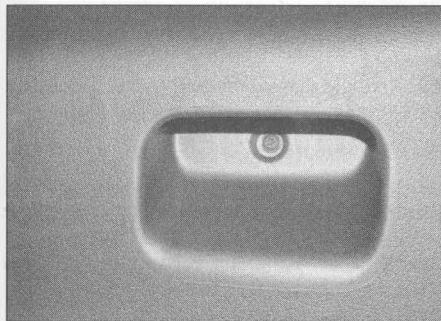
25.58b . . . and rear (arrowed) of the side trim

- 57 Undo the rear seat belt lower anchor bolt.
- 58 Undo the screw at front and rear of the trim (see illustrations).
- 59 Open the side hinged rear window, and pull up the weatherstrip adjacent to the trim.
- 60 Carefully pull the panel from the vehicle body to release the clips at the front and rear edges of the trim, and manoeuvre it from place.
- 61 Refitting is a reversal of removal, tightening the seat belt mounting bolt to the specified torque.

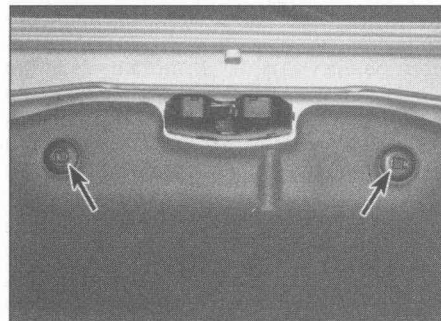
**Tailgate trim**

**Lower trim – Hatchback models**

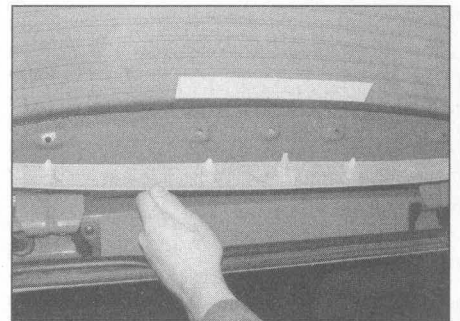
- 62 Undo the two screws in the handle recesses (see illustration).
- 63 Carefully pull the panel away from the tailgate, releasing the retaining clips.



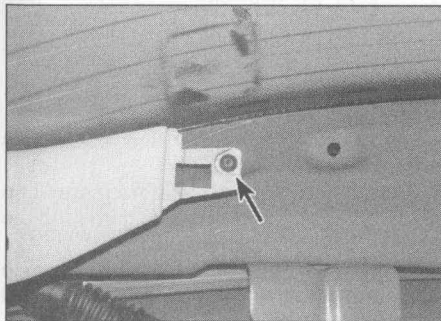
25.62 Remove the screw in the handle recess each side



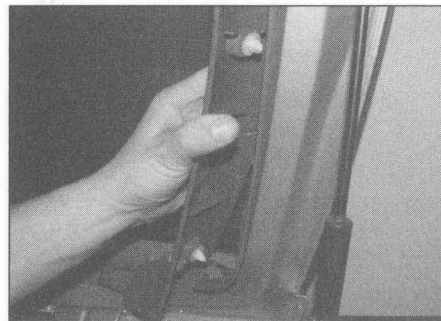
25.65 Push in the centre pins a little, then prise out the plastic rivets (arrowed)



25.68 Pull the upper trim from place to release the clips



25.70 Remove the side trim screw (arrowed)



25.72 Unclip the two halves of the tailgate side trims



25.74 Remove the plastic rivet at each end of the tailgate sill trim (Hatchback models)

**Lower trim – Estate/SW models**

- 64 Remove the upper and side trims.
- 65 Push in the centre pins a little, then prise out the plastic expansion rivets adjacent to the tailgate lock (see illustration).
- 66 Carefully pull the panel away from the tailgate, releasing the retaining clips.

**Upper trim**

- 67 Open the tailgate and unhook the parcel shelf straps.
- 68 Pull the panel away from the tailgate at the top corners to release the retaining clips, then remove the panel from the tailgate (see illustration).

**Side trims – Hatchback models**

- 69 Remove the upper trim and lower trim as previously described.

- 70 Undo the two screws (one for each trim) and unclip the panel (see illustration).

**Side trims – Estate/SW models**

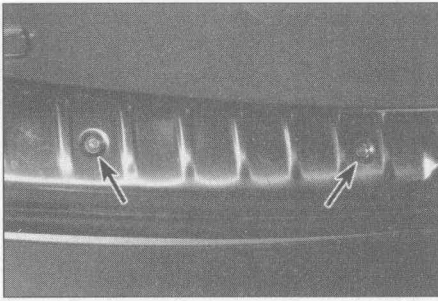
- 71 Remove the upper trim.
- 72 Carefully prise the two halves of the side trims from place (see illustration).

**Sill trim – Hatchback models**

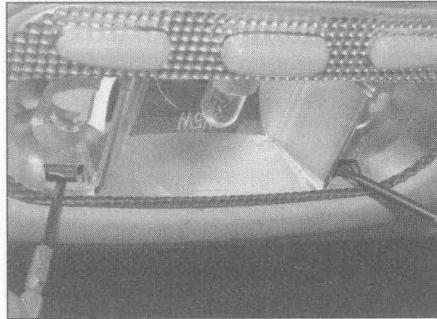
- 73 Lift the luggage compartment floor panel.
- 74 Prise up the centre pins, then remove the complete expanding plastic rivets (see illustration).
- 75 Pull the sill trim panel straight upwards to release the retaining clips, and remove the panel.

**Sill trim – Estate models**

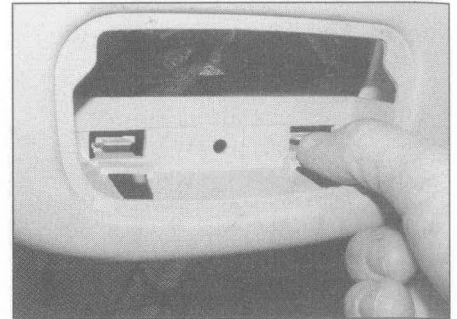
- 76 The trim is secured by four Torx screws, two on each side. Undo the screws and remove the trim (see illustration).



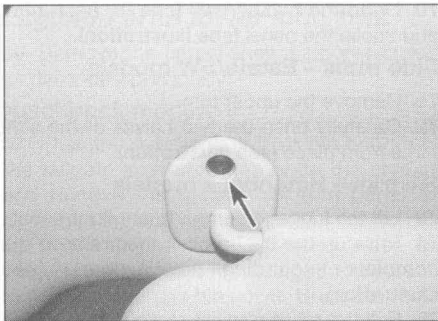
**25.76** On Estate/SW models, the tailgate sill trim is secured by two screws each side (arrowed)



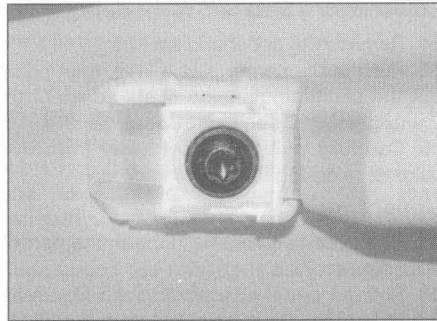
**25.80** Lever back the two clips and remove the light unit



**25.81** Release the two clips and pull the front of the console down



**25.83** The sunvisor is secured by a single screw (arrowed)



**25.88** Undo the screw at each end of the grab handle

**All models**

**77** Refitting is a reversal of removal, but ensure that all retaining clips are fully engaged.

**Headlining**

**Note:** Headlining removal requires considerable skill and experience if it is to be carried out without damage, and is therefore best entrusted to a Peugeot dealer or bodywork specialist. A general overview of the procedure is given below for those with the expertise to attempt the operation on a DIY basis.

**78** The headlining is clipped and glued to the roof, and can be withdrawn only once all fittings such as the grab handles, courtesy lights, sun visors, sunroof (if fitted), pillar trim panels, and associated additional panels have been removed. The door, tailgate and sunroof aperture weatherstrips will also have to be

prised clear and any additional screws and clips removed. Once the headlining attachments are released, the adhesive bonding in the centre panels must be broken using a hot air gun and spatula, starting at the front and working rearwards.

**79** When refitting, a coat of neoprene adhesive (available from Peugeot dealers) must be applied to the centre panels in the locations noted during removal. Position the headlining carefully and refit all components disturbed during removal. Clean the headlining with soap and water or white spirit on completion.

**Overhead console**

**80** Prise the lens from the interior light unit, then lever backwards the two retaining clips and remove the light unit (see illustration). Disconnect the wiring plugs as the unit is withdrawn.

**81** Release the two retaining clips and pull the front of the console down, then pull it forward to disengage the locating lug at the rear (see illustration). Disconnect any wiring plugs as the console is removed.

**82** Refitting is a reversal of removal.

**Sunvisor**

**83** The sunvisor is retained by a single screw (see illustration). Prior to removing the sunvisor, remove the interior light unit as described in Paragraph 80, and disconnect the wiring plugs.

**84** Remove the sunvisor retaining screw and unclip the mounting from the headlining. Identify the sunvisor vanity light wiring plug at the overhead console, and tie a length of string to it. Withdraw the sunvisor, pulling the string through the interior light aperture. When the string emerges at the sunvisor mount aperture, untie it from the wiring plug.

**85** Tie the length of string to the visor wiring, and pull it through to the interior light aperture. Reconnect the wiring plug.

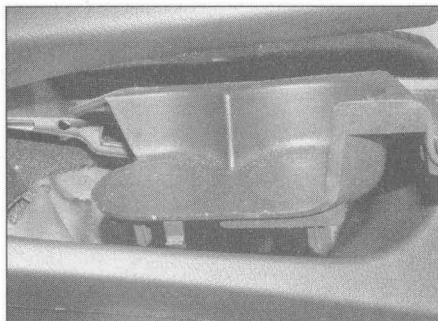
**86** Refit the sunvisor mount to the headlining, and tighten the retaining screw securely.

**Grab handle**

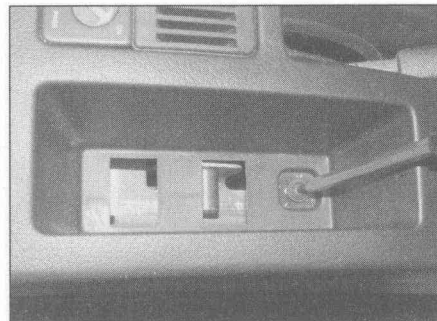
**87** Levering at the top and bottom edges, prise the plastic covers from the front and rear ends of the grab handle.

**88** Undo the retaining screws and remove the handle (see illustration).

**89** Refitting is a reversal of removal.



**26.2** Pull up the storage tray/cup holder from in front of the handbrake lever



**26.3** Undo the screw in the base of the storage compartment

**26 Centre console – removal and refitting**

**Removal**

- 1** Remove the fascia lower centre panel as described in the next Section.
- 2** Pull up and remove the storage tray/cup holder from the centre console in front of the handbrake lever (see illustration).
- 3** Lift up the rubber base from the storage compartment at the rear of the console and undo the retaining screw (see illustration).
- 4** Prise up and disconnect the passenger's airbag disarming switch (see illustration).





**26.4** Prise up and disconnect the airbag disarming switch

**5** Raise the front of the console, reach under and disconnect the 12V power socket wiring plug.

**6** Lift the console over the handbrake lever, and rearwards out of the vehicle.

**Refitting**

**7** Refitting is a reversal of removal.

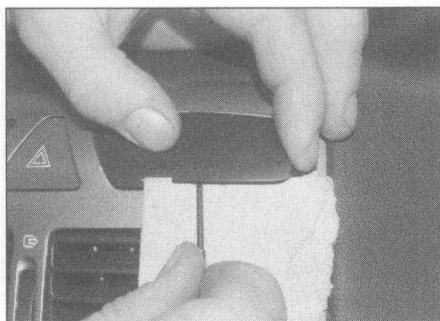
**27** Facia panel components – removal and refitting



**Upper centre panel**

**Removal**

**1** Remove the lower centre panel as described in this Section.



**27.2** Carefully prise out the outer switches/blanks above the air vents

**2** Carefully prise out the two outer switches (or switch blanks) from the upper edge of the panel, above the centre air vents (see illustration).

**3** Undo the two screws from the switch/blank aperture, and the two screws at the lower edge of the panel (see illustration).

**4** Carefully pull the panel back and disconnect the various wiring plugs, having first noted their fitted positions.

**Refitting**

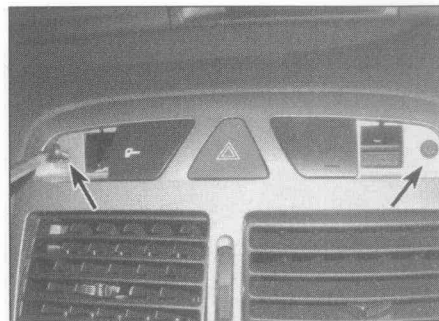
**5** Refitting is a reversal of removal.

**Lower centre panel**

**Removal**

**6** Disconnect the battery as described in Chapter 5A.

**7** Remove the radio/cassette/CD player as described in Chapter 12.



**27.3** Undo the two screws (arrowed)

**8** Remove the ashtray from the panel by pulling it open and depressing the retaining clip (see illustration).

**9** Undo the two screws from the ashtray aperture (see illustration).

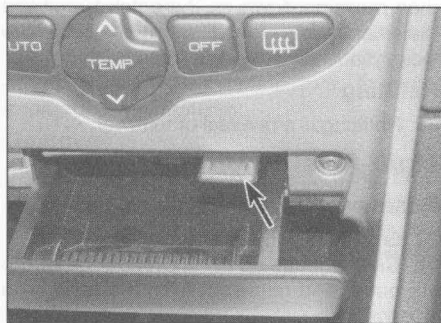
**10** Remove the rubber trim from the storage tray.

**11** On models with manual transmission, carefully unclip the gear lever gaiter from the panel. On models with automatic transmission, carefully prise up the selector lever position display trim (see illustrations).

**12** Prise the upper section of the panel from place (see illustration).

**Refitting**

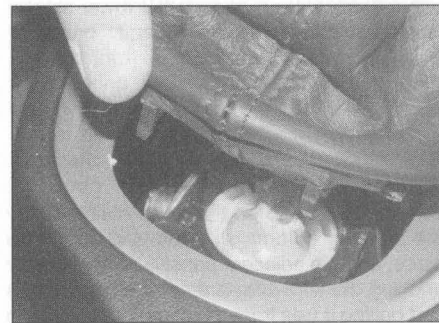
**13** Refitting is a reversal of removal, ensuring that the lug at the rear of the panel engages with the locating slot in the centre console (see illustration).



**27.8** Press down the retaining clip (arrowed) and remove the ashtray



**27.9** Undo the two screws (arrowed) above the ashtray aperture



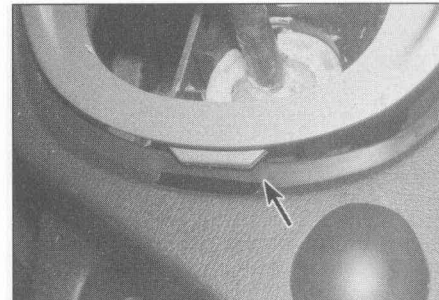
**27.11a** On manual transmission models, prise up the gear lever gaiter ...



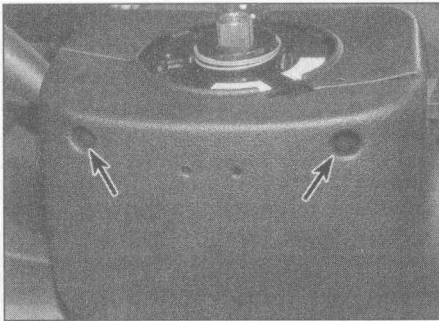
**27.11b** ... or prise up the selector lever position display trim on automatic transmission models



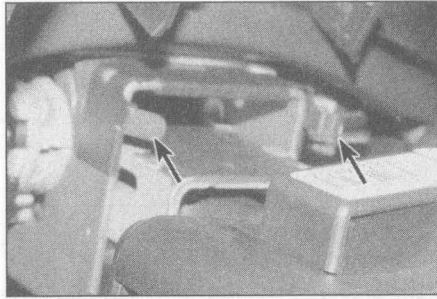
**27.12** Starting at the top, prise the panel from place



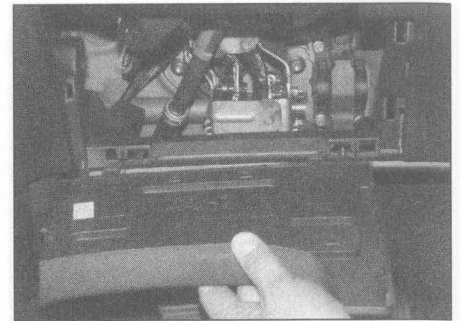
**27.13** Ensure the lug at the rear of the centre panel (arrowed) engages correctly



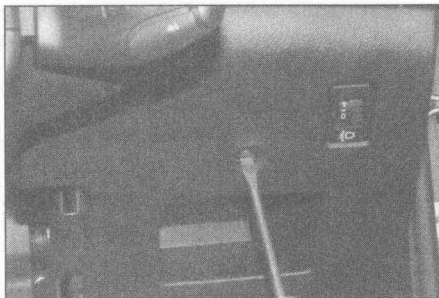
27.14a Two screws (arrowed) secure the steering column lower shroud



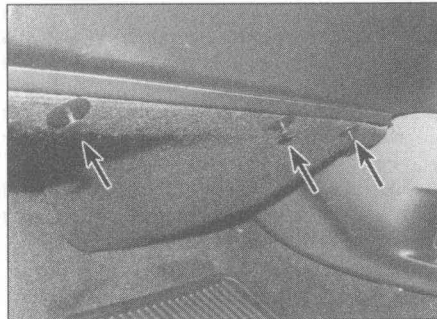
27.14b When refitting the upper shroud, ensure the guide lugs (arrowed) engage correctly



27.16a The trim panel below the steering column is clipped into place . . .



27.16b . . . and the adjacent panel is secured by a screw-type fastener and push-on clips



27.17 Footwell trims are retained by plastic expanding rivets (arrowed)



27.21a Open the glovebox and remove the 4 upper screws (arrowed) . . .

**Steering column shrouds**

**Removal**

14 Unscrew the two lower steering column shroud securing screws. Unclip and lift off the upper shroud, then remove the lower shroud (see illustrations).

**Refitting**

15 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

**Lower fascia panels**

**Removal**

16 The trim panel on the driver's side below the steering column shrouds is clipped into place, and the adjacent panel is removed after undoing the screw fastener a quarter of a turn and pulling it free from the clips. Upon refitting ensure the metal clips are refitted to the panel (see illustrations).



27.21b . . . and the 3 lower screws (arrowed)

17 The trim panels above the driver's pedals and passenger footwell are secured by expanding plastic rivets. Prise the centre pins up a little, then lever the complete rivets from place (see illustration). When refitting, ensure the front edge of the panel engages with the support bracket.

**Refitting**

18 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

**Instrument panel**

19 Refer to Chapter 12.

**Passenger side glovebox**

**Removal**

20 Release the three clips, and remove the trim beneath the fascia (see illustration 27.17).

21 Open the glovebox, and undo the 7 screws securing the glovebox to the fascia and

withdraw it. Disconnect the light wiring plug as the glovebox is withdrawn (see illustrations).

22 If required, the glovebox lock cylinder can be removed by inserting a flat-bladed tool between the lock catch and the glovebox lid, then pressing down on the catch to release the retaining clips (see illustrations). Refit the lock cylinder by pushing it into place.

**Refitting**

23 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

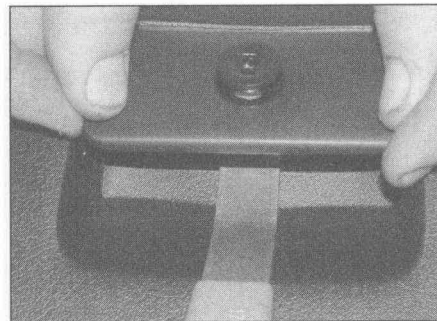
**Multi-function display**

**Removal**

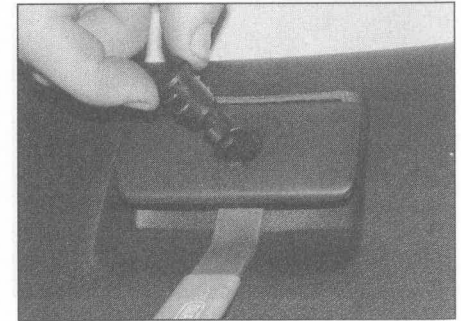
24 Ensure the ignition is switched off.

25 Carefully pull up on the rear edge of the surround, and release it from the fascia (see illustration).

26 Disconnect the wiring plug as the unit is withdrawn.



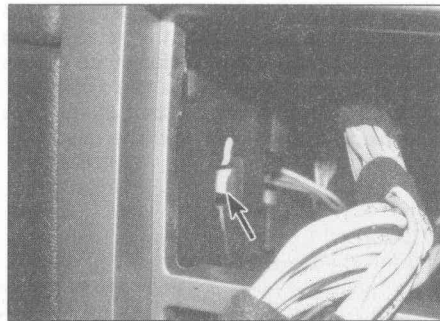
27.22a Insert a flat-bladed tool between the lock catch and the glovebox lid . . .



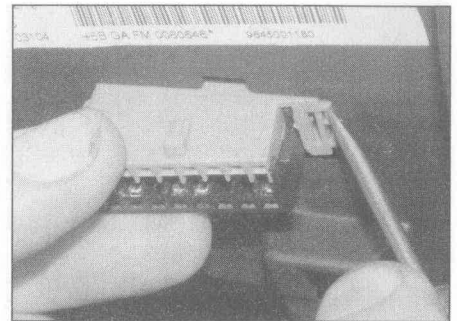
27.22b . . . then press the catch down to release the cylinder



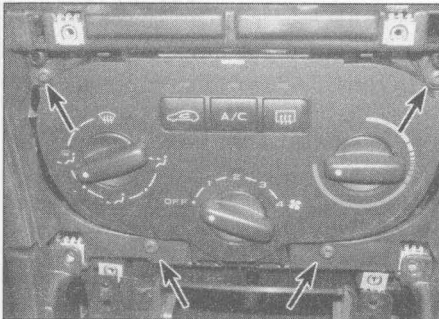
**27.25** Pull up the rear of the unit to release the clips (arrowed)



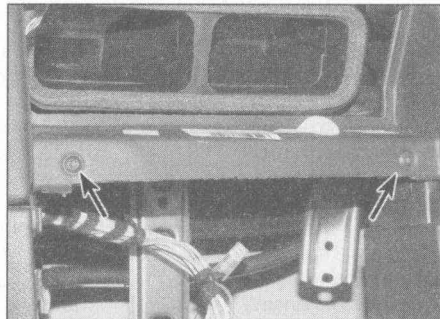
**27.34** Press the clip (arrowed) to release interior temperature sensor



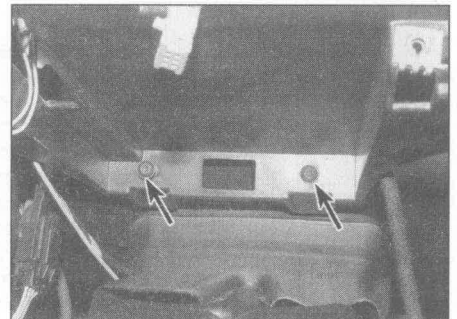
**27.39** Depress the clip and push the diagnostic connector in



**27.40** Undo the 4 screws (arrowed) and push the control panel into the fascia



**27.41** Undo the two screws (arrowed) in the audio unit aperture



**27.44** Undo the two screws (arrowed) at the centre lower section of the fascia

27 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

### Complete fascia assembly

**Note:** This is an involved operation entailing the removal of numerous components and assemblies, and the disconnection of a multitude of wiring connectors. Make notes of the location of all disconnected wiring, or attach labels to the connectors, to avoid confusion when refitting.

### Removal

- 28** Disconnect the battery (see Chapter 5A).  
**29** Move the front seats as far back as possible. Set the steering wheel in the straight-ahead position, and engage the steering lock.  
**30** Remove the centre console as described in Section 26.  
**31** Extract the stud-type plastic clips, using a forked type tool, and remove the lower trim panel from the footwell on both sides.  
**32** Remove the steering wheel as described in Chapter 10.  
**33** Remove the following fascia panels as described previously in this Section:

- a) *Facia upper centre panel.*
- b) *Facia lower centre panel.*
- c) *Facia lower panels.*
- d) *Instrument panel.*
- e) *Multi-function display*
- f) *Passenger side glovebox*

**34** On models fitted automatic climate control, working in the centre air vent aperture, unclip and remove the interior

temperature sensor. Disconnect the wiring plug as it is withdrawn (see illustration).

**35** On models fitted with automatic headlights-on function, reach through the multi-function display aperture, and push the light sensor upwards to unclip it. Disconnect the wiring plug.

**36** Remove the steering column combination switches as described in Chapter 12.

**37** Remove the built-in systems interface (BSI) unit from the fascia as described in Chapter 12.

**38** Carefully prise out the driver's and passenger's side air vents, then reach through the apertures, and release the fascia end cover retaining clip. Carefully pull the end panels from the fascia, releasing the retaining clips as the panel is withdrawn.

**39** Prise out and disconnect the headlamp height adjustment control, then depress the

retaining clips and press in the diagnostic connector (see illustration). Release their wiring loom retaining clip adjacent to the connector aperture.

**40** Undo the four screws surrounding the heater control panel trim, release the two retaining clips and push the control panel forward 'into' the fascia (see illustration).

**41** Working in the audio unit aperture, undo the two screws securing the fascia to the heater/air conditioner housing (see illustration).

**42** Undo the two screws, release the retaining stud, and remove the footwell central kick panels from the driver's and passenger's side.

**43** Disconnect the two rear air ducts from the heater housing.

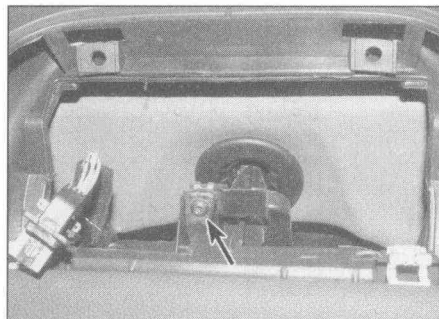
**44** Undo the two screws at the centre lower section of the fascia (see illustration).

**45** Working as described in Chapter 10, undo the steering column upper mounting nuts and lower mounting bolts and lower the column from its location. Note that it is not necessary to disconnect the steering column universal joint.

**46** Undo the Torx screw visible through the multi-function display aperture (see illustration).

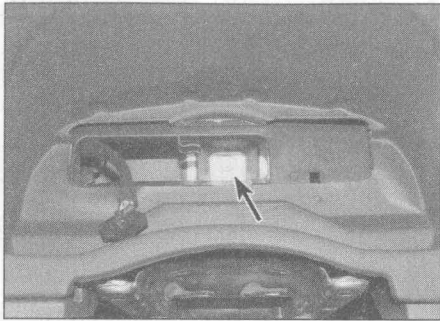
**47** Undo the bolt securing the fascia bracket to the floor centre section on the passenger's side, and the bolt accessible through the instrument panel aperture (see illustration).

**48** Working through the apertures at each end of the fascia, unscrew the two bolts each side securing the fascia crossmember.



**27.46** Facia screw (arrowed) in the multi-function display aperture





27.47 Facia screw (arrowed) in the instrument panel aperture

49 Note their fitted positions and harness routing, then disconnect the facia wiring plugs. Take note of the location of the various wiring harness retaining clips, to aid refitment.  
50 With the help of an assistant, lift the facia from place, and remove it from the vehicle.

### Refitting

51 Refitting is a reversal of removal ensuring that all wiring is correctly reconnected and all mountings securely tightened.






# Chapter 12

## Body electrical systems

### Contents

Airbag system – general information and precautions .....	21	Fuses and relays – general information .....	3
Airbag system components – removal and refitting .....	22	General information .....	1
Audio unit – removal and refitting .....	17	Headlight beam alignment – general information .....	8
Built-in systems interface (BSI) unit/fusebox – general, removal and refitting .....	23	Horn – removal and refitting .....	12
Bulbs (exterior lights) – renewal .....	5	Instrument panel – removal and refitting .....	9
Bulbs (interior lights) – renewal .....	6	Loudspeakers – removal and refitting .....	18
Cigarette lighter/accessory socket – removal and refitting .....	11	Radio aerial – removal and refitting .....	19
Clock/multi-function unit – removal and refitting .....	10	Satellite navigation system – general information .....	24
Electrical fault finding – general information .....	2	Switches – removal and refitting .....	4
Engine immobiliser and anti-theft alarm system – general information .....	20	Tailgate window wiper motor – removal and refitting .....	15
Exterior light units – removal and refitting .....	7	Washer system components – removal and refitting .....	16
		Windscreen wiper motor and linkage – removal and refitting .....	14
		Wiper arm – removal and refitting .....	13

### Degrees of difficulty

<p><b>Easy</b>, suitable for novice with little experience</p> 	<p><b>Fairly easy</b>, suitable for beginner with some experience</p> 	<p><b>Fairly difficult</b>, suitable for competent DIY mechanic</p> 	<p><b>Difficult</b>, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic</p> 	<p><b>Very difficult</b>, suitable for expert DIY or professional</p> 
--	---	---	--	---

### Specifications

#### General

System type ..... 12 volt negative earth

#### Bulbs

	Type	Wattage
Direction indicator light .....	Bayonet	21
Direction indicator side repeater .....	Push-fit	5
Front ashtray light .....	Push-fit	1.2
Front foglight .....	H1	55
Front sidelights .....	Push-fit	5
Glovebox light .....	Push-fit	5
Headlights:		
Main beam bulbs .....	H1	55
Dip beam bulbs .....	H7	55
High-level stop-light .....	Push-fit	5
Interior/courtesy lights .....	Push-fit	5
Luggage compartment light .....	Push-fit	5
Number plate light .....	Push-fit	5
Rear foglight .....	Bayonet	21
Reversing light .....	Bayonet	21
Stop-light .....	Bayonet	21
Tail light .....	Bayonet	5
Vanity lights .....	Festoon	3

#### Torque wrench setting

	Nm	lbf ft
Airbag control unit retaining nuts .....	8	6

## 1 General information



**Warning:** Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, read through the precautions given in 'Safety first!' at the beginning of this manual, and in Chapter 5A.

The electrical system is of 12 volt negative earth type. Power for the lights and all electrical accessories is supplied by a lead-acid type battery, which is charged by the alternator.

Many of the body electrical systems are controlled by individual electronic control units (ECUs) and these are in turn controlled by a main ECU known as a Built-in Systems Interface (BSI). The various ECUs and the BSI exchange data with each other via a multiplex network. The multiplex network is a two-wire system linking the BSI with the system ECUs and is termed by Peugeot as CAN (controlled area network) and VAN (vehicle area network). Essentially this means that the BSI and the ECUs controlling the 'comfort' systems, safety systems, security systems, and entertainment systems in the vehicle, are all inter-connected via Vehicle Area Networks (see illustration).

An ECU connected to the multiplex network only receives some of the data needed for it to operate directly, with the remaining data being supplied by the other ECUs on the network. Because the ECUs share information via the network, several ECUs can control the operation of the same system. Also, one ECU can control several systems in an autonomous manner. The BSI is the manager of this information interchange as well as also being responsible for the control of certain vehicle systems itself. The BSI has a full diagnostic capability whereby any fault in any of the ECUs on the multiplex network can be traced using diagnostic equipment connected to the vehicle diagnostic connector. Should any fault develop with a system on the network, have the self-diagnosis facility interrogated by a Peugeot dealer or suitably-equipped specialist.

This Chapter covers repair and service procedures for the various electrical components not associated with the engine. Information on the battery, alternator and starter motor can be found in Chapter 5A.

It should be noted that, prior to working on any component in the electrical system, the battery should first be disconnected, to prevent the possibility of electrical short-circuits (see Chapter 5A).

## 2 Electrical fault finding – general information

**Note:** Refer to the precautions given in 'Safety first!' and in Chapter 5A before starting work. The following tests relate to testing of the main electrical circuits, and should not be used to test delicate electronic circuits (such as anti-lock braking systems), particularly where an electronic control unit (ECU) or multiplexing is used (see Section 1).

### General

**1** A typical electrical circuit consists of an electrical component, any switches, relays, motors, fuses, fusible links or circuit breakers related to that component, and the wiring and connectors which link the component to both the battery and the chassis. To help to pinpoint a problem in an electrical circuit, wiring diagrams are included at the end of this Chapter.

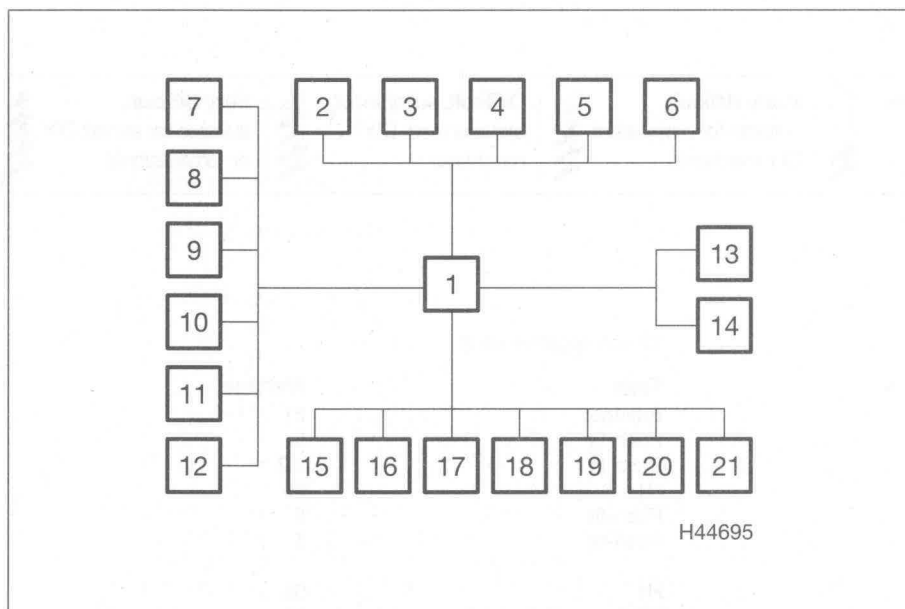
**2** Before attempting to diagnose an electrical fault, first study the appropriate wiring diagram, to obtain a more complete understanding of the components included in the particular circuit concerned. The possible sources of a fault can be narrowed down by noting whether other components related to the circuit are operating properly. If several components or circuits fail at one time, the problem is likely to be related to a shared fuse or earth connection.

**3** Electrical problems usually stem from simple causes, such as loose or corroded connections, a faulty earth connection, a blown fuse, a melted fusible link, or a faulty relay (refer to Section 3 for details of testing relays). Visually inspect the condition of all fuses, wires and connections in a problem circuit before testing the components. Use the wiring diagrams to determine which terminal connections will need to be checked, in order to pinpoint the trouble-spot.

**4** The basic tools required for electrical fault finding include a circuit tester or voltmeter; an ohmmeter (to measure resistance); a battery and set of test leads; and a jumper wire, preferably with a circuit breaker or fuse incorporated, which can be used to bypass suspect wires or electrical components. Before attempting to locate a problem with test instruments, use the wiring diagram to determine where to make the connections.

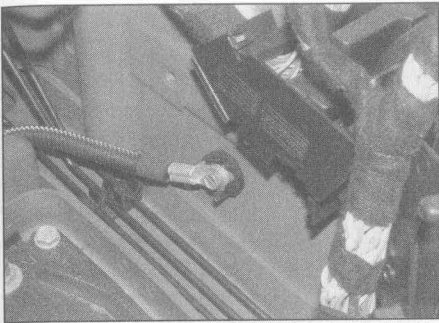
**5** To find the source of an intermittent wiring fault (usually due to a poor or dirty connection, or damaged wiring insulation), a 'wiggle' test can be performed on the wiring. This involves wiggling the wiring by hand, to see if the fault occurs as the wiring is moved. It should be possible to narrow down the source of the fault to a particular section of wiring. This method of testing can be used in conjunction with any of the tests described in the following sub-Sections.

**6** Apart from problems due to poor connect-

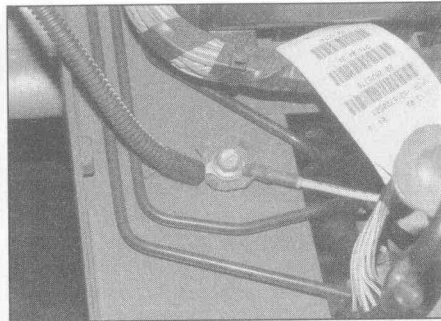


1.1 Multiplexing – Vehicle Area Network (VAN)

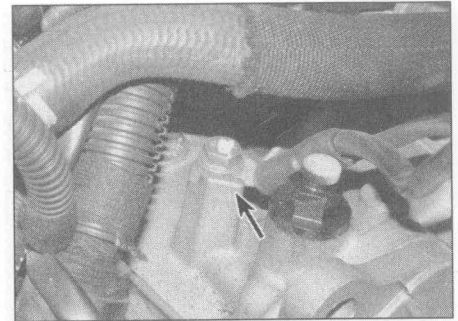
- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1 Built-in Systems Interface (BSI)                             | 11 ESP control unit           |
| 2 Electric windows   | 12 Automatic transmission ECU |
| 3 Fuel additive ECU (2.0 litre diesel with particulate filter) | 13 Airbag ECU                 |
| 4 Anti-theft alarm   | 14 Fusebox                    |
| 5 Central locking transmitter                                  | 15 Air conditioning ECU       |
| 6 Sunroof motor  | 16 Instrument cluster         |
| 7 Power steering pump  | 17 CD player                  |
| 8 Engine management ECU  | 18 Multi-function display     |
| 9 Steering column combination switches                         | 19 Parking aid ECU            |
| 10 ABS control unit  | 20 Radio                      |
|  | 21 Radio/telephone ECU        |



**2.20a** Earth connection adjacent to the left-hand gearbox mounting . . .



**2.20b** . . . in front of the engine compartment fuse/relay box . . .



**2.20c** . . . on the top of the transmission (arrowed)

ions, two basic types of fault can occur in an electrical circuit – open-circuit, or short-circuit.

**7** Open-circuit faults are caused by a break somewhere in the circuit, which prevents current from flowing. An open-circuit fault will prevent a component from working, but will not cause the relevant circuit fuse to blow.

**8** Short-circuit faults are caused by a 'short' somewhere in the circuit, which allows the current flowing in the circuit to 'escape' along an alternative route, usually to earth. Short-circuit faults are normally caused by a breakdown in wiring insulation, which allows a feed wire to touch either another wire, or an earthed component such as the bodyshell. A short-circuit fault will normally cause the relevant circuit fuse to blow. **Note:** As an aid to economy and to prevent battery discharge, certain functions of the electrical system can only be used for 30 minutes after the engine has been stopped. Bear this in mind when tracing power supply faults on these systems.

*Functions affected:*

Windscreen wipers.

Electric windows.

Sunroof.

Courtesy lights.

Audio equipment.

After this period the BSI (Built-in Systems Interface) cuts the power to these circuits. To restore power, start the engine.

It is also possible for the BSI to turn off certain functions (heater blower, heated rear window) depending on the state of charge of the battery. When tracing a fault, ensure the battery is in a good state of charge.

### Finding an open-circuit

**9** To check for an open-circuit, connect one lead of a voltmeter to either the negative battery terminal or a known good earth.

**10** Connect the other lead to a connector in the circuit being tested, preferably nearest to the battery or fuse.

**11** Switch on the circuit, bearing in mind that some circuits are live only when the ignition switch is moved to a particular position.

**12** If voltage is present (indicated either by the tester bulb lighting or a voltmeter reading, as applicable), this means that the section of the circuit between the relevant connector and the battery is problem-free.

**13** Continue to check the remainder of the circuit in the same fashion.

**14** When a point is reached at which no voltage is present, the problem must lie between that point and the previous test point with voltage. Most problems can be traced to a broken, corroded or loose connection.

### Finding a short-circuit

**15** To check for a short-circuit, first disconnect the load(s) from the circuit (loads are the components which draw current from a circuit, such as bulbs, motors, heating elements, etc).

**16** Remove the relevant fuse from the circuit, and connect a circuit tester or voltmeter to the fuse connections.

**17** Switch on the circuit, bearing in mind that some circuits are live only when the ignition switch is moved to a particular position.

**18** If voltage is present (indicated either by the tester bulb lighting or a voltmeter reading, as applicable), this means that there is a short-circuit.

**19** If no voltage is present, but the fuse still blows with the load(s) connected, this indicates an internal fault in the load(s).

### Finding an earth fault

**20** The battery negative terminal is connected to 'earth' – the metal of the engine/transmission and the car body – and most systems are wired so that they only receive a positive feed, the current returning via the metal of the car body. This means that the component mounting and the body form part of that circuit. Loose or corroded mountings can therefore cause a range of electrical faults, ranging from total failure of a circuit, to a puzzling partial fault. In particular, lights may shine dimly (especially when another circuit sharing the same earth point is in operation), motors (eg, wiper motors or the radiator cooling fan motor) may run slowly, and the operation of one circuit may have an apparently-unrelated effect on another. Note that on many vehicles, earth straps are used between certain components, such as the engine/transmission and the body, usually where there is no metal-to-metal contact between components, due to flexible rubber mountings, etc (see illustrations).

**21** To check whether a component is properly earthed, disconnect the battery, and connect one lead of an ohmmeter to a known good earth point. Connect the other lead to the wire or earth connection being tested. The resistance reading should be zero; if not, check the connection as follows.

**22** If an earth connection is thought to be faulty, dismantle the connection, and clean back to bare metal both the bodyshell and the wire terminal or the component earth connection mating surface. Be careful to remove all traces of dirt and corrosion, then use a knife to trim away any paint, so that a clean metal-to-metal joint is made. On reassembly, tighten the joint fasteners securely; if a wire terminal is being refitted, use serrated washers between the terminal and the bodyshell, to ensure a clean and secure connection. When the connection is remade, prevent the onset of corrosion in the future by applying a coat of petroleum jelly or silicone-based grease, or by spraying on (at regular intervals) a proprietary ignition sealer or water-dispersant lubricant.

## 3 Fuses and relays – general information

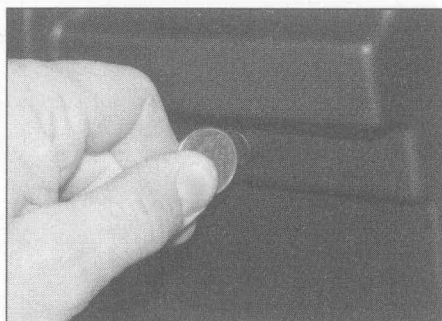
Illustrations

### Fuses

**1** Fuses are designed to break a circuit when a predetermined current is reached, in order to protect the components and wiring which could be damaged by excessive current flow. Any excessive current flow will be due to a fault in the circuit, usually a short-circuit (see Section 2).

**2** The majority of fuses are located behind the glovebox lid on the passenger's side of the facia. Additional fuses (including the larger, higher-rated fuses) are located in the fuse/relay box on the left-hand side of the engine compartment.

**3** To gain access to the facia fuses, open the glovebox, rotate the cover fastener through 90 degrees then remove the cover from the facia (see illustrations). To gain access to the fuses in the engine compartment, simply unclip the cover from the fuse/relay box.



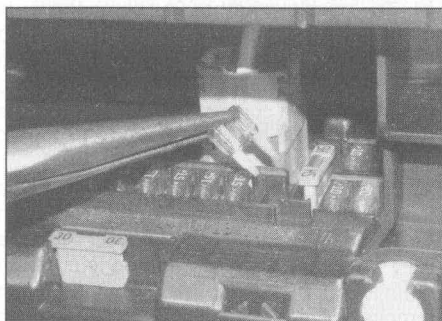
3.3a Rotate the fastener 90° ...



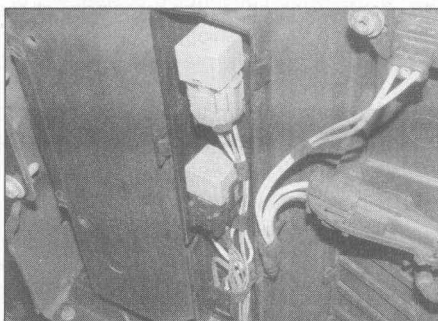
3.3b ... and pull down the cover ...



3.3c ... to access the main fusebox



3.5 Pull the fuse from its socket



3.8 The cooling fan relays are located in the front panel

4 A list of circuits each fuse protects is given on the fusebox cover.

5 To remove a fuse, first switch off the circuit concerned (or the ignition), then pull the fuse out of its terminals (**see illustration**). The wire within the fuse should be visible; if the fuse has blown it will be broken or melted.

6 Always renew a fuse with one of the correct rating, never use a fuse with a different rating from that specified. The fuse rating is stamped on the top of the fuse, the fuses are also colour-coded as follows. Refer to the wiring diagrams for details of the fuse ratings and the circuits protected.

Colour	Rating
Orange	5A
Red	10A
Blue	15A
Yellow	20A
Clear or white	25A
Green	30A

7 Never renew a fuse more than once without tracing the source of the trouble. If the new fuse blows immediately, find the cause before renewing it again; a short to earth as a result of faulty insulation is most likely. Where a fuse protects more than one circuit, try to isolate the fault by switching on each circuit in turn (where possible) until the fuse blows again. Always carry a supply of spare fuses of each relevant rating on the vehicle; a spare of each rating should be clipped into the fusebox.

### Relays

8 The majority of relay functions are incorporated into the built-in system interface (BSI) unit (see Section 23). Other relays are located in the fuse/relay box in the engine compartment and the cooling fan relay(s) is/are located in front panel (**see illustration**).

9 If a circuit or system controlled by a relay

develops a fault and the relay is suspect, operate the system. If the relay is functioning, it should be possible to hear it 'click' as it is energised. If this is the case, the fault lies with the components or wiring of the system. If the relay is not being energised, then either the relay is not receiving a main supply or a switching voltage, or the relay itself is faulty. Testing is by the substitution of a known good unit, but be careful – while some relays are identical in appearance and in operation, others look similar but perform different functions.

10 To remove a relay, first ensure that the relevant circuit is switched off. The relay can then simply be pulled out from the socket, and pushed back into position.

## 4 Switches – removal and refitting



**Note:** Disconnect the battery before removing any switch, and reconnect the lead after refitting the switch (see Chapter 5A).

### Ignition switch

1 Refer to Chapter 10.

### Steering column switches

2 Remove the driver's airbag as described in Section 22.

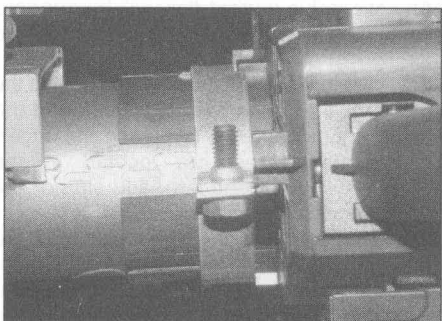
3 Remove the steering wheel as described in Chapter 10.

4 Remove the steering column lower and upper shrouds as described in Section 27 of Chapter 11.

5 If the switch assembly is to be refitted, immobilise the airbag rotary contact disc with adhesive tape. Note that as long as the wheels are in the straight-ahead position, the contact disc should lock in position. Slacken the switch assembly retaining clamp, then using a small screwdriver, carefully prise the retaining catches away from the column and lift the switch assembly from place (**see illustrations**). Disconnect the wiring plugs as the assembly is withdrawn.

**Caution:** Take great care not damage the switch assembly retaining catches.

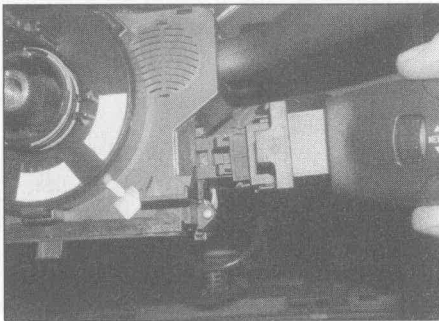
6 If required, the cruise control switch and



4.5a Slacken the switch assembly retaining clamp bolt ...



4.5b ... then carefully lift the retaining catches



**4.6 Unclip and slide out the cruise control/radio remote switch**

remote radio control switch can be unclipped from the combination switch assembly (see illustration).

**7** Although refitting is a reversal of removal, the airbag contact unit built into the switch assembly must be set in the correct position as follows:

**8** Ensure the wheels are in the straight-ahead position.

**8** If refitting the existing switch assembly, simply remove the adhesive tape applied during removal.

**10** If the new switch assemblies are manufactured by Delphi a setting-up procedure must be carried out. Units supplied by other manufacturers are supplied with the contact ring immobilised in the correct position by a self-adhesive label, which should be removed just prior to steering wheel refitment.

**11** The following procedure applies to new or used Delphi units. Press in the centre collar of the rotary contact unit, then gently rotate the collar clockwise until it comes to a stop. Turn the collar 2.5 revolutions anti-clockwise until the three triangles are in line, and the contact needle is in the third groove (see illustration). If the steering wheel is not to be fitted immediately, immobilise the contact in this position with adhesive tape.

**Caution! Do not turn the collar anti-clockwise until the 'stop' has been reached – the unit will be irreparably damaged.**

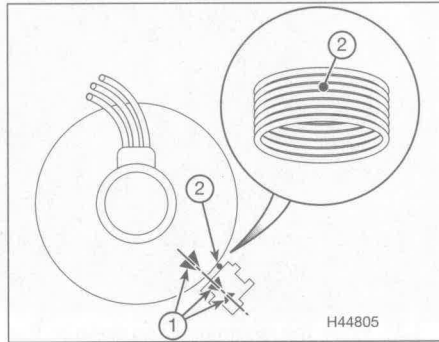
**Note:** If a new switch assembly is fitted to a vehicle with ESP (Electronic Stability Programme) the unit must be initialised using dedicated test equipment. Entrust this task to a Peugeot dealer or suitably-equipped specialist.

### Audio unit control stalk/cruise control

**12** Undo the two screws securing the steering column lower shroud in place, then lift the rear edge of the upper shroud and disengage the lugs at the front edge (see Section 27 of Chapter 11).

**13** Release the clips and slide the switch from position, disconnecting the wiring plug(s) as the unit is withdrawn (see illustration 4.6).

**14** Refitting is the reversal of removal.



**4.11 Align the three triangles (1), with the contact needle in the third groove (2)**

### Facia-mounted switches

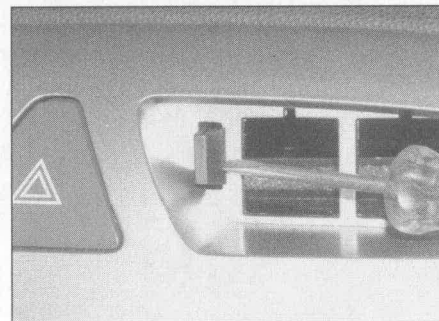
**15** The facia-mounted switches for the central locking, alarm and ESP, are located above the central air vents. To remove one of these switches, using a plastic or wooden spatula, working at the top and lower edges, gently prise the switch from the panel, disconnecting the wiring plug as the switch is withdrawn. The headlight height control switch is prised from place after first pulling away the covering trim panel (see illustrations). Take care not to mark the surrounding trim.

**16** To remove the hazard-warning switch, remove the facia upper centre panel as described in Section 27 of Chapter 11. Prise out the switch/blanking plate either side of the hazard switch, release the retaining clips and remove the switch (see illustration).

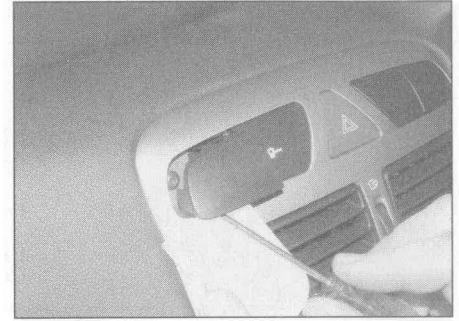
**17** Refitting is the reverse of removal.



**4.15b Undo the screw, pull the panel away ...**



**4.16 To remove the hazard light switch, release the retaining clip each side**



**4.15a Working at the top and bottom edges, carefully prise the switch from the panel**

### Heating/ventilation control

**18** The switches are an integral part of the heater/ventilation control panel, and cannot be renewed separately. If any switch is faulty, the complete control panel must be renewed – refer to Chapter 3 for details.

### Stop-light switch

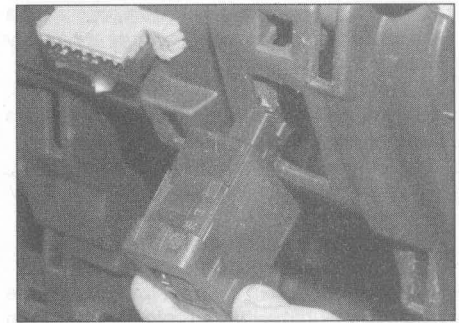
**19** Refer to Chapter 9.

### Handbrake warning light switch

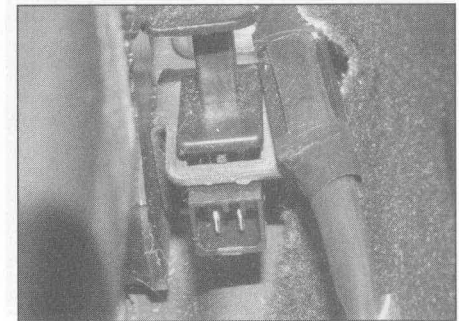
**20** Remove the centre console as described in Chapter 11.

**21** Disconnect the switch wiring connector, the push the switch to the rear, and lift up the front edge. Remove the switch (see illustration).

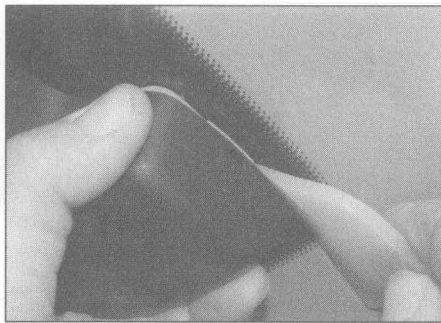
**22** Refitting is the reverse of removal.



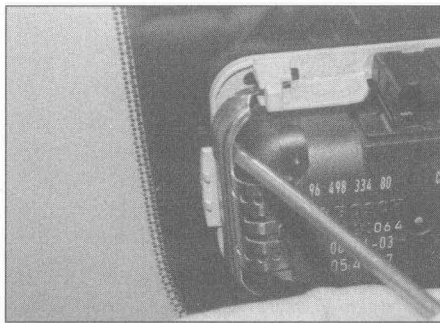
**4.15c ... and prise the headlight levelling switch out**



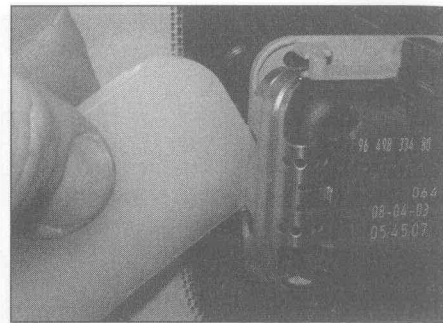
**4.21 Handbrake warning switch**



4.29 Squeeze the plastic cover, and prise it off at the same time



4.31 Prise the retaining clips open to the 45° position



4.32 Carefully lever the sensor from place

### Courtesy light switch

23 The courtesy light switches are an integral part of the door lock assemblies. Refer to Chapter 11 for door lock removal and refitting details.

### Luggage compartment light switch

24 The luggage compartment light switch function is integral with the tailgate lock assembly. For tailgate lock removal, refer to Chapter 11.

### Windscreen wiper rain sensor

#### Models without brightness sensor

25 Disconnect the wiring plug from the sensor, located on the windscreen.

26 Disconnect the wiring connector then carefully release the side retaining clips and remove the rain sensor from the windscreen.

**Caution: Do not touch the rain sensor lens or the windscreen glass in the area of the sensor. These areas must be kept spotlessly clean if the sensor is to function correctly.**

27 Refitting is the reverse of removal, ensuring the sensor is securely retained by its securing the clips in the following order:

- Fit the clip opposite the connector.
- Engage the clip on the right-hand side (by the chamfer).
- Fully clip-in the left-hand clip.
- Fully clip-in the right-hand clip.

If a new sensor is being fitted, it will be necessary to remove the protective film from the sensor prior to installation. On completion, check the sensor operation by spraying the

screen with water (wiper stalk in the auto position).

#### Models with brightness sensor

28 Ensure the ignition is switch off. Remove the interior mirror as described in Chapter 11.

29 Clamp the sensor protector between fingers and thumb, then slide a plastic spatula between the protector and the windscreen. Remove the protector (**see illustration**).

30 Unplug the sensor connector.

31 Using a small screwdriver, carefully prise away the spring clip from the ends of the sensor assembly to the 45 degrees position (**see illustration**).

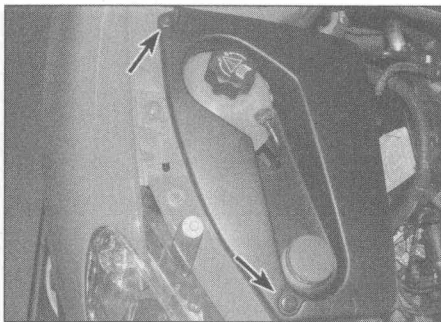
32 Levering (from the side in the centre) between the sensor and the base, lever the sensor until the assembly detaches from the windscreen (**see illustration**).

**Caution: Do not touch the rain sensor lens or the windscreen glass in the area of the sensor. These areas must be kept spotlessly clean if the sensor is to function correctly. Take great care not to damage the sensor 'cushion'.**

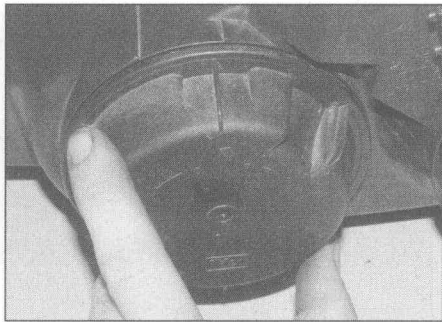
33 Refitting is a reversal of removal. If a new sensor is being fitted, it will be necessary to remove the protective film from the sensor prior to installation. make sure there are no air bubbles between the sensor and the windscreen. On completion, check the sensor operation by spraying the screen with water (wiper stalk in the auto position).

### Glovebox illumination switch

34 The switch is integral with the light. Remove the light as described in Section 6.



5.2 The cover over the reservoirs is retained by two plastic rivets (arrowed)



5.3 Turn the headlight bulb protective cover 90° anti-clockwise

### Sunroof switch

35 Prise out the lower edge of the interior light lens, from the overhead console. Remove the light, disconnecting the wiring plug as the unit is withdrawn. Disconnect the sunvisor wiring plug.

36 Working through the light aperture, release the two retaining clips, and slide the console downwards to release it.

37 Remove the switch from the console assembly.

38 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

## 5 Bulbs (exterior lights) - renewal



### General

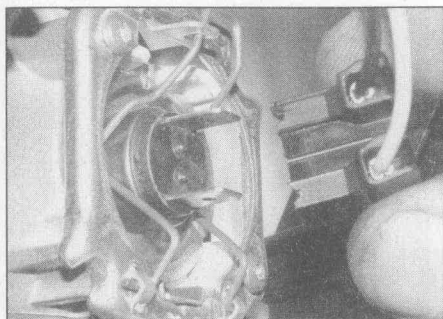
1 Whenever a bulb is renewed, note the following points:

- Remember that, if the light has just been in use, the bulb may be extremely hot.
- Always check the bulb contacts and holder, ensuring that there is clean metal-to-metal contact between the bulb and its live(s) and earth. Clean off any corrosion or dirt before fitting a new bulb.
- Wherever bayonet-type bulbs are fitted (see Specifications), ensure that the live contact(s) bear firmly against the bulb contact.
- Always ensure that the new bulb is of the correct rating, and that it is completely clean before fitting it; this applies particularly to headlight/foglight bulbs (see below).

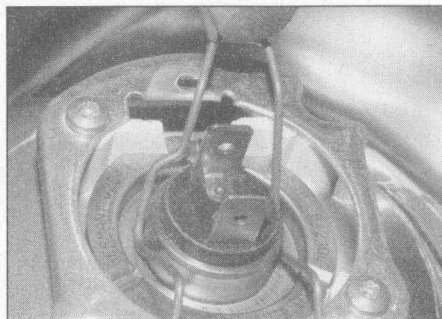
### Headlight

2 To improve access to the right-hand headlight, remove the plastic cover from the washer fluid reservoir. The cover is secured by two expanding plastic rivets. Push in the centre pins a little, then prise the complete rivet from place (**see illustration**).

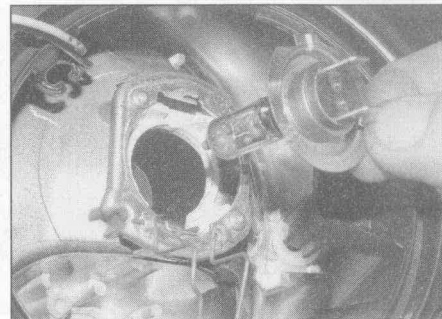
3 The main beam and dipped beam bulbs are separate from each other. Reach behind the headlamp, and turn the relevant beam's protective cover 90 degrees anti-clockwise and remove it (**see illustration**).



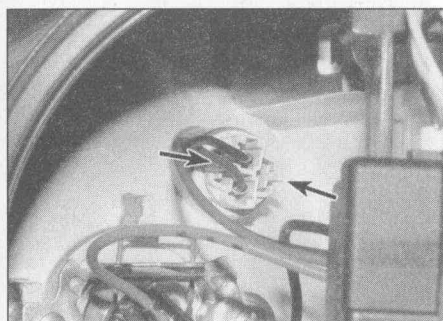
5.4 Disconnect the headlight bulb wiring plug



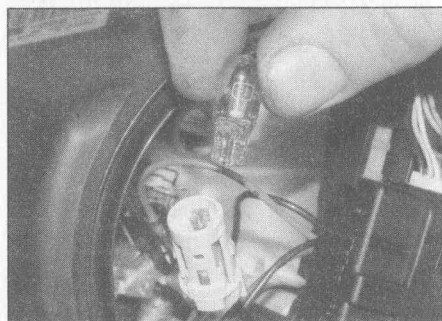
5.5a Release the retaining clip ...



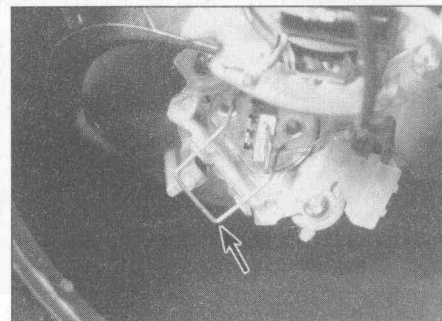
5.5b ... and remove the bulb



5.11a Squeeze together the retaining clips (arrowed), pull the bulbholder to the rear ...



5.11b ... and pull the bulb from the holder



5.16 Release the foglight bulb retaining clip (arrowed)

4 Disconnect the wiring plug from the bulb (see illustration).

5 Release the bulb retaining clip, and withdraw the bulb (see illustrations).

6 When handling the new bulb, use a tissue or clean cloth to avoid touching the glass with the fingers; moisture and grease from the skin can cause blackening and rapid failure of this type of bulb. If the glass is accidentally touched, wipe it clean using methylated spirit.

7 Install the new bulb, ensuring that its locating tabs are correctly seated in the light cut-outs, and secure it in position with the retaining clip.

8 Reconnect the wiring plug, and refit the protective cover with the arrow upwards, then rotate it 90 degrees clockwise.

9 Refit the plastic cover over the washer fluid reservoir.

### Front sidelight

10 To improve access to the right-hand headlight, remove the plastic cover from the washer fluid reservoir. The cover is secured by two expanding plastic rivets. Push in the centre pins a little, then prise the complete rivets from place (see illustration 5.2).

11 Reach behind the headlight and rotate the inner protective cover 90 degrees anti-clockwise. Squeeze together the retaining clips and pull the bulbholder to the rear. The bulb is of the capless (push-fit) type, and can be removed by simply pulling it out of the holder (see illustrations).

12 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure, ensuring that the bulbholder seal is in good condition.

### Front foglight

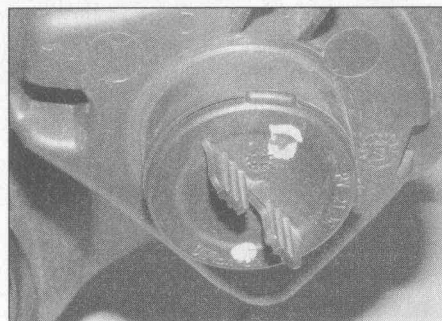
13 To improve access to the right-hand headlight, remove the plastic cover from the washer fluid reservoir. The cover is secured by two expanding plastic rivets. Push in the centre pins a little, then prise the complete rivets from place and release the side clip (see illustration 5.2).

14 Rotate the cover anti-clockwise and remove it (see illustration 5.3).

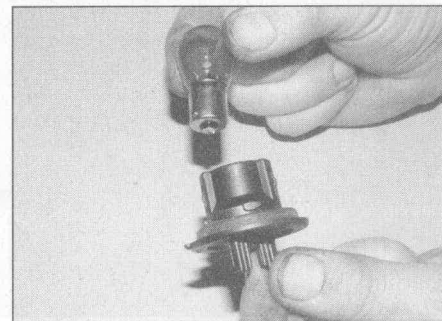
15 Disconnect the wiring connector from the foglight bulb.

16 Unhook the end of the bulb retaining clip and release it from the rear of the foglight unit (see illustration). Withdraw the bulb.

17 When handling the new bulb, use a tissue or clean cloth to avoid touching the glass with the fingers; moisture and grease from the skin can cause blackening and rapid failure of this type of bulb. If the glass is accidentally touched, wipe it clean using methylated spirit.



5.21a Rotate the bulbholder anti-clockwise ...



5.21b ... then press in the bulb and rotate it anti-clockwise to remove it

18 Install the new bulb, ensuring that its locating tabs are correctly seated in the light cut-outs. Secure the bulb in position with the retaining clip then reconnect the wiring connector.

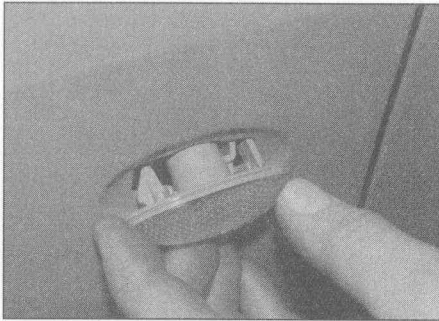
19 Ensure the seal is in good condition then securely refit the cover to the rear of the light unit. Where necessary, refit the washer fluid reservoir plastic cover.

### Front direction indicator

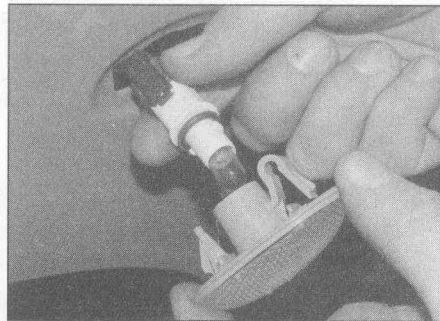
20 To improve access to the right-hand headlight, remove the plastic cover from the washer fluid reservoir. The cover is secured by two plastic expanding rivets. Push in the centre pins a little, then prise the complete rivets from place (see illustration 5.2).

21 Rotate the bulbholder anti-clockwise, and free it from the rear of the headlight unit. The bulb is a bayonet-fit in the holder, and can be removed by pressing it in and rotating it anti-clockwise (see illustrations).

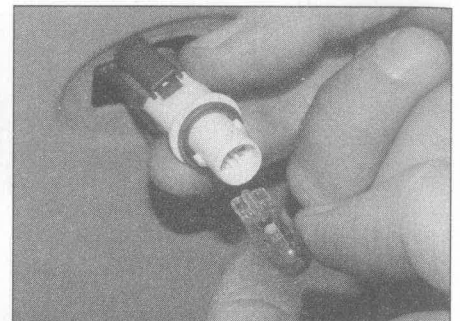




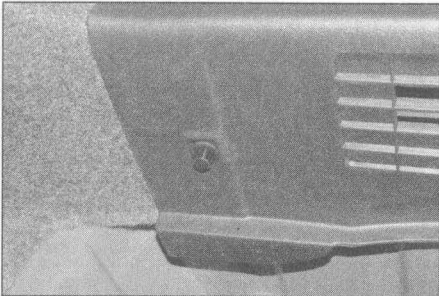
5.23 Push the side repeater to the rear, and ease it out of the wing



5.24a Rotate the bulbholder anti-clockwise and pull it from the light . . .



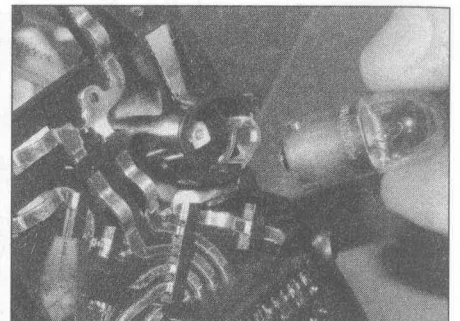
5.24b . . . then pull the capless bulb out



5.26 Prise up the centre pin, lever out the plastic rivets and remove the tailgate sill trim



5.29 Squeeze together the tabs (arrowed) and remove the bulbholder assembly



5.30 Press in and rotate the bulb anti-clockwise to remove

22 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure, ensuring that the bulbholder seal is in good condition.

#### Side repeater

23 Push the light unit to the rear to free its front retaining clip, then ease it out from the front wing (see illustration).

24 Rotate the bulbholder anti-clockwise and free it from the rear of the light. The bulb is of the capless (push-fit) type, and can be removed by simply pulling it out of the holder (see illustrations).

25 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure.

#### Rear light cluster

##### Hatchback models

26 Lift up the luggage compartment carpet in the area of the tailgate sill. Push in the centre pins a little, then prise out the complete rivets

and lift the tailgate sill trim panel upwards (see illustration).

27 Move the side trim panel to one side to access the bulbholder.

##### Estate/SW models

28 Remove the relevant rear light unit as described in Section 7.

##### All models

29 Squeeze together the retaining tabs and remove the bulbholder assembly (see illustration).

30 All the bulbs have bayonet fittings. The relevant bulb can be removed by pressing it in and rotating it anti-clockwise (see illustration).

31 Refitting is the reverse of removal, ensuring the light unit and bulbholder seals are in good condition.

##### High-level stop-light

32 Remove the light unit (see Section 7).

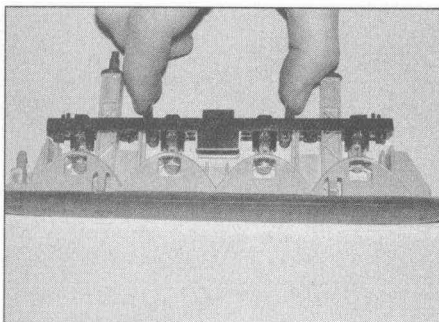
33 Release the retaining clips and detach the light unit from the bulbholder (Hatchback models) or rotate the bulbholders 90 degrees anti-clockwise. Each bulb is of the capless (push-fit) type, and can be removed by simply pulling it out of the bulbholder (see illustrations).

34 Refitting is the reverse of removal. Do not overtighten the light unit retaining nuts on Hatchback models, as the plastic is easily broken.

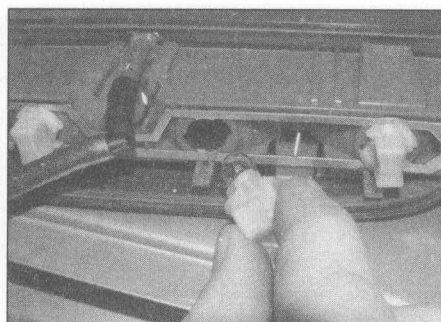
#### Number plate light

##### Hatchback models

35 Using a small flat-bladed screwdriver, carefully prise the end of the lens downwards, and remove it. The bulb is of the capless (push-fit) type, and can be removed by simply pulling it out of the light unit (see illustration).



5.33a On Hatchback models, squeeze together the retaining clips . . .



5.33b . . . on Estate/SW models rotate the bulbholder anti-clockwise



5.35 Carefully prise the light lens from place

36 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure, ensuring that the lens is securely clipped in position.

**Estate/SW models**

37 Carefully prise the side of the lens out and remove it from the light unit. The bulb is of the capless (push-fit) type, and can be removed by simply pulling it out of the light unit (see illustration).

38 Refitting is a reversal of removal procedure, ensuring the lens is securely clipped in position.

**6 Bulbs (interior lights) – renewal**



**General**

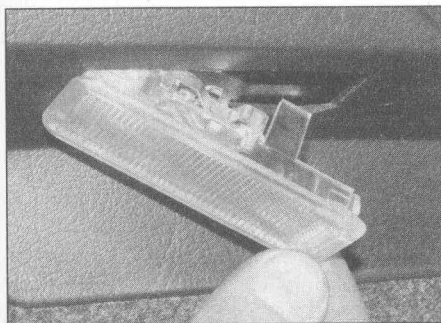
1 Refer to Section 5, paragraph 1.

**Passenger compartment lights**

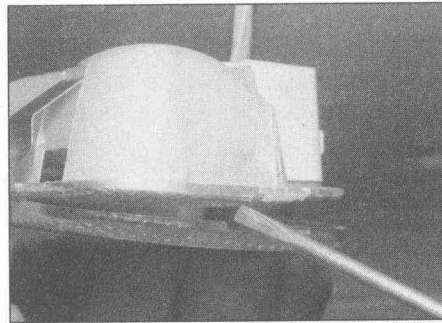
2 Using a flat bladed-screwdriver, carefully ease the light unit out of position and disconnect it from the wiring connector (see illustration).

3 Carefully prise the lens from the light. The bulb is of the capless (push-fit) type, and can be removed by simply pulling it out of the bulbholder (see illustrations).

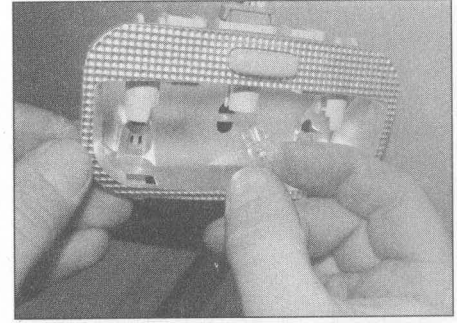
4 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure



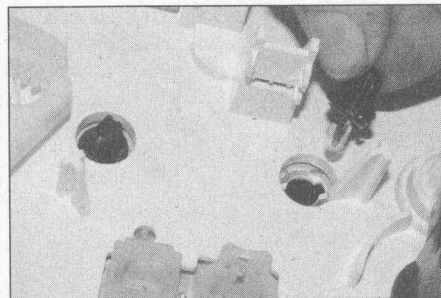
6.2 Prise the light unit from place (luggage compartment light)



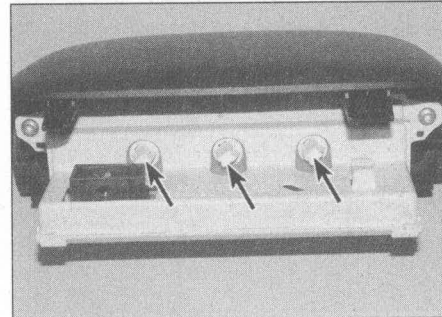
6.3a Prise the lens from the light ...



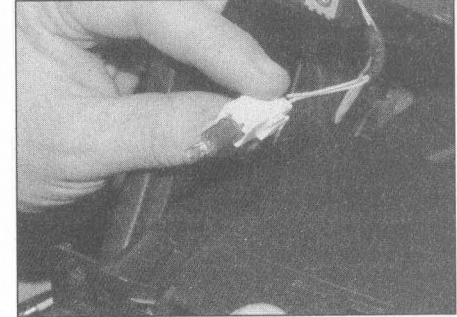
6.3b ... and pull the bulb from the holder



6.7 Rotate the bulbholder anti-clockwise and remove it from the rear of the heater control panel



6.9 The multi-function display unit bulbholders (arrowed)



6.11 Pull the bulbholder from the rear of the ashtray

**Instrument panel lights**

5 The instrument panel and warning lights are illuminated by integral LEDs. It is not possible to renew them independently of the panel. Instrument panel renewal is described in Section 9.

**Heating/ventilation control illumination**

6 Remove the heater control panel as described in Chapter 3.

7 Rotate the bulbholder anti-clockwise and remove it. The capless bulb simply pulls from the bulbholder (see illustration).

**Multi-function display illumination**

8 Remove the multi-function display as described in Section 10.

9 Rotate the bulbholders anti-clockwise and remove them. The capless bulbs simply pull from the bulbholder (see illustration).

**Ashtray illumination**

10 Unclip the ashtray and remove it from the centre console.

11 Free the bulbholder from the console and pull the bulb out from its holder (see illustration).

12 Securely fit the new bulb to its holder then clip the holder back into position on the console. Refit the ashtray.



5.37 Prise the side of the lens out to release it from the clip

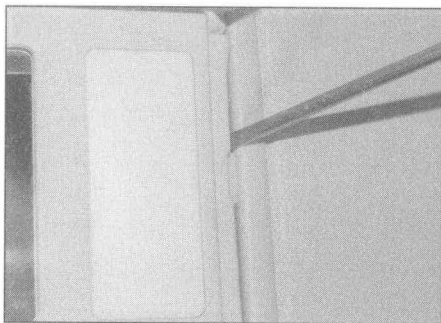
**Switch illumination**

13 All of the switches that are illuminated, are done so by LEDs. These LEDs are an integral part of the switch and cannot be renewed separately. Renewal will therefore require renewal of the complete switch assembly (see Section 4).

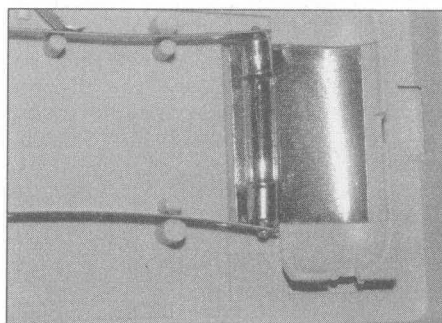
**Glovebox illumination**

14 Open the glovebox, and carefully prise the front end of the lens from place. Remove the light unit, and disconnect the wiring plug as it is withdrawn. Note that the switch is integral with the light.

15 The capless bulb simply pulls from the bulbholder.



6.16 Carefully prise the lens and mirror from place . . .



6.17 . . . then lever out the festoon bulb

### Vanity mirror illumination

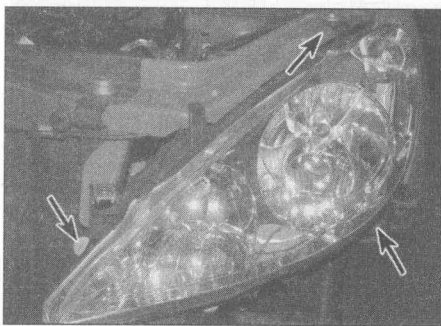
16 Carefully prise the lens and mirror from the sunvisor (see illustration).

17 Prise the festoon bulb(s) from place (see illustration).

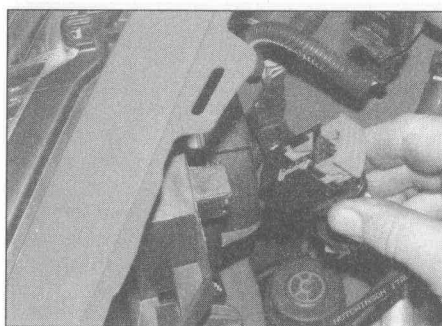
### 7 Exterior light units – removal and refitting

#### Headlight

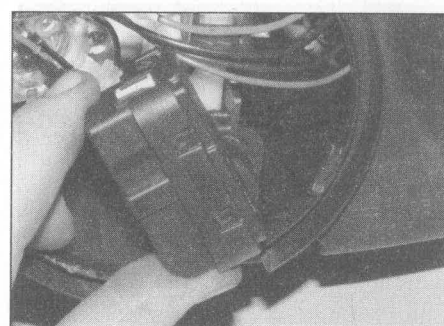
- 1 Remove the front bumper (see Chapter 11).
- 2 If removing the left-hand headlight, prise out the two clips and detach the air intake ducting adjacent to the headlight.
- 3 Unclip the washer jet from the headlight lens (where fitted).
- 4 Slacken and remove the three mounting



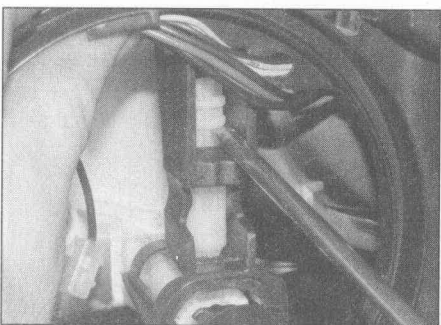
7.4a Undo the three headlamp mounting bolts (arrowed) . . .



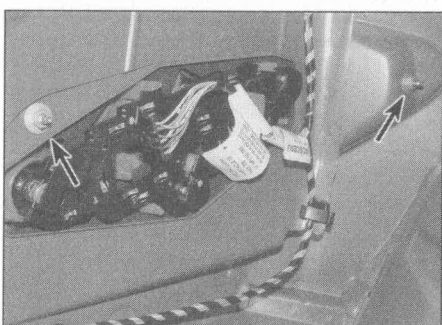
7.4b . . . then slide up the locking latch and disconnect the wiring plug



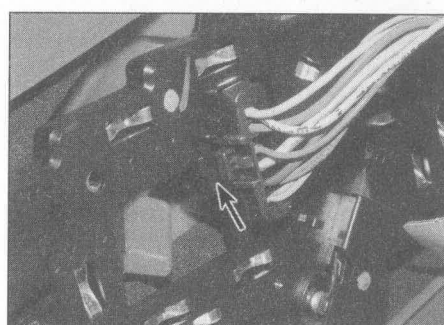
7.6 Rotate the headlight levelling motor anti-clockwise



7.7 Carefully prise the adjuster upwards, and remove the motor



7.19 Undo the two rear light unit nuts (arrowed)



7.20 Release the clip (arrowed) and disconnect the light unit wiring plug

bolts and free the headlight unit from its mounting. Slide up the locking latch and disconnect the wiring connectors from the headlight unit, then manoeuvre the unit out of position (see illustrations).

5 To remove the headlight levelling motor, rotate the inner protective cap anti-clockwise. Disconnect the motor wiring plug.

6 Rotate the motor anti-clockwise and, using a flat-bladed screwdriver, disengage the motor balljoint (see illustration).

7 Carefully prise the adjuster upwards and withdraw the motor from the headlamp (see illustration).

8 Prior to refitting, ensure the levelling system motor (where fitted) is correctly installed.

9 Offer up the headlight unit and securely reconnect its wiring connectors.

10 Position the headlight in its aperture.

11 Refit and tighten the headlight mounting bolts.

12 Check the operation of the headlight, then refit the front bumper. If the left-hand side headlight was removed, refit the air intake ducting and retaining clips prior to refitting the bumper.

13 Check the headlight beam alignment using the information given in Section 8.

#### Headlight luminosity sensor

14 Remove the multi-function display as described in Chapter 11, Section 27.

15 Reach through the exposed aperture, and push the sensor upwards, and out of the fascia. Disconnect the sensor wiring plug as it is withdrawn.

#### Front indicator side repeater

16 Push the light unit forward, to free its retaining clips, then ease it out from the wing panel (see illustration 5.23).

17 Disconnect the wiring connector and remove the light unit from the vehicle.

18 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure.

#### Rear light unit

##### Hatchback models

19 Pull back the trim panel behind the light unit, and undo the two nuts securing the light unit (see illustration).

20 Disconnect the wiring connector from the light unit then remove the light unit from the vehicle (see illustration).

21 Refitting is the reverse of removal, ensuring the light unit seal is in good condition.

**Estate/SW models**

22 Open the tailgate, and undo the fastener at the top of the relevant light unit (see illustration).

23 Pull away the plastic trim behind the light unit and undo the nut at the base of the unit (see illustration).

24 Disconnect the wiring plug and manoeuvre the unit from the vehicle.

25 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

**High-level stop-light**

**Hatchback**

26 Open the tailgate then unscrew the nuts securing the light unit to the tailgate (see illustration). Carefully push on the light unit studs to ease the unit out.

27 Disconnect the wiring connector and washer tube, then remove the light unit from the tailgate (see illustration).

28 Refitting is the reverse of removal. Do not overtighten the light unit retaining nuts as the plastic is easily broken.

**Estate/SW models**

29 Using a forked type tool, extract the stud-type clips from the periphery of the tailgate interior upper trim.

30 Pull the panel away from the tailgate at the top corners to release the retaining clips, then remove the panel from the tailgate.

31 Using two flat-bladed screwdrivers, push through the access holes, releasing the two retaining clips and remove the light unit. Disconnect the wiring connector as the unit is withdrawn (see illustration).

32 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

**Number plate light**

**Hatchback models**

33 Remove the rear bumper (see Chapter 11).

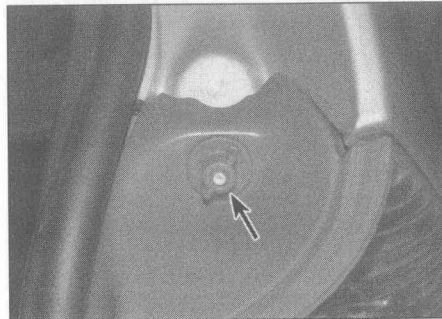
34 Disconnect the wiring plug as the light is withdrawn.

35 Carefully push the relevant light unit clip to one side, and ease it from place (see illustration).

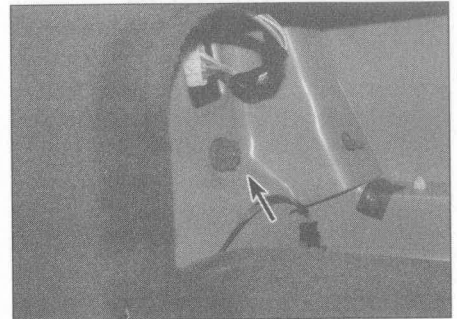
36 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

**Estate/SW models**

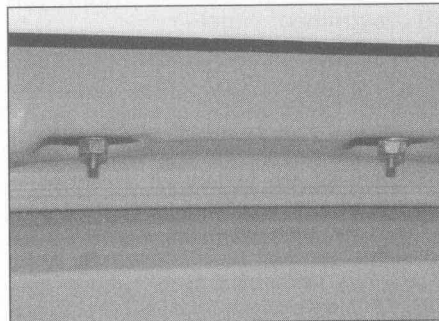
37 Remove the tailgate lower trim panel as described in Chapter 11, Section 25.



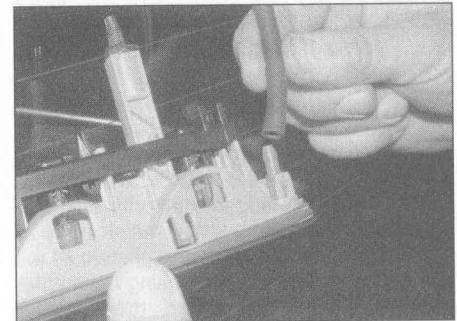
7.22 Undo the nut (arrowed) at the top of the light ...



7.23 ... and the nut (arrowed) at the base



7.26 High-level stop-light retaining nuts (Hatchback models)



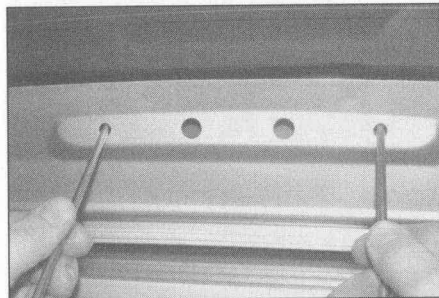
7.27 Disconnect the tailgate screen washer tube

38 Undo the four retaining nuts, release the retaining clips, and remove the exterior trim from above the number plate lights (see illustrations).

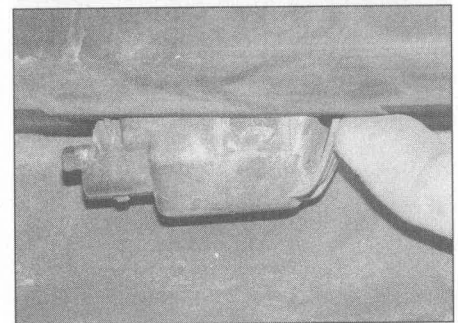
39 Squeeze together the retaining clips then

push the relevant light unit out from the tailgate. Disconnect the wiring connector and remove the light unit (see illustration).

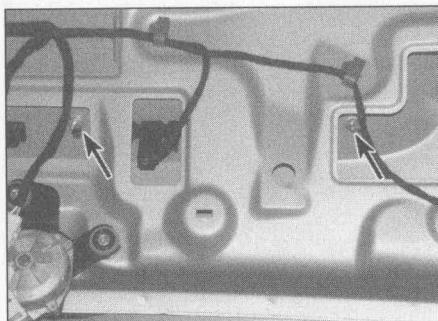
40 Refitting is the reverse of removal.



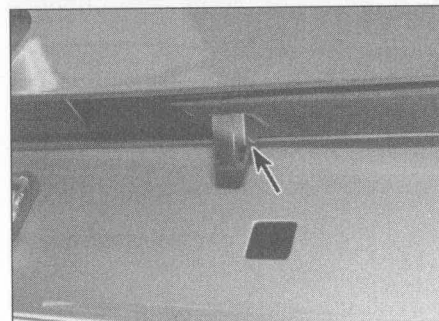
7.31 Use two screwdrivers to release the high-level stop-light clips (Estate/SW models)



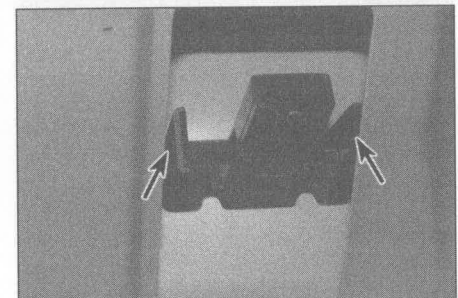
7.35 Compress the clip and remove the number plate light (Hatchback models)



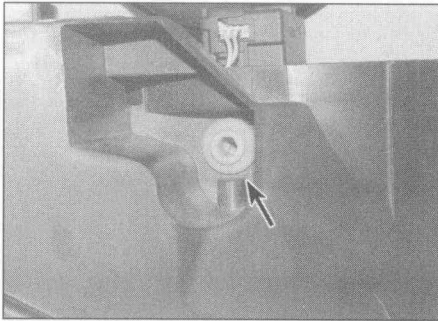
7.38a Undo the exterior trim nuts (left-hand ones arrowed)



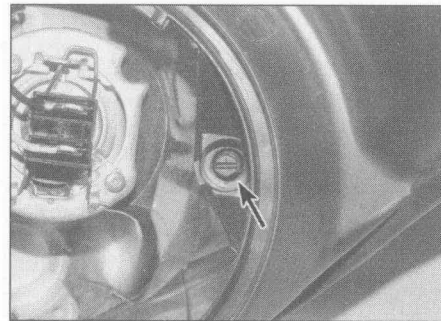
7.38b ... and release the retaining clips (arrowed)



7.39 Squeeze together the clips (arrowed) and remove the number plate light (Estate/SW models)



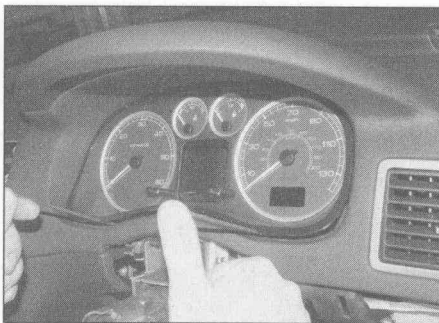
8.2a Vertical headlight adjuster (arrowed) ...



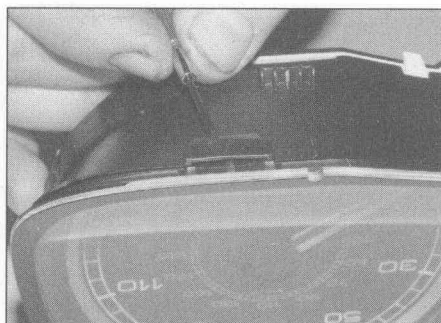
8.2b ... and horizontal adjuster (arrowed)

**8 Headlight beam alignment – general information**

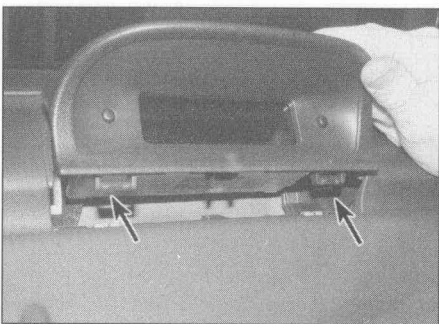
- 1 Accurate adjustment of the headlight beam is only possible using optical beam-setting equipment, and this work should therefore be carried out by a Peugeot dealer or suitably-equipped workshop.
- 2 For reference, the vertical alignment of the headlights can be adjusted using a suitable-sized Allen key to rotate the adjuster assemblies accessible from the top of the headlight casing, whilst the horizontal alignment is adjusted by removing the cover from the dip beam bulb, and rotating the adjuster with a screwdriver (see illustrations).
- 3 On models equipped with headlight levelling, ensure the adjuster switch is set to position 0 before the headlights are adjusted.



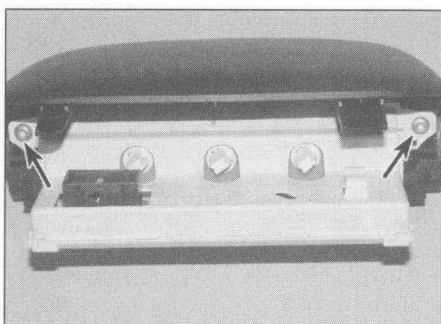
9.2 Insert two pins to release the retaining clips



9.3 Release the clips to remove the panel 'glass'



10.2 Pull up the rear of the unit to release the clips (arrowed)



10.4 Undo the two screws (arrowed) and remove the unit from the cowling

**9 Instrument panel – removal and refitting**

**Removal**

- 1 Disconnect the battery as described in Chapter 5A.
- 2 Insert two pins as shown, to release the panel retaining clips (see illustration). **Note:** If required, instrument panel removal pins (No - 1212) are available from Peugeot dealers.
- 3 With the clips released, pull on the pins/tools and remove the panel. Disconnect the panel wiring plug(s) as the unit is withdrawn. Should the instrument panel develop a fault, have the vehicle's self-diagnosis facility interrogated by a Peugeot dealer or suitably-equipped specialist. With the exception of the panel 'glass', no parts are

available separately for the instrument panel, if faulty, the complete assembly must be renewed (see illustration).

**Refitting**

- 4 Refitting is a reversal of removal, ensuring that the upper locating lugs of the panel engage correctly.

**10 Clock/multi-function unit – removal and refitting**

**Removal**

- 1 Ensure the ignition is switched off.
- 2 Carefully pull up on the rear edge of the surround, and release it from the facia (see illustration).
- 3 Disconnect the wiring plug as the unit is withdrawn.
- 4 Undo the two screws and remove the display from the cowling (see illustration).

**Refitting**

- 5 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

**11 Cigarette lighter/ accessory socket – removal and refitting**

**Removal**

- 1 Remove the centre console as described in Chapter 11.
- 2 Carefully release the retaining clips and slide the illumination light assembly off the base of the lighter, taking great care not to break its electrical contacts.
- 3 Pull out the lighter element then release the tangs and push out the metal insert/accessory socket. The plastic outer section can then be removed from the console.

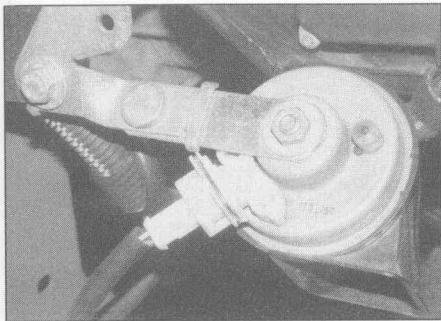
**Refitting**

- 4 Align the plastic outer section tab with the cut-out then insert it into the console.
- 5 Align the bulbholder contact on the metal insert with the holder tangs on the plastic outer then clip the insert into position.
- 6 Slide the illumination light assembly onto the metal insert and clip it securely onto the plastic outer.
- 7 Ensure the cigarette lighter is correctly assembled then refit the centre console.

**12 Horn – removal and refitting**

**Removal**

- 1 The horn is located behind the front bumper, on the left-hand side.
- 2 Remove the front bumper as described in Chapter 11.



**12.3 Undo the mounting nut and remove the horn**

3 Disconnect the wiring connector(s) then slacken the mounting nut and remove the horn from the vehicle (see illustration).

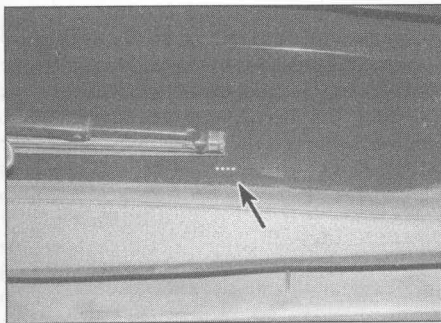
4 To remove the horn push, remove the driver's airbag as described in Section 22, then undo the three screws and carefully remove the push ring assembly (see illustration).

**Refitting**

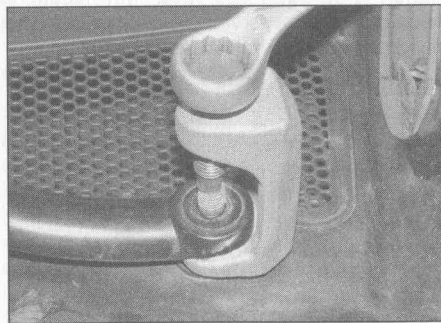
5 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

**13 Wiper arm – removal and refitting**

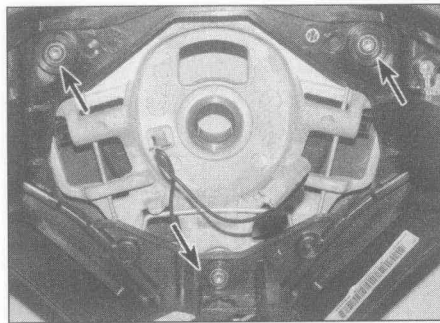
**Note:** The wiper arms are a very tight fit on their spindles and it is likely that a puller will be needed to remove them safely and without damage.



**13.1 Wiper blade alignment mark (arrowed)**



**13.3 If the wiper arm is tight on the spindle, use a puller**



**12.4 Undo the three screws (arrowed) and remove the horn push**

**Removal**

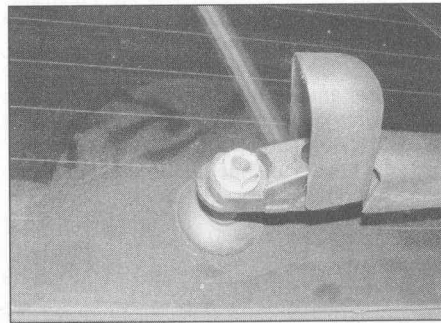
1 Operate the wiper motor, then switch it off so that the wiper arm returns to the at-rest position. Stick tape to the screen alongside the wiper blade to ensure correct refitment. There is also an alignment mark provided on the windscreen (see illustration).

2 Lift up the wiper arm spindle nut cover (where fitted) then slacken and remove the spindle nut (see illustration).

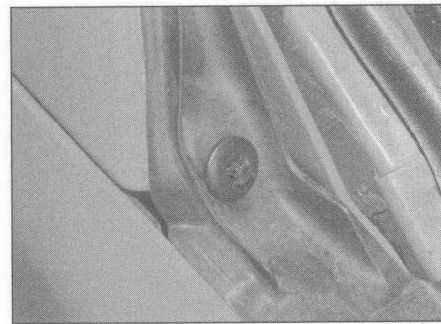
3 Lift the blade off the glass, and pull the wiper arm off its spindle. If the arm is very tight, free it from the spindle using a suitable puller (see illustration).

**Refitting**

4 Ensure that the wiper arm and spindle splines are clean and dry, then refit the arm to the spindle, aligning the wiper blade with the tape fitted on removal, or the alignment marks provided.



**13.2 Lift up the cover and undo the wiper spindle nut**



**14.8 The scuttle trim panel is secured by a plastic rivet at each end**

5 Refit the spindle nut, tightening it securely, and clip the nut cover (where fitted) back into position.

**14 Windscreen wiper motor and linkage – removal and refitting**

**Removal**

1 Jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Undo the screws and remove the engine undershield (where fitted).

2 Remove the wiper arms (see Section 13).

3 Remove the battery and battery box as described in Chapter 5A.

4 Undo the two screws and move the brake fluid upper reservoir to one side. There is no need to disconnect the supply hose, but be prepared for fluid spillage.

5 Remove the engine compartment fusebox lid, and the plastic cover from above the washer fluid reservoir. The cover is secured by two plastic expanding rivets. Push the centre pins in a little, then prise the complete rivet from place, and release the side clip.

6 On 2.0 litre engines, undo the fasteners and remove the plastic cover from the top of the engine. On 1.4 litre diesel engines, the cover simply pulls up from place.

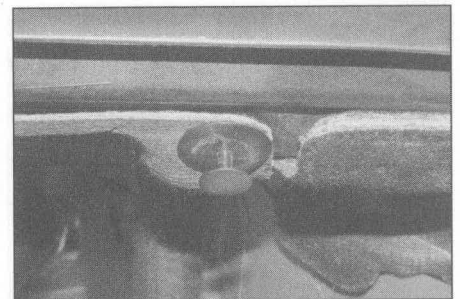
7 Remove the air cleaner housing to inlet manifold intake duct to improve access (see Chapter 4A or 4B). On 1.4 and 1.6 litre petrol models, remove the throttle body as described in Chapter 4A.

8 Remove the plastic panel from the scuttle. The panel is secured by an expanding plastic rivet at each end. Push the centre pins in a little, then prise the complete rivets from place. Lift the outer edges of the trim, then pull the centre area downwards to unclip it from the base of the windscreen (see illustration).

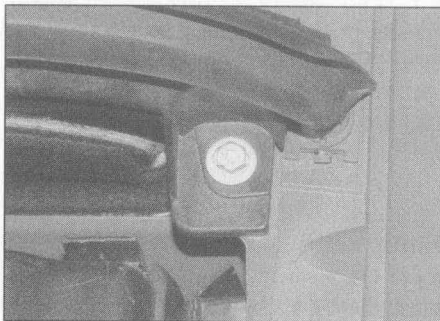
9 Position a jack under the transmission casing, and take the weight of the transmission.

10 Undo the central retaining nut from the transmission mounting at the left-hand side of the engine compartment (see the relevant Part of Chapter 2). Lower the transmission slightly to facilitate removing the wiper motor and linkage.

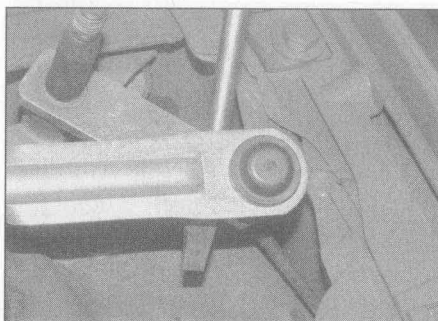
11 Release the clips and remove the scuttle soundproofing (see illustration).



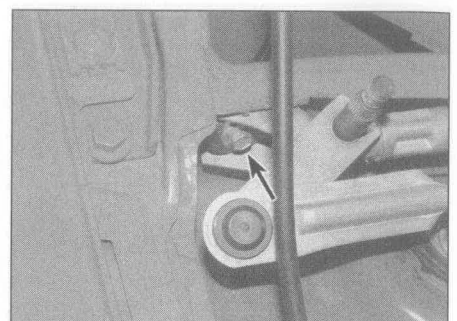
**14.11 Prise up the centre pins a little, lever up and remove the plastic rivets securing the sound insulation material**



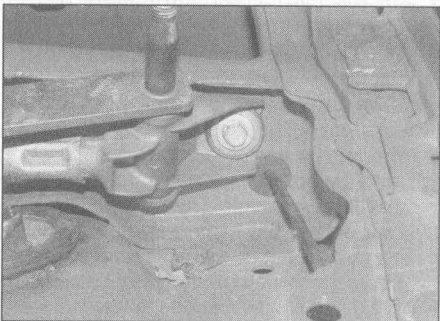
14.12 The plastic crossmember is secured by one bolt at each end



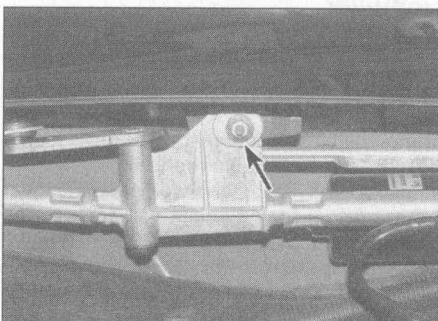
14.14 Prise the connecting rod from the left-hand spindle linkage



14.15a Wiper linkage right-hand bolt (arrowed) . . .



14.15b . . . left-hand bolt . . .



14.15c . . . and central nut (arrowed)

12 Undo the two retaining bolts, and remove scuttle crossmember (see illustration).

13 Release the wiring harness retaining clips, then unscrew the retaining clips and remove the soundproofing from over the wiper motor.

14 Using a screwdriver, prise the connecting rod from the left-hand wiper spindle linkage (see illustration). Disconnect the wiper motor wiring plug.

15 The wiper linkage assembly is secured by a bolt each side and a central nut. Undo the bolts/nut, lift the assembly from the locating pin. Press down at the centre of the linkage assembly and lift the left-hand end over the strut upper mounting, then manoeuvre the assembly from the engine compartment (see illustrations). **Note:** Access to the wiper linkage assembly is very poor – dexterity and patience will be required to manoeuvre the linkage from place. Take great care not to damage the windscreen or the vehicle paintwork.

16 At the time of writing, it would appear that the motor is not available separately from the linkage assembly. Check availability with your Peugeot dealer.

### Refitting

17 Refitting is a reversal of removal, ensuring all fasteners are securely tightened. Note that before tightening the linkage mounting nut/bolts, ensure the assembly is correctly fitted over the locating dowels. It's impossible to see the dowels with the linkage in place, so use your fingers to check.

### 15 Tailgate window wiper motor – removal and refitting

**Note:** A pop rivet gun and suitable rivets will be required on refitting.

### Removal

- 1 Ensure the ignition is turned off.
- 2 Remove the wiper arm (see Section 13).
- 3 Remove the tailgate lower trim panel as described in Chapter 11, Section 25.
- 4 Using a 7.5 mm drill, carefully drill the heads off the pop rivets securing the wiper motor bracket to the tailgate (see illustration). To prevent the rivets falling into the tailgate, position a cloth on either side of the motor.

**Caution:** Take care not to damage the motor and tailgate when drilling out the rivets.

5 With the three rivets removed, disconnect the wiring connector and remove the wiper

motor from the tailgate. Take care not to lose the collars from the motor mounting rubbers.

6 Remove the wiper motor sealing grommet from the tailgate glass.

7 Remove the cloths and recover the remnants of each rivet from the motor bracket/tailgate. Ensure all traces of rivet are removed.

8 The wiper motor is not available separately. If faulty renew the assembly as a whole.

### Refitting

9 Prior to refitting check the sealing grommet and rubber mountings for signs of damage or deterioration and renew as necessary.

10 Ensure the rubber grommet is correctly fitted to the tailgate glass, and the rubber mountings and collars are correctly fitted to the motor mounting bracket.

11 Manoeuvre the wiper motor into position and secure it in position with new pop rivets.

12 Reconnect the wiring connector to the motor then refit the trim panel to the tailgate. Turn on the ignition, then operate the wiper and allow it to stop in the park position.

13 Refit the wiper arm as described in Section 13.

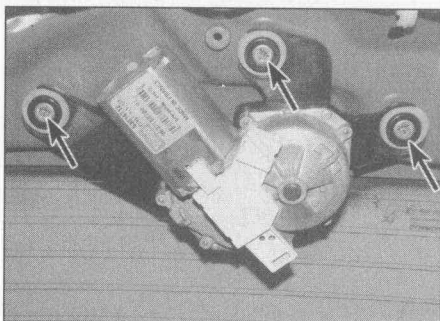
### 16 Washer system components – removal and refitting

1 The washer reservoir is located behind the right-hand front wing and supplies both the windscreen and tailgate washers via the same pump. On models equipped with headlight washers, the reservoir also supplies the headlight washer jets via an additional pump.

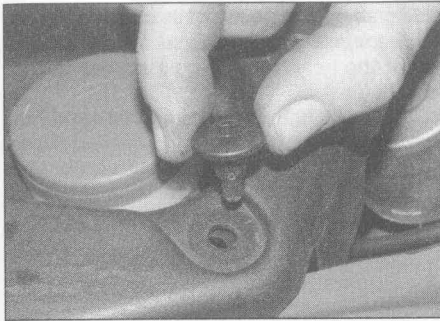
### Washer fluid reservoir

2 Working in the engine compartment, remove the plastic cover from above the washer fluid reservoir. The cover is secured by two expanding plastic rivets. Push the centre pins in a little, then prise the complete rivets from place (see illustration).

3 Slacken the right-hand front roadwheel bolts. Jack up the front of the vehicle, and support it securely on axle stands (see *Jacking and vehicle support*). Remove the right-hand roadwheel.



15.4 Drill out the three rivets (arrowed)



**16.2 Push in the centre pins, then prise up the complete expanding rivet**

4 Remove the front right-hand wheel arch liner. The liner is secured by several expanding plastic rivets. Push the centre pins a little, then prise the complete rivets from place, and manoeuvre the front section of the liner out from underneath the wing.

5 Pull the reservoir filler neck upwards from the reservoir.

6 Note the correct fitted location of the washer hoses (if necessary, mark them for identification purposes) then disconnect the hoses from the washer pump(s).

7 Disconnect the wiring connector(s) from the washer pump(s) (see illustration).

8 Slacken and remove the retaining nut then move the reservoir to the rear, and free it from the body. Manoeuvre it out from underneath the wing (see illustrations).

9 Refitting is the reverse of removal, ensuring that the hoses are securely reconnected. Refill the reservoir and check for leaks.

### Washer pump

10 Proceed as described in paragraphs 3 to 7 and disconnect the hose(s) and wiring connector from the pump.

11 Position a container beneath the reservoir to catch the washer fluid as the pump is removed.

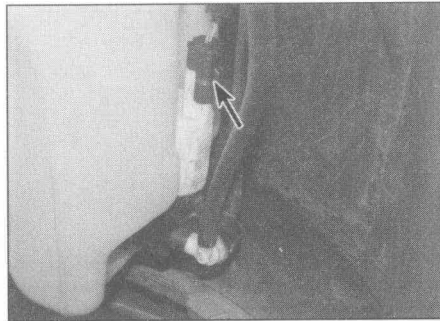
12 Carefully ease the pump out from the reservoir, and recover its sealing grommet (see illustration). Wash off any spilt fluid with cold water.

13 Refitting is the reverse of removal, using a new sealing grommet if the original shows signs of damage or deterioration. Refill the reservoir and check the pump grommet for leaks on completion.

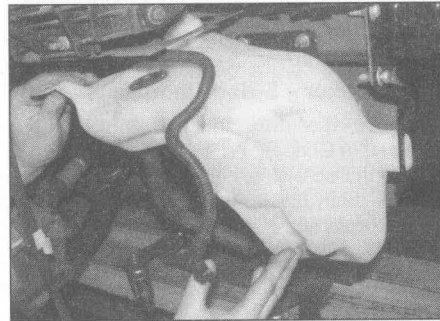
### Windscreen washer jet

14 Open the bonnet. Prise up the centre pins a little, lever out the complete plastic expanding rivets, and remove the bonnet insulation panel to gain access to the base of the windscreen washer jets. Disconnect the washer hose(s) from the relevant jet, then depress the retaining clips and ease the jet out of position (see illustration).

15 On refitting, clip the jet into the bonnet and reconnect the hose. The aim of the washer jets is not adjustable.



**16.7 Disconnect the washer pump wiring plug**



**16.8b ... then move the reservoir backwards**

### Tailgate washer jet

16 Remove the high-level stop-light unit as described in Section 7.

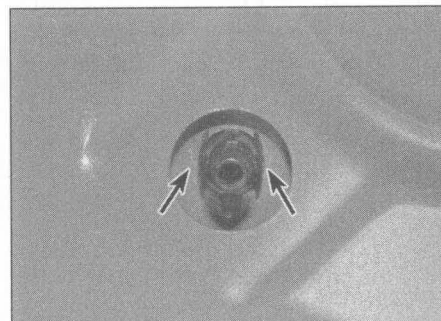
17 On Hatchback models, release the retaining clips and detach the light unit from the bulbholder (see illustration 5.33a).

18 Disconnect the washer hose from the jet then free the jet from the light unit, by releasing the two retaining clips (see illustration). Recover the jet O-ring.

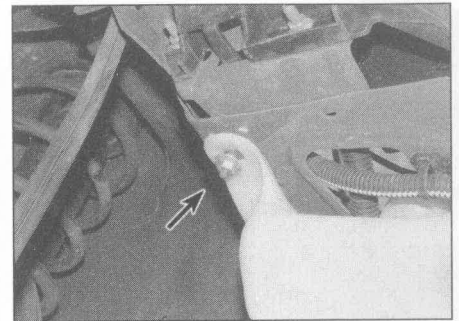
19 Refitting is the reverse of removal. Do not overtighten the light unit retaining nuts on Hatchback models, as the plastic is easily broken. The washer jet is not adjustable.

### Headlight washer jet

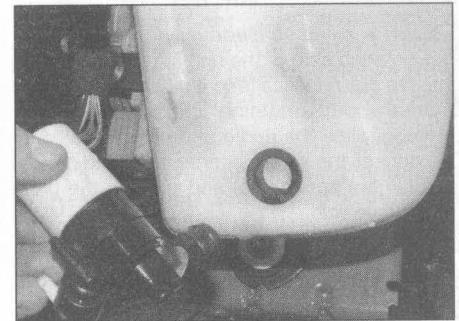
20 Carefully prise the jet cover from the bumper, and pull the assembly out to its full extent.



**16.14 Squeeze together the clips (arrowed) and ease the jet from the bonnet**



**16.8a Undo the retaining nut (arrowed) ...**



**16.12 Ease the washer pump from the reservoir**

21 Have an assistant grip the washer jet tube with a pair of grips, then depress the two retaining clips and pull the jet from the tube.

22 To remove the washer cylinders, remove the front bumper as described in Chapter 11, then disconnect the washer tubing, and unclip the cylinders.

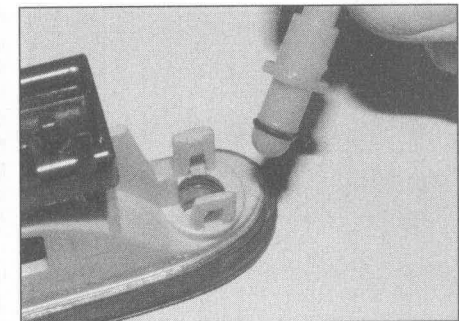
23 Refitting is the reverse of removal.

### 17 Audio unit – removal and refitting

**Note:** The following procedure is for the range of equipment fitted by Peugeot.

#### Removal

1 Ensure the audio unit and ignition is switched off.



**16.18 Release the clips and remove the washer jet**





**17.2** Insert two pins into each side of the audio unit to release the clips, then pull the unit from place

- 2 Insert a small screwdriver/punch into the hole on each side of the unit and pushing it in until the clip releases (see illustration).
- 3 Once both retaining clips have been released, slide the audio unit out of position. Disconnect the wiring connections and aerial lead (where applicable) and remove the unit from the vehicle.

**Refitting**

- 4 Prior to refitting, reset the unit retaining clips.
- 5 Securely reconnect the aerial lead (where applicable) and wiring connectors then slide the unit back into position, taking care not to trap the wiring.

**18 Loudspeakers – removal and refitting**



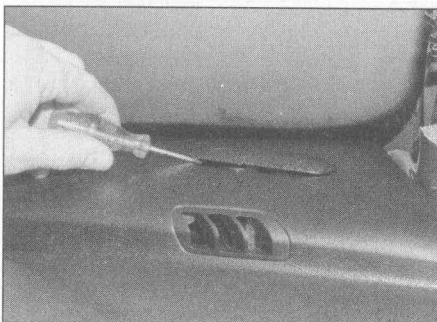
**Removal**

**Front door speaker**

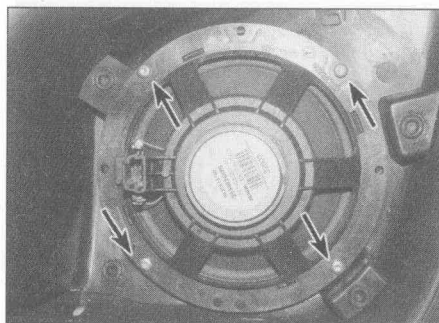
- 1 Remove the door inner trim panel as described in Chapter 11.
- 2 Slacken and remove the retaining screws then remove the speaker from the door, disconnecting the wiring connector as it becomes accessible (see illustration).

**Front tweeter**

- 3 Carefully prise the tweeter cover from the fascia and remove it along with the tweeter (see illustration). Disconnect the wiring plug as it is withdrawn.



**18.3** Carefully prise the tweeter cover from the fascia



**18.2** Undo the screws (arrowed) and remove the speaker

- 4 Rotate the tweeter speaker clockwise to free it from the cover.

**Rear speaker – 5-door models**

- 5 Remove the door inner trim panel as described in Chapter 11.
- 6 Undo the screws and remove the speaker from the door, disconnecting the wiring plug as it becomes accessible.

**Rear speaker – 3-door models**

- 7 Remove the rear side trim panel as described in Chapter 11, Section 25.
- 8 Pull the foam surround from place then slacken and remove the retaining screws then remove the speaker from the body, disconnecting the wiring connector as it becomes accessible (see illustration).

**Refitting**

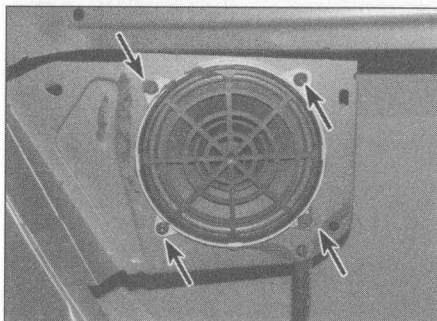
- 9 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Ensure the trim panels are clipped securely in position and are correctly located behind the edges of the sealing strips.

**19 Radio aerial – removal and refitting**



**Removal**

- 1 The aerial is a screw-fit in its base and is easily removed.
- 2 To remove the complete aerial on models where the aerial is mounted on the rear of the roof, open the tailgate then free the tailgate



**18.8** Rear speaker retaining screws (arrowed) (3-door Hatchback)

sealing strip from the top of its aperture. Undo the two screw fixings and carefully lower the rear of the headlining to gain access to the aerial nut.

- 3 Disconnect the wiring plug, undo the nut and remove the aerial.

**Refitting**

- 4 Refitting is the reverse of removal.

**20 Engine immobiliser and anti-theft alarm system – general information**

**Note:** This information is applicable only to the systems fitted by Peugeot as standard equipment.

**Engine immobiliser**

1 An engine immobiliser system is fitted as standard to all models and the system is operated automatically every time the ignition key is inserted/removed.

2 The immobiliser system ensures the vehicle can only be started using the original Peugeot ignition key. The key contains an electronic chip (transponder) which is programmed with a code. When the key is inserted into the ignition switch it uses the current present in the sensor ring (which is fitted to the ignition switch housing) to send a signal to the immobiliser electronic control unit (ECU). The ECU is incorporated into the built-in systems interface (BSI) unit (see Section 23). The ECU checks this code every time the ignition is switched on. If the key code does not match the ECU code, the ECU will disable the starter, fuel and ignition (as applicable) to prevent the engine being started.

3 When the vehicle is new, a confidential security card is supplied along with the other vehicle documentation. This card contains the security code which your Peugeot dealer requires when carrying out any work on the immobiliser system. Keep this card in a safe place at home; never store it in the vehicle. If the ignition key is lost, a new one can be obtained from a Peugeot dealer. Take the confidential security card and all the existing keys along to your Peugeot dealer who will supply a new key and reprogram all the keys with a new security code; this will render the lost key useless.

**Caution:** Without the confidential security card, it will not be possible to have the keys and immobiliser system reprogrammed.



If you have purchased the vehicle second-hand, as a precaution have all the keys and the immobiliser system reprogrammed with a new security code. This will ensure the keys in your possession are the only ones able to start the vehicle and render all other keys useless.

4 Any problems with the engine immobiliser system should be referred to a Peugeot dealer.

### Anti-theft alarm system

5 Most models covered in this were also equipped with an anti-theft alarm system as standard equipment. The system was available as a option on all other models. The alarm is automatically armed when the deadlocking is set using the remote central locking transmitter and is disarmed when the doors are unlocked using the remote transmitter. The alarm system has switches on the bonnet, tailgate and each of the doors and also has ultrasonic sensing, which detects movement inside the vehicle, via sensors mounted on either side of the vehicle interior.

6 When the system is activated, the direction indicators will flash continuously for two seconds and the indicator light on the alarm switch, fitted to the rear section of the centre console, will flash continuously. **Note:** *If the bonnet, tailgate or one of the doors are not properly closed when the alarm is set, the siren will sound briefly. If the bonnet/tailgate/door (as applicable) is properly closed within 45 seconds the alarm will be armed. If not the alarm will remain disarmed.*

7 If for some reason the remote central locking transmitter fails whilst the alarm is armed, the alarm can be disarmed using the key. To do this, open the door with the key, then enter the vehicle, noting that the alarm will sound as the door is opened. Insert the key and switch on the ignition, the immobiliser will recognise the key and will switch off the alarm.

8 If required, the ultrasonic sensing facility of the alarm can be switched off, whilst retaining the switched side of the system. To switch off the ultrasonic sensing, with the ignition switched off, depress the alarm switch (mounted on the fascia above the centre air vents) until the alarm indicator light on the switch is continuously lit. Get out of the vehicle and operate the deadlocking function using the remote transmitter to arm the alarm. The direction indicators will flash as normal but only the switched (door, tailgate and bonnet) side of the alarm system will be operational. This facility is useful, as it allows you to leave the windows/sunroof open, and still arm the alarm. If the windows/sunroof are left open with the ultrasonic sensing not switched off, the alarm may be falsely triggered by a gust of wind.

9 Prior to disconnecting the battery, the alarm system should be disabled; this will prevent the alarm sounding when the battery is disconnected/reconnected. To do this, switch on the ignition then immediately depress and hold the alarm switch for two seconds; the indicator light on the switch should then flash rapidly for approximately three seconds indicating the alarm has been disabled. Switch off the ignition and disconnect the battery.

10 Once the battery has been reconnected, operate the deadlocking with the remote

transmitter then unlock the vehicle. The alarm will be set as normal, the next time the deadlocking is set.

11 Should the alarm system become faulty, the vehicle should be taken to a Peugeot dealer for examination.

### 21 Airbag system – general information and precautions

1 All models in the range are fitted with a driver's airbag, passenger's airbag, side-front airbags, and side curtain airbags.

2 The airbag system is triggered in the event of a heavy frontal impact above a predetermined force, depending on the point of impact. The airbag is then inflated within milliseconds, and forms a safety cushion between the cabin occupants and the vehicle interior. This prevents contact between the upper body and vehicle interior, and therefore greatly reduces the risk of injury. The airbag then deflates almost immediately. The control unit also operates the front seat belt tensioner mechanisms at the same time (see Chapter 11).

3 The side airbags are fitted to the seat back of each front seat. Each airbag unit has its own lateral acceleration sensor which is mounted onto the vehicle body on the outside of each front seat. The side airbags are not linked in anyway and operate individually.

4 The curtain airbags are fitted behind the windscreen pillars and headlining on each side of the passenger cabin.

5 Every time the ignition is switched on, the airbag control unit performs a self-test. The self-test takes approximately six seconds and during this time the warning light in the instrument panel will be illuminated. After the self-test is complete, the warning light will go out (unless the passenger airbag unit has been deactivated – see paragraph 6). If the warning light fails to come on, remains illuminated after the self-test period, or comes on at any time when the vehicle is being driven, there is a fault in the airbag system. The vehicle should be taken to a Peugeot dealer for examination at the earliest possible opportunity.

6 Most vehicles with a passenger airbag are equipped with a disabling switch fitted to the centre console. The switch is operated using the ignition key and switches off the passenger airbag (it is not possible to disable the driver's or side/curtain airbags) to enable a rear-facing child seat to be installed in the passenger seat. Whilst the passenger airbag is disabled, the airbag warning light on the instrument panel will remain illuminated all the time.



**Warning:** Before carrying out any operations on the airbag system, disconnect the battery (see Chapter 5A) and wait at least two minutes. Remove the centre console (see Chapter

11) then release the retaining clip and disconnect the wiring connector(s) from the airbag control unit. When the operations are complete, securely reconnect the control unit then refit the centre console (see Chapter 11). Make sure no one is inside the vehicle when the battery is reconnected then, with the driver's door open, switch the ignition on from outside vehicle and check the operation of the airbag warning light.



**Warning:** Do not subject the area of the body around the control unit to any form of shock which could trigger the system.



**Warning:** Note that the airbags must not be subjected to temperatures in excess of 100°C.

When the airbag is removed, ensure that it is stored the correct way up to prevent possible inflation.



**Warning:** Do not allow any solvents or cleaning agents to contact the airbag assemblies.

They must be cleaned using only a damp cloth.



**Warning:** The airbags and control unit are both sensitive to impact. If either is dropped or damaged they should be renewed.



**Warning:** Disconnect the airbag control unit wiring connector prior to using arc welding equipment on the vehicle.



**Warning:** Never fit a rear-facing child seat to the front passenger seat unless the passenger airbag has been disabled (paragraph 6).



**Warning:** Peugeot recommend that the airbag units be renewed every ten years.

### 22 Airbag system components – removal and refitting



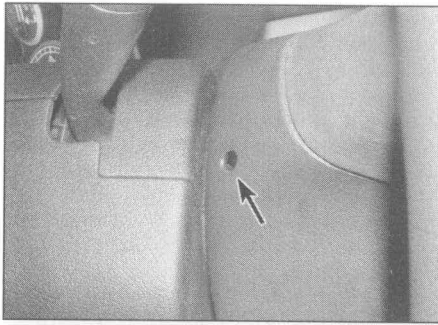
**Warning:** Refer to the precautions given in Section 21 before carrying out the following operations.

#### Driver's airbag

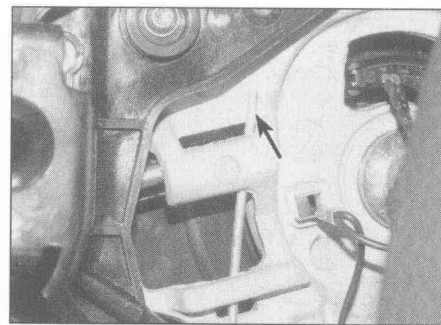
##### Removal

1 Disconnect the battery (see Chapter 5A) and wait at least two minutes. Remove the centre console (see Chapter 11) then release the retaining clip and disconnect the wiring connector(s) from the airbag control unit (see illustration 22.15). If necessary, remove the fascia bracket lower mounting bolt to gain the clearance necessary to disconnect the connector.

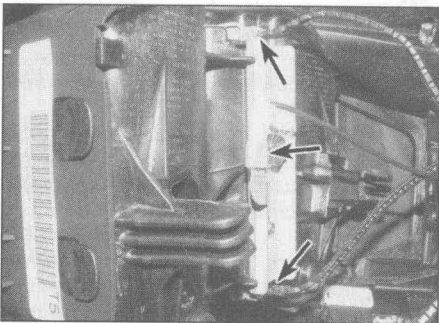
2 With the wheel in the straight-ahead position and the steering lock engaged, insert thin flat-bladed screwdriver into the holes in the side of the steering wheel boss, and release the retaining clips (see illustrations).



22.2a Insert a thin screwdriver into the hole (arrowed) each side of the steering wheel . . .

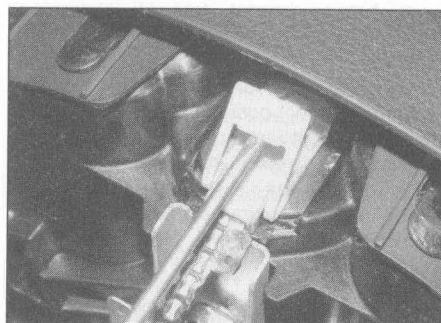


22.2b . . . and push the clip (arrowed) to release it



22.3a Disconnect the airbag wiring connectors (arrowed) . . .

3 Carefully lift the airbag unit away from the wheel, disconnecting the wiring connectors as they become accessible (see illustrations).



22.3b . . . by lifting the locking clip and sliding them from place



**Warning:** Do not knock or drop the airbag unit and store it the correct way up with its padded surface uppermost.

### Refitting

4 Securely reconnect the wiring connectors then seat the airbag unit in the steering wheel, ensuring the wiring does not become trapped. Note that the main connectors are colour-coded to correspond with their respective sockets.

5 Fit the airbag unit, press it into place until the retaining clips engage.

6 Securely reconnect the airbag control unit wiring connector(s). Refit the centre console (see Chapter 11). Make sure no one is inside the vehicle then reconnect the battery. With the driver's door open, switch the ignition on from outside vehicle and check the operation of the warning light.

### Passenger airbag

#### Removal

7 Disconnect the battery and wait at least two minutes. Remove the centre console (see Chapter 11) then release the retaining clip and disconnect the wiring connector(s) from the airbag control unit (see illustration 22.15).

8 Remove the fascia as described in Chapter 11.

9 The fascia covering trim is secured by numerous fasteners along its lower edge and ends. It's also secured by fasteners accessible through the instrument panel aperture, and multi-function display aperture (see illustrations). Remove the fasteners.

10 Disconnect the airbag wiring plug, located at the base of the fascia centre panel, in front of the gear lever/selector. Release the wiring harness from any retaining clips, noting their fitted position and harness routing.

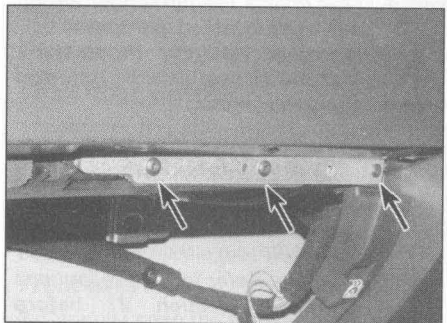
11 Lift up the rear edge of the fascia covering trim, and release the remaining retaining clips. Remove the trim along with the airbag.

12 Undo the two nuts, and remove the airbag (see illustration).

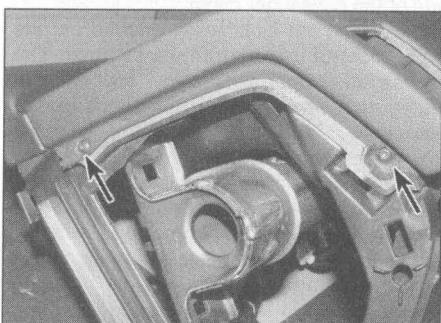
#### Refitting

13 Fit the airbag unit and panel to the fascia trim, ensuring the wiring is correctly routed, and the nuts are securely tightened.

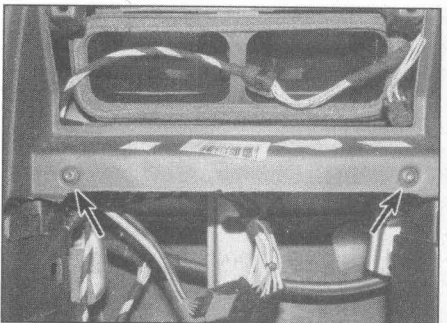
14 The remainder of refitting is the reverse of removal. On completion, securely reconnect the airbag control unit wiring connector(s). Refit the centre console (see Chapter 11). Make sure no one is inside the vehicle then



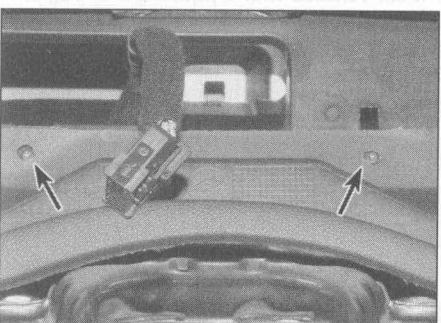
22.9a The fascia covering trim is secured by numerous fasteners along its lower edge (arrowed) . . .



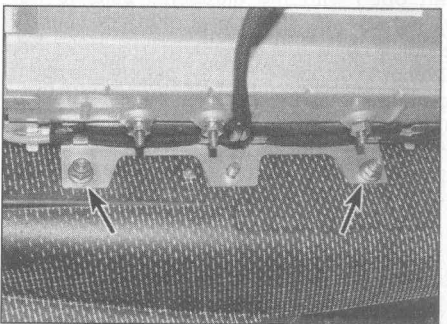
22.9b . . . its ends (arrowed) . . .



22.9c . . . centre section (arrowed) . . .



22.9d . . . and instrument cluster aperture (arrowed)



22.12 Undo the two airbag retaining nuts (arrowed)

reconnect the battery. With the driver's door open, switch the ignition on from outside vehicle and check the operation of the warning light.

### Airbag control unit

#### Removal

**15** Disconnect the battery (see Chapter 5A) and wait at least two minutes. Remove the centre console (see Chapter 11) then release the retaining clip and disconnect the wiring connector(s) from the airbag control unit (see illustration).

**16** Unscrew the retaining nuts then remove the control unit from the vehicle.

#### Refitting

**17** Refit the control unit, making sure the arrow on the top of the unit is pointing towards the front of the vehicle. Refit the control unit retaining nuts and tighten them to the specified torque.

**18** Securely reconnect the airbag control unit wiring connector(s).

**19** Refit the centre console (see Chapter 11). Make sure no one is inside the vehicle then reconnect the battery. With the driver's door open, switch the ignition on from outside vehicle and check the operation of the warning light.

### Side airbag

**20** Removal and refitting of the side airbag units should be entrusted to a Peugeot dealer. The seat must be dismantled to enable the airbag unit to be removed/refitted.

### Side airbag acceleration sensor

#### Removal

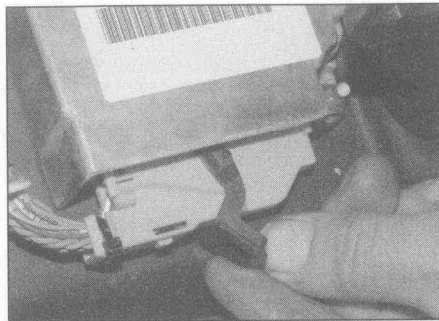
**21** Remove the relevant front seat as described in Chapter 11.

**22** Referring to Section 25 of Chapter 11, on three-door models remove the rear side trim panel, and on five-door models remove the B-pillar upper and lower trim panels.

**23** On all models, remove the sill trim.

**24** Peel back the carpet to gain access to the side airbag control unit.

**25** Disconnect the wiring connector then undo the retaining bolt and remove the control unit from the vehicle.



**22.15** Lift the locking catch and disconnect the airbag ECU wiring plug

#### Refitting

**26** Refitting is the reverse of removal, tightening the acceleration sensor bolt securely.

### Curtain airbag

**27** Removal and refitting of the curtain airbag units should be entrusted to a Peugeot dealer. The headlining must be partially removed to enable the airbag unit to be removed/refitted.

### 23 Built-in systems interface (BSI) unit/fusebox – general, removal and refitting

#### General information

**1** The built-in systems interface (BSI) unit is an electronic control unit which controls a variety of functions, normally controlled by individual control units and relays. The BSI unit is located behind the lower cover on the passenger's side of the fascia where it is situated directly beneath the fusebox. The BSI unit controls the following functions (not all functions are fitted to all models).

- a) Direction indicator/hazard warning lights.
- b) Windscreen/tailgate wiper motors.
- c) Rear screen heating element.
- d) Immobiliser system.
- e) Anti-theft alarm system.
- f) Lights-on/ignition key warning buzzer.
- g) Central locking/deadlocking, including the remote central locking receiver.
- h) Door open indicator.

- i) Courtesy light delay timer.
- j) Automatic transmission audible warning system.

**2** Should any of the above functions become faulty, first check the condition of the fuses. If this fails to locate the problem, take the vehicle to a Peugeot dealer for testing. The only satisfactory way to test the BSI unit is by substitution with another unit which is known to be functioning correctly.

#### Removal

**3** Disconnect the battery (see Chapter 5A).

**4** Remove the passenger side glovebox as described in Section 27 of Chapter 11.

**5** Rotate the two white plastic fasteners 90 degrees anti-clockwise, and prise the fusebox outwards slightly (see illustration).

**6** Lower the rear edge of the unit, then lift up the front edge and slide it from place (see illustration).

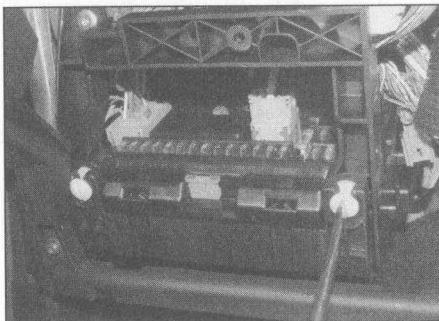
**7** Note their fitted positions, then release the retaining clips then disconnect all the wiring connectors and remove the BSI unit from the vehicle. Note that there are several different designs of locking catches for the various connectors. Take your time to study the wiring connectors, and release them without using excessive force as they are easily damaged (see illustration).

#### Refitting

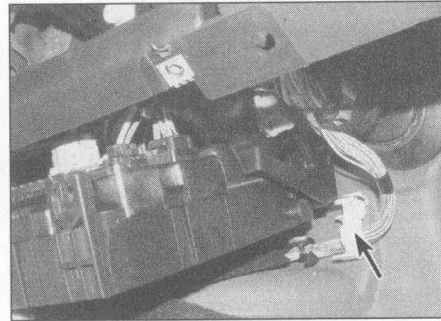
**8** Refitting is the reverse of removal, ensuring the wiring connectors are all securely reconnected. Note that the connector colours are listed adjacent to their respective sockets on the BSI.

### 24 Satellite navigation system – general information

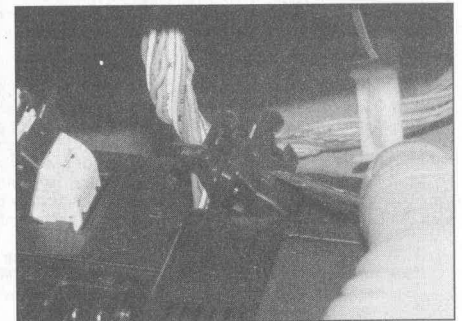
**1** A satellite navigation system was offered as an optional extra on some models. The navigation unit and remote control are located in the glovebox. Refer to the manufacturer's handbook supplied with the vehicle for operating instructions. Any problems with the system must be referred to a Peugeot dealer.



**23.5** Rotate the fasteners 90° anti-clockwise



**23.6** The rear of the BSI unit locates in the retaining clips (arrowed)



**23.7** Some of the BSI connectors are retained by clips and locking catches

PEUGEOT 307 2001 to 2003 wiring diagrams

Diagram 1

Key to symbols

**Bulb**

**Switch**

**Fuse/fusible link and current rating**

**Resistor**

**Variable resistor**

**Connecting wires**

**Item no.**

**Pump/motor**

**Earth point and location**

**Gauge/meter**

**Diode**

**Wire joint**

**Solenoid actuator**

**Light emitting diode (LED)**

**Screened cable**

Dashed outline denotes part of a larger item, containing in this case an electronic or solid state device.  
Pin types:  
**2** - Unspecified colour connector, pin 2.  
**2Br 1** - Brown two pin connector, pin 1.

The prime method of wire identification is by using the terminal pin numbers (moulded into each component or connector and shown in the diagrams) together with the number code printed on each wire. To relate each diagram to the vehicle wiring, locate the relevant component or connector illustrated and find the wire(s) connected to the terminal pin(s) as shown in the diagram.

Caution: While a number (indicating the function of that wire) may be printed on each wire, this is not always the case, and in such instances, this is reflected by the absence of such wire numbering on our diagrams. Similarly, numbering of the connector/component terminal pins is not always available from the manufacturers' source information and may also be missing from our diagrams. In these cases, it may be necessary to refer to your local dealer for further information.

Note that the conventional method of using colour coding does not apply - whilst the wires on the vehicle will be coloured, the wire colour has no relevance. Accordingly, the wires on our diagrams all appear in black.

Earth points

<b>E1</b>	Main engine earth	<b>E8</b>	LH transmission tunnel
<b>E2</b>	Battery earth	<b>E9</b>	LH footwell
<b>E3</b>	LH footwell	<b>E10</b>	RH front wing
<b>E4</b>	LH engine compartment	<b>E11</b>	RH centre console
<b>E5</b>	Lower centre of console	<b>E12</b>	LH front wing
<b>E6</b>	Rear upper pillar	<b>E13</b>	LH engine bulkhead
<b>E7</b>	RH rear of centre console		

Key to circuits

<b>Diagram 1</b>	Information for wiring diagrams
<b>Diagram 2</b>	Starting and charging, built-in system interface supply, radio with CD player, dual tone horn, heated rear window, cigarette lighter and 12V socket
<b>Diagram 3</b>	Airbag, ABS and sunroof
<b>Diagram 4</b>	Electric windows, power steering, power and heated mirrors
<b>Diagram 5</b>	Air conditioning, wash/wipe, brake lights, headlights, side lights and tail lights
<b>Diagram 6</b>	Direction indicator lights, hazard warning, foglights, reversing lights, interior lights and diagnostic connector
<b>Diagram 7</b>	Central locking, instrument module
<b>Diagram 8</b>	Petrol and diesel engine cooling

Fuse table

Main fuse box

Fuses	Rating	Circuit protected
<b>MF1</b>	30A	Fan
<b>MF2</b>	30A	ABS pump motor
<b>MF3</b>	30A	ABS solenoid valves
<b>MF4</b>	60A	Built-in systems interface
<b>MF5</b>	70A	Built-in systems interface
<b>MF6</b>	-	Not used
<b>MF7</b>	30A	Ignition switch
<b>MF8</b>	70A	Power steering
<b>F1</b>	10A	Reversing light switch, vehicle speed sensor, water in diesel sensor
<b>F2</b>	15A	Fuel pump, canister solenoid valve
<b>F3</b>	10A	ABS, power steering pump
<b>F4</b>	10A	Engine control module, heater control, automatic transmission, fan relays
<b>F5</b>	15A	Emmission filter control unit
<b>F6</b>	15A	Front fog lights
<b>F7</b>	-	Not used
<b>F8</b>	20A	Fan relays, engine control module, diesel injection pump
<b>F9</b>	15A	LH dipped beam
<b>F10</b>	15A	RH dipped beam
<b>F11</b>	10A	RH main beam
<b>F12</b>	10A	LH main beam
<b>F13</b>	15A	Horn
<b>F14</b>	10A	Wash/wipe
<b>F15</b>	30A	Engine control module, EGR valve, fuel injectors, diesel pressure regulator, air flow sensor, fuel heater, pre-heat control module
<b>F16</b>	40A	Engine air pump (automatic transmission)
<b>F17</b>	30A	Windscreen wiper
<b>F18</b>	40A	Air conditioning

Built-in system interface

Fuses	Rating	Circuit protected
<b>F1</b>	10A	Rear fog light
<b>F2</b>	15A	Rear screen wiper
<b>F3</b>	-	Not used
<b>F4</b>	15A	Front electric windows, sunroof
<b>F5</b>	15A	LH brake light
<b>F6</b>	-	Not used
<b>F7</b>	20A	Interior lights, cigarette lighter
<b>F8</b>	-	Not used
<b>F9</b>	30A	Electric windows, sunroof
<b>F10</b>	15A	12V rear socket, diagnostic connector
<b>F11</b>	15A	Radio, multi-function display steering wheel controls automatic transmission
<b>F12</b>	10A	RH side lights, licence plate light, instrument lights, cigarette lighter, headlight leveling
<b>F13</b>	-	Not used
<b>F14</b>	30A	Central locking
<b>F15</b>	30A	Rear electric windows
<b>F16</b>	5A	Main fuse box, alarm, air bags, steering wheel controls, emmission filter
<b>F17</b>	10A	RH brake light, high level brake light
<b>F18</b>	10A	Diagnostic connector, steering wheel controls, brake switches, clutch switch, coolant level switch
<b>F19</b>	30A	PARC shunt
<b>F20</b>	-	Not used
<b>F21</b>	-	Not used
<b>F22</b>	10A	LH side lights, licence plate light
<b>F23</b>	15A	Alarm
<b>F24</b>	15A	Radio, instrument module, parking aid, air conditioning, multi-function display
<b>F25</b>	-	Not used
<b>F26</b>	30A	Heated rear window

Connector colours

<b>Bl</b> Blue	<b>Or</b> Orange
<b>Br</b> Brown	<b>Ro</b> Red
<b>Ge</b> Yellow	<b>Sw</b> Black
<b>Gr</b> Grey	<b>Ws</b> White
<b>Gn</b> Green	
<b>Mc</b> Multicoloured	

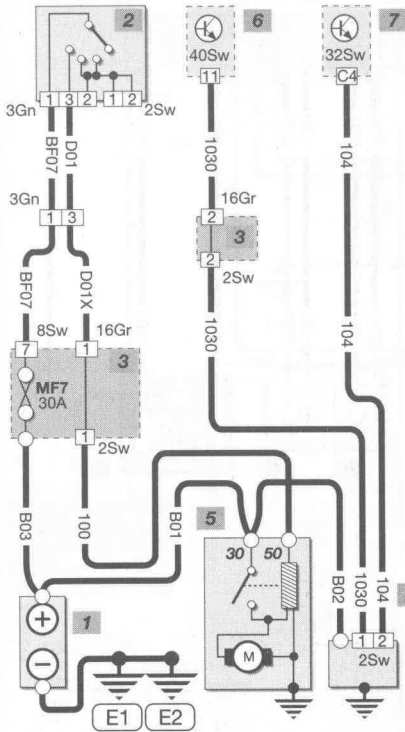
Key to items

1 Battery	7 Engine control module	13 Radio	19 LH rear speaker
2 Ignition switch	8 Horn relay	14 CD player	20 RH rear speaker
3 Main fuse box	9 Low tone horn	15 LH front tweeter	21 Cigarette lighter
4 Alternator	10 High tone horn	16 RH front tweeter	22 Rear 12V socket
5 Starter motor	11 Instrument module	17 LH front speaker	23 Heated rear window
6 Built-in System Interface	12 Aerial	18 RH front speaker	24 Heated rear window relay

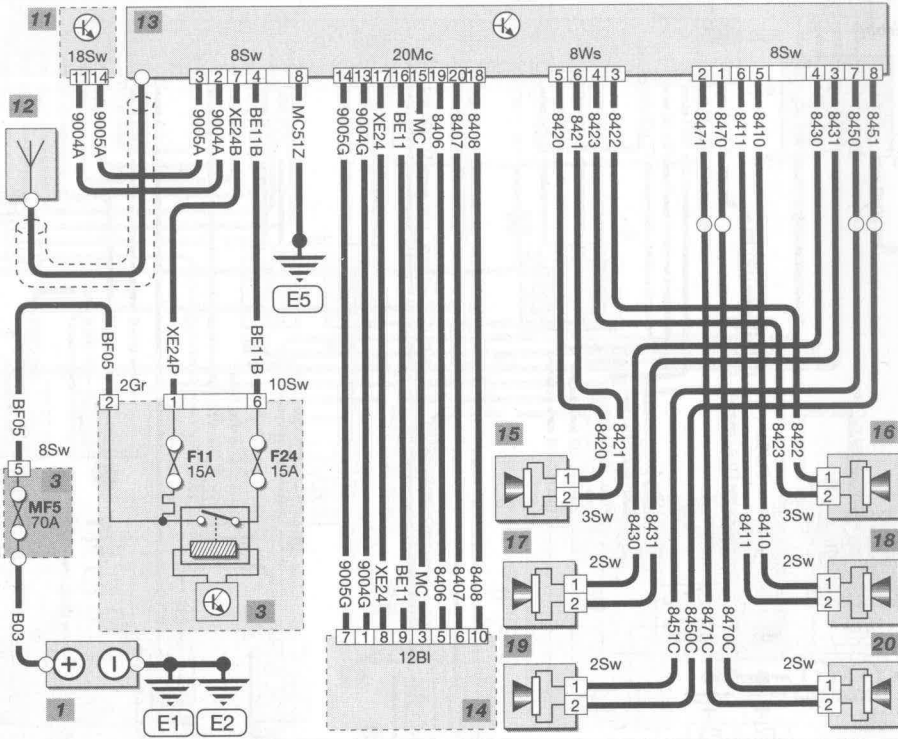
Diagram 2

MTS  
H32825

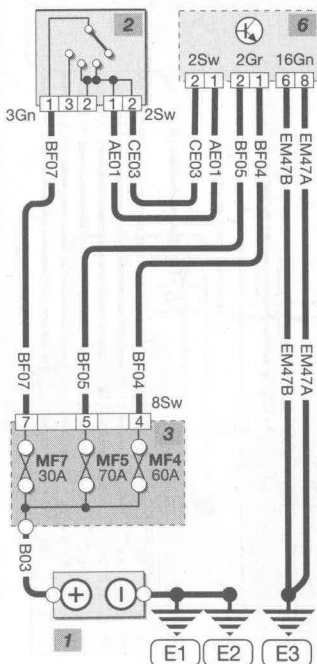
Starting and charging



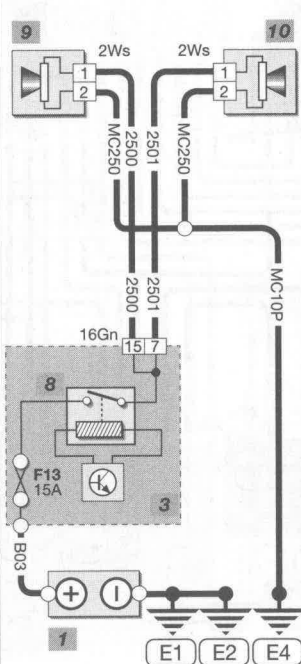
Radio with CD player



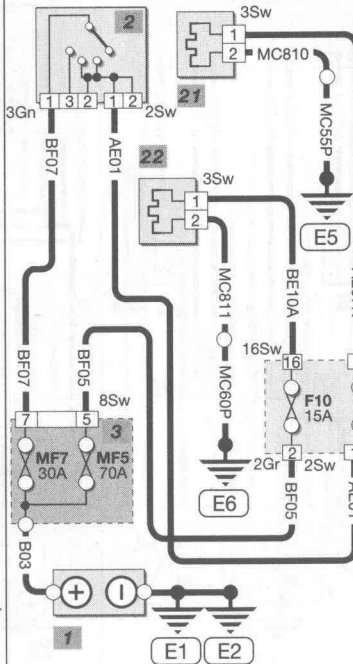
Built-in System Interface supply



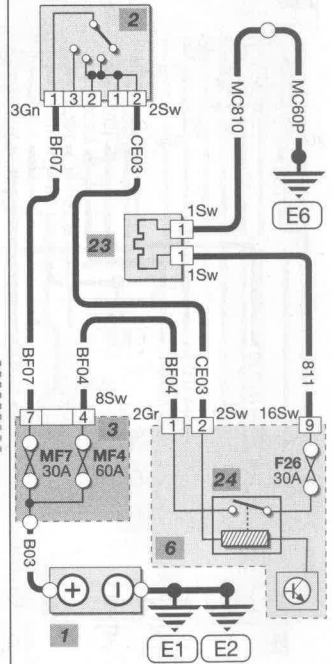
Dual tone horn



Cigarette lighter and rear 12V socket



Heated rear window



Connector colours

- Bl** Blue
- Br** Brown
- Ge** Yellow
- Gn** Grey
- Gr** Green
- Mc** Multicolored
- Or** Orange
- Rd** Red
- Sw** Black
- Ws** White

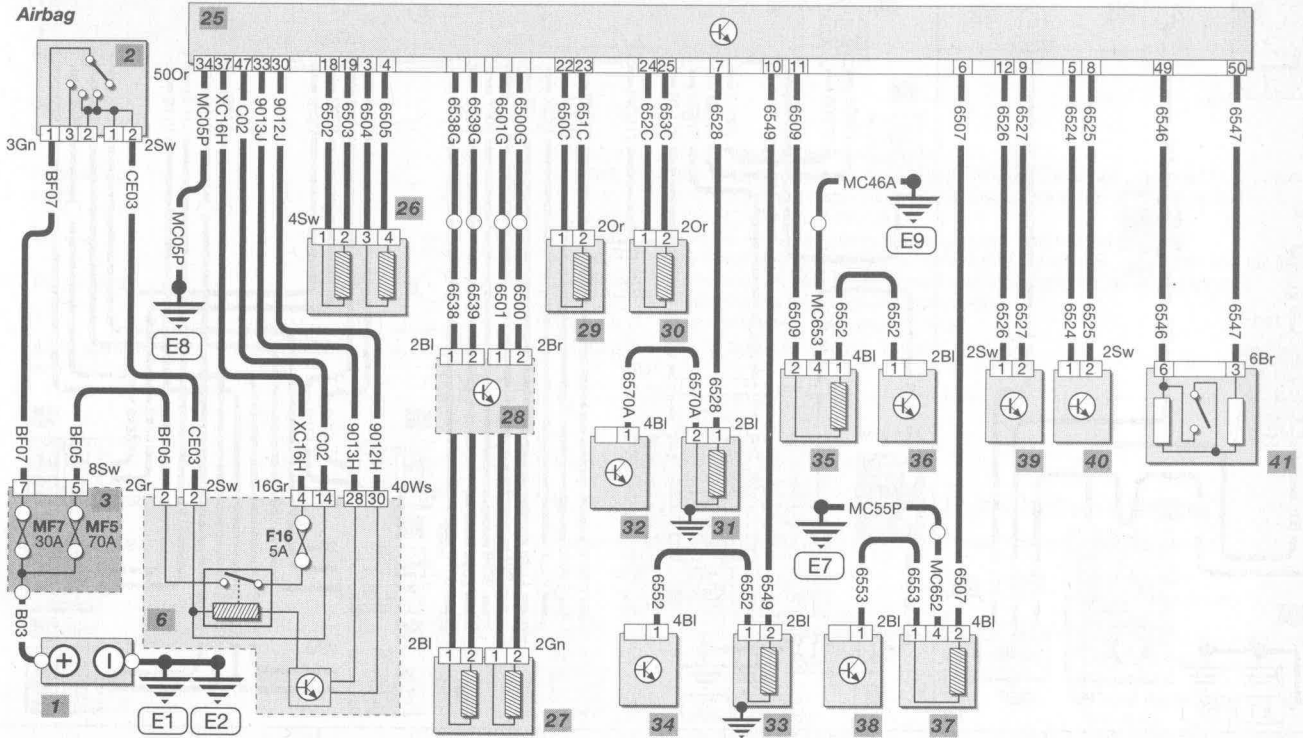
Key to items

- 1 Battery
- 29 Driver's seatbelt pre-tensioner
- 35 LH bottom airbag sensor
- 42 ABS control unit
- 2 Ignition switch
- 30 Passenger's seatbelt pre-tensioner
- 36 LH side airbag screen module
- 43 Diagnostic socket
- 3 Main fuse box
- 31 RH airbag screen module
- 37 RH bottom airbag sensor
- 44 Brake fluid level switch
- 6 Built-in System Interface
- 32 RH bottom side airbag
- 38 RH side airbag screen module
- 25 Airbag control module
- 33 LH airbag screen module
- 39 Driver's remote module
- 45 LH front wheel sensor
- 26 Passenger's airbag
- 34 LH bottom side airbag
- 40 Passenger's remote module
- 46 LH rear wheel sensor
- 27 Driver's airbag
- 41 Passenger's airbag disable switch
- 47 RH rear wheel sensor
- 28 Steering wheel switches
- 48 RH front wheel sensor
- 49 Sunroof motor module
- 50 Sunroof switch

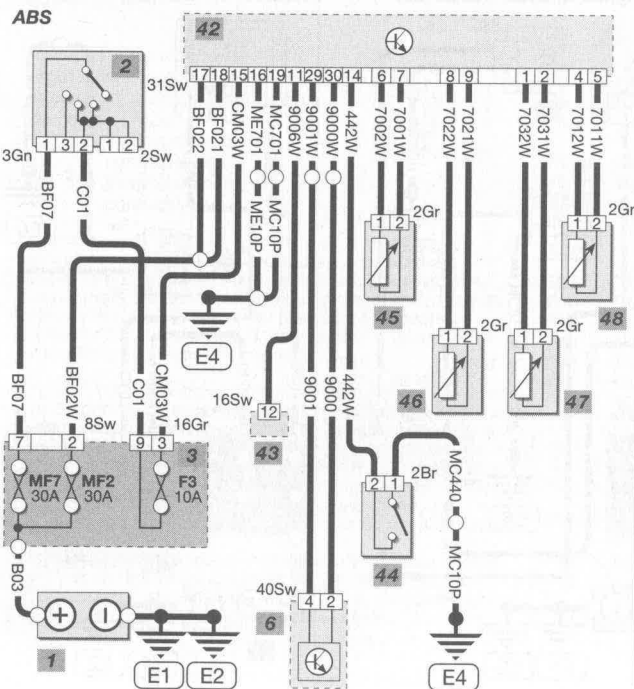
Diagram 3

MTS  
H32826

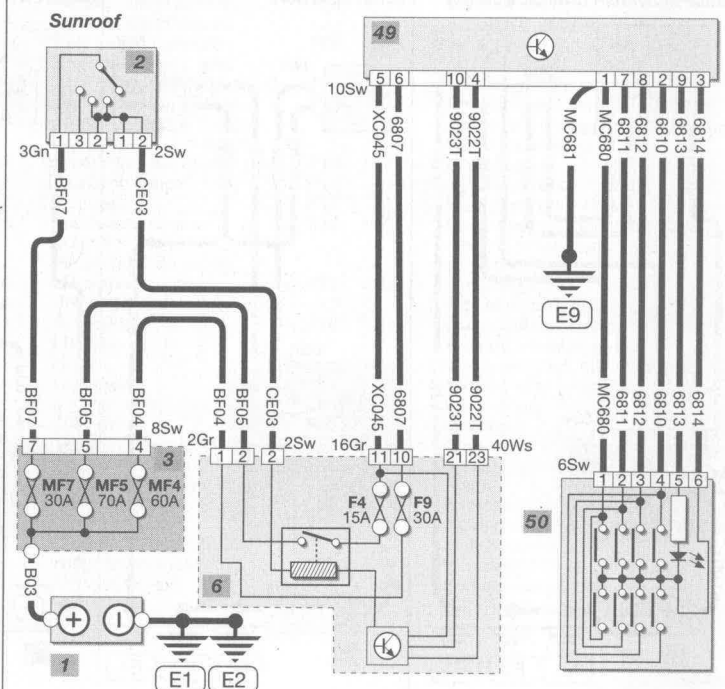
Airbag



ABS



Sunroof



Connector colours

<b>Bl</b> Blue	<b>Or</b> Orange
<b>Br</b> Brown	<b>Ro</b> Red
<b>Ge</b> Yellow	<b>Sw</b> Black
<b>Gr</b> Grey	<b>Ws</b> White
<b>Gn</b> Green	
<b>Mc</b> Multicolored	

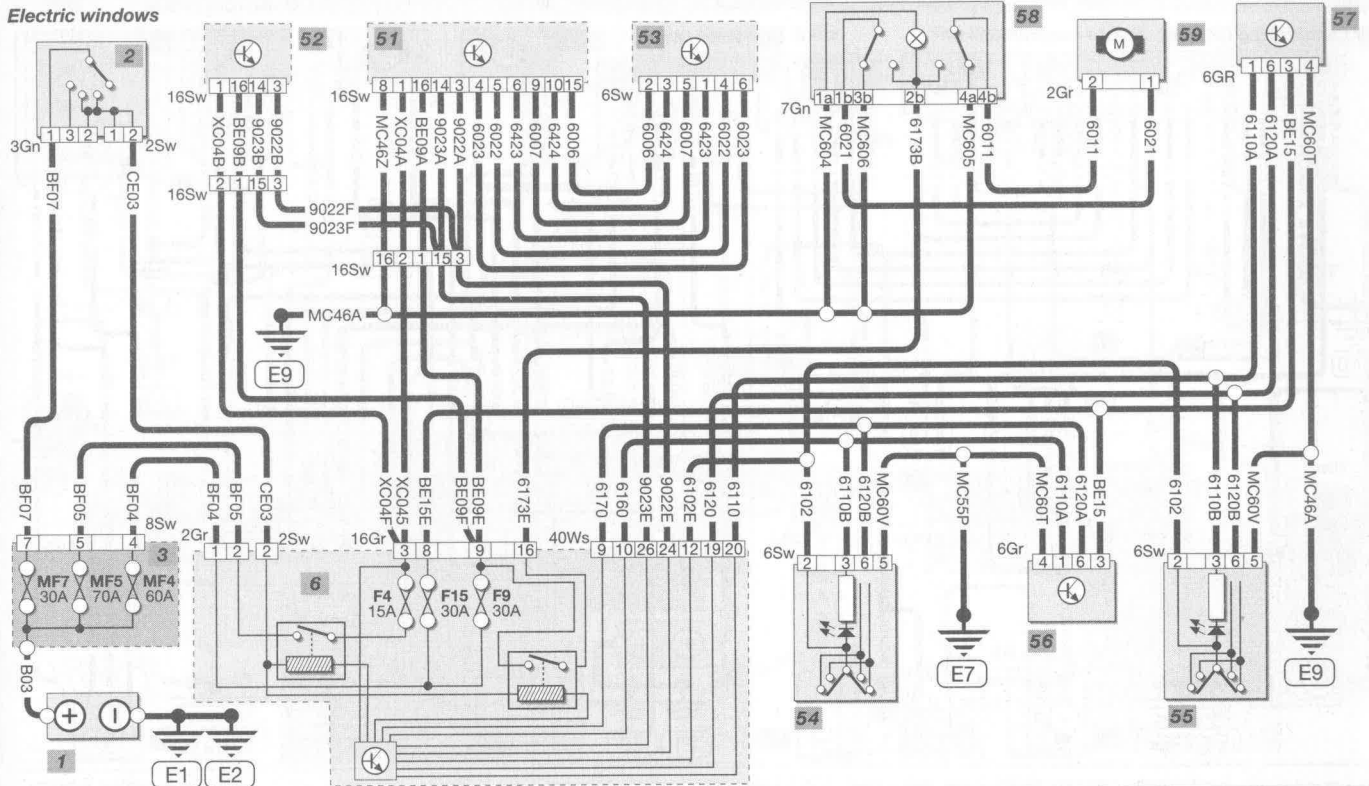
Key to items

- |                             |   |                                |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 Battery                   | 51 Driver's one-touch motor & control module    | 55 LH rear window switch       | 60 Driver's rear view mirror    |
| 2 Ignition switch           | 52 Passenger's one-touch motor & control module | 56 RH rear window motor module | 61 Passenger's rear view mirror |
| 3 Main fuse box             | 53 Driver's door mounted switch module          | 57 LH rear window motor module | 62 Power steering pump          |
| 6 Built-in System Interface | 54 RH rear window switch                        | 58 Passenger window switch     |                                 |
| 28 Steering wheel switches  |   | 59 Passenger window motor      |                                 |
| 42 ABS control unit         |   |                                |                                 |
| 43 Diagnostic socket        |   |                                |                                 |

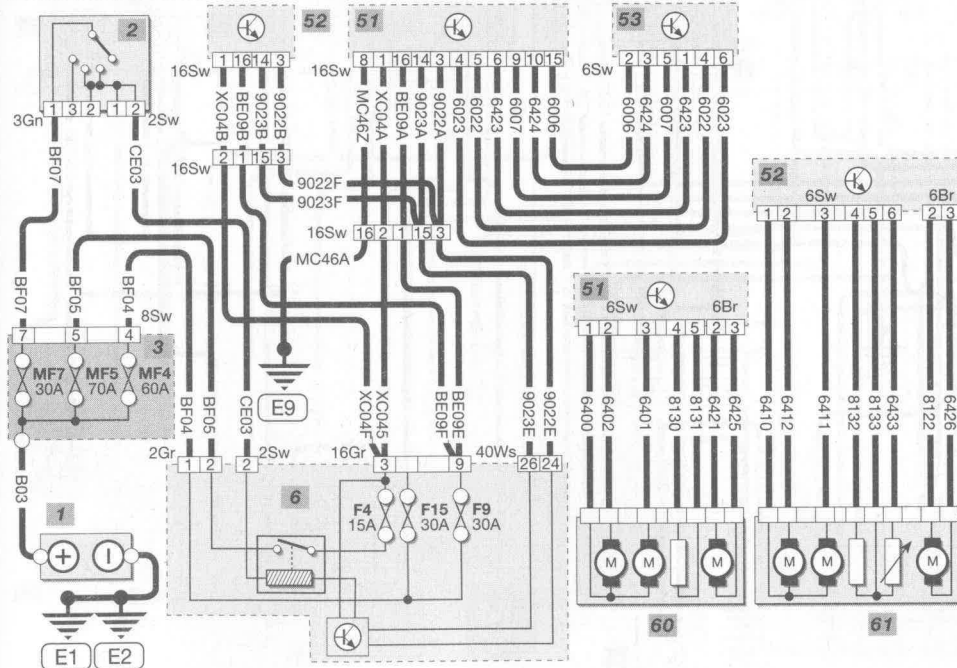
Diagram 4

MTS H32827

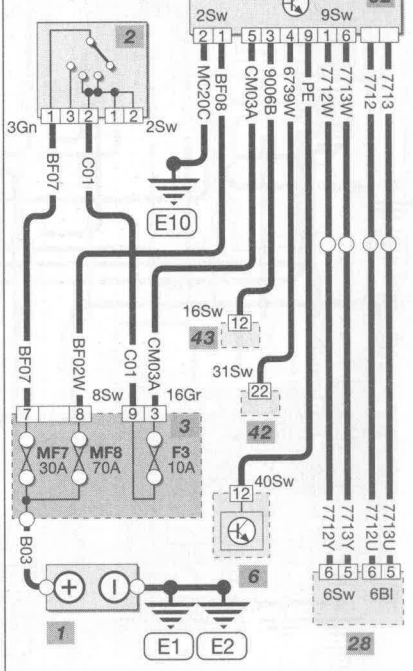
Electric windows



Power and heated mirrors



Power steering





Connector colours

<b>Bl</b> Blue	<b>Or</b> Orange
<b>Br</b> Brown	<b>Ro</b> Red
<b>Ge</b> Yellow	<b>Sw</b> Black
<b>Gr</b> Grey	<b>Ws</b> White
<b>Gn</b> Green	
<b>Mc</b> Multicolored	

\* If separate

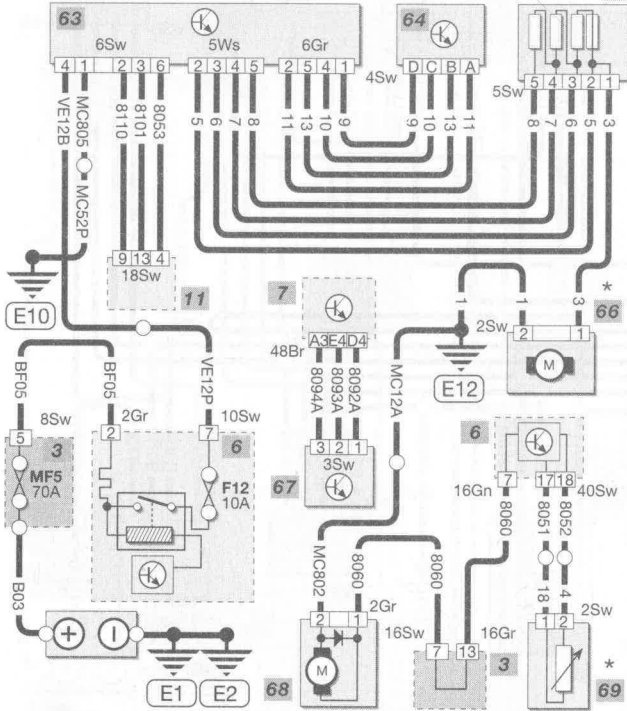
Key to items

1 Battery	66 Heater blower motor	75 Light sensor	79 LH tail light unit
2 Ignition switch	67 Pressostat	76 Headlight leveling module	a) tail light
3 Main fuse box	68 A/C compressor	77 LH headlight unit	b) brake light
6 Built-in System Interface	69 Evaporator thermostat	a) main beam	80 RH tail light unit
7 Engine control module	70 Headlight washer	b) dipped beam	(as 79)
11 Instrument module	71 Front/rear screen washer	c) side light	81 LH licence plate light
63 Heater panel	72 Windscreen wiper motor	d) leveling motor	82 RH licence plate light
64 Air inlet reduction flap	73 Rear screen wiper motor		83 High level brake light
65 Blower motor resistor	74 Rain sensor		84 Brake light switch

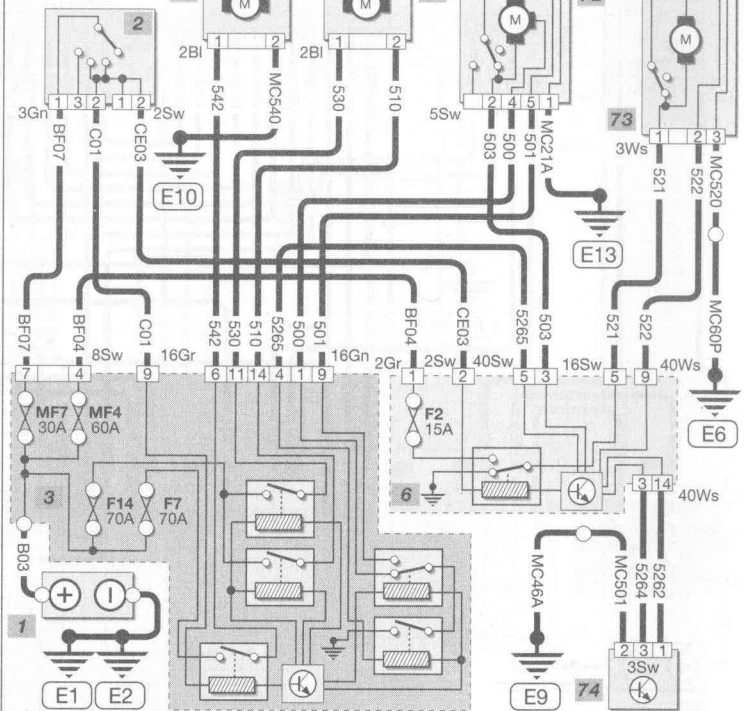
Diagram 5

MTS H32828

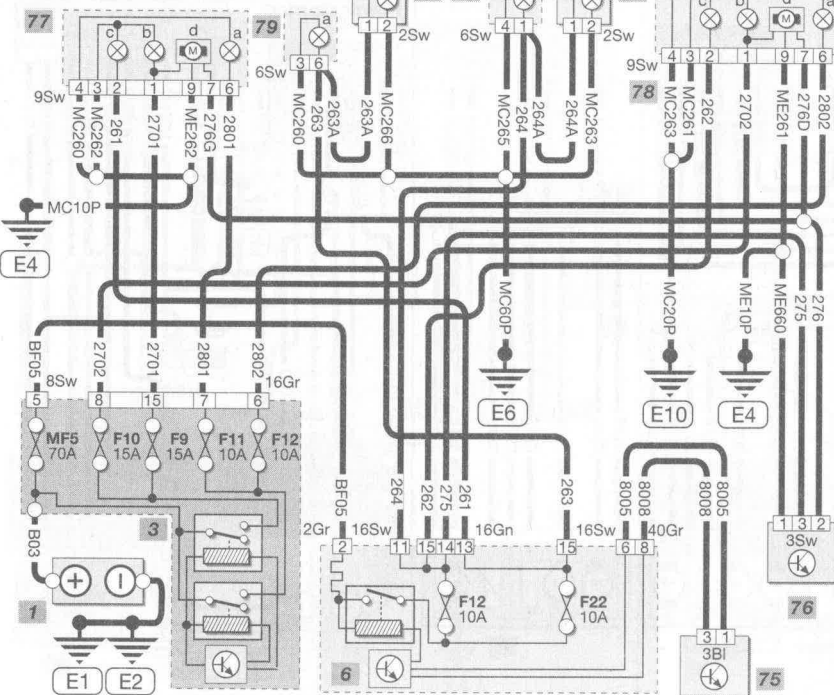
Air conditioning (without climate control)



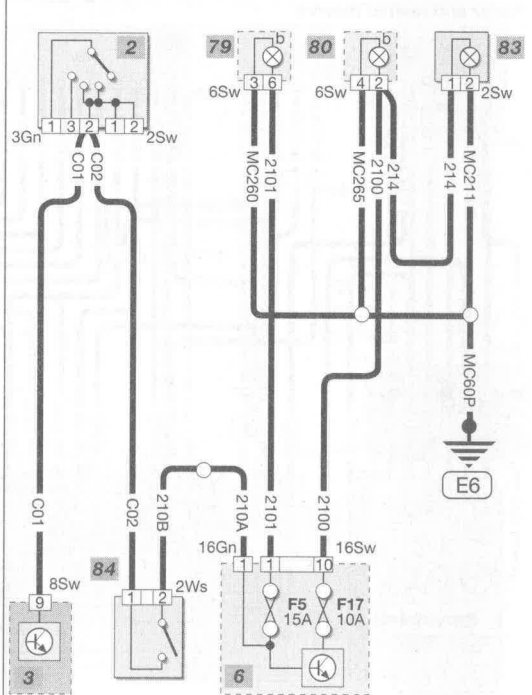
Wash/Wipe



Headlights, side lights and tail lights



Brake lights



Connector colours

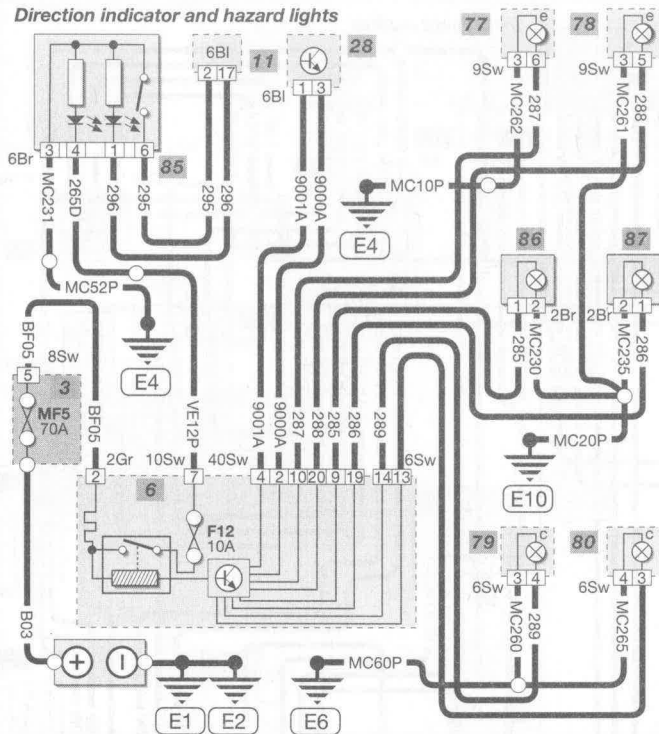
<b>Bl</b> Blue	<b>Or</b> Orange
<b>Br</b> Brown	<b>Ro</b> Red
<b>Ge</b> Yellow	<b>Sw</b> Black
<b>Gr</b> Grey	<b>Ws</b> White
<b>Gn</b> Green	
<b>Mc</b> Multicolored	

Key to items

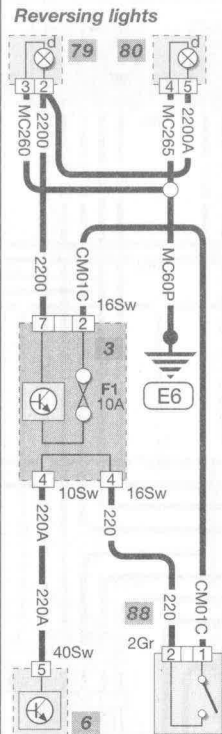
1 Battery	77 LH headlight unit	80 RH tail light unit	91 Luggage compartment light switch and lock motor
2 Ignition switch	e) direction indicator	c) direction indicator	92 Luggage compartment light
3 Main fuse box	f) fog light	d) reversing light	93 Front courtesy light switch
6 Built-in System Interface	78 RH headlight unit (as 77)	85 Hazard light switch	94 LH front courtesy light
7 Engine control module	79 LH tail light unit	86 LH side repeater	95 RH front courtesy light
11 Instrument module	c) direction indicator	87 RH side repeater	96 Passenger's front door lock
28 Steering wheel switches	d) reversing light	88 Reverse light switch	97 Drivers front door lock
43 Diagnostic connector	e) fog light	89 Glove box light	
		90 Rear courtesy light	

Diagram 6

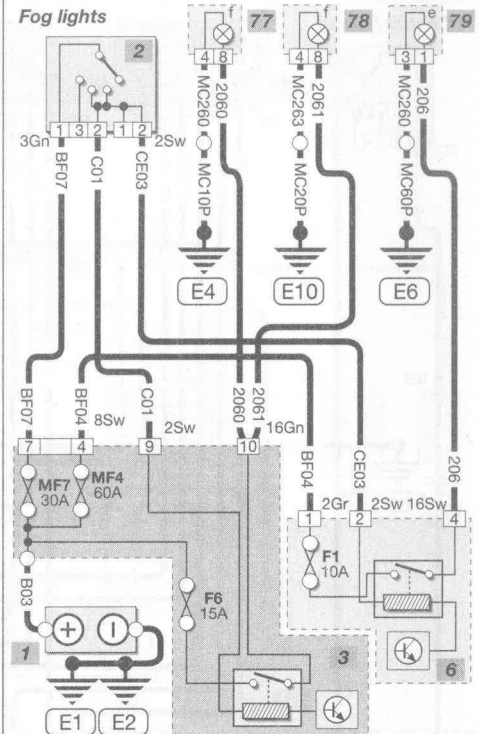
Direction indicator and hazard lights



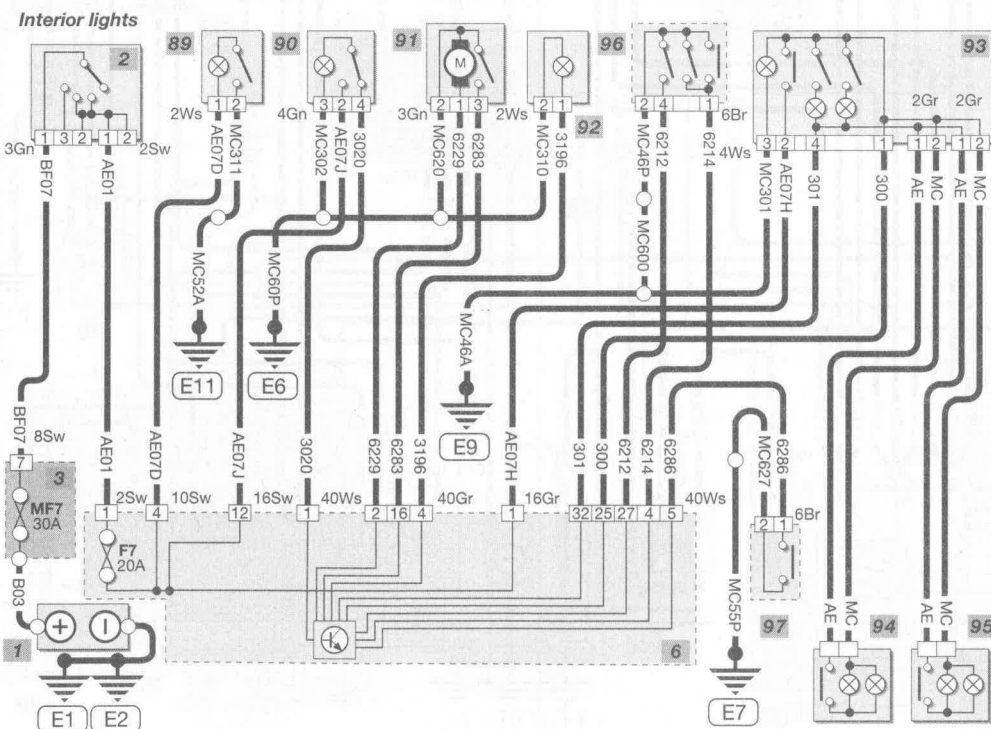
Reversing lights



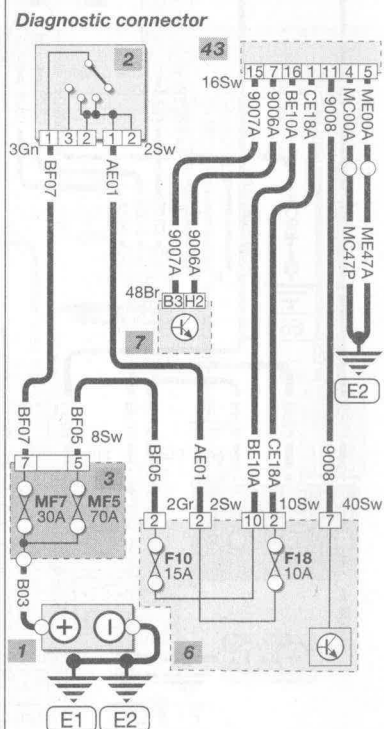
Fog lights



Interior lights



Diagnostic connector



MTS H32829

Connector colours

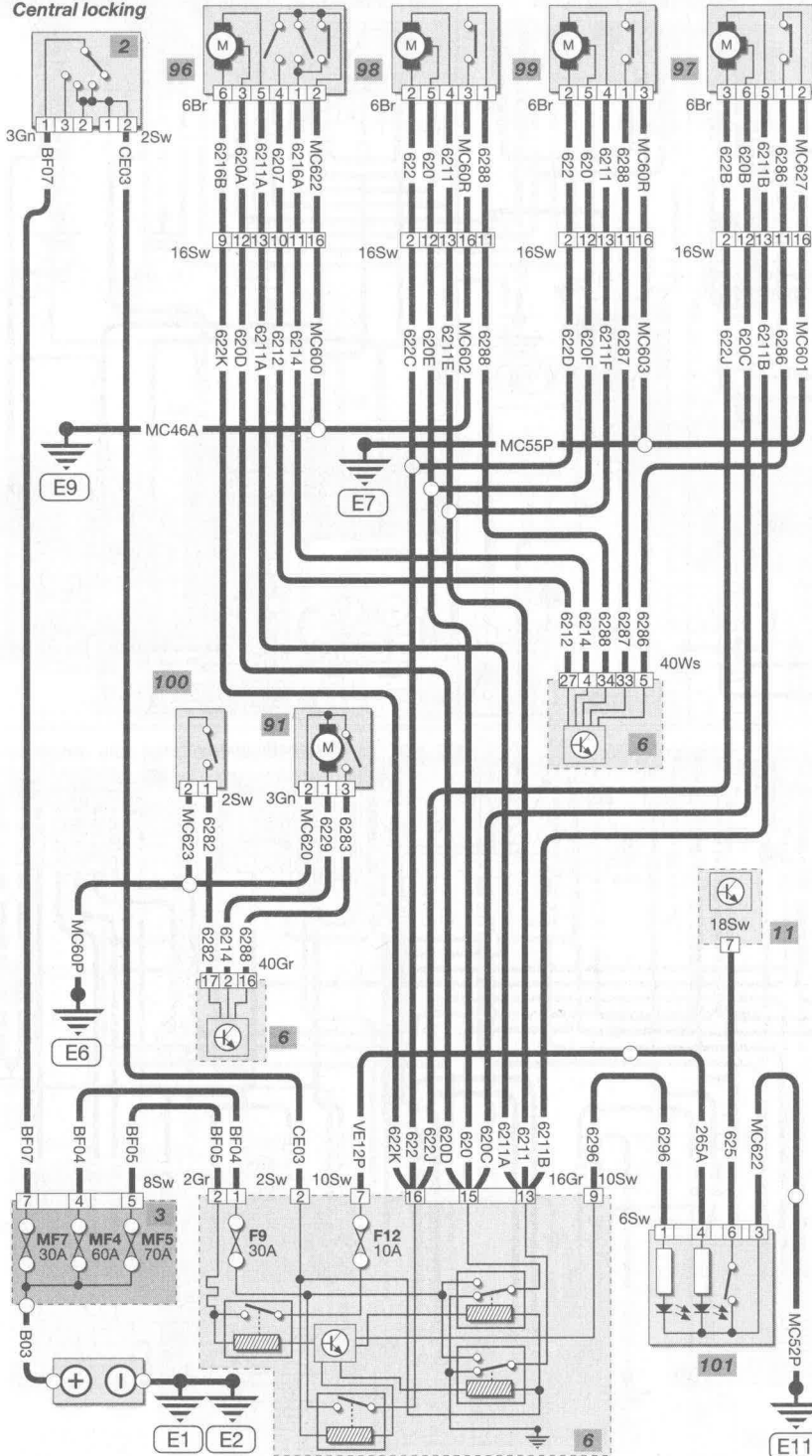
<b>Bl</b> Blue	<b>Or</b> Orange
<b>Br</b> Brown	<b>Ro</b> Red
<b>Ge</b> Yellow	<b>Sw</b> Black
<b>Gr</b> Grey	<b>Ws</b> White
<b>Gn</b> Green	
<b>Mc</b> Multicolored	

Key to items

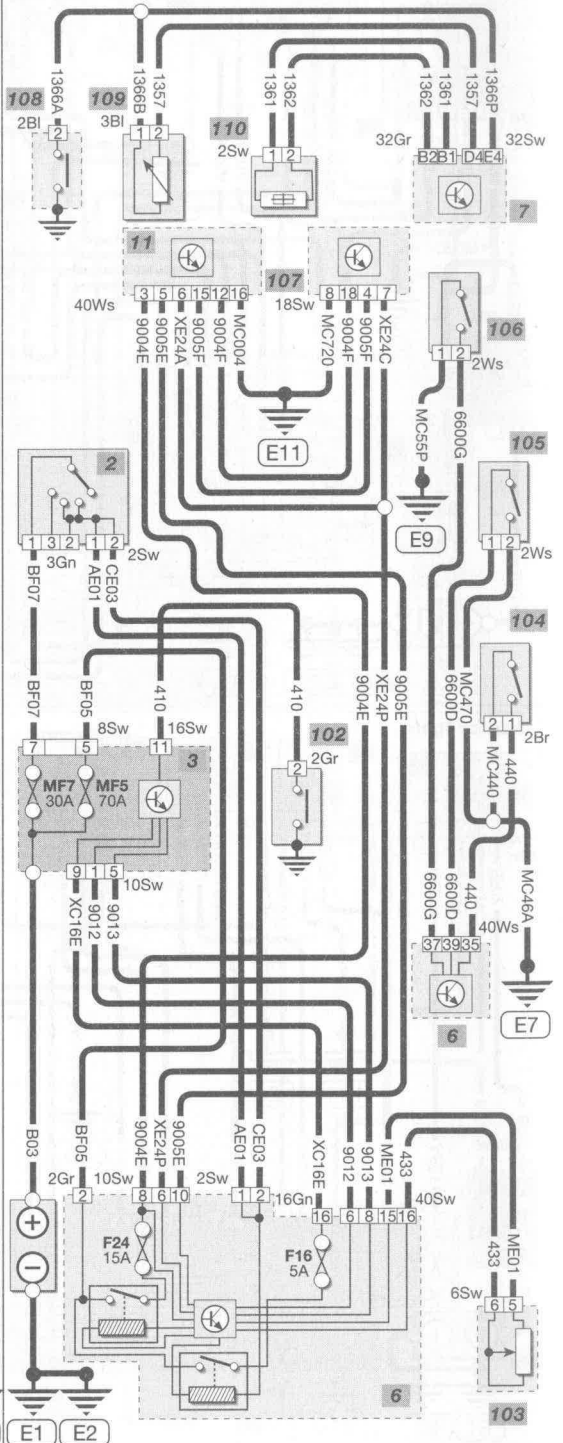
1 Battery	96 Passenger's front door lock	103 Fuel pump and gauge
2 Ignition switch	97 Drivers front door lock	104 Handbrake switch
3 Main fuse box	98 LH rear door lock	105 Passenger's seatbelt switch
6 Built-in System Interface	99 RH rear door lock	106 Driver's seatbelt switch
7 Engine control module	100 Luggage compartment unlocking switch	107 Multifunction display
11 Instrument module	101 Door locking switch	108 Engine temperature heat switch
91 Luggage compartment light switch and lock motor	102 Oil pressure switch	109 Coolant temperature switch
		110 Engine speed sensor

MTS  
H32830

Central locking



Instrument module



Connector colours

- Bl Blue
- Br Brown
- Ge Yellow
- Gr Grey
- Gn Green
- Mc Multicolored
- Or Orange
- Ro Red
- Sw Black
- Ws White

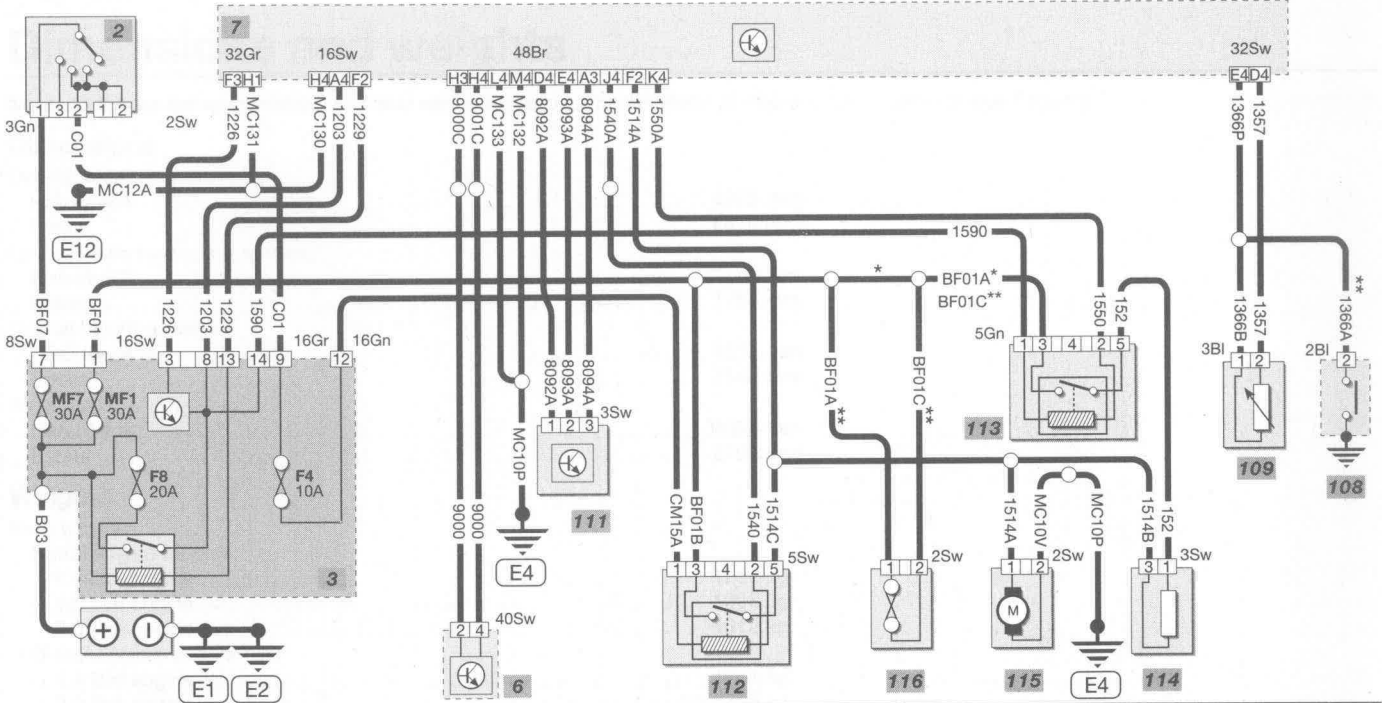
Key to items

- 1 Battery
- 2 Ignition switch
- 3 Main fuse box
- 6 Built-in System Interface
- 7 Engine control module
- 108 Engine temperature heat switch
- 109 Coolant temperature switch
- 110 Engine speed sensor
- 111 Pressostat
- 112 High speed fan relay
- 113 Low speed fan relay
- 114 Two speed cooling fan resistor
- 115 Cooling fan
- 116 Cooling fan fuse
- 117 Engine coolant level switch

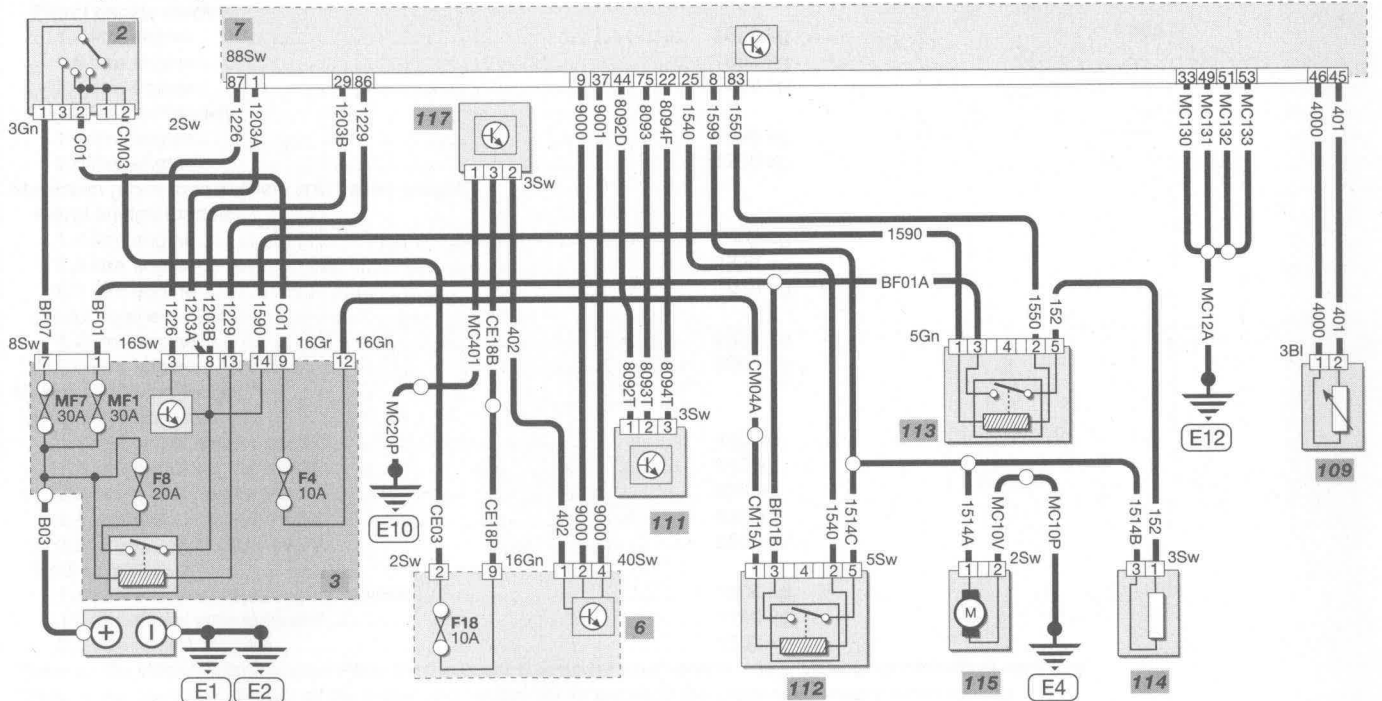
Diagram 8

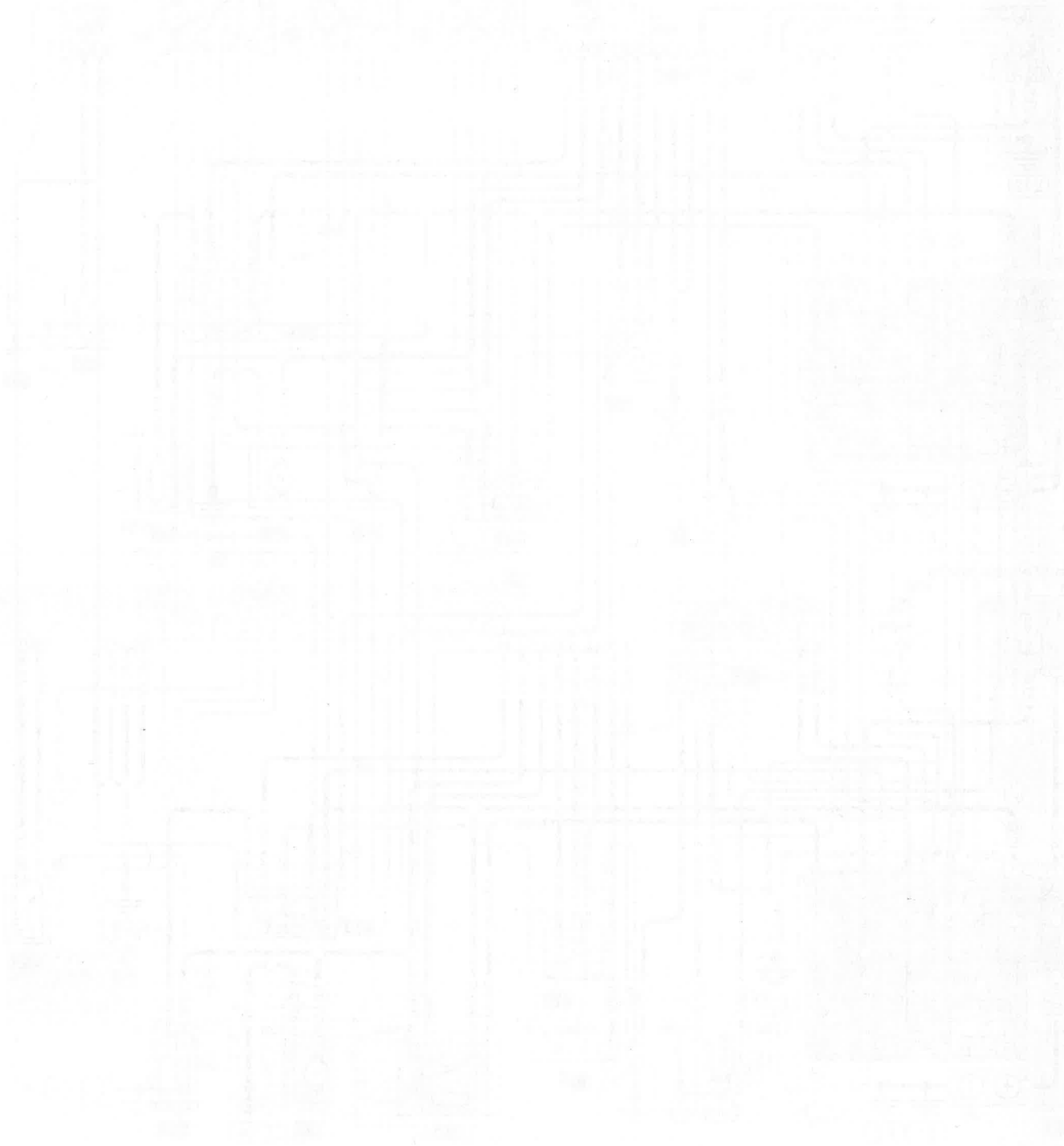
\* RFN only  
 \*\* KFW & NFU only  
 MTS  
 H32831

Petrol engine cooling



Diesel engine cooling





Dimensions and weights . . . . .	REF•1	Tools and working facilities . . . . .	REF•6
Conversion factors . . . . .	REF•2	MOT test checks . . . . .	REF•8
Buying spare parts . . . . .	REF•3	Fault finding . . . . .	REF•12
Vehicle identification numbers . . . . .	REF•3	Glossary of technical terms . . . . .	REF•19
General repair procedures . . . . .	REF•4	Index . . . . .	REF•23
Jacking and vehicle support . . . . .	REF•5		

## Dimensions and weights

**Note:** All figures are approximate, and may vary according to model. Refer to manufacturer's data for exact figures.

### Dimensions

Overall length:	
Hatchback . . . . .	4202 mm
Estate . . . . .	4419 mm
Overall width (excluding mirrors):	
Hatchback . . . . .	1746 mm
Estate . . . . .	1757 mm
Overall height (unladen):	
Hatchback . . . . .	1510 mm
Estate . . . . .	1544 mm
Wheelbase:	
Hatchback . . . . .	2606 mm
Estate . . . . .	2706 mm

### Weights

Kerb weight:	
Petrol engine models:	
1.4 litre engine . . . . .	1234 kg
1.6 litre engine . . . . .	1268 kg
2.0 litre engine . . . . .	1313 kg
Diesel engine models:	
1.4 litre engine . . . . .	1271 kg
2.0 litre engine . . . . .	1335 kg
Maximum gross vehicle weight*:	
Petrol engine models:	
1.4 litre engine . . . . .	1659 kg
1.6 litre engine . . . . .	1693 kg
2.0 litre engine . . . . .	1719 kg
Diesel engine models:	
1.4 litre engine . . . . .	1696 kg
2.0 litre engine . . . . .	1760 kg
Maximum gross train (vehicle and trailer) weight*:	
Petrol engine models:	
1.4 litre engine . . . . .	2659 kg
1.6 litre engine . . . . .	2893 kg
2.0 litre engine . . . . .	3019 kg
Diesel engine models:	
1.4 litre engine . . . . .	2836 kg
2.0 litre engine . . . . .	3060 kg
Maximum towing weight**:	
Unbraked trailer:	
1.4 litre petrol engine model . . . . .	590 kg
1.6 litre petrol engine model . . . . .	610 kg
2.0 litre petrol engine model . . . . .	625 kg
1.4 litre diesel engine model . . . . .	635 kg
2.0 litre diesel engine model . . . . .	655 kg
Braked trailer:	
1.4 and 1.6 litre petrol engine models . . . . .	1200 kg
1.4 litre diesel engine model . . . . .	1140 kg
2.0 litre engine models . . . . .	1300 kg

\*Refer to the Vehicle Identification Plate for the exact figures for your vehicle – see 'Vehicle identification numbers'

\*\*Ensure the combined weight of the trailer and vehicle never exceeds the gross train weight when towing.

# REF•2 Conversion factors

## Length (distance)

Inches (in)	x 25.4 = Millimetres (mm)	x 0.0394 = Inches (in)
Feet (ft)	x 0.305 = Metres (m)	x 3.281 = Feet (ft)
Miles	x 1.609 = Kilometres (km)	x 0.621 = Miles

## Volume (capacity)

Cubic inches (cu in; in <sup>3</sup> )	x 16.387 = Cubic centimetres (cc; cm <sup>3</sup> )	x 0.061 = Cubic inches (cu in; in <sup>3</sup> )
Imperial pints (Imp pt)	x 0.568 = Litres (l)	x 1.76 = Imperial pints (Imp pt)
Imperial quarts (Imp qt)	x 1.137 = Litres (l)	x 0.88 = Imperial quarts (Imp qt)
Imperial quarts (Imp qt)	x 1.201 = US quarts (US qt)	x 0.833 = Imperial quarts (Imp qt)
US quarts (US qt)	x 0.946 = Litres (l)	x 1.057 = US quarts (US qt)
Imperial gallons (Imp gal)	x 4.546 = Litres (l)	x 0.22 = Imperial gallons (Imp gal)
Imperial gallons (Imp gal)	x 1.201 = US gallons (US gal)	x 0.833 = Imperial gallons (Imp gal)
US gallons (US gal)	x 3.785 = Litres (l)	x 0.264 = US gallons (US gal)

## Mass (weight)

Ounces (oz)	x 28.35 = Grams (g)	x 0.035 = Ounces (oz)
Pounds (lb)	x 0.454 = Kilograms (kg)	x 2.205 = Pounds (lb)

## Force

Ounces-force (ozf; oz)	x 0.278 = Newtons (N)	x 3.6 = Ounces-force (ozf; oz)
Pounds-force (lbf; lb)	x 4.448 = Newtons (N)	x 0.225 = Pounds-force (lbf; lb)
Newtons (N)	x 0.1 = Kilograms-force (kgf; kg)	x 9.81 = Newtons (N)

## Pressure

Pounds-force per square inch (psi; lbf/in <sup>2</sup> ; lb/in <sup>2</sup> )	x 0.070 = Kilograms-force per square centimetre (kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> ; kg/cm <sup>2</sup> )	x 14.223 = Pounds-force per square inch (psi; lbf/in <sup>2</sup> ; lb/in <sup>2</sup> )
Pounds-force per square inch (psi; lbf/in <sup>2</sup> ; lb/in <sup>2</sup> )	x 0.068 = Atmospheres (atm)	x 14.696 = Pounds-force per square inch (psi; lbf/in <sup>2</sup> ; lb/in <sup>2</sup> )
Pounds-force per square inch (psi; lbf/in <sup>2</sup> ; lb/in <sup>2</sup> )	x 0.069 = Bars	x 14.5 = Pounds-force per square inch (psi; lbf/in <sup>2</sup> ; lb/in <sup>2</sup> )
Pounds-force per square inch (psi; lbf/in <sup>2</sup> ; lb/in <sup>2</sup> )	x 6.895 = Kilopascals (kPa)	x 0.145 = Pounds-force per square inch (psi; lbf/in <sup>2</sup> ; lb/in <sup>2</sup> )
Kilopascals (kPa)	x 0.01 = Kilograms-force per square centimetre (kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> ; kg/cm <sup>2</sup> )	x 98.1 = Kilopascals (kPa)
Millibar (mbar)	x 100 = Pascals (Pa)	x 0.01 = Millibar (mbar)
Millibar (mbar)	x 0.0145 = Pounds-force per square inch (psi; lbf/in <sup>2</sup> ; lb/in <sup>2</sup> )	x 68.947 = Millibar (mbar)
Millibar (mbar)	x 0.75 = Millimetres of mercury (mmHg)	x 1.333 = Millibar (mbar)
Millibar (mbar)	x 0.401 = Inches of water (inH <sub>2</sub> O)	x 2.491 = Millibar (mbar)
Millimetres of mercury (mmHg)	x 0.535 = Inches of water (inH <sub>2</sub> O)	x 1.868 = Millimetres of mercury (mmHg)
Inches of water (inH <sub>2</sub> O)	x 0.036 = Pounds-force per square inch (psi; lbf/in <sup>2</sup> ; lb/in <sup>2</sup> )	x 27.68 = Inches of water (inH <sub>2</sub> O)

## Torque (moment of force)

Pounds-force inches (lbf in; lb in)	x 1.152 = Kilograms-force centimetre (kgf cm; kg cm)	x 0.868 = Pounds-force inches (lbf in; lb in)
Pounds-force inches (lbf in; lb in)	x 0.113 = Newton metres (Nm)	x 8.85 = Pounds-force inches (lbf in; lb in)
Pounds-force inches (lbf in; lb in)	x 0.083 = Pounds-force feet (lbf ft; lb ft)	x 12 = Pounds-force inches (lbf in; lb in)
Pounds-force feet (lbf ft; lb ft)	x 0.138 = Kilograms-force metres (kgf m; kg m)	x 7.233 = Pounds-force feet (lbf ft; lb ft)
Pounds-force feet (lbf ft; lb ft)	x 1.356 = Newton metres (Nm)	x 0.738 = Pounds-force feet (lbf ft; lb ft)
Newton metres (Nm)	x 0.102 = Kilograms-force metres (kgf m; kg m)	x 9.804 = Newton metres (Nm)

## Power

Horsepower (hp)	x 745.7 = Watts (W)	x 0.0013 = Horsepower (hp)
-----------------	---------------------	----------------------------

## Velocity (speed)

Miles per hour (miles/hr; mph)	x 1.609 = Kilometres per hour (km/hr; kph)	x 0.621 = Miles per hour (miles/hr; mph)
--------------------------------	--	--

## Fuel consumption\*

Miles per gallon, Imperial (mpg)	x 0.354 = Kilometres per litre (km/l)	x 2.825 = Miles per gallon, Imperial (mpg)
Miles per gallon, US (mpg)	x 0.425 = Kilometres per litre (km/l)	x 2.352 = Miles per gallon, US (mpg)

## Temperature

Degrees Fahrenheit = (°C x 1.8) + 32	Degrees Celsius (Degrees Centigrade; °C) = (°F - 32) x 0.56
--------------------------------------	---

\* It is common practice to convert from miles per gallon (mpg) to litres/100 kilometres (l/100km), where mpg x l/100 km = 282

Spare parts are available from many sources, including maker's appointed garages, accessory shops, and motor factors. To be sure of obtaining the correct parts, it may sometimes be necessary to quote the vehicle identification number. If possible, it can also be useful to take the old parts along for positive identification. Items such as starter motors and alternators may be available under a service exchange scheme – any parts returned should be clean.

Our advice regarding spare part sources is:

## Officially-appointed garages

This is the best source of parts which are peculiar to your car, and are not otherwise generally available (eg, badges, interior trim, certain body panels, etc). It is also the only place at which you should buy parts if the vehicle is still under warranty.

## Accessory shops

These are very good places to buy

materials and components needed for the maintenance of your car (oil, air and fuel filters, spark plugs, light bulbs, drivebelts, oils and greases, brake pads, touch-up paint, etc). Components of this nature sold by a reputable shop are of the same standard as those used by the car manufacturer.

Besides components, these shops will also sell tools and general accessories, usually have convenient opening hours, charge lower prices, and can often be found close to home. Some accessory shops also have parts counters where components needed for almost any repair job can be purchased or ordered.

## Motor factors

Good factors will stock all the more important components which wear out comparatively quickly and can sometimes supply individual components needed for the overhaul of a larger assembly. They may also handle work such as cylinder block reboring, crankshaft regrinding and balancing, etc.

## Tyre and exhaust specialists

These outlets may be independent or members of a local or national chain. They frequently offer competitive prices when compared with a main dealer or local garage, but it will pay to obtain several quotes before making a decision. Also ask what 'extras' may be added to the quote – for instance, fitting a new valve and balancing the wheel are both often charged on top of the price of a new tyre.

## Other sources

Beware of parts or materials obtained from market stalls, car boot sales or similar outlets. Such items are not invariably sub-standard, but there is little chance of compensation if they do prove unsatisfactory. In the case of safety-critical components such as brake pads there is the risk not only of financial loss but also of an accident causing injury or death.

# Vehicle identification numbers

Modifications are a continuing and unpublicised process in vehicle manufacture, quite apart from major model changes. Spare parts manuals and lists are compiled upon a numerical basis, the individual vehicle identification numbers being essential for correct identification of the part concerned.

When ordering spare parts, always give as much information as possible. Quote the car model, year of manufacture, body and engine numbers, but most importantly, the 4-digit production code (sometimes referred to as the 'spares number').

The *vehicle production code* is stamped or painted onto the driver's door pillar, adjacent

to the door hinges (**see illustration**). The code provides Peugeot dealers with details of the exact build date and model. The vehicle paint code is also given here.

The *vehicle identification number (VIN) plate* is riveted onto right-hand chassis rail, in the engine compartment. The plate carries the vehicle identification number (VIN) and vehicle weight information (**see illustration**).

The *vehicle identification number (VIN)* is stamped onto a plate visible through the base of the windscreen (**see illustration**).

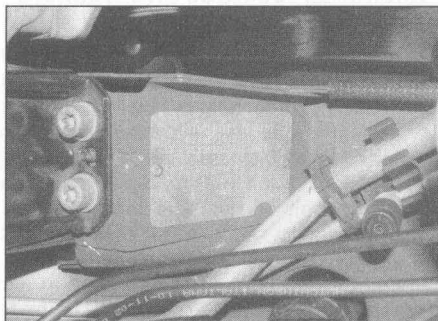
The engine number is situated on the front face of the cylinder block, and can be found in the following locations:

- a) On petrol engines the engine number is located on the left-hand side of the cylinder block. The number is either stamped directly onto the block or is stamped onto a plate which is riveted to the block.
- b) On diesel engines the engine number is stamped on the base of the cylinder block on the flat surface located on the left- (2.0 litre engines) or right- (1.4 litre engines) hand side of the oil filter/cooler.

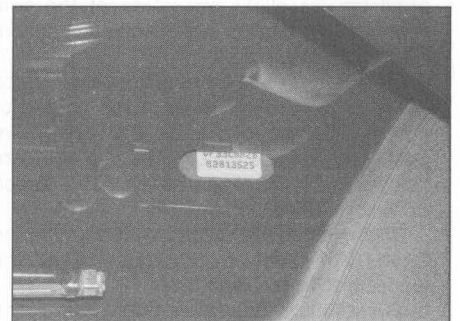
**Note:** The first part of the engine number gives the engine code, eg KFW.



The vehicle production and paint codes are located on the driver's door pillar



The vehicle identification plate is fixed to the right-hand chassis in the engine compartment



The VIN is also visible through the windscreen



Whenever servicing, repair or overhaul work is carried out on the car or its components, observe the following procedures and instructions. This will assist in carrying out the operation efficiently and to a professional standard of workmanship.

### Joint mating faces and gaskets

When separating components at their mating faces, never insert screwdrivers or similar implements into the joint between the faces in order to prise them apart. This can cause severe damage which results in oil leaks, coolant leaks, etc upon reassembly. Separation is usually achieved by tapping along the joint with a soft-faced hammer in order to break the seal. However, note that this method may not be suitable where dowels are used for component location.

Where a gasket is used between the mating faces of two components, a new one must be fitted on reassembly; fit it dry unless otherwise stated in the repair procedure. Make sure that the mating faces are clean and dry, with all traces of old gasket removed. When cleaning a joint face, use a tool which is unlikely to score or damage the face, and remove any burrs or nicks with an oilstone or fine file.

Make sure that tapped holes are cleaned with a pipe cleaner, and keep them free of josting compound, if this is being used, unless specifically instructed otherwise.

Ensure that all orifices, channels or pipes are clear, and blow through them, preferably using compressed air.

### Oil seals

Oil seals can be removed by levering them out with a wide flat-bladed screwdriver or similar implement. Alternatively, a number of self-tapping screws may be screwed into the seal, and these used as a purchase for pliers or some similar device in order to pull the seal free.

Whenever an oil seal is removed from its working location, either individually or as part of an assembly, it should be renewed.

The very fine sealing lip of the seal is easily damaged, and will not seal if the surface it contacts is not completely clean and free from scratches, nicks or grooves. If the original sealing surface of the component cannot be restored, and the manufacturer has not made provision for slight relocation of the seal relative to the sealing surface, the component should be renewed.

Protect the lips of the seal from any surface which may damage them in the course of fitting. Use tape or a conical sleeve where possible. Lubricate the seal lips with oil before fitting and, on dual-lipped seals, fill the space between the lips with grease.

Unless otherwise stated, oil seals must be fitted with their sealing lips toward the lubricant to be sealed.

Use a tubular drift or block of wood of the appropriate size to install the seal and, if the seal housing is shouldered, drive the seal down to the shoulder. If the seal housing is

unshouldered, the seal should be fitted with its face flush with the housing top face (unless otherwise instructed).

### Screw threads and fastenings

Seized nuts, bolts and screws are quite a common occurrence where corrosion has set in, and the use of penetrating oil or releasing fluid will often overcome this problem if the offending item is soaked for a while before attempting to release it. The use of an impact driver may also provide a means of releasing such stubborn fastening devices, when used in conjunction with the appropriate screwdriver bit or socket. If none of these methods works, it may be necessary to resort to the careful application of heat, or the use of a hacksaw or nut splitter device.

Studs are usually removed by locking two nuts together on the threaded part, and then using a spanner on the lower nut to unscrew the stud. Studs or bolts which have broken off below the surface of the component in which they are mounted can sometimes be removed using a stud extractor. Always ensure that a blind tapped hole is completely free from oil, grease, water or other fluid before installing the bolt or stud. Failure to do this could cause the housing to crack due to the hydraulic action of the bolt or stud as it is screwed in.

When tightening a castellated nut to accept a split pin, tighten the nut to the specified torque, where applicable, and then tighten further to the next split pin hole. Never slacken the nut to align the split pin hole, unless stated in the repair procedure.

When checking or retightening a nut or bolt to a specified torque setting, slacken the nut or bolt by a quarter of a turn, and then retighten to the specified setting. However, this should not be attempted where angular tightening has been used.

For some screw fastenings, notably cylinder head bolts or nuts, torque wrench settings are no longer specified for the latter stages of tightening, "angle-tightening" being called up instead. Typically, a fairly low torque wrench setting will be applied to the bolts/nuts in the correct sequence, followed by one or more stages of tightening through specified angles.

### Locknuts, locktabs and washers

Any fastening which will rotate against a component or housing during tightening should always have a washer between it and the relevant component or housing.

Spring or split washers should always be renewed when they are used to lock a critical component such as a big-end bearing retaining bolt or nut. Locktabs which are folded over to retain a nut or bolt should always be renewed.

Self-locking nuts can be re-used in non-critical areas, providing resistance can be felt when the locking portion passes over the bolt or stud thread. However, it should be noted that self-locking stiffnuts tend to lose their

effectiveness after long periods of use, and should then be renewed as a matter of course.

Split pins must always be replaced with new ones of the correct size for the hole.

When thread-locking compound is found on the threads of a fastener which is to be re-used, it should be cleaned off with a wire brush and solvent, and fresh compound applied on reassembly.

### Special tools

Some repair procedures in this manual entail the use of special tools such as a press, two or three-legged pullers, spring compressors, etc. Wherever possible, suitable readily-available alternatives to the manufacturer's special tools are described, and are shown in use. In some instances, where no alternative is possible, it has been necessary to resort to the use of a manufacturer's tool, and this has been done for reasons of safety as well as the efficient completion of the repair operation. Unless you are highly-skilled and have a thorough understanding of the procedures described, never attempt to bypass the use of any special tool when the procedure described specifies its use. Not only is there a very great risk of personal injury, but expensive damage could be caused to the components involved.

### Environmental considerations

When disposing of used engine oil, brake fluid, antifreeze, etc, give due consideration to any detrimental environmental effects. Do not, for instance, pour any of the above liquids down drains into the general sewage system, or onto the ground to soak away. Many local council refuse tips provide a facility for waste oil disposal, as do some garages. If none of these facilities are available, consult your local Environmental Health Department, or the National Rivers Authority, for further advice.

With the universal tightening-up of legislation regarding the emission of environmentally-harmful substances from motor vehicles, most vehicles have tamperproof devices fitted to the main adjustment points of the fuel system. These devices are primarily designed to prevent unqualified persons from adjusting the fuel/air mixture, with the chance of a consequent increase in toxic emissions. If such devices are found during servicing or overhaul, they should, wherever possible, be renewed or refitted in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements or current legislation.



OIL BANK LINE  
0800 66 33 66  
www.oilbankline.org.uk

**Note: It is antisocial and illegal to dump oil down the drain. To find the location of your local oil recycling bank, call this number free.**

## Jacking and vehicle support REF•5

The jack supplied with the vehicle should only be used for changing the roadwheels – see *Wheel changing* at the front of this manual. When carrying out any other kind of work, raise the vehicle using a hydraulic (or 'trolley') jack, and always supplement the jack with axle stands at the vehicle jacking points.

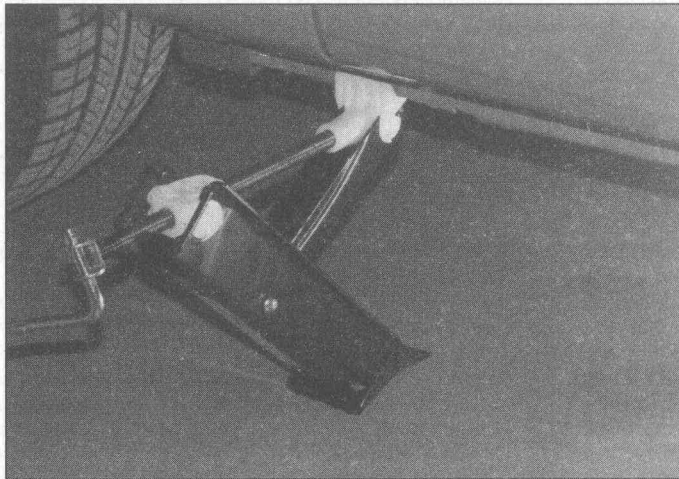
When using a hydraulic jack or axle stands, always position the jack head or axle stand

head under one of the relevant jacking points; the jacking point is the area in below the cut-out on the sill (**see illustration**). Use a block of wood between the jack or axle stand and the sill – the block of wood should have a groove cut into it, into which the welded flange of the sill will locate.

Do not attempt to jack the vehicle under the front crossmember, the sump, or any of the suspension components.

The jack supplied with the vehicle locates in the jacking points on the underside of the sills – see *Wheel changing*. Ensure that the jack head is correctly engaged before attempting to raise the vehicle.

**Never** work under, around, or near a raised vehicle, unless it is adequately supported in at least two places.



The jacking point is below the cut-out in the sill

## Introduction

A selection of good tools is a fundamental requirement for anyone contemplating the maintenance and repair of a motor vehicle. For the owner who does not possess any, their purchase will prove a considerable expense, offsetting some of the savings made by doing-it-yourself. However, provided that the tools purchased meet the relevant national safety standards and are of good quality, they will last for many years and prove an extremely worthwhile investment.

To help the average owner to decide which tools are needed to carry out the various tasks detailed in this manual, we have compiled three lists of tools under the following headings: *Maintenance and minor repair*, *Repair and overhaul*, and *Special*. Newcomers to practical mechanics should start off with the *Maintenance and minor repair* tool kit, and confine themselves to the simpler jobs around the vehicle. Then, as confidence and experience grow, more difficult tasks can be undertaken, with extra tools being purchased as, and when, they are needed. In this way, a *Maintenance and minor repair* tool kit can be built up into a *Repair and overhaul* tool kit over a considerable period of time, without any major cash outlays. The experienced do-it-yourselfer will have a tool kit good enough for most repair and overhaul procedures, and will add tools from the *Special* category when it is felt that the expense is justified by the amount of use to which these tools will be put.

## Maintenance and minor repair tool kit

The tools given in this list should be considered as a minimum requirement if routine maintenance, servicing and minor repair operations are to be undertaken. We recommend the purchase of combination spanners (ring one end, open-ended the other); although more expensive than open-ended ones, they do give the advantages of both types of spanner.

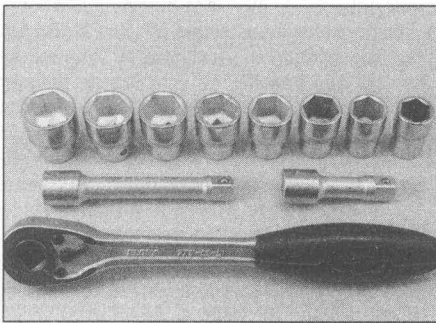
- Combination spanners:*
  - Metric - 8 to 19 mm inclusive*
  - Adjustable spanner - 35 mm jaw (approx.)*
- Spark plug spanner (with rubber insert) - petrol models*
- Spark plug gap adjustment tool - petrol models*
- Set of feeler gauges*
- Brake bleed nipple spanner*
- Screwdrivers:*
  - Flat blade - 100 mm long x 6 mm dia*
  - Cross blade - 100 mm long x 6 mm dia*
  - Torx - various sizes (not all vehicles)*
- Combination pliers*
- Hacksaw (junior)*
- Tyre pump*
- Tyre pressure gauge*
- Oil can*
- Oil filter removal tool*
- Fine emery cloth*
- Wire brush (small)*
- Funnel (medium size)*
- Sump drain plug key (not all vehicles)*

## Repair and overhaul tool kit

These tools are virtually essential for anyone undertaking any major repairs to a motor vehicle, and are additional to those given in the *Maintenance and minor repair* list. Included in this list is a comprehensive set of sockets. Although these are expensive, they will be found invaluable as they are so versatile - particularly if various drives are included in the set. We recommend the half-inch square-drive type, as this can be used with most proprietary torque wrenches.

The tools in this list will sometimes need to be supplemented by tools from the *Special* list:

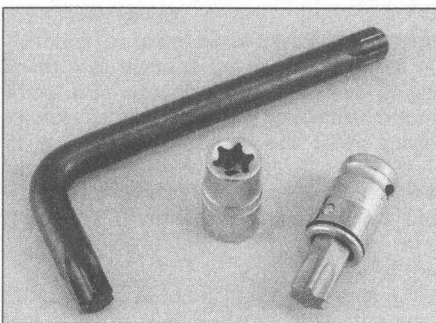
- Sockets (or box spanners) to cover range in previous list (including Torx sockets)*
- Reversible ratchet drive (for use with sockets)*
- Extension piece, 250 mm (for use with sockets)*
- Universal joint (for use with sockets)*
- Flexible handle or sliding T "breaker bar" (for use with sockets)*
- Torque wrench (for use with sockets)*
- Self-locking grips*
- Ball pein hammer*
- Soft-faced mallet (plastic or rubber)*
- Screwdrivers:*
  - Flat blade - long & sturdy, short (chubby), and narrow (electrician's) types*
  - Cross blade - long & sturdy, and short (chubby) types*
- Pliers:*
  - Long-nosed*
  - Side cutters (electrician's)*
  - Circlip (internal and external)*
- Cold chisel - 25 mm*
- Scriber*
- Scraper*
- Centre-punch*
- Pin punch*
- Hacksaw*
- Brake hose clamp*
- Brake/clutch bleeding kit*
- Selection of twist drills*
- Steel rule/straight-edge*
- Allen keys (inc. splined/Torx type)*
- Selection of files*
- Wire brush*
- Axle stands*
- Jack (strong trolley or hydraulic type)*
- Light with extension lead*
- Universal electrical multi-meter*



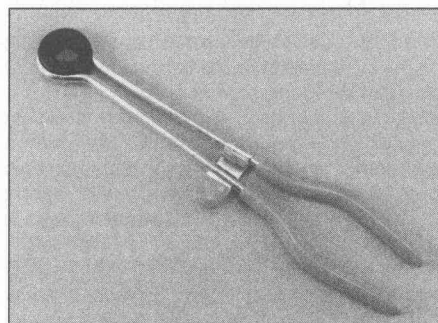
Sockets and reversible ratchet drive



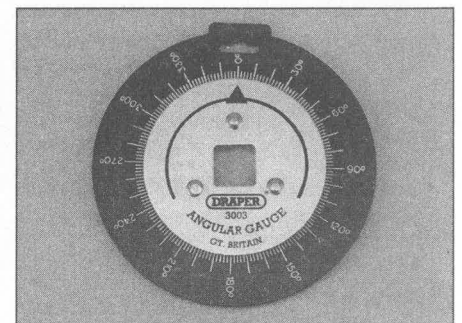
Brake bleeding kit



Torx key, socket and bit



Hose clamp



Angular-tightening gauge

## Special tools

The tools in this list are those which are not used regularly, are expensive to buy, or which need to be used in accordance with their manufacturers' instructions. Unless relatively difficult mechanical jobs are undertaken frequently, it will not be economic to buy many of these tools. Where this is the case, you could consider clubbing together with friends (or joining a motorists' club) to make a joint purchase, or borrowing the tools against a deposit from a local garage or tool hire specialist. It is worth noting that many of the larger DIY superstores now carry a large range of special tools for hire at modest rates.

The following list contains only those tools and instruments freely available to the public, and not those special tools produced by the vehicle manufacturer specifically for its dealer network. You will find occasional references to these manufacturers' special tools in the text of this manual. Generally, an alternative method of doing the job without the vehicle manufacturers' special tool is given. However, sometimes there is no alternative to using them. Where this is the case and the relevant tool cannot be bought or borrowed, you will have to entrust the work to a dealer.

- Angular-tightening gauge
- Valve spring compressor
- Valve grinding tool
- Piston ring compressor
- Piston ring removal/installation tool
- Cylinder bore hone
- Balljoint separator
- Coil spring compressors (where applicable)
- Two/three-legged hub and bearing puller
- Impact screwdriver
- Micrometer and/or vernier calipers
- Dial gauge
- Stroboscopic timing light
- Dwell angle meter/tachometer
- Fault code reader
- Cylinder compression gauge
- Hand-operated vacuum pump and gauge
- Clutch plate alignment set
- Brake shoe steady spring cup removal tool
- Bush and bearing removal/installation set
- Stud extractors
- Tap and die set
- Lifting tackle
- Trolley jack

## Buying tools

Reputable motor accessory shops and superstores often offer excellent quality tools at discount prices, so it pays to shop around.

Remember, you don't have to buy the most expensive items on the shelf, but it is always advisable to steer clear of the very cheap tools. Beware of 'bargains' offered on market stalls or at car boot sales. There are plenty of good tools around at reasonable prices, but always aim to purchase items which meet the relevant national safety standards. If in doubt, ask the proprietor or manager of the shop for advice before making a purchase.

## Care and maintenance of tools

Having purchased a reasonable tool kit, it is necessary to keep the tools in a clean and serviceable condition. After use, always wipe off any dirt, grease and metal particles using a clean, dry cloth, before putting the tools away. Never leave them lying around after they have been used. A simple tool rack on the garage or workshop wall for items such as screwdrivers and pliers is a good idea. Store all normal spanners and sockets in a metal box. Any measuring instruments, gauges, meters, etc, must be carefully stored where they cannot be damaged or become rusty.

Take a little care when tools are used. Hammer heads inevitably become marked, and screwdrivers lose the keen edge on their blades from time to time. A little timely attention with emery cloth or a file will soon restore items like this to a good finish.

## Working facilities

Not to be forgotten when discussing tools is the workshop itself. If anything more than routine maintenance is to be carried out, a suitable working area becomes essential.

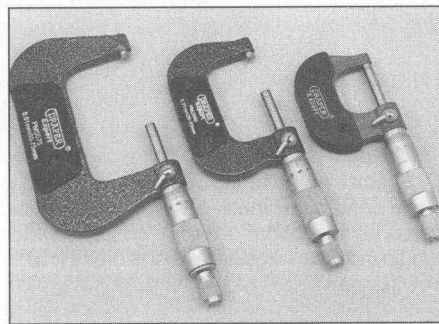
It is appreciated that many an owner-mechanic is forced by circumstances to remove an engine or similar item without the benefit of a garage or workshop. Having done this, any repairs should always be done under the cover of a roof.

Wherever possible, any dismantling should be done on a clean, flat workbench or table at a suitable working height.

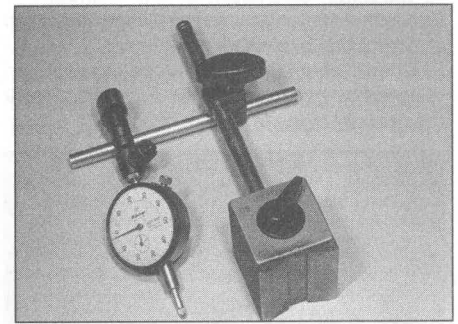
Any workbench needs a vice; one with a jaw opening of 100 mm is suitable for most jobs. As mentioned previously, some clean dry storage space is also required for tools, as well as for any lubricants, cleaning fluids, touch-up paints etc, which become necessary.

Another item which may be required, and which has a much more general usage, is an electric drill with a chuck capacity of at least 8 mm. This, together with a good range of twist drills, is virtually essential for fitting accessories.

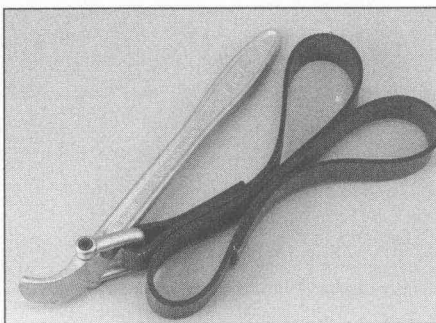
Last, but not least, always keep a supply of old newspapers and clean, lint-free rags available, and try to keep any working area as clean as possible.



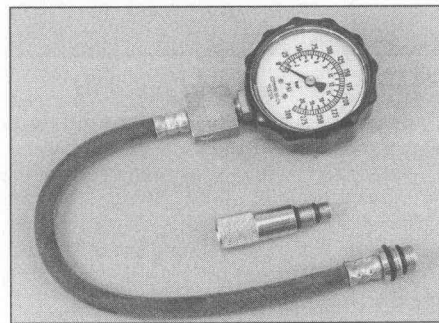
Micrometers



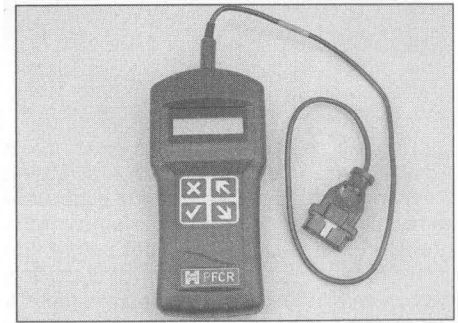
Dial test indicator ("dial gauge")



Strap wrench



Compression tester



Fault code reader

# REF•8 MOT test checks

This is a guide to getting your vehicle through the MOT test. Obviously it will not be possible to examine the vehicle to the same standard as the professional MOT tester. However, working through the following checks will enable you to identify any problem areas before submitting the vehicle for the test.

Where a testable component is in borderline condition, the tester has discretion in deciding whether to pass or fail it. The basis of such discretion is whether the tester would be happy for a close relative or friend to use the vehicle with the component in that condition. If the vehicle presented is clean and evidently well cared for, the tester may be more inclined to pass a borderline component than if the vehicle is scruffy and apparently neglected.

It has only been possible to summarise the test requirements here, based on the regulations in force at the time of printing. Test standards are becoming increasingly stringent, although there are some exemptions for older vehicles.

An assistant will be needed to help carry out some of these checks.



The checks have been sub-divided into four categories, as follows:

**1** Checks carried out **FROM THE DRIVER'S SEAT**

**2** Checks carried out **WITH THE VEHICLE ON THE GROUND**

**3** Checks carried out **WITH THE VEHICLE RAISED AND THE WHEELS FREE TO TURN**

**4** Checks carried out on **YOUR VEHICLE'S EXHAUST EMISSION SYSTEM**

**1** Checks carried out **FROM THE DRIVER'S SEAT**

## Handbrake

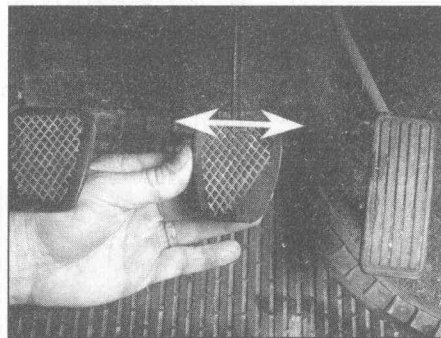
Test the operation of the handbrake. Excessive travel (too many clicks) indicates incorrect brake or cable adjustment.

Check that the handbrake cannot be released by tapping the lever sideways. Check the security of the lever mountings.



## Footbrake

Depress the brake pedal and check that it does not creep down to the floor, indicating a master cylinder fault. Release the pedal, wait a few seconds, then depress it again. If the pedal travels nearly to the floor before firm resistance is felt, brake adjustment or repair is necessary. If the pedal feels spongy, there is air in the hydraulic system which must be removed by bleeding.



Check that the brake pedal is secure and in good condition. Check also for signs of fluid leaks on the pedal, floor or carpets, which would indicate failed seals in the brake master cylinder.

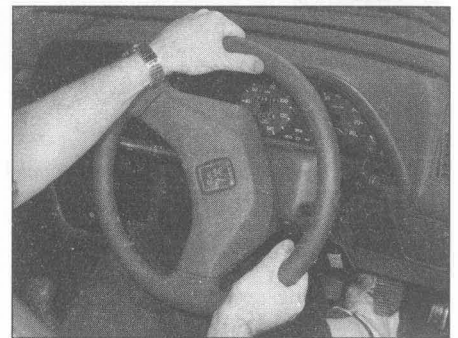
Check the servo unit (when applicable) by operating the brake pedal several times, then keeping the pedal depressed and starting the engine. As the engine starts, the pedal will move down slightly. If not, the vacuum hose or the servo itself may be faulty.

## Steering wheel and column

Examine the steering wheel for fractures or looseness of the hub, spokes or rim.

Move the steering wheel from side to side and then up and down. Check that the steering wheel is not loose on the column, indicating wear or a loose retaining nut. Continue moving the steering wheel as before, but also turn it slightly from left to right.

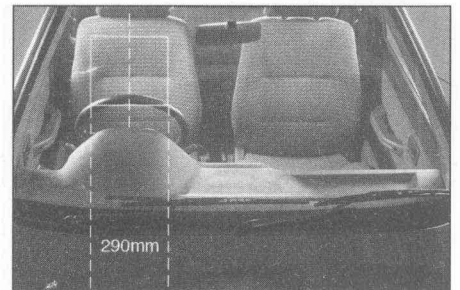
Check that the steering wheel is not loose on the column, and that there is no abnormal



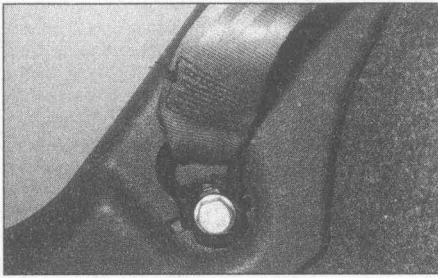
movement of the steering wheel, indicating wear in the column support bearings or couplings.

## Windscreen, mirrors and sunvisor

The windscreen must be free of cracks or other significant damage within the driver's field of view. (Small stone chips are acceptable.) Rear view mirrors must be secure, intact, and capable of being adjusted.



The driver's sunvisor must be capable of being stored in the "up" position.



## Seat belts and seats

**Note:** The following checks are applicable to all seat belts, front and rear.

- Examine the webbing of all the belts (including rear belts if fitted) for cuts, serious fraying or deterioration. Fasten and unfasten each belt to check the buckles. If applicable, check the retracting mechanism. Check the security of all seat belt mountings accessible from inside the vehicle.
- Seat belts with pre-tensioners, once activated, have a "flag" or similar showing on the seat belt stalk. This, in itself, is not a reason for test failure.
- The front seats themselves must be securely attached and the backrests must lock in the upright position.

## Doors

- Both front doors must be able to be opened and closed from outside and inside, and must latch securely when closed.

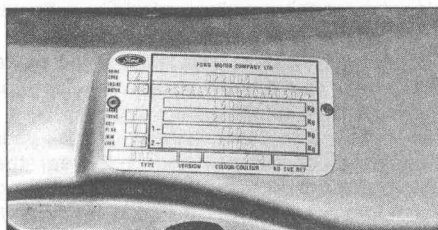
**2** Checks carried out WITH THE VEHICLE ON THE GROUND

## Vehicle identification

- Number plates must be in good condition, secure and legible, with letters and numbers correctly spaced – spacing at (A) should be at least twice that at (B).

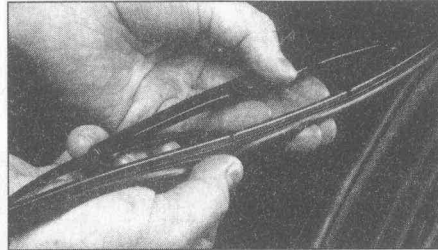


- The VIN plate and/or homologation plate must be legible.



## Electrical equipment

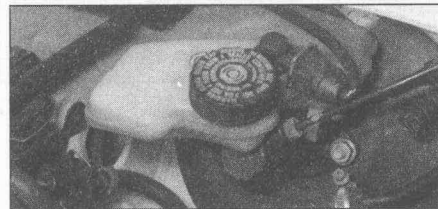
- Switch on the ignition and check the operation of the horn.
- Check the windscreen washers and wipers, examining the wiper blades; renew damaged or perished blades. Also check the operation of the stop-lights.



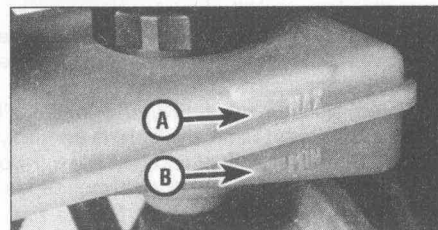
- Check the operation of the sidelights and number plate lights. The lenses and reflectors must be secure, clean and undamaged.
- Check the operation and alignment of the headlights. The headlight reflectors must not be tarnished and the lenses must be undamaged.
- Switch on the ignition and check the operation of the direction indicators (including the instrument panel tell-tale) and the hazard warning lights. Operation of the sidelights and stop-lights must not affect the indicators - if it does, the cause is usually a bad earth at the rear light cluster.
- Check the operation of the rear foglight(s), including the warning light on the instrument panel or in the switch.
- The ABS warning light must illuminate in accordance with the manufacturers' design. For most vehicles, the ABS warning light should illuminate when the ignition is switched on, and (if the system is operating properly) extinguish after a few seconds. Refer to the owner's handbook.

## Footbrake

- Examine the master cylinder, brake pipes and servo unit for leaks, loose mountings, corrosion or other damage.



- The fluid reservoir must be secure and the fluid level must be between the upper (A) and lower (B) markings.



- Inspect both front brake flexible hoses for cracks or deterioration of the rubber. Turn the steering from lock to lock, and ensure that the hoses do not contact the wheel, tyre, or any part of the steering or suspension mechanism. With the brake pedal firmly depressed, check the hoses for bulges or leaks under pressure.



## Steering and suspension

- Have your assistant turn the steering wheel from side to side slightly, up to the point where the steering gear just begins to transmit this movement to the roadwheels. Check for excessive free play between the steering wheel and the steering gear, indicating wear or insecurity of the steering column joints, the column-to-steering gear coupling, or the steering gear itself.
- Have your assistant turn the steering wheel more vigorously in each direction, so that the roadwheels just begin to turn. As this is done, examine all the steering joints, linkages, fittings and attachments. Renew any component that shows signs of wear or damage. On vehicles with power steering, check the security and condition of the steering pump, drivebelt and hoses.
- Check that the vehicle is standing level, and at approximately the correct ride height.

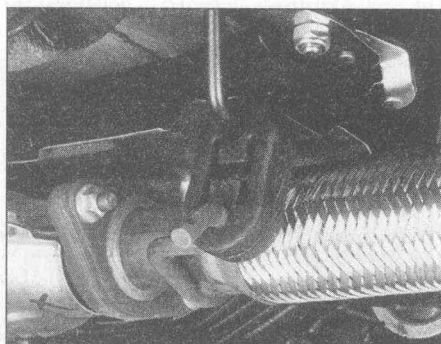
## Shock absorbers

- Depress each corner of the vehicle in turn, then release it. The vehicle should rise and then settle in its normal position. If the vehicle continues to rise and fall, the shock absorber is defective. A shock absorber which has seized will also cause the vehicle to fail.



**Exhaust system**

□ Start the engine. With your assistant holding a rag over the tailpipe, check the entire system for leaks. Repair or renew leaking sections.



**3** Checks carried out **WITH THE VEHICLE RAISED AND THE WHEELS FREE TO TURN**

*Jack up the front and rear of the vehicle, and securely support it on axle stands. Position the stands clear of the suspension assemblies. Ensure that the wheels are clear of the ground and that the steering can be turned from lock to lock.*

**Steering mechanism**

□ Have your assistant turn the steering from lock to lock. Check that the steering turns smoothly, and that no part of the steering mechanism, including a wheel or tyre, fouls any brake hose or pipe or any part of the body structure.

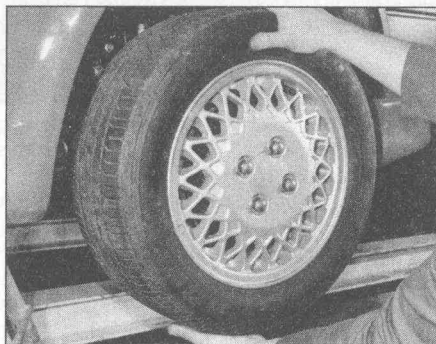
□ Examine the steering rack rubber gaiters for damage or insecurity of the retaining clips. If power steering is fitted, check for signs of damage or leakage of the fluid hoses, pipes or connections. Also check for excessive stiffness or binding of the steering, a missing split pin or locking device, or severe corrosion of the body structure within 30 cm of any steering component attachment point.



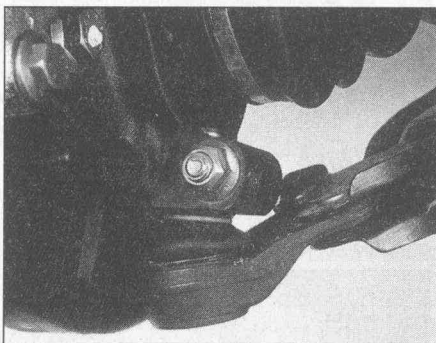
**Front and rear suspension and wheel bearings**

□ Starting at the front right-hand side, grasp the roadwheel at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions and rock gently but firmly. Check for free play or insecurity at the wheel bearings, suspension balljoints, or suspension mountings, pivots and attachments.

□ Now grasp the wheel at the 12 o'clock and 6 o'clock positions and repeat the previous inspection. Spin the wheel, and check for roughness or tightness of the front wheel bearing.



□ If excess free play is suspected at a component pivot point, this can be confirmed by using a large screwdriver or similar tool and levering between the mounting and the component attachment. This will confirm whether the wear is in the pivot bush, its retaining bolt, or in the mounting itself (the bolt holes can often become elongated).



□ Carry out all the above checks at the other front wheel, and then at both rear wheels.

**Springs and shock absorbers**

□ Examine the suspension struts (when applicable) for serious fluid leakage, corrosion, or damage to the casing. Also check the security of the mounting points.

□ If coil springs are fitted, check that the spring ends locate in their seats, and that the spring is not corroded, cracked or broken.

□ If leaf springs are fitted, check that all leaves are intact, that the axle is securely attached to each spring, and that there is no deterioration of the spring eye mountings, bushes, and shackles.

□ The same general checks apply to vehicles fitted with other suspension types, such as torsion bars, hydraulic displacer units, etc. Ensure that all mountings and attachments are secure, that there are no signs of excessive wear, corrosion or damage, and (on hydraulic types) that there are no fluid leaks or damaged pipes.

□ Inspect the shock absorbers for signs of serious fluid leakage. Check for wear of the mounting bushes or attachments, or damage to the body of the unit.

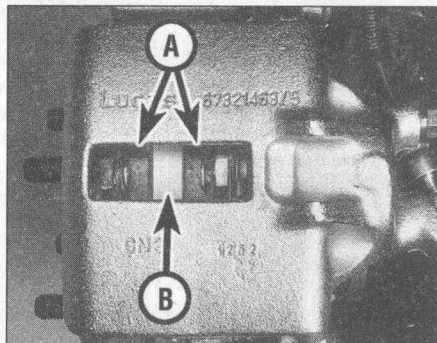
**Driveshafts (fwd vehicles only)**

□ Rotate each front wheel in turn and inspect the constant velocity joint gaiters for splits or damage. Also check that each driveshaft is straight and undamaged.



**Braking system**

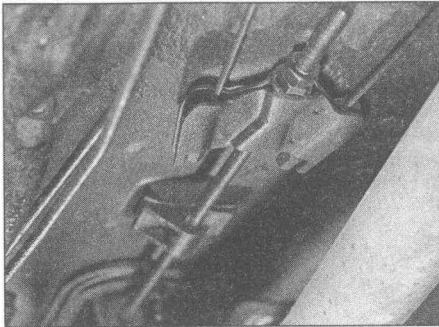
□ If possible without dismantling, check brake pad wear and disc condition. Ensure that the friction lining material has not worn excessively, (A) and that the discs are not fractured, pitted, scored or badly worn (B).



□ Examine all the rigid brake pipes underneath the vehicle, and the flexible hose(s) at the rear. Look for corrosion, chafing or insecurity of the pipes, and for signs of bulging under pressure, chafing, splits or deterioration of the flexible hoses.

□ Look for signs of fluid leaks at the brake calipers or on the brake backplates. Repair or renew leaking components.

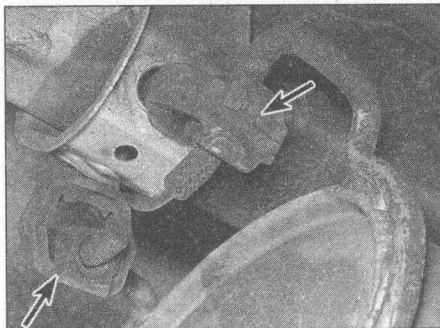
□ Slowly spin each wheel, while your assistant depresses and releases the footbrake. Ensure that each brake is operating and does not bind when the pedal is released.



- Examine the handbrake mechanism, checking for frayed or broken cables, excessive corrosion, or wear or insecurity of the linkage. Check that the mechanism works on each relevant wheel, and releases fully, without binding.
- It is not possible to test brake efficiency without special equipment, but a road test can be carried out later to check that the vehicle pulls up in a straight line.

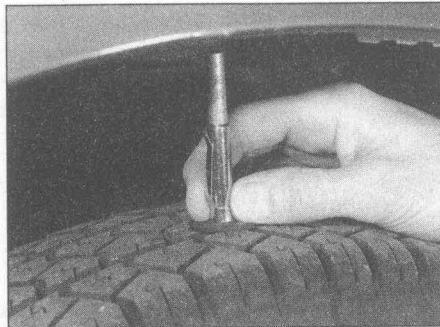
### Fuel and exhaust systems

- Inspect the fuel tank (including the filler cap), fuel pipes, hoses and unions. All components must be secure and free from leaks.
- Examine the exhaust system over its entire length, checking for any damaged, broken or missing mountings, security of the retaining clamps and rust or corrosion.



### Wheels and tyres

- Examine the sidewalls and tread area of each tyre in turn. Check for cuts, tears, lumps, bulges, separation of the tread, and exposure of the ply or cord due to wear or damage. Check that the tyre bead is correctly seated on the wheel rim, that the valve is sound and properly seated, and that the wheel is not distorted or damaged.
- Check that the tyres are of the correct size for the vehicle, that they are of the same size and type on each axle, and that the pressures are correct.
- Check the tyre tread depth. The legal minimum at the time of writing is 1.6 mm over at least three-quarters of the tread width. Abnormal tread wear may indicate incorrect front wheel alignment.



### Body corrosion

- Check the condition of the entire vehicle structure for signs of corrosion in load-bearing areas. (These include chassis box sections, side sills, cross-members, pillars, and all suspension, steering, braking system and seat belt mountings and anchorages.) Any corrosion which has seriously reduced the thickness of a load-bearing area is likely to cause the vehicle to fail. In this case professional repairs are likely to be needed.
- Damage or corrosion which causes sharp or otherwise dangerous edges to be exposed will also cause the vehicle to fail.

## 4 Checks carried out on YOUR VEHICLE'S EXHAUST EMISSION SYSTEM

### Petrol models

- Have the engine at normal operating temperature, and make sure that it is in good tune (ignition system in good order, air filter element clean, etc).
- Before any measurements are carried out, raise the engine speed to around 2500 rpm, and hold it at this speed for 20 seconds. Allow the engine speed to return to idle, and watch for smoke emissions from the exhaust tailpipe. If the idle speed is obviously much too high, or if dense blue or clearly-visible black smoke comes from the tailpipe for more than 5 seconds, the vehicle will fail. As a rule of thumb, blue smoke signifies oil being burnt (engine wear) while black smoke signifies unburnt fuel (dirty air cleaner element, or other carburettor or fuel system fault).
- An exhaust gas analyser capable of measuring carbon monoxide (CO) and hydrocarbons (HC) is now needed. If such an instrument cannot be hired or borrowed, a local garage may agree to perform the check for a small fee.

### CO emissions (mixture)

- At the time of writing, for vehicles first used between 1<sup>st</sup> August 1975 and 31<sup>st</sup> July 1986 (P to C registration), the CO level must not exceed 4.5% by volume. For vehicles first used between 1<sup>st</sup> August 1986 and 31<sup>st</sup> July 1992 (D to J registration), the CO level must not exceed 3.5% by volume. Vehicles first

used after 1<sup>st</sup> August 1992 (K registration) must conform to the manufacturer's specification. The MOT tester has access to a DOT database or emissions handbook, which lists the CO and HC limits for each make and model of vehicle. The CO level is measured with the engine at idle speed, and at "fast idle". The following limits are given as a general guide:

*At idle speed -*

CO level no more than 0.5%

*At "fast idle" (2500 to 3000 rpm) -*

CO level no more than 0.3%

(Minimum oil temperature 60°C)

- If the CO level cannot be reduced far enough to pass the test (and the fuel and ignition systems are otherwise in good condition) then the carburettor is badly worn, or there is some problem in the fuel injection system or catalytic converter (as applicable).

### HC emissions

- With the CO within limits, HC emissions for vehicles first used between 1<sup>st</sup> August 1975 and 31<sup>st</sup> July 1992 (P to J registration) must not exceed 1200 ppm. Vehicles first used after 1<sup>st</sup> August 1992 (K registration) must conform to the manufacturer's specification. The MOT tester has access to a DOT database or emissions handbook, which lists the CO and HC limits for each make and model of vehicle. The HC level is measured with the engine at "fast idle". The following is given as a general guide:

*At "fast idle" (2500 to 3000 rpm) -*

HC level no more than 200 ppm

(Minimum oil temperature 60°C)

- Excessive HC emissions are caused by incomplete combustion, the causes of which can include oil being burnt, mechanical wear and ignition/fuel system malfunction.

### Diesel models

- The only emission test applicable to Diesel engines is the measuring of exhaust smoke density. The test involves accelerating the engine several times to its maximum unloaded speed.

**Note:** It is of the utmost importance that the engine timing belt is in good condition before the test is carried out.

- The limits for Diesel engine exhaust smoke, introduced in September 1995 are:

*Vehicles first used before 1<sup>st</sup> August 1979:*

Exempt from metered smoke testing, but must not emit "dense blue or clearly visible black smoke for a period of more than 5 seconds at idle" or "dense blue or clearly visible black smoke during acceleration which would obscure the view of other road users".

*Non-turbocharged vehicles first used after 1<sup>st</sup> August 1979: 2.5m<sup>-1</sup>*

*Turbocharged vehicles first used after 1<sup>st</sup> August 1979: 3.0m<sup>-1</sup>*

- Excessive smoke can be caused by a dirty air cleaner element. Otherwise, professional advice may be needed to find the cause.



**Engine**

- Engine fails to rotate when attempting to start
- Engine rotates, but will not start
- Engine difficult to start when cold
- Engine difficult to start when hot
- Starter motor noisy or excessively-rough in engagement
- Engine starts, but stops immediately
- Engine idles erratically
- Engine misfires at idle speed
- Engine misfires throughout the driving speed range
- Engine hesitates on acceleration
- Engine stalls
- Engine lacks power
- Engine backfires
- Oil pressure warning light on with engine running
- Engine runs-on after switching off
- Engine noises

**Cooling system**

- Overheating
- Overcooling
- External coolant leakage
- Internal coolant leakage
- Corrosion

**Fuel and exhaust systems**

- Excessive fuel consumption
- Fuel leakage and/or fuel odour
- Excessive noise or fumes from exhaust system

**Clutch**

- Pedal travels to floor – no pressure or very little resistance
- Clutch fails to disengage (unable to select gears)
- Clutch slips (engine speed rises, with no increase in vehicle speed)
- Judder as clutch is engaged
- Noise when depressing or releasing clutch pedal

**Manual transmission**

- Noisy in neutral with engine running
- Noisy in one particular gear
- Difficulty engaging gears
- Jumps out of gear
- Vibration
- Lubricant leaks

**Automatic transmission**

- Fluid leakage
- Transmission fluid brown, or has burned smell
- General gear selection problems
- Transmission will not downshift (kickdown) on full throttle
- Engine won't start in any gear, or starts in gears other than P or N
- Transmission slips, shifts roughly, is noisy, or has no drive in forward or reverse gears

**Driveshafts**

- Clicking or knocking noise on turns (at slow speed on full-lock)
- Vibration when accelerating or decelerating

**Braking system**

- Vehicle pulls to one side under braking
- Noise (grinding or high-pitched squeal) when brakes applied
- Excessive brake pedal travel
- Brake pedal feels spongy when depressed
- Excessive brake pedal effort required to stop vehicle
- Judder felt through brake pedal or steering wheel when braking
- Brakes binding
- Rear wheels locking under normal braking

**Suspension and steering systems**

- Vehicle pulls to one side
- Wheel wobble and vibration
- Excessive pitching and/or rolling around corners, or during braking
- Wandering or general instability
- Excessively-stiff steering
- Excessive play in steering
- Lack of power assistance
- Tyre wear excessive

**Electrical system**

- Battery will not hold a charge for more than a few days
- Ignition/no-charge warning light stays on with engine running
- Ignition/no-charge warning light fails to come on
- Lights inoperative
- Instrument readings inaccurate or erratic
- Horn inoperative, or unsatisfactory in operation
- Windscreen/tailgate wipers failed, or unsatisfactory in operation
- Windscreen/tailgate washers failed, or unsatisfactory in operation
- Electric windows inoperative, or unsatisfactory in operation
- Central locking system inoperative, or unsatisfactory in operation

**Introduction**

The vehicle owner who does his or her own maintenance according to the recommended service schedules should not have to use this section of the manual very often. Modern component reliability is such that, provided those items subject to wear or deterioration are inspected or renewed at the specified intervals, sudden failure is comparatively rare. Faults do not usually just happen as a result of sudden failure, but develop over a period of time. Major mechanical failures in particular are usually preceded by characteristic symptoms over hundreds or even thousands of miles. Those components which do occasionally fail without warning are often small and easily carried in the vehicle.

With any fault-finding, the first step is to decide where to begin investigations.

Sometimes this is obvious, but on other occasions, a little detective work will be necessary. The owner who makes half a dozen haphazard adjustments or replacements may be successful in curing a fault (or its symptoms), but will be none the wiser if the fault recurs, and ultimately may have spent more time and money than was necessary. A calm and logical approach will be found to be more satisfactory in the long run. Always take into account any warning signs or abnormalities that may have been noticed in the period preceding the fault – power loss, high or low gauge readings, unusual smells, etc – and remember that failure of components such as fuses or spark plugs may only be pointers to some underlying fault.

The pages which follow provide an easy-reference guide to the more common problems which may occur during the operation of the vehicle. These problems and their possible causes are grouped under headings denoting various components or systems, such as Engine, Cooling system, etc. The general Chapter which deals with the problem is also shown in brackets; refer to the relevant part of that Chapter for system-specific information. Whatever the fault, certain basic principles apply. These are as follows:

*Verify the fault.* This is simply a matter of being sure that you know what the symptoms are before starting work. This is particularly important if you are investigating a fault for someone else, who may not have described it very accurately.

*Don't overlook the obvious.* For example, if the vehicle won't start, is there fuel in the tank? (Don't take anyone else's word on this particular point, and don't trust the fuel gauge either!) If an electrical fault is indicated, look for loose or broken wires before digging out the test gear.

*Cure the disease, not the symptom.* Substituting a flat battery with a fully-charged

one will get you off the hard shoulder, but if the underlying cause is not attended to, the new battery will go the same way. Similarly, changing oil-fouled spark plugs (petrol models) for a new set will get you moving again, but remember that the reason for the fouling (if it wasn't simply an incorrect grade of plug) will have to be found and corrected.

*Don't take anything for granted.* Particularly,

don't forget that a 'new' component may itself be defective (especially if it's been rattling around in the boot for months), and don't leave components out of a fault diagnosis sequence just because they are new or recently-fitted. When you do finally diagnose a difficult fault, you'll probably realise that all the evidence was there from the start.

## Engine

### Engine fails to rotate when attempting to start

- Battery terminal connections loose or corroded (*Weekly checks*).
- Battery discharged or faulty (Chapter 5A).
- Broken, loose or disconnected wiring in the starting circuit (Chapter 5A).
- Defective starter motor (Chapter 5A).
- Starter pinion or flywheel/driveplate ring gear teeth loose or broken (Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C and 5A).
- Engine earth strap broken or disconnected (Chapter 5A).

### Engine rotates, but will not start

- Fuel tank empty.
- Battery discharged (engine rotates slowly) (Chapter 5A).
- Battery terminal connections loose or corroded (*Weekly checks*).
- Worn, faulty or incorrectly-gapped spark plugs – petrol models (Chapter 1A).
- Preheating system faulty – diesel models (Chapter 5C).
- Engine management system fault – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Air in fuel system – diesel models (Chapter 4B).
- Fuel injector/injection pump fault – diesel models (Chapter 4B).
- Low cylinder compressions (Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C).
- Major mechanical failure (eg camshaft drive) (Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C).

### Engine difficult to start when cold

- Battery discharged (Chapter 5A).
- Battery terminal connections loose or corroded (*Weekly checks*).
- Worn, faulty or incorrectly-gapped spark plugs – petrol models (Chapter 1A).
- Preheating system faulty – diesel models (Chapter 5C).
- Engine management system fault – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Fuel injector/injection pump fault – diesel models (Chapter 4B).

### Engine difficult to start when hot

- Engine management system fault – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Fuel injector/injection pump fault – diesel models (Chapter 4B).
- Low cylinder compressions (Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C).

### Starter motor noisy or excessively-rough in engagement

- Starter pinion or flywheel/driveplate ring gear teeth loose or broken (Chapters 2A, 2B or 2C and 5A).
- Starter motor mounting bolts loose or missing (Chapter 5A).
- Defective starter motor (Chapter 5A).

### Engine starts, but stops immediately

- Vacuum leak at the throttle housing/inlet manifold – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Engine management system fault – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Air in fuel system – diesel models (Chapter 4B).
- Fuel injector/injection pump fault – diesel models (Chapter 4B).

### Engine idles erratically

- Vacuum leak at the throttle housing/inlet manifold – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Worn, faulty or incorrectly-gapped spark plugs – petrol models (Chapter 1A).
- Engine management system fault – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Air in fuel system – diesel models (Chapter 4B).
- Fuel injector/injection pump fault – diesel models (Chapter 4B).
- Uneven or low cylinder compressions (Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C).
- Camshaft lobes worn (Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C).
- Timing belt incorrectly fitted (Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C).

### Engine misfires at idle speed

- Worn, faulty or incorrectly-gapped spark plugs – petrol models (Chapter 1A).
- Vacuum leak at the throttle housing/inlet manifold – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Engine management system fault – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Faulty injector(s) – diesel models (Chapter 4B).
- Uneven or low cylinder compressions (Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C).
- Disconnected, leaking, or perished crankcase ventilation hoses (Chapter 4C).

### Engine misfires throughout the driving speed range

- Fuel filter blocked (Chapter 1A or 1B).
- Fuel pump faulty (Chapter 4A or 4B).
- Fuel tank vent blocked, or fuel pipes restricted (Chapter 4A or 4B).
- Worn, faulty or incorrectly-gapped spark plugs – petrol models (Chapter 1A).
- Vacuum leak at the throttle housing/inlet manifold – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Engine management system fault – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Fuel injector/injection pump fault – diesel models (Chapter 4B).
- Faulty ignition HT coil – petrol models (Chapter 5B).
- Uneven or low cylinder compressions (Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C).

### Engine hesitates on acceleration

- Worn, faulty or incorrectly-gapped spark plugs – petrol models (Chapter 1A).
- Vacuum leak at the throttle housing/inlet manifold – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Engine management system fault – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Fuel injector/injection pump fault – diesel models (Chapter 4B).

### Engine stalls

- Fuel filter blocked (Chapter 1A or 1B).
- Fuel pump faulty (Chapter 4A or 4B).
- Fuel tank vent blocked, or fuel pipes restricted (Chapter 4A or 4B).
- Worn, faulty or incorrectly-gapped spark plugs – petrol models (Chapter 1A).
- Vacuum leak at the throttle housing/inlet manifold – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Engine management system fault – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Fuel injector/injection pump fault – diesel models (Chapter 4B).

## Engine (continued)

### Engine lacks power

- Timing belt incorrectly fitted (Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C).
- Fuel filter blocked (Chapter 1A or 1B).
- Fuel pump faulty (Chapter 4A or 4B).
- Uneven or low cylinder compressions (Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C).
- Worn, faulty or incorrectly-gapped spark plugs – petrol models (Chapter 1A).
- Vacuum leak at the throttle housing/inlet manifold – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Engine management system fault – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Fuel injector/injection pump fault – diesel models (Chapter 4B).
- Brakes binding (Chapters 1A or 1B and 9).
- Clutch slipping (Chapter 6).

### Engine backfires

- Timing belt incorrectly fitted (Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C).
- Vacuum leak at the throttle housing/inlet manifold – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Engine management system fault – petrol models (Chapter 4A).

### Oil pressure warning light on with engine running

- Low oil level, or incorrect oil grade (*Weekly checks*).
- Faulty oil pressure warning light switch (Chapter 5A).
- Worn engine bearings and/or oil pump (Chapter 2D).
- High engine operating temperature (Chapter 3).
- Oil pressure relief valve defective (Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C).
- Oil pick-up strainer clogged (Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C).

### Engine runs-on after switching off

- Excessive carbon build-up in engine (Chapter 2D).
- High engine operating temperature (Chapter 3).
- Engine management system fault – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Fuel injection pump fault – diesel models (Chapter 4B).

## Cooling system

### Overheating

- Insufficient coolant in system (*Weekly checks*).
- Thermostat faulty (stuck closed) (Chapter 3).
- Radiator core blocked, or grille restricted (Chapter 3).
- Electric cooling fan or sensor faulty (Chapter 3).
- Pressure cap faulty (Chapter 3).
- Inaccurate temperature gauge/sensor (Chapter 3).
- Airlock in cooling system (Chapter 1A or 1B).
- Engine management system fault (Chapter 4).

### Overcooling

- Thermostat faulty (stuck open) (Chapter 3).
- Inaccurate temperature gauge/sensor (Chapter 3).

## Fuel and exhaust systems

### Excessive fuel consumption

- Air filter element dirty or clogged (Chapter 1A or 1B).
- Engine management system fault (Chapter 4).
- Faulty injector(s) (Chapter 4).
- Tyres under-inflated (*Weekly checks*).
- Brakes binding (Chapters 1A or 1B and 9).

### Fuel leakage and/or fuel odour

- Damaged or corroded fuel tank, pipes or connections (Chapter 4A or 4B).

### Engine noises

#### Pre-ignition (pinking) or knocking during acceleration or under load

- Engine management system fault – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Incorrect grade of spark plug – petrol models (Chapter 1A).
- Incorrect grade of fuel – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Vacuum leak at the throttle housing/inlet manifold – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Excessive carbon build-up in engine (Chapter 2D).

#### Whistling or wheezing noises

- Leaking inlet manifold or throttle housing gasket – petrol models (Chapter 4A).
- Leaking vacuum hose (Chapters 4A or 4B and 9).
- Blowing cylinder head gasket (Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C).

#### Tapping or rattling noises

- Worn valve gear or camshaft (Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C).
- Ancillary component fault (coolant pump, alternator, etc) (Chapters 3, 5A, etc).

#### Knocking or thumping noises

- Worn big-end bearings (regular heavy knocking, perhaps less under load) (Chapter 2D).
- Worn main bearings (rumbling and knocking, perhaps worsening under load) (Chapter 2D).
- Piston slap (most noticeable when cold) (Chapter 2D).
- Ancillary component fault (coolant pump, alternator, etc) (Chapters 3, 5A, etc).

### External coolant leakage

- Deteriorated or damaged hoses or hose clips (Chapter 1A or 1B).
- Radiator core or heater matrix leaking (Chapter 3).
- Pressure cap faulty (Chapter 3).
- Coolant pump leaking (Chapter 3).
- Boiling due to overheating (Chapter 3).
- Core plug leaking (Chapter 2D).

### Internal coolant leakage

- Leaking cylinder head gasket (Chapter 2A, 2B or 2C).
- Cracked cylinder head or cylinder bore (Chapter 2A, 2B, 2C or 2D).

### Corrosion

- Infrequent draining and flushing (Chapter 1A or 1B).
- Incorrect coolant mixture or inappropriate coolant type (Chapter 1A or 1B).

### Excessive noise or fumes from exhaust system

- Leaking exhaust system or manifold joints (Chapters 1A or 1B and 4A or 4B).
- Leaking, corroded or damaged silencers or pipe (Chapters 1A or 1B and 4A or 4B).
- Broken mountings causing body or suspension contact (Chapters 1A or 1B and 4A or 4B).

## Clutch

### **Pedal travels to floor – no pressure or very little resistance**

- Air in hydraulic system/faulty master or slave cylinder (Chapter 6).
- Broken clutch release bearing or fork (Chapter 6).
- Broken diaphragm spring in clutch pressure plate (Chapter 6).

### **Clutch fails to disengage (unable to select gears)**

- Air in hydraulic system/faulty master or slave cylinder (Chapter 6).
- Clutch disc sticking on gearbox input shaft splines (Chapter 6).
- Clutch disc sticking to flywheel or pressure plate (Chapter 6).
- Faulty pressure plate assembly (Chapter 6).
- Clutch release mechanism worn or incorrectly assembled (Chapter 6).

### **Clutch slips (engine speed rises, with no increase in vehicle speed)**

- Faulty hydraulic release system (Chapter 6).

- Clutch disc linings excessively worn (Chapter 6).
- Clutch disc linings contaminated with oil or grease (Chapter 6).
- Faulty pressure plate or weak diaphragm spring (Chapter 6).

### **Judder as clutch is engaged**

- Clutch disc linings contaminated with oil or grease (Chapter 6).
- Clutch disc linings excessively worn (Chapter 6).
- Faulty or distorted pressure plate or diaphragm spring (Chapter 6).
- Worn or loose engine or gearbox mountings (Chapter 2A or 2B).
- Clutch disc hub or gearbox input shaft splines worn (Chapter 6).

### **Noise when depressing or releasing clutch pedal**

- Worn clutch release bearing (Chapter 6).
- Worn or dry clutch pedal bushes (Chapter 6).
- Faulty pressure plate assembly (Chapter 6).
- Pressure plate diaphragm spring broken (Chapter 6).
- Broken clutch disc cushioning springs (Chapter 6).

## Manual transmission

### **Noisy in neutral with engine running**

- Input shaft bearings worn (noise apparent with clutch pedal released, but not when depressed) (Chapter 7A).\*
- Clutch release bearing worn (noise apparent with clutch pedal depressed, possibly less when released) (Chapter 6).

### **Noisy in one particular gear**

- Worn, damaged or chipped gear teeth (Chapter 7A).\*

### **Difficulty engaging gears**

- Clutch fault (Chapter 6).
- Worn or damaged gear selection cables (Chapter 7A).
- Worn synchroniser units (Chapter 7A).\*

### **Jumps out of gear**

- Worn or damaged gear selection cables (Chapter 7A).
- Worn synchroniser units (Chapter 7A).\*
- Worn selector forks (Chapter 7A).\*

### **Vibration**

- Lack of oil (Chapters 1 and 7A).
- Worn bearings (Chapter 7A).\*

### **Lubricant leaks**

- Leaking differential output oil seal (Chapter 7A).
- Leaking housing joint (Chapter 7A).\*
- Leaking input shaft oil seal (Chapter 7A).

\*Although the corrective action necessary to remedy the symptoms described is beyond the scope of the home mechanic, the above information should be helpful in isolating the cause of the condition, so that the owner can communicate clearly with a professional mechanic.

## Automatic transmission

**Note:** Due to the complexity of the automatic transmission, it is difficult for the home mechanic to properly diagnose and service this unit. For problems other than the following, the vehicle should be taken to a Peugeot dealer service department or suitably equipped specialist.

### **Fluid leakage**

- Automatic transmission fluid is usually dark in colour. Fluid leaks should not be confused with engine oil, which can easily be blown onto the transmission by airflow.
- To determine the source of a leak, first remove all built-up dirt and grime from the transmission housing and surrounding areas using a degreasing agent, or by steam-cleaning. Drive the vehicle at low speed, so airflow will not blow the leak far from its source. Raise and support the vehicle, and determine where the leak is coming from.

### **Transmission fluid brown, or has burned smell**

- Transmission fluid level low, or fluid in need of renewal (Chapter 1A and 7B).

### **General gear selection problems**

- Chapter 7B deals with checking and adjusting the selector cable on automatic transmissions. The following are common problems which may be caused by a poorly-adjusted cable:

- a) Engine starting in gears other than Park or Neutral.
  - b) Indicator panel showing a gear other than that being used.
  - c) Vehicle moves when in Park or Neutral.
  - d) Poor gear shift quality or erratic gear changes.
- Refer to Chapter 7B for the selector cable adjustment procedure.

### **Transmission will not downshift (kickdown) at full throttle**

- Low transmission fluid level (Chapter 1A).
- Incorrect selector cable adjustment (Chapter 7B).

### **Engine won't start in any gear, or starts in gears other than Park or Neutral**

- Incorrect multi-function switch adjustment (Chapter 7B).
- Incorrect selector cable adjustment (Chapter 7B).

### **Transmission slips, shifts roughly, is noisy, or has no drive in forward or reverse gears**

- There are many probable causes for the above problems, but the home mechanic should be concerned with only one possibility – fluid level. Before taking the vehicle to a dealer or transmission specialist, check the fluid level as described in Chapter 1A. Correct the fluid level as necessary, or change the fluid. If the problem persists, professional help will be necessary.

## Driveshafts

### **Clicking or knocking noise on turns (at slow speed on full-lock)**

- Lack of constant velocity joint lubricant, possibly due to damaged gaiter (Chapter 8).
- Worn outer constant velocity joint (Chapter 8).

### **Vibration when accelerating or decelerating**

- Worn inner constant velocity joint (Chapter 8).
- Bent or distorted driveshaft (Chapter 8).
- Worn intermediate bearing (Chapter 8).

## Braking system

**Note:** Before assuming that a brake problem exists, make sure that the tyres are in good condition and correctly inflated, that the front wheel alignment is correct, and that the vehicle is not loaded with weight in an unequal manner. Apart from checking the condition of all pipe and hose connections, any faults occurring on the anti-lock braking system should be referred to a Peugeot dealer for diagnosis.

### **Vehicle pulls to one side under braking**

- Worn, defective, damaged or contaminated brake pads on one side (Chapter 9).
- Seized or partially-seized front brake caliper (Chapter 9).
- A mixture of brake pad materials fitted between sides (Chapter 9).
- Brake caliper mounting bolts loose (Chapter 9).
- Worn or damaged steering or suspension components (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).

### **Noise (grinding or high-pitched squeal) when brakes applied**

- Brake pad material worn down to metal backing (Chapters 1A or 1B and 9).
- Excessive corrosion of brake disc. May be apparent after the vehicle has been standing for some time (Chapter 9).
- Foreign object (stone chipping, etc) trapped between brake disc and shield (Chapter 9).

### **Excessive brake pedal travel**

- Faulty master cylinder (Chapter 9).
- Air in hydraulic system (Chapter 9).
- Faulty vacuum servo unit (Chapter 9).

## Suspension and steering

**Note:** Before diagnosing suspension or steering faults, be sure that the trouble is not due to incorrect tyre pressures, mixtures of tyre types, or binding brakes.

### **Vehicle pulls to one side**

- Defective tyre (*Weekly checks*).
- Excessive wear in suspension or steering components (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).
- Incorrect front wheel alignment (Chapter 10).
- Damage to steering or suspension components (Chapter 1A or 1B).

### **Brake pedal feels spongy when depressed**

- Air in hydraulic system (Chapter 9).
- Deteriorated flexible rubber brake hoses (Chapters 1A or 1B and 9).
- Master cylinder mounting nuts loose (Chapter 9).
- Faulty master cylinder (Chapter 9).

### **Excessive brake pedal effort required to stop vehicle**

- Faulty vacuum servo unit (Chapter 9).
- Disconnected, damaged or insecure brake servo vacuum hose (Chapter 9).
- Primary or secondary hydraulic circuit failure (Chapter 9).
- Seized brake caliper (Chapter 9).
- Brake pads incorrectly fitted (Chapter 9).
- Incorrect grade of brake pads fitted (Chapter 9).
- Brake pads contaminated (Chapter 9).

### **Judder felt through brake pedal or steering wheel when braking**

- Excessive run-out or distortion of discs (Chapters 9).
- Brake pads worn (Chapters 1A or 1B and 9).
- Brake caliper mounting bolts loose (Chapter 9).
- Wear in suspension or steering components or mountings (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).

### **Brakes binding**

- Seized brake caliper (Chapter 9).
- Incorrectly-adjusted handbrake mechanism (Chapter 9).
- Faulty master cylinder (Chapter 9).

### **Rear wheels locking under normal braking**

- Rear brake pads contaminated (Chapters 1A or 1B and 9).
- ABS system fault (Chapter 9).

### **Wheel wobble and vibration**

- Front roadwheels out of balance (vibration felt mainly through the steering wheel) (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).
- Rear roadwheels out of balance (vibration felt throughout the vehicle) (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).
- Roadwheels damaged or distorted (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).
- Faulty or damaged tyre (*Weekly checks*).
- Worn steering or suspension joints, bushes or components (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).
- Wheel bolts loose (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).

## Suspension and steering (continued)

### Excessive pitching and/or rolling around corners, or during braking

- Defective shock absorbers (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).
- Broken or weak spring and/or suspension part (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).
- Worn or damaged anti-roll bar or mountings (Chapter 10).

### Wandering or general instability

- Incorrect front wheel alignment (Chapter 10).
- Worn steering or suspension joints, bushes or components (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).
- Roadwheels out of balance (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).
- Faulty or damaged tyre (*Weekly checks*).
- Wheel bolts loose (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).
- Defective shock absorbers (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).

### Excessively-stiff steering

- Lack of power steering fluid (Chapter 10).
- Seized track rod end balljoint or suspension balljoint (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).
- Incorrect front wheel alignment (Chapter 10).
- Steering rack or column bent or damaged (Chapter 10).
- Power steering pump fault (Chapter 10).

### Excessive play in steering

- Worn steering column universal joint (Chapter 10).
- Worn steering track rod end balljoints (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).
- Worn steering rack (Chapter 10).
- Worn steering or suspension joints, bushes or components (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).

### Lack of power assistance

- Incorrect power steering fluid level (*Weekly checks*).
- Restriction in power steering fluid hoses (Chapter 1A or 1B).
- Faulty power steering pump (Chapter 10).
- Faulty steering rack (Chapter 10).

### Tyre wear excessive

#### Tyre treads exhibit feathered edges

- Incorrect toe setting (Chapter 10).

#### Tyres worn in centre of tread

- Tyres over-inflated (*Weekly checks*).

#### Tyres worn on inside and outside edges

- Tyres under-inflated (*Weekly checks*).

#### Tyres worn on inside or outside edges

- Incorrect camber/caster angles (wear on one edge only) (Chapter 10).
- Worn steering or suspension joints, bushes or components (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).
- Excessively-hard cornering.
- Accident damage.

#### Tyres worn unevenly

- Tyres/wheels out of balance (*Weekly checks*).
- Excessive wheel or tyre run-out (Chapter 1A or 1B).
- Worn shock absorbers (Chapters 1A or 1B and 10).
- Faulty tyre (*Weekly checks*).

## Electrical system

**Note:** For problems associated with the starting system, refer to the faults listed under 'Engine' earlier in this Section.

### Battery won't hold a charge for more than a few days

- Battery defective internally (Chapter 5A).
- Battery terminal connections loose or corroded (*Weekly checks*).
- Auxiliary drivebelt broken, worn or incorrectly adjusted (Chapter 1A or 1B).
- Alternator not charging at correct output (Chapter 5A).
- Alternator or voltage regulator faulty (Chapter 5A).
- Short-circuit causing continual battery drain (Chapters 5A and 12).

### Ignition/no-charge warning light stays on with engine running

- Auxiliary drivebelt broken, worn, or incorrectly adjusted (Chapter 1A or 1B).
- Internal fault in alternator or voltage regulator (Chapter 5A).
- Broken, disconnected, or loose wiring in charging circuit (Chapter 5A).

### Ignition/no-charge warning light fails to come on

- Warning light bulb blown (Chapter 12).
- Broken, disconnected, or loose wiring in warning light circuit (Chapter 12).
- Alternator faulty (Chapter 5A).

### Lights inoperative

- Bulb blown (Chapter 12).
- Corrosion of bulb or bulbholder contacts (Chapter 12).
- Blown fuse (Chapter 12).
- Faulty relay (Chapter 12).

- Broken, loose, or disconnected wiring (Chapter 12).
- Faulty switch (Chapter 12).

### Instrument readings inaccurate or erratic

#### Fuel or temperature gauges give no reading

- Faulty gauge sensor unit (Chapter 3 or 4).
- Wiring open-circuit (Chapter 12).
- Faulty gauge (Chapter 12).

#### Fuel or temperature gauges give continuous maximum reading

- Faulty gauge sensor unit (Chapter 3 or 4).
- Wiring short-circuit (Chapter 12).
- Faulty gauge (Chapter 12).

### Horn inoperative, or unsatisfactory in operation

#### Horn operates all the time

- Horn push either earthed or stuck down (Chapter 12).
- Horn cable-to-horn push earthed (Chapter 12).

#### Horn fails to operate

- Blown fuse (Chapter 12).
- Cable or cable connections loose, broken or disconnected (Chapter 12).
- Faulty horn (Chapter 12).

#### Horn emits intermittent or unsatisfactory sound

- Cable connections loose (Chapter 12).
- Horn mountings loose (Chapter 12).
- Faulty horn (Chapter 12).

## Electrical system (continued)

### Windscreen/tailgate wipers failed, or unsatisfactory in operation

#### Wipers fail to operate, or operate very slowly

- Wiper blades stuck to screen, or linkage seized or binding (Chapters 1A or 1B and 12).
- Blown fuse (Chapter 12).
- Cable or cable connections loose, broken or disconnected (Chapter 12).
- Faulty built-in system interface (BSI) unit (Chapter 12).
- Faulty wiper motor (Chapter 12).

#### Wiper blades sweep over too large or too small an area of the glass

- Wiper arms incorrectly positioned on spindles (Chapter 12).
- Excessive wear of wiper linkage (Chapter 12).
- Wiper motor or linkage mountings loose or insecure (Chapter 12).

#### Wiper blades fail to clean the glass effectively

- Wiper blade rubbers worn or perished (*Weekly checks*).
- Wiper arm tension springs broken, or arm pivots seized (Chapter 12).
- Insufficient windscreen washer additive to adequately remove road film (*Weekly checks*).

### Windscreen/tailgate washers failed, or unsatisfactory in operation

#### One or more washer jets inoperative

- Blocked washer jet (*Weekly checks*).
- Disconnected, kinked or restricted fluid hose (Chapter 12).
- Insufficient fluid in washer reservoir (*Weekly checks*).

#### Washer pump fails to operate

- Broken or disconnected wiring or connections (Chapter 12).
- Blown fuse (Chapter 12).
- Faulty washer switch (Chapter 12).
- Faulty washer pump (Chapter 12).

### Electric windows inoperative, or unsatisfactory in operation

#### Window glass will only move in one direction

- Faulty switch (Chapter 12).

#### Window glass slow to move

- Regulator seized or damaged, or in need of lubricant (Chapter 11).
- Door internal components or trim fouling regulator (Chapter 11).
- Faulty motor (Chapter 11).

#### Window glass fails to move

- Blown fuse (Chapter 12).
- Broken or disconnected wiring or connections (Chapter 12).
- Faulty motor (Chapter 11).
- Faulty built-in systems interface (BSI) unit (Chapter 12).

### Central locking system inoperative, or unsatisfactory in operation

#### Complete system failure

- Blown fuse (Chapter 12).
- Broken or disconnected wiring or connections (Chapter 12).
- Faulty built-in system interface (BSI) unit (Chapter 12).

#### Door/tailgate locks but will not unlock, or unlocks but will not lock

- Broken or disconnected link rod(s) (Chapter 11).
- Faulty lock motor (Chapter 11).

#### One lock fails to operate

- Broken or disconnected wiring or connections (Chapter 12).
- Faulty lock motor (Chapter 11).
- Broken, binding or disconnected link rod(s) (Chapter 11).

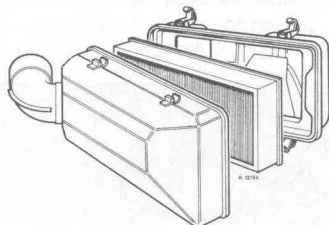
## A

**ABS (Anti-lock brake system)** A system, usually electronically controlled, that senses incipient wheel lockup during braking and relieves hydraulic pressure at wheels that are about to skid.

**Air bag** An inflatable bag hidden in the steering wheel (driver's side) or the dash or glovebox (passenger side). In a head-on collision, the bags inflate, preventing the driver and front passenger from being thrown forward into the steering wheel or windshield.

**Air cleaner** A metal or plastic housing, containing a filter element, which removes dust and dirt from the air being drawn into the engine.

**Air filter element** The actual filter in an air cleaner system, usually manufactured from pleated paper and requiring renewal at regular intervals.



Air filter

**Allen key** A hexagonal wrench which fits into a recessed hexagonal hole.

**Alligator clip** A long-nosed spring-loaded metal clip with meshing teeth. Used to make temporary electrical connections.

**Alternator** A component in the electrical system which converts mechanical energy from a drivebelt into electrical energy to charge the battery and to operate the starting system, ignition system and electrical accessories.

**Ampere (amp)** A unit of measurement for the flow of electric current. One amp is the amount of current produced by one volt acting through a resistance of one ohm.

**Anaerobic sealer** A substance used to prevent bolts and screws from loosening. Anaerobic means that it does not require oxygen for activation. The Loctite brand is widely used.

**Antifreeze** A substance (usually ethylene glycol) mixed with water, and added to a vehicle's cooling system, to prevent freezing of the coolant in winter. Antifreeze also contains chemicals to inhibit corrosion and the formation of rust and other deposits that would tend to clog the radiator and coolant passages and reduce cooling efficiency.

**Anti-seize compound** A coating that reduces the risk of seizing on fasteners that are subjected to high temperatures, such as exhaust manifold bolts and nuts.

**Asbestos** A natural fibrous mineral with great heat resistance, commonly used in the composition of brake friction materials.

Asbestos is a health hazard and the dust created by brake systems should never be inhaled or ingested.

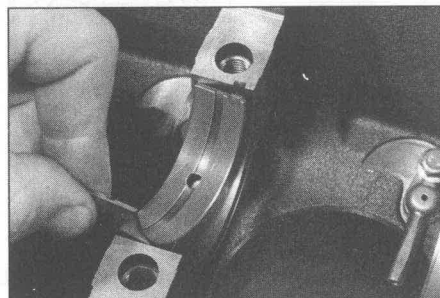
**Axle** A shaft on which a wheel revolves, or which revolves with a wheel. Also, a solid beam that connects the two wheels at one end of the vehicle. An axle which also transmits power to the wheels is known as a live axle.

**Axleshaft** A single rotating shaft, on either side of the differential, which delivers power from the final drive assembly to the drive wheels. Also called a driveshaft or a halfshaft.

## B

**Ball bearing** An anti-friction bearing consisting of a hardened inner and outer race with hardened steel balls between two races.

**Bearing** The curved surface on a shaft or in a bore, or the part assembled into either, that permits relative motion between them with minimum wear and friction.

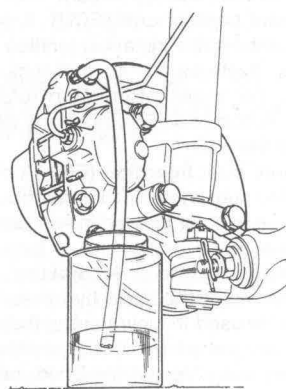


Bearing

**Big-end bearing** The bearing in the end of the connecting rod that's attached to the crankshaft.

**Bleed nipple** A valve on a brake wheel cylinder, caliper or other hydraulic component that is opened to purge the hydraulic system of air. Also called a bleed screw.

**Brake bleeding** Procedure for removing air from lines of a hydraulic brake system.



Brake bleeding

**Brake disc** The component of a disc brake that rotates with the wheels.

**Brake drum** The component of a drum brake that rotates with the wheels.

**Brake linings** The friction material which contacts the brake disc or drum to retard the vehicle's speed. The linings are bonded or riveted to the brake pads or shoes.

**Brake pads** The replaceable friction pads that pinch the brake disc when the brakes are applied. Brake pads consist of a friction material bonded or riveted to a rigid backing plate.

**Brake shoe** The crescent-shaped carrier to which the brake linings are mounted and which forces the lining against the rotating drum during braking.

**Braking systems** For more information on braking systems, consult the *Haynes Automotive Brake Manual*.

**Breaker bar** A long socket wrench handle providing greater leverage.

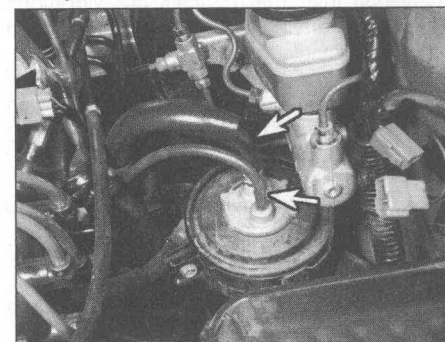
**Bulkhead** The insulated partition between the engine and the passenger compartment.

## C

**Caliper** The non-rotating part of a disc-brake assembly that straddles the disc and carries the brake pads. The caliper also contains the hydraulic components that cause the pads to pinch the disc when the brakes are applied. A caliper is also a measuring tool that can be set to measure inside or outside dimensions of an object.

**Camshaft** A rotating shaft on which a series of cam lobes operate the valve mechanisms. The camshaft may be driven by gears, by sprockets and chain or by sprockets and a belt.

**Canister** A container in an evaporative emission control system; contains activated charcoal granules to trap vapours from the fuel system.



Canister

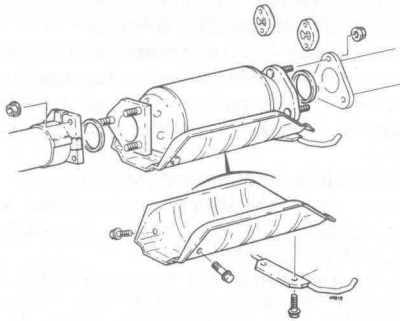
**Carburettor** A device which mixes fuel with air in the proper proportions to provide a desired power output from a spark ignition internal combustion engine.

**Castellated** Resembling the parapets along the top of a castle wall. For example, a castellated balljoint stud nut.

**Castor** In wheel alignment, the backward or forward tilt of the steering axis. Castor is positive when the steering axis is inclined rearward at the top.



**Catalytic converter** A silencer-like device in the exhaust system which converts certain pollutants in the exhaust gases into less harmful substances.



Catalytic converter

**Circlip** A ring-shaped clip used to prevent endwise movement of cylindrical parts and shafts. An internal circlip is installed in a groove in a housing; an external circlip fits into a groove on the outside of a cylindrical piece such as a shaft.

**Clearance** The amount of space between two parts. For example, between a piston and a cylinder, between a bearing and a journal, etc.

**Coil spring** A spiral of elastic steel found in various sizes throughout a vehicle, for example as a springing medium in the suspension and in the valve train.

**Compression** Reduction in volume, and increase in pressure and temperature, of a gas, caused by squeezing it into a smaller space.

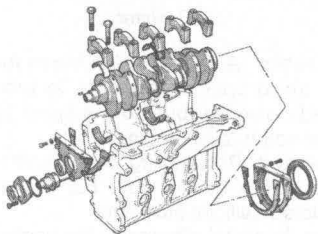
**Compression ratio** The relationship between cylinder volume when the piston is at top dead centre and cylinder volume when the piston is at bottom dead centre.

**Constant velocity (CV) joint** A type of universal joint that cancels out vibrations caused by driving power being transmitted through an angle.

**Core plug** A disc or cup-shaped metal device inserted in a hole in a casting through which core was removed when the casting was formed. Also known as a freeze plug or expansion plug.

**Crankcase** The lower part of the engine block in which the crankshaft rotates.

**Crankshaft** The main rotating member, or shaft, running the length of the crankcase, with offset "throws" to which the connecting rods are attached.



Crankshaft assembly

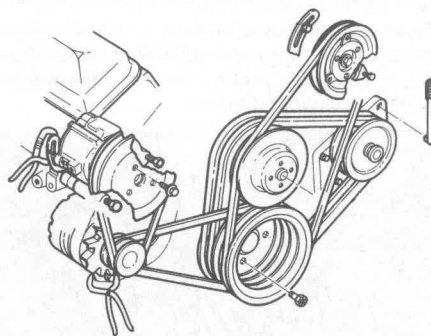
**Crocodile clip** See Alligator clip

**D**  
**Diagnostic code** Code numbers obtained by accessing the diagnostic mode of an engine management computer. This code can be used to determine the area in the system where a malfunction may be located.

**Disc brake** A brake design incorporating a rotating disc onto which brake pads are squeezed. The resulting friction converts the energy of a moving vehicle into heat.

**Double-overhead cam (DOHC)** An engine that uses two overhead camshafts, usually one for the intake valves and one for the exhaust valves.

**Drivebelt(s)** The belt(s) used to drive accessories such as the alternator, water pump, power steering pump, air conditioning compressor, etc. off the crankshaft pulley.



Accessory drivebelts

**Driveshaft** Any shaft used to transmit motion. Commonly used when referring to the axleshafts on a front wheel drive vehicle.

**Drum brake** A type of brake using a drum-shaped metal cylinder attached to the inner surface of the wheel. When the brake pedal is pressed, curved brake shoes with friction linings press against the inside of the drum to slow or stop the vehicle.

**E**  
**EGR valve** A valve used to introduce exhaust gases into the intake air stream.

**Electronic control unit (ECU)** A computer which controls (for instance) ignition and fuel injection systems, or an anti-lock braking system. For more information refer to the *Haynes Automotive Electrical and Electronic Systems Manual*.

**Electronic Fuel Injection (EFI)** A computer controlled fuel system that distributes fuel through an injector located in each intake port of the engine.

**Emergency brake** A braking system, independent of the main hydraulic system, that can be used to slow or stop the vehicle if the primary brakes fail, or to hold the vehicle stationary even though the brake pedal isn't depressed. It usually consists of a hand lever that actuates either front or rear brakes mechanically through a series of cables and linkages. Also known as a handbrake or parking brake.

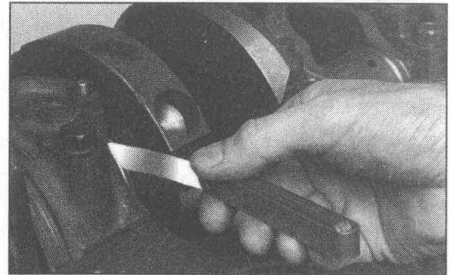
**Endfloat** The amount of lengthwise movement between two parts. As applied to a crankshaft, the distance that the crankshaft can move forward and back in the cylinder block.

**Engine management system (EMS)** A computer controlled system which manages the fuel injection and the ignition systems in an integrated fashion.

**Exhaust manifold** A part with several passages through which exhaust gases leave the engine combustion chambers and enter the exhaust pipe.

**F**  
**Fan clutch** A viscous (fluid) drive coupling device which permits variable engine fan speeds in relation to engine speeds.

**Feeler blade** A thin strip or blade of hardened steel, ground to an exact thickness, used to check or measure clearances between parts.



Feeler blade

**Firing order** The order in which the engine cylinders fire, or deliver their power strokes, beginning with the number one cylinder.

**Flywheel** A heavy spinning wheel in which energy is absorbed and stored by means of momentum. On cars, the flywheel is attached to the crankshaft to smooth out firing impulses.

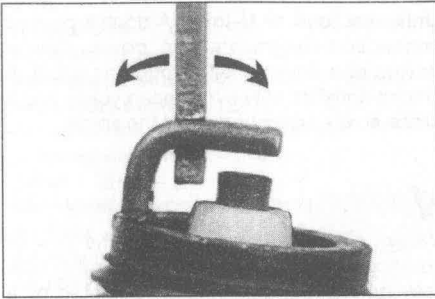
**Free play** The amount of travel before any action takes place. The "looseness" in a linkage, or an assembly of parts, between the initial application of force and actual movement. For example, the distance the brake pedal moves before the pistons in the master cylinder are actuated.

**Fuse** An electrical device which protects a circuit against accidental overload. The typical fuse contains a soft piece of metal which is calibrated to melt at a predetermined current flow (expressed as amps) and break the circuit.

**Fusible link** A circuit protection device consisting of a conductor surrounded by heat-resistant insulation. The conductor is smaller than the wire it protects, so it acts as the weakest link in the circuit. Unlike a blown fuse, a failed fusible link must frequently be cut from the wire for replacement.

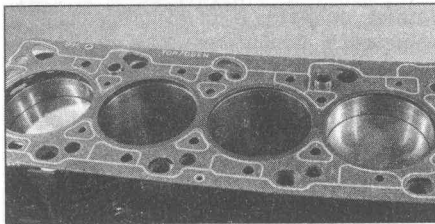
## G

**Gap** The distance the spark must travel in jumping from the centre electrode to the side electrode in a spark plug. Also refers to the spacing between the points in a contact breaker assembly in a conventional points-type ignition, or to the distance between the reductor or rotor and the pickup coil in an electronic ignition.



*Adjusting spark plug gap*

**Gasket** Any thin, soft material - usually cork, cardboard, asbestos or soft metal - installed between two metal surfaces to ensure a good seal. For instance, the cylinder head gasket seals the joint between the block and the cylinder head.



*Gasket*

**Gauge** An instrument panel display used to monitor engine conditions. A gauge with a movable pointer on a dial or a fixed scale is an analogue gauge. A gauge with a numerical readout is called a digital gauge.

## H

**Halfshaft** A rotating shaft that transmits power from the final drive unit to a drive wheel, usually when referring to a live rear axle.

**Harmonic balancer** A device designed to reduce torsion or twisting vibration in the crankshaft. May be incorporated in the crankshaft pulley. Also known as a vibration damper.

**Hone** An abrasive tool for correcting small irregularities or differences in diameter in an engine cylinder, brake cylinder, etc.

**Hydraulic tappet** A tappet that utilises hydraulic pressure from the engine's lubrication system to maintain zero clearance (constant contact with both camshaft and valve stem). Automatically adjusts to variation in valve stem length. Hydraulic tappets also reduce valve noise.

## I

**Ignition timing** The moment at which the spark plug fires, usually expressed in the number of crankshaft degrees before the piston reaches the top of its stroke.

**Inlet manifold** A tube or housing with passages through which flows the air-fuel mixture (carburettor vehicles and vehicles with throttle body injection) or air only (port fuel-injected vehicles) to the port openings in the cylinder head.

## J

**Jump start** Starting the engine of a vehicle with a discharged or weak battery by attaching jump leads from the weak battery to a charged or helper battery.

## L

**Load Sensing Proportioning Valve (LSPV)** A brake hydraulic system control valve that works like a proportioning valve, but also takes into consideration the amount of weight carried by the rear axle.

**Locknut** A nut used to lock an adjustment nut, or other threaded component, in place. For example, a locknut is employed to keep the adjusting nut on the rocker arm in position.

**Lockwasher** A form of washer designed to prevent an attaching nut from working loose.

## M

**MacPherson strut** A type of front suspension system devised by Earle MacPherson at Ford of England. In its original form, a simple lateral link with the anti-roll bar creates the lower control arm. A long strut - an integral coil spring and shock absorber - is mounted between the body and the steering knuckle. Many modern so-called MacPherson strut systems use a conventional lower A-arm and don't rely on the anti-roll bar for location.

**Multimeter** An electrical test instrument with the capability to measure voltage, current and resistance.

## N

**NOx** Oxides of Nitrogen. A common toxic pollutant emitted by petrol and diesel engines at higher temperatures.

## O

**Ohm** The unit of electrical resistance. One volt applied to a resistance of one ohm will produce a current of one amp.

**Ohmmeter** An instrument for measuring electrical resistance.

**O-ring** A type of sealing ring made of a special rubber-like material; in use, the O-ring is compressed into a groove to provide the sealing action.

**Overhead cam (ohc) engine** An engine with the camshaft(s) located on top of the cylinder head(s).

**Overhead valve (ohv) engine** An engine with the valves located in the cylinder head, but with the camshaft located in the engine block.

**Oxygen sensor** A device installed in the engine exhaust manifold, which senses the oxygen content in the exhaust and converts this information into an electric current. Also called a Lambda sensor.

## P

**Phillips screw** A type of screw head having a cross instead of a slot for a corresponding type of screwdriver.

**Plastigage** A thin strip of plastic thread, available in different sizes, used for measuring clearances. For example, a strip of Plastigage is laid across a bearing journal. The parts are assembled and dismantled; the width of the crushed strip indicates the clearance between journal and bearing.



*Plastigage*

**Propeller shaft** The long hollow tube with universal joints at both ends that carries power from the transmission to the differential on front-engined rear wheel drive vehicles.

**Proportioning valve** A hydraulic control valve which limits the amount of pressure to the rear brakes during panic stops to prevent wheel lock-up.

## R

**Rack-and-pinion steering** A steering system with a pinion gear on the end of the steering shaft that mates with a rack (think of a geared wheel opened up and laid flat). When the steering wheel is turned, the pinion turns, moving the rack to the left or right. This movement is transmitted through the track rods to the steering arms at the wheels.

**Radiator** A liquid-to-air heat transfer device designed to reduce the temperature of the coolant in an internal combustion engine cooling system.

**Refrigerant** Any substance used as a heat transfer agent in an air-conditioning system. R-12 has been the principle refrigerant for many years; recently, however, manufacturers have begun using R-134a, a non-CFC substance that is considered less harmful to the ozone in the upper atmosphere.

**Rocker arm** A lever arm that rocks on a shaft or pivots on a stud. In an overhead valve engine, the rocker arm converts the upward movement of the pushrod into a downward movement to open a valve.

**Rotor** In a distributor, the rotating device inside the cap that connects the centre electrode and the outer terminals as it turns, distributing the high voltage from the coil secondary winding to the proper spark plug. Also, that part of an alternator which rotates inside the stator. Also, the rotating assembly of a turbocharger, including the compressor wheel, shaft and turbine wheel.

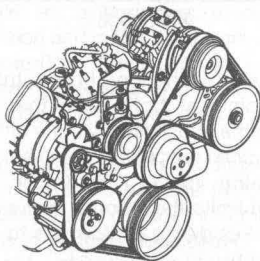
**Runout** The amount of wobble (in-and-out movement) of a gear or wheel as it's rotated. The amount a shaft rotates "out-of-true." The out-of-round condition of a rotating part.

## S

**Sealant** A liquid or paste used to prevent leakage at a joint. Sometimes used in conjunction with a gasket.

**Sealed beam lamp** An older headlight design which integrates the reflector, lens and filaments into a hermetically-sealed one-piece unit. When a filament burns out or the lens cracks, the entire unit is simply replaced.

**Serpentine drivebelt** A single, long, wide accessory drivebelt that's used on some newer vehicles to drive all the accessories, instead of a series of smaller, shorter belts. Serpentine drivebelts are usually tensioned by an automatic tensioner.



Serpentine drivebelt

**Shim** Thin spacer, commonly used to adjust the clearance or relative positions between two parts. For example, shims inserted into or under bucket tappets control valve clearances. Clearance is adjusted by changing the thickness of the shim.

**Slide hammer** A special puller that screws into or hooks onto a component such as a shaft or bearing; a heavy sliding handle on the shaft bottoms against the end of the shaft to knock the component free.

**Sprocket** A tooth or projection on the periphery of a wheel, shaped to engage with a chain or drivebelt. Commonly used to refer to the sprocket wheel itself.

**Starter inhibitor switch** On vehicles with an automatic transmission, a switch that prevents starting if the vehicle is not in Neutral or Park.

**Strut** See MacPherson strut.

## T

**Tappet** A cylindrical component which transmits motion from the cam to the valve stem, either directly or via a pushrod and rocker arm. Also called a cam follower.

**Thermostat** A heat-controlled valve that regulates the flow of coolant between the cylinder block and the radiator, so maintaining optimum engine operating temperature. A thermostat is also used in some air cleaners in which the temperature is regulated.

**Thrust bearing** The bearing in the clutch assembly that is moved in to the release levers by clutch pedal action to disengage the clutch. Also referred to as a release bearing.

**Timing belt** A toothed belt which drives the camshaft. Serious engine damage may result if it breaks in service.

**Timing chain** A chain which drives the camshaft.

**Toe-in** The amount the front wheels are closer together at the front than at the rear. On rear wheel drive vehicles, a slight amount of toe-in is usually specified to keep the front wheels running parallel on the road by offsetting other forces that tend to spread the wheels apart.

**Toe-out** The amount the front wheels are closer together at the rear than at the front. On front wheel drive vehicles, a slight amount of toe-out is usually specified.

**Tools** For full information on choosing and using tools, refer to the *Haynes Automotive Tools Manual*.

**Tracer** A stripe of a second colour applied to a wire insulator to distinguish that wire from another one with the same colour insulator.

**Tune-up** A process of accurate and careful adjustments and parts replacement to obtain the best possible engine performance.

**Turbocharger** A centrifugal device, driven by exhaust gases, that pressurises the intake air. Normally used to increase the power output from a given engine displacement, but can also be used primarily to reduce exhaust emissions (as on VW's "Umwelt" Diesel engine).

## U

**Universal joint or U-joint** A double-pivoted connection for transmitting power from a driving to a driven shaft through an angle. A U-joint consists of two Y-shaped yokes and a cross-shaped member called the spider.

## V

**Valve** A device through which the flow of liquid, gas, vacuum, or loose material in bulk may be started, stopped, or regulated by a movable part that opens, shuts, or partially obstructs one or more ports or passageways. A valve is also the movable part of such a device.

**Valve clearance** The clearance between the valve tip (the end of the valve stem) and the rocker arm or tappet. The valve clearance is measured when the valve is closed.

**Vernier caliper** A precision measuring instrument that measures inside and outside dimensions. Not quite as accurate as a micrometer, but more convenient.

**Viscosity** The thickness of a liquid or its resistance to flow.

**Volt** A unit for expressing electrical "pressure" in a circuit. One volt that will produce a current of one ampere through a resistance of one ohm.

## W

**Welding** Various processes used to join metal items by heating the areas to be joined to a molten state and fusing them together. For more information refer to the *Haynes Automotive Welding Manual*.

**Wiring diagram** A drawing portraying the components and wires in a vehicle's electrical system, using standardised symbols. For more information refer to the *Haynes Automotive Electrical and Electronic Systems Manual*.

Note: References throughout this index are in the form "Chapter number" • "Page number"

## A

A-pillar trim – 11•18  
 Accelerator cable – 4A•2, 4B•7  
 Accelerator pedal – 4A•3, 4A•11, 4B•16  
 Accessory socket – 12•12  
 Accumulator rail – 4B•3, 4B•10  
 Acknowledgements – 0•6  
 Aerial – 12•16  
 Air conditioning system – 3•11, 1B•8, 4A•10  
 Air filter – 1A•13, 1B•12, 4A•2, 4B•5  
 Air injection valve – 4C•3  
 Air inlet heater – 4B•20  
 Air inlet sensor – 4B•4  
 Air mass meter – 4B•16  
 Air pump – 4C•2  
 Air recirculation motor – 3•11  
 Air resonator – 4B•6  
 Air temperature sensor – 3•10, 4A•10  
 Airbags – 0•5, 1A•16, 1B•17, 12•17  
 Alarm system – 12•17  
 Alternator – 5A•4, 5A•5  
 Antifreeze – 1A•16, 1B•17  
 Anti-lock braking system (ABS) – 9•12  
 Anti-roll bar – 10•7  
 Anti-theft alarm system – 12•17  
 Asbestos – 0•5  
 Ashtray illumination – 12•9  
 Audio unit – 12•15  
   control stalk – 12•5  
 Automatic climate control – 3•7  
 Automatic transmission – 7B•1 *et seq*  
   fault finding – REF•15  
   fluid – 0•18, 1A•14, 1B•14, 7B•2  
 Auxiliary drivebelt – 1A•9, 1B•10

## B

B-pillar trim – 11•18  
 Badges – 11•15  
 Battery – 0•5, 0•17, 5A•2, 5A•3  
   central locking – 11•13  
 Beam axle – 10•10  
 Big-end bearings – 2D•14  
 Bleeding  
   braking system – 9•2  
   clutch hydraulic system – 6•2  
   fuel system diesel models – 4B•5  
   power steering system – 10•13  
 Blower motor – 3•9  
 Body corrosion – REF•11  
 Body electrical systems – 12•1 *et seq*  
 Bodywork and fittings – 11•1 *et seq*  
 Bonnet – 11•5, 11•6  
 Brake fluid – 0•15, 0•18, 1A•12, 1B•8, 1B•15  
 Braking system – 0901A•8, 1B•10, •1 *et seq*, REF•8, REF•9, REF•10  
   fault finding – REF•16

Built-in systems interface (BSI) unit – 12•19  
 Bulbs – 0•17, 12•6, 12•9  
 Bumpers – 11•4  
 Burning – 0•5

## C

C-pillar trim – 11•19  
 Cables  
   accelerator – 4A•2, 4B•7  
   bonnet release – 11•6  
   gearchange lever – 7A•3  
   handbrake – 9•11  
   heater – 3•8  
 Calipers – 9•7, 9•8  
 Camshafts – 2A•11, 2A•12, 2B•10, 2C•15  
 Camshaft oil seal(s) – 2A•10, 2B•10, 2C•24, 2C•25  
 Camshaft position sensor – 4A•10, 4B•15  
 Camshaft sprockets – 2A•8, 2A•9, 2B•8, 2B•9, 2C•13  
 Carpets – 11•2  
 Catalytic converter – 4B•21, 4C•4  
 Central locking – 11•13  
 Centre console – 11•22  
 Charcoal canister – 4C•2  
 Charging – 5A•2, 5A•4  
 Cigarette lighter – 12•12  
 Clock – 12•12  
 Clutch – 6•1 *et seq*  
   fault finding – REF•15  
   fluid – 0•15, 0•18, 1B•8  
 Coil (ignition) – 5B•2  
 Coil spring – 10•9  
 Compression test – 2A•3, 2C•4  
 Compressor – 3•11  
 Condenser – 3•11  
 Connecting rods – 2D•9, 2D•12, 2D•19  
 Console – 11•22  
 Conversion factors – REF•2  
 Coolant – 0•13, 0•18, 1A•15, 1B•15  
 Coolant pump sprocket – 2C•14  
 Coolant temperature sensor – 4A•10  
 Cooling, heating and ventilation systems – 1B•7, 3•1 *et seq*  
   fault finding – REF•14  
 Courtesy light switch – 12•6  
 Crankcase – 2D•10  
 Crankcase emission control – 4C•1, 4C•2, 4C•3  
 Crankshaft – 2D•9, 2D•13, 2D•15  
 Crankshaft oil seals – 2A•16, 2B•15, 2C•24  
 Crankshaft position sensor petrol engine – 4A•10  
 Crankshaft pulley – 2B•5, 2C•8  
 Crankshaft speed/position sensor – 4B•14  
 Crankshaft sprocket – 2A•9, 2A•10, 2B•9, 2C•14  
 Cruise control – 12•5  
 Crushing – 0•5

CV joints – 1A•8, 1B•9  
 Cylinder block – 2D•10  
 Cylinder head – 2A•13, 2B•11, 2C•17, 2D•6, 2D•7, 2D•8  
 Cylinder head covers – 2A•4, 2B•4, 2C•6

## D

D-pillar trim – 11•19  
 Dehydrator filter – 3•12  
 Dents – 11•2  
 Depressurising fuel system – 4A•4  
 Diesel engine in-car repair procedures – 2C•1 *et seq*  
 Diesel injection equipment – 0•5  
 Dimensions – REF•1  
 Discs – 9•6, 9•7, REF•9  
 Doors – 11•6, 11•7, 11•8, 11•10, 11•13  
 Drivebelt – 1A•9, 1B•10  
 Driveplate – 2A•16, 2B•16, 2C•25  
 Driveshafts – 1A•8, 1B•9, 8•1 *et seq*, REF•10  
   fault finding – REF•16  
   oil seals – 7A•4, 7B•4  
 Drivetrain – 1A•8, 1B•10

## E

Earth fault – 12•3  
 EGR heat exchanger – 4C•4  
 EGR valve – 4C•3  
 Electric shock – 0•5  
 Electrical equipment – 1A•8, 1B•10, REF•9  
 Electrical system fault finding – 12•2, REF•17, REF•18  
 Electronic control unit (ECU)  
   ABS – 9•13  
   airbag – 12•19  
   automatic transmission – 7B•5  
   central locking – 11•13  
   fuel system – 4A•9, 4B•14  
 Emission control systems – 1A•15, 4C•1 *et seq*, REF•11  
 Engine assembly/valve timing holes – 2A•4, 2B•3, 2C•5  
 Engine fault finding – REF•13, REF•14  
 Engine management system – 4A•3, 4A•6, 4A•7  
 Engine oil – 0•13, 0•18, 1A•6, 1B•6, 1B•8  
 Environmental considerations – REF•4  
 Evaporative emission control – 4C•1, 4C•2  
 Evaporator – 3•12  
 Exhaust emission control – 4C•1, 4C•2, 4C•3  
 Exhaust gas recirculation system – 4C•2, 4C•3  
 Exhaust manifold – 4A•12, 4B•17  
 Exhaust specialists – REF•3  
 Exhaust system – 4A•12, 4B•21, REF•10, REF•11  
 Expansion tank – 3•3

**F**

**Facia** – 11•23  
**Fan** – 3•5  
**Fault finding** – 12•2, REF•12 *et seq*  
**Filling** – 11•3  
**Filters**  
 air – 1A•13, 1B•12, 4A•2, 4B•5  
 fuel – 1A•13, 1B•7, 1B•12  
 oil – 1A•6, 1B•6  
 particulate – 4B•21, 4C•4  
 pollen – 1A•9, 1B•9  
**Fire** – 0•5  
**Fluid cooler** – 7B•4  
**Fluid pressure sensor** – 7B•6  
**Fluids** – 0•18  
**Flywheel** – 2A•16, 2B•15, 2C•25  
**Foglight** – 12•7  
**Followers** – 2A•11, 2A•12, 2B•10, 2C•15  
**Fuel additive reservoir** – 4C•4  
**Fuel cooler** – 4B•8  
**Fuel filter** – 1A•13, 1B•7, 1B•12  
**Fuel gauge sender unit** – 4A•5, 4B•8  
**Fuel injectors** – 4A•7, 4B•3, 4B•12  
**Fuel lift pump** – 4B•3, 4B•7  
**Fuel pressure control valve** – 4B•16  
**Fuel pressure regulator** – 4A•9  
**Fuel pressure sensor** – 4B•3, 4B•16  
**Fuel pump** – 2C•14, 4A•4, 4B•3, 4B•8  
**Fuel rail** – 4A•7  
**Fuel system** – REF•11  
**Fuel tank** – 4A•5  
**Fuel temperature sensor** – 4B•16  
**Fuel/exhaust systems – diesel models** – 4B•1 *et seq*  
**Fuel/exhaust systems – petrol engine** – 4A•1 *et seq*  
 fault finding – REF•14  
**Fume or gas intoxication** – 0•5  
**Fuses** – 0•17, 12•3, 12•19

**G**

**Gaiters**  
 driveshaft – 1A•8, 1B•9, 8•3  
 steering rack – 10•13  
**Gashes** – 11•2  
**Gaskets** – REF•4  
**Gearchange lever** – 7A•3  
**General engine overhaul procedures** – 2D•1 *et seq*  
**General repair procedures** – REF•4  
**Glossary of technical terms** – REF•19 *et seq*  
**Glovebox** – 11•24  
 illumination – 112•6, 2•9  
**Glow plugs** – 5C•2  
**Grab handle** – 11•22

**H**

**Handbrake** – 1A•11, 1B•10, 9•11, 12•5, REF•8  
**Handles**  
 door – 11•8  
 tailgate – 11•13

**Headlight** – 12•6, 12•10, 12•12  
**Headlining** – 11•22  
**Heat shield(s)** – 4A•13, 4B•22  
**Heater** – 3•7, 3•8, 3•10, 12•5, 12•9  
**High-level stop-light** – 12•8, 12•11  
**High-pressure diesel injection system** – 4B•4  
**High-pressure fuel pump** – 4B•3, 4B•8  
**Hinge lubrication** – 1A•8, 1B•9  
**Horn** – 12•12  
**Hoses** – 1A•7, 1B•7, 3•2, 9•3  
**Hub bearings** – 10•3, 10•4, 10•8, 10•9  
**Hydrofluoric acid** – 0•5

**I**

**Idle speed stepper motor** – 4A•9  
**Idler pulley** – 2C•14  
**Ignition switch** – 10•11  
**Ignition system – petrol engines** – 5B•1 *et seq*  
**Immobiliser** – 12•16  
**Indicators** – 12•7, 12•8, 12•10  
**Injectors** – 4A•7, 4B•12, 4B•3  
**Inlet ducts** – 4B•5  
**Inlet heater** – 4B•20  
**Inlet manifold** – 4A•11, 4B•16  
**Input shaft oil seal** – 7A•4  
**Input shaft speed sensor** – 7B•5  
**Instrument panel** – 12•9, 12•12  
**Instruments** – 1A•8, 1B•10  
**Intake air resonator** – 4B•6  
**Intake air temperature sensor** – 4A•10  
**Intake ducts** – 4A•2  
**Intercooler** – 4B•20  
**Intermediate bearing (driveshaft)** – 8•5

**J**

**Jacking and vehicle support** – REF•5  
**Joint mating faces** – REF•4  
**Jump starting** – 0•8

**K**

**Knock sensor** – 5B•3

**L**

**Lambda sensor** – 4C•2  
**Leakdown test** – 2C•5  
**Leaks** – 0•9, 1A•7, 1B•7  
**Locknuts, locktabs and washers** – REF•4  
**Locks**  
 bonnet – 11•6  
 door – 11•8, 11•13  
 lubrication – 1A•8, 1B•9  
 steering – 10•11  
 tailgate – 11•12, 11•13  
**Loudspeakers** – 12•16  
**Lower arm** – 10•6, 10•7  
**Lubricants and fluids** – 0•18  
**Luggage area**  
 side trim – 11•20  
 light switch – 12•6

**M**

**Main bearings** – 2D•14  
**Manifold pressure sensor** – 4A•10  
**Manifolds** – 4A•11, 4A•12, 4B•16, 4B•17  
**Manual transmission** – 7A•1 *et seq*  
 fault finding – REF•15  
 oil – 0•18, 1A•13, 1B•13, 7A•3  
**Master cylinder**  
 brake – 9•9  
 clutch – 6•2  
**Mirrors** – 11•13, REF•8  
 illumination – 12•10  
**MOT test checks** – REF•8 *et seq*  
**Motor factors** – REF•3  
**Mountings** – 2A•17, 2B•16, 2C•26  
**Mud shields** – 11•14  
**Multi-function display** – 11•24  
 illumination – 12•9  
**Multi-function switch (automatic transmission)** – 7B•6  
**Multi-function unit** – 12•12

**N**

**Number plate light** – 12•8, 12•11

**O**

**Oil**  
 engine – 0•18, 1A•6, 1B•6, 1B•8  
 manual transmission – 0•18, 1A•13, 1B•13, 7A•3  
**Oil cooler** – 2C•23  
**Oil filter** – 1A•6, 1B•6  
**Oil level sensor** – 5A•7  
**Oil pressure switch and level sensor** – 2C•25  
**Oil pressure warning light switch** – 5A•6  
**Oil pump** – 2A•15, 2B•14, 2C•21  
**Oil seals** – REF•4  
 automatic transmission – 7B•4  
 engine – 2A•10, 2A•16, 2B•10, 2B•15, 2C•24  
 manual transmission – 7A•4  
**Open-circuit** – 12•3  
**Output shaft speed sensor** – 7B•5

**P**

**Pads** – 1A•11, 1B•10, 9•4, 9•5  
**Parcel shelf support panel** – 11•19  
**Particulate emission system** – 1B•15, 4B•21, 4C•2, 4C•4  
**Parts** – REF•3  
**Passenger compartment lights** – 12•9  
**Pedals**  
 accelerator – 4A•3, 4A•11, 4B•16  
 brake – 9•9  
 clutch – 6•3  
**Petrol engine in-car repair procedures**  
 1.4 and 1.6 litre – 2A•1 *et seq*  
 2.0 litre – 2B•1 *et seq*  
**Peugeot 307 manual** – 0•6  
**Pipes** – 9•3

Piston rings – 2D•14  
 Pistons – 2D•9, 2D•12, 2D•19  
 Plastic components – 11•3  
 Poisonous or irritant substances – 0•5  
 Pollen filter – 1A•9, 1B•9  
 Power steering fluid – 0•15, 0•18, 1B•8  
 Power steering pump – 10•13  
*Pre/post-heating system – diesel models –*  
 5C•1 *et seq*  
 Pressure control valve – 4B•3  
 Pressurising fuel system – 4A•4  
 Priming fuel system – 4B•5  
 Puncture repair – 0•10  
 Purge valve – 4C•2

## Q

Quarter light – 11•10

## R

Radiator – 1A•15, 1B•16, 3•3  
 Radio aerial – 12•16  
 Rain sensor – 12•6  
 Rear light – 12•8, 12•10  
 Regulator assembly (ABS) – 9•12  
 Regulator (door window) – 11•10  
 Relays – 3•5, 5C•3, 12•4  
 Release mechanism (clutch) – 6•4  
 Remote control transmitter (central locking) – 11•13  
 Repair procedures – REF•4  
 Respraying – 11•3  
 Reversing light switch – 7A•5  
 Road test – 1A•8, 1B•10  
*Roadside repairs – 0•7 et seq*  
 Rocker arms – 2A•11, 2A•12, 2C•15  
*Routine maintenance and servicing – petrol models –* 1A•1 *et seq*  
*Routine maintenance and servicing – diesel models –* 1B•1 *et seq*  
 bodywork and underframe – 11•1  
 upholstery and carpets – 11•2  
 Rust holes or gashes – 11•2

## S

Safety first! – 0•5, 0•15  
 Satellite navigation system – 12•19  
 Scalding – 0•5  
 Scratches – 11•2  
 Screen washer fluid – 0•16  
 Screw threads and fastenings – REF•4  
 Scuttle grille panel – 11•15  
 Seat belts – 11•16  
 pretensioners – 1A•16, 1B•17  
 Seats – 11•15  
 Secondary air injection – 4C•1, 4C•2  
 Selector cable – 7B•3  
 Selector lever – 7B•3  
 Selector shaft oil seal – 7A•5, 7B•4  
 Service indicator – 1A•8  
 Servo unit – 9•10

Shock absorbers – 1A•11, 1B•9, 10•9,  
 REF•9, REF•10  
 Short-circuit – 12•3  
 Side repeater – 12•8, 12•10  
 Side window glass – 11•14  
 Sidelight – 12•7  
 Slave cylinder (clutch) – 6•2  
 Spare parts – REF•3  
 Spark plugs – 1A•12  
 Speed sensor – 4A•10, 4B•16  
 Speedometer drive – 7A•5  
 Springs – REF•10  
 Sprockets – 2A•8, 2B•8, 2C•13  
*Starting and charging systems –* 5A•1 *et seq*  
 Start-up after overhaul – 2D•20  
 Steering – 1A•8, 1A•11, 1B•8, 1B•10,  
 REF•9, REF•10  
 Steering angles – 10•14  
 Steering column – 10•11, 11•24, 12•4,  
 REF•8  
 Steering lock – 10•11  
 Steering rack – 10•12, 10•13  
 Steering wheel – 10•10, REF•8  
 Stop-light – 12•8, 12•11  
 switch – 9•12  
 Struts – 1A•11, 1B•9, 10•5  
 Struts (tailgate) – 11•12  
 Stub axle – 10•10  
 Subframe – 10•7  
 Sump – 2A•15, 2B•13, 2C•20  
 Sunroof – 11•14  
 switch – 12•6  
 Sunvisor – 11•22  
*Suspension and steering –* 1A•8, 1A•11,  
 1B•8, 1B•10, 10•1 *et seq*, REF•9, REF•10  
 fault finding – REF•16, REF•17  
 Switches – 12•4  
 automatic transmission multi-function –  
 7B•6  
 ignition – 10•11  
 illumination – 12•9  
 oil pressure and level sensor – 2C•25  
 oil pressure warning light – 5A•6  
 reversing light – 7A•5  
 stop-light – 9•12

## T

Tailgate – 11•12, 11•13, 11•14, 11•21  
 Tappets – 2A•11, 2A•12, 2B•10, 2C•15  
 Temperature sensor – 3•10, 4A•10, 4B•16  
 Tensioner pulley – 2A•9, 2A•10, 2B•9,  
 2C•14  
 Thermostat – 3•4  
 Throttle housing – 4A•7, 4A•10  
 Throttle potentiometer – 4A•9  
 Throttle valve positioner motor – 4A•11  
 Timing belt – 1A•11, 1B•15, 2C•10, 2A•6,  
 2B•6, 2C•9  
 Timing belt covers – 2A•5, 2B•5  
 Timing belt tensioner – 2A•8, 2B•8, 2C•13  
 Timing (ignition) – 5B•3

*Tools and working facilities –* REF•4,  
 REF•6 *et seq*  
 Torque converter seal – 7B•4  
 Towing – 0•9  
 Track rod – 10•13, 10•14  
 Transmission mountings – 2A•17, 2B•16,  
 2C•26  
 Trim panels – 11•7, 11•15, 11•18  
 Turbocharger – 4B•4, 4B•6, 4B•18, 4B•19  
 Tyres – 0•14, 0•18, REF•3, REF•11

## U

Underbonnet check points – 0•12  
 Underframe – 11•1  
 Unleaded petrol – 4A•3  
 Upholstery – 11•2

## V

Vacuum hoses – 1B•8  
 Vacuum pump – 9•13, 9•14  
 Vacuum servo unit – 9•10  
 Valve clearances (1.4 litre petrol engines) –  
 2A•10  
 Valve timing holes – 2A•4, 2B•3, 2C•5  
 Valves – 2D•8  
 Vehicle identification numbers – REF•3,  
 REF•9  
 Vehicle speed sensor – 4A•10, 4B•16  
 Vehicle support – REF•5  
 Ventilation system – 3•7, 3•8  
 controls – 12•5, 12•9

## W

Washer systems – 12•14  
 Water pump – 3•6  
*Weekly checks –* 0•12 *et seq*  
 Weights – REF•1  
 Wheel alignment – 10•14  
 Wheel arch liners – 11•14  
 Wheel bearings – REF•10  
 Wheel changing – 0•10  
 Wheel sensor (ABS) – 9•13  
 Wheels – REF•11  
 Windows  
 door – 11•10  
 side – 11•14  
 Windscreen – 11•14, REF•8  
 Wiper arm – 12•13  
 Wiper blades – 0•16  
 Wiper motors and linkage – 12•13, 12•14  
*Wiring diagrams –* 12•20 *et seq*  
 Working facilities – REF•7

## Y

Yaw rate sensor (ABS) – 9•13



Keep your Peugeot 307 in perfect running order and maintain its value. Haynes shows you how and saves you money.

**Step-by-step instructions** clearly linked to hundreds of photos and illustrations show you how to do each job.

**Spanner ratings** grade all tasks by difficulty and experience level.

From easy servicing jobs for the novice...



...to difficult tasks for the expert.



**Haynes Hints** give valuable tips and short-cuts that help make the job easier.

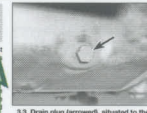
**Tool Tips** contain useful information such as ways of removing parts without using special tools.

Written from **hands on experience**, based on the stripdown and rebuild of Peugeot 307 vehicles using commonly-available tools.

1A46 Every 10 000 miles (15 000 km)

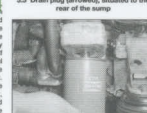
3 Engine oil and filter removal

1 Frequent oil and filter changes are the most important preventative maintenance procedure which can underwrite the OX (oxidation) engine life span. It becomes oxidized, contaminated, which leads to engine wear.



Check for leaks around the oil filter seal and the sump drain plug. There may be a few seconds delay before the oil pressure warning light goes out when the engine is started, as the oil circulates through the engine oil galleries and the new oil filter before the pressure builds up.

3.3 Drain plug (removed, situated to the rear of the sump)



4 Front brake pad check

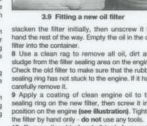
**Warning: The dust created by wear of the pads may contain asbestos, which is a health hazard.**

1 Firmly apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the car and support it securely on axle stands. Remove the front roadwheel.

2 Before starting this procedure, gather all the necessary tools and materials. Also make sure that the vehicle remains level, or if it is at an angle, that the drain plug is at the lowest point.

3.5 Fitting a new oil filter

1 Clean the sump drain plug about half a turn (see Illustration). Position the draining container under the drain plug, then remove the plug completely (see Haynes Hint). Remove the sealing ring from the drain plug.



5 Automatic transmission fluid level check

1 Take the car on a short journey, to warm the transmission up to operating temperature, then park the car on level ground.

2 After all the oil has drained, wipe off the drain plug with a clean rag, and fit a new sealing washer. Clean the area around the drain plug thoroughly, and fit the plug. Tighten the plug.

3 The filter is also to be removed, move the engine to the front of the cylinder block, and fit the dipstick under the oil filter, which is in the front engine mounting.

4 If the oil level is low, add oil as necessary.



**HAYNES HINT**  
Keep the drain plug pressed into the sump while unscrewing it. Do not let it come out of its hole. As the plug releases, move it away sharply in the direction of oil issuing from the sump into the container, not up your sleeve!



2 With the engine idling and the selector lever in the 'P' (Park) position, withdraw the dipstick from the tank. Wipe the fluid level on the end of the dipstick; it should be between the MAX and MIN marks. Note: If the engine has not been warmed up, the fluid level should be at the 20°C mark (see Illustration).

3 If any of your vehicle's material is worn to the specified thickness or less, all four pads must be renewed as a set.

5.2 Fluid level dipstick marks

**Inside this Manual**

- **Basic maintenance** – simple weekly checks
- **Service your car** – complete step-by-step guide
- **Fault finding** – pinpoint specific problems easily
- **Roadside Emergencies** – how to deal with them
- **Pass the MOT** – step-by-step test checks
- **Reference section** – includes a detailed glossary

- **Braking system** – safety checks and repairs
- **Fuel and ignition systems** – explained
- **Electrical system** – fault finding and repairs
- **Engine** – tune-up, minor and major repairs
- **Wiring diagrams** – easy-to-follow layout
- **Fully indexed** – find information quickly

ISBN 1 84425 147 0



9 781844 251476

**Models covered by this Manual**

Peugeot 307 Hatchback & Estate/SW models, including special/limited editions

**Petrol engines:** 1.4 litre (1360cc) SOHC, 1.6 litre (1587cc) & 2.0 litre (1997cc)

**Turbo-Diesel engines:** 1.4 litre (1398cc) SOHC & 2.0 litre (1997cc)

Does NOT cover 307CC or Coupe models

Does NOT cover 1.4 litre DOHC 16-valve petrol & diesel engines introduced during 2004

Haynes Publishing, Sparkford, Yeovil, Somerset BA22 7JJ England

www.haynes.co.uk

**A** UPC CODE



6 99414 00431 7

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNO P